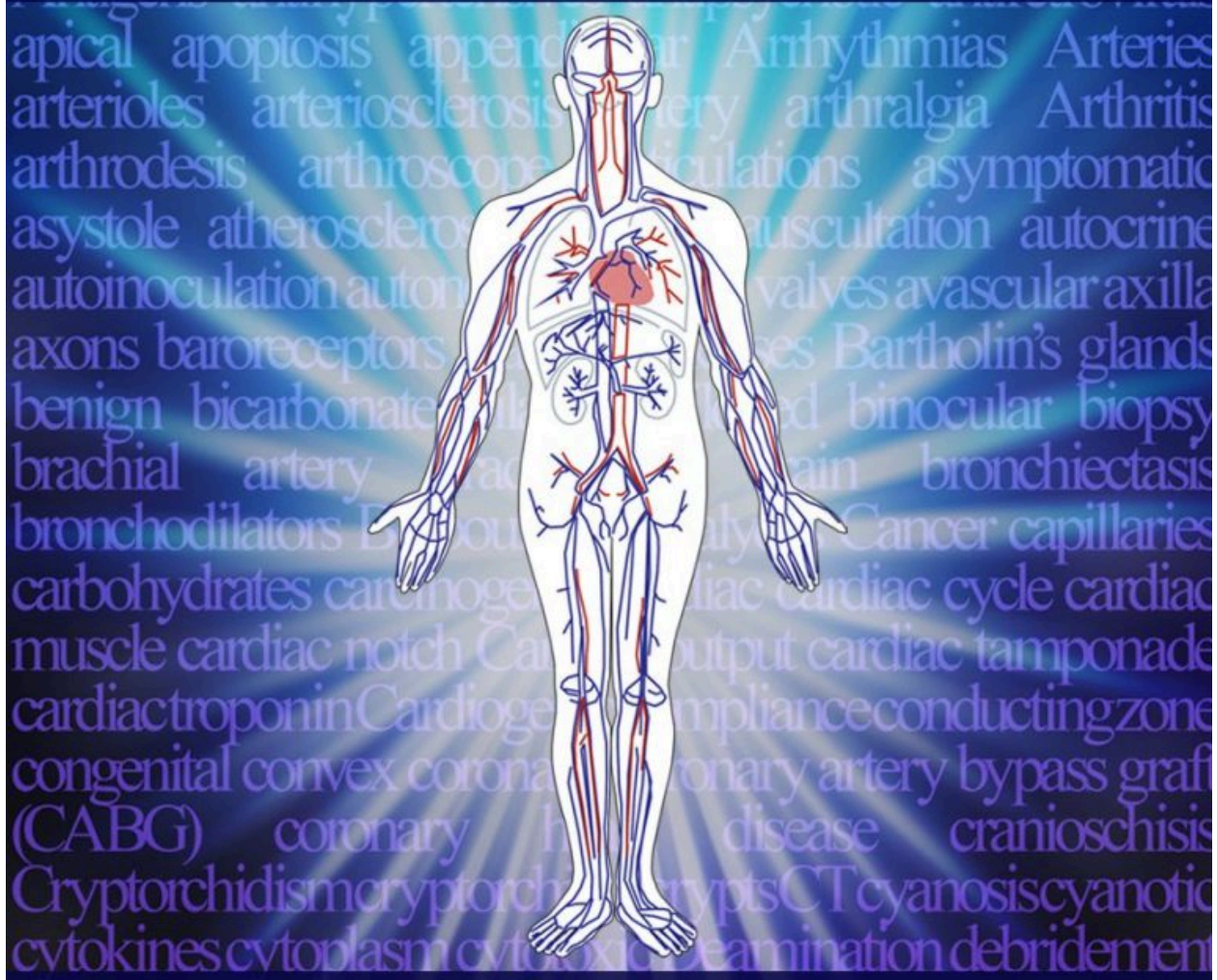


BUILDING A
MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY
FOUNDATION
SECOND EDITION



KIMBERLEE CARTER MARIE RUTHERFORD CONNIE STEVENS



 **Georgian**

 **CONESTOGA**

Sheridan

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e

KIMBERLEE CARTER; MARIE RUTHERFORD; AND CONNIE STEVENS

GEORGIAN COLLEGE
TORONTO, ONTARIO



Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e Copyright © 2024 by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), except where otherwise noted.

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e. by Kimberlee Carter, Marie Rutherford, and Connie Stevens is a derivative of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), except where otherwise noted.

Contents

Accessing and Using Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e	x
Introduction	xiii
Acknowledgements	xv
For Educators	xx
Accessibility Statement	xxiii
 <u>Chapter 1: Introduction to Medical Terms</u>	
1.1 - Introduction - Word Parts in Medical Terms	2
1.2 - Medical Language Rules	5
1.3 - Prefix	8
1.4 - Suffix	11
 <u>Chapter 2: Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology</u>	
2.1 - Levels of Organization	17
2.2 - Anatomical Position	24
2.3 - Body Cavities and Serous Membranes	31
Check Your Knowledge	43
References	45
 <u>Chapter 3: Integumentary System</u>	
3.1 - Introduction to the Integumentary System	47
3.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Integumentary System	55
3.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Integumentary System	64
3.4 - Accessory Structures	68
3.5 - Integumentary System Changes (Aging, Disease and Disorders, Skin)	82
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	96
References	101
 <u>Chapter 4: Respiratory System</u>	
4.1 - Introduction to the Respiratory System	103

4.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Respiratory System	118
4.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Respiratory System	132
4.4 - Respiratory Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	141
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	150
References	156

Chapter 5: Urinary System

5.1 - Introduction to the Urinary System	158
5.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Urinary System	168
5.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Urinary System	179
5.4 - Urinary Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	189
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	197
References	200

Chapter 6: Male Reproductive System

6.1 - Introduction to the Male Reproductive System	203
6.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Male Reproductive System	211
6.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Male Reproductive System	213
6.4 - Male Reproductive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	221
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	229
References	234

Chapter 7: Female Reproductive System

7.1 - Introduction to the Female Reproductive System	236
7.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Female Reproductive System	248
7.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Female Reproductive System	256
7.4 - Female Reproductive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	265
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	271
References	276

Chapter 8: Obstetrics

8.1 - Introduction to Obstetrics	278
8.2 - Procedures Related to Obstetrics	295
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	298
References	303

Chapter 9: Cardiovascular System - Heart

9.1 - Introduction to the Heart	305
9.2 - Anatomy of the Heart	311
9.3 - Physiology of the Heart	318
9.4 - Heart Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	330
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	343
References	349

Chapter 10: Cardiovascular System - Blood Vessels and Blood

10.1 - Introduction to the Blood Vessels and Blood	351
10.2 - Anatomy of the Blood Vessels	364
10.3 - Physiology of the Blood & Blood Vessels	373
10.4 - Blood Vessels Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	400
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	413
References	421

Chapter 11: Lymphatic and Immune Systems

11.1 - Introduction to the Lymphatic and Immune Systems	423
11.2 - Anatomy & Physiology of the Lymphatic System	426
11.3 - The Organization of the Immune System	444
11.4 - Lymphatic Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	461
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	471
References	480

Chapter 12: Digestive System (Gastrointestinal)

12.1 - Introduction to the Digestive System	482
12.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Digestive System	496
12.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Digestive System	515
12.4 - Digestive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	522
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	529
References	533

Chapter 13: Skeletal System

13.1 - Introduction to the Skeletal System	535
13.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Skeletal System	549

13.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Skeletal System	564
13.4 - Skeletal Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	576
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	584
References	587

Chapter 14: Muscular System

14.1 - Introduction to the Muscular System	590
14.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Muscular System	594
14.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Muscular System	597
14.4 - Muscular Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	603
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	608
References	611

Chapter 15: Sensory Systems

15.1 - Introduction to the Sensory Systems	613
15.2 - Anatomy & Physiology of the Sensory System	625
15.3 - Sensory Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	649
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	657
References	661

Chapter 16: Nervous System

16.1 - Introduction to the Nervous System	664
16.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Nervous System	675
16.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Nervous System	696
16.4 - Nervous Systems Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	704
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	713
References	722

Chapter 17: Endocrine System

17.1 - Introduction to Endocrine System	724
17.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Endocrine System	731
17.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Endocrine System	736
17.4 - Endocrine System Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing	770
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	778
References	781

Chapter 18: Oncology

18.1 - Introduction to Oncology	783
18.2 - Oncology Diagnostic Tools	786
18.3 - Oncology Diseases, Disorders, Treatment	787
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	791
References	795

Chapter 19: Mental Health

19.1 - Introduction to Mental Health	797
19.2 - Mental Health Diagnostic Tests	801
19.3 - Mental Health Diseases and Disorders	802
19.4 - Mental Health Therapeutic Interventions	807
Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge	809
References	813
Glossary	815
Update & Change Log	862

Accessing and Using Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e

This resource is an Open Educational Resource (OER). An Open Educational Resource is a learning material intentionally created and licensed to be available to the user with little or no cost involved.

In this resource, you will work through each body system, learning word parts, whole medical terms, and common abbreviations associated with that particular body system. Interactive content is built into each chapter. At the end of each chapter is a vocabulary list of associated terms related to that body system. The interactive reinforcement activities require you to click, drag and drop, listen and repeat, flip, and test yourself.

Never used an Open Educational Resource (OER) before? Check out our [Using OER Textbooks: Student Guide](#).

Accessibility

This textbook is designed to be [accessible](#) using standard web browsers, mobile devices, screen readers, and other assistive technology. You can access the book in several formats. Requirements, tools, and suggestions for navigating and using the book are listed on this page. If you encounter any issues in accessing the book, please connect with your course professor.

Book Formats

Typical OER Textbook Formats, Requirements, Features & Access Options

Book Format	Requirements	Features	Access Options
Online web book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internet access Web browser 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Optimized for online access (web browser) Embedded interactive and text-based activities Embedded videos Embedded glossary terms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Read online with your device or assistive technology Use Text-to-Speech to listen to the book Take digital notes while you read
Digital PDF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internet access PDF viewer 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Optimized for reading with internet (PDF viewer) Text-based activities Clickable Links to videos and other resources Glossary of terms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Save to a device or drive as desired Access from your device with/without internet Use internet access for clickable links/videos Take digital notes while you read
Print PDF of the Whole book or individual chapters	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internet access for initial download PDF viewer to open file Ability to print or access to a print shop (recommended) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Optimized for printing/ accessing offline Text-based activities Glossary of terms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Save to a device or drive as desired Read offline on device (no active/clickable links) Print chapters or whole book as needed Refer to web book to access links/interactive activities

Don't forget to [cite/reference your textbook](#) if you use it in your research or assignments.

Do You Prefer a Printed Textbook?

This book is **free** to access, use, and print in any of the above formats for non-commercial purposes. If you prefer a printed textbook, you are encouraged to print sections/the entire book.

Download Specific Textbook Chapters as Individual Files (Optimized for Printing)

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Front matter Chapter 1 Chapter 2 Chapter 3 Chapter 4 Chapter 5 Chapter 6 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chapter 7 Chapter 8 Chapter 9 Chapter 10 Chapter 11 Chapter 12 Chapter 13 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chapter 14 Chapter 15 Chapter 16 Chapter 17 Chapter 18 Chapter 19 Back matter |
|--|---|---|

Recommendations

- Check for printing costs at your on-campus print shop or a local print shop (Staples, etc.).
- Printing a large document is often significantly less expensive at a print shop than it is to print on your home printer or at the library.
- To reduce printing costs, consider printing in black & white and refer to the webbook or PDF for any diagrams that require colour.
- Ask about binding or 3-hole punching when you order, as this is usually low cost and will make your textbook easier to use.

This book is licensed under the [Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License](#), allowing students/faculty to print it for their personal use at the cost of printing.

Experiencing Navigation Issues?

If you encounter navigation issues while accessing this text via a link from your within your course learning management system, please try accessing the online web book by using the web address in your browser. The bottom left and right corners of the web book allow you to navigate through the book (previous/next) and the top left hand corner of the web book features a drop-down table of contents.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, "Accessing and Using this Textbook" by [OER Design Studio at the Georgian College Library](#) is licensed under [CC BY-NC 4.0](#).

Introduction

Welcome to ***Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e***. Medical terminology is a language that is used in health care settings. Medical terms are built from Greek and Latin word parts and, in addition, include **acronymns**, **eponyms**, and **modern-day language terms**.

Learning a new language can be a daunting task. In this resource, we offer a method for breaking down medical words that takes that daunting task and makes it manageable. What is required from you is a commitment to memorizing the word parts, learning the rules, and identifying the **rebels**. Once you meet that commitment, we will show you how to apply the rules to the word parts you have memorized. As you memorize the language components of medical terminology, it is important to support that learning with the context of anatomy and physiology. Consider where in the body the medical term is referencing and then how it works within the body. This will build a medical terminology foundation that you can continue to grow in your future healthcare courses.

Additional Resources Accompanying this Edition

[Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e – Student Companion Workbook](#)

[Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e – Anatomical Colouring Book](#)

Please note: this OER provides examples of medical documentation to enhance your learning of medical terms. These reports are not intended to represent or demonstrate Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Our first edition of edition of *Building a Medical Terminology Foundation* laid the groundwork for this second edition. From the outset, this resource resonated with students and educators in healthcare programs, where possessing medical terminology knowledge is an essential skill. The feedback we received from the first edition influenced and inspired us and paved the way forward to the new edition. A special thank you to all who contributed their insights and comments. Now, as we turn the page to our new edition, we are excited to highlight what is new in this edition:

- Layout: chapters are divided into subchapters, making it easier for the reader to navigate and focus on a key segment of the chapter content.
- New chapters: **Chapter 18 Oncology** and **Chapter 19 Mental Health** expand our comprehensive coverage and knowledge areas.
- Updated interactive activities: interactive chapter dialogue cards are expanded to include more terminology and additional audio pronunciation recordings.
- Text versions of interactives: H5P activities now contain textual versions to support and enhance greater accessibility and offline user experience.
- Added: solutions for the H5P activities have been placed in the footnotes section and will appear at the bottom of the page in the webbook or at the end of the page/chapter for the PDF version.

- Updated content weblinks: chapter links are updated to ensure relevancy and current standards, where relevant and applicable.
- Updated colour theme of the textbook for a consistent look and feel.
- New supplementary resources:
 - [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e – Student Companion Workbook](#) accompanies each chapter of learning for enhanced learner reinforcement. Chapter worksheets and activities in Word files to practice medical terminology development are available within the workbook.
 - [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e – Anatomical Colouring Book](#) – many diagrams and illustrations found in chapters throughout the main text are now available in colouring book format. Learners are directed to identify and colour anatomical structures for an enhanced learning experience.

Attribution

This page “Introduction” by Kimberlee Carter, Marie Rutherford, and Connie Stevens is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Acknowledgements

Land Acknowledgement

We wish to acknowledge and honour indigenous history and in the spirit of reconciliation, we convey our respect to First Nations, Métis, and Inuit people.

Conestoga College is located on the traditional territory of the Anishnaabe, Haudenosaunee, and Neutral peoples. Georgian College campuses are situated on the traditional land of the Anishnaabeg people. The Anishnaabeg include the Odawa, Ojibwe, and Pottawatomi nations, collectively known as the Three Fires Confederacy. Sheridan campuses reside on traditional land territory of the Mississaugas of the Credit First Nations, Anishinaabe Nation, Huron-Wendat, and the Haudenosaunee Confederacy.

How It Began...

In the Spring of 2018, I (Kimberlee) attended a workshop on building OER (Open Educational Resources) for high impact in first year courses. I was moved by the student speaker's plea over the rising costs of textbooks and motivated to learn more about the ability to customize OER. In health office administration programs, customization is important because we are a combination of health and business. I attended a Pressbooks webinar, signed up for an account, and started plugging away. I will be honest, the task was daunting to do alone.

Marie and I met in the Winter of 2019 as participants in the Ontario Extend eCampus Ontario MOOC and went on to become Empowered Educators. Through this program, we learned about Creative Commons licensing and were inspired to create OER. In the fall of 2019, I shared what I had been working on with Marie and this led to a collaborative partnership that snowballed into this OER. We advocated for support, found collaborators, and ultimately crowdsourced this OER. Please read below to learn about the amazing collaborative support we had for this OER, for which we are truly grateful.

Kimberlee Carter B.Ed., M.A., Conestoga College ITAL

Thank you Kimberlee for inviting me to partake and share this adventure with you. The opportunity to create a resource for learners in this OPEN format has been a wonderful and collaborative endeavour.

Marie Rutherford, Dip., Nursing, LD., BGS., Georgian College CAAT

The Journey Continues...

I have been excited to see this second edition of Building a Medical Terminology Foundation come to fruition. I am so grateful to Marie Rutherford and the team from Georgian for picking up the mantel to lead this second edition, and to Connie Stevens and the faculty subject matter experts from Sheridan, who collaborated with Marie to complete chapters that we were not able to get to in the first edition. Marie and Connie, I am truly grateful for your

passion for Open Education, medical terminology, and learners. I would like to thank the Open Learning team at Conestoga College for providing wrap-around editorial and design support. I have so much gratitude to our student-OER assistants for their contributions and for reminding us of the importance of students' voices in classroom resources.

Kimberlee Carter, OER Consultant, Open Learning, Library and Learning Services at Conestoga College

The healthcare field constantly evolves with new research, changing environments, and advancing technology. The second edition of *Building a Medical Terminology Foundation* is designed to stay in step with these ongoing advancements. I am privileged to contribute to our learning materials' continuous improvement and relevance and Open Educational Resource updates. I am ever grateful for the continuous improvement and collaboration with many knowledge expert colleagues. Thank you to my co-authors, Marie Rutherford and Kimberlee Carter, who are tireless advocates for OERs, and for impacting our students.

Connie Stevens, Faculty, RN, BScN, MA, PhD. Sheridan College ITAL

The second edition of this resource was developed through the efforts and inspiration of many talented and dedicated individuals. In the pages of the second edition, I am humbled by the brilliance and unwavering commitment of those who joined on this journey. To the editors who polished and worked through the book identifying any issues and resolving them: thank you. With boundless admiration, I am thankful for the wraparound support and design insights provided from the OER Design Studio at Georgian College and Open Learning at Conestoga College. No words are enough to convey heartfelt thanks. A special thank-you to my co-authors, Connie Stevens, and Kimberlee Carter, who remain the catalyst and the driver of innovation to bring the first edition and second edition from concept to completion.

Marie Rutherford, Dip., Nursing, LD., BGS., Georgian College CAAT

Thanks and Gratitude

Our thanks and gratitude listings are a combination of individuals who were instrumental in the development of this resource and include recognition of the first and second edition contributors.

We wish to thank our partner institutions involved in the development of this edition who are champions of Open Learning practices: the Open Learning team at Conestoga College, the OER Design Studio team at Georgian College, and Sheridan College.

Thanks to **Gary Hallam**, Vice President of Research & Executive Dean of the School of Business at Conestoga College ITAL, for sharing his dream for OER and championing our project to other business heads in the Ontario College System. His encouragement and resource support led to the expansive collaboration team that saw this project through to publishing.

We also extend our gratitude to **Pavla Kazda**, Dean from Georgian College CAAT, for her support, encouragement and resource allocation.

We wish to recognize the work of our **students**, whose dedication, creation of activities, and commitment to reviewing interactive activities throughout the development of this resource was invaluable. Additional thanks

for examining content and providing feedback from the student perspective. Thank you for paying it forward for future students.

- Tiffany Hunt BSc., Conestoga College ITAL
- Heather Scudder, Georgian College CAAT
- Gisele Tuzon, Georgian College CAAT
- Alyssa Arsenault, Conestoga College ITAL
- Tania Deane, Conestoga College ITAL
- David McCuaig, Conestoga College ITAL
- Hana You, Conestoga College ITAL
- Benny Baby, Georgian College CAAT
- Val Hrynyk, Georgian College CAAT

To our amazing subject matter experts who continued with a backpack full of responsibilities to author content in the first edition and helped to crowdsource this OER, as well as those who assisted with the revisions for the new edition:

- Ellen Dilgert BSc, BEd, RTNM, RTMR, Conestoga College ITAL
- Sheila Bellefeuille, Conestoga College ITAL
- Connie Stevens RN, BScN, MA, PhD (c), Sheridan College ITAL
- Catherine Statton, R. Kin., CHE, BSc, MA, University of Guelph & Sheridan College ITAL
- Shanta Doobay MSc, OCT, Fanshawe College CAA
- Ermelinda Kapo, Sheridan College ITAL
- Jacqueline De Paula, MD, MMSc, DBA, Sheridan College ITAL
- Crystal Frenette MA BScN RN, Sheridan College ITAL
- Kadeem Sampath, MD, Centennial College CAAT
- Saeedeh Akram, PhD, Conestoga College ITAL
- Jennifer Ethier, BScH, MSc, Georgian College CAAT

A special thank you to **Jesslyn Wilkinson** (OCT, M.Ed candidate, BEd, Hons. BA), Educational Technology Officer, Teaching & Learning at Conestoga College ITAL, for her infectious enthusiasm for OER, support for H5P technology, and asking the question, “are you ready to sprint?”

A load of gratitude to **Cecile Michniewicz**, Instructional Designer from the Open Learning team at Conestoga College. Cecile designed the cover art for this edition and brought a wealth of creativity, copy editor skills, and instructional design experience to this project.

An immense thank you to **Jen Booth**, OER Librarian, and **Jessica Jones**, Library Technician from the OER Design Studio at Georgian College, for their tireless hours of assistance in redeveloping and modifying our H5P interactives, tagging the H5P activities, and for managing the accessible textual versions of these activities. Thank you also for your talents in copy editing, proofing, and ensuring accessibility compliance with the second edition.

A big shout out to **Holly Ashbourne**, our first edition copy editor, and the Library team for their tireless work in copy editing, copyright proofing, accessibility compliance, and their continuous championing of OER. You are, truly, the quiet leaders that make students’ lives better.

- Holly Ashbourne, copy editor, Dipl. LIT, Hon. BA, MLIS, Conestoga College ITAL
- James Yochem, Hon. BA, MLIS, Conestoga College ITAL
- Michelle Doadt, MLIS, Conestoga College ITAL
- Antonina Gousseva, BA, Dipl. LIT, Conestoga College ITAL
- Chris Woodley, BEd, MLIS, Conestoga College ITAL
- Juliet Conlon, MLS, Conestoga College ITAL
- Jen Booth, BA, MEd, Georgian College CAAT
- Jessica Jones, MLIS, Georgian College CAAT
- Cecile Michniewicz, B.A. (Hons), MEd, Conestoga College ITAL

This OER was greatly enhanced by the leadership, support, and contributions of the following **colleagues**:

- Lisa Koster OCT, MBA, BMath, BEd, Conestoga College ITAL
- Peggy French BEd, MLIS, MET, Mohawk College CAAT
- Sandra Neubauer BA, MAdEd, Fanshawe College CAAT

Special thanks to **eCampusOntario** for the work that they do putting collaborators together, supporting OER through the Open library, Open Publishing Infrastructure, Ontario Extend Professional Learning for Educators, and answering countless Pressbooks questions. Thank you to:

- Lillian Hogendoorn, Hon. BA, MI
- Emily Carlisle-Johnston, MLIS
- Lena Patterson, BA, MA

Book Acknowledgement

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e is a derivative of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), which was adapted from the [OpenStax Anatomy and Physiology OER](#) by Betts, et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). Following OpenStax's leadership and in the spirit of Open Education, we have licensed this OER with the same license.

In some sections of this OER, H5P activities expanded on in [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#), have been incorporated and updated with new audio recordings.

Book Cover

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e customized cover art for this resource was created by Cecile Michniewicz, Instructional Designer, Open Learning at Conestoga College, licensed under [CC BY-NC-SA](#).

Copyright & Open Licensing

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#), except where otherwise noted. Individual sections, content, images, and activities are marked with their relevant copyright and open licensing information.

Images from the original [OpenStax Anatomy and Physiology OER](#) are identified by the short form “Betts et al” .

YouTube videos in this OER are embedded/used under the [Standard YouTube license](#).

For Educators

Faculty and teaching staff: while this OER was curated and created for Health Office Administration and Health Services students in the first year of college, our hope is that you will take this OER and customize it for your program and share again.

Resources Accompanying this Edition

One of the areas we are most proud of with this edition is the inclusion of ancillaries for educators, student activity worksheets, and the [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e – Student Companion Workbook](#). The Student Companion is an additional educational resource designed to accompany our main text and provides access to:

- Interactive H5P activities and text solutions for increased accessibility
- Reinforcement activities in Word file formats
- Worksheets in Word file format

[Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e – Anatomical Colouring Book](#)

Instructor ancillaries include:

- Assignments in Word file format
- Instructor Planning Manual
- Chapter slide decks [PowerPoint]

How this Open Educational Resource (OER) Works

The introductory anatomy and physiology content of this OER has been adapted from the [OpenStax Anatomy and Physiology OER](#) by Betts, et al., which is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License](#) and available for free on the OpenStax site. Following OpenStax's leadership and in the spirit of open education, we have licensed this OER with the same license.

Images

Images throughout this OER are marked with their specific attribution/licensing details. You may reuse any image that is marked as openly licensed in your course materials and lecture slides provided you include the attribution statement and observe the specifications of the open license (a link to license is included with each image).

This OER has been designed to be as accessible as possible. All non-decorative images include an image description, caption or alt-text to improve accessibility. We recommend that you also include the alt-text or image description anywhere you reuse an image. Please note that due to the visual nature of anatomy textbooks, some students may still encounter barriers with this text. Students are encouraged to work with their accessibility advisors and/or adaptive technologists for further help.

Interactive H5P Activities

Interactive H5P activities are included throughout the OER to increase student engagement and reinforce learning. Text versions of the activities are included beneath the interactive element to improve overall accessibility and user experience.

Students who use the print or PDF/offline version of the OER will see the text activity only. Solutions for the activities have been placed in the footnotes section and will appear at the bottom of the page in the e-book or at the end of the page/chapter for the PDF version.

If you would like to reuse these activities you may:

- **Reuse the H5P within your LMS:** download and upload into your course, creating a copy of the H5P that you can edit/update. This method is needed if you want to assign points or marks for completion (available in Blackboard Ultra). Please check with your OER or teaching & learning supports at your institution for specifics on how to do this with your LMS.
- **Reuse the H5P on an H5P site such as eCampus Ontario's H5P studio:** download the .h5p file as above and then add it to your account on your own H5P server, etc
- **Embed the H5P:** similar to inserting a YouTube video, use the provided embed code and the H5P will stay linked to the original source, and be updated when the activity is updated.

When you reuse any H5P, please note and observe the specific open license (available on the H5P activity marked "Rights of Use" or under the metadata tab when you are editing the activity in your own system).

While some [H5P types are considered accessible](#), layering them into Blackboard or another LMS can create some barriers to H5P use with assistive technology. We recommend that you post the text version of the activity alongside the interactive one, to ensure all users have the chance to access the content.

Please

Linking to this OER in Blackboard or Other LMS

The full URL to access the web version of this OER is: <https://ecampusontario.pressbooks.pub/medicalterminology2/>

Some students have noted navigation issues when accessing this OER through a link in Blackboard. When adding the link into your course shell, experiment with the link options in student preview:

- If the link opens WITHIN a Blackboard window (doesn't open in a new tab or window), students may not be able to access basic navigation features, such as the previous/next buttons (located in bottom left and right corners of the browser window) or the drop-down table of contents (located in the top left corner of the browser under "Contents"). This works well if you want students to focus only on one page/section.
- If students need to navigate beyond the exact page you've linked to, you may need to adjust the link to open in a new window/tab.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, For Educators by the [OER Design Studio](#), Georgian College, is licensed under [CC BY-NC 4.0](#)

Accessibility Statement

Accessibility Features of the Web Version of this Resource

The web version of *Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e* has been designed with accessibility in mind by incorporating the following features:

- It has been optimized for people who use screen-reader technology.
 - All content can be navigated using a keyboard.
 - Links, headings, and tables are formatted to work with screen readers.
- Images in this OER are described through the use of text around the image, alt-text, captions or in the image description section for complex images.
 - Due to the complex visual nature of anatomy images and diagrams, alt text description may be longer than typically considered best practice. This allows for a more effective description of the information being conveyed by image/size/colour/labels.
 - If there are errors or concerns, please contact OER[at]georgiancollege.ca
- Information is not conveyed by colour alone.
- Pressbooks has built-in features such as the ability to change font size.

Other File Formats Available

In addition to the web version, additional files are available in a number of file formats including PDF (digital and print).

Known Accessibility Issues and Areas for Improvement

This book's adapters have attempted to improve upon existing features from the original sources and improve these materials for all users.

While we strive to ensure that this resource is as accessible and usable as possible, we might not always get it right. Any issues we identify will be listed below. If you encounter issues with this text, please notify your professor.

List of Known Accessibility Issues

Location of Issue	Need for Improvement	Timeline	Work Around
Video captioning	All videos have closed captions & transcripts via YouTube or other provider, but may not have transcripts that fully describe non-speech content	Unknown	Current provisions meet AODA requirements
Interactive activities (H5P)	H5Ps containing images may not be fully accessible	On going	Text version of interactive activities with alt text provided
PDF version of book	PDF version of book generated by the Pressbooks export system may not be fully accessible	On going	Use webook for the most accessible version of the content
Footnotes (used for activity solutions)	Questions/answers may not be optimized in ordered lists due to limitations of the footnote tool	Unknown	Ordered lists have been used when possible; some footnote/answers will read as a sentence with answers
Merged/split tables	Some tables may have some repetitive content as merged cells were split for improved accessibility	Unknown	Work is on going
Downloadable Word worksheets/activities	Worksheets contain lists and tables to be completed by students, and may pose some accessibility issues. Heading structure has been added, but the nature of the tasks associated with identifying and labeling anatomical images is difficult may persist.	On going	Students are encouraged to work with their adaptive technologist if problems persist.
Complex images	Many complex images are used throughout the text to help students better understand anatomy, and identify different systems and how they function. This is a very visual process, and may not translate effectively into descriptive text.	On going	Accessibility features have been added where possible. Work is on going.

Accessibility Standards

The web version of this resource has been designed to meet [AODA requirements](#), along with the [Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.0](#), level AA. In addition, it follows all guidelines in [Appendix A: Checklist for Accessibility](#) of the [Accessibility Toolkit – 2nd Edition](#).

This statement was last updated on August 2, 2024.

Attribution & References

This information was adapted from “[Accessibility statement](#)” in [Pressbooks Guide](#) by [BCcampus](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Adapted to match the current OER with relevant deficiencies noted.

CHAPTER I: INTRODUCTION TO MEDICAL TERMS

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [1.1 – Identifying Word Parts in Medical Terms](#)
- [1.2 – Medical Language Rules](#)
- [1.3 – Prefix](#)
- [1.4 – Suffix](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

I.I - Introduction - Word Parts in Medical Terms

Learning Objectives

- Outline the elements used to build medical terms
- Analyze, identify, and construct medical words using applicable medical language component parts
- Explore medical language rules

Word Parts

Medical terms are built from word parts. Those word parts are **prefix**, **word root**, **suffix**, and **combining form vowel**. When a **word root** is combined with a **combining form vowel**, the word part is referred to as a **combining form**.

Word Parts

Word Parts (Text Version)

Make sure you understand key parts of medical terminology. Fill in the blanks using the following words:

- Suffix
- Prefix
- Combining Form
- Word Root

1. _____ [Blank 1] word part at the beginning of the term that changes meaning
2. _____ [Blank 2] word part at the end of the term that changes meaning
3. _____ [Blank 3] foundational meaning of a word
4. _____ [Blank 4] used to join word parts to ease pronunciation

Check your answers: ¹

Activity Source: Key Terms by PFrench, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). /Text version added.

Identifying Word Parts in Medical Terms

By the end of this resource, you will have identified hundreds of word parts within medical terms. Let's start with some common medical terms that many non-medically trained people may be familiar with.

Examples

Osteoarthritis

Oste/o/arthr/itis - Inflammation of bone and joint.

Oste/o is a **combining form** that means bone

arthr/o is a **combining form** that means joint

-itis is a **suffix** that means inflammation

Intravenous

Intra/ven/ous - Pertaining to within a vein.

Intra- is a **prefix** that means within

ven/o - is a **combining form** that means vein

-ous is a **suffix** that means pertaining to

Notice, when breaking down words that you place slashes between word parts and a slash on each side of a combining form vowel.

Language Rules

Language rules are a good place to start when building a medical terminology foundation. Many medical terms are built from word parts and can be translated **literally**. At first, literal translations sound awkward. Once you build a medical vocabulary and become proficient at using it, the awkwardness will slip away. For example, suffixes will no longer be stated and will be assumed. The definition of *intravenous* then becomes *within the vein*.

Since you are at the beginning of building your medical terminology foundation, stay literal when applicable. It should be noted that, as with all language rules, there are always exceptions and we refer to those as **rebels**. So, let's begin by analyzing the language rules for medical terminology.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Identifying Word Parts in Medical Terms](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#).

Notes

1. 1. Prefix, 2. Suffix, 3. Word Root, 4. Combining Form

I.2 - Medical Language Rules

Language Review

Before we begin analyzing the rules, let's complete a short language review that will assist with pronunciation and spelling. In class, you will practice pronunciation with your instructor.

Short Vowels

a, e, i, o, u, and sometimes y are indicated by lower case.

Long Vowels

A, E, I, O, U are indicated by upper case.

Consonants

Consonants are all of the other letters in the alphabet. b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, and z.

Language Rules for Building Medical Terms

1. When combining two **combining forms**, you **keep** the **combining form vowel**.
2. When combining a **combining form** with a **suffix** that begins with a consonant, you **keep** the **combining form vowel**.

Examples

Gastr/o/enter/o/logy - The study of the stomach and the intestines

- Following **rule 1**, when we join combining form gastr/o (meaning stomach) with the combining form enter/o (meaning intestines), we keep the combining form vowel o.
- Following **rule 2**, when we join the combining form enter/o (meaning intestines) with the suffix -logy (that starts with a suffix and means the study of), we keep the combining form vowel o.

3. When combining a **combining form** with a **suffix** that begins with a vowel, you **drop** the combining form

vowel.

4. A **prefix** goes at the beginning of the word, and **no combining form vowel** is used.

Examples

Intra/ven/ous – Pertaining to within the vein

- Following **rule 3**, notice that when combining the combining form ven/o (meaning vein) with the suffix -ous (that starts with a vowel and means pertaining to), we drop the combining form vowel o.
- Following **rule 4**, the prefix intra- (meaning within) is at the beginning of the medical term with no combining form vowel used.

5. When defining a medical word, start with the suffix first and then work left to right stating the word parts. You may need to add **filler** words. As long as the **filler** word does not change the meaning of the word, you may use it for the purpose of building a medical vocabulary. Once you start to apply the word in the context of a sentence, it will be easier to decide which **filler** word(s) to choose.

Examples

Intra/ven/ous – Pertaining to within the vein or Pertaining to within a vein.

- Following **rule 5**, notice that I start with the suffix -ous (that means pertaining to), then we work left to right, starting with the prefix Intra- (meaning within) and the combining form ven/o (meaning vein).
- Notice that we have used two different definitions that mean the same thing.
- In these examples we do not have the context of a full sentence. For the purpose of building a medical terminology foundation, either definition is accepted.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Medical Language Rules](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#).

I.3 - Prefix

Prefixes are located at the beginning of a medical term. The prefix alters the meaning of the medical term. It is important to spell and pronounce prefixes correctly.

Many prefixes that you find in medical terms are common to English language prefixes. A good technique to help with memorization is the following:

- Start by reviewing the most common prefixes.
- Consider common English language words that begin with the same prefixes.
- Compare them to the examples of use in medical terms.

Prefix 'A' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
a-, an	No, not, without, negates the meaning	atypical, anoxia
ab-	away from; from	abduction
ad-	toward, at, increase, on, toward	adduction
ante-	before	anteartum
anti-	against, opposing	antipsychotic

Prefix 'B' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
bi-,bin-	two, twice, double	bilateral, binocular
brady-	slow	bradycardia

Prefix 'D' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
de-	from, down, away from	dehydrate
dia-	through, complete	dialysis
dys-	painful, abnormal, difficult, laboured	dysphagia

Prefix 'E' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
endo-	within, in	endotracheal
epi-	on, upon, over	epidermis
eu-	normal, good	eupnea

Prefix 'H' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
hemi-	half	hemicolectomy
hyper-	above, excessive	hyperthyroidism
hypo-	below, incomplete, deficient, under	hypoglycemia

Prefix 'I' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
inter-	between	intercostal
intra-	within, in	intramuscular

Prefix 'M' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
macro-	large, long	macrocephalus
meta-	after, beyond, change	metacarpal bones
micro-	small	microscope
multi-	many	multipara

Prefix 'N' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
neo-	new	neonate
nulli-	none	

Prefix 'P' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
pachy-	thick, thickening, thickened	pachyderma
pan-	all, total	pancytopenia
para-	beside, beyond, around, abnormal	parathyroid glands
per-	through	percutaneous
peri-	surrounding (outer)	peripheral vision
poly-	many, much	polymyositis
post-	after	postpartum
pre-	before	prenatal
pro-	before	prognosis

Prefix 'S' Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
sub-	below, under	subcutaneous
supra-	above	suprascapular
sym-, syn-	together, joined	symphysis

Prefix ‘T’ Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
tachy-	fast, rapid	tachycardia
trans-	through, across, beyond	transdermal
tri-	three	triceps

Prefix ‘U’ Medical Terms

Prefix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
uni-	one	unilateral

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Prefix](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#).

I.4 - Suffix

Suffixes are word parts that are located at the end of words. Suffixes can alter the meaning of medical terms. It is important to spell and pronounce suffixes correctly.

Suffixes in medical terms are common to English language suffixes. Suffixes are not always explicitly stated in the definition of a word. It is common that suffixes will not be explicitly stated when defining a medical term in the workplace. However, when transcribing or reading medical reports, the suffix is always clearly written. In order to properly spell and pronounce medical terms, it is helpful to learn the suffixes.

Suffix 'A' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-a	noun ending, no meaning	leukoderma
-ac	pertaining to	cardiac
-ad	toward	dorsad
-al	pertaining to	lateral
-algia	condition of pain	myalgia
-amnios	amnion, amniotic fluid	oligohydramnios
-apheresis	separate	plasmapheresis
-ar	pertaining to	appendicular
-ary	pertaining to	coronary
-asthenia	weakness	Myasthenia gravis

Suffix 'C' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-carcinoma	cancerous tumour	adenocarcinoma
-cele	hernia, protrusion, swelling	hydrocele
-centesis	surgical puncture to aspirate fluid	amniocentesis
-crine	to secrete	exocrine
-cyesis	pregnancy	pseudocyesis
-cyte	cell	leukocyte

Suffix 'D' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-desis	surgical fixation, fusion	arthrodesis
-drome	run, running	syndrome

Suffix 'E' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-e	noun ending, no meaning	neonate
-eal	pertaining to	esophageal
-ectasis	stretching out, dilation, expansion	bronchiectasis
-ectomy	excision, surgical removal, cut out	gastrectomy
-emesis	vomiting	hematemesis
-emia	in the blood	anemia
-sis	condition	diuresis

Suffix 'G' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-gen	substance or agent that produces or causes	teratogen
-genic	producing, originating, causing	carcinogenic
-gram	the record, radiographic image	electrocardiogram
-graph	instrument used to record; the record	electrocardiograph
-graphy	process of recording, radiographic imaging	electrocardiography

Suffix 'I' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-ia	condition of, diseased state, abnormal state	tachycardia
-iasis	condition	choledocholithiasis
-iatrist	specialist	psychiatrist
-iatry	specialty, treatment	psychiatry
-ic	pertaining to	toxic
-ictal	seizure, attack	postictal
-ior	pertaining to	anterior
-ism	state of	hyperthyroidism
-itis	inflammation	colitis

Suffix 'L' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-logist	specialist who studies and treats	oncologist
-logy	study of	cardiology
-lysis	separating, loosening, dissolution	thrombolysis

Suffix 'M' Medical terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-malacia	softening	chondromalacia
-megaly	enlarged, enlargement	gastromegaly
-meter	instrument used to measure	thermometer
-metry	measuring, process of measuring	spirometry

Suffix 'O' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-oid	resembling	lipoid
-oma	tumour, swelling	melanoma
-opia	vision	diplopia
-opsy	viewing, process of viewing	biopsy
-sis	abnormal condition, increased number (blood)	erythrocytosis
-ous	pertaining to	intravenous

Suffix 'P' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-paresis	slight paralysis	hemiparesis
-pathy	disease	polyneuropathy
-penia	abnormal reduction in number	erythrocytopenia
-pepsia	digestion	dyspepsia
-pexy	surgical fixation, suspension	colpopexy
-phagia	swallowing, eating	dysphagia
-phobia	aversion, abnormal fear	photophobia
-physis	growth	symphysis
-plasia	formation, development, growth	hyperplasia
-plasm	growth, substance, formation	cytoplasm
-plasty	surgical repair	rhinoplasty
-plegia	paralysis	ophthalmoplegia
-pnea	breathing	dyspnea
-poiesis	formation	leukopoiesis
-ptosis	prolapse, drooping	nephroptosis

Suffix 'R' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-rrhage	excessive bleeding	hemorrhage
-rrhagia	excessive bleeding,	rhinorrhagia
-rrhaphy	repairing, suturing	cholecystorrhaphy
-rrhea	discharge, flow	rhinorrhea
-rrhexis	rupture	amniorrhexis

Suffix 'S' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-salpinx	fallopian tube, uterine tube	pyosalpinx
-sarcoma	malignant tumour in connective tissue	rhabdomyosarcoma
-schisis	split, fissure	cranioschisis
-sclerosis	condition of hardening	arteriosclerosis
-scope	instrument used for visual examination	hysteroscope
-scopic	pertaining to visual examination	pelviscopic
-scopy	process of visually examining	gastroscopy
-spasm	sudden, involuntary contraction of muscle	vasospasm
-stasis	condition of stop, control, standing	hemostasis
-stenosis	constriction, condition of narrowing	ureterostenosis
-stomy	creation of artificial opening	nephrostomy

Suffix 'T' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-thorax	chest cavity, chest	hemothorax
-tocia	condition of labour, birth	dystocia
-tome	instrument used to cut	dermatome
-tomy	incision, cut into	laparotomy
-tripsy	surgical crushing	cholecystolithotripsy
-trophy	nourishment, development	hypertrophy

Suffix 'U' Medical Terms

Suffix	Meaning	Example of use in medical terms
-um	structure	endocardium
-uria	urine, urination	nocturia
-us	no meaning	microcephalus

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Suffix](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#).

CHAPTER 2: MEDICAL LANGUAGE WITHIN THE CONTEXT OF ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [2.1 – Levels of Organization](#)
- [2.2 – Anatomical Position](#)
- [2.3 – Body Cavities and Serous Membranes](#)
- [Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

2.1 - Levels of Organization

Learning Objectives

- Connect medical language learning to the context of anatomy and physiology
- Introduce the basic architecture and levels of organization of the human body
- Evaluate the anatomical position, regional terms, directional terms, body planes, and body quadrants for anatomical positioning
- Describe body cavities and the functions of associated membranes

As you memorize the language components of medical terminology, it is important to support that learning within the context of anatomy and physiology. Proceeding through the body system chapters, you will learn word parts, whole medical terms, and common abbreviations. It is important to put into context where in the body the medical term is referencing, and then consider how it works within the body.

Anatomy focuses on structure and **physiology** focuses on function. Much of the study of physiology centers on the body's tendency toward **homeostasis**.

Consider the structures of the body in terms of fundamental levels of organization that increase in complexity: subatomic particles, atoms, molecules, organelles, cells, tissues, organs, organ systems, organisms, and biosphere ([Figure 2.1](#)).

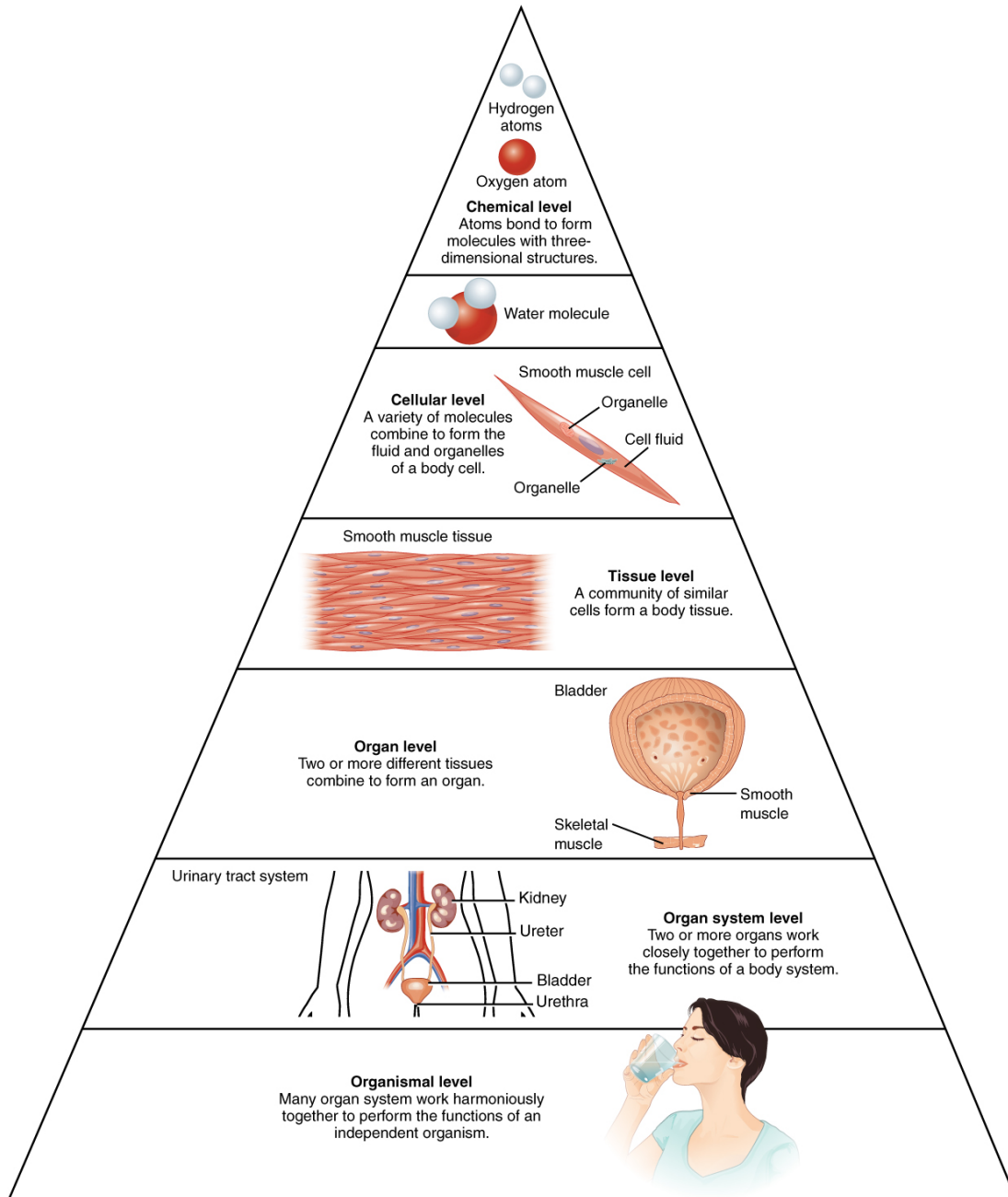


Figure 2.1 Levels of Structural Organization of the Human Body. The organization of the body often is discussed in terms of six distinct levels of increasing complexity, from the smallest chemical building blocks to a unique human organism. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 2.1 Image description.](#)]

The Levels of Organization

All matter in the universe is composed of one or more unique pure substances called **elements**; familiar examples are hydrogen, oxygen, carbon, nitrogen, calcium, and iron.

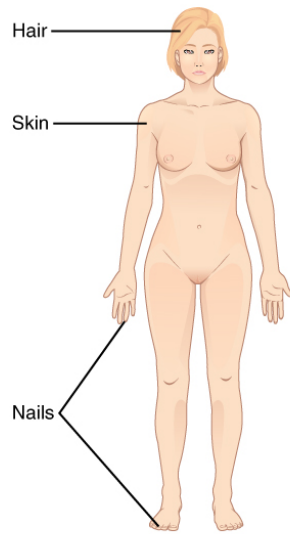
- The smallest unit of any of these pure substances (elements) is an **atom**.
 - Atoms are made up of subatomic particles such as the proton, electron, and neutron.
- Two or more atoms combine to form a **molecule**, such as the water molecules, proteins, and sugars found in living things.
 - **Molecules** are the chemical building blocks of all body structures.
- A **cell** is the smallest independently functioning unit of a living organism.
 - Even bacteria, which are extremely small, independently-living organisms, have a cellular structure. Each bacterium is a single cell. All living structures of human anatomy contain cells, and almost all functions of human physiology are performed in cells or are initiated by cells
 - A human cell typically consists of flexible membranes that enclose cytoplasm, a water-based cellular fluid, together with a variety of tiny functioning units called **organelles**. In humans, as in all organisms, cells perform all functions of life.
- A **tissue** is a group of many similar cells (though sometimes composed of a few related types) that work together to perform a specific function.
- An **organ** is an anatomically distinct structure of the body composed of two or more tissue types. Each organ performs one or more specific physiological functions.

An **organ system** is a group of organs that work together to perform major functions or meet the physiological needs of the body.

Did You Know?

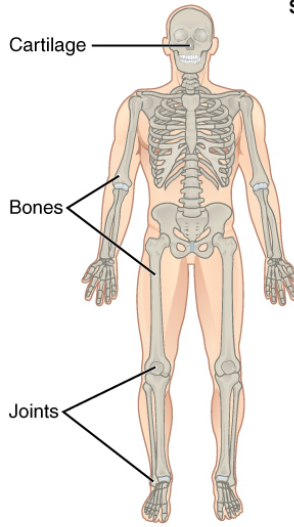
- Organs are very collaborative and work with multiple body systems.
- For example, the heart (cardiovascular system) and lungs (respiratory system) work together to deliver oxygen throughout the body and remove carbon dioxide from the body.

Consider the breakdown into eleven distinct organ systems in the human body ([Figure 2.2](#) and [Figure 2.3](#)). Assigning organs to organ systems can be imprecise, since organs that “belong” to one system can also have functions integral to another system. In fact, most organs contribute to more than one system.



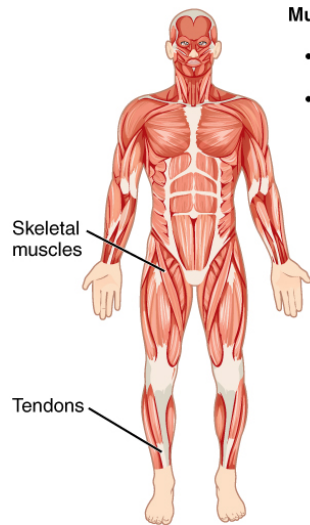
Integumentary System

- Encloses internal body structures
- Site of many sensory receptors



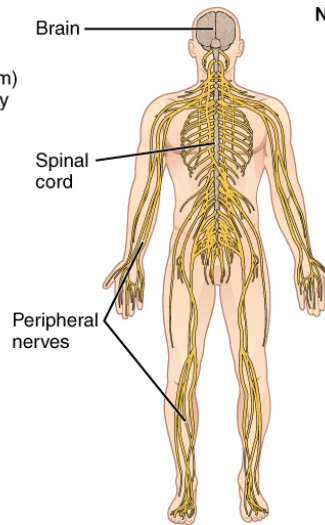
Skeletal System

- Supports the body
- Enables movement (with muscular system)



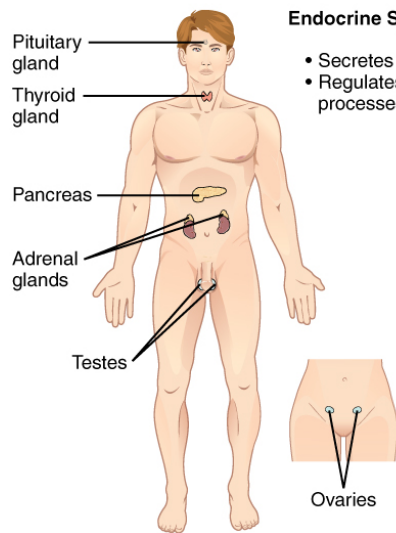
Muscular System

- Enables movement (with skeletal system)
- Helps maintain body temperature



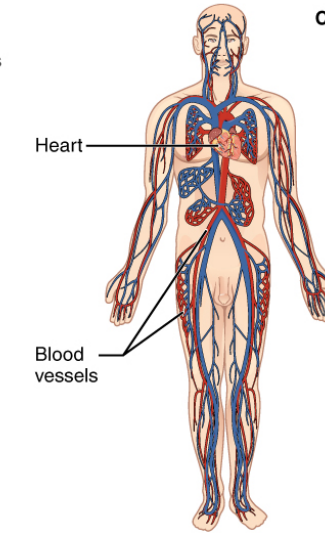
Nervous System

- Detects and processes sensory information
- Activates bodily responses



Endocrine System

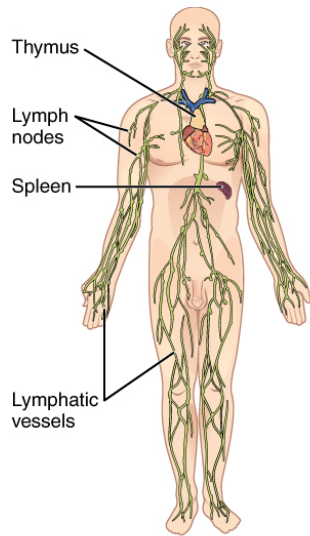
- Secretes hormones
- Regulates bodily processes



Cardiovascular System

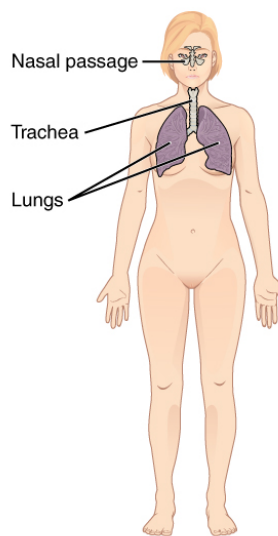
- Delivers oxygen and nutrients to tissues
- Equalizes temperature in the body

Figure 2.2. Organ Systems of the Human Body. Organs that work together are grouped into organ systems. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [\[Fig 2.2 Image description.\]](#)



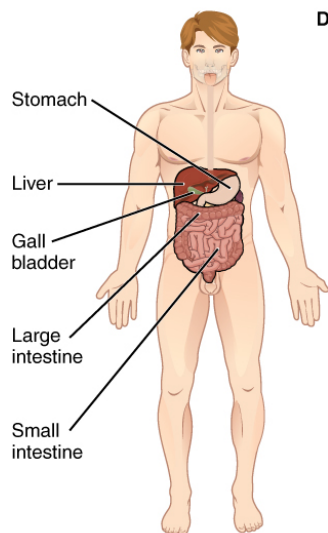
Lymphatic System

- Returns fluid to blood
- Defends against pathogens



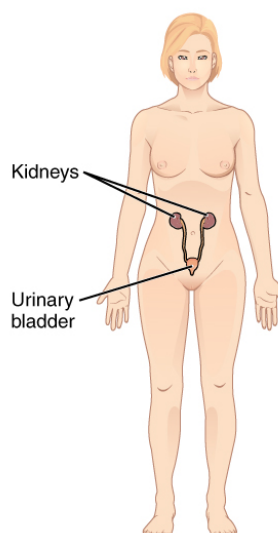
Respiratory System

- Removes carbon dioxide from the body
- Delivers oxygen to blood



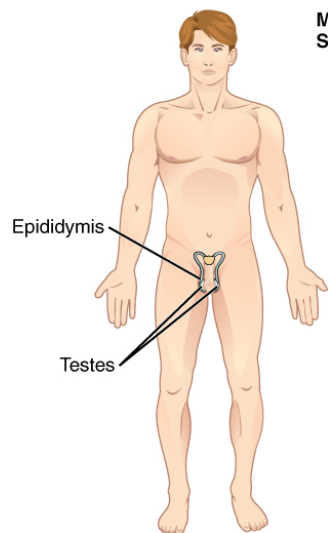
Digestive System

- Processes food for use by the body
- Removes wastes from undigested food



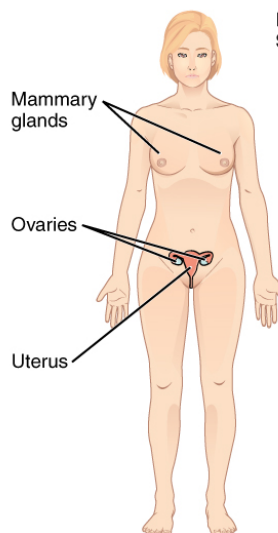
Urinary System

- Controls water balance in the body
- Removes wastes from blood and excretes them



Male Reproductive System

- Produces sex hormones and gametes
- Delivers gametes to female



Female Reproductive System

- Produces sex hormones and gametes
- Supports embryo/fetus until birth
- Produces milk for infant

Figure 2.3. Organ Systems of the Human Body (continued). Organs that work together are grouped into

The **organism** level is the highest level of organization. An organism is a living being that has a cellular structure and that can independently perform all physiologic functions necessary for life. In multicellular organisms, including humans, all cells, tissues, organs, and organ systems of the body work together to maintain the life and health of the organism.

Image Descriptions

Figure 2.1 image description: This illustration shows biological organization as a pyramid. The chemical level is at the apex of the pyramid where atoms bond to form molecules with three dimensional structures. An example is shown with two white hydrogen atoms bonding to a red oxygen atom to create water. The next level down on the pyramid is the cellular level, as illustrated with a long, tapered, smooth muscle cell. At this level, a variety of molecules combine to form the interior fluid and organelles of a body cell. The next level down is the tissue level. A community of similar cells forms body tissue. The example given here is a section of smooth muscle tissue, which contains many smooth muscle cells closely bound side by side. The next level down is the organ level, as illustrated with the bladder and urethra. The bladder contains smooth muscle while the urethra contains skeletal muscle. These are both examples of muscle tissues. The next level down is the organ system level, as illustrated by the entire urinary system containing the kidney, ureters, bladder and urethra. At this level, two or more organs work closely together to perform the functions of a body system. At the base of the pyramid is the organismal level illustrated with a woman drinking water. At this level, many organ systems work harmoniously together to perform the functions of an independent organism. [[Return to Figure 2.1](#)].

Figure 2.2 image description: This illustration shows eight silhouettes of a human female, each showing the components of a different organ system. The integumentary system encloses internal body structures and is the site of many sensory receptors. The integumentary system includes the hair, skin, and nails. The skeletal system supports the body and, along with the muscular system, enables movement. The skeletal system includes cartilage, such as that at the tip of the nose, as well as the bones and joints. The muscular system enables movement, along with the skeletal system, but also helps to maintain body temperature. The muscular system includes skeletal muscles, as well as tendons that connect skeletal muscles to bones. The nervous system detects and processes sensory information and activates bodily responses. The nervous system includes the brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nerves, such as those located in the limbs. The endocrine system secretes hormones and regulates bodily processes. The endocrine system includes the pituitary gland in the brain, the thyroid gland in the throat, the pancreas in the abdomen, the adrenal glands on top of the kidneys, and the testes in the scrotum of males as well as the ovaries in the pelvic region of females. The cardiovascular system delivers oxygen and nutrients to the tissues as well as equalizes temperature in the body. The cardiovascular system includes the heart and blood vessels. [[Return to Figure 2.2](#)].

Figure 2.3 image description: The lymphatic system returns fluid to the blood and defends against pathogens. The lymphatic system includes the thymus in the chest, the spleen in the abdomen, the lymphatic vessels that spread throughout the body, and the lymph nodes distributed along the lymphatic vessels. The respiratory system removes carbon dioxide from the body and delivers oxygen to the blood. The respiratory system includes the nasal passages, the trachea, and the lungs. The digestive system processes food for use by the body and

removes wastes from undigested food. The digestive system includes the stomach, the liver, the gall bladder (connected to the liver), the large intestine, and the small intestine. The urinary system controls water balance in the body and removes and excretes waste from the blood. The urinary system includes the kidneys and the urinary bladder. The reproductive system of males and females produce sex hormones and gametes. The male reproductive system is specialized to deliver gametes to the female while the female reproductive system is specialized to support the embryo and fetus until birth and produce milk for the infant after birth. The male reproductive system includes the two testes within the scrotum as well as the epididymis which wraps around each testis. The female reproductive system includes the mammary glands within the breasts and the ovaries and uterus within the pelvic cavity. [\[Return to Figure 2.3\]](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Medical Language: Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology chapter content into sub-chapters.

2.2 - Anatomical Position

Watch [Introduction to Anatomy & Physiology: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #1 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Anatomical Position

Anatomists and health care providers use terminology for the purpose of precision and to reduce medical errors. For example, is a scar “above the wrist” located on the forearm two or three inches away from the hand? Or is it at the base of the hand? Is it on the palm-side or back-side? By using precise anatomical terminology, we eliminate ambiguity. Anatomical terms derive from ancient Greek and Latin words.

To further increase precision, anatomists standardize the way in which they view the body. Just as maps are normally oriented with north at the top, the standard body “map,” or **anatomical position**, is that of the body standing upright, with the feet at shoulder width and parallel, toes forward. The upper limbs are held out to each side, and the palms of the hands face forward as illustrated.

Using this standard position reduces confusion. It does not matter how the body being described is oriented, the terms are used as if it is in anatomical position. For example, a scar in the “anterior (front) carpal (wrist) region” would be present on the palm side of the wrist. The term “anterior” would be used even if the hand were palm down on a table.

Did You Know?

Terminology is used for the purpose of precision and reduction of medical error.

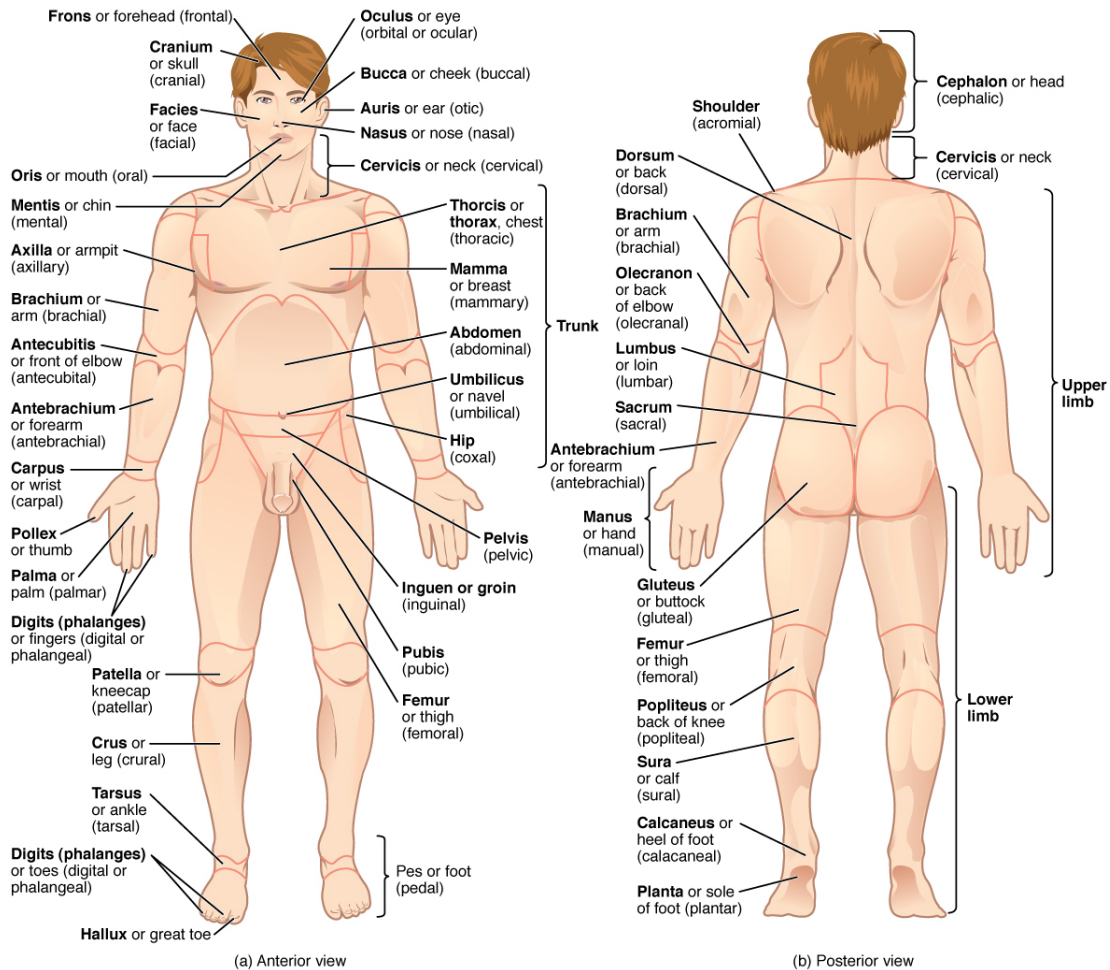


Figure 2.4. Regions of the Human Body. The human body is shown in anatomical position in an (a) anterior view and a (b) posterior view. The regions of the body are labeled in boldface. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0. [Fig. 2.4 Image description.]

A body that is lying down is described as either **prone** or **supine**. These terms are sometimes used in describing the position of the body during specific physical examinations or surgical procedures.

Regional Terms

The human body's numerous regions have specific terms to help increase precision. Notice that the term "brachium" or "arm" is reserved for the "upper arm" and "antebrachium" or "forearm" is used rather than "lower arm." Similarly, "femur" or "thigh" is correct, and "leg" or "crus" is reserved for the portion of the lower limb between the knee and the ankle. You will be able to describe the body's regions using the terms from the anatomical position.

Directional Terms

Directional terms are essential for describing the relative locations of different body structures. For instance, an anatomist might describe one band of tissue as “inferior to” another or a physician might describe a tumor as “superficial to” a deeper body structure. Commit these terms to memory to avoid confusion when you are studying or describing the locations of particular body parts.

- **Anterior** (or **ventral**) describes pertaining to the front or direction toward the front of the body. The toes are anterior to the foot.
- **Posterior** (or **dorsal**) describes pertaining to the back or direction toward the back of the body. The popliteus is posterior to the patella.
- **Superior** (or **cranial**) describes pertaining to the position above or higher than another part of the body proper. The orbits are superior to the oris.
- **Inferior** (or **caudal**) describes a position pertaining to below or lower than another part of the body proper; near or toward the tail (in humans, the coccyx, or lowest part of the spinal column). The pelvis is inferior to the abdomen.
- **Lateral** describes the side or direction pertaining to toward the side of the body. The thumb (pollex) is lateral to the digits.
- **Medial** describes the middle or direction pertaining to toward the middle of the body. The hallux is the medial toe.
- **Proximal** describes a position pertaining to a limb that is nearer to the point of attachment or the trunk of the body. The brachium is proximal to the antebrachium.
- **Distal** describes a position pertaining to a limb that is farther from the point of attachment or the trunk of the body. The crus is distal to the femur.
- **Superficial** describes a position pertaining to closer to the surface of the body. The skin is superficial to the bones.
- **Deep** describes a position farther from the surface of the body. The brain is deep to the skull.

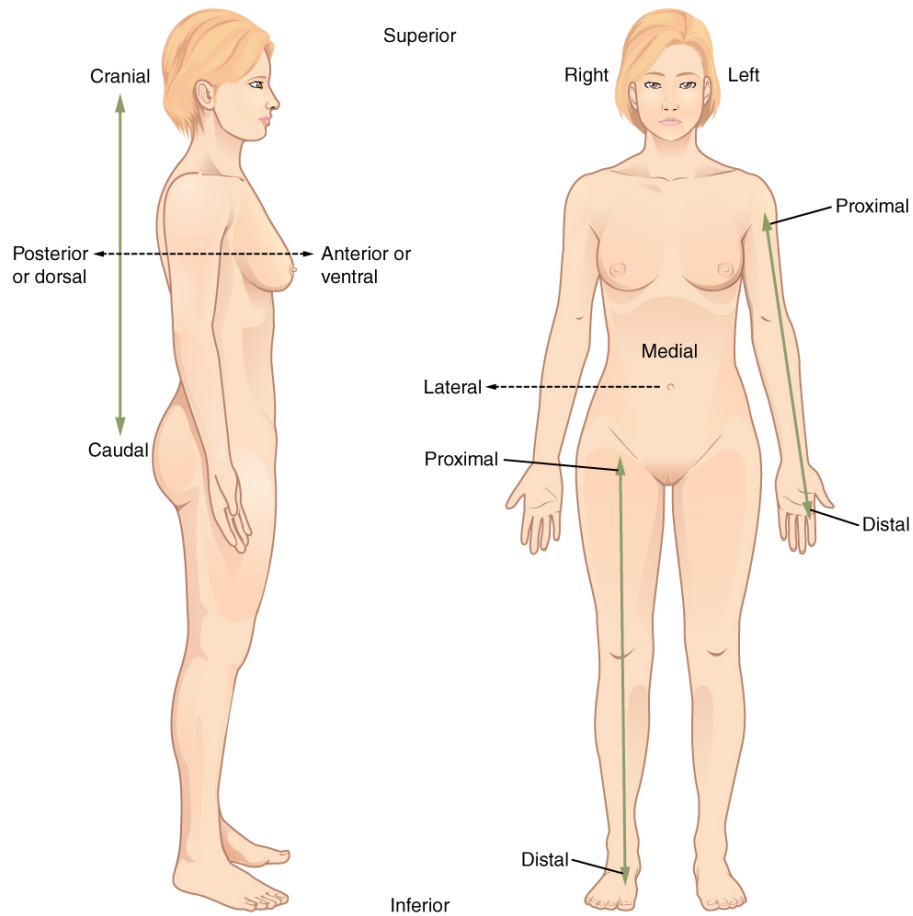


Figure 2.5. Directional Terms Applied to the Human Body. Paired directional terms are shown as applied to the human body. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 2.5 Image description.]

Medical Language within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Directional Terms

Practice these directional terms.

Medical Language with the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Directional Terms (Text version)

1. Cranial Cavity

- KRĀ-nē-āl kah-vi-tē

- The space formed inside the skull that the brain occupies.
2. **Homeostasis**
 - HŌ-mē-ō-STĀ-sis
 - Biological process that results in stable equilibrium
 3. **Posterior (or Dorsal)**
 - pŏs-TĒ-rē-or(Original Term)
 - Describes the back or direction toward the back of the body.
 4. **Anterior (or Ventral)**
 - an-TĒR-ē-ŏr (Original Term)
 - Describes the front or direction toward the front of the body.
 5. **Deep**
 - DĒP (Original Term)
 - Describes a position farther from the surface of the body.
 6. **Distal**
 - DIS-tāl (Original Term)
 - Describes a position in a limb that is farther from the point of attachment or the trunk of the body.
 7. **Inferior (or Caudal)**
 - in-FĒR-ē-ŏr (Original Term)
 - Describes a position below or lower than another part of the body proper; near or toward the tail.
 8. **Lateral**
 - LĀT-ēr- āl (Original Term)
 - Describes the side or direction toward the side of the body.
 9. **Medial**
 - MĒD-ē-āl (Original Term)
 - Describes the side or direction toward the side of the body.
 10. **Peritoneum**
 - (per-it-ŏ-NĒ-ŭm)
 - Serous membrane surrounding several organs in the abdominopelvic cavity. This reduces friction between the abdominal and pelvic organs and the body wall.
 11. **Proximal**

- PROK-sĭ-măĭ (Original Term)
- Describes a position in a limb that is nearer to the point of attachment or the trunk of the body.

12. **Superficial**

- SOO-pĕr-FISH-ăĭ (Original Term)
- Describes a position in a limb that is nearer to the point of attachment or the trunk of the body.

13. **Superior (or Cranial)**

- soo-PĒ-rĕ-or(Original Term)
- Describes a position above or higher than another part of the body proper.

Activity Source: Medical Language with the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Directional Terms from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Re-recording of some H5P audio by Tania Deane and David McCuaig and text version added.

Concept Check

- Find a partner and take turns choosing two body parts on your or your partner's body.
- Using directional terms, describe the location of those body parts relative to one another.

Image Descriptions

Figure 2.4 image description: This illustration shows an anterior and posterior view of the human body. The cranial region encompasses the upper part of the head while the facial region encompasses the lower half of the head beginning below the ears. The eyes are referred to as the ocular region. The cheeks are referred to as the buccal region. The ears are referred to as the auricle or otic region. The nose is referred to as the nasal region. The chin is referred to as the mental region. The neck is referred to as the cervical region. The trunk of the body contains, from superior to inferior, the thoracic region encompassing the chest, the mammary region encompassing each breast, the abdominal region encompassing the stomach area, the coxal region encompassing the belt line, and the pubic region encompassing the area above the genitals. The umbilicus, or

naval, is located at the center of the abdomen. The pelvis and legs contain, from superior to inferior, the inguinal or groin region between the legs and the genitals, the pubic region surrounding the genitals, the femoral region encompassing the thighs, the patellar region encompassing the knee, the crural region encompassing the lower leg, the tarsal region encompassing the ankle, the pedal region encompassing the foot and the digital/phalangeal region encompassing the toes. The great toe is referred to as the hallux. The regions of the upper limbs, from superior to inferior, are the axillary region encompassing the armpit, the brachial region encompassing the upper arm, the antecubital region encompassing the front of the elbow, the antebrachial region encompassing the forearm, the carpal region encompassing the wrist, the palmar region encompassing the palm, and the digital/phalangeal region encompassing the fingers. The thumb is referred to as the pollux. The posterior view contains, from superior to inferior, the cervical region encompassing the neck, the dorsal region encompassing the upper back and the lumbar region encompassing the lower back. The regions of the back of the arms, from superior to inferior, include the cervical region encompassing the neck, acromial region encompassing the shoulder, the brachial region encompassing the upper arm, the olecranal region encompassing the back of the elbow, the antebrachial region encompasses the back of the arm, and the manual region encompassing the palm of the hand. The posterior regions of the legs, from superior to inferior, include the gluteal region encompassing the buttocks, the femoral region encompassing the thigh, the popliteus region encompassing the back of the knee, the sural region encompassing the back of the lower leg, and the plantar region encompassing the sole of the foot. Some regions are combined into larger regions. These include the trunk, which is a combination of the thoracic, mammary, abdominal, naval, and coxal regions. The cephalic region is a combination of all of the head regions. The upper limb region is a combination of all of the arm regions. The lower limb region is a combination of all of the leg regions. [\[Return to Figure 2.4\].](#)

Figure 2.5 image description: This illustration shows two diagrams: one of a side view of a female and the other of an anterior view of a female. Each diagram shows directional terms using double-sided arrows. The cranial-distal arrow runs vertically behind the torso and lower abdomen. The cranial arrow is pointing toward the head while the caudal arrow is pointing toward the tail bone. The posterior/anterior arrow is running horizontally through the back and chest. The posterior or dorsal arrow is pointing toward the back while the anterior, or ventral arrow, is pointing toward the abdomen. On the anterior view, the proximal/distal arrow is on the right arm. The proximal arrow is pointing up toward the shoulder while the distal arrow is pointing down toward the hand. The lateral-medial arrow is a horizontal arrow on the abdomen. The medial arrow is pointing toward the navel while the lateral arrow is pointing away from the body to the right. Right refers to the right side of the woman's body from her perspective while left refers to the left side of the woman's body from her perspective. [\[Return to Figure 2.5\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology chapter content into sub-chapters.

2.3 - Body Cavities and Serous Membranes

Body Planes

A section is a two-dimensional surface of a three-dimensional structure that has been cut. Modern medical imaging devices enable clinicians to obtain “virtual sections” of living bodies. We call these scans. Body sections and scans can be correctly interpreted, however, only if the viewer understands the plane along which the section was made. A plane is an imaginary two-dimensional surface that passes through the body. There are three planes commonly referred to in anatomy and medicine:

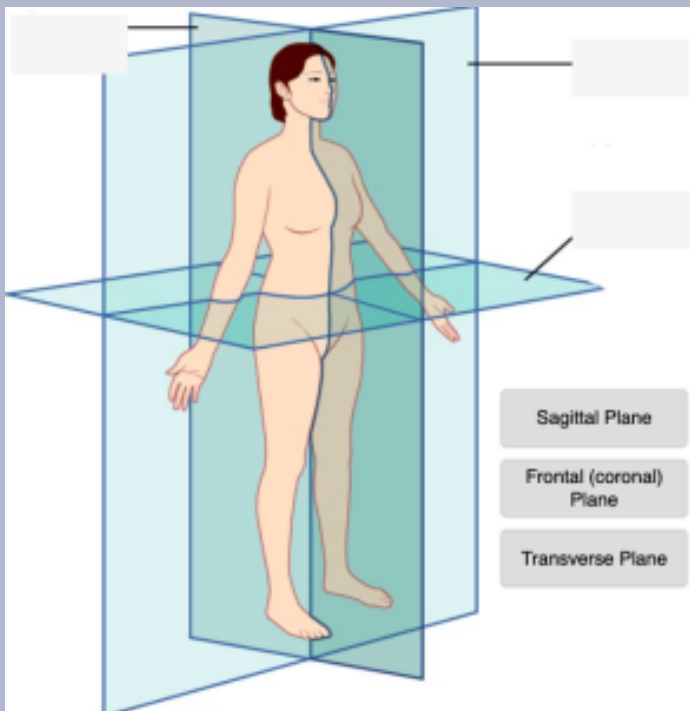
- The **sagittal plane** is the plane that divides the body or an organ vertically into right and left sides. If this vertical plane runs directly down the middle of the body, it is called the midsagittal or median plane. If it divides the body into unequal right and left sides, it is called a parasagittal plane or, less commonly, a longitudinal section.
- The **frontal plane** is the plane that divides the body or an organ into an anterior (front) portion and a posterior (rear) portion. The frontal plane is often referred to as a coronal plane (“corona” is Latin for “crown”).
- The **transverse plane** is the plane that divides the body or organ horizontally into upper and lower portions. Transverse planes produce images referred to as cross sections.

Can You Locate the Planes?

Body Planes (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

1. Sagittal Plane
2. Frontal (coronal) Plane
3. Transverse Plane



Body Planes Diagram (Text Version)

This illustration activity shows the human body standing upright in the anatomical position. Three anatomical planes are illustrated with transparent lines identifying the location of the three planes: the _____[Blank 1] which divides the left and right side of the body, the _____[Blank 2] dividing front and back portions of the body, and the _____[Blank 3] dividing top and bottom portion of the body.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Medical language with the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Body by Tiffany Hunt, illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#) licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./ Text version added.

Body Cavities and Serous Membranes

The body maintains its internal organization by means of membranes, sheaths, and other structures that separate compartments. The **dorsal (posterior) cavity** and the **ventral (anterior) cavity** are the largest body compartments ([Figure 2.6](#)). These cavities contain and protect delicate internal organs, and the ventral cavity allows for significant changes in the size and shape of the organs as they perform their functions. The lungs, heart, stomach, and intestines, for example, can expand and contract without distorting other tissues or disrupting the activity of nearby organs.

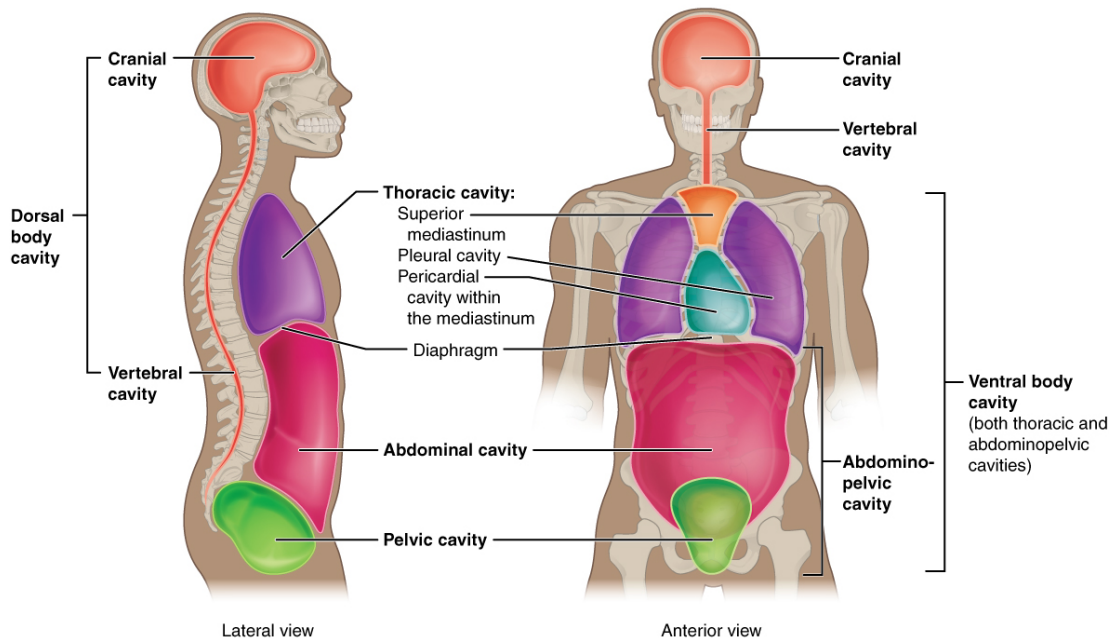


Figure 2.6. Dorsal and Ventral Body Cavities. The ventral cavity includes the thoracic and abdominopelvic cavities and their subdivisions. The dorsal cavity includes the cranial and spinal cavities. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 2.6 Image description.](#)]

Subdivisions of the Posterior (Dorsal) and Anterior (Ventral) Cavities

The posterior (dorsal) and anterior (ventral) cavities are each subdivided into smaller cavities.

The posterior (dorsal) cavity has two main subdivisions:

- In the posterior (dorsal) cavity, the cranial cavity houses the brain.
 - Protected by the bones of the skulls and **cerebrospinal** fluid.
- The spinal cavity (or vertebral cavity) encloses the spinal cord.
 - Protected by the vertebral column and **cerebrospinal** fluid.

The anterior (ventral) cavity has two main subdivisions:

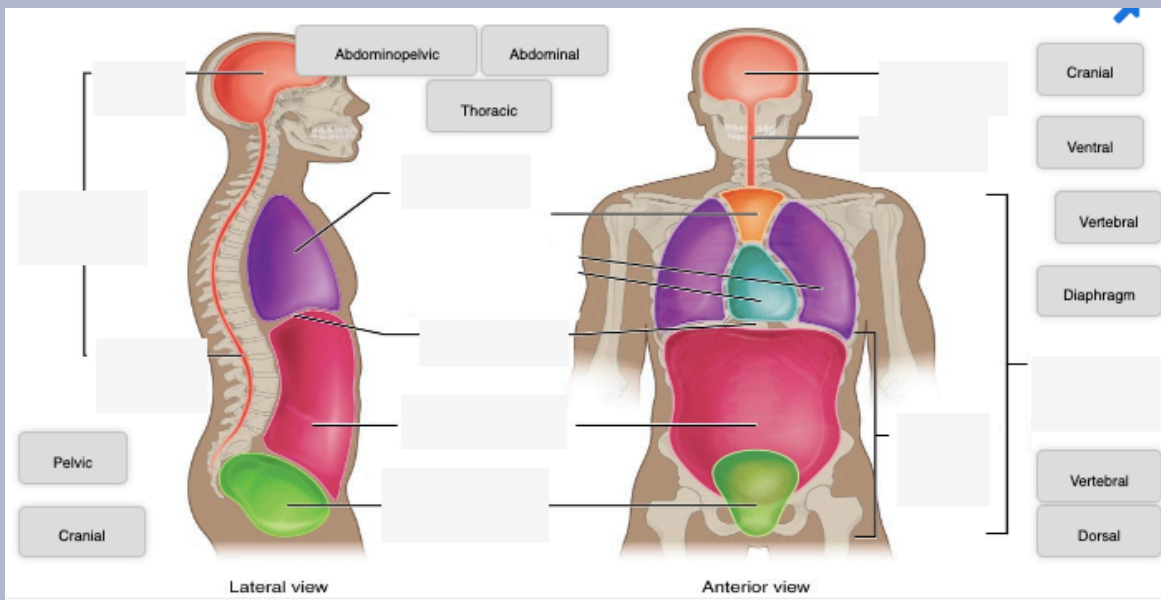
- The **thoracic cavity** is the more superior subdivision of the anterior cavity, and it is enclosed by the rib cage.
 - The thoracic cavity contains the lungs and the heart, which is located in the mediastinum.
 - The diaphragm forms the floor of the thoracic cavity and separates it from the more inferior abdominopelvic cavity.
- The **abdominopelvic cavity** is the largest cavity in the body.
 - No membrane physically divides the abdominopelvic cavity.
 - The abdominal cavity houses the digestive organs, the pelvic cavity, and the reproductive organs.

Practice Locating Cavities

Body Cavities (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. Abdominopelvic | 5. Cranial | 9. Dorsal |
| 2. Abdominal | 6. Ventral | 10. Cranial |
| 3. Thoracic | 7. Vertebral | 11. Vertebral |
| 4. Pelvic | 8. Diaphragm | |



Body Cavities Diagram (Text Version)

This diagram activity shows two views of the human head and torso. The right image shows the lateral view, and the left image shows an anterior view of the human head and torso. The image is highlighting the several cavities or hollowed out spaces where organs and structures are positioned. The lateral view show four cavities: the head cavity known as the _____[Blank 1], the upper back cavity known as the _____[Blank 2], the lower back area known as the _____[Blank 3], and the chest cavity known as the _____[Blank 4] cavity. Adjoining lines for both views identify the _____[Blank 5] which is a muscular partition dividing the lungs from the location below it known as the _____[Blank 6] and followed by the lower _____[Blank 7]. The anterior view identifies the _____[Blank 8], _____[Blank 9], _____[Blank 10], _____[Blank 11] cavities, and sections.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Medical language with the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Dorsal by Tiffany Hunt, illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#) licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Text version added.

Abdominal Regions and Quadrants

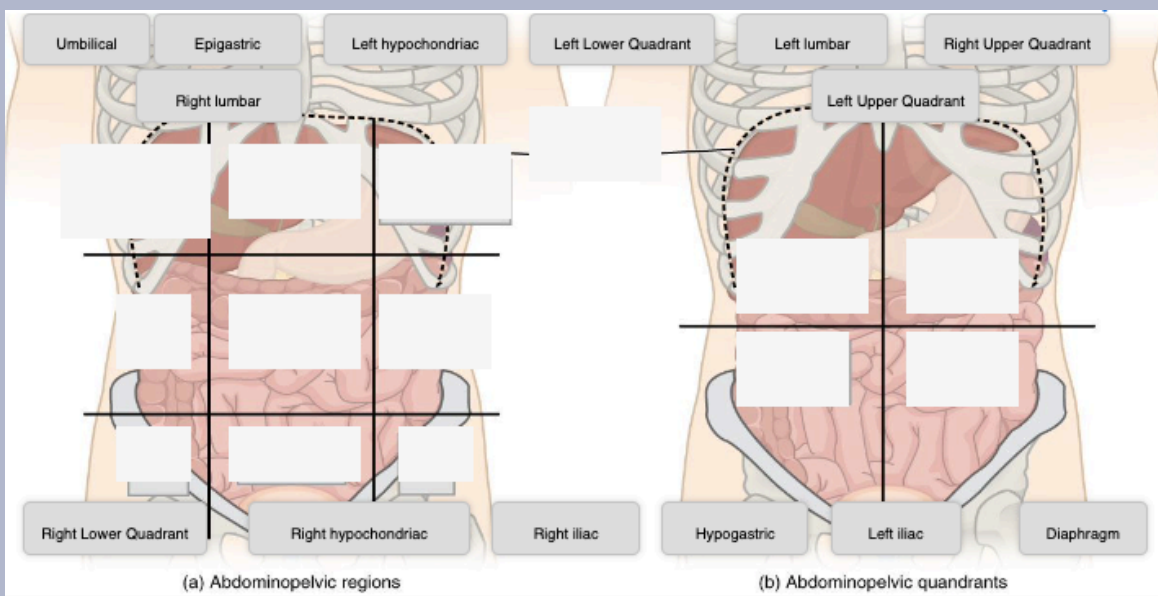
To promote clear communication, for instance about the location of a patient's abdominal pain or a suspicious mass, health care providers typically divide up the cavity into either nine regions or four quadrants.

Practice Locating the Quadrants

Locating the quadrants (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Umbilical | 6. Right Hypochondriac | 11. Left Upper Quadrant |
| 2. Epigastric | 7. Right Iliac | 12. Hypogastric |
| 3. Left Hypochondriac | 8. Left Lower Quadrant | 13. Left Iliac |
| 4. Right Lumbar | 9. Left Lumbar | 14. Diaphragm |
| 5. Right Lower Quadrant | 10. Right Upper Quadrant | |



Locating the quadrants Diagram (Text version)

This diagram activity shows two views of the abdominopelvic region. Image A shows the abdominopelvic region divided in nine sections with nine boxes. Image B shows the abdominopelvic region divided in four sections known as quadrants with a line dividing the four sections for each quadrant. For image A at the top are three white boxes identified working from right to left labeled as _____[Blank 1], followed by _____[Blank 2], and _____[Blank 3] region. The middle three boxes working from right to left identified as _____[Blank 4], followed by the _____[Blank 5], and _____[Blank 6] region. The three lower boxes working from right to left is the _____[Blank 7], followed by _____[Blank 8], and _____[Blank 9] region. Image B

shows two upper white boxes and are from right to left is the _____[Blank 10] followed by the _____[Blank 11]. The two lower boxes from right to left is the _____[Blank 12] followed by _____[Blank 13].

Check your answers: ³

Activity source: Medical language with the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Dorsal by Tiffany Hunt, illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#) licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Text version added.

Tissue Membranes

A **tissue membrane** is a thin layer or sheet of cells that covers the outside of the body (for example, skin), the organs (for example, pericardium), internal passageways that lead to the exterior of the body (for example, abdominal mesenteries), and the lining of the movable joint cavities. There are two basic types of tissue membranes: connective tissue and epithelial membranes ([Figure 2.7](#)).

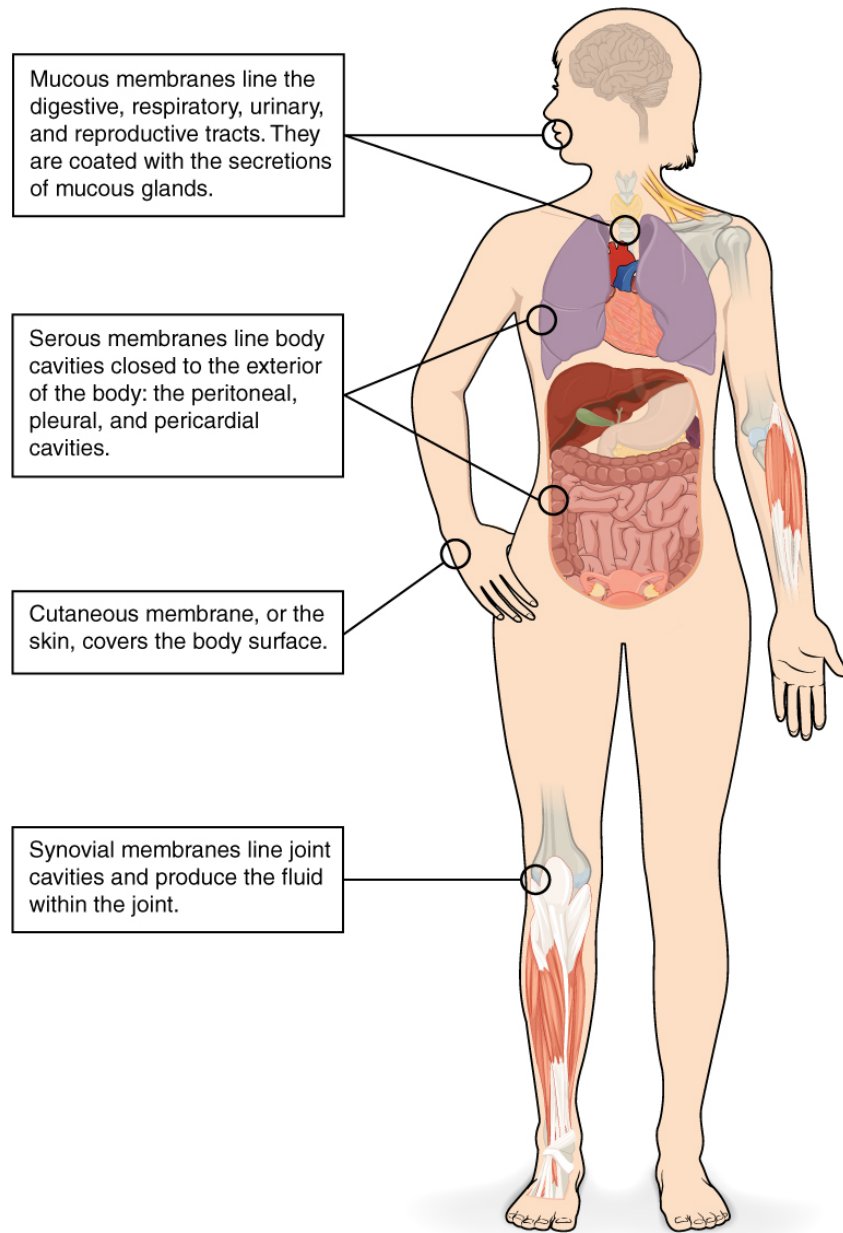


Figure 2.7. Tissue Membranes. The two broad categories of tissue membranes in the body are (1) connective tissue membranes, which include synovial membranes, and (2) epithelial membranes, which include mucous membranes, serous membranes, and the cutaneous membrane, in other words, the skin. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 2.7 Image description.](#)]

Did You Know?

Synovial membranes line cavities which hold synovial fluid.

Synovial fluid lubricates the joints for movement.

Connective Tissue Membranes

- The **connective tissue membrane** is formed solely from connective tissue.
- These membranes encapsulate organs, such as the kidneys, and line our movable joints.
- A **synovial membrane** is a type of connective tissue membrane that lines the cavity of a freely movable joint.
- For example, synovial membranes surround the joints of the shoulder, elbow, and knee.

Epithelial Membranes

- The **epithelial membrane** is composed of epithelium attached to a layer of connective tissue.
 - For example, your skin.
- The **mucous membrane** is also a composite of connective and epithelial tissues.
 - Sometimes called mucosae, these epithelial membranes line the body cavities and hollow passageways that open to the external environment, and include the digestive, respiratory, excretory, and reproductive tracts.
 - Mucus, produced by the epithelial exocrine glands, covers the epithelial layer.
 - The underlying connective tissue, called the **lamina propria** (literally “own layer”), help support the fragile epithelial layer.
- The skin is an epithelial membrane also called the **cutaneous membrane**.
 - It is a stratified squamous epithelial membrane resting on top of connective tissue. The apical surface of this membrane is exposed to the external environment and is covered with dead, keratinized cells that help protect the body from desiccation and pathogens.

Membranes of the Anterior (Ventral) Body Cavity

- A **serous membrane** (also referred to as serosa) is an epithelial membrane composed of mesodermally derived epithelium called the mesothelium that is supported by connective tissue. These membranes line the **coelomic** cavities of the body and they cover the organs located within those cavities. They are essentially membranous bags, with mesothelium lining the inside and connective tissue on the outside.
 - **Parietal layers:** line the walls of the body cavity.
 - **Visceral layer:** covers the organs (the viscera).
 - Between the parietal and visceral layers is a very thin, fluid-filled **serous space**.

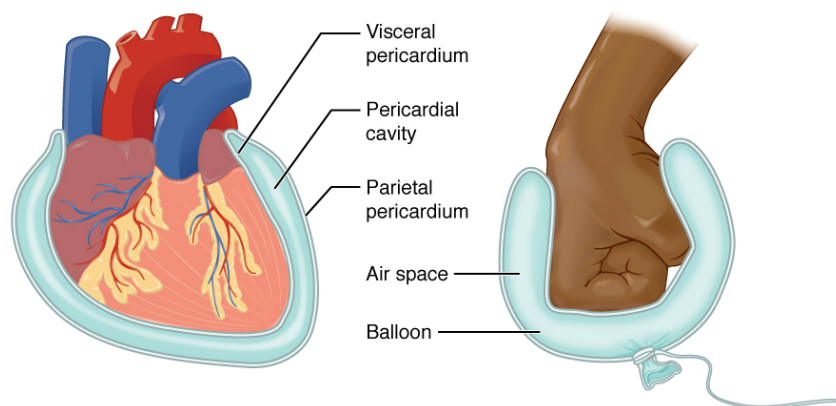


Figure 2.8. Serous Membrane. Serous membrane lines the pericardial cavity and reflects back to cover the heart—much the same way that an underinflated balloon would form two layers surrounding a fist. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 2.8 Image description.](#)]

There are three serous cavities and their associated membranes. Serous membranes provide additional protection to the viscera they enclose by reducing friction that could lead to inflammation of the organs.

- **Pleura:** surrounds the lungs in the pleural cavity and reduces friction between the lungs and the body wall.
- **Pericardium:** surrounds the heart in the pericardial cavity and reduces friction between the heart and the wall of the pericardium.
- **Peritoneum:** surrounds several organs in the abdominopelvic cavity. The peritoneal cavity reduces friction between the abdominal and pelvic organs and the body wall.

Image Descriptions

Figure 2.6 image description: This illustration shows a lateral and anterior view of the body and highlights the body cavities with different colors. The cranial cavity is a large, bean-shaped cavity filling most of the upper skull where the brain is located. The vertebral cavity is a very narrow, thread-like cavity running from the cranial cavity down the entire length of the spinal cord. Together the cranial cavity and vertebral cavity can be referred to as the dorsal body cavity. The thoracic cavity consists of three cavities that fill the interior area of the chest.

The two pleural cavities are situated on both sides of the body, anterior to the spine and lateral to the breastbone. The superior mediastinum is a wedge-shaped cavity located between the superior regions of the two thoracic cavities. The pericardial cavity within the mediastinum is located at the center of the chest below the superior mediastinum. The pericardial cavity roughly outlines the shape of the heart. The diaphragm divides the thoracic and the abdominal cavities. The abdominal cavity occupies the entire lower half of the trunk, anterior to the spine. Just under the abdominal cavity, anterior to the buttocks, is the pelvic cavity. The pelvic cavity is funnel shaped and is located inferior and anterior to the abdominal cavity. Together the abdominal and pelvic cavity can be referred to as the abdominopelvic cavity while the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic cavities together can be referred to as the ventral body cavity. [\[Return to Figure 2.6\].](#)

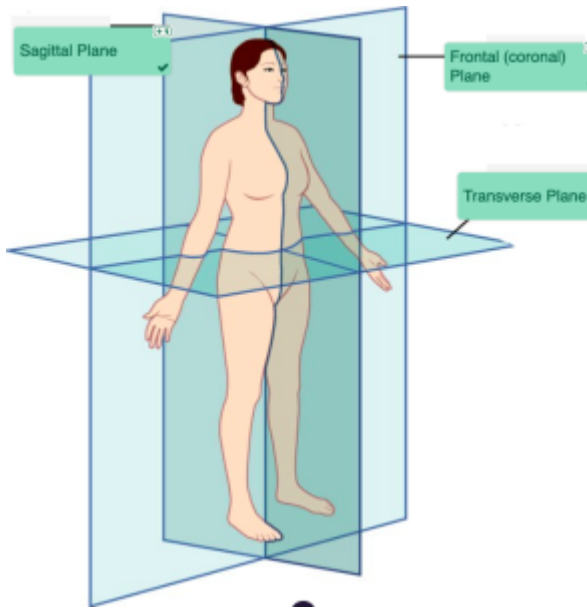
Figure 2.7 image description: This illustration shows the silhouette of a human female from an anterior view. Several organs are shown in her neck, thorax, abdomen, left arm, and right leg. Text boxes point out and describe the mucous membranes in several different organs. The topmost box points to the mouth and trachea. It states that mucous membranes line the digestive, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts. They are coated with the secretions of mucous glands. The second box points to the outside edge of the lungs as well as the large intestine and states that serous membranes line body cavities that are closed to the exterior of the body, including the peritoneal, pleural, and pericardial cavities. The third box points to the skin of the hand. It states that cutaneous membrane, also known as the skin, covers the body surface. The fourth box points to the right knee. It states that synovial membranes line joint cavities and produce the fluid within the joint. [\[Return to Figure 2.7\]](#)

Figure 2.8 image description: This diagram shows the pericardium on the left next to an analogy of a hand punching a balloon on the right. The pericardium is a two-layered sac that surrounds the entire heart except where the blood vessels emerge on the heart's superior side. The pericardium has two layers because it folds over itself in the shape of the letter U. The inner layer that borders the heart is the visceral pericardium while the outer layer is the parietal pericardium. The space between the two layers is called the pericardial cavity. The heart sits in the cavity much like a fist punching into a balloon. The balloon surrounds the lower part of the fist with a two-layered sac, with the top of the balloon, where it contacts the fist, being analogous to the visceral pericardium. The bottom of the balloon, where it is tied off, is analogous to the parietal pericardium. The air within the balloon is analogous to the pericardial cavity. [\[Return to Figure 2.8\].](#)

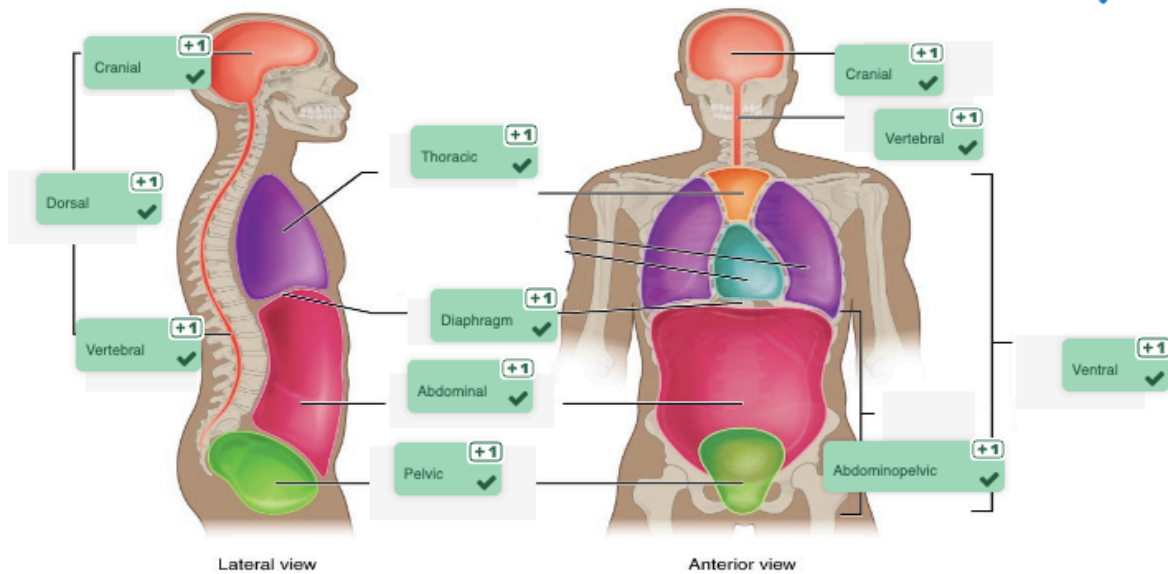
Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology chapter content into sub-chapters.

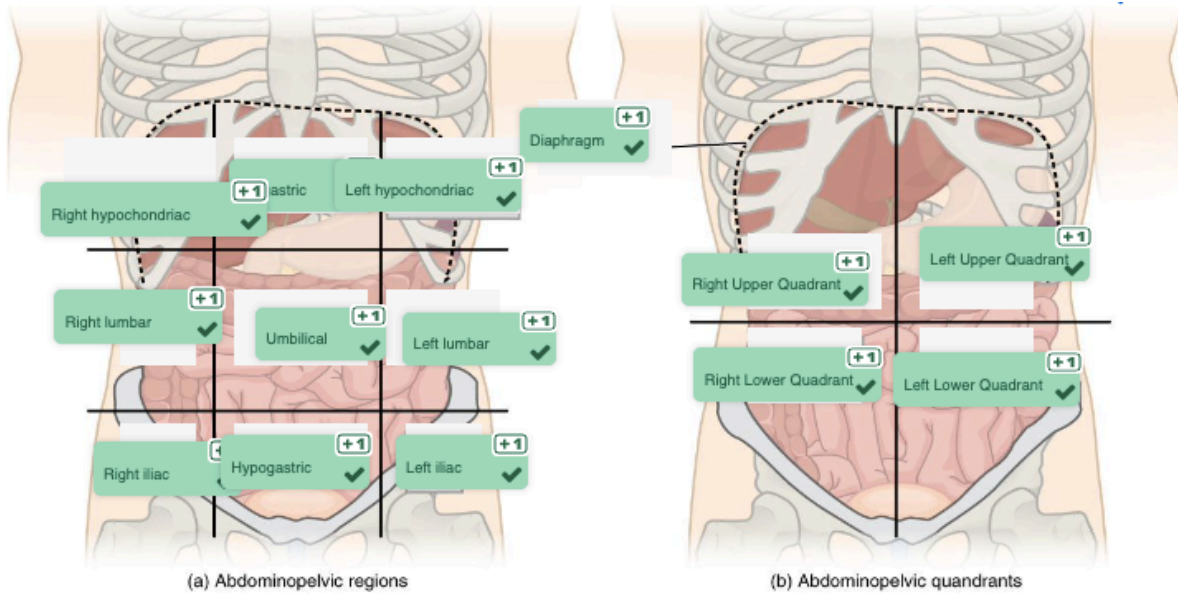
Notes



1. **Check your answers: Body Planes Diagram** This illustration activity shows the human body standing upright in the anatomical position. Three anatomical planes are illustrated with transparent lines identifying the location of the three planes: the **sagittal plane** which divides the left and right side of the body, the **frontal plane** dividing front and back portions of the body, and the **transverse plane** dividing top and bottom portion of the body.



2. **Check your answers: Body Cavities Diagram (Text Version)** This diagram activity shows two views of the human head and torso. The right image shows the lateral view, and the left image shows an anterior view of the human head and torso. The image is highlighting the several cavities or hollowed out spaces where organs and structures are positioned. The lateral view show four cavities: the head cavity known as the **cranial**, the upper back cavity known as the **dorsal**, the lower back area known as the **vertebral**, and the chest cavity known as the **thoracic** cavity. Adjoining lines for both views identify the **diaphragm** which is a muscular partition dividing the lungs from the location below it known as the **abdominal cavity** and followed by the lower **pelvic cavity**. The anterior view identifies the **cranial**, **vertebral**, **ventral**, **abdominopelvic** cavities, and sections.



3.

Check your answers: Locating the quadrants Diagrams (Text Version) This diagram activity shows two views of the abdominopelvic region. Image A shows the abdominopelvic region divided in nine sections with nine boxes. Image B shows the abdominopelvic region divided in four sections known as quadrants with a line dividing the four sections for each quadrant. For image A at the top are three white boxes identified working from right to left labeled as **right hypochondriac**, followed by **epigastric**, and **left hypochondriac** region. The middle three boxes working from right to left identified as **right lumbar**, followed by the **umbilical**, and **left lumbar** region. The three lower boxes working from right to left is the **right iliac**, followed by **hypogastric**, and **left iliac** region. Image B show two upper white boxes and are from right to left is the **right upper quadrant** followed by the **left upper quadrant**. The two lower boxes from right to left is the **right lower quadrant** followed by **left lower quadrant**.

Check Your Knowledge

Test Yourself

Test Yourself (Text Version)

1. The smallest unit of any of these pure substances (elements) is a(n) _____ [Blank 1].
 1. Cell
 2. Atom
 3. Organ
2. Describes a position closer to the surface of the body.
 1. Superficial
 2. Anterior
 3. Superior
3. The plane that divides the body or organ horizontally into upper and lower portions is called the _____ [Blank 2].
 1. Sagittal Plane
 2. Transverse Plane
 3. Frontal Place
4. The cavity that includes the cranial cavity and spinal cavity is called the _____ [Blank 3].
 1. Posterior cavity
 2. Anterior cavity
 3. Ventral Cavity
5. The name of the layer of the membrane that covers the organs is the _____ [Blank 4].
 1. Serous layer
 2. Visceral layer
 3. Parietal layer

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Medical language with the Context of Anatomy and Physiology Reinforcement Activity by Tiffany Hunt, licensed under [CC BY 4.0.](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)/Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Atom, 2. Superficial, 3. Transverse plane, 4. Posterior cavity, 5. Visceral layer

References

CrashCourse. (2015, January 6). *Introduction to anatomy & physiology: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #1* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/uBG12BujkPQ>

CHAPTER 3: INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [3.1 – Introduction to the Integumentary System](#)
- [3.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Integumentary System](#)
- [3.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Integumentary System](#)
- [3.4 – Accessory Structures](#)
- [3.5 – Integumentary System Changes \(Aging, Disease and Disorders, Skin\)](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

3.1 - Introduction to the Integumentary System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the integumentary system and accessory structures
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the integumentary system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of integumentary system medical terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the integumentary system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Integumentary System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the Integumentary System.

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **bi-** (two or both)
- **dia-** (through, complete)
- **dys-** (difficult, painful, abnormal, laboured)
- **epi-** (upon, on, over)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **hypo-** (deficient, below, under, incomplete)
- **intra-** (within, in)
- **meta-** (change, beyond, after)
- **neo-** (new)

- **para-** (beside, around, beyond, abnormal)
- **per-** (through)
- **pro-** (before)
- **sub-** (under, below)
- **trans-** (through, across, beyond)
- **uni-** (one)

Combining Form

- **aut/o** (self)
- **bi/o** (life)
- **coni/o** (dust)
- **crypt/o** (hidden)
- **cutane/o** (skin)
- **derm/o** (skin)
- **dermat/o** (skin)
- **heter/o** (other)
- **hidr/o** (sweat)
- **kerat/o** (hard, horny tissue, keratin)
- **lei/o** (smooth)
- **myc/o** (fungus)
- **necr/o** (death)
- **onych/o** (nail)
- **pachy/o** (thick)
- **rhytid/o** (wrinkles)
- **seb/o** (sebum)
- **staphyl/o** (grapelike clusters)
- **strept/o** (twisted chains)
- **ungu/o** (nail)
- **xer/o** (dryness, dry)

Suffix

- **-a** (no meaning, noun ending)
- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-ad** (toward)
- **-coccus** (berry-shaped)
- **-cyte** (cell)
- **-ectomy** (excision)
- **-gen** (substance that produces/causes, agent that produces/causes)
- **-genic** (producing, originating, causing)
- **-ia** (condition of, diseased state, abnormal state)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-itis** (inflammation)

- **-ior** (pertaining to)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-logist** (specialist who studies and treats)
- **-malacia** (softening)
- **-megaly** (enlarged, enlargement)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumour, swelling)
- **-opsy** (view of, process of viewing, viewing)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition, increased numbers relating to blood)
- **-ous** (pertaining to)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-phagia** (eating, swallowing)
- **-plasia** (development, growth, condition of formation)
- **-plasm** (growth, substance, formation)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-rrhea** (flow, discharge)
- **-sis** (state of)
- **-stasis** (stop, controlling, standing)
- **-tome** (instrument used to cut)

Activity source: Integumentary System Word List by Jesslyn Wilkinson, licensed under [CC BY 4.0./](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)
Converted to text.

Introduction to the Integumentary System

The integumentary system refers to the skin and its accessory structures. In the adult human body, the skin makes up about 16 percent of body weight and covers an area of 1.5 to 2 m².

In fact, the skin and accessory structures are the largest organ system in the human body. The skin protects your inner organs and it is in need of daily care and protection to maintain its health.

Did You Know?

The skin and accessory structures are the largest organ system in the human body.

Watch [The Integumentary System, Part 1 – Skin Deep: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #6 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Integumentary Medical Terms

Practice the following Integumentary System words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing
Integumentary Medical Terms (Text version)

1. **biopsy (bx)**

- BĪ-op-sē
- view of life (removal of living tissue to be viewed under a microscope)

2. **dermatitis**

- dĕr-mă-TĪT-ĭs
- inflammation of the skin

3. **dermatoautoplasty**

- dĕr-mă-tō-AW-tō-plăs-tē
- surgical repair using one's own skin

4. **dermatosis**

- dĕr-mă-tō-kō-nē-Ō-sĭs
- abnormal condition of the skin caused by dust

5. **dermatofibroma**

- dĕr-mă-tō-fi-BRŌ-mă
- fibrous tumour of the skin

6. **dermatoheteroplasty**

- dĕr-mă-tō-HĒT-ĕr-ō-plăs-tē

- surgical repair using skin from others
7. **dermatologist**
 - dĕr-mă-TŌL-ō-jĭst
 - Physician who specializes in treating diseases and disorders of the skin
 8. **dermatology (derm)**
 - dĕr-mă-TŌL-ō-jĕ
 - study of the skin
 9. **dermatome**
 - DĚR-mă-tōm
 - instrument used to cut skin
 10. **dermatoplasty**
 - DĚR-măt-ō-plas-tĕ
 - get meaning
 11. **epidermal**
 - ěp-ĭ-DĚR-mal
 - pertaining to upon/on the skin
 12. **erythroderma**
 - ě-rith-rŏ-DĚR-mă
 - red skin
 13. **hidradenitis**
 - hi-dra-ĕn-ĪT-ĭs
 - inflammation of a sweat gland
 14. **hypodermic**
 - hĭ-pŏ-DĚR-mĭk
 - pertaining to below the skin
 15. **intra dermal (ID)**
 - in-tră-DĚR-măl
 - pertaining to within the skin
 16. **keratogenic**
 - kĕr-ă-TŌJ-ĕ-nŭk
 - agent that causes growth of horny tissue

17. **keratosis**

- ker-ă-TŌ-sīs
- abnormal condition of growth of horny tissue

18. **leioderma**

- lī-ō-DĚR-mē-ă
- condition of smooth skin

19. **leukoderma**

- loo-kŏ-DĚR-mă
- white patches caused by depigmentation

20. **necrosis**

- ně-KRŌ-sīs
- condition of death

21. **onychocryptosis**

- ōn-ī-kŏ-krip-TŌ-sīs
- abnormal condition of a hidden nail

22. **onychomalacia**

- ōn-ī-kŏ-mă-LĀ-shă
- softening of the nails

23. **onychomycosis**

- on-i-kŏ-mī-KŌ-sīs
- abnormal condition of a fungus in the nails

24. **onychophagia**

- ōn-ī-KŌF-ă-jĕ
- eating the nails (nail biting)

25. **pachyderma**

- pak-ē-DĚR-mă
- thickening of the skin

26. **paronychia**

- pār-ō-NĪK-ē-ă
- diseased state around the nail

27. **percutaneous**

- pĕr-kū-TĀ-nē-ŭs
 - pertaining to through the skin
28. **rhytidectomy**
- rit-ĭ-DEK-tō-mē
 - excision of the wrinkles
29. **rhytidoplasty**
- RĪT-ĭ-dō-plās-tē
 - surgical repair of wrinkles
30. **seborrhea**
- sĕb-or-Ē-ă
 - discharge (excessive) of sebum
31. **staphylococcus (staph)**
- staf-ĭ-lō-KOK-ŭs
 - berry-shaped bacterium in grape-like clusters
32. **streptococcus (strep)**
- strep-tō-KOK-ŭs
 - berry-shaped bacterium in twisted chains
33. **subcutaneous (subcut, Sub-Q)**
- sŭb-kū-TĀ-nē-ŭs
 - pertaining to under the skin
34. **subungual**
- sŭb-ŪNG-gwāl
 - pertaining to under the nail
35. **transdermal (TD)**
- trānz-DĚRM-ăl
 - pertaining to through the skin
36. **ungual**
- ŪNG-gwāl
 - pertaining to the nail
37. **xeroderma**
- zer-ō-DĚR-mă

- dry skin

38. **xerosis**

- zĕ-RŌ-sĭs
- abnormal condition of dryness

Activity source: Integumentary Medical Terms from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Integumentary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Integumentary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

3.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Integumentary System

The skin and its accessory structures make up the integumentary system, which provides the body with overall protection. The skin is made of multiple layers of cells and tissues, which are held to underlying structures by connective tissue. The deeper layer of skin is well **vascularized**. It also has numerous sensory, and **autonomic** and **sympathetic** nerve fibers ensuring communication to and from the brain.

Layers of the skin

The skin is composed of three main layers:

1. The **epidermis**
2. The **dermis**
3. Beneath the dermis lies the **hypodermis**

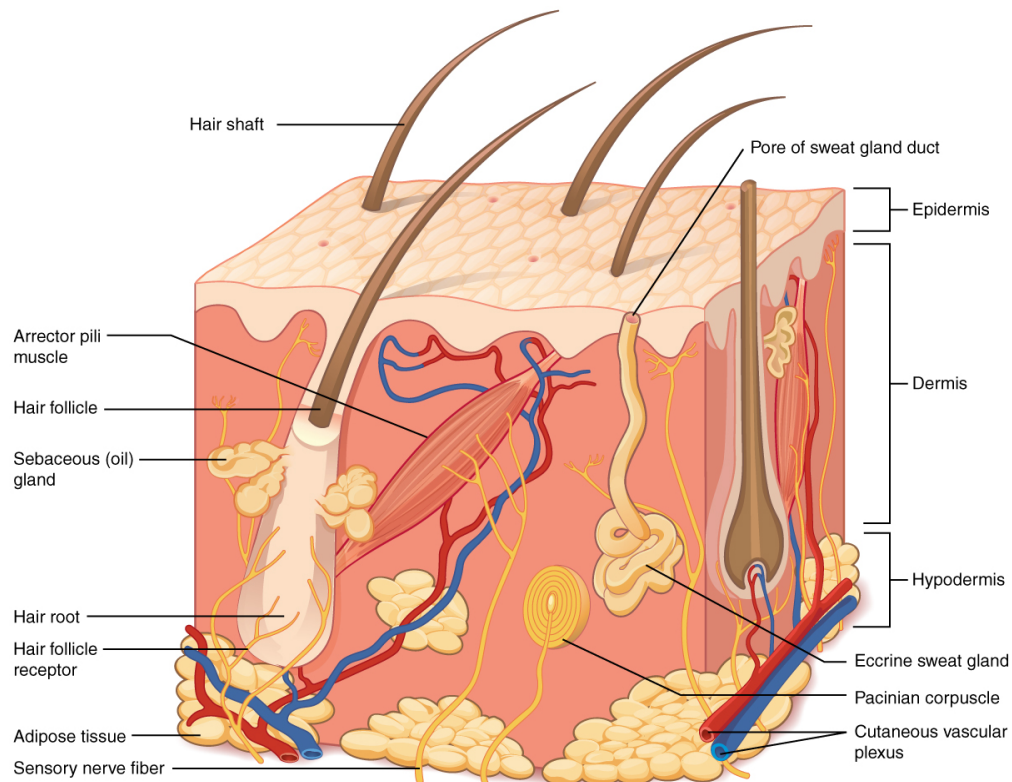


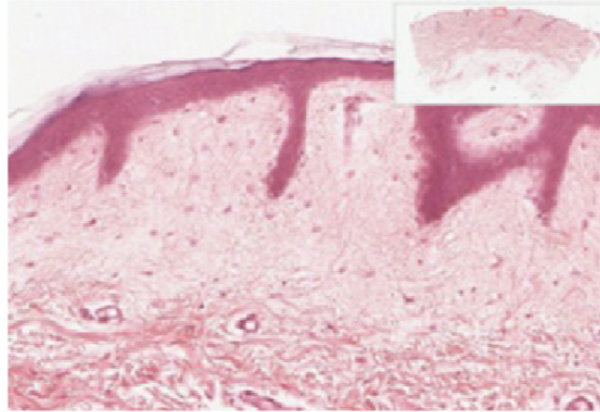
Figure 3.1 Layers of Skin. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 3.1 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check

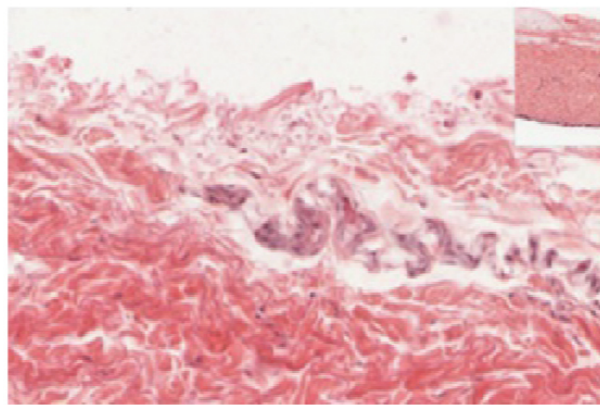
- On the diagram above, find the two layers of the skin; **epidermis** and **dermis**.
- The literal breakdown for **hypodermis** is below the dermis. On the diagram above, where can you locate it?
- Can you find a **hair follicle**, **hair root**, and **hair shaft**?
- Keep reading to find out what the **arrector pili muscle** does when you are frightened.

Epidermis

- **Thin skin** has four layers of cells. From deep to superficial, these layers are the **stratum basale**, stratum spinosum, stratum granulosum, and stratum corneum. Most of the skin can be classified as thin skin.
- **Thick skin** is found only on the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet. It has a fifth layer, called the stratum lucidum, located between the stratum corneum and the stratum granulosum (see [Figure 3.2](#)).



(a)



(b)

Figure 3.2 Thin Skin versus Thick Skin. These slides show cross-sections of the epidermis and dermis of (a) thin and (b) thick skin. Note the significant difference in the thickness of the epithelial layer of the thick skin. From top, LM \times 40, LM \times 40. (Micrographs provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 3.2 Image description.](#)]

The cells in all of the layers except the stratum basale are called **keratinocytes**. **Keratin** is an intracellular fibrous protein that gives hair, nails, and skin their hardness and water-resistant properties. The keratinocytes in the stratum corneum are dead and regularly slough away, being replaced by cells from the deeper layers (see [Figure 3.3](#)).

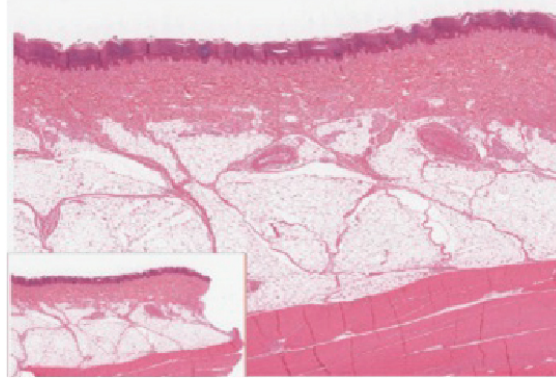


Figure 3.3 Epidermis. The epidermis is epithelium composed of multiple layers of cells. The basal layer consists of cuboidal cells, whereas the outer layers are squamous, keratinized cells, so the whole epithelium is often described as being keratinized stratified squamous epithelium. LM \times 40. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.3 Image description.](#)]

Dermis

The dermis contains blood and lymph vessels, nerves, and other structures, such as hair follicles and sweat glands. The dermis is made of two layers (papillary layer and reticular layer) of connective tissue that compose an interconnected mesh of elastin and collagenous fibers, produced by fibroblasts (see [Figure 3.4](#)).



Figure 3.4 Layers of the Dermis. This stained slide shows the two components of the dermis—the papillary layer and the reticular layer. Both are made of connective tissue with fibers of collagen extending from one to the other, making the border between the two somewhat indistinct. The dermal papillae extending into the epidermis belong to the papillary layer, whereas the dense collagen fiber bundles below belong to the reticular layer. LM \times 10. (credit: modification of [image](#) by kilbad, [PDM](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.4 Image description.](#)]

Papillary Layer

The papillary layer is made of loose, areolar connective tissue, which means the collagen and elastin fibers of this layer form a loose mesh. This superficial layer of the dermis projects into the stratum basale of the epidermis to form finger-like dermal papillae (see [Figure 3.4](#)). Within the papillary layer are fibroblasts, a small number **adipocytes**, and an abundance of small blood vessels. In addition, the papillary layer contains **phagocytes**, that help fight bacteria or other infections that have breached the skin. This layer also contains lymphatic capillaries, nerve fibers, and **Meissner corpuscles**.

Reticular Layer

Underlying the papillary layer is the much thicker reticular layer, composed of dense, irregular connective tissue. This layer is well **vascularized** and has a rich sensory and **sympathetic** nerve supply. The reticular layer appears **reticulated** due to a tight meshwork of fibers. Elastin fibers provide some elasticity to the skin, enabling movement. Collagen fibers provide structure and tensile strength, with strands of collagen extending into both the papillary layer and the hypodermis. In addition, collagen binds water to keep the skin hydrated. Collagen injections and Retin-A creams help restore skin turgor by either introducing collagen externally or stimulating blood flow and repair of the dermis, respectively.

Hypodermis

The **hypodermis** serves to connect the skin to the underlying **fascia** of the bones and muscles. It is not strictly a part of the skin, although the border between the **hypodermis** and **dermis** can be difficult to distinguish. The hypodermis consists of well-vascularized, loose, areolar connective tissue and **adipose** tissue, which functions as a mode of fat storage and provides insulation and cushioning for the integument.

Layers of the Skin

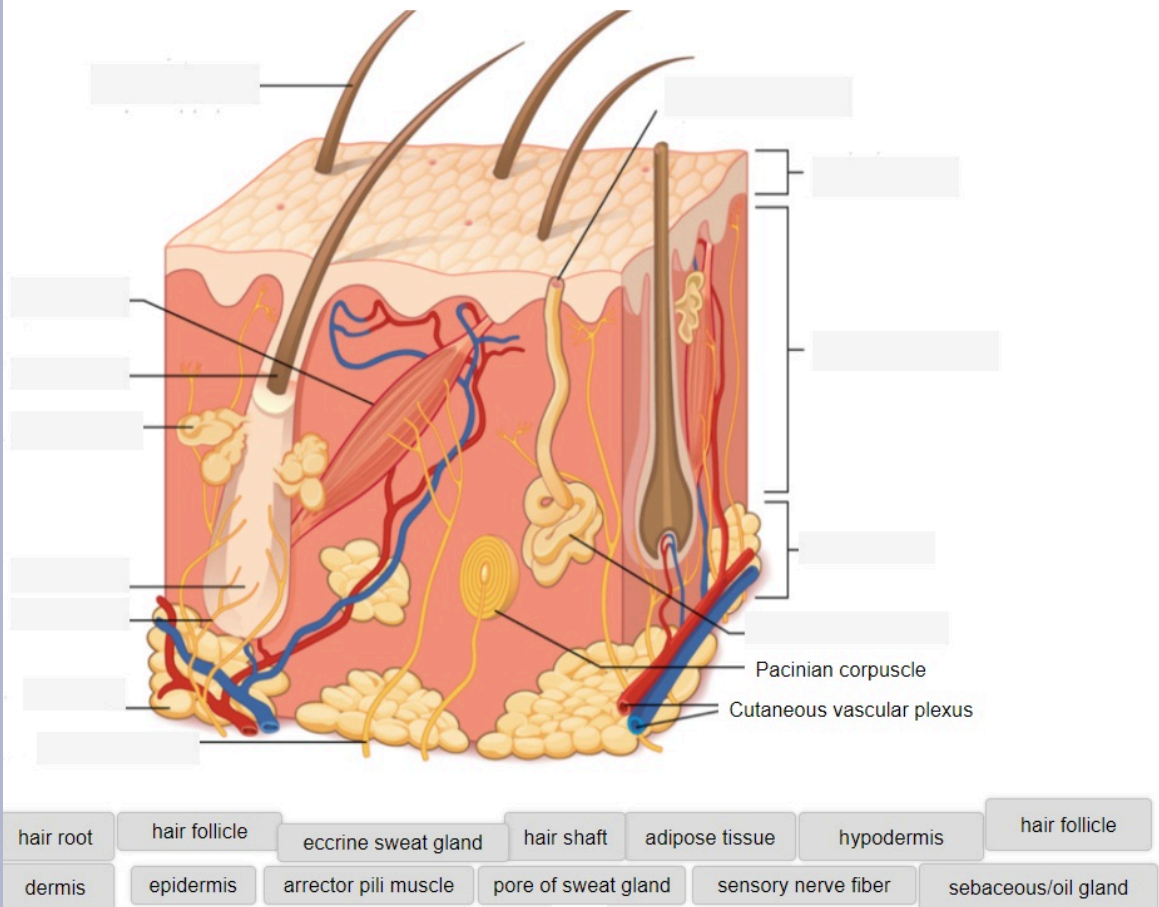
Practice labeling the layers of the skin.

Layers of the Skin (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Hair Root | 6. Hypodermis | 11. pore of sweat gland |
| 2. Hair Follicle | 7. Hair follicle | 12. sensory nerve fiber |
| 3. Eccrine Sweat Gland | 8. dermis | 13. sebaceous/oil gland |
| 4. Hair shaft | 9. epidermis | |
| 5. Adipose tissue | 10. arrector pili muscle | |

Integumentary System Anatomy of a Skin Cube



Layers of the Skin Diagram (Text Version)

This illustration shows a cross section of skin tissue. The outermost layer is called the _____ [Blank 1] and occupies one fifth of the cross section. Several hairs are emerging from the surface. The epidermis dives around one of the hairs, forming a _____ [Blank 2]. The _____ [Blank 3] is located above the hair follicle. Surrounding the base of the hair follicle is the _____ [Blank 4] which lubricates the _____ [Blank 5]. Extending the surface of the skin is the _____ [Blank 6]. The middle layer is called the _____ [Blank 7], which occupies four fifths of the cross section. The dermis contains an _____ [Blank 8] that causes contraction of the hair follicle making the hair stand on end such as when someone experiences goosebumps. The dermis also contains an _____ [Blank 9], composed of a bunch of tubules. One tubule travels up from the bunch, through the epidermis, opening onto the surface a _____ [Blank 10]. There are two string-like nerves travelling vertically through the dermis. The right nerve is attached to a Pacinian corpuscle, which is a yellow structure consisting of concentric ovals like an onion. The lowest level of the skin, the _____ [Blank 11], contains _____ [Blank 12], arteries, and veins. Blood vessels travel from the hypodermis and connect to hair follicles and erector pili muscle in the dermis. _____ [Blank 13] located in the hypodermis supports the interpretation of touch.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Layers of the Skin by Kimberlee Carter from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 3.1 image description: This illustration shows a cross section of skin tissue. The outermost layer is called the epidermis, and occupies one fifth of the cross section. Several hairs are emerging from the surface. The epidermis dives around one of the hairs, forming a follicle. The middle layer is called the dermis, which occupies four fifths of the cross section. The dermis contains an erector pilli muscle connected to one of the follicles. The dermis also contains an eccrine sweat gland, composed of a bunch of tubules. One tubule travels up from the bunch, through the epidermis, opening onto the surface a pore. There are two string-like nerves travelling vertically through the dermis. The right nerve is attached to a Pacinian corpuscle, which is a yellow structure consisting of concentric ovals similar to an onion. The lowest level of the skin, the hypodermis, contains fatty tissue, arteries, and veins. Blood vessels travel from the hypodermis and connect to hair follicles and erector pilli muscle in the dermis. [\[Return to Figure 3.1\]](#).

Figure 3.2 image description: Part A is a micrograph showing a cross section of thin skin. The topmost layer is a thin, translucent layer with irregular texture and areas where cells are sloughing off. The deepest layer is dark purple and extends into the third layer with finger like projections. The third light purple layer contains thin bands of fibers and small, dark cells. The fourth, and deepest layer, is darker than the third layer, but is still light purple. It contains thick fiber bands that are loosely packed. Part B is a magnified view of the epidermis of thick skin. It shows the topmost layer is five times thicker than the topmost layer of thin skin. The topmost layer of thick skin is also denser and less translucent than the topmost layer of thin skin. [\[Return to Figure 3.2\]](#).

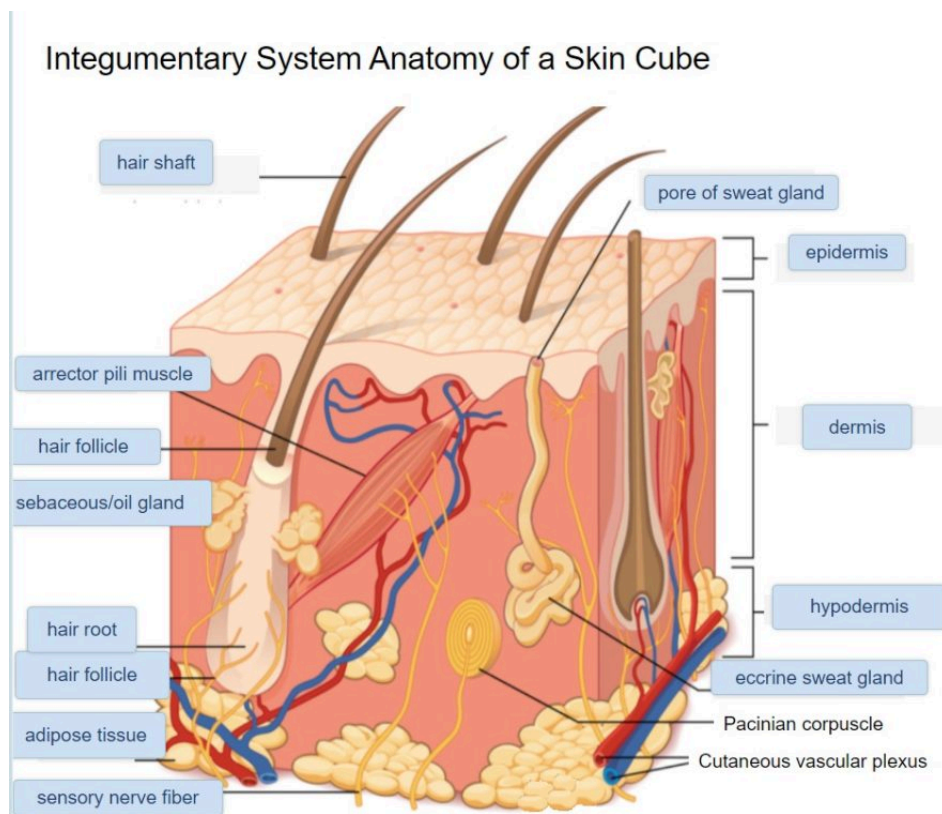
Figure 3.3 image description: The outer layer of cells in this micrograph is the thinnest layer and stained deep purple due to full keratinization of dead cells. The next layer occupies one quarter of the micrograph, is lightly stained, and is a dense collection of cells. The third layer from the top is mostly white, with lightly stained, loosely-packed strands radiating in random directions. The bottom-most layer is densely-packed, with thick bands of highly organized muscle tissue that are darkly stained. [\[Return to Figure 3.3\]](#).

Figure 3.4 image description: This micrograph shows layers of skin in a cross section. The papillary layer of the dermis extends between the downward fingers of the darkly stained epidermis. The papillary layer appears finer than the reticular layer, consisting of smaller, densely-packed fibers. The reticular layer is three times thicker than the papillary layer and contains larger, thicker fibers. The fibers seem more loosely packed than those of the papillary layer, with some separated by empty spaces. Both layers of the dermis contain cells with darkly stained nuclei. [\[Return to Figure 3.4\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Integumentary System](#)” In [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Integumentary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Check

your answers: Layers of the Skin Diagram (Text Version) This illustration shows a cross section of skin tissue. The outermost layer is called the **epidermis** and occupies one fifth of the cross section. Several hairs are emerging from the surface. The epidermis dives around one of the hairs, forming a **hair follicle**. The **hair root** is located above the hair follicle. Surrounding the base of the hair follicle is the **sebaceous/oil gland** which lubricates the **hair follicle**. Extending the surface of the skin is the **hair shaft**. The middle layer is called the dermis, which occupies four fifths of the cross section. The dermis contains an **arrector pili muscle** that causes contraction of the hair follicle making the hair stand on end such as when someone experiences goosebumps. The dermis also contains an **eccrine sweat gland**, composed of a bunch of tubules. One tubule travels up from the bunch, through the epidermis, opening onto the surface a **pore of sweat gland**. There are two string-like nerves travelling vertically through the dermis. The right nerve is attached to a Pacinian corpuscle, which is a yellow structure consisting of concentric ovals like an onion. The lowest level of the skin, the **hypodermis**, contains **adipose tissue**, arteries, and veins. Blood vessels travel from the hypodermis and connect to hair follicles and erector pili muscle in the dermis. **Sensory nerve fibers** located in the hypodermis supports the interpretation of touch.

3.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Integumentary System

The skin and accessory structures perform a variety of essential functions, such as protecting the body from invasion by microorganisms, chemicals, and other environmental factors; preventing dehydration; acting as a sensory organ; modulating body temperature and electrolyte balance; and synthesizing vitamin D. The underlying hypodermis has important roles in storing fats, forming a “cushion” over underlying structures, and providing insulation from cold temperatures.

Protection

The skin protects the body from wind, water, and UV sunlight. It acts as a protective barrier against water loss and it also is the first line of defense against abrasive activity such as grit, microbes, or harmful chemicals. Sweat excreted from sweat glands deters microbes from over-colonizing the skin surface by generating dermicidin, which has antibiotic properties.

Sensory Function

The skin acts as a sense organ because the epidermis, dermis, and the hypodermis contain specialized sensory nerve structures that detect touch, surface temperature, and pain. These receptors are more concentrated on the tips of the fingers, which are most sensitive to touch, especially the **Meissner corpuscle**, which responds to light touch, and the **Pacinian corpuscle**, which responds to vibration. Merkel cells, seen scattered in the stratum basale, are also touch receptors. In addition to these specialized receptors, there are sensory nerves connected to each hair follicle, pain and temperature receptors scattered throughout the skin, and motor nerves innervate the arrector pili muscles and glands. This rich innervation helps us sense our environment and react accordingly.

Thermoregulation

The integumentary system helps regulate body temperature through its tight association with the **sympathetic nervous system**. The sympathetic nervous system is continuously monitoring body temperature and initiating appropriate motor responses.

When the **body becomes warm**, sweat glands, accessory structures to the skin, secrete water, salt, and other substances to cool the body.

- Even when the body does not appear to be noticeably sweating, approximately 500 mL of sweat are secreted a day.

If the **body becomes excessively warm** due to high temperatures, vigorous activity, or a combination of the two, sweat glands will be stimulated by the sympathetic nervous system to produce large amounts of sweat.

- When the sweat evaporates from the skin surface, the body is cooled as body heat is dissipated.
- In addition to sweating, arterioles in the dermis dilate so that excess heat carried by the blood can dissipate through the skin and into the surrounding environment.
- This accounts for the skin redness that many people experience when exercising.

When **body temperatures drop**, the arterioles constrict to minimize heat loss, particularly in the ends of the digits and tip of the nose.

- This reduced circulation can result in the skin taking on a whitish hue.
- Although the temperature of the skin drops as a result, passive heat loss is prevented, and internal organs and structures remain warm.
- If the temperature of the skin drops too much (such as environmental temperatures below freezing), the conservation of body core heat can result in **frostbite**.

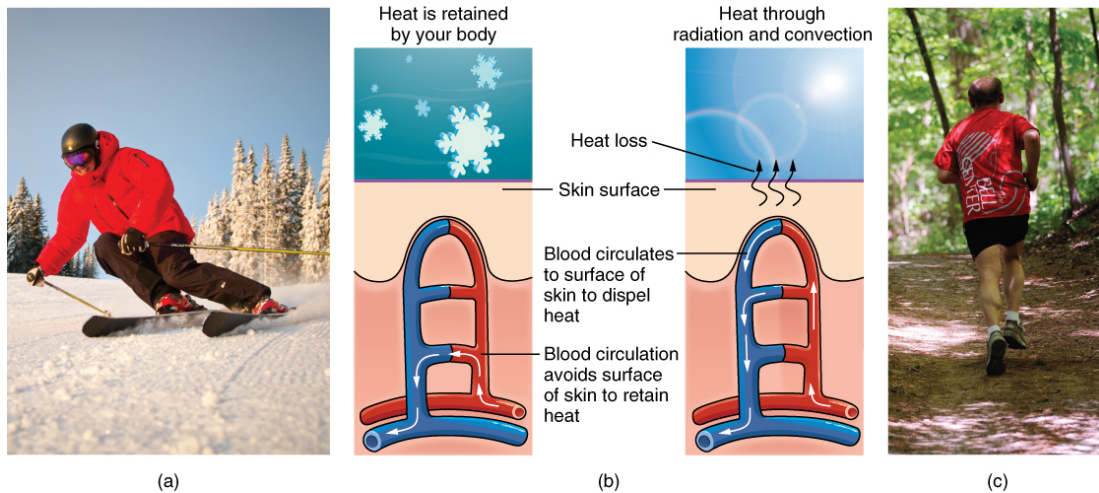


Figure 3.5 Thermoregulation. During strenuous physical activities, such as skiing (a) or running (c), the dermal blood vessels dilate and sweat secretion increases (b). These mechanisms prevent the body from overheating. In contrast, the dermal blood vessels constrict to minimize heat loss in response to low temperatures (b). (credit a: "Trysil"/flickr; credit c: Ralph Daily). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.5 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check

Can you describe the **thermoregulation** process between the integumentary system and the sympathetic system?

- When body temperature is too warm.
- When body temperature is too cold.

Vitamin D Synthesis

The epidermal layer of human skin synthesizes Vitamin D when exposed to UV radiation. In the presence of sunlight, a form of Vitamin D₃ called cholecalciferol is synthesized from a derivative of the steroid cholesterol in the skin. The liver converts cholecalciferol to calcidiol, which is then converted to calcitriol (the active chemical form of the vitamin) in the kidneys.

- Vitamin D is essential for normal absorption of calcium and phosphorous, which are required for healthy bones.
- The absence of sun exposure can lead to a lack of vitamin D in the body; in children this can cause **rickets**. Vitamin D deficiency in elderly individuals may lead to **osteomalacia**.
- In present day society, Vitamin D is added as a supplement to many foods, including milk and orange juice, compensating for the need for sun exposure. In addition to its essential role in bone health, Vitamin D is essential for general immunity against bacterial, viral, and fungal infections.

Did You Know?

Vitamin D is essential for general immunity against bacterial, viral and fungal infections.

Image Descriptions

Figure 3.5 image description: Part A is a photo of a man skiing with several snow-covered trees in the background. Part B is a diagram with a right and left half. The left half is titled “Heat is retained by the body,” while the right half is titled “Heat loss through radiation and convection.” Both show blood flowing from an artery through three capillary beds within the skin. The beds are arranged vertically, with the topmost bed located along the boundary of the dermis and epidermis. The bottommost bed is located deep in the hypodermis. The middle bed is evenly spaced between the topmost and bottommost beds. In each bed, oxygenated blood (red) enters the bed on the left and deoxygenated blood (blue) leaves the bed on the right. The left diagram shows a picture of snowflakes above the capillary beds, indicating that the weather is cold. Blood is only flowing through the deepest of the three capillary beds, as the upper beds are closed off to reduce heat loss from the outer layers of the skin. The right diagram shows a picture of the sun above the capillary beds, indicating that the weather is hot. Blood is flowing through all three capillary beds, allowing heat to radiate out of the blood, increasing heat loss. Part C is a photo of a man running through a forested trail on a summer day. [\[Return to Figure 3.5\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Integumentary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Integumentary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

3.4 - Accessory Structures

Accessory structures of the skin include hair, nails, sweat glands, and sebaceous glands. These structures embryologically originate from the epidermis and can extend down through the dermis into the **hypodermis**.

Hair

Hair is a keratinous filament growing out of the **epidermis**. It is primarily made of dead, keratinized cells. Strands of hair originate in an epidermal penetration of the dermis called the hair follicle. The hair shaft is the part of the hair not anchored to the follicle, and much of this is exposed at the skin's surface. The rest of the hair, which is anchored in the follicle, lies below the surface of the skin and is referred to as the hair root. The hair root ends deep in the dermis at the hair bulb, and includes a layer of mitotically active basal cells called the hair matrix. The hair bulb surrounds the hair papilla, which is made of connective tissue and contains blood capillaries and nerve endings from the dermis (see [Figure 3.6](#)).

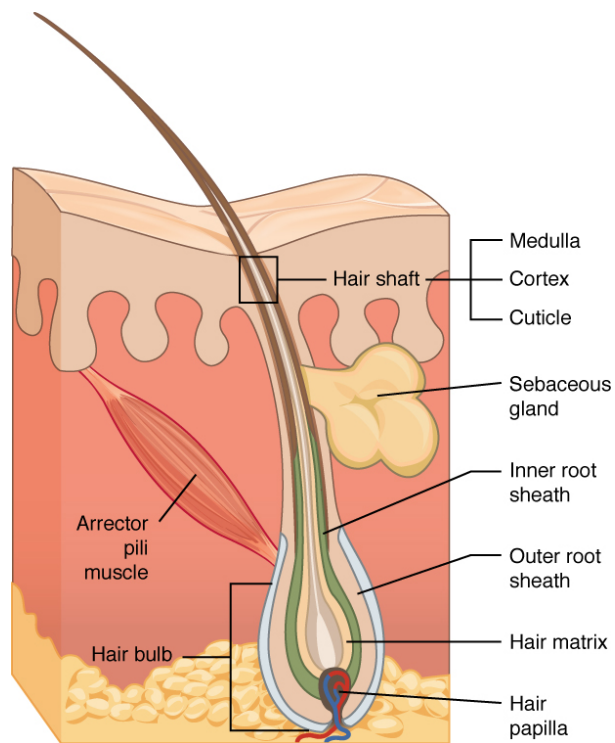


Figure 3.6 Hair. Hair follicles originate in the epidermis and have many different parts. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.6 Image description.](#)]

Hair Function

Hair serves a variety of functions, including protection, sensory input, thermoregulation, and communication. For example:

- Hair on the head **protects** the skull from the sun.
- Hair in the nose and ears, and around the eyes (eyelashes) **defends** the body by trapping and excluding dust particles that may contain allergens and microbes.
- Hair of the eyebrows **prevents** sweat and other particles from dripping into and bothering the eyes.

Hair also has a **sensory function** due to sensory innervation by a hair root plexus surrounding the base of each hair follicle. Hair is extremely sensitive to air movement or other disturbances in the environment, much more so than the skin surface. This feature is also useful for the **detection** of the presence of insects or other potentially damaging substances on the skin surface.

Each hair root is connected to a smooth muscle called the arrector pili that contracts in response to nerve signals from the sympathetic nervous system, making the external hair shaft “stand up.” The primary purpose for this is to trap a layer of air to add insulation. This is visible in humans as goose bumps and even more obvious in animals, such as when a frightened cat raises its fur. Of course, this is much more obvious in organisms with a heavier coat than most humans, such as dogs and cats.

Did You Know?

When frightened, the arrector pili muscle is responsible for your hair standing on end. The same is true when a cat's fur is raised.

Hair Growth, Loss and Colour

Hair grows and is eventually shed and replaced by new hair. Hair typically grows at the rate of 0.3 mm per day. On average, 50 hairs are lost and replaced per day. Hair loss occurs if there is more hair shed than what is replaced and can happen due to hormonal or dietary changes. Hair loss can also result from the aging process, or the influence of hormones. Similar to the skin, hair gets its colour from the pigment melanin, produced by **melanocytes** in the hair papilla. Different hair color results from differences in the type of melanin. As a person ages, the melanin production decreases, and hair tends to lose its color and becomes gray and/or white.

Nails

The **nail bed** is a specialized structure of the epidermis that is found at the tips of our fingers and toes. The nail body is formed on the nail bed, and protects the tips of our fingers and toes as they are the farthest extremities and the parts of the body that experience the maximum mechanical stress (see [Figure 3.7](#)). The nail body forms a back-support for picking up small objects with the fingers. The nail body is composed of densely packed dead **keratinocytes**.

The epidermis in this part of the body has evolved a specialized structure upon which nails can form. The nail body forms at the nail root, which has a matrix of proliferating cells from the stratum basale that enables the nail to grow continuously. The lateral nail fold overlaps the nail on the sides, helping to anchor the nail body. The nail fold that meets the proximal end of the nail body forms the nail cuticle, also called the eponychium.

The nail bed is rich in blood vessels, making it appear pink, except at the base, where a thick layer of epithelium over the nail matrix forms a crescent-shaped region called the **lunula (the “little moon”)**. The area beneath the free edge of the nail, furthest from the cuticle, is called the hyponychium. It consists of a thickened layer of stratum corneum.

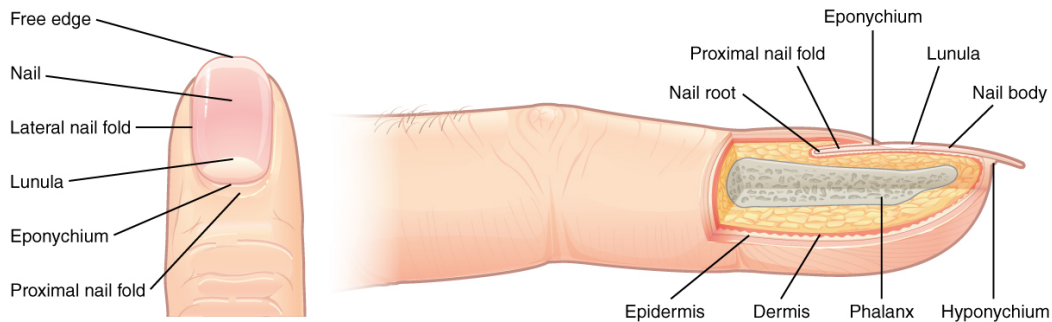


Figure 3.7 Nails. The nail is an accessory structure of the integumentary system. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.7 Image description.](#)]

Sweat Glands

Sudoriferous Glands

When the body becomes warm, sudoriferous glands produce sweat to cool the body. Sweat glands develop from epidermal projections into the dermis and are classified as merocrine glands; that is, the secretions are excreted by **exocytosis** through a duct without affecting the cells of the gland. There are two types of sweat glands, each secreting slightly different products.

An **eccrine sweat gland** is a type of gland that produces a hypotonic sweat for thermoregulation as described previously. These glands are found all over the skin's surface, but are especially abundant on the palms of the hand, the soles of the feet, and the forehead ([Figure 3.8](#)). They are coiled glands lying deep in the dermis, with the duct rising up to a pore on the skin surface, where the sweat is released. This type of sweat, released by

exocytosis, is hypotonic and composed mostly of water, with some salt, antibodies, traces of metabolic waste, and dermicidin, an antimicrobial peptide. **Eccrine glands** are a primary component of thermoregulation in humans and thus help to maintain **homeostasis**.

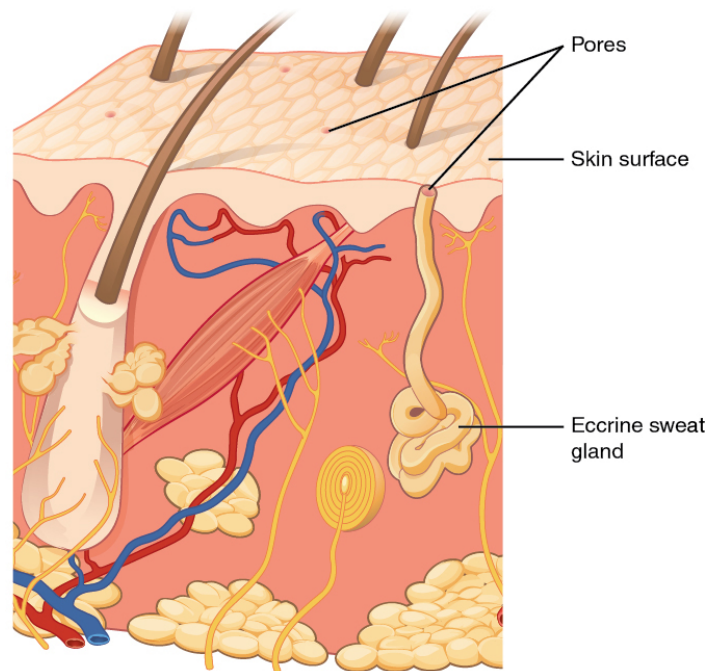


Figure 3.8 Eccrine Gland. Eccrine glands are coiled glands in the dermis that release sweat that is mostly water. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 3.8 Image description.](#)]

An **apocrine sweat gland** is usually associated with hair follicles in densely hairy areas, such as armpits and genital regions. Apocrine sweat glands are larger than eccrine sweat glands and lie deeper in the dermis, sometimes even reaching the hypodermis, with the duct normally emptying into the hair follicle. In addition to water and salts, apocrine sweat includes organic compounds that make the sweat thicker and subject to bacterial decomposition and subsequent smell. The release of this sweat is under both nervous and hormonal control, and plays a role in the poorly understood human pheromone response. Most commercial antiperspirants use an aluminum-based compound as their primary active ingredient to stop sweat. When the antiperspirant enters the sweat gland duct, the aluminum-based compounds precipitate due to a change in pH and form a physical block in the duct, which prevents sweat from coming out of the pore.

Did You Know?

Aluminum-based compounds due to a change in pH form a physical block in the sweat gland duct. This prevents sweating.

Sebaceous Glands

A **sebaceous gland** is a type of oil gland that is found all over the body and helps to lubricate and waterproof the skin and hair. Most sebaceous glands are associated with hair follicles. They generate and excrete sebum, a mixture of lipids, onto the skin surface, thereby naturally lubricating the dry and dead layer of keratinized cells of the stratum corneum, keeping it pliable. The fatty acids of sebum also have antibacterial properties, and prevent water loss from the skin in low-humidity environments. The secretion of sebum is stimulated by hormones, many of which do not become active until puberty, thus sebaceous glands are relatively inactive during childhood.

The accessory structures also have lowered activity, generating thinner hair and nails, and reduced amounts of sebum and sweat. A reduced sweating ability can cause some elderly to be intolerant to extreme heat. Other cells in the skin, such as **melanocytes** and **dendritic** cells, also become less active, leading to a paler skin tone and lowered immunity. Wrinkling of the skin occurs due to breakdown of its structure, which results from decreased collagen and elastin production in the dermis, weakening of muscles lying under the skin, and the inability of the skin to retain adequate moisture.

Words Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Integumentary System Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Integumentary Medical Terms (Text version)

1. **abscess**

- AB-ses (Original Term)
 - localized collection of pus
2. **abrasion**
- ă-BRĀ-zhŏn (Original Term)
 - scrape (by injury or mechanical process)
3. **acne**
- AK-nē
 - clogging of pores, which can lead to infection and inflammation
4. **adipocytes**
- AD-ĭ-pō-sĭts
 - Fat cells
5. **adipose**
- AD-ĭ-pōs
 - Fat tissue
6. **albinism**
- AL-bĭ-nizm
 - genetic disorder that affects the coloring of skin, hair, and eyes.
7. **apocrine sweat gland**
- AP-ŏ-krĕn swet gland
 - A type of gland that is found in the skin, breast, eyelid, and ear
8. **autonomic**
- ot-ŏ-NOM-ik
 - unconsciously regulates
9. **bacteria, bacterium**
- bak-TĒR-ē, bak-TĒR-ē-ŭm (Original Term)
 - single-celled microorganisms that reproduce by cell division and may cause infection by invading body tissue
10. **basal cell carcinoma (BCC)**
- BĀ-sāl sel kar-sĭn-Ō-ma
 - form of cancer that affects the mitotically active stem cells in the stratum basale of the epidermis
11. **benign**

- bē-NĪN
 - Noncancerous, harmless
12. **cancer**
- KAN-sĕr
 - A process where abnormal cells in the body divide uncontrollably
13. **cauterize, cauterization**
- KAW-tĕr-ĭz (Original Term)
 - to burn tissues by various means with the intent destroy damaged tissues, prevent infections or coagulate blood vessels
14. **cellulitis**
- sel-yŭ-LĪT-ĭs (Original Term)
 - bacterial infection of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, characterized by redness, pain, heat and swelling
15. **contusion**
- kŏn-TOO-zhŏn (Original Term)
 - bruise
16. **cyanosis**
- sĭ-ă-NŌ-sĭs
 - Abnormal condition of blue (bluish colour, lips and nail beds). Typically caused by low oxygenation
17. **cyst**
- sist (Original Term)
 - closed sac containing fluid or semisolid material
18. **debride, debridement**
- di-BRĒD, di-BRĒD-mĕnt (Original Term)
 - remove damaged tissues and cell debris from a wound or burn to prevent infection and promote healing.
19. **dehydration**
- dĕ-hĭ-DRĀ-shŏn
 - Loss of fluids/water is greater than what is taken in.
20. **dendritic cells**
- den-DRIT-ik

- pertaining to dendrites
21. **dermabrasion**
 - DĚRM-ă-brā-zhŏn (Original Term)
 - procedure to remove superficial scars using sandpaper or revolving wire brushes.
 22. **diaphoresis**
 - dī-ă-fŏ-RĒ-sīs (Original Term)
 - condition of profuse, excessive sweating
 23. **eccrine sweat gland**
 - ĚK-rĭn swet gland
 - type of gland that produces a hypotonic sweat for thermoregulation
 24. **eczema**
 - eg-ZĒ-mă (Original Term)
 - noninfectious, inflammatory disease presents as redness, blisters, scabs and itching
 25. **edema**
 - ě-DĚ-mă (Original Term)
 - puffy swollen tissue due to accumulation of fluid
 26. **excise, excision**
 - ěk-SĪZ, ek-SIZH-ŏn (Original Term)
 - surgical removal by cutting out
 27. **fascia**
 - FASH-ĕ-ă
 - Fibrous tissue
 28. **frostbite**
 - FROST-bĭt
 - Conservation of core body heat results in the skin actually freezing
 29. **gangrene**
 - GANG-grĕn (Original Term)
 - death of tissue due to blood supply loss
 30. **incise, incision**
 - in-SĪZ, in-SIZH-ŏn (Original Term)
 - surgical cut into or wound produced by a sharp instrument

31. **incision and drainage (I&D)**

- in-SIZH-ǒn & DRĀN-ǎj
- surgical cut made to allow the free flow of fluids from a lesion, wound, or cavity

32. **infection**

- in-FEK-shǒn (Original Term)
- invasion of pathogens to body tissue

33. **jaundice, jaundiced**

- JON-dīs, JON-dīsd (Original Term)
- yellow colouring of the mucous membranes and sclera

34. **keloid**

- (KĒ-loyd)
- Formation of a raised or hypertrophic scar

35. **keratin**

- (KER-ăt-in)
- intracellular fibrous protein that gives hair, nails, and skin their hardness and water-resistant properties

36. **keratinocyte**

- kĕ-RĀT-ī-nō-sīt
- Cell that manufactures and stores the protein keratin

37. **laceration**

- las-ĕ-RĀ-shǒn (Original Term)
- torn, ragged-edged wound

38. **laser surgery**

- LĀ-zĕr SŪRJ-ĕ-rĕ
- A surgical procedure using a powerful beam of light to cut or burn tissue.

39. **Lesion**

- lĒ-zhǒn (Original Term)
- visible change in tissue resulting from injury or disease

40. **leukoplakia**

- loo-kō-PLĀ-kĕ-ǎ
- white, thickened patches on mucus membrane tissue of the tongue or cheek

41. **macule**
 - MAK-ŭl (Original Term)
 - flat, coloured spot on the skin
42. **Meissner corpuscle**
 - MĪS-nĕr KOR-pŭs-ĕl
 - Tactile corpuscle that responds to light and touch, touch receptor
43. **melanoma**
 - mel-ă-NŌ-mă
 - cancer characterized by uncontrolled growth of melanocytes
44. **metastasize**
 - mĕ-TĂS-tă-sĭz
 - Production of cells that can mobilize and establish tumors in other organs of the body
45. **nevus**
 - NĒ-vŭs (Original Term)
 - a pigmented skin blemish
46. **nodule**
 - NOJ-ool (Original Term)
 - a small node-like structure
47. **Pacinian corpuscle**
 - pă-SIN-ĕ-ăn KOR-pŭs-ĕl
 - Lamellated corpuscle that responds to vibration
48. **pallor**
 - PĂL-or (Original Term)
 - paleness
49. **pathogens**
 - path-Ō-jĕns
 - Disease-causing agents
50. **phagocytes**
 - făg-ō-SĪTS
 - Cells that engulf and absorb bacteria and cell particles
51. **pruritus**

- proo-RĪT-ūs (Original Term)
 - itching
52. **psoriasis**
- sŏ-RĪ-ă-sīs
 - chronic autoimmune disorder that results in patches of thick red skin with the appearance of silvery scales
53. **pustule**
- PŪS-tŭl (Original Term)
 - small elevation of the skin containing fluid
54. **reticulated**
- rĕ-TIK-yŭ-lăt-ĕd
 - constructed, arranged, or marked like a net or network.
55. **rickets**
- RIK-ĕts
 - A painful condition in children where bones are misshapen due to a lack of calcium, causing bow leggedness
56. **scar**
- skăr
 - Collagen-rich skin formed after the process of wound healing that differs from normal skin. Also known as a cicatrix.
57. **sebaceous gland**
- sĕ-BĀ-shŭs gland
 - type of oil gland that is found all over the body and helps to lubricate and waterproof the skin and hair.
58. **squamous cell carcinoma (SCC)**
- SKWĀ-mŭs sel kar-sĭn-Ō-mă
 - cancer that affects the keratinocytes of the stratum spinosum and presents as lesions commonly found on the scalp, ears, and hands
59. **stratum basale**
- STRĀ-tŭm BĀS-al
 - Deepest layer of the epidermal
60. **suture**

- SOO-chŭr
- to stitch the edges of a wound

61. **sympathetic**

- sĭm-pă-THĚT-ĭk
- Flight or fight response

62. **Sympathetic Nervous System**

- sĭm-pă-THĚT-ĭk NĚR-vŭs SIS-tĕm
- Responsible for fight or flight responses

63. **tinea**

- TIN-ĕ-ă (Original Term)
- A group of fungal skin diseases, characterized by itching, scaling, and sometimes painful lesions.

64. **vascularized**

- VAS-kyŭ-lă-rĭzd
- Has numerous blood vessels

65. **verruca**

- vĕr-ROO-kă
- Also known as a wart. An epidermal growth caused by a virus.

66. **virus**

- VĪ-rŭs (Original Term)
- minute microorganism that may cause infection by invading body tissue

Activity Source: Integumentary Medical Terms from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /Re-recording of some H5P audio by Tania Deane and David McCuaig and text version added.

Common Integumentary System Abbreviations

Many terms and phrases related to the integumentary system are abbreviated. Learn these common abbreviations by expanding the list below.

Integumentary System Common Abbreviations

- **BCC** (basal cell carcinoma)
- **SCC** (squamous cell carcinoma)
- **SLE** (systemic lupus erythematosus)
- **staph** (staphylococcus)
- **strep** (streptococcus)
- **subcut** (subcutaneous)
- **ID** (intra-dermal)
- **TD** (transdermal)
- **derm** (dermatology)
- **bx** (biopsy)
- **MRSA** (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*)

Activity source: Integumentary System Common Abbreviations by Jesslyn Wilkinson, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Converted to text.

Image Description

Figure 3.6 image description: A cross section of the skin containing a hair follicle. The follicle is teardrop shaped. Its enlarged base, labeled the hair bulb, is embedded in the hypodermis. The outermost layer of the follicle is the epidermis, which invaginates from the skin surface to envelope the follicle. Within the epidermis is the outer root sheath, which is only present on the hair bulb. It does not extend up the shaft of the hair. Within the outer root sheath is the inner root sheath. The inner root sheath extends about half of the way up the hair shaft, ending midway through the dermis. The hair matrix is the innermost layer. The hair matrix surrounds the bottom of the hair shaft where it is embedded within the hair bulb. The hair shaft, in itself, contains three layers: the outermost cuticle, a middle layer called the cortex, and an innermost layer called the medulla. [\[Return to Figure 3.6\]](#).

Figure 3.7 image description: The anatomy of the fingernail region. The top image shows a dorsal view of a finger. The proximal nail fold is the part underneath where the skin of the finger connects with the edge of the nail. The eponychium is a thin, pink layer between the white proximal edge of the nail (the lunula), and the edge of the finger skin. The lunula appears as a crescent-shaped white area at the proximal edge of the pink-shaded nail. The

lateral nail folds are where the sides of the nail contact the finger skin. The distal edge of the nail is white and is called the free edge. An arrow indicates that the nail grows distally out from the proximal nail fold. The lower image shows a lateral view of the nail bed anatomy. In this view, one can see how the edge of the nail is located just proximal to the nail fold. This end of the nail, from which the nail grows, is called the nail root. [\[Return to Figure 3.7\]](#).

Figure 3.8 image description: An illustration of an eccrine sweat gland embedded in a cross section of skin tissue. The eccrine sweat gland is a bundle of white tubes embedded in the dermis. A single white tube travels up from the bundle and opens on to the surface of the epidermis. The opening is called a pore. There are several pores on the small block of skin portrayed in this diagram. [\[Return to Figure 3.8\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Integumentary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Integumentary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

3.5 - Integumentary System Changes (Aging, Disease and Disorders, Skin)

Changes Due to Aging

All systems in the body accumulate subtle and some not-so-subtle changes as a person ages. Among these changes are reductions in cell division, metabolic activity, blood circulation, hormonal levels, and muscle strength (see [Figure 3.9](#)). In the skin, these changes are reflected in decreased mitosis in the stratum basale, leading to a thinner epidermis. The dermis, which is responsible for the elasticity and resilience of the skin, exhibits a reduced ability to regenerate, which leads to slower wound healing. The hypodermis, with its fat stores, loses structure due to the reduction and redistribution of fat, which in turn contributes to the thinning and sagging of skin.



Figure 3.9 Aging. Generally, skin, especially on the face and hands, starts to display the first noticeable signs of aging, as it loses its elasticity over time. The differences are shown in the image from a young woman in the right panel and an older woman in the left panel. (credit: “Granddaughter and Grandmother” by Janet Ramsden is licensed under [CC BY 2.0](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. [\[Fig. 3.9 Image description.\]](#)

Did You Know?

A reduced sweating ability can cause some elderly to be intolerant to extreme heat.

Disease and Disorders

The integumentary system is susceptible to a variety of diseases, disorders, and injuries. These range from annoying but relatively benign bacterial or fungal infections that are categorized as disorders, to skin cancer and severe burns, which can be fatal. In this section, you will learn several of the most common skin conditions.

One of the most talked about diseases is skin **cancer**. Most cancers are identified by the organ or tissue in which the cancer originates. One common form of cancer is skin cancer.

In general, cancers result from an accumulation of DNA mutations. These mutations can result in cell populations that do not die when they should and uncontrolled cell proliferation that leads to tumors. Although many tumors are **benign**, some **metastasize**. Cancers are characterized by their ability to metastasize.

Sun Damage

It requires about 10 days after initial sun exposure for melanin synthesis to peak, which is why pale-skinned individuals tend to suffer sunburns of the epidermis initially. Dark-skinned individuals can also get sunburns, but are more protected than pale-skinned individuals. Too much sun exposure can eventually lead to wrinkling due to the destruction of the cellular structure of the skin, and in severe cases, can cause sufficient DNA damage to result in skin cancer. When there is an irregular accumulation of melanocytes in the skin, freckles appear. Moles are larger masses of melanocytes, and although most are benign, they should be monitored for changes that might indicate the presence of cancer (see [Figure 3.10](#)).



Figure 3.10 Moles. Moles range from benign accumulations of melanocytes to melanomas. These structures populate the landscape of our skin. (credit: [Image](#) by the National Cancer Institute, [PDM](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.10 Image description.](#)]

Basal Cell Carcinoma (BCC)

Basal cell carcinoma is a form of cancer that affects the mitotically active stem cells in the stratum basale of the epidermis. It is the most common of all cancers that occur in the United States and is frequently found on the head, neck, arms, and back, which are as that are most susceptible to long-term sun exposure. Although UV rays are the main culprit, exposure to other agents, such as radiation and arsenic, can also lead to this type of cancer. Wounds on the skin due to open sores, tattoos, burns, etc. may be predisposing factors. Basal cell carcinomas start in the stratum basale and usually spread along this boundary. At some point, they begin to grow toward the surface and become an uneven patch, bump, growth, or scar on the skin surface (see [Figure 3.11](#)). Like most cancers, basal cell carcinomas respond

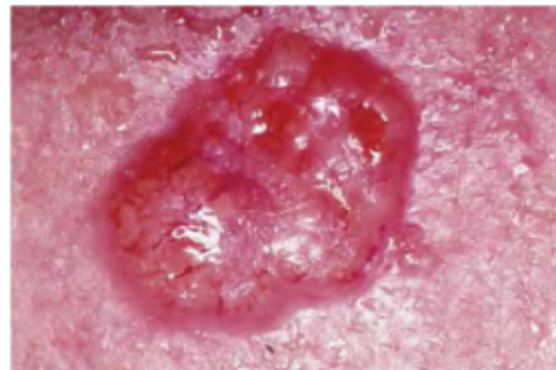


Figure 3.11 Basal Cell Carcinoma. Basal cell carcinoma can take several different forms. In this form it appears reddened, raised and shiny. Similar to other forms of skin cancer, it is readily cured if caught early and treated. [[Fig. 3.11 Image Description](#)](credit: [John Hendrix, MD, PDM](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

best to treatment when caught early. Treatment options include surgery, freezing (cryosurgery), and topical ointments.

Squamous Cell Carcinoma (SCC)

Squamous cell carcinoma is a cancer that affects the keratinocytes of the stratum spinosum and presents as lesions commonly found on the scalp, ears, and hands (see [Figure 3.12](#)). It is the second most common skin cancer. The American Cancer Society reports that two of 10 skin cancers are squamous cell carcinomas, and it is more aggressive than basal cell carcinoma. If not removed, these carcinomas can **metastasize**. Surgery and radiation are used to cure squamous cell carcinoma.



Figure 3.12 Squamous Cell Carcinoma Squamous cell carcinoma presents here as a lesion on a nose. (credit: [Image](#) by the National Cancer Institute, [PDM](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Melanoma

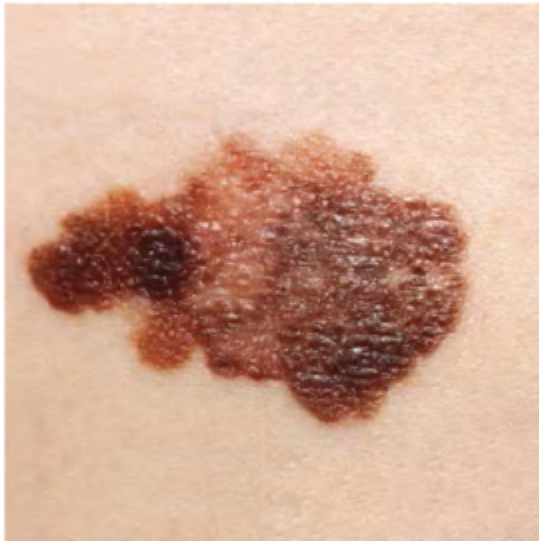


Figure 3.13 Melanoma. Melanomas typically present as large brown or black patches with uneven borders and a raised surface. (credit: [Image](#) by the National Cancer Institute, [PDM](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

A melanoma is a cancer characterized by the uncontrolled growth of melanocytes, the pigment-producing cells in the epidermis. Typically, a melanoma develops from a mole. It is the most fatal of all skin cancers, as it is highly metastatic and can be difficult to detect before it has spread to other organs. Melanomas usually appear as asymmetrical brown and black patches with uneven borders and a raised surface (see [Figure 3.13](#)). Treatment typically involves surgical excision and immunotherapy.

ABCDE for Early Diagnosis

Doctors often give their patients the following ABCDE mnemonic to help with the diagnosis of early-stage melanoma. If you observe a mole on your body displaying these signs, consult a doctor.

- **A**symmetry – the two sides are not symmetrical
- **B**orders – the edges are irregular in shape
- **C**olor – the color is varied shades of brown or black
- **D**iameter – it is larger than 6 mm (0.24 in)
- **E**volving – its shape has changed

Some specialists cite the following additional signs for the most serious form, nodular melanoma:

- **Elevated** – it is raised on the skin surface
- **Firm** – it feels hard to the touch
- **Growing** – it is getting larger

Albinism

Albinism is a genetic disorder that affects (completely or partially) the coloring of skin, hair, and eyes. This is primarily due to the inability of melanocytes to produce melanin. Individuals with albinism tend to appear white or very pale due to the lack of melanin in their skin and hair. Recall that melanin helps protect the skin from the harmful effects of UV radiation. Individuals with albinism tend to need more protection from UV radiation, as they are more prone to sunburns and skin cancer. They also tend to be more sensitive to light and have vision problems due to the lack of pigmentation on the retinal wall (Betts et al., 2013).

Treatment of this disorder usually involves addressing the symptoms, such as limiting UV light exposure to the skin and eyes. In **vitiligo**, the melanocytes in certain areas lose their ability to produce melanin, possibly due to an autoimmune reaction. This leads to a loss of color in patches (see [Figure 3.14](#)). Neither albinism nor vitiligo directly affects the lifespan of an individual (Betts et al., 2013).



Figure 3.14 Vitiligo. Individuals with vitiligo experience depigmentation that results in lighter colored patches of skin. The condition is especially noticeable on darker skin. (credit: [Image by Klaus D. Peter, CC BY 3.0 Germany](#)).

Changes in Skin Colouration

Other changes in the appearance of skin colouration can be indicative of diseases associated with other body systems.

- Liver disease or liver cancer can cause the accumulation of bile and the yellow pigment bilirubin, leading to the skin appearing **yellow** or **jaundiced**.
- Tumors of the pituitary gland can result in the secretion of large amounts of melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), which results in a **darkening** of the skin.
- Addison's disease can stimulate the release of excess amounts of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), which can give the skin a **deep bronze** color.
- A sudden drop in oxygenation can affect skin color, causing the skin to initially turn **ashen** (white).
- A prolonged reduction in oxygen levels, dark red deoxyhemoglobin becomes dominant in the blood, making the skin appear **blue**, a condition referred to as **cyanosis**. This happens when the oxygen supply is restricted, as when someone is experiencing difficulty in breathing because of asthma or a heart attack. However, in these cases the effect on skin color has nothing to do with the skin's pigmentation (Betts et al., 2013).

Skin Disorders

Two common skin disorders are **eczema** and **acne**. Eczema is an inflammatory condition that occurs in individuals of all ages. Acne involves the clogging of pores, which can lead to infection and inflammation, and is often seen in adolescents. Other disorders, include seborrheic dermatitis (on the scalp), psoriasis, fungal infections, cold sores, impetigo, scabies, hives, and warts (Betts et al., 2013).

Eczema

Eczema is an allergic reaction that manifests as dry, itchy patches of skin that resemble rashes (see [Figure 3.15](#)). It may be accompanied by swelling of the skin, flaking, and in severe cases, bleeding. Symptoms are usually managed with moisturizers, corticosteroid creams, and immunosuppressants (Betts et al., 2013).



Figure 3.15 Eczema. Eczema is a common skin disorder that presents as a red, flaky rash. (credit: "Jambula"/Wikimedia Commons). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Acne

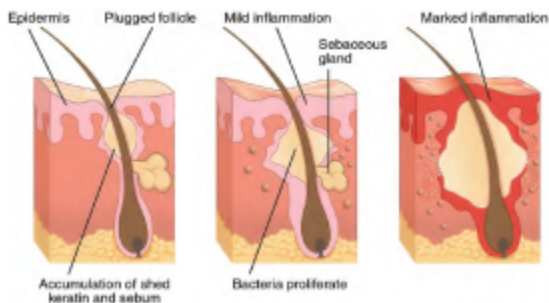


Figure 3.16. Acne. Acne is a result of over-productive sebaceous glands, which leads to formation of blackheads and inflammation of the skin. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Acne is a skin disturbance that typically occurs on areas of the skin that are rich in sebaceous glands (face and back). It is most common along with the onset of puberty due to associated hormonal changes, but can also occur in infants and continue into adulthood. Hormones, such as androgens, stimulate the release of sebum. An overproduction and accumulation of sebum along with keratin can block hair follicles. This plug is initially white. The sebum, when oxidized by exposure to air, turns black. Acne results from infection by acne-causing bacteria (*Propionibacterium* and *Staphylococcus*), which can lead to redness and potential scarring due to the natural wound healing process (see [Figure 3.16](#)) (Betts et al., 2013).

Ringworm

Tinea or dermatophytosis is often referred to as ringworm. Ringworm presents as a circular rash that is itchy and red and can be found on various parts of the body. It is referred to by the location where it is found:

- **Tinea pedis:** feet or commonly referred to as athlete's feet
- **Tinea capitis:** scalp
- **Tinea barbae** – beard
- **Tinea manuum** – hands
- **Tinea unguium** – Toenails and fingernails also called onychomycosis
- **Tinea corporis** – Body parts such as arms and legs (Center for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018a).

To learn more about ringworm, visit the [Center for Disease Control and Prevention's web page on fungal infections \[New Tab\]](#).

Psoriasis

Psoriasis is a chronic autoimmune disorder that results in patches of thick red skin with the appearance of silvery scales. These patches can be found on elbows, knees, scalp, lower back, face, feet, fingernails, toenails and even the mouth. Psoriasis can be confused with other skin diseases, so a dermatologist is the best physician to diagnose psoriasis. Treatments may include creams, ointments, ultraviolet light therapy and medication (Center for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018). To learn more, visit the [Canadian Association of Psoriasis Patients' page on psoriasis and inflammation \[New Tab\]](#).

Injuries

Because the skin is the part of our bodies that meets the world most directly, it is especially vulnerable to injury. Injuries include **burns, wounds**, as well as **scars** and **calluses**. They can be caused by sharp objects, heat, excessive pressure or friction to the skin (Betts et al., 2013).

Skin injuries set off a healing process that occurs in several overlapping stages.

- The first step to repairing damaged skin is the **formation of a blood clot** that helps stop the flow of blood and scabs over time. Many different types of cells are involved in wound repair, especially if the surface area that needs repair is extensive.
- Before the basal stem cells of the stratum basale can **recreate the epidermis**, fibroblasts mobilize and divide rapidly to **repair the damaged tissue** by collagen deposition, forming granulation tissue.
- Blood capillaries follow the fibroblasts and help **increase blood circulation and oxygen** supply to the area.
- Immune cells, such as macrophages, roam the area and **engulf any foreign matter** to reduce the chance of infection (Betts et al., 2013).

Burns

A burn results when the skin is damaged by intense heat, radiation, electricity, or chemicals. The damage results in the death of skin cells, which can lead to a massive loss of fluid. Dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, and renal and circulatory failure follow, which can be fatal. Burn patients are treated with intravenous fluids to offset **dehydration**, as well as **intravenous** nutrients that enable the body to repair tissues and replace lost proteins. Another serious threat to the lives of burn patients is **infection**. Burned skin is extremely susceptible to bacteria and other **pathogens**, due to the loss of protection by intact layers of skin (Betts et al., 2013).

Burn Classification

Burns are sometimes measured in terms of the size of the total surface area affected. This is referred to as the *rule of nines*, which associates specific anatomical areas with a percentage that is a factor of nine (see [Figure 3.17](#)) (Betts et al., 2013).

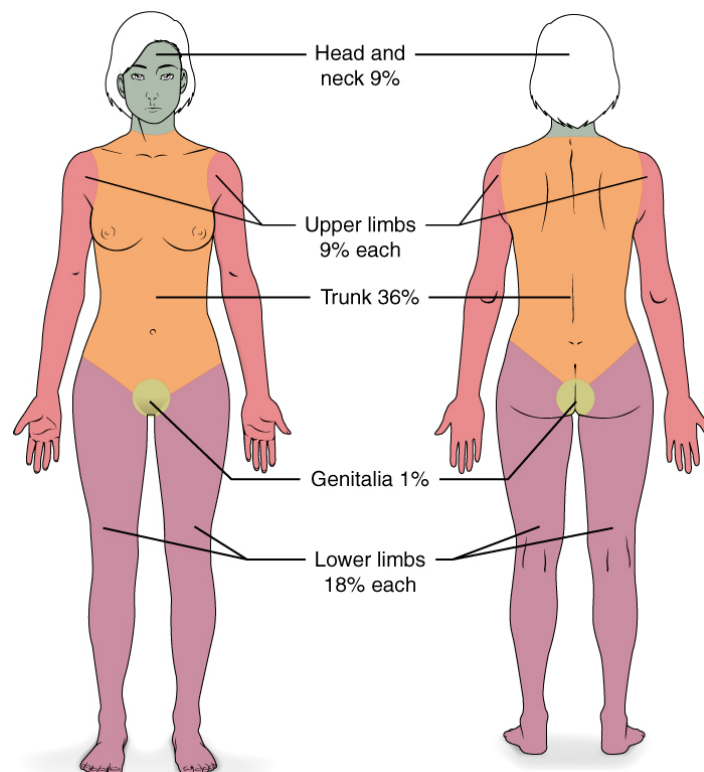


Figure 3.17 Calculating the Size of a Burn. The size of a burn will guide decisions made about the need for specialized treatment. Specific parts of the body are associated with a percentage of body area. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 3.17 Image description.](#)]

Burns are also classified by the **degree of their severity**.

- A **first-degree** burn is a superficial burn that affects only the epidermis. Although the skin may be painful and swollen, these burns typically heal on their own within a few days. Mild sunburn fits into the category of a first-degree burn.
- A **second-degree** burn goes deeper and affects both the epidermis and a portion of the dermis. These burns result in swelling and painful blistering of the skin. It is important to keep the burn site clean and sterile to prevent infection. If this is done, the burn will heal within several weeks.
- A **third-degree** burn fully extends into the epidermis and dermis, destroying the tissue and affecting the nerve endings and sensory function. These are serious burns that may appear white, red, or black; they require medical attention and will heal slowly without it.
- A **fourth-degree** burn is even more severe, affecting the underlying muscle and bone.

Oddly, third and fourth-degree burns are usually not as painful because the nerve endings themselves are damaged. Full-thickness burns cannot be repaired by the body, because the local tissues used for repair are damaged and require **debridement**, or amputation in severe cases, followed by grafting of the skin from an unaffected part of the body, or from skin grown in tissue culture for grafting purposes. Skin grafts are required when the damage from trauma or infection cannot be closed with sutures or staples (Betts et al., 2013).

Scars and Keloids

Most cuts or wounds, with the exception of ones that only scratch the epidermis, lead to **scar** formation. Scarring occurs in cases in which there is repair of skin damage, but the skin fails to regenerate the original skin structure. Fibroblasts generate scar tissue in the form of collagen, and the bulk of repair is due to the basket-weave pattern generated by collagen fibers and does not result in regeneration of the typical cellular structure of skin. Instead, the tissue is fibrous in nature and does not allow for the regeneration of accessory structures, such as hair follicles, sweat glands, or sebaceous glands (Betts et al., 2013).

Sometimes, there is an overproduction of scar tissue, because the process of collagen formation does not stop when the wound is healed; this results in a **keloid**. In contrast, scars that result from acne and chickenpox have a sunken appearance and are called atrophic scars (Betts et al., 2013)

Scarring of skin after wound healing is a natural process and does not need to be treated further. The application of mineral oil and lotions may reduce the formation of scar tissue. However, modern cosmetic procedures, such as dermabrasion, laser treatments, and filler injections have been invented as remedies for severe scarring. All of these procedures try to reorganize the structure of the epidermis and underlying collagen tissue to make it look more natural (Betts et al., 2013).

Bedsore and Stretch Marks

Skin and its underlying tissue can be affected by excessive pressure. One example of this is called a bedsore. Bedsore, also called decubitus ulcers, are caused by constant, long-term, unrelieved pressure on certain body parts that are bony, reducing blood flow to the area and leading to **necrosis**. Bedsore are most common in elderly patients who have debilitating conditions that cause them to be immobile. Most hospitals and long-term

care facilities have the practice of turning the patients every few hours to prevent the incidence of bedsores. If left untreated bedsores can be fatal if they become infected (Betts et al., 2013)

The skin can also be affected by pressure associated with rapid growth. A stretch mark results when the dermis is stretched beyond its limits of elasticity, as the skin stretches to accommodate the excess pressure. Stretch marks usually accompany rapid weight gain during puberty and pregnancy. They initially have a reddish hue, but lighten over time. Other than for cosmetic reasons, treatment of stretch marks is not required. They occur most commonly over the hips and abdomen (Betts et al., 2013).

Calluses

When you wear shoes that do not fit well and are a constant source of abrasion on your toes, you tend to form a callus at the point of contact. This occurs because the basal stem cells in the stratum basale are triggered to divide more often to increase the thickness of the skin at the point of abrasion to protect the rest of the body from further damage. This is an example of a minor or local injury, and the skin manages to react and treat the problem independent of the rest of the body. Calluses can also form on your fingers if they are subject to constant mechanical stress, such as long periods of writing, playing string instruments, or video games. A corn is a specialized form of callus. Corns form from abrasions on the skin that result from an elliptical-type motion (Betts et al., 2013).

Integumentary System Medical Terms In Use

Medical Terms in Context: Consultation Report

Consultation Report (Text Version)

INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT

Fill in the consultation report with using the following words:

- Excisional
- Lesion
- Asymmetrical
- Mole
- Benign
- Biopsy
- Irregular

PATIENT NAME: Rosemary COOMBS

AGE: 54

Sex: Female

DOB: December 2

DATE OF CONSULTATION: May 29

REQUESTING PHYSICIAN: Trevor Sharpe, MD, Family Medicine

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Donna Brown, MD, Dermatology

HISTORY: This 54-year-old white female, went to her family doctor a year ago when she noticed a dark brown spot on her neck. The spot was a six cm, dark brown, flat _____[Blank 1] with smooth borders that appeared _____[Blank 2]. Ms. Coombs recently went to Dr. Sharpe for a physical and the _____[Blank 3] was examined, it was suggested that Ms. Coombs see me.

PAST HISTORY: No known history of any skin disorders.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: Normal except for the lesion on her chest which has grown to 1.3 cm in diameter and _____[Blank 4] in shape. It is mainly dark brown, with regions of darker black. The borders are _____[Blank 5] in outline. There is some blackened areas that are slightly elevated.

PLAN: I have booked a follow up appointment for next week to do an _____[Blank 6] biopsy. I will then send the specimen for a _____[Blank 7]. Another follow up appointment will be made once I receive the results of the biopsy.

Donna Brown, MD, Dermatology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Integumentary system – consultation report by Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Text version added.

Medical Terminology in Text

Medical Terminology (Text version)

Fill in the spaces below with the following terms:

- Xero
- o
- hidr
- rhytid
- ous
- genic

- logist
- o
- ectomy
- derma
- cutane
- itis
- ous
- o
- al
- necr

- o
- o
- plasty
- sis
- phagia
- tone
- trans
- sub
- cutane
- dermat

- derma
- kerat
- aden
- auto
- derm
- per
- onych
- dermat

_____[Blank 1a] / _____ [Blank 2a] / _____ [Blank 3a] / _____ [Blank 4a] refers to the surgical repair of one's own skin.

Something that generates the production of epidermal tissues might be called _____ [Blank 2a] / _____ [Blank 2b] / _____ [Blank 2b].

_____[Blank 3a] / _____ [Blank 3b] / _____ [Blank 3c] refers to something in state of death.

_____[Blank 4a] / _____ [Blank 4b] / _____ [Blank 4c] is a technical name for finger-biting.

_____[Blank 5a] / _____ [Blank 5b] / _____ [Blank 5c] means pertaining to through the skin.

_____[Blank 6a] / _____ [Blank 6b] / _____ [Blank 6c] injection is given under the skin.

During the winter months many people complain of _____ [Blank 7a] / _____ [Blank 7b] and use extra lotion.

A patch filled with medication, applied to the skin so that medication goes through the skin is referred to as a _____ [Blank 8a] / _____ [Blank 8b] / _____ [Blank 8c] patch.

An instrument use to cut the skin for biopsy is referred to as a _____ [Blank 9a] / _____ [Blank 9b].

A specialist who studies and treats disorders and diseases of the skin is referred to as a _____ [Blank 10a] / _____ [Blank 10b] / _____ [Blank 10b].

The medical term that means a sweat gland is inflamed is _____ [Blank 11a] / _____ [Blank 11b] / _____ [Blank 11c].

The medical term to excise wrinkles or commonly referred to as a facelift is _____ [Blank 12a] / _____ [Blank 12b].

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Integumentary Medical Terms by Jesslyn Wilkinson, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Integumentary System

A dermatologist is a medical doctor with specialized training in treating diseases, disorders and injuries related to the integumentary system and its accessory structures. There are many **dermatologic** subspecialties such as cosmetic dermatology, **dermatopathology**, and pediatric dermatology. To learn more visit the [Dermatology and Subspecialties section \[New Tab\]](#) of the Canadian Dermatology Association website.

Dermatologists can be specially trained to perform a procedure called Mohs surgery. Mohs surgery **excises** skin cancers in thin layers until all cancer is removed from the tissue (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2017).

Image Descriptions

Figure 3.9 image description: This figure consists of two photos. One photo shows a young woman on the phone. Her skin is smooth and unwrinkled. The other photo shows an elderly woman in the same posture while on the phone. The skin of her hands and forearms is wrinkled. [\[Return to Figure 3.9\].](#)

Figure 3.10 image description: Five photos of moles. The three upper photos show moles that are small, flat, and dark brown. The bottom left photo shows a dark black mole that is raised above the skin. The bottom right photo shows a large, raised, reddish mole with protruding hairs. [\[Return to Figure 3.10\].](#)

Figure 3.11 image description: The image shows a section of skin tissue with a raised reddened growth in a circular shape with irregular margins. The raised area is shiny. In this appearance the growth appears to be a basal cell carcinoma. [\[Return to Figure 3.11\]](#)

Figure 3.17 image description: This diagram depicts the percentage of the total body area burned when a victim suffers complete burns to regions of the body. Complete burning of the face, head and neck account for 19% of the total body area. Burning of the chest, abdomen and entire back above the waist accounts for 36% of the total body area. Anterior and posterior surfaces of the arms and hands account for 18% of the total body area (9% for each arm). The anterior and posterior surface of both legs, along with the buttocks, accounts for 36% of the total body area (18% for each leg). Finally, the anterior and posterior surfaces of the genitalia account for 1% of the total body area. [\[Return to Figure 3.17\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Integumentary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Integumentary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. Mole, 2. Benign, 3. Lesion, 4. Asymmetrical, 5. Irregular, 6. Excisional, 7. Biopsy
2. 1. Dermat /o /auto /plasty. 2. Kerat /o /genic. 3. Necr /o /sis. 4. Onych /o /phagia. 5. Per /cutane /ous. 6. Sub /cutane /ous. 7. Xero /derma. 8. Trans /derm /al. 9. Derma /tone. 10. Dermat /o /logist. 11. Hidr /aden /itis. 12. Rhytid /ectomy.

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Integumentary System Vocabulary

Adipocytes

Fat cells.

Adipose tissue

Fat tissue.

Autonomic nerve fibers

Unconsciously regulates communication to and from the brain.

Avascular

Without blood vessels.

Benign

Noncancerous, harmless.

Cancer

A process where abnormal cells in the body divide uncontrollably.

Cyanosis

Abnormal condition of blue (bluish colour, lips and nail beds). Typically caused by low oxygenation.

Debridement

Excision of damaged tissue or foreign object.

Dehydration

Loss of fluids/water is greater than what is taken in.

Dermatologic

Pertaining to dermatology.

Dermatopathology

Study of diseases of the skin.

Dermis

The layer of skin that is made of dense, irregular connective tissue that houses blood vessels, hair follicles, sweat glands, and other structures.

Epidermis

Outer layer of skin, made of closely packed epithelial cells.

Excises

Remove by cutting out.

Exocytosis

Active transport of molecules out of the cell.

Fascia

Fibrous tissue.

Frostbite

Conservation of core body heat results in the skin actually freezing.

Hypodermis

Literally means below the dermis. The layer of skin below the dermis that is composed mainly of loose connective and fatty tissues.

Infection

Invasion by disease-causing organisms.

Intravenous

Pertaining to within the vein.

Jaundiced

Yellow-coloured.

Keloid

Formation of a raised or hypertrophic scar.

Keratinocytes

Cells that manufacture and store the protein keratin.

Meissner corpuscle

Tactile corpuscle that responds to light and touch, touch receptor.

Meissner corpuscles

Tactile corpuscle that responds to light and touch, touch receptors.

Melanocytes

Specialized cells that produce melanin which is a dark pigment responsible for the colouration of skin and hair.

Metastasize

Production of cells that can mobilize and establish tumors in other organs of the body.

Necrosis

Tissue death.

Osteomalacia

Softening of the bones.

Pacinian corpuscle

Lamellated corpuscle that responds to vibration.

Pathogens

Disease-causing agents.

Phagocytes

Cells that engulf and absorb bacteria and cell particles.

Reticulated

Net like.

Rickets

A painful condition in children where bones are misshapen due to a lack of calcium, causing bow leggedness.

Scar

Collagen-rich skin formed after the process of wound healing that differs from normal skin.

Stratum Basale

Deepest layer of the epidermal.

Sympathetic nerve fibers

Flight or fight response determines communication to and from the brain.

Sympathetic Nervous System

Responsible for fight or flight responses.

Vascularized

Has numerous blood vessels.

Test Yourself

Integumentary System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Cells that manufacture and store the protein keratin are called _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Scar
 - b. Vascularized
 - c. Keratinocytes
2. The outer layer of skin, made of closely packed epithelial cells are called_____ [Blank 2].
 - a. Fascia
 - b. Adipocytes
 - c. Epidermis
3. Specialized cells that produce melanin which is a dark pigment responsible for the colouration of skin and hair are called_____ [Blank 3].
 - a. Necrosis
 - b. Melanocytes
 - c. Keloid
4. Deepest layer of the epidermal is the _____[Blank 4].
 - a. Dermis
 - b. Fascia
 - c. Stratum Basale
5. Production of cells that can mobilize and establish tumors in other organs of the body are called _____[Blank 5].
 - a. Pathogens
 - b. Debridement
 - c. Metastasize

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Integumentary System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon and Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Integumentary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Integumentary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Keratinocytes, 2. Epidermis, 3. Melanocytes, 4. Stratum Basale, 5. Metastasis

References

Canadian Association of Psoriasis Patients. (2020, December) *Psoriasis and inflammation*. Canadian Association of Psoriasis Patients. <https://www.canadianpsoriasis.ca/en/psoriasis/what-is-psoriasis/psoriasis-and-inflammation>

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2021, February 26). *Ringworm*. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Fungal Diseases. <https://www.cdc.gov/fungal/diseases/ringworm/definition.html>

CrashCourse. (2015, February 9). *The Integumentary system, part 1 – Skin deep: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #6* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/Orumw-PyNjw>

CrashCourse. (2015, February 16). *The Integumentary system, part 2 – Skin deep: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #7* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/EN-x-zXXVwQ>

Mayo Clinic Staff. (2022, August 23). *Mohs surgery*. Mayo Clinic. [https://www.mayoclinic.org/tests-procedures/mohs-surgery/about/pac-20385222#:~:text=Mohs%20surgery%20is%](https://www.mayoclinic.org/tests-procedures/mohs-surgery/about/pac-20385222#:~:text=Mohs%20surgery%20is%20)

CHAPTER 4: RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [4.1 – Introduction to the Respiratory System](#)
- [4.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Respiratory System](#)
- [4.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Respiratory System](#)
- [4.4 – Respiratory Diseases and Disorders](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

4.1 - Introduction to the Respiratory System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the respiratory system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the respiratory system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of respiratory system terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the respiratory system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic testing and procedures related to the respiratory system

Respiratory System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the respiratory system

Respiratory System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **an-** (absence of, without)
- **dys-** (difficult, painful, abnormal, laboured)
- **endo-** (Gr. within, in)
- **eu-** (normal, good)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **hypo-** (below, deficient, under)
- **intra-** (L. within, in)
- **poly-** (many, much)

- **tachy-** (fast, rapid)

Combining Form

- **adenoid/o** (adenoids)
- **alveol/o** (alveolus)
- **atel/o** (imperfect, incomplete)
- **bronch/o** (bronchus)
- **bronchi/o** (bronchus)
- **capn/o** (carbon dioxide)
- **diaphragmat/o** (diaphragm)
- **epiglott/o** (epiglottis)
- **hem/o** (blood)
- **hemat/o** (blood)
- **laryng/o** (larynx)
- **lob/o** (lobe)
- **muc/o** (mucus)
- **nas/o** (nose)
- **orth/o** (straight)
- **ox/i** (oxygen)
- **pharyng/o** (pharynx)
- **phon/o** (sound, voice)
- **phren/o** (diaphragm)
- **pleur/o** (pleura)
- **pneum/o** (lung, air)
- **pneumon/o** (lung, air)
- **penumat/o** (lung)
- **pulmon/o** (lung)
- **py/o** (pus)
- **radi/o** (x-rays, ionizing radiation)
- **respir/o** (breath, breathing)
- **rhin/o** (nose)
- **sept/o** (septum)
- **sinus/o** (sinus)
- **somn/o** (sleep)
- **son/o** (sound)
- **spir/o** (breathe, breathing)
- **thorac/o** (thorax, chest cavity, thoracic cavity)
- **tom/o** (to cut, section, slice)
- **tonsill/o** (tonsil)
- **trache/o** (trachea)

Suffix

- **-algia** (pain)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-ary** (pertaining to)
- **-cele** (hernia, protrusion)
- **-centesis** (surgical puncture to aspirate fluid)
- **-eal** (pertaining to)
- **-ectasis** (stretching out, dilation, expansion)
- **-emia** (in the blood)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graph** (instrument used to record)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-meter** (instrument used to measure)
- **-metry** (measurement)
- **-pexy** (surgical fixation, suspension)
- **-pnea** (breathing)
- **-rrhagia** (rapid flow of blood, excessive bleeding)
- **-scope** (instrument used for visual examination)
- **-scopic** (pertaining to visual examination)
- **-scopy** (process of visually examining, visual examination)
- **-spasm** (sudden involuntary muscle contraction, spasmodic contraction)
- **-stenosis** (constriction, narrowing)
- **-stomy** (creation of an artificial opening)
- **-thorax** (chest, chest cavity, thoracic cavity)
- **-tomy** (cut into, incision)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-ectomy** (excision, cut out)
- **-tome** (instrument used to cut)
- **-genic** (producing, originating, causing)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-ia** (condition, diseased state, abnormal state)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-logist** (specialist or physician who studies and treats)

Activity source: Respiratory System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). /Text version added.

Introduction to the Respiratory System

How long you can hold your breath as you continue reading? How long can you do it? Chances are you are feeling

uncomfortable already. A typical human cannot survive without breathing for more than three minutes, and even if you wanted to hold your breath longer, your **autonomic** nervous system would take control. Although oxygen is critical for cells, it is the accumulation of carbon dioxide that primarily drives your need to breathe.

Did You Know?

If you hold your breath for longer than 3 minutes, your autonomic nervous system will take control.

The major structures of the respiratory system function primarily provide oxygen to body tissues for cellular respiration, remove the waste product carbon dioxide, and help to maintain acid-base balance. Portions of the respiratory system are also used for non-vital functions, such as sensing odors, speech production, and for straining, such as coughing.

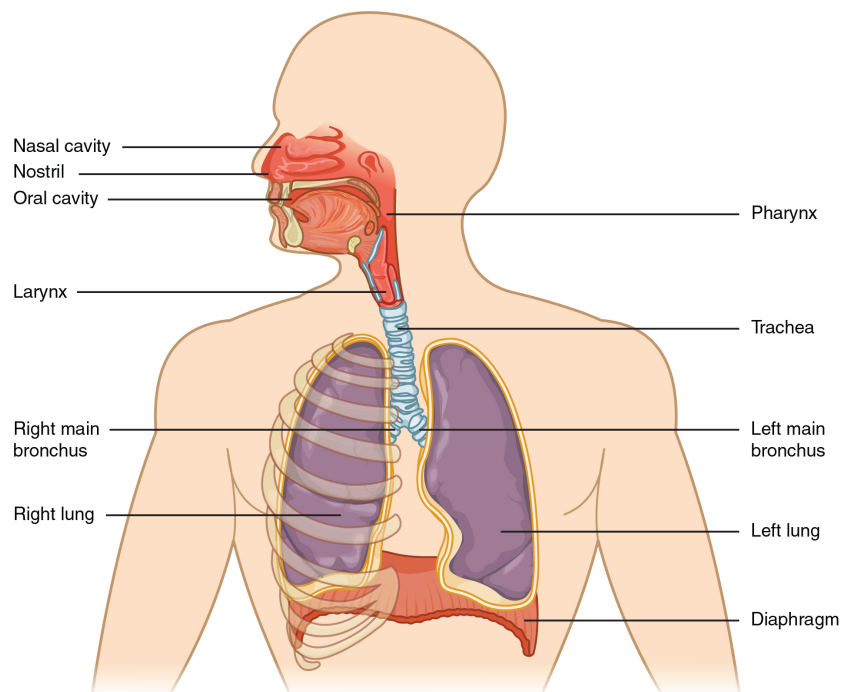


Figure 4.1 Major Respiratory Structures. The major respiratory structures span the nasal cavity to the diaphragm. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 4.1 Image description.](#)]

Watch [Respiratory system, Part 1: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #31 \(10 min on YouTube\)](#)

Respiratory System Medical Terms

Respiratory System Medical Terms (Text version)

1. **Adenoiditis**

- adenoid/itis
- inflammation of the adenoids

2. **adenoidectomy**

- adenoid/ectomy
- excision of the adenoids

3. **adenotome**

- aden/o/tome
- instrument used to cut the adenoids

4. **alveolitis**

- alveol/itis
- inflammation of the alveoli

5. **alveolar**

- alveol/ar
- pertaining to the alveolus

6. **atelectasis**

- atel/ectasis
- incomplete expansion

7. **bronchitis**

- bronch/itis
- inflammation of the bronchus

8. **bronchogenic carcinoma**

- bronch/o/genic carcin/oma
 - cancerous tumour originating in a bronchus (lung cancer)
9. **bronchopneumonia**
- bronch/o/pneumon/ia
 - diseased state of bronchi and lungs
10. **bronchoplasty**
- bronch/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the bronchi
11. **bronchoscope**
- bronch/o/scope
 - instrument used for visual examination of the bronchi
12. **bronchoscopy**
- bronch/o/scopy
 - visual examination of the bronchi
13. **bronchoalveolar**
- bronch/o/alveol/ar
 - pertaining to the bronchi and alveoli
14. **bronchospasm**
- bronch/o/spasm
 - spasmodic contraction of the bronchi
15. **bronchiectasis**
- bronchi/ectasis
 - dilation of the bronchi
16. **capnometer**
- capn/o/meter
 - instrument used to measure carbon dioxide
17. **acapnia**
- a/capn/ia
 - condition of absence (less than normal level) of carbon dioxide (in the blood)
18. **hypercapnia**

- hyper/capn/ia
 - condition of excessive (greater than normal levels) carbon dioxide (in the blood)
19. **hypocapnia**
- hypo/capn/ia
 - condition of deficient (low levels) of carbon dioxide (in the blood)
20. **diaphragmatocele**
- diaphragmat/o/cele
 - hernia of the diaphragm
21. **diaphragmatic**
- diaphragmat/ic
 - pertaining to the diaphragm
22. **epiglottitis**
- epiglott/itis
 - inflammation of the epiglottis
23. **hemothorax**
- hem/o/thorax
 - blood in the thoracic cavity
24. **hematology**
- hemat/o/logy
 - study of blood
25. **hematologist**
- hemat/o/logist
 - specialist in blood and blood disorders
26. **laryngotracheobronchitis (LTB)**
- laryng/o/trache/o/bronch/itis
 - inflammation of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi
27. **laryngoplasty**
- laryng/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the larynx
28. **laryngostomy**
- laryng/o/stomy

- creation of an artificial opening into the larynx
29. **laryngotracheotomy**
- laryng/o/trache/o/tomy
 - incision into the larynx and trachea
30. **laryngoscope**
- laryng/o/scope
 - instrument used for visual examination of the larynx
31. **laryngoscopy**
- laryng/o/scopy
 - process of viewing the larynx
32. **laryngeal**
- laryng/eal
 - pertaining to the larynx
33. **laryngospasm**
- laryng/o/spasm
 - spasmodic contraction of the larynx
34. **laryngitis**
- laryng/itis
 - inflammation of the larynx
35. **lobar pneumonia**
- lob/ar pneumon/ia
 - disease state of the lung pertaining to the lobe(s)
36. **lobectomy**
- lob/ectomy
 - excision of the lobe(s)
37. **muroid**
- muc/oid
 - resembling mucus
38. **mucous**
- muc/ous
 - pertaining to mucus

39. **nasopharyngitis**
- nas/o/pharyng/itis
 - inflammation of the nose and pharynx
40. **nasopharyngeal**
- nas/o/pharyng/eal
 - pertaining to the nose and pharynx
41. **orthopnea**
- orth/o/pnea
 - breathing is easier in a straight position
42. **anoxia**
- an/ox/ia
 - condition of absence (deficiency) of oxygen
43. **oximeter**
- oxi/meter
 - instrument used to measure oxygen
44. **hypoxemia**
- hyp/ox/emia
 - condition of deficient oxygen in the blood
45. **hypoxia**
- hyp/ox/ia
 - condition of deficient oxygen
46. **pharyngitis**
- pharyng/itis
 - inflammation of the pharynx
47. **aphonia**
- a/phon/ia
 - condition of absence of voice
48. **dysphonia**
- dys/phon/ia
 - condition of difficult speaking (voice)
49. **phrenalgia**

- phren/algia
 - pain in the diaphragm
50. **phrenospasm**
- phren/o/spasm
 - spasm of the diaphragm
51. **pleuritic**
- pleurit/ic
 - pertaining to the pleura
52. **pleuritis**
- pleur/itis
 - inflammation of the pleura
53. **pleuropexy**
- pleur/o/pexy
 - surgical fixation of the pleura
54. **interpleural**
- inter/pleur/al
 - pertaining to between the pleura (space between the pleural membranes)
55. **pneumoconiosis**
- pneum/o/coni/osis
 - abnormal condition of dust in the lungs
56. **pneumonia**
- pneumon/ia
 - diseased state of lung
57. **pneumonitis**
- pneumon/itis
 - inflammation of the lung
58. **pneumothorax**
- pneum/o/thorax
 - air in the thoracic cavity
59. **pneumonectomy**
- pneumon/ectomy

- excision of the lung
60. **pneumatocele**
- pneumat/o/cele
 - hernia of the lung
61. **pulmonary**
- pulmon/ary
 - pertaining to the lung(s)
62. **pyothorax**
- py/o/thorax
 - pus in the thoracic cavity
63. **radiography**
- radi/o/graphy
 - process of recording x-rays
64. **radiologist**
- radi/o/logist
 - physician who specializes in the diagnosis and treatment of disease using medical imaging
65. **radiology**
- radi/o/logy
 - study of the use of radiant energy in diagnosing disease
66. **respirologist**
- respir/o/logist
 - specialist who studies and treats disease and disorders related to breathing
67. **respirology**
- respir/o/logy
 - the study of breathing disorders and disease
68. **rhinitis**
- rhin/itis
 - inflammation of the nose
69. **rhinomycosis**
- rhin/o/myc/osis
 - abnormal condition of fungus in the nose

70. **rhinorrhagia**
- rhin/o/rrhagia
 - rapid flow of blood from the nose
71. **rhinoplasty**
- rhin/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the nose
72. **rhinorrhea**
- rhin/o/rrhea
 - discharge from the nose
73. **septoplasty**
- sept/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the septum
74. **septotomy**
- sept/o/tomy
 - incision into the (nasal) septum
75. **sinusitis**
- sinus/itis
 - inflammation of a sinus
76. **polysomnography (PSG)**
- poly/somn/o/graphy
 - process of recording many (test) during sleep
77. **sonogram**
- son/o/gram
 - the record of sound
78. **sonography**
- son/o/graphy
 - process of recording sound
79. **spirometer**
- spir/o/meter
 - instrument used to measure breathing (lung volume)
80. **spirometry**

- spir/o/metry
 - measuring breathing (air flow)
81. **thoracalgia**
- thorac/algia
 - pain in the chest, thorax
82. **thoracocentesis**
- thorac/o/centesis
 - surgical puncture to aspirate fluid (from the thoracic cavity)
83. **thoracentesis**
- thora/centesis
 - surgical puncture to aspirate fluid from thoracic cavity
84. **thoracotomy**
- thorac/o/tomy
 - incision into the thoracic cavity
85. **thoracoscopy**
- thorac/o/scopy
 - visual examination of the thoracic cavity
86. **thoracic**
- thorac/ic
 - pertaining to the chest, thorax
87. **thoracoscope**
- thorac/o/scope
 - instrument used to visualize the thoracic cavity
88. **tomography**
- tom/o/graphy
 - process of recording slices
89. **tonsillitis**
- tonsill/itis
 - inflammation of the tonsils
90. **tonsillectomy**
- tonsill/ectomy

- excision of the tonsils
91. **tracheitis**
- trache/itis
 - inflammation of the trachea
92. **tracheoplasty**
- trache/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the trachea
93. **tracheostomy**
- trache/o/stomy
 - creation of an artificial opening into the trachea
94. **tracheotomy**
- trache/o/tomy
 - incision into the trachea
95. **endotracheal**
- endo/trach/eal
 - pertaining to within the trachea
96. **tracheostenosis**
- trache/o/stenosis
 - narrowing of the trachea
97. **endoscope**
- endo/scope
 - instrument used to view within
(a hollow organ or cavity)
98. **endoscopic**
- endo/scopic
 - pertaining to view within
(a hollow organ or cavity)
99. **endoscopy**
- endo/scopy
 - visual examination within
(a hollow organ or cavity)
100. **apnea**

- a/pnea
- absence of breathing

101. **dyspnea**

- dys/pnea
- breathing that is difficult

102. **eupnea**

- eu/pnea
- normal breathing

103. **hypopnea**

- hypo/pnea
- deficient breathing

104. **tachypnea**

- tachy/pnea
- rapid breathing

Activity Source: Respiratory System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 4.1 image description: This figure shows the upper half of the human body. The major organs in the respiratory system are labeled. [\[Return to Figure 4.1\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Respiratory System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Respiratory System chapter content into sub-chapters.

4.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Respiratory System

The Nose and its Adjacent Structures

The major entrance and exit for the respiratory system is through the **nose**. When discussing the nose, it is helpful to divide it into two major sections:

- **external nose**
- **internal nose**

The **nares** open into the nasal cavity, which is separated into left and right sections by the nasal septum ([Figure 4.2](#)). The **nasal septum** is formed anteriorly by a portion of the **septal cartilage** and posteriorly by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone and the thin vomer bones.

Each lateral wall of the nasal cavity has three bony projections the inferior conchae are separate bones and the superior and middle conchae are portions of the ethmoid bone. **Conchae** increase the surface area of the nasal cavity and disrupt the flow of air as it enters the nose, causing air to bounce along the epithelium, where it is cleaned and warmed. The conchae and meatuses trap water during exhalation preventing dehydration.

The floor of the nasal cavity is composed of the **hard palate** and the **soft palate**. Air exits the nasal cavities via the internal nares and moves into the pharynx.

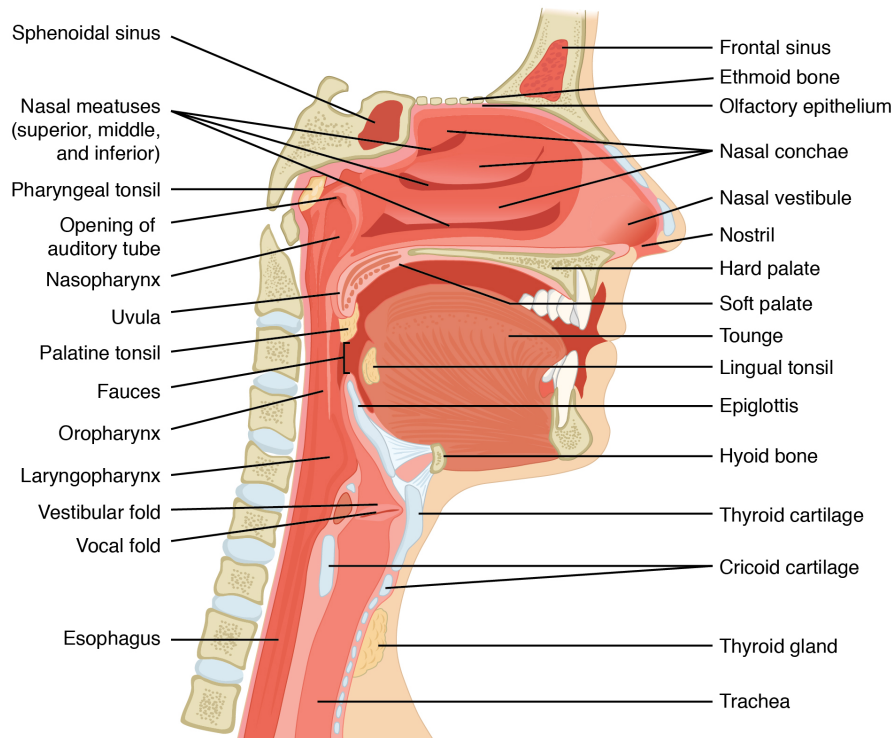


Figure 4.2 Upper Airway. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 4.2 Image description.](#)]

Paranasal sinuses serve to warm and humidify incoming air and are lined with a mucosa which produces mucus. Paranasal sinuses are named for their associated bone:

- frontal sinus
- maxillary sinus
- sphenoidal sinus
- ethmoidal sinus

The nares and anterior portion of the nasal cavities are lined with mucous membranes, containing sebaceous glands and hair follicles that serve to prevent the passage of large debris, such as dirt, through the nasal cavity. An olfactory epithelium used to detect odors is found deeper in the nasal cavity.

The conchae, meatuses, and paranasal sinuses are lined by respiratory epithelium composed of pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium ([Figure 4.3](#)). The epithelium contains specialized epithelial cells that produce mucus to trap debris. The cilia of the respiratory epithelium help to remove mucus and debris with a constant beating motion, sweeping materials towards the throat to be swallowed.

This moist epithelium functions to warm and humidify incoming air. Capillaries located just beneath the nasal epithelium warm the air by convection. Serous and mucus-producing cells also secrete **defensins**, immune cells patrol the connective tissue providing additional protection.

Did You Know 1?

Cold air slows the movement of cilia that may result in the accumulation of mucus leading to **rhinorrhea** during cold weather.

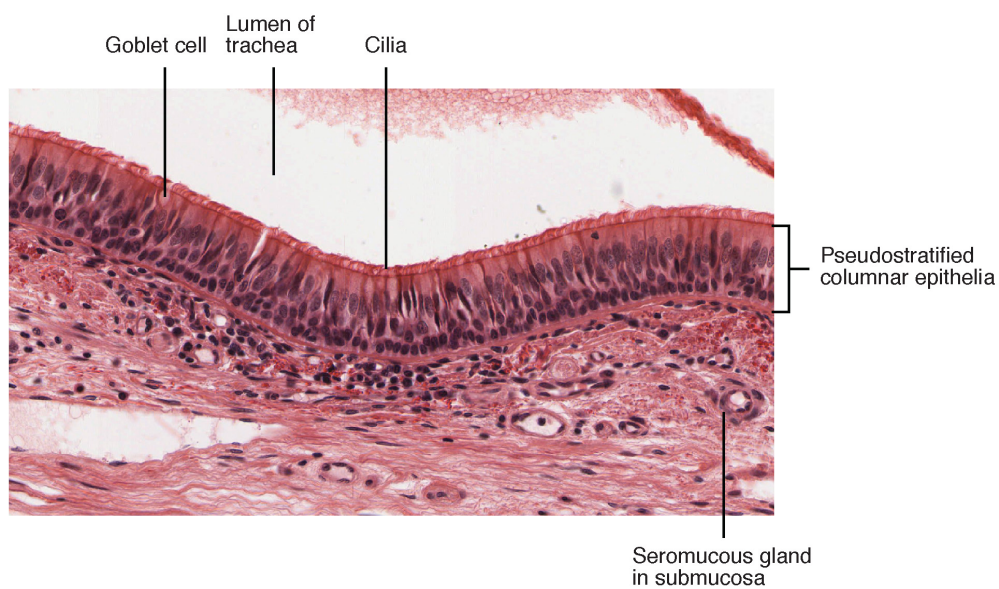


Figure 4.3 Pseudostratified Ciliated Columnar Epithelium. Respiratory epithelium is pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium. Seromucous glands provide lubricating mucus. LM \times 680. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 4.3 Image description.](#)]

Pharynx

The **pharynx** is divided into three major regions: the **nasopharynx**, the **oropharynx**, and the **laryngopharynx** (see [Figure 4.4](#)).

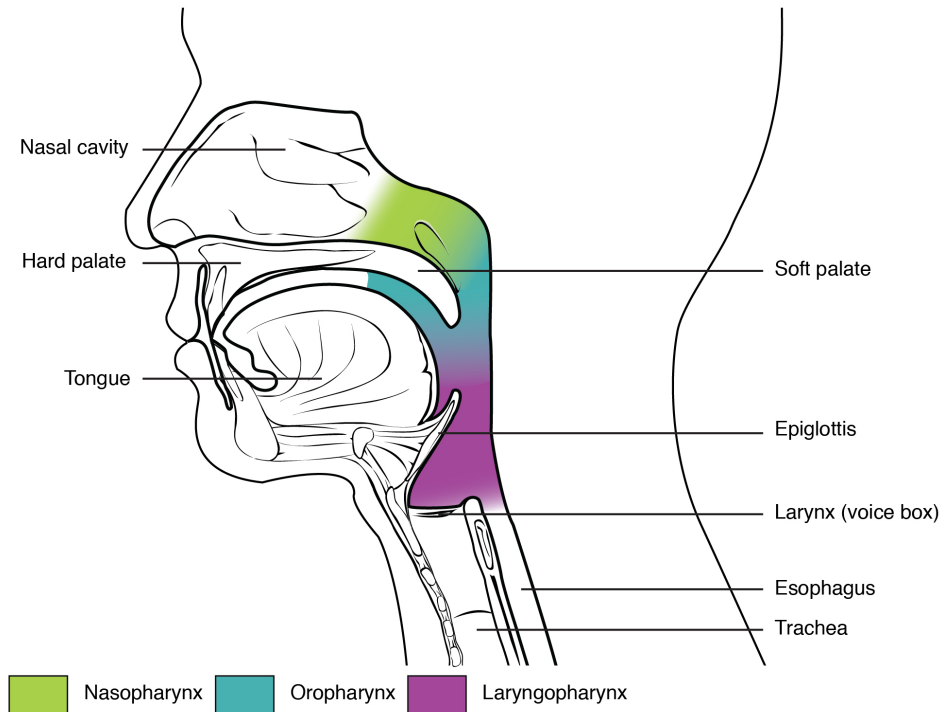


Figure 4.4 Divisions of the Pharynx. The pharynx is divided into three regions: the nasopharynx, the oropharynx, and the laryngopharynx. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [Fig. 4.4 Image description.]

At the top of the **nasopharynx** are the pharyngeal tonsils. The function of the **pharyngeal** tonsil is not well understood, but it contains a rich supply of **lymphocytes** and is covered with ciliated epithelium that traps and destroys invading pathogens that enter during inhalation. The pharyngeal tonsils are large in children, but tend to regress with age and may even disappear. The **uvula** and **soft palate** move like a pendulum during swallowing, swinging upward to close off the nasopharynx to prevent ingested materials from entering the nasal cavity. Auditory (Eustachian) tubes that connect to each middle ear cavity open into the nasopharynx. This connection is why colds often lead to ear infections.

The **oropharynx** is bordered superiorly by the **nasopharynx** and anteriorly by the oral cavity. The **oropharynx** contains two distinct sets of tonsils:

- The palatine tonsils.
 - A palatine tonsil is one of a pair of structures located laterally in the oropharynx in the area of the **fauces**.
- The lingual tonsils.
 - The **lingual** tonsil is located at the base of the tongue.

Similar to the pharyngeal tonsil, the palatine and **lingual** tonsils are composed of lymphoid tissue, and trap and destroy pathogens entering the body through the oral or nasal cavities.

The **laryngopharynx** is **inferior** to the oropharynx and **posterior** to the larynx. It continues the route for ingested

material and air until its **inferior** end, where the digestive and respiratory systems diverge. The stratified squamous epithelium of the oropharynx is continuous with the laryngopharynx. **Anteriorly**, the laryngopharynx opens into the larynx, whereas **posteriorly**, it enters the esophagus.

Larynx

The structure of the **larynx** is formed by several pieces of cartilage. Three large cartilage pieces form the major structure of the **larynx**.

- Thyroid cartilage (anterior):
 - The thyroid cartilage is the largest piece of cartilage that makes up the larynx. The thyroid cartilage consists of the **laryngeal** prominence, or “Adam’s apple,” which tends to be more prominent in males.
- Epiglottis (superior):
 - Three smaller, paired cartilages—the arytenoids, corniculates, and cuneiforms—attach to the **epiglottis** and the vocal cords and muscle that help move the vocal cords to produce speech.
- Cricoid cartilage (inferior):
 - The thick cricoid cartilage forms a ring, with a wide posterior region and a thinner anterior region.

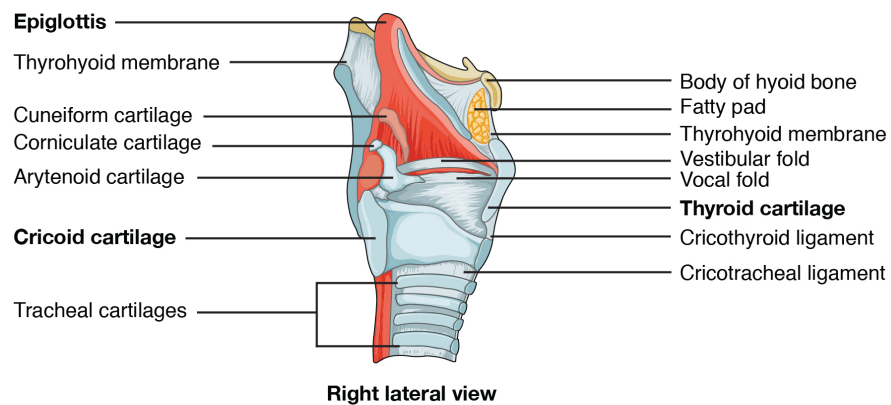
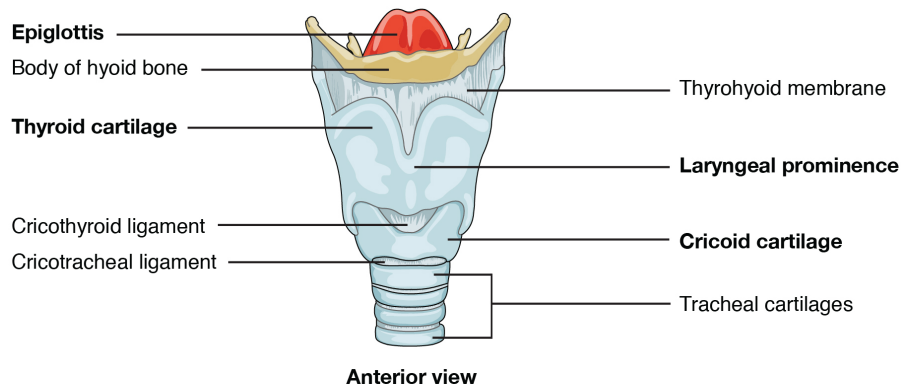


Figure 4.5 Larynx. The larynx extends from the laryngopharynx and the hyoid bone to the trachea. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 4.5 Image description.]

Did You Know 2?

Folds of the true vocal cords differ between individuals, resulting in voices with different pitches.

When the **epiglottis** is in the “closed” position, the unattached end of the epiglottis rests on the **glottis**. A vestibular fold, or false vocal cord, is one of a pair of folded sections of mucous membrane. A true vocal cord is one of the white, membranous folds attached by muscle to the thyroid and arytenoid cartilages of the larynx on their outer edges. The inner edges of the true vocal cords are free, allowing oscillation to produce sound.

The act of swallowing causes the pharynx and larynx to lift upward, allowing the pharynx to expand and the epiglottis of the larynx to swing downward, closing the opening to the trachea. These movements produce a larger area for food to pass through, while preventing food and beverages from entering the trachea.

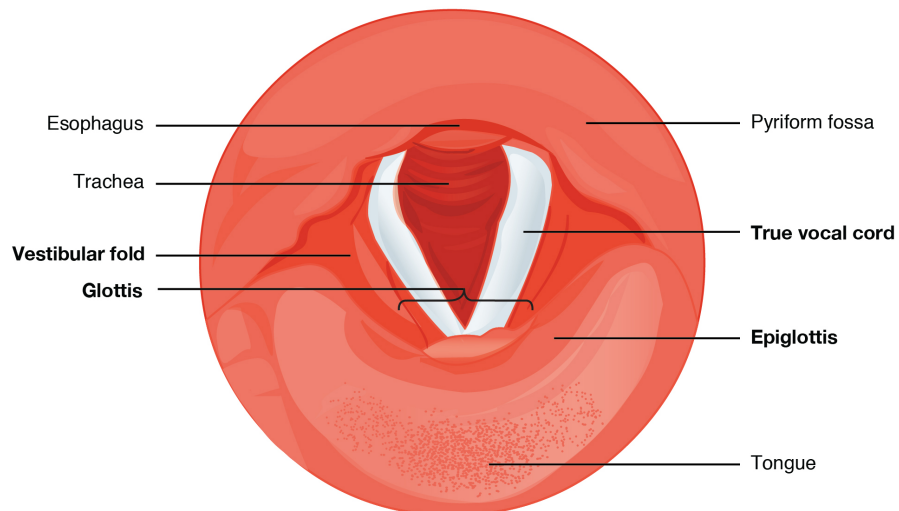


Figure 4.6 Vocal Cords. The true vocal cords and vestibular folds of the larynx are viewed inferiorly from the laryngopharynx. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [Fig. 4.6 Image description.]

Similar to the nasal cavity and nasopharynx, this specialized epithelium produces mucus to trap debris and pathogens as they enter the trachea. The cilia beat the mucus upward towards the laryngopharynx, where it can be swallowed down the esophagus.

Trachea

The **trachea** is formed by 16 to 20 stacked, C-shaped pieces of hyaline cartilage that are connected by dense connective tissue. The trachealis muscle and elastic connective tissue together form the **fibroelastic membrane**. The fibroelastic membrane allows the trachea to stretch and expand slightly during inhalation and exhalation, whereas the rings of cartilage provide structural support and prevent the trachea from collapsing. The trachealis muscle can be contracted to force air through the trachea during exhalation. The trachea is lined with pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium, which is continuous with the larynx. The esophagus borders the trachea **posteriorly**.

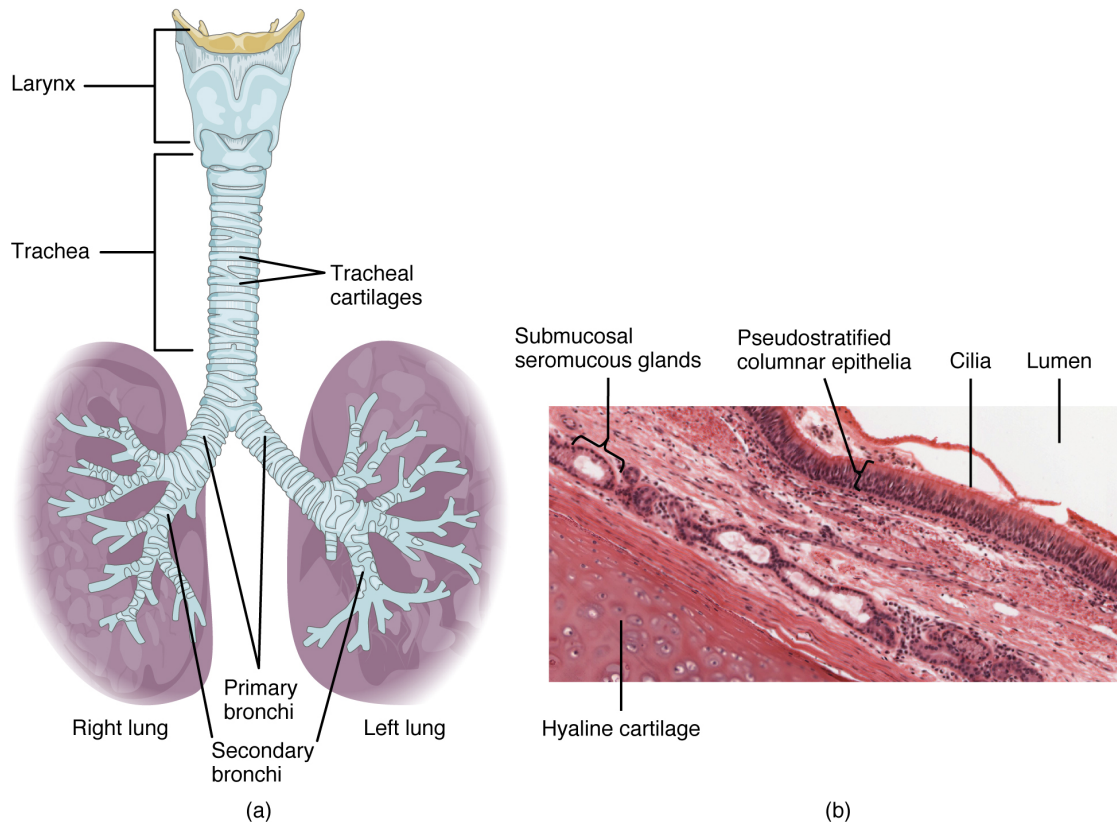


Figure 4.7 Trachea. (a) The tracheal tube is formed by stacked, C-shaped pieces of hyaline cartilage. (b) The layer visible in this cross-section of tracheal wall tissue between the hyaline cartilage and the lumen of the trachea is the mucosa, which is composed of pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium that contains goblet cells. LM $\times 1220$. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 4.7 Image description.](#)]

Bronchial Tree

The trachea branches into the right and left primary bronchi at the **carina**. These bronchi are also lined by pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium containing mucus-producing goblet cells ([Figure 4.7b](#)). The carina is a raised structure that contains specialized nervous tissue that induces violent coughing if a foreign body, such as food, is present. Rings of cartilage, similar to those of the trachea, support the structure of the bronchi and

prevent their collapse. The primary bronchi enter the lungs at the **hilum**. The bronchi continue to branch into bronchial a tree. A bronchial tree (or respiratory tree) is the collective term used for these multiple-branched bronchi. The main function of the bronchi, like other conducting zone structures, is to provide a passageway for air to move into and out of each lung. The mucous membrane traps debris and pathogens.

A bronchiole branches from the tertiary bronchi. Bronchioles, which are about 1 mm in diameter, further branch until they become the tiny terminal bronchioles, which lead to the structures of gas exchange. There are more than 1000 terminal bronchioles in each lung. The muscular walls of the bronchioles do not contain cartilage like those of the bronchi. This muscular wall can change the size of the tubing to increase or decrease airflow through the tube.

Respiratory Zone

In contrast to the **conducting zone**, the **respiratory zone** includes structures that are directly involved in gas exchange. The respiratory zone begins where the terminal bronchioles join a respiratory bronchiole, the smallest type of bronchiole (see [Figure 4.8](#)), which then leads to an alveolar duct, opening into a cluster of alveoli.

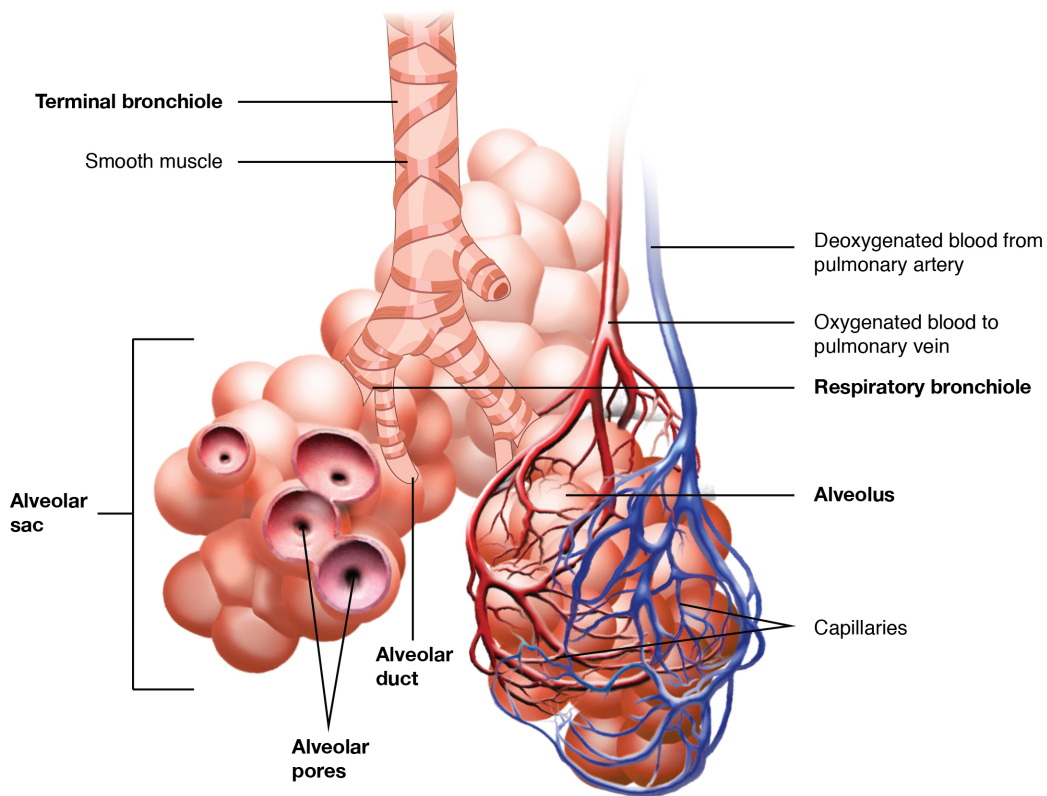


Figure 4.8 Respiratory Zone. Bronchioles lead to alveolar sacs in the respiratory zone, where gas exchange occurs. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 4.8 Image description.](#)]

Alveoli

An **alveolar duct** opens into a cluster of alveoli. An alveolus is one of the many small, grape-like sacs that are attached to the alveolar ducts. An alveolar sac is a cluster of many individual alveoli that are responsible for gas exchange. An alveolus is approximately 200 μm in diameter with elastic walls that allow the alveolus to stretch during air intake, which greatly increases the surface area available for gas exchange. Alveoli are connected to their neighbors by alveolar pores, which help maintain equal air pressure throughout the alveoli and lung (see [Figure 4.9](#)).

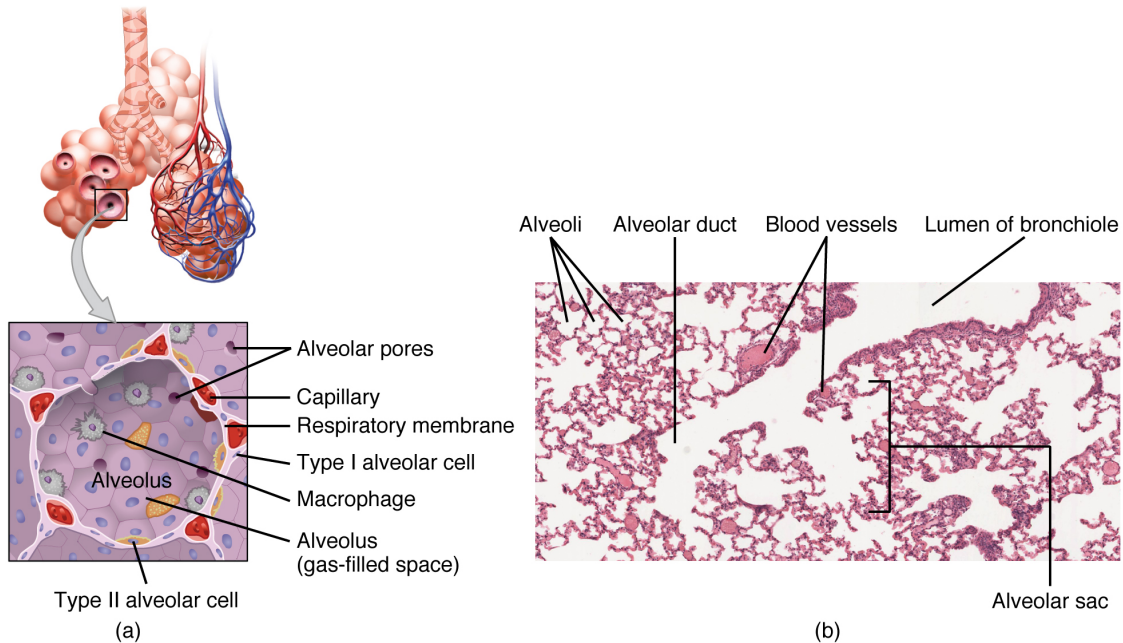


Figure 4.9 Structures of the Respiratory Zone. (a) The alveolus is responsible for gas exchange. (b) A micrograph shows the alveolar structures within lung tissue. LM $\times 178$. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \textcopyright 2012). From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 4.9 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check

- What are the components of the **bronchial** tree?
- What is the purpose of **cilia**?
- Where does **gas** exchange take place?

Gross Anatomy of the Lungs

The lungs are pyramid-shaped, paired organs that are connected to the trachea by the right and left bronchi; on the inferior surface, the lungs are bordered by the **diaphragm**. The lungs are enclosed by the pleurae, which are attached to the mediastinum. The right lung is shorter and wider than the left lung, and the left lung occupies a smaller volume than the right. The **cardiac notch** allows space for the heart (see [Figure 4.10](#)). The apex of the lung is the superior region, whereas the base is the opposite region near the diaphragm. The costal surface of the lung borders the ribs. The mediastinal surface faces the midline.

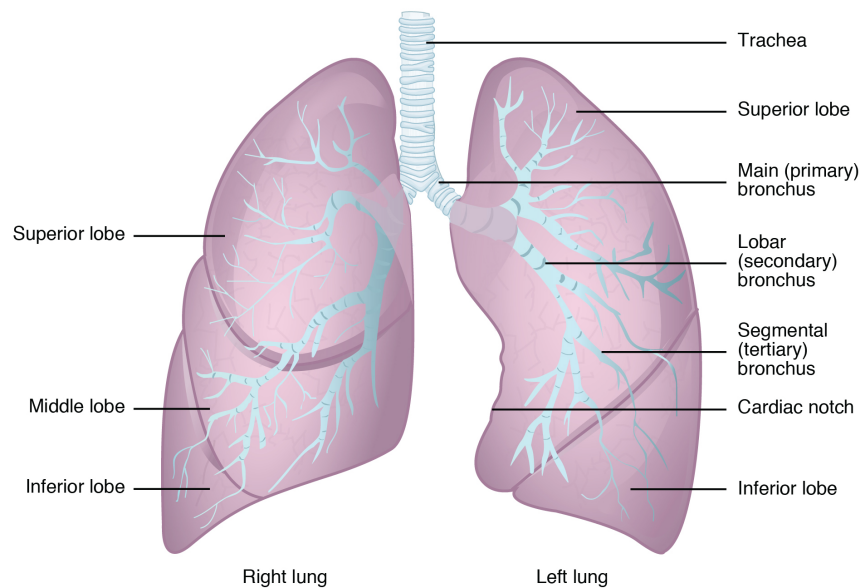


Figure 4.10 Gross Anatomy of the Lungs. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 4.10 Image description.](#)]

Each lung is composed of smaller units called lobes. Fissures separate these lobes from each other. The right lung consists of three lobes: the superior, middle, and inferior lobes. The left lung consists of two lobes: the superior and inferior lobes. A pulmonary lobule is a subdivision formed as the bronchi branch into bronchioles. Each lobule receives its own large bronchiole that has multiple branches. An interlobular septum is a wall, composed of connective tissue, which separates lobules from one another.

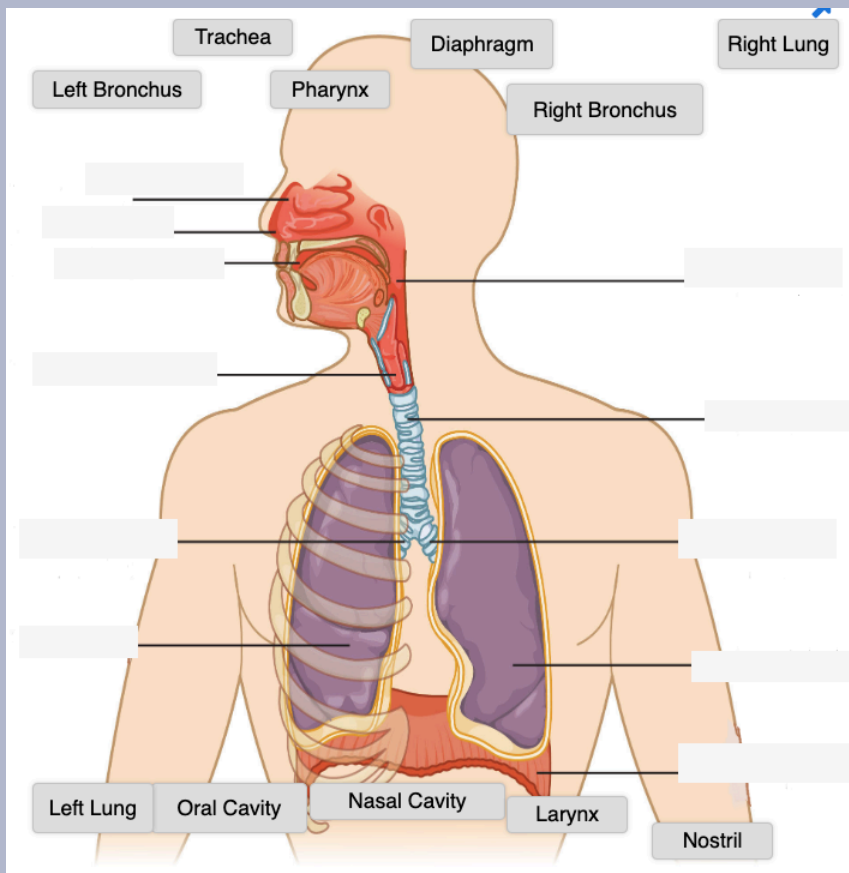
Labeling the Respiratory System

Can you correctly label the respiratory system structures?

Labeling the Respiratory System (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Left Bronchus | 5. Right Bronchus | 9. Nasal Cavity |
| 2. Trachea | 6. Right Lung | 10. Larynx |
| 3. Pharynx | 7. Left Lung | 11. Nostril |
| 4. Diaphragm | 8. Oral Cavity | |



Labeling the Respiratory System Diagram (Text version)

This is an anatomical diagram of the major organs and structure of the human respiratory system. Identified starting from the top of the diagram is the organs and structures which serve as a passageway for air and include, _____[Blank 1] which warms and moistens the air, the _____[Blank 2] where air enters the respiratory system and travels to the _____[Blank 3] also known as the mouth, from

the mouth the air moves to the _____[Blank 4], then to through the voice box correctly called the _____[Blank 5], and passes into the _____[Blank 6] often referred to as the windpipe. The trachea bifurcates meaning it separates into two anatomical branches each leading to each lung, on the right side is the _____[Blank 7], on the left side, the _____[Blank 8]. Air arrives at the lungs to allow for the exchange of gases arrives and enters on the right side into the _____[Blank 9] and on the left side the _____[Blank 10]. The muscular partition supporting the lungs known as the _____[Blank 11]. This detailed illustration supports understanding of the respiratory system's structure and function.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Respiratory System Anatomy by Kimberlee Carter, illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 4.2 image description: This figure shows a cross section view of the nose and throat. The major parts are labeled. [\[Return to Figure 4.2\]](#).

Figure 4.3 image description: This figure shows a micrograph of pseudostratified epithelium. [\[Return to Figure 4.3\]](#).

Figure 4.4 image description: This figure shows the side view of the face. The different parts of the pharynx are color-coded and labeled (from the top): nasal cavity, hard palate, soft palate, tongue, epiglottis, larynx, esophagus, trachea. [\[Return to Figure 4.4\]](#).

Figure 4.5 image description: The top panel of this figure shows the anterior view of the larynx, and the bottom panel shows the right lateral view of the larynx. [\[Return to Figure 4.5\]](#).

Figure 4.6 image description: This diagram shows the cross section of the larynx. The different types of cartilages are labeled (clockwise from top): pyriform fossa, true vocal cord, epiglottis, tongue, glottis, vestibular fold, trachea, esophagus. [\[Return to Figure 4.6\]](#).

Figure 4.7 image description: The top panel of this figure shows the trachea and its organs. The major parts including the larynx, trachea, bronchi, and lungs are labeled. [\[Return to Figure 4.7\]](#).

Figure 4.8 image description: This image shows the bronchioles and alveolar sacs in the lungs and depicts the exchange of oxygenated and deoxygenated blood in the pulmonary blood vessels. [\[Return to Figure 4.8\]](#).

Figure 4.9 image description: This figure shows the detailed structure of the alveolus. The top panel shows the alveolar sacs and the bronchioles. The middle panel shows a magnified view of the alveolus, and the bottom panel shows a micrograph of the cross section of a bronchiole. [\[Return to Figure 4.9\]](#).

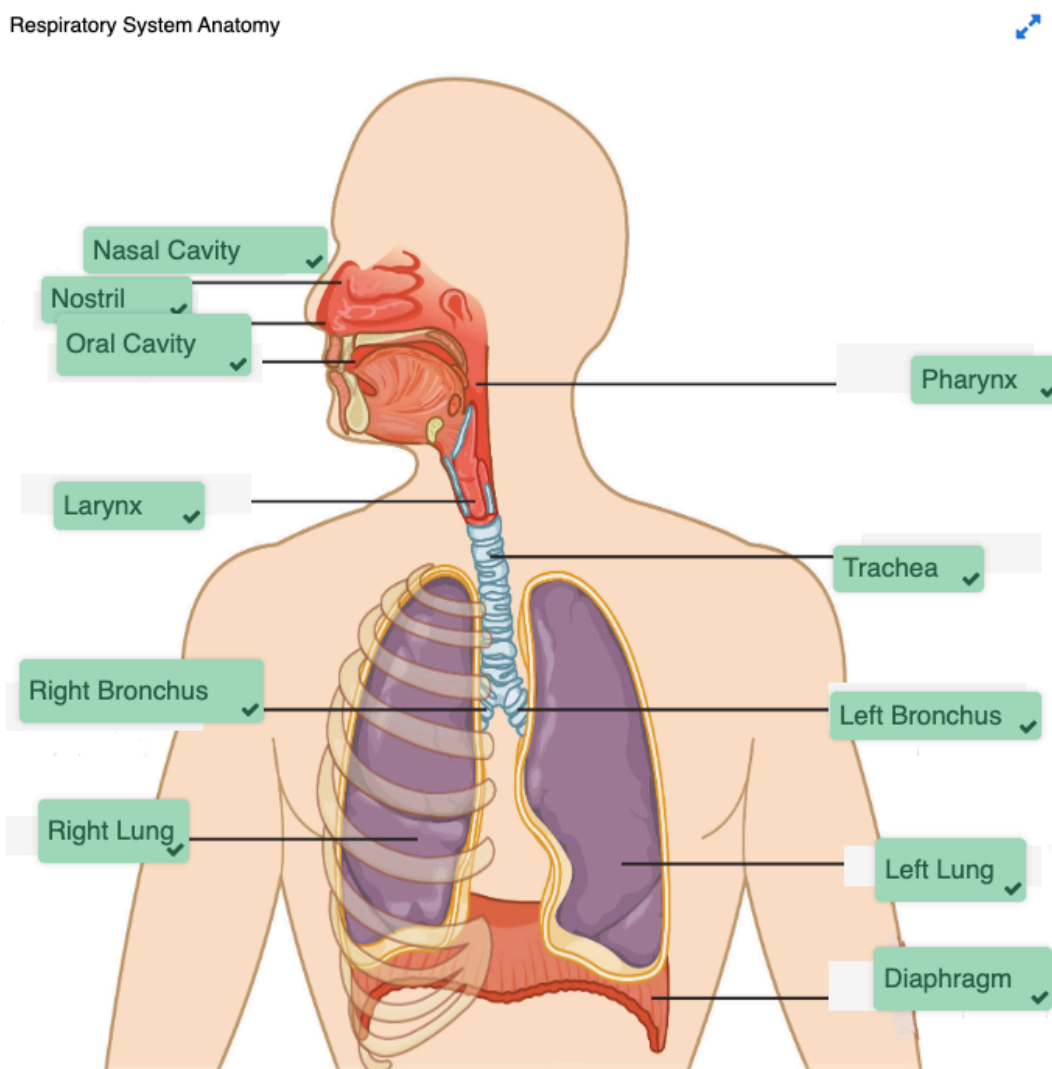
Figure 4.10 image description: Diagram of the lungs with the major parts labelled (from top, clockwise): trachea,

superior lobe, main bronchus, lobar bronchus, segmental bronchus, inferior lobe, inferior lobe, middle lobe, superior lobe of the left lung. [\[Return to Figure 4.10\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Respiratory System](#)” In [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Respiratory System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1. **Check your answers: Labeling the Respiratory System Diagram** This is an anatomical diagram of the major organs and structure

of the human respiratory system. Identified starting from the top of the diagram is the organs and structures which serve as a passageway for air and include, **nasal cavity** which warms and moistens the air, the **nostril** where air enters the respiratory system and travels to the **oral cavity** also known as the mouth, from the mouth the air moves to the **pharynx**, then through the voice box correctly called the **larynx**, and passes into the **trachea** often referred to as the windpipe. The trachea bifurcates meaning it separates into two anatomical branches each leading to each lung, on the right side is the **right main bronchus** branch, on the left side, the **left main bronchus**. Air arrives at the lungs to allow for the exchange of gases and enters on the right side into the **right lung** and on the left side the **left lung**. The muscular partition supporting the lungs known as the **diaphragm**. This detailed illustration supports understanding of the respiratory system's structure and function.

4.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Respiratory System

Blood Supply

The major function of the lungs is to perform gas exchange, which requires blood from the pulmonary circulation.

- This blood supply contains deoxygenated blood and travels to the lungs where **erythrocytes** pick up oxygen to be transported to tissues throughout the body.
- The **pulmonary artery** carries deoxygenated, arterial blood to the alveoli.
- The pulmonary artery branches multiple times as it follows the bronchi and each branch becomes progressively smaller in diameter.
- One arteriole and an accompanying venule supply and drain one pulmonary lobule. As they near the alveoli, the pulmonary arteries become the pulmonary capillary network.
- The pulmonary capillary network consists of tiny vessels with very thin walls that lack smooth muscle fibres.
- The capillaries branch and follow the bronchioles and structure of the alveoli. It is at this point that the capillary wall meets the alveolar wall, creating the respiratory membrane.
- Once the blood is oxygenated, it drains from the alveoli by way of multiple pulmonary veins, which exit the lungs through the **hilum**.

Nervous Innervation

The blood supply of the lungs plays an important role in gas exchange and serves as a transport system for gases throughout the body. Innervation by both the **parasympathetic** and **sympathetic** nervous systems provides an important level of control through dilation and constriction of the airway.

- The parasympathetic system causes bronchoconstriction.
- The sympathetic nervous system stimulates bronchodilation.

Reflexes such as coughing, and the ability of the lungs to regulate oxygen and carbon dioxide levels, also result from **autonomic** nervous system control. Sensory nerve fibres arise from the vagus nerve, and from the second to fifth thoracic ganglia. The pulmonary plexus is a region on the lung root formed by the entrance of the nerves at the hilum. The nerves then follow the bronchi in the lungs and branch to innervate muscle fibres, glands, and blood vessels.

Pleura of the Lungs

Each lung is enclosed within a cavity that is surrounded by the pleura. The pleura (plural = pleurae) is a serous membrane that surrounds the lung. The right and left pleurae, which enclose the right and left lungs, respectively, are separated by the mediastinum.

The pleurae consist of two layers:

1. The **visceral pleura** is the layer that is superficial to the lungs, and extends into and lines the lung fissures (see [Figure 4.11](#)).
2. The **parietal pleura** is the outer layer that connects to the thoracic wall, the mediastinum, and the diaphragm.

The visceral and parietal pleurae connect to each other at the **hilum**. The pleural cavity is the space between the visceral and parietal layers.

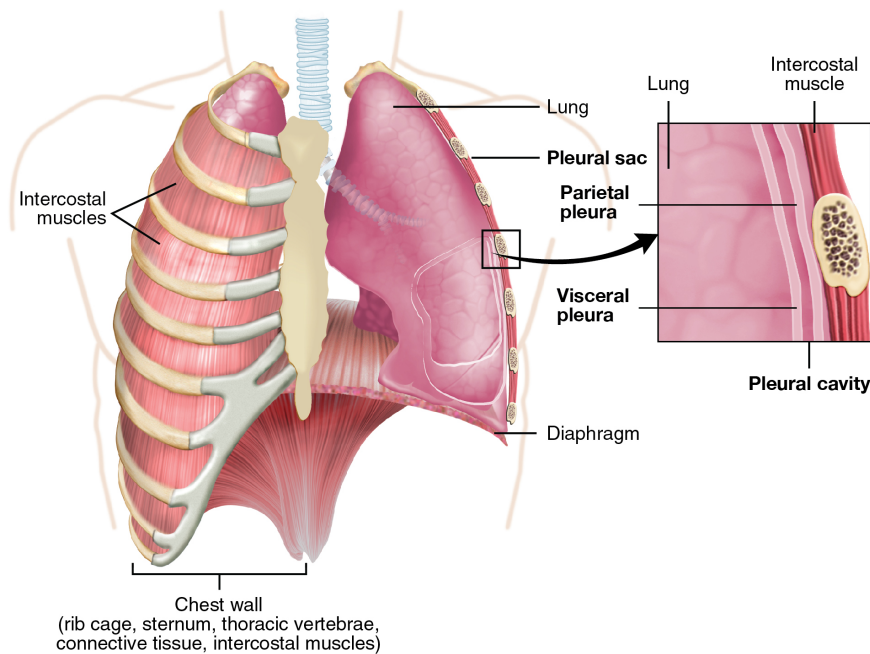


Figure 4.11 Parietal and Visceral Pleurae of the Lungs. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 4.11 Image description.](#)]

The pleurae perform two major functions:

1. **Produce pleural fluid** that lubricates surfaces, reduces friction to prevent trauma during breathing, and creates surface tension that helps maintain the position of the lungs against the thoracic wall. This adhesive characteristic of the pleural fluid causes the lungs to enlarge when the thoracic wall expands during ventilation, allowing the lungs to fill with air.
2. The pleurae also **create a division** between major organs that prevents interference due to the movement of the organs, while preventing the spread of infection.

Pulmonary Ventilation

The difference in pressures drives pulmonary ventilation because air flows down a pressure gradient, that is, air flows from an area of higher pressure to an area of lower pressure.

- Air flows into the lungs largely due to a difference in pressure; atmospheric pressure is greater than intra-alveolar pressure, and intra-alveolar pressure is greater than intrapleural pressure.
- Air flows out of the lungs during expiration based on the same principle; pressure within the lungs becomes greater than the atmospheric pressure.

Pulmonary ventilation comprises two major steps: **inspiration** and **expiration** (Figure 4.12). A respiratory cycle is one sequence of inspiration and expiration.

Two muscle groups are used during **normal inspiration**, the diaphragm and the external intercostal muscles. Additional muscles can be used if a bigger breath is required.

- The diaphragm contracts, it moves inferiorly toward the abdominal cavity, creating a larger thoracic cavity and more space for the lungs.
- The external intercostal muscles contract and moves the ribs upward and outward, causing the rib cage to expand, which increases the volume of the thoracic cavity.

Due to the adhesive force of the pleural fluid, the expansion of the thoracic cavity forces the lungs to stretch and expand as well. This increase in volume leads to a decrease in intra-alveolar pressure, creating a pressure lower than atmospheric pressure. As a result, a pressure gradient is created that drives air into the lungs.

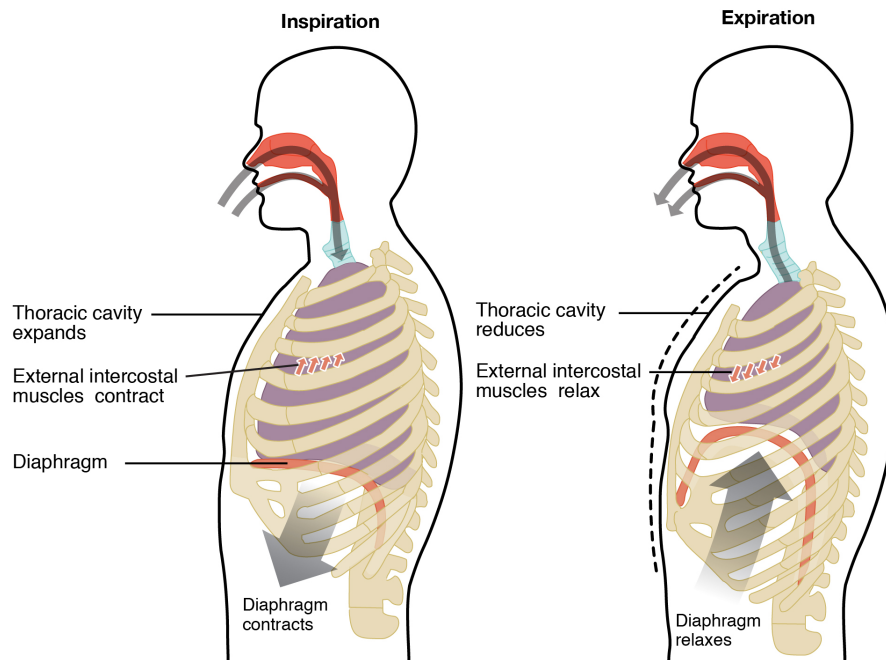


Figure 4.12 Inspiration and Expiration. Inspiration and expiration occur due to the expansion and contraction of the thoracic cavity, respectively. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 4.12 Image description.]

The process of **normal expiration** is passive, meaning that energy is not required to push air out of the lungs.

- The elasticity of the lung tissue causes the lung to recoil, as the diaphragm and intercostal muscles relax following inspiration.
- The thoracic cavity and lungs decrease in volume, causing an increase in interpulmonary pressure. The interpulmonary pressure rises above atmospheric pressure, creating a pressure gradient that causes air to leave the lungs.

There are different types, or modes, of breathing that require a slightly different process to allow inspiration and expiration:

- **Quiet breathing**, also known as **eupnea**, is a mode of breathing that occurs at rest and does not require the cognitive thought of the individual. During quiet breathing, the diaphragm and external intercostals must contract.
- **Diaphragmatic breathing**, also known as deep breathing, requires the diaphragm to contract. As the diaphragm relaxes, air passively leaves the lungs.
- **Costal breathing**, also known as a shallow breath, requires contraction of the intercostal muscles. As the intercostal muscles relax, air passively leaves the lungs.
- **Forced breathing**, also known as **hyperpnea**, is a mode of breathing that can occur during exercise or actions that require the active manipulation of breathing, such as singing.
 - During forced breathing, inspiration and expiration both occur due to muscle contractions. In addition to the contraction of the diaphragm and intercostal muscles, other accessory muscles must also contract.
 - During **forced inspiration**, muscles of the neck contract and lift the thoracic wall, increasing lung volume.
 - During **forced expiration**, accessory muscles of the abdomen contract, forcing abdominal organs upward against the diaphragm. This helps to push the diaphragm further into the thorax, pushing more air out. In addition, accessory muscles help to compress the rib cage, which also reduces the volume of the thoracic cavity.

Concept Check

- Breathing normally, place your hand on your stomach take in one full **respiratory** cycle.
 - What type of breathing are you doing?
- Keeping your hand on your stomach, take in one large breath and exhale.
 - What type of breathing are you doing?

- Complete 10 jumping jacks, once completed, place your hand on your stomach and take in one full respiratory cycle.
 - What type of breathing are you doing?

Respiratory Rate and Control of Ventilation

Breathing usually occurs without thought, although at times you can consciously control it, such as when you swim under water, sing a song, or blow bubbles. The respiratory rate is the total number of breaths that occur each minute. Respiratory rate can be an important indicator of disease, as the rate may increase or decrease during an illness or in a disease condition. The respiratory rate is controlled by the respiratory center located within the medulla oblongata in the brain, which responds primarily to changes in carbon dioxide, oxygen, and pH levels in the blood.

The normal respiratory rate of a child decreases from birth to adolescence:

- A child under 1 year of age has a normal respiratory rate between 30 and 60 breaths per minute.
- By the time a child is about 10 years old, the normal rate is closer to 18 to 30.
- By adolescence, the normal respiratory rate is similar to that of adults, 12 to 18 breaths per minute.

Did You Know?

Respiratory rate is the total number of breaths that occur each minute.

Watch [Respiratory System, Part 2: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #32 \(10:30 min\) on YouTube](#)

Respiratory System Words Not Easily Broken Down

Respiratory System Word Not Easily Broken Down (Text version)

1. **Epistaxis**

- nosebleed (rhinorrhagia)

2. **influenza (flu)**

- highly contagious viral infection effecting the respiratory tract

3. **pleural effusion**

- fluid in the pleural space
(caused by disease or trauma)

4. **pulmonary edema**

- fluid accumulation in alveoli and bronchioles
(related to heart failure)

5. **pulmonary embolism (PE)**

- blockage of pulmonary circulation to the lungs

6. **upper respiratory infection**

- infection of the nasal cavity, sinuses, pharynx and larynx

7. **stethoscope**

- instrument used to hear internal body sounds

8. **asphyxia**

- deprivation of oxygen to tissues, suffocation

9. **aspirate**

- suction of fluid, inhalation of fluid

10. **mucus**

- slimy liquid secreted by mucous membranes

11. **nebulizer**

- device that creates a mist for giving respiratory treatment or medication
12. **nosocomial infection**
 - infection acquired in hospital
 13. **sputum**
 - mucous secretion from lungs, bronchi, and trachea that is expelled through the mouth
 14. **ventilator**
 - mechanical device that assist with breathing

Activity Source: Respiratory System Word Not Easily Broken Down by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Common Respiratory Abbreviations

Learn more about common respiratory abbreviations below.

Common Respiratory Abbreviations

- **ABGs** (arterial blood gases)
- **AFB** (acid-fast bacilli)
- **ARDS** (acute respiratory distress syndrome)
- **C&S** (culture and sensitivity)
- **CAP** (community-acquired pneumonia)
- **CF** (cystic fibrosis)
- **CO₂** (carbon dioxide)
- **COPD** (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease)
- **CPAP** (continuous positive airway pressure)
- **CT** (computed tomography, computerized tomography)
- **CXR** (chest x-ray)
- **flu** (influenza)
- **IPF** (idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis)
- **LLL** (left lower lobe)

- **LTB** (laryngotracheobronchitis)
- **LUL** (left upper lobe)
- **O₂** (oxygen)
- **OSA** (obstructive sleep apnea)
- **PE** (pulmonary embolism)
- **PFM** (peak flow meter)
- **PFTs** (pulmonary function tests)
- **RLL** (right lower lobe)
- **RML** (right middle lobe)
- **RUL** (right upper lobe)
- **SOB** (shortness of breath)
- **TB** (tuberculosis)
- **URI** (upper respiratory infection)
- **BiPAP** (bilevel positive airway pressure)
- **CPT** (chest physiotherapy)
- **DPI** (dry powder inhaler)
- **IPPB** (intermittent positive-pressure breathing)
- **MDI** (metered-dose inhaler)
- **NIPPV** (non-invasive positive-pressure ventilator)
- **PEP** (positive expiratory pressure)
- **SVN** (small-volume nebulizer)
- **VAP** (ventilator-associated pneumonia)

Activity source: Respiratory System Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /
Converted to text.

Image Descriptions

Figure 4.11 image description: This figure shows the lungs and the chest wall, which protects the lungs, in the left panel. In the right panel, a magnified image shows the pleural cavity and a pleural sac. [\[Return to Figure 4.11\]](#).

Figure 4.12 image description: The left panel of this image shows a person inhaling air and the location of the thoracic muscles. The right panel shows the person exhaling air and the contraction of the thoracic cavity. [\[Return to Figure 4.12\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Respiratory System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative

of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Respiratory System chapter content into sub-chapters.

4.4 - Respiratory Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

A variety of diseases can affect the respiratory system, such as asthma, emphysema, chronic obstruction pulmonary disorder (COPD), and lung cancer. All of these conditions affect the gas exchange process and result in labored breathing and other difficulties (Betts, et al., 2013).

The Effects of Second-Hand Tobacco Smoke

The burning of a tobacco cigarette creates multiple chemical compounds that are released through mainstream smoke, which is inhaled by the smoker, and through sidestream smoke, which is the smoke that is given off by the burning cigarette. **Second-hand smoke**, which is a combination of sidestream smoke and the mainstream smoke that is exhaled by the smoker, has been demonstrated by numerous scientific studies to cause disease. At least **40 chemicals in sidestream smoke** have been identified that negatively impact human health, leading to the development of cancer or other conditions, such as immune system dysfunction, liver toxicity, cardiac **arrhythmias**, pulmonary **edema**, and neurological dysfunction. Tobacco and second-hand smoke are considered to be **carcinogenic**. Exposure to second-hand smoke can cause lung cancer in individuals who are not tobacco users themselves.

- It is estimated that the risk of developing lung cancer is increased by up to **30 percent in nonsmokers** who live with an individual who smokes in the house, as compared to nonsmokers who are not regularly exposed to second-hand smoke.
- **Children who live with an individual who smokes** inside the home have a larger number of lower respiratory infections, which are associated with hospitalizations, and a higher risk of sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS). Second-hand smoke in the home has also been linked to a greater number of ear infections in children, as well as worsening symptoms of asthma (Betts et al., 2013).

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)

COPD is a term used to represent a number of respiratory diseases including chronic bronchitis and emphysema. COPD is a **chronic** condition with most symptoms appearing in people in their mid 50s. Symptoms include shortness of breath, cough, and sputum production. Symptoms during flare ups or times of **exacerbation** may include green or brown mucus, increase in the viscosity or amount of mucus, chest pain, fever, swollen ankles, headaches, dizziness, and blue lips or fingers. There is no cure for COPD. Shortness of breath may be controlled with **bronchodilators**. The best plan is to avoid triggers and getting sick. Clients with COPD are advised to avoid people who are sick, get the flu shot and reduce their exposure to pollution and cigarette smoke. While there are several risk factors, 80% of cases are associated with cigarette smoking (Government of Canada, 2018). To learn more about COPD visit the [Public Health Agency of Canada's web page on COPD \[New Tab\]](#).

Asthma

Asthma is a common chronic condition that affects all age groups. In 2011/2012, there were 3.8 million Canadians diagnosed with asthma and a disproportionate number of children and youth (Government of Canada, 2018). To learn more, visit the [Asthma in Canada Data Blog \[New Tab\]](#). Asthma is a chronic disease characterized by inflammation, **edema** of the airway, and bronchospasms which can inhibit air from entering the lungs. Bronchospasms can lead to an “asthma attack.” An attack may be triggered by environmental factors such as dust, pollen, pet hair, or dander, changes in the weather, mold, tobacco smoke, and respiratory infections, or by exercise and stress (Betts, et al., 2013).

Symptoms of an asthma attack involve coughing, shortness of breath, wheezing, and tightness of the chest. Symptoms of a severe asthma attack require immediate medical attention and may include **dyspnea** that results in **cyanotic** lips or face, confusion, drowsiness, a rapid pulse, sweating, and severe anxiety. The severity of the condition, frequency of attacks, and identified triggers influence the type of medication that an individual may require. Longer-term treatments are used for those with more severe asthma. Short-term, fast-acting drugs that are used to treat an asthma attack are typically administered via an inhaler. For young children or individuals who have difficulty using an inhaler, asthma medications can be administered via a nebulizer (Betts, et al., 2013).

Lung Cancer

Lung cancer is a leading cause of cancer death among both males and females in Canada, with 98% occurring in adults over 50. Symptoms often appear in the late stages, with 50% being diagnosed at stage IV (Government of Canada, 2019a). Symptoms may include shortness of breath, wheezing, blood in the mucus, chronic chest infections, **dysphagia**, pleural effusion, and enlarged lymph nodes. There are two types of lung cancer: **small cell lung cancer (SCLC)**, linked to cigarette smoking, grows quickly and metastasizes; **non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC)** is more common and grows slowly. Changes in lung cells may lead to **benign** tumours or **malignant** tumours. Cancers that start in other parts of the body may metastasize to the lungs. Risk factors include smoking, air pollution, family history of exposure to second-hand smoke, exposure to radon gas, and exposure to carcinogens (Government of Canada, 2019). Treatment will depend on the type of lung cancer and the stage at diagnosis. Treatments may include surgery, chemotherapy, targeted therapy, immunotherapy, and radiation therapy (Government of Canada, 2019).

Sleep Apnea

Sleep apnea is a **chronic** disorder that occurs in children and adults. It is characterized by the **cessation** of breathing during sleep. These episodes may last for several seconds or several minutes, and may differ in the frequency with which they are experienced. Sleep apnea leads to poor sleep. Symptoms include fatigue, evening napping, irritability, memory problems, morning headaches, and excessive snoring. A diagnosis of sleep apnea is usually done during a sleep study, where the patient is monitored in a sleep laboratory for several nights. Treatment of sleep apnea commonly includes the use of a device called a **continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) machine** during sleep. The CPAP machine has a mask that covers the nose, or the nose and mouth, and

forces air into the airway at regular intervals. This pressurized air can help to gently force the airway to remain open, allowing more normal ventilation to occur (Betts et al., 2013).

Respiratory System Medical Terms in Use

Respiratory System History and Physical

Respiratory System History and Physical (Text Version)

Fill in the consultation report with correct words listed below:

- Exert
- Edema
- diuretic
- membranes
- HEENT
- apnea
- heart failure
- lobes
- inspiration
- allergens
- breath
- erythema
- monitor
- asthma
- edema

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM – HISTORY & PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

PATIENT NAME: Randy BURNS

AGE: 56

DOB: July 2

SEX: Male

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN: Joyce Mathers, MD, Pulmonology

HISTORY: This 56-year-old male is presenting with a 2-week history of worsening dyspnea not associated with exertion. The patient states that he does not have to _____[Blank 1] himself for his breathing to get difficult. He feels that “he cannot get his breath” sometimes even with lying in bed. He does report developing a cold and runny nose over the last 10 days, but the worsened breathing seemed to have started a few days earlier than this. He reports that the shortness of _____[Blank 2] has progressively gotten worse in the past 2-3 days. Patient does not report any leg or foot _____[Blank 3].

PAST HISTORY: The patient has a life history of asthma triggered by environmental _____[Blank 4] – grass cutting, trees budding in the spring, street dust etc. He has used a puffer when he has symptoms since he was a child. He has a history of congestive _____[Blank 5] (CHF) and sleep _____[Blank 6] for which he uses a CPAP machine nightly.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: GENERAL APPEARANCE: The patient appears laboring in breathing. He is quite distressed. VITAL SIGNS: Temperature 97.1, pulse 88, blood pressure 121/86, weight 209 pounds, height 5 feet 8 inches. _____[Blank 7] : Eye exam PERRLA. Normocephalic, atraumatic. Moist mucous _____[Blank 8]. No oropharyngeal _____[Blank 9]. No signs of infection. Tongue is coated but tonsils are clear. NECK: Supple. No lymphadenopathy. No bruits. LUNGS: There is marked wheezing on

_____ [Blank 10] bilaterally. Some minimal evidence of consolidation in the lower _____ [Blank 11] bilaterally. No rales or rubs. CARDIAC: Irregular rate and rhythm, variable S1 and S2. EXTREMITIES: Some pedal and ankle _____ [Blank 12] noted in low extremities. No cyanosis or clubbing.

ASSESSMENT AND PLAN

1. Acute shortness of breath with a history of allergic _____ [Blank 13]. Rule out upper respiratory infection (URI). Will order chest x-ray stat.
2. Atrial fibrillation. Patient has a controlled rate. Will administer one dose of Lovenox overnight.
3. Mild symptoms of CHF due to lower extremity edema. Will administer Aldactone to bring this under control. Will _____ [Blank 14] the patient's diuretic volume.
4. Plan to admit patient overnight for observation to await stat CXR result and to monitor the effects of _____ [Blank 15] and anticoagulant therapies.

Joyce Mathers, MD, Pulmonology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Respiratory System History and Physical by Sheila Bellefeuille and Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). / Text version added.

Respiratory System Consultation Report

Respiratory System Consultation Report (Text Version)

Fill in the consultation report with correct words listed below:

- Oxygen
- pleura
- basal
- hemoptysis
- dyspnea
- thoracostomy
- q. d.
- COPD
- antibiotics
- wheezing
- atelectasis

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Wayne SAUNDERS

AGE: 59

DOB: September 7

SEX: Male

DATE OF CONSULTATION: March 29

CONSULTANT: Joyce Mathers, MD, Pulmonology

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Sudden onset dyspnea and respiratory distress.

HISTORY: This garrulous 59-year-old was seen in the ER today with a complaint of sudden onset _____[Blank 1] and some respiratory distress. Denies any nausea, vomiting, chest pain, _____[Blank 2], cough, fever or chills.

PAST HISTORY: Is positive for asthma and _____[Blank 3] as patient is a lifelong smoker at 1+ packs per day.

ASSESSMENT: CHEST has good air entry bilaterally. No _____[Blank 4]. Bilateral _____[Blank 5] crackles are noted. Some dullness to percussion on the left. CT scan was ordered and shows a left _____ [Blank 6] effusion and acute pneumothorax due to infectious process. Probable comprehensive _____[Blank 7].

MEDICATIONS

1. Adalat 30 mg _____[Blank 8].
2. Atenolol 50 mg (half dose) q.d.
3. Flonase 50 mcg one spray on each side q.d.
4. Zolof 100 mg once q.d.

PLAN

1. Admit patient to the unit for treatment and possible left _____[Blank 9] if indicated by lack of improvement on standard therapy.
2. Treat with a course of _____[Blank 10] for the URI.
3. _____[Blank 11] therapy if indicated by O2 sats.
4. Repeat CT scan in 48 hours.

Joyce Mathers, MD, Pulmonology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Respiratory System Consultation Report by Sheila Bellefeuille and Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). / Text version added.

Respiratory System Consultation Report

Respiratory System Consultation Report (Text Version)

Fill in the consultation report with correct words listed below:

- Kidney
- respiratory
- childhood
- urinalysis
- shadowing
- mid-thoracic
- pulmonary
- hepatotoxic
- x-ray
- apex
- dyspnea
- flu shot
- myoplasmal
- rasping
- rhinorrhea
- expiration
- rales
- vaccine

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Mateo DIAZ

AGE: 22

DOB: June 25

SEX: Male

DATE OF CONSULTATION: April 16

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Joyce Mathers, MD Pulmonology

HISTORY: This 22-year-old Hispanic gentleman is referred to me for a 2-week history of new rasping cough associated with a dull right _____[Blank 1] intercostal discomfort. He has some associated _____[Blank 2] on exertion but is otherwise well with no presenting symptoms of a cold or _____[Blank 3] infection. No fever, sputum or _____[Blank 4].

PAST HISTORY: He has a history of _____[Blank 5] asthma that seemed to disappear after he hit his mid-20s. He has a history of extensive travel for work and leisure and most recently was on a work trip to Wuhan, China in late December. He receives a _____[Blank 6] annually and did have the most recent _____[Blank 7] in October 2019.

His physical exam is relatively unremarkable. Blood pressure is 120/83, respirations 12. Temperature normal at 37. Chest exam is CTA with no _____[Blank 8], rhonchi or wheezes. Even on a forced exhalation, we could not reproduce the _____[Blank 9] cough symptom.

ASSESSMENT: A PA and lateral chest _____[Blank 10] revealed a new infiltrate and _____[Blank 11]

along the left mid-lung margin all the way to the _____[Blank 12]. Spirometry showed normal pressures on forced _____[Blank 13].

PLAN

1. Rule out _____[Blank 14] pneumonia versus other lung infection or infiltrates such as granulomatosis, aspergillosis or sarcoidosis.
2. CBC with differential, chem panel, ESR, ACE, and mycoplasma titres.
3. Repeat full function tests (PFTs) in 2 weeks.

If required, will treat with Amphotericin B, Tosufloxacin, Macrolide or similar. If any of these treatments are indicated, weekly LFTs and _____[Blank 15] function testing will be required as these classes of drugs is notoriously _____[Blank 16] and nephrotoxic.

I will see the patient again in approximately 4 days to review the results and decide on a course of action – more testing or appropriate treatments as indicated above.

Joyce Mathers, MD Pulmonology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ³

Activity source: Respiratory System Consultation Report by Sheila Bellefeuille and Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Respiratory System

Respiratory Medicine (Respirology)

Respiratory medicine is concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of diseases related to the respiratory system. Respiratory medicine requires in-depth knowledge of internal medicine. A physician who specializes in respirology is called a respirologist. Physicians specialize with three years in either adult or pediatric respiratory medicine in addition to three-years core training in internal medicine or pediatric medicine (Canadian Medical Association, 2018). For more information, visit the [Canadian Medical Association's information page on respirology \[PDF\]](#).

Respiratory Therapists (RTs)

Respiratory Therapists (RTs) are health care professionals that monitor, assess, and treat people who are having problems breathing. RTs are regulated, which means they must be a member of the College of Respiratory Therapists of Ontario to work as an RT in Ontario. RTs are trained in ventilation and airway management, cardiopulmonary resuscitation, oxygen and aerosol therapy. They care for patients during cardiac stress-testing, pulmonary function testing, smoking cessation, high-risk births, rehabilitation, and surgery. They treat patients with asthma, bronchitis, COPD, emphysema, heart disease, and pneumonia (College of Respiratory Therapists of Ontario, n.d.). For more information, visit the College of Respiratory Therapist's [College of Respiratory Therapist's What is a Respiratory Therapist? \[New Tab\]](#) web page.

Thoracic Surgeon

A thoracic surgeon refers to a surgeon who has specialized in either thoracic (chest) surgery or cardiothoracic (heart and chest) surgery and cares for or performs surgery for patients with serious conditions of the thorax (London Health Sciences Centre, 2020). To learn more, visit the [London Health Science Centre's Welcome to Thoracic Surgery web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Spirometry Testing

Spirometry testing is used to find out how well lungs are working by measuring air volume.

- **Respiratory volume** describes the amount of air in a given space within the lungs, or which can be moved by the lung, and is dependent on a variety of factors.
- **Tidal volume** refers to the amount of air that enters the lungs during quiet breathing, whereas inspiratory reserve volume is the amount of air that enters the lungs when a person inhales past the tidal volume.
- **Expiratory reserve volume** is the extra amount of air that can leave with forceful expiration following tidal expiration.
- **Residual volume** is the amount of air that is left in the lungs after expelling the expiratory reserve volume.
- **Respiratory capacity** is the combination of two or more volumes.
- **Anatomical dead space** refers to the air within the respiratory structures that never participates in gas exchange, because it does not reach functional alveoli.
- **Respiratory rate** is the number of breaths taken per minute, which may change during certain diseases or conditions.

Both respiratory rate and depth are controlled by the respiratory centres of the brain, which are stimulated by factors such as chemical and pH changes in the blood. These changes are sensed by central chemoreceptors, which are located in the brain, and peripheral chemoreceptors, which are located in the aortic arch and carotid arteries. A rise in carbon dioxide or a decline in oxygen levels in the blood stimulates an increase in respiratory rate and depth (Betts, et al., 2013).

Watch [Spirometry \(5 min\) on YouTube](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Respiratory System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Respiratory System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. Exert, 2. Breath, 3. Edema, 4. Allergens, 5. Heart failure, 6. Apnea, 7. HEENT, 8. Membranes, 9. Erythema, 10. Inspiration, 11. Lobes, 12. Edema, 13. Asthma, 14. Monitor, 15. Diuretic
1. Dyspnea, 2. Hemoptysis, 3. COPD, 4. Wheezing, 5. Basal, 6. Pleural, 7. atelectasis, 8. q. d., 9. Thoracostomy, 10. Antibiotics, 11. Oxygen
1. Mid-thoracic, 2. Dyspnea, 3. Respiratory, 4. Rhinorrhea, 5. Childhood, 6. Flu-shot, 7. Vaccine, 8. Rales, 9. Rasping, 10. X-ray, 11. Shadowing, 12. Apex, 13. Expiration, 14. Myoplasmal, 15. Urinalysis, 16. Pulmonary, 17. Kidney, 18. Hepatotoxic.

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Respiratory System Vocabulary

Alveolar Duct

A tube composed of smooth muscle and connective tissue.

Anteriorly

Pertaining to front.

Autonomic

Unconsciously regulates.

Benign

Non-cancerous.

Bronchodilators

Substance that dilates the bronchi and bronchioles.

Carcinogenic

Causing cancer.

Cardiac Notch

The cardiac notch is an indentation on the surface of the left lung.

Carina

The carina is a ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi.

Cessation

Stop or stopping.

Chronic

A condition that lasts over a long time with periods of exacerbation and periods of remission.

Conducting Zone

The major functions of the conducting zone are to provide a route for incoming and outgoing air, remove debris and pathogens from the incoming air, and warm and humidify the incoming air. Several structures within the conducting zone perform other functions as well. The epithelium of the nasal passages, for example, is essential to sensing odors, and the bronchial epithelium that lines the lungs can metabolize some airborne carcinogens.

Cyanotic

Pertaining to abnormal colour of blue (bluish colour, lips and nail beds) caused by deoxygenation.

Defensins

The lysozyme enzyme and proteins which have antibacterial properties.

Diaphragm

A flat, dome shaped muscle located at the base of the lungs and thoracic cavity.

Dyspnea

Difficulty breathing.

Epiglottis

The epiglottis, attached to the thyroid cartilage, is a very flexible piece of elastic cartilage that covers the opening of the trachea.

Erythrocytes

Red blood cells.

Eupnea

Normal breathing.

Expiration

Exhalation or the process of causing air to leave the lungs.

External nose

The external nose consists of the surface and skeletal structures that result in the outward appearance of the nose and contribute to its numerous functions.

Fauces

The fauces is the opening at the connection between the oral cavity and the oropharynx.

Fibroelastic Membrane

A fibroelastic membrane is a flexible membrane that closes the posterior surface of the trachea, connecting the C-shaped cartilages.

Glottis

The glottis is composed of the vestibular folds, the true vocal cords, and the space between these folds.

Hard Palate

The hard palate is located at the anterior region of the nasal cavity and is composed of bone.

Hilum

The hilum is a ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi. A concave region where blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves also enter the lungs.

Hyperpnea

Forced breathing or breathing that is excessive.

Inferior

Pertaining to below.

Inspiration

Inhalation or process of breathing air into the lungs.

Laryngeal

Pertaining to the larynx.

Laryngopharynx

The laryngopharynx borders the oropharynx, trachea, and esophagus.

Larynx

The larynx is a cartilaginous structure inferior to the laryngopharynx that connects the pharynx to the trachea and helps regulate the volume of air that enters and leaves the lungs. Also known as the voice box.

Lingual

Pertaining to the tongue.

Lymphocytes

Lymphocytes are lymph cells, a type of white blood cell.

Malignant

Cancerous.

Nasopharynx

The nasopharynx serves as an airway and is continuous with the nasal cavity.

Oropharynx

The oropharynx is a passageway for both air and food and borders the nasopharynx and the oral cavity.

Pharyngeal

Pertaining to the pharynx.

Pharyngeal Tonsils

A pharyngeal tonsil, also called an adenoid, is an aggregate of lymphoid reticular tissue similar to a lymph node that lies at the superior portion of the nasopharynx.

Pharynx

The pharynx is a tube formed by skeletal muscle and lined by mucous membrane that is continuous with that of the nasal cavities. Also known as the throat.

Posterior

Pertaining to behind.

Pulmonary Artery

The pulmonary artery is the artery that arises from the pulmonary trunk.

Respiratory Zone

The respiratory zone includes structures that are directly involved in gas exchange.

Rhinorrhea

Excessive flow or discharge from the nasal cavity (runny nose).

Septal Cartilage

The flexible portion you can touch with your fingers.

Soft Palate

The soft palate is located at the posterior portion of the nasal cavity and consists of muscle tissue.

Sympathetic

Flight or fight response.

Trachea

The trachea (windpipe) extends from the larynx toward the lungs.

Uvula

The uvula is a small bulbous, teardrop-shaped structure located at the apex of the soft palate.

Test Yourself

Respiratory System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text Version)

1. A small bulbous, teardrop-shaped structure located at the apex of the soft palate is called the _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Lymphocytes
 - b. Posterior
 - c. Uvula
2. Located at the anterior region of the nasal cavity and is composed of bone is the _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Glottis
 - b. Fauces
 - c. Hard Palate
3. A ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi is called the _____[Blank 3].
 - a. Carina
 - b. Eupnea
 - c. Alveolar Duct
4. _____[Blank 4] serves as an airway and is continuous with the nasal cavity.
 - a. Conducting zone
 - b. Nasopharynx
 - c. Hilum
5. _____[Blank 5] consists of the surface and skeletal structure that result in the outward appearance of the nose and contribute to its numerous functions.
 - a. Pharynx
 - b. Inferior
 - c. External nose

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Respiratory System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Respiratory System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Respiratory System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Uvula, 2. Hard Palate, 3. Carina, 4. Nasopharynx, 5. External nose

References

- Canadian Cancer Society. (2020, May). *Treatments for non-small cell lung cancer*. Cancer Information. <https://www.cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/cancer-type/lung/treatment/?region=on>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Respirology profile*. Canadian Specialty Profiels. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/respirology-e.pdf>
- College of Respiratory Therapists of Ontario. (n.d.). *What is a respiratory therapist?*. <https://www.crto.on.ca/public/what-is-respiratory-therapy/>
- CrashCourse. (2015, August 24). *Respiratory system, part 1: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #31* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/bHZsvBdUC2I>
- CrashCourse. (2015, August 31). *Respiratory system, part 2: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #32* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/Cqt4LjHnMEA>
- freshwaterl. (2009, September 11). *Spirometry* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/y9eiVqddVV0>
- Government of Canada. (2018, May 1). *Asthma in Canada*. Data Blog, Government of Canada. <https://health-infobase.canada.ca/datalab/asthma-blog.html>
- Government of Canada. (2019, December 9). *Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)*. Public Health Agency of Canada. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/chronic-diseases/chronic-respiratory-diseases/chronic-obstructive-pulmonary-disease-copd.html>
- Government of Canada. (2021, March 17). *Lung cancer in Canada*. Public Health Agency of Canada. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/publications/diseases-conditions/lung-cancer.html>
- Government of Canada. (2023, August 11). *Lung cancer*. Public Health Agency of Canada. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/chronic-diseases/cancer/lung-cancer.html>
- London Health Sciences Centre. (2020). *Welcome to thoracic surgery*. <https://www.lhsc.on.ca/thoracic-surgery/welcome-to-thoracic-surgery>

CHAPTER 5: URINARY SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [5.1 – Introduction to the Urinary System](#)
- [5.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Urinary System](#)
- [5.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Urinary System](#)
- [5.4 – Urinary Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

5.1 - Introduction to the Urinary System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the urinary system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the urinary system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of urinary system medical terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the urinary system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Urinary System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the urinary system.

Urinary System Word Parts

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **an-** (absence of, without)
- **dia-** (through, complete)
- **dys-** (painful, abnormal, difficult, laboured)
- **poly-** (many, much)

Combining Forms

- **albumin/o** (albumin)
- **azot/o** (urea, nitrogen)
- **blast/o** (developing cell, germ cell)
- **cyst/o** (bladder, sac)

- **glomerul/o** (glomerulus)
- **glyc/o** (sugar)
- **glycos/o** (sugar)
- **hydr/o** (water)
- **lith/o** (stone, calculus)
- **meat/o** (meatus)
- **nephr/o** (kidney)
- **noct/i** (night)
- **olig/o** (few, scanty)
- **pyel/o** (renal pelvis)
- **ren/o** (kidney)
- **ureter/o** (ureter)
- **urethr/o** (urethra)
- **urin/o** (urine, urinary tract)
- **ur/o** (urine, urinary tract)
- **vesic/o** (bladder, sac)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-ary** (pertaining to)
- **-cele** (hernia, protrusion)
- **-emia** (in the blood)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graph** (instrument used to record)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-iasis** (condition)
- **-esis** (condition)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-lith** (stone)
- **-lysis** (loosening, dissolution, separating)
- **-megaly** (enlarged, enlargement)
- **-oma** (tumour, swelling)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition)
- **-ptosis** (drooping, sagging, prolapse)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing, repairing)
- **-scope** (instrument used for visual examination)
- **-scopic** (pertaining to visual examination)
- **-scopy** (visual examination)
- **-stomy** (creation of an artificial opening)
- **-tomy** (cut into, incision)
- **-tripsy** (surgical crushing)
- **-uria** (urine, urination)

Activity source: Urinary System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Introduction to the Urinary System

The urinary system has roles you may be well aware of. Cleansing the blood and ridding the body of wastes probably come to mind. However, there are additional, equally important functions, played by the system. For example, regulation of **pH**, a function shared with the lungs and the buffers in the blood. Additionally, the regulation of blood pressure is a role shared with the heart and blood vessels. What about regulating the concentration of **solutes** in the blood? Did you know that the kidney is important in determining the concentration of red blood cells? Eighty-five percent of the erythropoietin (EPO) produced to stimulate red blood cell production is produced in the kidneys. The kidneys also perform the final synthesis step of vitamin D production, converting calcidiol to calcitriol, the active form of vitamin D. If the kidneys fail, these functions are compromised or lost altogether, with devastating effects on **homeostasis**.

Watch [Urinary System, Part 1: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #38 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Urinary System Medical Terms

Urinary System Medical Terms

1. **albuminuria**

- albumin/uria
- albumin in the urine

2. **azotemia**

- azot/emia
- urea in the blood

3. **cystectomy**

- cyst/ectomy
- excision of the bladder

4. **cystolithotomy**

- cyst/o/lith/o/tomy
- incision into the bladder to remove stone(s)

5. **cystorrhaphy**

- cyst/o/rrhaphy
- suturing the bladder

6. **cystostomy**

- cyst/o/stomy
- creation of an artificial opening into the bladder

7. **cystotomy**

- cyst/o/tomy
- incision into the bladder

8. **cystogram**

- cyst/o/gram
- radiographic image of the bladder

9. **cystography**

- cyst/o/graphy
- radiographic imaging of the bladder

10. **cystoscope**

- cyst/o/scope
- instrument used for visual examination of the bladder

11. **cystoscopy**

- cyst/o/scopy
- visual examination of the bladder

12. **cystitis**

- cyst/itis
- inflammation of the bladder

13. **cystocele**

- cyst/o/cele
- protrusion of the bladder

14. **cystolith**

- cyst/o/lith
 - stone(s) in the bladder
15. **glomerulonephritis**
- glomerul/o/nephr/itis
 - inflammation of the gomeruli of the kidney
16. **glycosuria**
- glycos/uria
 - sugar (glucose) in the urine
17. **hydronephrosis**
- hydro/nephr/osis
 - abnormal condition of water in the kidney
18. **lithotripsy**
- lith/o/tripsy
 - surgical crushing of stone(s)
19. **meatotomy**
- meat/o/tomy
 - incision into the meatus
20. **meatal**
- meat/al
 - pertaining to the meatus
21. **nephritis**
- nephr/itis
 - inflammation of the kidney
22. **nephrolithiasis**
- nephr/o/lith/iasis
 - condition of stone(s) in the kidney
23. **nephroma**
- nephr/oma
 - tumour of kidney
24. **nephromegaly**
- nephr/o/megaly

- enlarged kidney
- 25. **nephroptosis**
 - nephr/o/ptosis
 - drooping kidney
- 26. **nephrectomy**
 - nephr/ectomy
 - excision of the kidney
- 27. **nephrolitotomy**
 - nephr/o/lith/o/tomy
 - incision into the kidney to remove stone(s)
- 28. **nephrolithotripsy**
 - nephr/o/lith/o/tripsy
 - surgical crushing of stone(s) in the kidney
- 29. **nephrolysis**
 - nephr/o/lysis
 - separating the kidney (from body structures)
- 30. **nephropexy**
 - nephr/o/pexy
 - surgical fixation of the kidney
- 31. **nephrostomy**
 - nephr/o/stomy
 - creation of an artificial opening into the kidney
- 32. **nephrography**
 - nephr/o/graphy
 - radiographic imaging of the kidney
- 33. **nephroscopy**
 - nephr/o/scopy
 - process of viewing the kidney
- 34. **nephrosonography**
 - nephr/o/son/o/graphy
 - process of recording the kidney using sound

35. **nephrologist**
- nephr/o/logist
 - specialist who studies and treats disease and disorders of the kidney
36. **nephrology**
- nephr/o/logy
 - study of the kidney
37. **nocturia**
- noct/uria
 - night urination
38. **oliguria**
- olig/uria
 - scanty urine (output)
39. **pyelitis**
- pyel/itis
 - inflammation of the renal pelvis
40. **pyelonephritis**
- pyel/o/nephr/itis
 - inflammation of the renal pelvis and the kidney
41. **pyelolithotomy**
- pyel/o/lith/o/tomy
 - incision into the renal pelvis
42. **pyeloplasty**
- pyel/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the renal pelvis
43. **renogram**
- ren/o/gram
 - radiographic record of the kidney
44. **ureteritis**
- ureter/itis
 - inflammation of the ureter
45. **ureterectomy**

- ureter/ectomy
 - excision of the ureter
46. **ureterostomy**
- ureter/o/stomy
 - creation of an artificial opening into the ureter
47. **ureterocele**
- ureter/o/cele
 - protrusion of a ureter
48. **ureterolithiasis**
- ureter/o/lith/iasis
 - condition of stone(s) in the ureter
49. **ureterostenosis**
- ureter/o/stenosis
 - narrowing of the ureter
50. **ureteroscopy**
- ureter/o/scopy
 - visual examination of the ureter(s)
51. **urethrocystitis**
- urethr/o/cyst/itis
 - inflammation of the urethra and the bladder
52. **anuria**
- an/uria
 - absence of urine
53. **diuresis**
- di/ur/esis
 - condition of urine passing through
(increased excretion of urine)
54. **dysuria**
- dys/uria
 - difficult or painful urine
55. **urinary**

- urin/ary
 - pertaining to urine
56. **retrograde urogram**
- retrograde ur/o/gram
 - radiographic image of the urinary tract
57. **ureteroscopy**
- ureter/o/scopy
 - visual examination of the ureter(s)
58. **urogram**
- ur/o/gram
 - radiographic image of the urinary tract
59. **hematuria**
- hemat/uria
 - blood in the urine
60. **polyuria**
- poly/uria
 - excessive urine
61. **pyuria**
- py/uria
 - pus in the urine
62. **urinary**
- urin/ary
 - pertaining to urine
63. **urologist**
- ur/o/logist
 - physician who studies and treats diseases of the urinary tract
64. **urology**
- ur/o/logy
 - study of the urinary tract
65. **vesicotomy**
- vesic/o/tomy

- incision into the bladder

Activity Source: Urinary System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Urinary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Urinary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

5.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Urinary System

Kidney(s)

The kidneys lie on either side of the spine in the retroperitoneal space between the parietal peritoneum and the posterior abdominal wall, well protected by muscle, fat, and ribs. They are roughly the size of your fist. The male kidney is typically a bit larger than the female kidney. The kidneys are well vascularized, receiving about twenty-five percent of the cardiac output at rest. [Figure 5.1](#) displays the location of the kidneys.

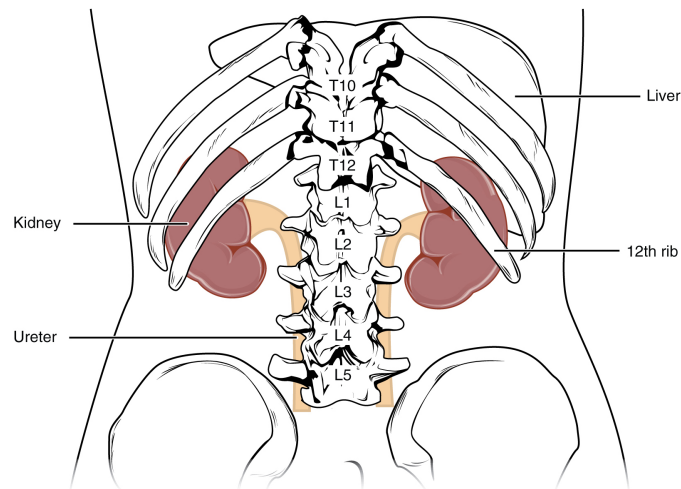


Figure 5.1 Kidneys. The kidneys are slightly protected by the ribs and are surrounded by fat for protection (not shown). From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Did You Know?

The right kidney is smaller than the left. It also sits slightly lower to make room for the liver located on the right side of your body.

Kidneys' Internal Structure

A frontal section through the kidney reveals an outer region called the renal cortex and an inner region called the **medulla** (see [Figure 5.2](#)). The **renal columns** are connective tissue extensions that radiate downward from the cortex through the medulla to separate the most characteristic features of the medulla, the **renal pyramids** and **renal papillae**. The papillae are bundles of collecting ducts that transport urine made by nephrons to the **calyces** of the kidney for **excretion**. The renal columns also serve to divide the kidney into 6–8 lobes and provide a supportive framework for vessels that enter and exit the cortex. The pyramids and renal columns taken together constitute the kidney lobes.

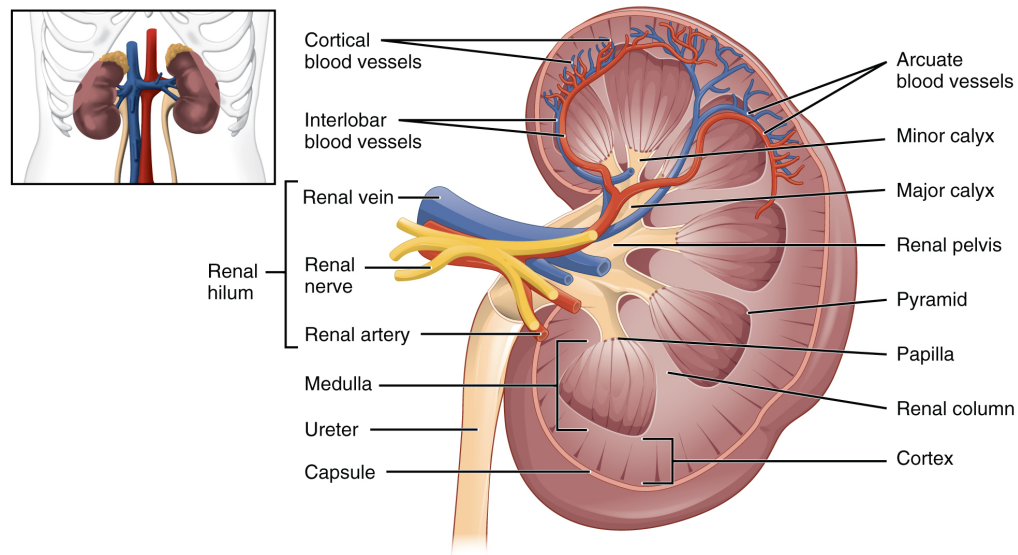


Figure 5.2 Left Kidney. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 5.2 Image description](#).]

Renal Hilum

The **renal hilum** is the entry and exit site for structures servicing the kidneys: vessels, nerves, lymphatics, and ureters. The medial-facing hila are tucked into the sweeping convex outline of the cortex. Emerging from the hilum is the renal pelvis, which is formed from the major and minor **calyces** in the kidney. The smooth muscle in the renal pelvis funnels urine via **peristalsis** into the ureter. The renal arteries form directly from the descending aorta, whereas the renal veins return cleansed blood directly to the inferior vena cava. The artery, vein, and renal pelvis are arranged in an anterior-to-posterior order.

Nephrons and Vessels

The renal artery first divides into segmental arteries, followed by further branching to form interlobar arteries that pass through the renal columns to reach the cortex (see [Figure 5.3](#)). The **interlobar** arteries branch into

arcuate arteries, cortical **radiate** arteries, and then into afferent arterioles. The afferent arterioles service about 1.3 million nephrons in each kidney.

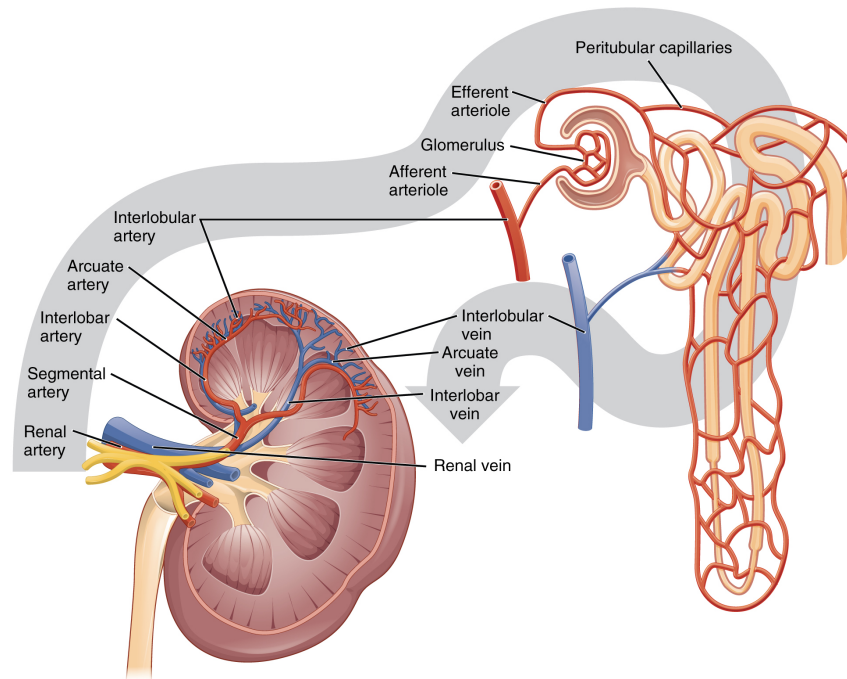


Figure 5.3 Blood Flow in the Kidney. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).
[\[Fig 5.3 Image Description\]](#)

Nephrons are the “functional units” of the kidney; they cleanse the blood and balance the constituents of the circulation. The afferent arterioles form a tuft of high-pressure capillaries about 200 μm in diameter, the **glomerulus**. The rest of the nephron consists of a continuous sophisticated tubule whose proximal end surrounds the glomerulus—this is **Bowman’s capsule**. Together, the glomerulus and Bowman’s capsule form the **renal corpuscle**. As mentioned earlier, these glomerular capillaries filter the blood based on particle size. After passing through the renal corpuscle, the capillaries form a second arteriole, the **efferent arteriole** (see [Figure 5.4](#)). These will next form a capillary network around the more distal portions of the nephron tubule, the **peritubular capillaries** and **vasa recta**, before returning to the venous system. As the glomerular filtrate progresses through the nephron, these capillary networks recover most of the solutes and water, and return them to the circulation. Since a capillary bed (the glomerulus) drains into a vessel that in turn forms a second capillary bed, the definition of a portal system is met. This is the only portal system in which an arteriole is found between the first and second capillary beds. Portal systems also link the hypothalamus to the anterior pituitary, and the blood vessels of the digestive viscera to the liver.

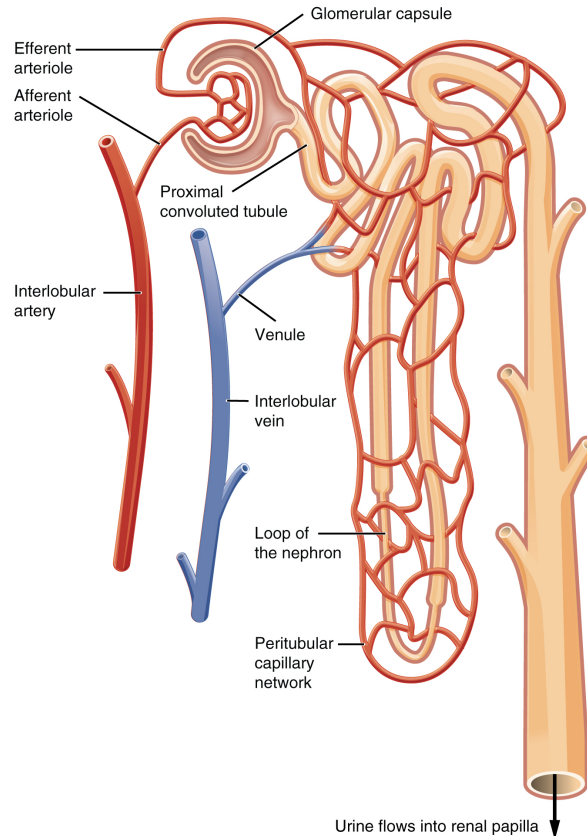


Figure 5.4. Blood Flow in the Nephron. The two capillary beds are clearly shown in this figure. The efferent arteriole is the connecting vessel between the glomerulus and the peritubular capillaries and vasa recta. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Ureter(s)

The kidneys and ureters are completely **retroperitoneal**, and the bladder has a **peritoneal** covering only over the dome. As urine is formed, it drains into the **calyces** of the kidney, which merge to form the funnel-shaped renal pelvis in the hilum of each kidney. The hilum narrows to become the **ureter** of each kidney. As urine passes through the ureter, it does not passively drain into the bladder but rather is propelled by waves of **peristalsis**. The ureters are approximately 30 cm long. The inner mucosa is lined with transitional epithelium and scattered **goblet** cells that secrete protective mucus. The muscular layer of the ureter consists of longitudinal and circular smooth muscles that create the peristaltic contractions to move the urine into the bladder without the aid of gravity. Finally, a loose **adventitial** layer composed of **collagen** and fat anchors the ureters between the parietal peritoneum and the posterior abdominal wall.

Bladder

The urinary bladder collects urine from both ureters (see [Figure 5.5](#)). The bladder lies anterior to the uterus in females, posterior to the pubic bone and anterior to the rectum. During late pregnancy, its capacity is reduced due to compression by the enlarging uterus, resulting in increased frequency of urination. In males, the anatomy is similar, minus the uterus, and with the addition of the prostate inferior to the bladder. The bladder is partially retroperitoneal (outside the peritoneal cavity) with its peritoneal-covered “dome” projecting into the abdomen when the bladder is distended with urine.

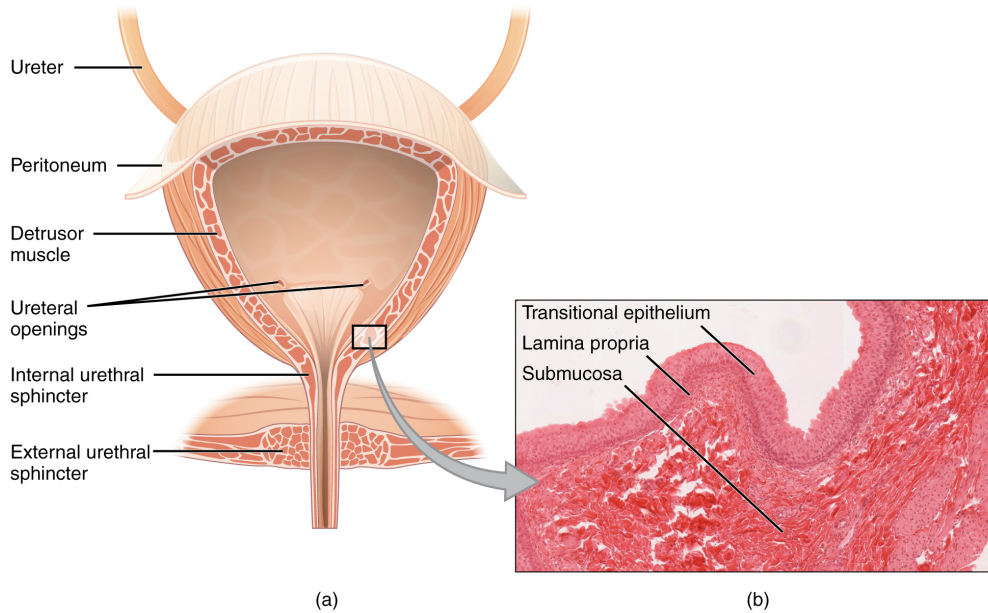


Figure 5.5 Bladder. (a) Anterior cross section of the bladder. (b) The detrusor muscle of the bladder (source: monkey tissue) LM × 448. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School © 2012). From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Urethra

The urethra transports urine from the bladder to the outside of the body for disposal. The urethra is the only urologic organ that shows any significant anatomic difference between males and females; all other urine transport structures are identical (see [Figure 5.6](#)).

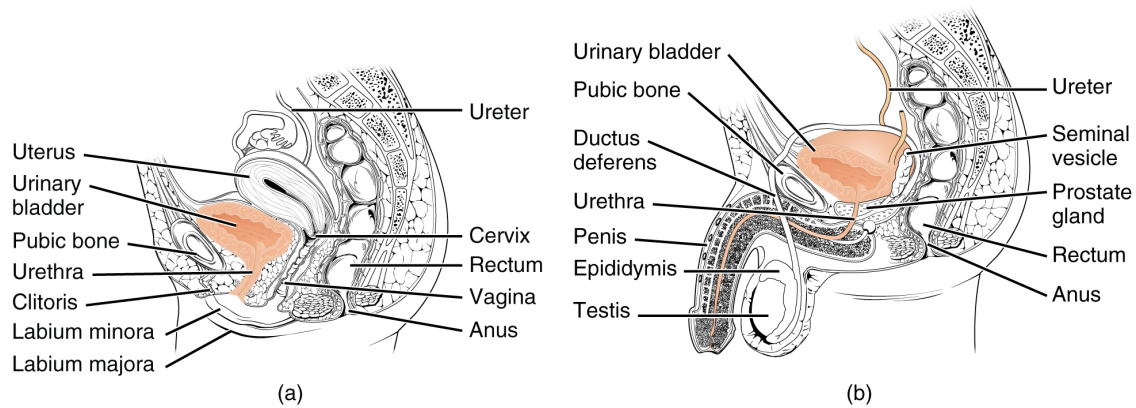


Figure 5.6. Female and Male Urethras. The urethra transports urine from the bladder to the outside of the body. This image shows (a) a female urethra and (b) a male urethra. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

The urethra in both males and females begins inferior and central to the two ureteral openings forming the three points of a triangular-shaped area at the base of the bladder called the trigone (Greek tri- = “triangle” and the root of the word “trigonometry”). The urethra tracks posterior and inferior to the pubic symphysis (see [Figure 5.6](#)). In both males and females, the proximal urethra is lined by transitional epithelium, whereas the terminal portion is a nonkeratinized, stratified squamous epithelium. In the male, **pseudostratified** columnar epithelium lines the urethra between these two cell types. **Voiding** is regulated by an involuntary **autonomic** nervous system-controlled internal urinary sphincter, consisting of smooth muscle and voluntary skeletal muscle that forms the external urinary sphincter below it.

Micturition Reflex

Micturition is a less-often used, but proper term for **urination** or **voiding**. It results from an interplay of involuntary and voluntary actions by the internal and external urethral sphincters. When bladder volume reaches about 150 mL, an urge to void is sensed but is easily overridden. Voluntary control of urination relies on consciously preventing relaxation of the external urethral sphincter to maintain urinary continence. As the bladder fills, subsequent urges become harder to ignore. Ultimately, voluntary constraint fails with resulting incontinence, which will occur as bladder volume approaches 300 to 400 mL.

- Normal micturition is a result of stretch **receptors** in the bladder wall that transmit nerve impulses to the sacral region of the spinal cord to generate a spinal reflex. The resulting parasympathetic neural outflow causes contraction of the **detrusor** muscle and relaxation of the involuntary internal urethral sphincter.
- At the same time, the spinal cord inhibits somatic motor neurons, resulting in the relaxation of the skeletal muscle of the external urethral **sphincter**.
- The micturition reflex is active in infants but with maturity, children learn to override the reflex by asserting external sphincter control, thereby delaying voiding (potty training). This reflex may be preserved even in the face of spinal cord injury that results in paraplegia or quadriplegia. However, relaxation of the external sphincter may not be possible in all cases, and therefore, periodic catheterization may be necessary for bladder emptying.

Nerves involved in the control of urination include the hypogastric, pelvic, and pudendal. Voluntary micturition requires an intact spinal cord and functional pudendal nerve arising from the sacral micturition center. Since the external urinary sphincter is voluntary skeletal muscle, actions by cholinergic neurons maintain contraction (and thereby continence) during filling of the bladder. At the same time, sympathetic nervous activity via the hypogastric nerves suppresses contraction of the detrusor muscle. With further bladder stretch, afferent signals traveling over sacral pelvic nerves activate parasympathetic neurons. This activates efferent neurons to release acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junctions, producing detrusor contraction and bladder emptying.

Did You Know?

A healthy adult bladder can store up to 455 millilitres of urine for between two to five hours.

Check Your Knowledge of Urinary Systems

Concept Check

- Describe **two** organs or **structures** essential to the urinary system.
- Identify the **structure** within the kidneys which filters blood.
- Name a commonly used term for the **micturition reflex**.

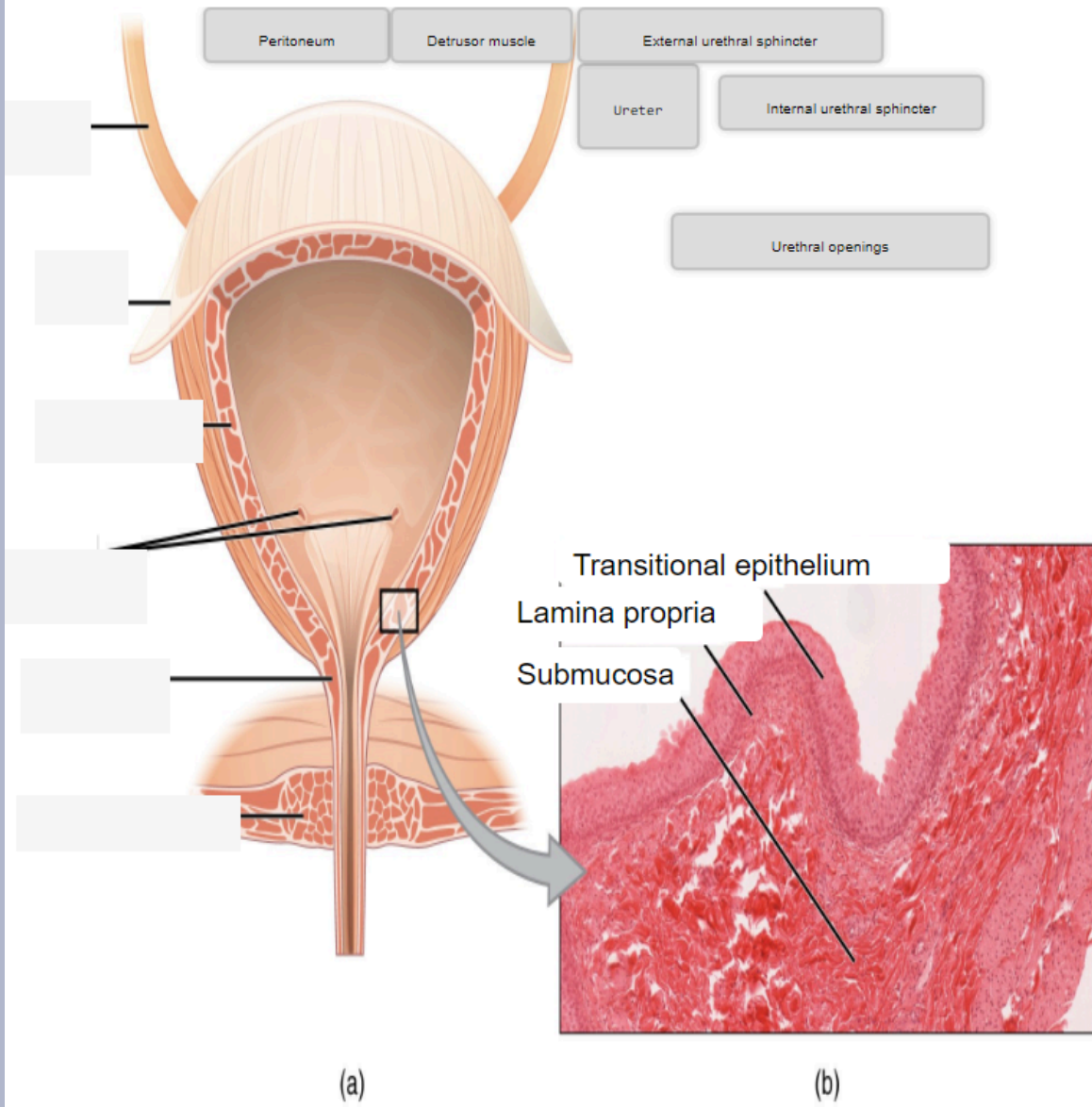
Anatomy Labeling Activity

Urinary System Bladder Anatomy (Text Version)

Label the diagram correctly with the following words:

1. Peritoneum
2. Detrusor muscle
3. External urethral sphincter
4. Ureter
5. Internal urethral sphincter
6. Ureteral opening

Urinary System Bladder Anatomy



Urinary System Bladder Anatomy Diagram (Text Version)

This figure shows the cross section of the bladder, and the major parts are identified from top to bottom. The tube leading to the bladder is known as the _____[Blank 1]. Surrounding the bladder is a membranous cover called the _____[Blank 2]. The walls of the bladder are formed by _____[Blank 3], which allows the bladder to contract to excrete urine or relax to hold urine. The right panel shows a micrograph of the bladder. The _____[Blank 4] are found inside the bladder wall allowing for the ureters to enter and deposit urine formed from the kidneys. In the lower portion of the bladder is two sphincter muscles the internal one is the _____[Blank 5] and the _____[Blank 6]. These sphincter muscles open and close controlling the flow of urine out of the bladder and into the urethra to be carried to the outside of the body.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Urinary System Bladder Anatomy by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 5.1 image description: This illustration shows an anterior view of the abdominal area. The liver is prominently positioned in the upper right quadrant, partially overlapping the right kidney. The 12th rib is visible, arching above the upper portion of the kidneys. The ureters are shown descending from the kidneys, running vertically down towards the bladder [\[Return to image 5.1\]](#).

Figure 5.2 image description: This illustration shows a frontal section through a kidney. Working clockwise from the top of the image is the arcuate blood vessels. The minor and major calyx is shown followed by the renal pelvis, pyramid, and papilla. The renal column is connective tissue radiating downward towards the renal cortex. The capsule is a tough outer layer surrounding the kidney. The ureter extends from the kidney towards the bladder. The medulla is the inner component of the kidney. The hilum is a small opening structure, allowing for the renal artery, renal nerve and renal vein to enter and exit the kidney. Above the renal vein is the interlobar blood vessels followed by the cortical blood vessels [\[Return to Figure 5.2\]](#).

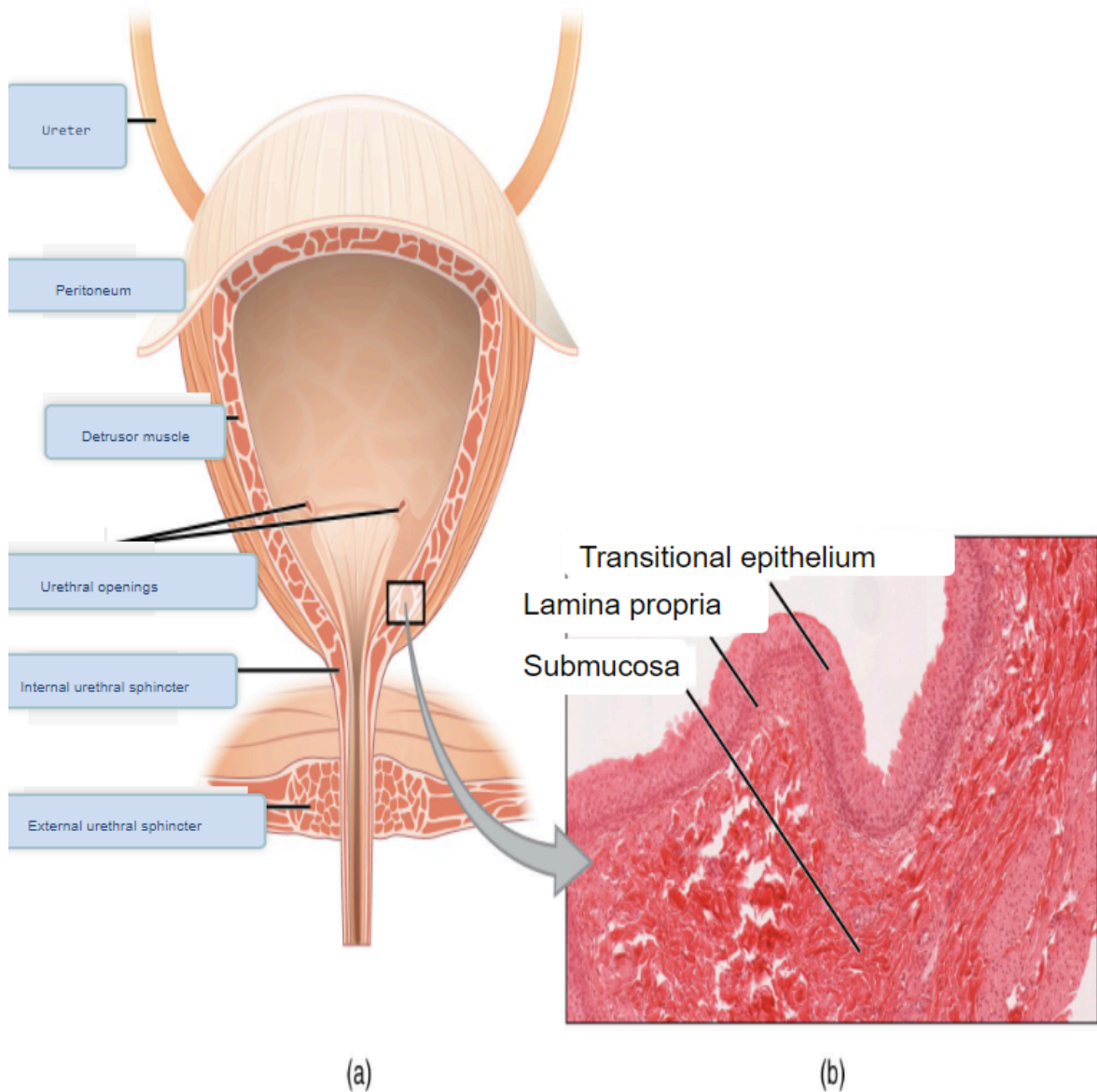
Figure 5.3 image description: The illustration is an anatomical view of the human kidney and its blood supply system. Displayed is the internal structure of the kidney, including the renal artery, interlobar artery, arcuate artery, interlobular artery, and afferent arterioles leading to the glomerulus. The glomerulus is connected to efferent arterioles, which lead to peritubular capillaries. The illustration also depicts the flow of blood from these vessels into the renal vein. [\[Return to Figure 5.3\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Urinary System](#)” In [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Urinary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

Urinary System Bladder Anatomy



1.

Check your Answer: Urinary System Bladder Anatomy Diagram (Text Version) This figure shows the cross section of the bladder, and the major parts are identified from top to bottom. The tube leading to the bladder is known as the **ureter**. Surrounding the bladder is a membranous cover called the **peritoneum**. The walls of the bladder are formed by **detrusor muscle**, which allows the bladder to contract to excrete urine or relax to hold urine. The right panel shows a micrograph of the bladder. The **ureteral openings** are found inside the bladder wall allowing for the ureters to enter and deposit urine formed from the kidneys. In the lower portion of the bladder is two sphincter muscles the internal one is the **internal urethral sphincter** and the **external urethral sphincter**. These sphincter muscles open and close controlling the flow of urine out of the bladder and into the urethra to be carried to the outside of the body.

5.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Urinary System

- Remove waste products and medicines from the body.
- Balance the body's fluids.
- Balance a variety of electrolytes.
- Release hormones to control blood pressure.
- Release a hormone to control red blood cell production.
- Help with bone health by controlling calcium and phosphorus.

Having reviewed the anatomy of the urinary system, now is the time to focus on physiology. You will discover that different parts of the **nephron** utilize specific processes to produce urine: **filtration**, **reabsorption**, and **secretion**. You will learn how each of these processes works and where they occur along the nephron and collecting ducts. The physiologic goal is to modify the composition of the plasma and, in doing so, produce the waste product: urine.

Nephrons: The Functional Unit

Nephrons take a simple filtrate of the blood and modify it into urine. Many changes take place in the different parts of the nephron before urine is created for disposal. The term “forming urine” will be used hereafter to describe the **filtrate** as it is modified into true urine. The principal task of the nephron population is to balance the **plasma** to homeostatic set points and excrete potential toxins in the urine. They do this by accomplishing three principle functions—filtration, reabsorption, and secretion. They also have additional secondary functions that exert control in three areas: blood pressure (via the production of renin), red blood cell production (via the hormone EPO), and calcium absorption (via the conversion of calcidiol into calcitriol, the active form of vitamin D).

Loop of Henle

The descending and ascending portions of the loop of Henle (sometimes referred to as the **nephron** loop) are, of course, just continuations of the same tubule. They run adjacent and parallel to each other after having made a hairpin turn at the deepest point of their descent. The descending loop of Henle consists of an initial short, thick portion and long, thin portion, whereas the ascending loop consists of an initial short, thin portion followed by a long, thick portion. The descending and ascending thin portions consist of simple squamous epithelium. Different portions of the loop have different **permeabilities** for solutes and water.

Collecting Ducts

The collecting ducts are continuous with the nephron but are not technically part of it. In fact, each duct collects

filtrate from several nephrons for final modification. Collecting ducts merge as they descend deeper in the medulla to form about 30 terminal ducts, which empty at a papilla.

Glomerular Filtration Rate (GFR)

The volume of filtrate formed by both kidneys per minute is termed the **glomerular filtration rate** (GFR). The heart pumps about 5 L of blood per minute under resting conditions. Approximately 20 percent or one litre enters the kidneys to be filtered. On average, this litre results in the production of about 125 mL/minute filtrate produced in men (range of 90 to 140 mL/minute) and 105 mL/minute filtrate produced in women (range of 80 to 125 mL/minute). This amount equates to a volume of about 180 L/day in men and 150 L/day in women. Ninety-nine percent of this filtrate is returned to the circulation by reabsorption so that only about 1–2 litres of urine are produced per day.

GFR is influenced by the hydrostatic pressure and colloid osmotic pressure on either side of the capillary membrane of the glomerulus. Recall that filtration occurs as pressure forces fluid and solutes through a **semipermeable** barrier with the solute movement constrained by particle size. **Hydrostatic** pressure is the pressure produced by a fluid against a surface. If you have fluid on both sides of a barrier, both fluids exert pressure in opposing directions. The net fluid movement will be in the direction of the lower pressure. **Osmosis** is the movement of solvent (water) across a membrane that is **impermeable** to a solute in the solution. This creates osmotic pressure which will exist until the solute concentration is the same on both sides of a semipermeable membrane. As long as the concentration differs, water will move. Glomerular filtration occurs when glomerular hydrostatic pressure exceeds the luminal **hydrostatic** pressure of Bowman's capsule. There is also an opposing force, the osmotic pressure, which is typically higher in the glomerular capillary. To understand why this is so, look more closely at the microenvironment on either side of the filtration membrane.

You will find osmotic pressure exerted by the solutes inside the lumen of the capillary as well as inside of Bowman's capsule. Since the filtration membrane limits the size of particles crossing the membrane, the osmotic pressure inside the glomerular **capillary** is higher than the osmotic pressure in Bowman's capsule. Recall that cells and the medium-to-large proteins cannot pass between the podocyte processes or through the fenestrations of the capillary endothelial cells. This means that red and white blood cells, platelets, **albumins**, and other proteins too large to pass through the filter remain in the capillary, creating an average **colloid** osmotic pressure of 30 mm Hg within the capillary. The absence of proteins in Bowman's space (the lumen within Bowman's capsule) results in an osmotic pressure near zero. Thus, the only pressure moving fluid across the capillary wall into the lumen of Bowman's space is hydrostatic pressure. Hydrostatic (fluid) pressure is sufficient to push water through the membrane despite the osmotic pressure working against it. The sum of all of the influences, both osmotic and hydrostatic, results in a net filtration pressure (NFP) of about 10 mm Hg (see [Figure 5.7](#)).

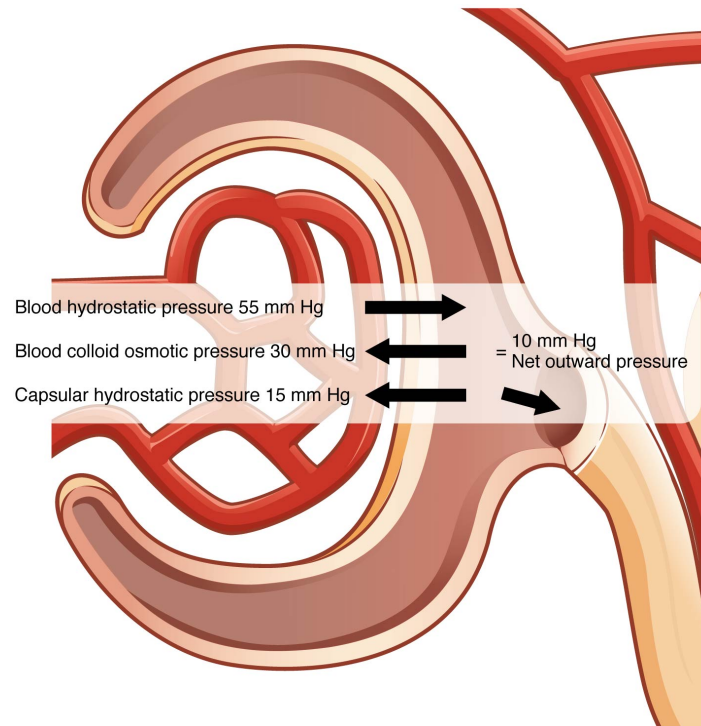


Figure 5.7 Net Filtration Pressure. The NFP is the sum of osmotic and hydrostatic pressures. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 5.7 Image description.]

A proper concentration of solutes in the blood is important in maintaining osmotic pressure both in the glomerulus and systemically. There are disorders in which too much protein passes through the filtration slits into the kidney filtrate. This excess protein in the filtrate leads to a deficiency of circulating **plasma** proteins. In turn, the presence of protein in the urine increases its osmolarity; this holds more water in the filtrate and results in an increase in urine volume. Because there is less circulating protein, principally albumin, the osmotic pressure of the blood falls. Less osmotic pressure pulling water into the capillaries tips the balance towards hydrostatic pressure, which tends to push it out of the capillaries. The net effect is that water is lost from the circulation to interstitial tissues and cells. This “plumps up” the tissues and cells, a condition termed systemic edema.

Reabsorption and Secretion

The renal corpuscle filters the blood to create a filtrate that differs from blood mainly in the absence of cells and large proteins. From this point to the ends of the collecting ducts, the filtrate or forming urine is undergoing modification through **secretion** and **reabsorption** before true urine is produced. Here, some substances are reabsorbed, whereas others are secreted. Note the use of the term “reabsorbed.” All of these substances were “absorbed” in the digestive tract—99 percent of the water and most of the solutes filtered by the nephron must be reabsorbed. Water and substances that are reabsorbed are returned to the circulation by the peritubular and vasa recta capillaries.

It is vital that the flow of blood through the kidney is at a suitable rate to allow for filtration. This rate determines how much solute is retained or discarded, how much water is retained or discarded, and ultimately, the **osmolarity** of blood and the blood pressure of the body.

Urinalysis

Urinalysis (urine analysis) often provides clues to renal disease. Normally, only traces of protein are found in urine, and when higher amounts are found, damage to the glomeruli is the likely basis. Unusually large quantities of urine may point to diseases like diabetes mellitus or **hypothalamic** tumors that cause diabetes insipidus. The color of urine is determined mostly by the breakdown products of red blood cell destruction (see [Figure 5.8](#)). The “heme” of **hemoglobin** is converted by the liver into water-soluble forms that can be excreted into the **bile** and indirectly into the urine. This yellow pigment is urochrome. Urine color may also be affected by certain foods like beets, berries, and fava beans. A kidney stone or a cancer of the urinary system may produce sufficient bleeding to manifest as pink or even bright red urine. Diseases of the liver or obstructions of bile drainage from the liver impart a dark “tea” or “cola” hue to the urine. **Dehydration** produces darker, concentrated urine that may also possess the slight odour of **ammonia**. Most of the ammonia produced from protein breakdown is converted into **urea** by the liver, so ammonia is rarely detected in fresh urine. The strong ammonia odour you may detect in bathrooms or alleys is due to the breakdown of urea into ammonia by bacteria in the environment. About one in five people detect a distinctive odour in their urine after consuming asparagus; other foods such as onions, garlic, and fish can impart their own aromas. These food-caused odours are harmless.

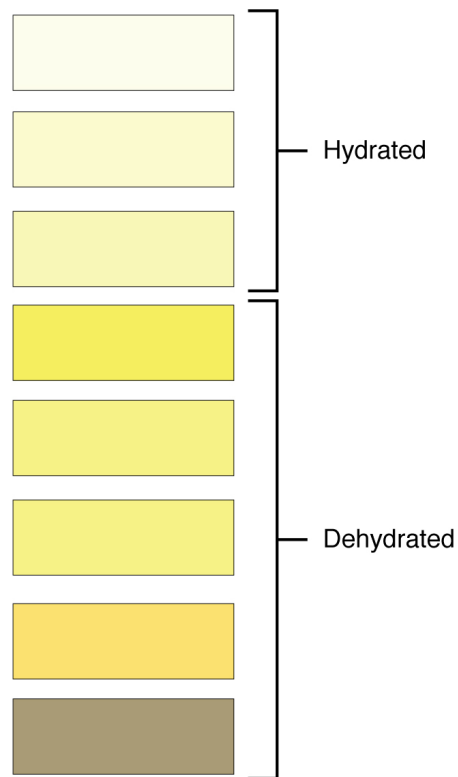


Figure 5.8 Urine Color. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 5.8 Image description.](#)]

The kidneys must produce a minimum urine volume of about 500 mL/day to rid the body of wastes. Output below this level may be caused by severe dehydration or renal disease and is termed **oliguria**. The virtual absence of urine production is termed **anuria**. Excessive urine production is **polyuria**, which may be due to diabetes mellitus or diabetes insipidus. In diabetes mellitus, blood glucose levels exceed the number of available sodium-glucose transporters in the kidney, and glucose appears in the urine. The osmotic nature of glucose attracts water, leading to its loss in the urine. In the case of diabetes insipidus, insufficient pituitary antidiuretic hormone (ADH) release or insufficient numbers of ADH receptors in the collecting ducts means that too few water channels are inserted into the cell membranes that line the collecting ducts of the kidney. Insufficient numbers of water channels (aquaporins) reduce water absorption, resulting in high volumes of very dilute urine.

Concept Check

- Contrast the following terms: **oliguria**, **anuria** and **polyuria**. What are the differences between these terms as they describe urinary output?
- Explain how urine **colour** varies based on food consumed and/or **hydration** levels.

Endocrine Urinary Function

Several hormones have specific, important roles in regulating kidney function. They act to stimulate or inhibit blood flow. Some of these are endocrine, acting from a distance, whereas others are paracrine, acting locally.

Renin–Angiotensin–Aldosterone

Renin is an **enzyme** that is produced by the granular cells of the afferent arteriole. It enzymatically converts angiotensinogen (made by the liver, freely circulating) into angiotensin I. Its release is stimulated by **prostaglandins** to decreased extracellular fluid volume.

Angiotensin II is a potent vasoconstrictor that plays an immediate role in the regulation of blood pressure. It acts systemically to cause vasoconstriction as well as constriction of both the **afferent** and **efferent** arterioles of the glomerulus. In instances of blood loss or dehydration, it reduces both GFR and renal blood flow, thereby limiting fluid loss and preserving blood volume. Its release is usually stimulated by decreases in blood pressure, and so the preservation of adequate blood pressure is its primary role.

Aldosterone, often called the “salt-retaining hormone,” is released from the **adrenal cortex** in response to

angiotensin II or directly in response to increased plasma potassium. It promotes sodium reabsorption by the nephron, promoting the retention of water.

Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH)

Diuretics are drugs that can increase water loss by interfering with the recapture of solutes and water from the forming urine. They are often prescribed to lower blood pressure. ADH, released by the posterior pituitary, works to do the exact opposite. It promotes the recovery of water, decreases urine volume, and maintains plasma osmolarity and blood pressure. It does so by stimulating the movement of **aquaporin** proteins into the **apical** cell membrane of principal cells of the collecting ducts to form water channels, allowing the transcellular movement of water from the lumen of the collecting duct into the interstitial space in the medulla of the kidney by osmosis. From there, it enters the vasa recta capillaries to return to the circulation. Water is attracted by the high osmotic environment of the deep kidney **medulla**.

Parathyroid Hormone

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) is produced by the **parathyroid** glands in response to decreased circulating calcium levels.

Maintaining Homeostasis

Homeostasis requires that volume and **osmolarity** be preserved. Blood volume is important in maintaining sufficient blood pressure, and there are **nonrenal** mechanisms involved in its preservation, including vasoconstriction, which can act within seconds of a drop in pressure. Thirst mechanisms are also activated to promote the consumption of water lost through respiration, evaporation, or urination. Hormonal mechanisms are activated to recover volume while maintaining a normal osmotic environment. These mechanisms act principally on the kidney.

Diuretics and Fluid Volume

A diuretic is a compound that increases urine volume. Three familiar drinks contain diuretic compounds: coffee, tea, and alcohol. The caffeine in coffee and tea works by promoting vasodilation in the nephron, which increases GFR. Alcohol increases GFR by inhibiting ADH release from the posterior pituitary, resulting in less water recovery by the collecting duct. In cases of high blood pressure, diuretics may be prescribed to reduce blood volume and, thereby, reduce blood pressure. The most frequently prescribed anti-hypertensive diuretic is **hydrochlorothiazide**.

Regulation of Nitrogen Wastes

Nitrogen wastes are produced by the breakdown of proteins during normal **metabolism**. Proteins are broken down into amino acids, which in turn are deaminated by having their nitrogen groups removed. **Deamination** converts the amino (NH₂) groups into ammonia (NH₃), ammonium ion (NH₄⁺), urea, or uric acid ([Figure 5.9](#)). Ammonia is extremely toxic, so most of it is very rapidly converted into urea in the liver. Human urinary wastes typically contain primarily urea with small amounts of ammonium and very little uric acid.

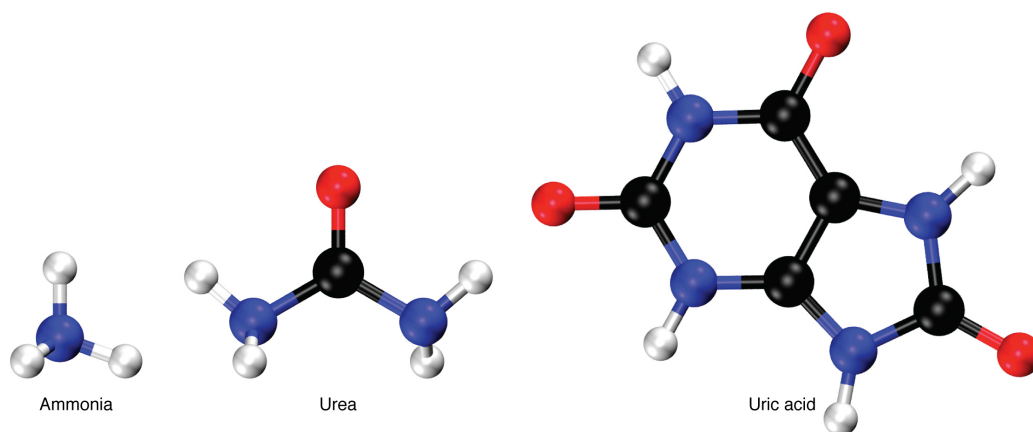


Figure 5.9 Nitrogen Wastes. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Elimination of Drugs and Hormones

Water-soluble drugs may be excreted in the urine and are influenced by one or all of the following processes: glomerular filtration, tubular secretion, or tubular reabsorption. Drugs that are structurally small can be filtered by the glomerulus with the filtrate. Large drug molecules such as **heparin** or those that are bound to plasma proteins cannot be filtered and are not readily eliminated. Some drugs can be eliminated by carrier proteins that enable secretion of the drug into the tubule lumen. There are specific carriers that eliminate basic (such as dopamine or histamine) or acidic drugs (such as penicillin or indomethacin). As is the case with other substances, drugs may be both filtered and reabsorbed passively along a concentration gradient.

Watch [Urinary System, Part 2: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #39 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Urinary System Medical Terms and Abbreviations

Urinary System Medical Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Urinary System Medical Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts (Text version)

1. **deamination**

- dē-am-ĭ-NĀ-shŏn
- The removal of an amino group from a molecule.

2. **distended**

- dis-TEN-ded (Original Term)
- stretch out

3. **enuresis**

- en-ū-RĒ-sĭs (Original Term)
- involuntary urination

4. **hemodialysis (HD)**

- hē-mō-dī-ĀL-ĭ-sĭs
- procedure for removing impurities from the blood due to an inability of the kidney to function

5. **hydrostatic**

- hĭ-drō-STAT-ik
- Relating to the equilibrium of liquids and the pressure exerted by liquid at rest

6. **incontinence**

- in-KONT-ĭn-ĕns (Original Term)
- inability to control the bladder and/or bowels

7. **micturate**

- MĪK-tū-rāt (Original Term)
- to pass urine

8. **sphincter**

- SFĪNK-tēr

- A circular muscle constricting an orifice

9. **stricture**

- STRIK-chŭr (Original Term)
- abnormal narrowing

10. **urinal**

- Ū-rĭn-ăl (Original Term)
- receptacle for urine

11. **void**

- VOYD (Original Term)
- empty or evacuate waste material, urinate

Activity Source: Urinary System Medical Terms not easily broken into word parts from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Some H5P audio re-recorded by David McCuaig and text version added.

Urinary System Abbreviations

Many terms and phrases related to the urinary system are abbreviated. Learn these common abbreviations by expanding the list below.

Urinary System Abbreviations

- **ARF** (acute renal failure)
- **BUN** (blood urea nitrogen)
- **cath** (catheter, catheterization)
- **CKD** (chronic kidney disease)
- **ESRD** (end-stage renal disease)
- **ESWL** (extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy)
- **HD** (hemodialysis)
- **OAB** (overactive bladder)
- **SG** (specific gravity)
- **UA** (urinalysis)
- **UTI** (urinary tract infection)
- **VCUG** (voiding cystourethrogram or void cystourethrogram)

Activity source: Urinary System Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Image Descriptions

Figure 5.7 image description: This figure shows the different pressures acting across the glomerulus including blood hydrostatic pressure, blood colloid osmotic pressure, capsular hydrostatic pressure. [\[Return to Figure 5.7\]](#).

Figure 5.8 image description: This color chart shows 8 different shades of yellow and associates each shade with stages of hydration (lightest 3 shades) or dehydration (remaining 5 darker shades). [\[Return to Figure 5.8\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Urinary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Urinary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

5.4 - Urinary Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Diabetic Nephropathy

Diabetic nephropathy impacts the kidneys as a result of having diabetes mellitus type 1 or 2. Higher levels of blood sugar can lead to high blood pressure, and this additional pressure exerted on the kidneys causes destruction of the small filtering structures within the kidney (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2019). To learn more about diabetic nephropathy, visit the [Mayo Clinic's Diabetic Nephropathy web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Glomerulonephritis

Glomerulonephritis refers to acute or chronic nephritis that involves inflammation of the capillaries of the renal glomeruli. It has various causes, and is noted especially by blood or protein in the urine and by edema. If untreated, it could lead to kidney failure.

Hydronephrosis

Hydronephrosis is a condition whereby the kidneys begin to swell because of the retention of urine. Several conditions can cause hydronephrosis, such as a kidney stone or blood clot. Treatment will vary, depending on the cause (Cleveland Clinic, 2019). To learn more about hydronephrosis, visit the [Cleveland Clinic's web page on hydronephrosis \[New Tab\]](#).

Polycystic Kidney Disease

Polycystic kidney disease (PKD) is a genetic disease where cysts grow inside the kidneys. The kidneys enlarge from the cystic collections, and damage to the filtering structures of the kidneys can occur. As the disease progresses, it may lead to chronic kidney disease (American Kidney Fund, 2020). To learn more, visit the [Kidney Fund's PKD web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Renal Cell Carcinoma

Renal cell carcinoma is a cancer occurring in the kidney tubes where urine is produced or collected. This one of the most common cancers found within the kidneys. Removal of the cancerous lesions is the typical approach

from a treatment perspective (Innovation for Patient Care, 2018). To learn more, visit [Canadian Cancer Society's page on kidney cancer \[New Tab\]](#).

Renal Failure

Renal failure occurs when kidneys suddenly or gradually become unable to filter waste products from blood. When kidneys stop filtering, high level of wastes may build. Two types exist: acute kidney failure and chronic kidney failure (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2019a). To learn more about kidney failure, visit [the Mayo Clinic's page on Chronic Kidney Failure \[New Tab\]](#).

Cystitis

Cystitis is inflammation of the urinary bladder, often caused by an infection. A chronic form of this condition is known as interstitial cystitis. Symptoms of cystitis include bladder pressure, voiding frequently, and pain (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2019b). To learn more about cystitis, visit [the Mayo Clinic's page on Interstitial Cystitis \[New Tab\]](#).

Urinary Tract Infection

A urinary tract infection (UTI) is an infection caused by bacteria, or sometimes, fungi. The exact type of bacterial growth is determined by conducting urine for culture and sensitivity (C&S) testing. In rare cases, a UTI may be caused by a virus (Lights & Boskey, 2019). For more information, visit [Healthline's web page on Urinary Tract Infections \[New Tab\]](#).

Urinary Incontinence

Urinary incontinence is a loss of bladder control. Those afflicted with the condition will experience urine leakage from the bladder. Weak bladder muscles are a risk factor for developing this condition (Kim & O'Connell, 2017). To learn more about this condition, visit [Healthline's webpage Urologic Diseases \[New Tab\]](#).

Urinary Medical Terms in Use

Medical Terms in Context 1

Urinary System Operative Report (Text Version)

Fill in the consultation report with correct words listed below:

- Ureteral
- bladder
- recovery
- draped
- prepped
- fragmented
- lumen
- proximal

URINARY SYSTEM – OPERATIVE REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Cindy WARD

AGE: 48

DOB: September 19

SEX: Female

DATE OF SURGERY: January 8

SURGEON: Steve Foster, MD, Urologist

ASSISTANT: Michelle Stevenson, MD

ANESTHESIOLOGIST: Ryan Haywood, MD

ANESTHESIA: General

PREOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: Left proximal ureteral stones.

POSTOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: Left proximal ureteral calculi.

INDICATIONS: The patient is a 48-year-old female with a history of kidney stone disease, who has severe left flank pain and was found to have an obstructing large left proximal _____[Blank 1] stone.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURE: After induction of general anesthesia, the patient was placed in the lithotomy position. Patient was _____[Blank 2] and _____[Blank 3] in the usual sterile fashion. A #19-French cystoscope was inserted under camera vision. The urethra was unremarkable. The scope was passed into the bladder. The _____[Blank 4] mucosa was normal throughout. Under fluoroscopic control, a guidewire was placed up the left ureter and bypassed the stone. This was difficult at first, but the guidewire was eventually manipulated around the stone into the _____[Blank 5] collecting system. A rigid ureteroscope was then negotiated up the left ureter alongside the guidewire up to the stone, which was at the junction.

The stone was quite large and occupied the entire _____[Blank 6] of the ureter. Lithotripsy was then performed under camera vision. Using the Holmium laser, the stone was _____[Blank 7] into multiple fragments, all of which were then individually basketed. Some of the stones were sent for analysis.

Further ureteroscopy up to the kidney failed to reveal any significant sized fragments. Therefore, the ureteroscope was removed.

The procedure was tolerated by the patient without complications. The patient was taken to the _____[Blank 8] room in stable condition.

Steve Foster, MD, Urologist

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Urinary System – Operative Report by Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Text version added.

Medical Terms in Context 2

Urinary System Consultation Report (Text Version)

Fill in the consultation report with correct words listed below:

- Urine
- shortness
- pain
- leukorrhea
- dysuria
- foul
- urinalysis
- nausea
- UTIs

URINARY SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Renee WOODS

AGE: 32

SEX: Female

DOB: June 17

DATE OF CONSULTATION: January 8

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Steve Foster, MD, Urology

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Urinary Tract Infection.

HISTORY: The patient is a 32-year-old female who is complaining of pain on urinating. Patient states it began approximately 3 days ago. The patient describes symptoms of _____[Blank 1] and increased frequency to the washroom. Patient states they usually go to the washroom to urinate 4-5 times a day, but starting 3 days ago, she started going 10-12 times per day. Sometimes no _____[Blank 2] comes out. The urine has a _____[Blank 3] odor and is cloudy. States there has been lower abdomen _____[Blank 4] since yesterday, and says it is worse when she tries to go with no result. Patient has had the same sexual partner for 10 years. She has a history of _____[Blank 5] and feels this is the same.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: GENERAL: No weakness, or tiredness. VITALS: Blood pressure 120/80, heart rate 70 and respirations 16. Patient weighs 150 pounds. LUNGS: No cough or _____[Blank 6] of breath. GASTRO: Denies _____[Blank 7], vomiting or change in bowel habits. URINARY/REPRODUCTIVE: Denies hematuria, or any _____[Blank 8].

ASSESSMENT: Did a urinalysis on patient. _____[Blank 9] revealed leukocytes 3+.

PLAN

1. Treat with Ampicillin 400 mg q.i.d.
2. Return to office if no improvement within 48 hours.

Steve Foster, MD, Urology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Urinary System Consultation Report by Heather Scudder and Sheila Bellefeuille, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Urinary System

Urology is a specialty that “addresses the medical and surgical treatment of disorders and diseases of the female urinary tract and the male urogenital system” (Canadian Medical Association, 2018). This specialty focuses on diagnosis, treatment, and surgical repair. Common clinical visits involve kidney stones, kidney failure, and bladder dysfunction. To learn more about urology as a specialty, visit the [Urology Profile \[PDF\]](#) authored by the Canadian Medical Association.

Urologist

A urologist is a medical specialist involved in the diagnosis and treatment of urinary and male genitourinary system conditions, disorders, and diseases such as prostate disease, renal and bladder dysfunctions, and others (Canadian Medical Association, 2019).

Procedures and Testing

Urinalysis

A urinalysis is a microscopic group of urine testing. This test detects and measures several substances in the urine, such as products of normal and abnormal metabolism and bacteria (Lab Tests Online, 2022). To learn more about urinalysis, visit [Lab Tests Online's Urinalysis web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Urine for C&S

Urine for culture and sensitivity. Urine produced by the kidneys is analyzed by way of a urine culture test that can detect and identify bacteria in the urine, which may be causing a urinary tract infection (UTI). If harmful bacteria is found, a sensitivity report is generated. This report lists antibiotics sensitive in the treatment of the bacteria present (Lab Tests Online, 2020a). To learn more about Urine for C&S, visit [Lab Tests Online's Urine Culture web page \[New Tab\]](#).

24 Hour Urine Collection

This is a test whereby all urinary output is collected over a 24-hour period of time. The analysis of urinary output over this extended period of time provides a greater indication of normal or abnormal kidney function (Lab Tests Online, 2017). To learn more, visit [Johns Hopkins Medicine's 24-hour Urine Collection article \[New Tab\]](#).

CT Scan of Kidney

Computed tomography is a diagnostic imaging procedure that uses a combination of x-rays and computer technology to produce a variety of images. It provides detailed images of the kidney looking for disease, cancer, obstructions and other kidney conditions (Johns Hopkins Medicine, n.d.). To learn more about a CT scan of the kidney, visit [Johns Hopkins Medicine's page on Computed Tomography \(CT or CAT\) Scan of the Kidney \[New Tab\]](#).

Cystoscopy

A cystoscopy is a procedure allowing a physician to check for bladder or ureteral problems, such as bladder cancer. An endoscope is used, also known as a cystoscope, containing a camera at the end of it (Canadian Cancer Society, 2020). To learn more about cystoscopy, visit the [Canadian Cancer Society's Cystoscopy and Ureteroscopy web page \[New Page\]](#).

Dialysis

Dialysis is a treatment that removes waste products from the blood when the kidneys are not fully functioning. This type of therapy is available at home or in a hospital or clinic and there are two main types: peritoneal dialysis and hemodialysis (Kidney Foundation, 2020). To learn more about dialysis, visit the [Kidney Foundation's Dialysis web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Intravenous Pyelogram

An intravenous pyelogram (IVP) is a specialized x-ray designed to produce views of the entire urinary tract. A dye is used to secure the enhanced imaging. The x-rays can also show how well the urinary tract is functioning and any identify any blockages (Canadian Cancer Society, 2020a). To learn more about IVP, visit the [Canadian Cancer Society's IVP web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Kidney Scan

A kidney scan is an imaging test which views the kidneys. It is considered a nuclear imaging test, as it uses radioactive tracers to pick up hot or cold spots within the kidney. These variations are considered abnormal.

Kidney Transplant

When kidneys fail or when a person is in end stage chronic kidney disease, a surgical procedure is performed in the form of a kidney transplant. This procedure involves harvesting a donor kidney, which is transplanted into the recipient in need of a functioning kidney to support vital function of the urinary system.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Urinary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Urinary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Ureteral, 2. Prepped, 3. Draped, 4. Bladder, 5. Proximal, 6. Lumen, 7. Fragmented, 8. Recovery.
2. 1. Dysuria, 2. Urine, 3. Foul, 4. Pain, 5. UTIs, 6. Shortness, 7. Nausea, 8. Leukorrhea, 9. Urinalysis

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Urinary System Vocabulary

Adventitial

The outermost layer of the wall of a blood vessel.

Apical

Relating to or denoting an apex.

Autonomic

Involuntary or unconscious.

Calyces

A cuplike cavity or structure.

Deamination

The removal of an amino group from a molecule.

Detrusor

A muscle which forms a layer of the wall of the bladder.

Excretion

Waste is eliminated from an organism. In vertebrates this is primarily carried out by the lungs, kidneys, and skin.

Homeostasis

A biological process that results in stable equilibrium.

Hydrostatic

Relating to the equilibrium of liquids and the pressure exerted by liquid at rest.

Hypothalamic

A region of the forebrain below the thalamus.

Lethargy

Periods of weakness.

Mitochondria

An organelle found in large numbers in most cells.

Osmosis

A process by which molecules of a solvent tend to pass through a membrane from a less concentrated solution into a more concentrated one.

pH

pH is a measure of how acidic or alkaline a substance is, as determined by the number of free hydrogen ions in the substance.

Prostaglandins

Any of a group of compounds with varying hormone-like effects.

Pseudostratified

Consisting of closely packed cells which appear to be arranged in layers.

Solutes

The minor component in a solution.

Voiding

Excrete (waste matter).

Test Yourself

Urinary System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text Version)

1. The removal of an amino group from molecule is called the _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Voiding
 - b. Deamination
 - c. Calyces
2. _____[Blank 2] is a measure of how acidic or alkaline a substance is, as determined by the number of free hydrogen ions in the substance.
 - a. pH
 - b. Apical
 - c. Osmosis
3. _____[Blank 3] relates to the equilibrium of liquids and the pressure exerted by liquid at rest.

- a. Solutes
 - b. Hydrostatic
 - c. Mitochondria
4. The outermost layer of the wall of a blood vessel is called the _____. [Blank 4].
- a. Hydrostatic
 - b. Pseudostratified
 - c. Adventitial
5. Any of a group of compounds with varying hormone-like effects is referred to as _____. [Blank 5].
- a. Solutes
 - b. Excretion
 - c. Prostaglandins

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Urinary System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Urinary System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Urinary System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Deamination, 2.pH, 3. Hydrostatic, 4. Adventitial, 5. Prostaglandins

References

- American Kidney Fund. (2020, June 17). Polycystic kidney disease. <https://www.kidneyfund.org/kidney-disease/other-kidney-conditions/polycystic-kidney-disease.html>
- Canadian Cancer Society. (2020). Cystoscopy and ureteroscopy. Canadian Cancer Society: Cancer Information. <https://www.cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/diagnosis-and-treatment/tests-and-procedures/cystoscopy/?region=on>
- Canadian Cancer Society. (2020). Intravenous pyelogram. Canadian Cancer Society: Cancer Information. <https://www.cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/diagnosis-and-treatment/tests-and-procedures/intravenous-pyelogram/?region=on>
- Canadian Cancer Society. (n.d.) What is kidney cancer? Canadian Cancer Society: Cancer Information. <https://cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/cancer-types/kidney/what-is-kidney-cancer>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). Urology profile. Canadian Medical Association Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/urology-e.pdf>
- Cleveland Clinic. (2019, May 22). Hydronephrosis. <https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/diseases/15417-hydronephrosis>
- CrashCourse. (2015, October 12). Urinary system, part 1: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #38 [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=l128tW1H5a8>
- CrashCourse. (2015, October 19). Urinary system, part 2: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #39 [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/DlqyyvTI3k>
- Johns Hopkins Medicine. (n.d.). 24-hour urine collection. John Hopkins Medicine: Health. <https://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/health/treatment-tests-and-therapies/24hour-urine-collection>
- Johns Hopkins Medicine. (n.d.). Computed tomography (CT or CAT) scan of the kidney. John Hopkins Medicine: Health. <https://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/health/treatment-tests-and-therapies/ct-scan-of-the-kidney>
- Kidney Foundation of Canada. (2020). Dialysis. Kidney Foundation. <https://kidney.ca/Kidney-Health/Living-With-Kidney-Failure/Dialysis>
- Lab Tests Online. (2022, September 28). Urinalysis. <https://labtestsonline.org/tests/urinalysis>
- Lab Tests Online. (2022, September 29). Urine culture. <https://www.testing.com/tests/urine-culture/>
- Lights, V., & Boskey, E. (2023, February 21). Everything you need to know about urinary tract infection. Healthline. <https://www.healthline.com/health/urinary-tract-infection-adults>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2023, September 6). Chronic kidney disease. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/chronic-kidney-disease/symptoms-causes/syc-20354521>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2021, September 29). Interstitial cystitis. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/interstitial-cystitis/symptoms-causes/syc-20354357>

Mayo Clinic Staff. (2023, October 24). *Diabetic nephropathy*. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/diabetic-nephropathy/symptoms-causes/syc-20354556>

CHAPTER 6: MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [6.1 – Introduction to the Male Reproductive System](#)
- [6.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Male Reproductive System](#)
- [6.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Male Reproductive System](#)
- [6.4 – Male Reproductive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

6.1 - Introduction to the Male Reproductive System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the male reproductive system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the male reproductive system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of male reproductive system medical terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the male reproductive system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Male Reproductive System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the male reproductive system.

Male Reproductive System Word Parts

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **an-** (absence of, without)
- **crypt-** (hidden)
- **dys-** (painful, difficult)
- **en-** (in)
- **epi-** (above)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **hypo-** (below)

- **par-** (near)
- **trans-** (through, across, beyond)

Combining Forms

- **andr/o** (male)
- **balan/o** (glans penis)
- **epididym/o** (epididymis)
- **gonad/o** (gonad)
- **orch/o** (testis, testicle)
- **orchi/o** (testis, testicle)
- **orchid/o** (testis, testicle)
- **pen/o** (penis)
- **pen/i** (penis)
- **phall/o** (penis)
- **preputi/o** (prepuce, foreskin)
- **posth/o** (prepuce, foreskin)
- **prostat/o** (prostate gland)
- **scrot/o** (scrotum)
- **semin/i** (semen)
- **sperm/o** (sperm, spermatozoon)
- **spermat/o** (sperm, spermatozoon)
- **test/o** (testis, testicle)
- **testicul/o** (testis, testicle)
- **vas/o** (vas deferens, vessel, duct)
- **vesicul/o** (seminal vesicle)
- **urethr/o** (urethra)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-algia** (pain)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-atic** (pertaining to)
- **-cision** (processing of cutting)
- **-ectomy** (excision or surgical removal)
- **-ferous** (pertaining to)
- **-genesis** (production)
- **-gram** (record)
- **-graphy** (process of recording)
- **-ia** (diseased state, abnormal state, condition of, condition)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-ile** (pertaining to)
- **-ism** (state of, condition)

- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-lysis** (loosening, dissolution, separating)
- **-oma** (tumour, mass)
- **-ous** (pertaining to)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-pexy** (surgical fixation, suspension)
- **-plasia** (development, growth)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-rrhea** (flow, discharge)
- **-sis** (condition, abnormal condition)
- **-stomy** (creation of new opening, process of new opening)
- **-tion** (process of)
- **-tomy** (cut into, incision)

Activity source: Male Reproductive System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./
Converted to text.

Introduction to the Male Reproductive System

Gametes are the reproductive cells that combine to form a fetus. Organs called **gonads** produce the gametes, along with the hormones that regulate human reproduction. The male gametes are called sperm. **Spermatogenesis** occurs within the **seminiferous tubules** that make up most of the testis (singular). The **scrotum** is a sac that holds the testes (plural) outside of the body cavity.

Watch [Reproductive System, Part 2 - Male Reproductive System: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #41 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Male Reproductive Medical Terms

Male Reproductive System terms not easily broken down into word parts (Text version)

1. **ablation**

- a-BLĀ-shǒn (Original Term)
- destruction of abnormal or excessive tissue by eroding, vaporizing or melting

2. **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)**

- ǎ-KWĪRD im-yū-nō-dě-FISH-ěn-sē SĪN-drōm
- advanced, chronic immune system suppression caused by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.

3. **artificial insemination**

- art-ī-FISH-ǎl in-sem-ī-NĀ-shǒn
- the medical procedure of injecting concentrated sperm into the vagina or uterus.

4. **azoospermia**

- ā-zō-ō-SPĚR-mē-ǎ
- absence of viable sperm in the semen.

5. **chlamydia**

- klǎ-MID-ē-ǎ
- sexually transmitted disease caused by a very small parasitic bacterium (also known as the silent STD).

6. **circumcision**

- sĭr-kŭm-SIZH-ǒn (Original Term)
- surgical removal of the prepuce (foreskin)

7. **coitus**

- KŌ-ī-tús (Original Term)
- sexual intercourse

8. **condom**

- KON-dǒm (Original Term)
- sheath (cover) for penis, worn during coitus to prevent conception and spread of sexually transmitted infection

9. **ejaculation**

- i-jak-yŭ-LĀ-shǒn
- the action of ejecting semen from the body.

10. **enucleation**

- ē-nū-klē-Ā-shŭn (Original Term)

- excision of a whole organ or mass without cutting into it

11. **erectile dysfunction (ED)**

- ě-RĚK-tĭl dis-FŮNGK-shŏn
- the inability of a male to attain or maintain an erection sufficient to perform sexual intercourse

12. **genital herpes**

- JEN-ĭt-āl HĚRP-ĕz
- a sexually transmitted disease characterized by blisters in the genital area, caused by the herpes simplex virus type 2.

13. **gonorrhea**

- gon-ŏ-RĚ-ă
- a sexually transmitted disease involving inflammatory discharge from the urethra or vagina.

14. **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)**

- hu-man im-yŭ-nŏ-dĕ-FISH-ĕn-sĕ VĪ-rŭs
- a retrovirus that attacks the T-helper cells of the immune system. If HIV is not treated, it can lead to AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)

15. **human papillomavirus (HPV)**

- hu-man PAP-ĭ-LŌ-mă-VĪ-rŭs
- a sexually transmitted disease with over 40 subtypes that cause diseases in humans ranging from common warts to cervical cancer.

16. **hydrocele**

- HĪ-drŏ-sĕl (Original Term)
- fluid-filled sac around the testicle

17. **hydrocelectomy**

- hĪ-drŏ-sĕ-LĚK-tŏ-mĕ (Original Term)
- surgical removal of a fluid-filled sac around the testicle causing scrotal swelling (hydrocele)

18. **infertility**

- in-fĕr-TIL-ĭt-ĕ (Original Term)
- inability to achieve pregnancy

19. **metastasis**

- mĕ-TAS-tă-sĭs
- cancer spreading from one part of the body into another.

20. **morcellation**

- mor-sě-LĀ-shǒn
- cutting or grinding solid tissue into smaller pieces for removal

21. **MRI ultrasound fusion biopsy**

- FŪ-zhǒn BĪ-op-sē
- combination of magnetic resonance imaging with transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) to obtain a tissue from a prostate lesion. The combined MRI-TRUS image is used to direct the biopsy needle into the area of the prostate that looked suspicious on MRI.

22. **orgasm**

- OR-gazm
- a climax of sexual stimulation

23. **phimosis**

- fī-MŌ-sis
- a tightness of the prepuce (foreskin of the penis) that prevents its retraction over the glans penis. It may be congenital or the result of balanitis. Circumcision is the usual treatment.

24. **priapism**

- PRĪ-ǎ-pizm
- persistent, abnormal erection of the penis accompanied by pain and tenderness

25. **prostate cancer**

- PROS-tāt KAN-sěr
- cancer of the prostate gland

26. **puberty**

- PŪ-běrt-ē
- the period during which adolescents develop secondary sex characteristics and become capable of reproduction.

27. **robotic surgery**

- rō-BŌ- tĭk SŪRJ-ě-rē
- use of small surgical instruments attached to a computer and operated by the surgeon from a console several feet from the operating table

28. **sexually transmitted disease (STD)**

- SEKS-ŭ-ǎ-lē trǎns-MĪT-ed diz-ĒZ
- infection spread through sexual contact; also known as sexually transmitted infection (STI)

29. **spermatocele**

- spěr-MĀT-ō-sēl
- distention of the epididymis containing an abnormal cyst-like collection of fluid and sperm cells

30. **sterility**

- stě-RIL-īt-ē (Original Term)
- a condition of being unable to conceive or reproduce the species

31. **sterilization**

- ster-ī-lī-ZĀ-shǒn
- procedure that prevents pregnancy, either a female's ability to conceive or a male's ability to induce conception

32. **syphilis**

- SIF-ī-līs
- a chronic bacterial disease spread primarily through sexual intercourse, but also congenitally by infection of a developing fetus. Rapidly spreads through the body and if left untreated becomes systemic.

33. **testicular cancer**

- tēs-TĪK-ū-lār KAN-sěr
- cancer of the testicle

34. **testicular torsion**

- tēs-TĪK-ū-lār TOR-shǒn
- twisting of the spermatic cord causing decreased blood flow to the testis. Considered a surgical emergency and accompanied by sudden onset of severe scrotal pain.

35. **transurethral**

- trans-ū-RE-thrāl
- pertaining to through the urethra

36. **transurethral incision of the prostate gland (TUIP)**

- surgical procedure that widens the urethra by making a few small incisions in the bladder neck and the prostate gland.

37. **transurethral resection of the prostate gland (TURP)**

- surgical removal of pieces of the prostate gland tissue by using an instrument inserted through the urethra.

38. **transurethral microwave thermotherapy (TUMT)**

- treatment that eliminates excess tissue present in benign prostatic hyperplasia by using heat generated by microwave.

39. **trichomoniasis**

- trīk-ō-mō-NĪ-ă-sīs
- sexually transmitted disease caused by the one-cell organism *Trichomonas*. Chiefly affects the urinary tract, vagina, or digestive system.

40. **varicocele**

- VAR-īō-sēl (Original Term)
- enlarged veins of the spermatic cord, which may cause scrotal swelling

Activity Source: Male Reproductive System terms not easily broken down into word parts from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Some H5P audio re-recorded by Tania Deane and David McCuaig and text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Male Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Male Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

6.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Male Reproductive System

The structures of the male reproductive system include the **testes**, the epididymis, the penis, and the ducts and glands that produce and carry semen. Sperm exit the scrotum through the vas deferens. The spermatic cord is an enclosed sheath which includes the vas deferens, **arteries**, **veins** and **nerves**. The seminal vesicles and **prostate gland** add fluids to the **sperm** to create **semen**.

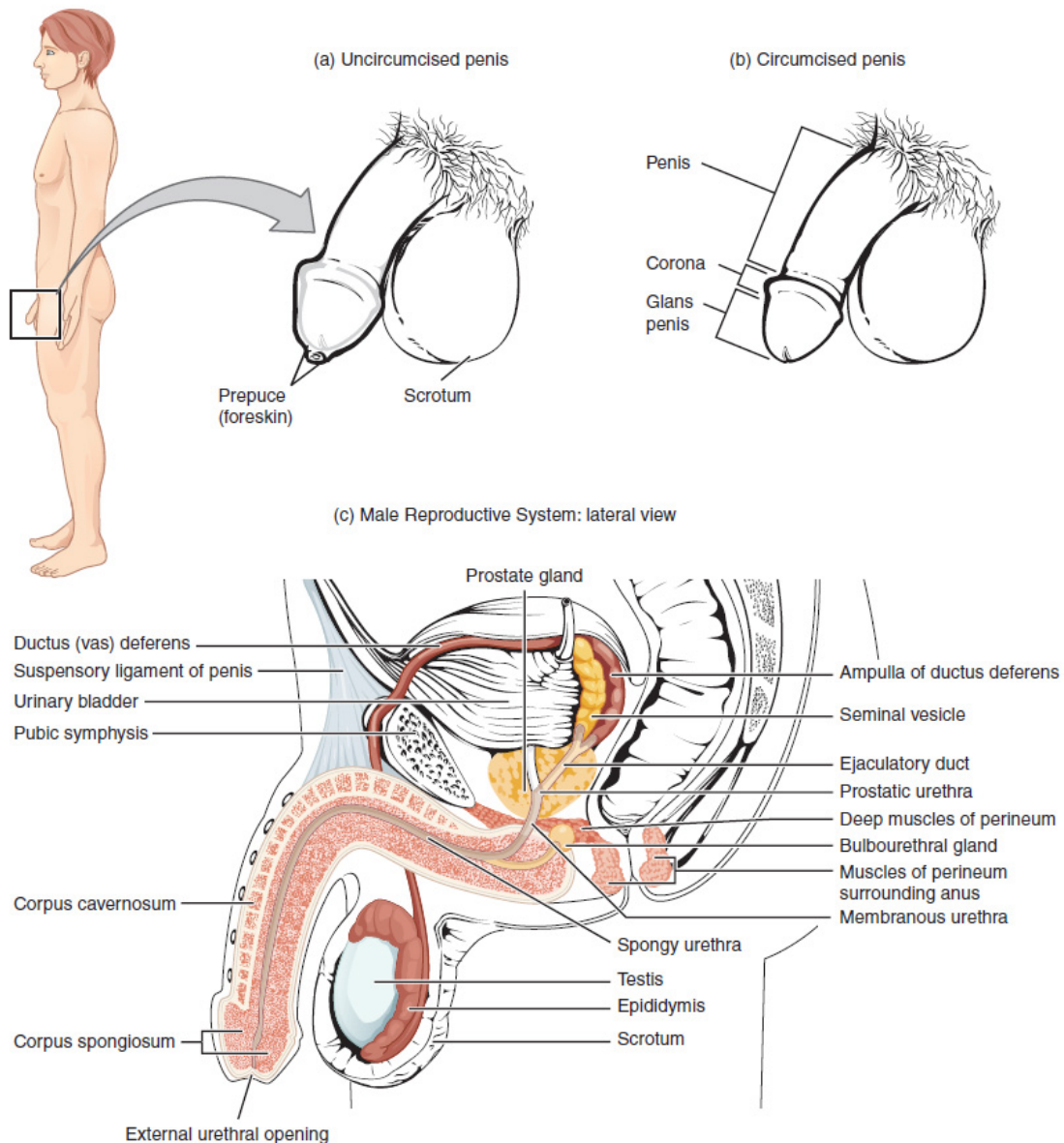


Figure 6.1. Male Reproductive System. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 6.1 Image description.](#)]

Image Descriptions

Figure 6.1 image description: This figure shows the different organs in the male reproductive system. The top panel shows the side view of a man and an uncircumcised and a circumcised penis. The bottom panel shows the lateral view of the male reproductive system and the major parts are labeled. [\[Return to Figure 6.1\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Male Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Male Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

6.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Male Reproductive System

Reproductive System

Spermatogenesis

Spermatogenesis occurs in the **seminiferous tubules** that form the bulk of each testis. The process begins at puberty, after which time sperm are produced constantly throughout a man's life. One production cycle takes approximately 64 days. One production cycle is considered from **spermatogonia** through to formed sperm. A new cycle starts approximately every 16 days, although this timing is not synchronous across the **seminiferous tubules**.

Did You Know?

Sperm counts slowly decline after age 35, and some studies suggest that smoking can lower sperm counts irrespective of age.

Sperm

Sperm are smaller than most cells in the body; in fact, the volume of a sperm cell is 85,000 times smaller than that of the female gamete. Approximately 100 to 300 million sperm are produced each day, whereas women typically ovulate only one **oocyte** per month. As is true for most cells in the body, the structure of sperm cells speaks to their function. Sperm have a distinctive head, mid-piece, and tail region (see [Figure 6.2](#)).

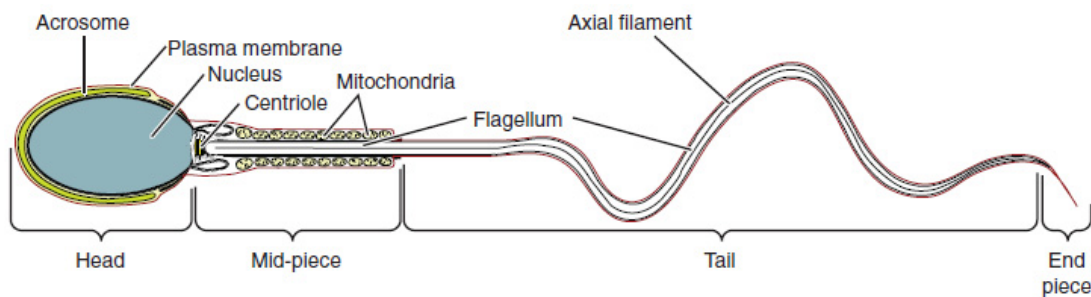


Figure 6.2. Structure of Sperm. Sperm cells are divided into a head, containing DNA; a mid-piece, containing mitochondria; and a tail, providing motility. The acrosome is oval and somewhat flattened. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 6.2 Image description.](#)]

Sperm Transport

To fertilize an egg, sperm must be moved from the **seminiferous tubules** in the testes, through the **epididymis**, and—later during ejaculation—along the length of the penis and out into the female reproductive tract. It takes an average of 12 days for sperm to move through the coils of the **epididymis**, with the shortest recorded transit time in humans being one day.

Epididymis

Sperm enter the head of the epididymis and are moved by the contraction of smooth muscles lining the **epididymal** tubes. As the sperm mature they acquire the ability to move under their own power. Once inside the female reproductive tract, they will use this ability to move independently toward the unfertilized egg. The more mature sperm are then stored in the tail of the epididymis until ejaculation occurs.

Ducts

During ejaculation, sperm exit the tail of the epididymis and are pushed by smooth muscle contraction to the **vas deferens** (also called the ductus deferens). The **vas deferens** is a thick, muscular tube that is bundled together inside the scrotum with connective tissue, blood vessels, and nerves into a structure called the **spermatic cord**. From each epididymis, each vas deferens extends through the inguinal canal in the abdominal wall and continues to a region called the ampulla. The sperm is mixed with fluid from the paired seminal vesicles and moves into its associated ejaculatory duct. The ejaculatory ducts transport the seminal fluid to the prostate gland.

Prostate Gland

The **prostate gland** secretes an alkaline, milky fluid to the passing seminal fluid (referred to as semen) to first coagulate and then decoagulate the semen following ejaculation. The temporary thickening of semen helps retain it within the female reproductive tract and once decoagulated the sperm can pass farther into the female reproductive tract.

Bulbourethral Glands

Bulbourethral glands release a thick, salty fluid that lubricates the end of the urethra and vagina, and helps to clean urine residues from the penile urethra.

Check Your Knowledge of the Male Reproductive System

Concept Check

- Write or draw out the components of the **pathway** that sperm takes from beginning until the end.
- Consider fertility challenges that may be experienced if a large number of defective sperm are produced.

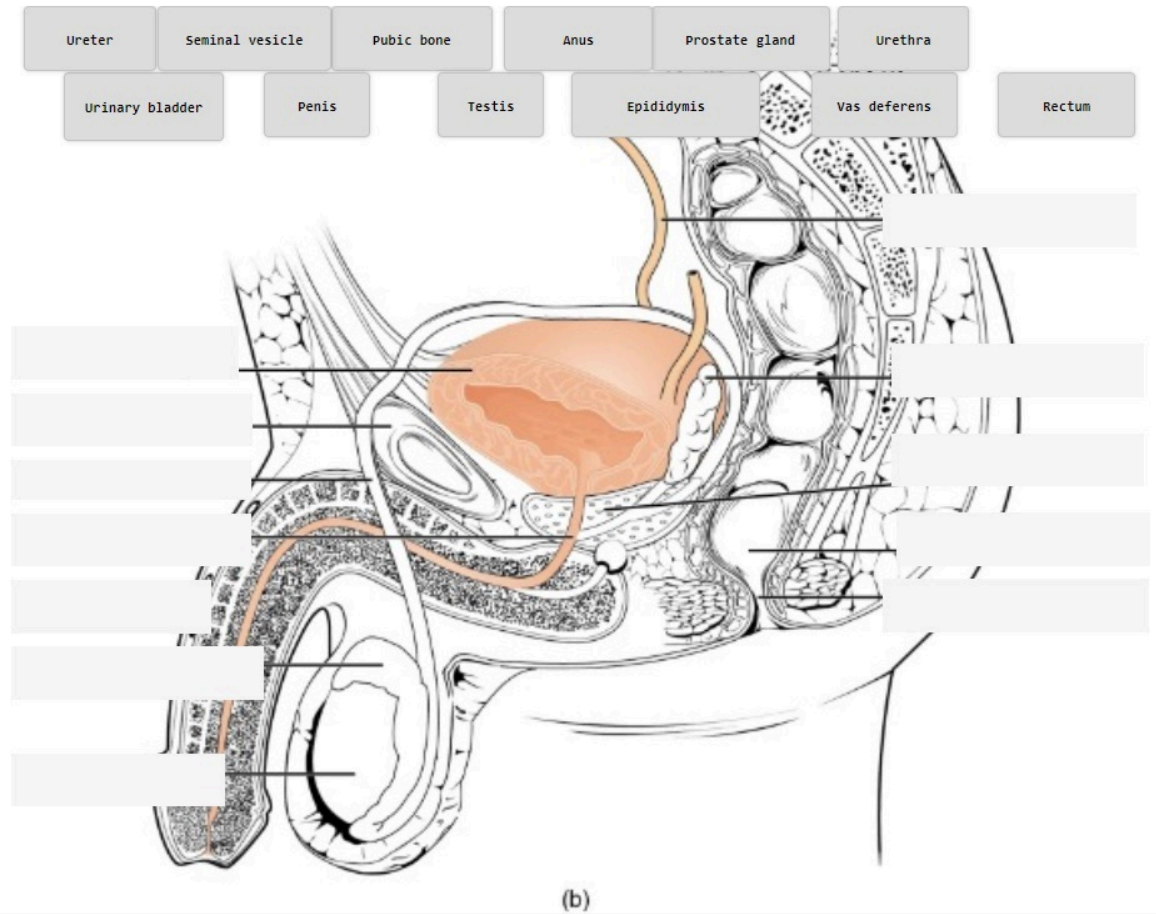
Anatomy Labeling Activity

Anatomy Labeling Activity (Text Version)

Label the following diagram correctly with words:

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. Ureter | 5. Prostate Gland | 9. Testis |
| 2. Seminal Vesicle | 6. Urethra | 10. Epididymis |
| 3. Pubic Bone | 7. Urinary Bladder | 11. Vas Deferens |
| 4. Anus | 8. Penis | 12. Rectum |

Male Reproductive System Anatomy



Anatomy Labeling Activity Diagram (Text Version)

Detailed anatomical diagram of the male reproductive system from a lateral viewpoint. The diagram highlights the location of key components from top of the diagram is the _____[Blank 1]. Then from right to left is the _____[Blank 2] followed by the _____[Blank 3] which are a pair of glands that secrete fluid making up a substantial portion of seminal fluid. The _____[Blank 4] is one of the three bones making up the pelvis. The _____[Blank 5] is a carrying vessel that transports sperm from the testes to the urethra. Located at the base of the bladder is _____[Blank 6], this gland secretes nourishing fluid for sperm and becomes a component of semen. The _____[Blank 7] extends from the urinary bladder and carries the semen towards the penis. The _____[Blank 8], the external male sex organ used to inseminate a female during reproduction. The _____[Blank 9] is the straight portion of the lower large intestines, and the _____[Blank 10] expels fecal matter. Located under the penis is the _____[Blank 11] and extending from the testes is a cordlike structure known as the _____[Blank 12].

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Male Reproductive System Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical](#)

Male Reproductive Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Male Reproductive System terms not easily broken down into word parts (Text Version)

1. **hydrocele**
 - fluid-filled sac around the testicle
2. **varicocele**
 - enlarged veins of the spermatic cord
3. **ablation**
 - destruction of abnormal or excessive tissue by eroding, vaporizing or melting
4. **circumcision**
 - surgical removal of the prepuce (foreskin)
5. **enucleation**
 - excision of a whole organ or mass without cutting into it
6. **hydrocelectomy**
 - surgical removal of a fluid-filled sac around the testicle causing scrotal swelling (hydrocele)
7. **coitus**
 - sexual intercourse between male and female
8. **condom**
 - sheath (cover) for penis worn during coitus to prevent conception and spread of sexually transmitted infection
9. **infertility**

- inability to achieve pregnancy

10. **sterility**

- a condition of being unable to conceive or reproduce the species

Activity Source: Male Reproductive System terms not easily broken down into word parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Common Male Reproductive System Abbreviations

Common Male Reproductive System Abbreviations

- **AIDS** (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)
- **BPH** (benign prostatic hyperplasia, benign prostatic hypertrophy)
- **Bx** (biopsy)
- **CT** (chlamydia)
- **DRE** (digital rectal examination)
- **ED** (erectile dysfunction)
- **FTA-ABS** (florescent treponemal antibody absorption test)
- **GC** (gonococcus)
- **GU** (genitourinary)
- **HIV** (human immunodeficiency virus)
- **HoLEP** (holmium laser enucleation of the prostate gland)
- **HPV** (human papillomavirus)
- **HSV-2** (herpes simplex virus 2)
- **LUTS** (lower urinary tract symptoms)
- **NGU** (nongonococcal urethritis)
- **PSA** (prostate-specific antigen)
- **PVP** (photoselective vaporization of the prostate gland)
- **RP** (radical prostatectomy)
- **STD** (sexually transmitted disease)
- **STI** (sexually transmitted infection)
- **TRUS** (transrectal ultrasound)
- **TSE** (testicular self-examination)

- **TUIP** (transurethral incision of the prostate gland)
- **TUMT** (transurethral microwave thermotherapy)
- **TURP** (transurethral resection of the prostate gland)
- **VD** (venereal disease)
- **VDRL** (Venereal Disease Research Laboratory)

Activity source: Male Reproductive System Common Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version.

Image Descriptions

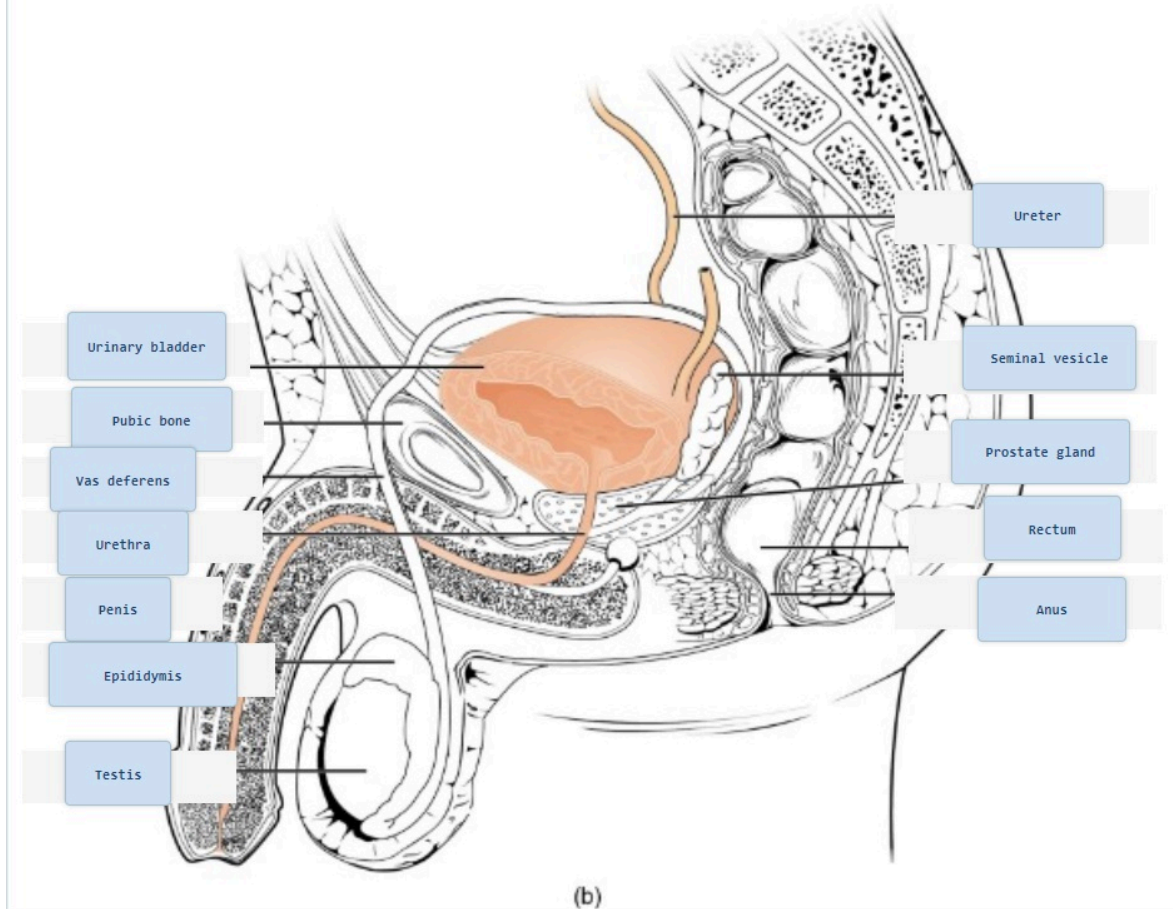
Figure 6.2 image description: This diagram shows the structure of sperm; the major parts are labeled (from left to right): head section (acrosome, plasma membrane, nucleus), mid-piece (centriole, mitochondria, flagellum), tail (flagellum, axial filament), end piece (end piece). [\[Return to Figure 6.2\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Male Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Male Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

Male Reproductive System Anatomy



1.

Check your answer: Anatomy Labeling Activity Diagram (Text Version) Detailed anatomical diagram of the male reproductive system from a lateral viewpoint. The diagram highlights the location of key components from top of the diagram is the **ureter**. Then from right to left is the **urinary bladder** followed by the **seminal vesicles** which are a pair of glands that secrete fluid making up a substantial portion of seminal fluid. The **pubic bone** is one of the three bones making up the pelvis. The **vas deferens** is a carrying vessel that transports sperm from the testes to the urethra. Located at the base of the bladder is **prostate gland**, this gland secretes nourishing fluid for sperm and becomes a component of semen. The **urethra** extends from the urinary bladder and carries the semen towards the penis. The **penis**, the external male sex organ used to inseminate a female during reproduction. The **rectum** is the straight portion of the lower large intestines, and the **anus** expels fecal matter. Located under the penis is the **testes** and extending from the testes is a cordlike structure known as the **epididymis**.

6.4 - Male Reproductive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Erectile Dysfunction Disorder (EDD)

Erectile dysfunction (ED) is a condition in which a male has difficulty either initiating or maintaining an erection. The combined prevalence of minimal, moderate, and complete ED is approximately 40% in men at age 40 and reaches nearly 70% by 70 years of age. In addition to aging, ED is associated with diabetes, vascular disease, psychiatric disorders, prostate disorders, the use of some drugs such as certain antidepressants, and problems with the testes resulting in low testosterone concentrations. These physical and emotional conditions can lead to disruptions in the vasodilation pathway and result in an inability to achieve an erection (Betts, et al., 2013).

Cancer

Prostate Cancer

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), prostate cancer is the second most common cancer occurring in men. However, some forms of prostate cancer grow very slowly and may not require treatment. In contrast, aggressive forms of prostate cancer involve **metastasis** to organs like the lungs and brain. There is no link between Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia and prostate cancer, but the symptoms are similar. Prostate cancer is detected by medical history, a blood test, and a digital rectal exam that allows physicians to palpate the prostate and check for unusual masses. If a mass is detected, the cancer diagnosis is confirmed by biopsy of the cells (Betts, et al., 2013).

Did You Know?

Family history is a common risk factor for testicular cancer.

Testicular Cancer

Testicular cancer begins in the **testicle** or testis. It is most often found in men age 15 to 44 years, although it can be diagnosed at any age (Canadian Cancer Society, 2020). Testicular cancer is rare and treatable when diagnosed early. Common signs and symptoms include a painless lump in the testicle, swelling, a heavy feeling in the **scrotum** or abdomen, amongst others. Sometimes, testicular cancer is found during infertility testing. An **orchiectomy** is the most common procedure for diagnosing and treating testicular cancer (Canadian Cancer Society, 2020). To learn more about testicular cancer, diagnosis, and treatments, please go to the [Canadian Cancer Society's web page on testicular cancer \[New Tab\]](#).

Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs)

The terms for sexually transmitted infections (STI) and sexuality transmitted diseases (STD) are often used interchangeably. Sexuality transmitted disease (STD) implies the disease was acquired through sexual transmission. A disease is a disorder of structure or function in a human, which produces specific signs or symptoms. A disease must be managed, as with the case of human immunodeficiency virus (which can also be acquired through the transmission of other bodily fluids; thus not solely sexual transmission). The treatment may include **antiretrovirals** or **anti-virals** (Urology Care Foundation, 2019).

Chlamydia (CT)

Chlamydia is one of the most common sexually transmitted infections (STIs) caused by bacteria that infect the cervix, urethra, and other reproductive organs. Chlamydia is easy to treat and can be cured. Many people with chlamydia do not have any symptoms and unknowingly pass the infection to their sexual partner(s). If symptoms develop, they usually appear two to six weeks after sexual contact with an infected person. Males may have penial discharge and itching around the urethra. The urethra is the opening in the penis. Males may also experience **dysuria**, **polyuria**, urethral pain and **urethritis** (Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion, 2019; Region of Peel, 2007).

Chlamydia spreads through unprotected oral, anal or vaginal sex with an infected person. Chlamydia can be spread to the eyes via the hands with direct contact of infected fluids. Until a patient finishes their treatment, they continue to have the infection and can continue to pass it to others. Chlamydia is treated with antibiotic pills. If the patient has **epididymitis**, they may need to be hospitalized and be treated with intravenous (IV) antibiotics. All sexual partners within the past 60 days should be examined, treated, and informed that having no symptoms does not mean there is no infection (Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion, 2019; Region of Peel, 2007).

Gonorrhea (Gonococcus) – (GC)

Gonorrhea is a sexually transmitted infection (STI) caused by bacteria that infects the cervix, urethra, and other

reproductive organs. Infections can also infect the throat and anus. Gonorrhea can be treated and cured. Many people infected with gonorrhea have no symptoms and can unknowingly pass the infection on to their sexual partner(s). If symptoms develop, they may appear two to seven days after sexual contact with an infected person. Symptoms vary depending on which part of the body is infected. Males may have yellowish-white discharge from the penis. They may also have **dysuria**, **polyuria**, testicular pain and **testitis**. Gonorrhea infection from oral sex may lead to sore throat and swollen glands. Gonorrhea infection from anal sex may cause itchiness and discharge from the anus. Gonorrhea is spread through unprotected oral, vaginal or anal sex with an infected person. Until the patient finishes their treatment, they continue to have the infection and can pass it to others (Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion, 2019a; Region of Peel, 2007).

Gonorrhea is treated with oral **antibiotics** in combination with an **intramuscular** (IM) injection. It is important that one completes the treatment and abstain from unprotected sexual activity for at least seven days following treatment. If the patient develops **epididymitis**, the patient may need to go to a hospital and be treated with intravenous antibiotics. All sexual partners within the past 60 days should be examined, treated, and informed that having no symptoms does not mean there is no infection (Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion, 2019a; Region of Peel, 2007).

Reportable Diseases

Both chlamydia and gonorrhea are reportable diseases to the Ministry of Health and Long Term Care. Therefore, the local health department will be calling the doctor's office or patient to ensure correct treatment was received and sexual partners have been followed up with testing and treatment (Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion, 2019a; Region of Peel, 2007). To learn more about STIs and STDs such as chlamydia and gonorrhea, please go to the [Public Health Ontario website \[New Tab\]](#).

Human Papillomavirus- HPV

HPV is another common sexually transmitted infection (STI). Both males and females can be infected with HPV. Around three quarters of sexually active individuals have been exposed to HPV during their lifetime. There are over 100 strains of HPV and some strains of HPV can cause visible genital warts. The warts are usually painless but may be itchy, uncomfortable, and hard to treat. Some strains of HPV cause genital, anal, throat, and cervical cancers. HPV spreads through sexual activity and skin-to-skin contact in the genital area with an infected person. Since some people are **asymptomatic**, they don't know they have the virus and consequently pass the virus to their sexual partners. Treatments are available for genital warts but there is no cure for HPV (York Region Health Connect, n.d.). To learn more about HPV symptoms, treatments, and prognosis, visit the [CDC Fact Sheet on HPV \[PDF\]](#).

HPV Vaccine

A vaccine called Gardasil® 9 is available for 9 HPV strains. This vaccine assists the immune system in protecting

the body against infections and diseases caused by HPV (York Region Health Connection, n.d.). To learn more about Gardasil® 9 treatments, please visit the [Gardasil® 9 website \[New Tab\]](#).

Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV)

Genital herpes is a sexually transmitted infection (STI) that is caused by a virus called herpes simplex virus (HSV). There are two types of herpes simplex viruses:

- Type 1- oral herpes or cold sores (HSV-1)
- Type 2- genital herpes (HSV-2)

These viruses are very similar and either type can cause genital herpes or cold sores. Symptoms might include **dysuria**, enlarged glands, **myalgia**, **arthralgia** and fever. Once a patient is infected with HSV, the virus remains in their body even after the symptoms are gone and can cause recurring outbreaks. When the virus becomes active again, the symptoms return but are usually less painful and heal faster. Recurring outbreaks vary from person-to-person, however they can be triggered by emotional or physical stress, exposure to sunlight, hormonal changes, poor nutrition, sexual intercourse, lack of sleep or a low immune system.

Herpes is spread through direct contact with the sores or blisters of an infected person. Contact (and transfer of the virus) can occur from genitals-to-genitals, mouth-to-genitals or mouth-to-mouth. Herpes can also be passed to the anal area. Herpes spreads easily during sexual contact while symptoms are present, or just before an outbreak of symptoms. An infected person may spread herpes even when they have *no* symptoms; this is called **asymptomatic** shedding. One can spread the herpes virus to other parts of their body after touching the sores, which is referred to as **autoinoculation**. The fingers, eyes, and other body areas can accidentally become infected in this way. Hand washing after touching sores and blisters is recommended to prevent spreading the virus.

There is no cure for herpes. Antiviral pills help to reduce symptoms and speed the healing of blisters or sores and are prescribed by a doctor. Treatment of symptoms may be managed with medication for pain, bath salts, cold compresses, and urinating in water may help to relieve discomfort. Keep the infected area clean and dry, wear cotton underwear and loose clothing to reduce discomfort. All sexual partner(s) should be informed. The only way to reduce the risk, of transmission of herpes is to avoid direct contact with the sores and to use condoms. Condoms will reduce but not eliminate risk as the virus can be present and shed from the skin in the genital area (Ontario Ministry of Health and Long-Term Care, 2015).

To learn more about the symptoms, complications, treatments and prognosis of HSV, please visit the [Mayo Clinic's page on Genital Herpes \[New Tab\]](#) website or [Public Health Ontario's Testing Index \[New Tab\]](#).

STI Medical Abbreviations

Reproductive Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) Abbreviations

- **AB** (Antibiotic)
- **CT** (Chlamydia)
- **GC** (Gonorrhea)
- **HPV** (Human Papillomavirus)
- **HSV** (Herpes Simplex Virus)
- **PID** (Pelvic Inflammatory Disease)
- **STD** (Sexually Transmitted Diseases)
- **STI** (Sexually Transmitted Infections)

Activity source: Reproductive Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Terms in Context

Male Reproductive System Medical Report (Text Version)

Fill in the consultation report with correct words listed below:

- Urethral
- Prostatitis
- Complete
- by mouth
- circumcised

MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM – MEDICAL REPORT

PATIENT NAME: George SMITH

AGE: 57

SEX: Male

HISTORY (Hx): George Smith is a 57-year-old male who was referred to the urologist for a vasectomy.

FAMILY HISTORY: Has three living children. Occasional condom use for birth control.

PAST HISTORY

1. Herpes Simples Virus-2 (HSV-2) diagnosis (Dx) in 2002 and treated sexually transmitted infection (STI) in 2014.
2. Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) in 2019.
3. Current prostate specific antigen (PSA) is 15.6, with a previous result of 4.2.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION/ASSESSMENT: Upon examination, normal male anatomy with _____[Blank 1] penis, normal foreskin and one testicle is descended. Leukorrhea is evident from the tip of the urethral os.

Complains of (c/o) urinary retention, nocturia and dysuria. He has had unprotected sexual intercourse four days ago. Digital rectal exam (DRE) indicated _____[Blank 2] with proctalgia.

DIAGNOSIS (Dx)

1. Urethral swab for gonorrhea/chlamydia (GC/CT).
2. Serology: PSA, _____[Blank 3] blood count (CBC).
3. Urine: Urinalysis, GC/CT, culture, and sensitivity (C&S).
4. Sonography for the undescended testicle.

MEDICATIONS (Rx)

1. Ceftriaxone 250 mg intramuscular immediately (IM STAT)
2. Azithromycin 1 g _____[Blank 4] immediately (po STAT)

PRELIMINARY CONCERNS

1. Rising PSA.
2. _____[Blank 5] discharge.
3. Undescended.

FOLLOW UP: Call office in 5 days for test results and follow up appointment in 2 weeks to discuss further booking of vasectomy and potential Bx (biopsy) of prostate.

Steve Fosters, MD, Urology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Male Reproduction – Medical Report by Connie Stevens and Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)./Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures related to the Male Reproductive System

Vasectomy

Watch the video:

Watch the **[Animated Dissection of Anatomy for Medicine's \(A.D.A.M.\) \[Video\]](#)** to learn about a vasectomy. As described in this video, a vasectomy is a procedure in which a small section of the ductus (vas) deferens is removed from the scrotum. This cuts off the path taken by sperm through the ductus deferens (as cited in Betts, et al., 2013).

No-Scalpel Vasectomy (NSV)

An alternative to a traditional vasectomy is the no-scalpel vasectomy (NSV). This is a minimally invasive procedure and an added benefit is that the recovery time is shorter. All vasectomies are completed by a urologist (Gentle Procedures Clinic, n.d.). To learn more about the NSV procedure, visit [No-Scalpel Vasectomy Procedure Info \[New Tab\]](#) by the Gentle Procedures Clinic in Toronto, Ontario.

Urology

Urology is a surgical subspecialty in which the surgeon has additional training in the treatments of diseases and disorders of the male and female urogenital systems (Canadian Medical Association, 2018). To learn more about urology and the training involved to become a urologist, visit the [Canadian Medical Association's Urology Profile \[New Tab\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from "[Male Reproductive System](#)" in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Male Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Circumcised, 2. Prostatitis, 3. Complete, 4. By mouth, 5. Urethral

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Male Reproductive Vocabulary

Arthralgia

Joint pain.

Bulbourethral glands

(Also, Cowper's glands) glands that secrete a lubricating mucus that cleans and lubricates the urethra prior to and during ejaculation.

Corpus cavernosum

Either of two columns of erectile tissue in the penis that fill with blood during an erection.

Corpus spongiosum

(Plural = corpora cavernosa) column of erectile tissue in the penis that fills with blood during an erection and surrounds the penile urethra on the ventral portion of the penis.

Ductus deferens

(also, vas deferens) duct that transports sperm from the epididymis through the spermatic cord and into the ejaculatory duct; also referred as the vas deferens.

Dysuria

Painful urination.

Ejaculatory duct

Duct that connects the ampulla of the ductus deferens with the duct of the seminal vesicle at the prostatic urethra.

Epididymis

(plural = epididymides) coiled tubular structure in which sperm start to mature and are stored until ejaculation.

Epididymitis

Inflammation/swelling of the epididymis.

Gamete

Haploid reproductive cell that contributes genetic material to form an offspring.

Glans penis

Bulbous end of the penis that contains a large number of nerve endings.

Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)

Hormone released by the hypothalamus that regulates the production of follicle-stimulating hormone and luteinizing hormone from the pituitary gland.

Gonads

Reproductive organs (testes in men and ovaries in women) that produce gametes and reproductive hormones.

Inguinal canal

Opening in abdominal wall that connects the testes to the abdominal cavity.

Leydig cells

Cells between the seminiferous tubules of the testes that produce testosterone, a type of interstitial cell.

Myalgia

Muscle pain.

Penis

Male organ of copulation.

Polyuria

Frequent urination.

Prepuce

(Also, foreskin) flap of skin that forms a collar around, and thus protects and lubricates, the glans penis; also referred as the foreskin.

Prostate gland

Doughnut-shaped gland at the base of the bladder surrounding the urethra and contributing fluid to semen during ejaculation.

Scrotum

External pouch of skin and muscle that houses the testes.

Semen

Ejaculatory fluid composed of sperm and secretions from the seminal vesicles, prostate, and bulbourethral glands.

Seminal vesicle

Gland that produces seminal fluid, which contributes to semen.

Seminiferous tubules

Tube structures within the testes where spermatogenesis occurs.

Sertoli cells

Cells that support germ cells through the process of spermatogenesis; a type of sustentacular cell.

Sperm

(Also, spermatozoon) male gamete.

Spermatic cord

Bundle of nerves and blood vessels that supplies the testes; contains ductus deferens.

Spermatid

Immature sperm cells produced by meiosis II of secondary spermatocytes.

Spermatocyte

Cell that results from the division of spermatogonium and undergoes meiosis I and meiosis II to form spermatids.

Spermatogenesis

Formation of new sperm, occurs in the seminiferous tubules of the testes.

Spermatogonia

Diploid precursor cells that become sperm (singular = spermatogonium).

Spermiogenesis

Transformation of spermatids to spermatozoa during spermatogenesis.

Testes

Male gonads (singular = testis).

Testitis

Inflammation of the testicles.

Urethritis

Inflammation of the urethra.

Test Yourself

Male Reproductive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text Version)

1. The reproductive organs (testes in men and ovaries in women) that produce gametes and reproductive hormones is called the _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Penis
 - b. Semen
 - c. Gonads
2. The transformation of spermatids to spermatozoa during spermatogenesis is called _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Spermatogenesis
 - b. Prepuce
 - c. Ductus deferens
3. Glands that secrete a lubricating mucus that cleans and lubricates the urethra prior to and during ejaculation are called _____[Blank 3].
 - a. Testes
 - b. Bulbourethral glands
 - c. Scrotum
4. A doughnut-shaped gland at the base of the bladder surrounding the urethra and contributing fluid to semen during ejaculation is called the _____[Blank 4].
 - a. Seminal vesicle
 - b. Epididymis
 - c. Prostate gland
5. Opening in the abdominal wall that connects the testes to the abdominal cavity is called the _____[Blank 5].
 - a. Inguinal canal
 - b. Sertoli cells
 - c. Gamete

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Male Reproductive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Male Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Male Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Gonads, 2. Spermatogenesis, 3. Bulbourethral glands, 4. Prostate gland, 5. Inguinal Canal

References

- Canadian Cancer Society. (2020). Symptoms of testicular cancer. <https://www.cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/cancer-type/testicular/signs-and-symptoms/?region=on>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). Urology profile. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/urology-e.pdf>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2017, July) Genital HPV infection: CDC fact sheet. National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention. <https://www.cdc.gov/std/hpv/hpv-Fs-July-2017.pdf>
- CrashCourse. (2015, November 9). Reproductive System, part 2 – Male reproductive system: Crash Course anatomy & physiology 41. [Video]. YouTube. https://youtu.be/-XQcnO4iX_U
- Gentle Procedures Clinic. (n.d). No-Scalpel vasectomy procedure info. <https://gentleprocedurestoronto.ca/vasectomy/no-scalpel-no-needle/>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2022, November 22). Genital herpes. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/genital-herpes/symptoms-causes/syc-20356161>
- Medical News Today. (2023, February 16). What is the difference between chlamydia and gonorrhea? Medical News Today. <https://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/chlamydia-and-gonorrhea>
- Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion. (2023, December 15). Chlamydia. Public Health Ontario. <https://www.publichealthontario.ca/en/diseases-and-conditions/infectious-diseases/sexually-transmitted-infections/chlamydia>
- Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion. (2023, December 15). Gonorrhea. Public Health Ontario. <https://www.publichealthontario.ca/en/diseases-and-conditions/infectious-diseases/sexually-transmitted-infections/gonorrhea>
- Urology Care Foundation. (2019). What are sexually transmitted infections (STIs) or diseases (STDs)?. [https://www.urologyhealth.org/urologic-conditions/sexually-transmitted-infections#Acquired_Immune_Deficiency_Syndrome_\(AIDS\)](https://www.urologyhealth.org/urologic-conditions/sexually-transmitted-infections#Acquired_Immune_Deficiency_Syndrome_(AIDS))

CHAPTER 7: FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [7.1 – Introduction to the Female Reproductive System](#)
- [7.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Female Reproductive System](#)
- [7.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Female Reproductive System](#)
- [7.4 – Female Reproductive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

7.1 - Introduction to the Female Reproductive System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the female reproductive system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the female reproductive system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of female reproductive system medical terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the female reproductive system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Female Reproductive System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the female reproductive system.

Female Reproductive System Word Parts

Prefix

- **peri-** (surrounding)
- **endo-** (within, inside)
- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **an-** (absence of, without)
- **dys-** (painful, difficult, abnormal, laboured)

Combining Form

- **archo/o** (first, beginning)

- **cervic/o** (cervix)
- **colp/o** (vagina)
- **endometri/o** (endometrium)
- **episi/o** (vulva)
- **gyn/o** (woman)
- **gynec/o** (woman)
- **hymen/o** (hymen)
- **hyster/o** (uterus)
- **mamm/o** (breast)
- **mast/o** (breast)
- **men/o** (menstruation)
- **metr/o** (uterus)
- **metr/i** (uterus)
- **oophor/o** (ovary)
- **pelv/i** (pelvis, pelvic bones, pelvic cavity)
- **perine/o** (perineum)
- **salping/o** (fallopian tube)
- **trachel/o** (cervix)
- **vagin/o** (vagina)
- **vulv/o** (vulva)

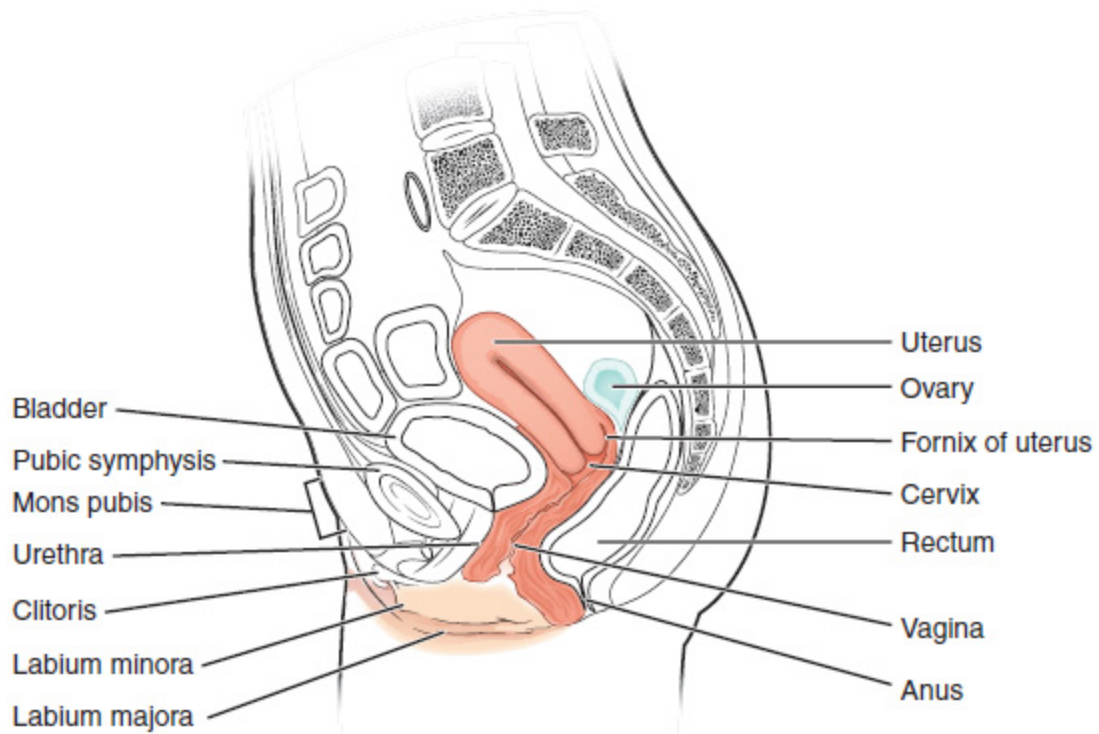
Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-atresia** (occlusion, closure)
- **-clesis** (surgical closure)
- **-ectomy** (excision, surgical removal)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist or physician who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition)
- **-pexy** (surgical fixation, suspension)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing, repairing)
- **-rrhea** (flow, discharge)
- **-salpinx** (fallopian tube)
- **-scope** (instrument used for visual examination)
- **-scopy** (visually examining)
- **-tomy** (cut into, incision)

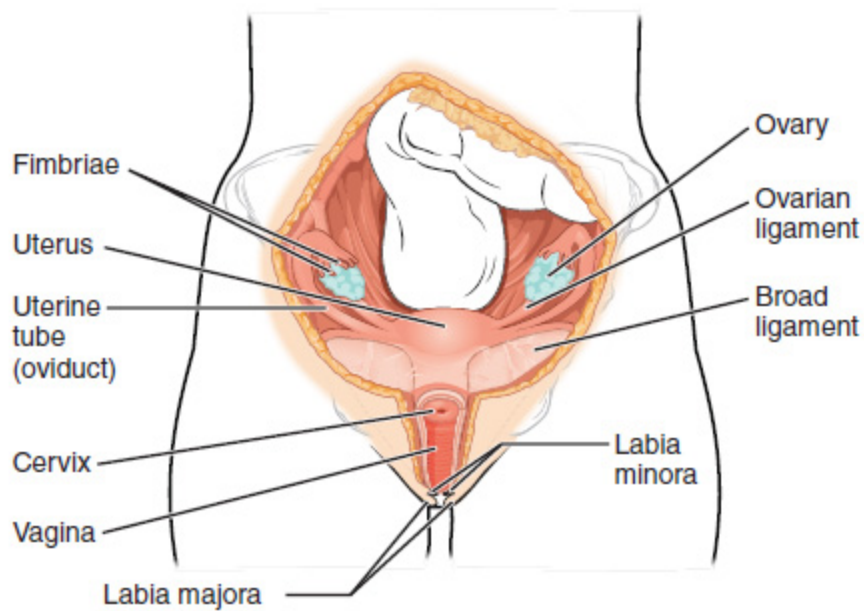
Activity source: [Female Reproductive System](#) by Kimberlee Carter licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Introduction to the Female Reproductive System

The female reproductive system produces **gametes** and reproductive hormones. In addition, the female reproductive system supports the developing fetus and delivers it to the outside world. The female reproductive system is located primarily inside the pelvic cavity. The female gonads are called ovaries and the gamete they produce is called an oocyte.



(a) Human female reproductive system: lateral view



(b) Human female reproductive system: anterior view

Figure 7.1 Female Reproductive System. The major organs of the female reproductive system are located inside the pelvic cavity. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 7.1 Image description.](#)]

Watch [Reproductive System, Part 1 – Female Reproductive System: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #40 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Female Reproductive System Medical Terms

Female Reproductive System Medical Terms (Text version)

Practice the following female reproductive system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **menarche**

- men/arche
- beginning of menstruation

2. **cervicitis**

- cervic/itis
- inflammation of the cervix

3. **endocervical**

- endo/cervic/al
- pertaining to within the cervix

4. **colpocleisis**

- colp/o/cleisis
- surgical closure of the vagina

5. **colpoperineorrhaphy**

- colp/o/perine/o/rrhaphy
- suturing of the vagina and the perineum

6. **colpoplasty**

- colp/o/plasty
- surgical repair of the vagina

7. **colporrhaphy**

- colp/o/rrhaphy
- suturing of (a tear in) the vagina

8. **colposcope**

- colp/o/scope
- instrument used to view the vagina and the cervix

9. **colposcopy**

- colp/o/scopy
- process of viewing the vagina

10. **endometriosis**

- endometri/osis
- abnormal condition of the endometrium

11. **endometritis**

- endometr/itis
- inflammation of the endometrium

12. **episiorrhaphy**

- episi/o/rrhaphy
- suturing of the vulva

13. **episioperineoplasty**

- episi/o/perine/o/plasty
- surgical repair of the vulva and the perineum

14. **gynopathic**

- gyn/o/pathic
- disease pertaining to the women

15. **gynecologist**

- gynec/o/logist
- specialist or physician who studies and treats disorders and diseases of women

16. **gynecology**

- gynec/o/logy
- study of women

17. **hymenectomy**

- hymen/ectomy
- excision of the hymen

18. **hymenotomy**

- hymen/o/tomy
 - incision into the hymen
19. **hysterectomy**
- hyster/ectomy
 - excision of the uterus
20. **hysteropexy**
- hyster/o/pexy
 - surgical fixation of the uterus
21. **hysterosalpingo-oophorectomy**
- hyster/o/salping/o/-oophor/ectomy
 - excision of the uterus, uterine tubes, and ovaries
22. **hysterosalpingogram (HSG)**
- hyster/o/salping/o/gram
 - radiographic image of the uterus and uterine tubes
23. **hysteroscope**
- hyster/o/scope
 - instrument used for visual examination of the uterus
24. **hysteroscopy**
- hyster/o/scopy
 - visual examination of the uterus
25. **sonohysterography (SHG)**
- son/o/hyster/o/graphy (SHG)
 - process of recording the uterus by use of sound
26. **mammoplasty**
- mamm/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the breast
27. **mammogram**
- mamm/o/gram
 - radiographic image of the breast
28. **mammography**
- mamm/o/graphy

- radiographic imaging of the breast
29. **mastitis**
- mast/itis
 - inflammation of the breast
30. **mastectomy**
- mast/ectomy
 - surgical removal of the breast
31. **mastopexy**
- mast/o/pexy
 - surgical fixation of the breast
32. **mastalgia**
- mast/algia
 - pain in the breast
33. **dysmenorrhea**
- dys/men/o/rrhea
 - painful menstrual flow
34. **amenorrhea**
- a/men/o/rrhea
 - absence of menstrual flow
35. **menometrorrhagia**
- men/o/metr/o/rrhagia
 - excessive bleeding from the uterus at menstruation
36. **menorrhagia**
- men/o/rrhagia
 - excessive bleeding at menstruation
37. **metrorrhagia**
- metr/o/rrhagia
 - excessive bleeding from the uterus
38. **oligomenorrhea**
- olig/o/men/o/rrhea
 - scanty menstrual flow

39. **myometritis**
- my/o/metr/itis
 - inflammation of the uterine muscle
40. **perimetritis**
- peri/metr/itis
 - inflammation surrounding the uterus
41. **oophoritis**
- oophor/itis
 - inflammation of the ovary
42. **oophorectomy**
- oophor/ectomy
 - excision of the ovary
43. **pelviscopic**
- pelv/i/scop/ic
 - pertaining to visual examination of the pelvic cavity
44. **pelviscopy**
- pelv/i/scopy
 - visual examination of the pelvic cavity
45. **perineorrhaphy**
- perine/o/rrhaphy
 - suturing of (a tear in) the perineum
46. **salpingitis**
- salping/itis
 - inflammation of a fallopian/uterine tube
47. **salpingectomy**
- salping/ectomy
 - excision of the uterine/fallopian tube
48. **salpingo-oophorectomy**
- salping/o/-oophor/ectomy
 - excision of the uterine tube and ovary
49. **salpingostomy**

- salping/o/stomy
 - creation of an artificial opening in the uterine tube
50. **trachelectomy**
- trachel/ectomy
 - excision of the cervix
51. **trachelorrhaphy**
- trachel/o/rrhaphy
 - suturing of the cervix
52. **vaginitis**
- vagin/itis
 - inflammation of the vagina
53. **vaginosis**
- vagin/osis
 - abnormal condition of the vagina
54. **vulvovaginitis**
- vulv/o/vagin/itis
 - inflammation of the vulva and vagina
55. **vaginal**
- vagin/al
 - pertaining to the vagina
56. **vesicovaginal**
- vesic/o/vagin/al
 - pertaining to the bladder and the vagina
57. **vulvovaginal**
- vulv/o/vagin/al
 - pertaining to the vulva and vagina
58. **vulvectomy**
- vulv/ectomy
 - excision of the vulva
59. **hematosalpinx**
- hemat/o/salpinx

- blood in the uterine/fallopian tube
60. **hydrosalpinx**
- hydro/salpinx
 - water in the uterine/fallopian tube
61. **pyosalpinx**
- py/o/salpinx
 - pus in the uterine/fallopian tube
62. **leukorrhea**
- leuk/o/rrhea
 - white discharge
63. **menopause**
- men/o/pause
 - cessation on menstruation
64. **menses**
- men/ses
 - the monthly bleeding from the uterus
65. **perimenopause**
- peri/men/o/pause
 - period of time before and after menopause

Activity Source: Female Reproductive System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Image Descriptions

Figure 7.1 image description: This figure shows the structure and the different organs in the female reproductive system. The top panel shows the lateral view with labels (clockwise from top): uterus, ovary, fornix of uterus, cervix, rectum, vagina, anus, labium majora, labium minora, clitoris, urethra, mons pubis, pubic symphysis, bladder; and the bottom panel shows the anterior view with labels (clockwise from top): ovary, ovarian ligament, broad ligament, labia minora, labia majora, vagina, cervix, uterine tube, uterus, fimbriae. [\[Return to Figure 7.1\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Female Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Female Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

7.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Female Reproductive System

External Female Genitals

The external female reproductive structures are referred to collectively as the **vulva** and they include:

- The **mons pubis** is a pad of fat that is located at the anterior, over the pubic bone. After puberty, it becomes covered in pubic hair.
- The **labia majora** (labia = “lips”; majora = “larger”) are folds of hair-covered skin that begin just posterior to the mons pubis.
- The **labia minora** (labia = “lips”; minora = “smaller”) is thinner and more pigmented and extends medially to the labia majora.
 - Although they naturally vary in shape and size from woman to woman, the labia minora serve to protect the female urethra and the entrance to the female reproductive tract.
 - The superior, anterior portions of the labia minora come together to encircle the **clitoris** (or glans clitoris), an organ that originates from the same cells as the glans penis and has abundant nerves that make it important in sexual sensation and orgasm. The **hymen** is a thin membrane that sometimes partially covers the entrance to the **vagina**.
- The vaginal opening is located between the opening of the urethra and the anus. It is flanked by outlets to the **Bartholin's glands**.

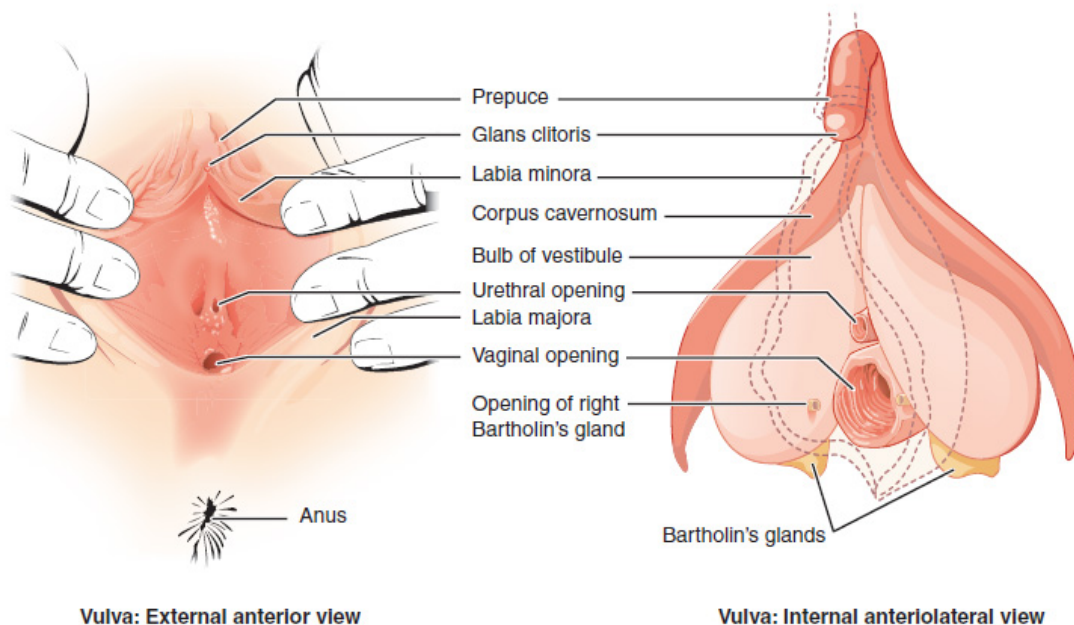


Figure 7.2. The Vulva. The external female genitalia are referred to collectively as the vulva. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 7.2 Image description.]

Internal Female Reproductive Organs

Vagina

The **vagina** is a muscular canal (approximately 10 cm long) that is the entrance to the reproductive tract. It also serves as the exit from the uterus during menses and childbirth. The outer walls of the anterior and posterior vagina are columns with ridges. The superior **fornix** meets the uterine cervix. The cervix is the opening to the uterus.

The walls of the vagina are lined with:

- An outer, fibrous adventitia
- A middle layer of smooth muscle
- An inner mucous membrane with transverse folds called **rugae**

Together, the middle and inner layers allow the expansion of the vagina to accommodate intercourse and childbirth. The thin, perforated hymen can partially surround the opening to the vaginal orifice. The **Bartholin's glands** and the lesser vestibular glands (located near the clitoris) secrete mucus, which keeps the vestibular area moist.

The vagina has a normal population of microorganisms that help to **protect** against infection. There is both pathogenic bacteria and yeast in the vagina. In a healthy woman, the most predominant type of vaginal bacteria is from the genus *Lactobacillus*, which secretes lactic acid. The lactic acid protects the vagina by maintaining an acidic pH (below 4.5).

Lactic acid, in combination with other vaginal secretions, makes the vagina a self-cleansing organ. However, **douching** can disrupt the normal balance of healthy microorganisms, and increase a woman's risk for infections and irritation. It is recommended that women do not douche and that they allow the vagina to maintain its normal healthy population of protective microbial flora.

Ovaries

The **ovaries** are the female gonads. There are two, one at each entrance to the fallopian tube. They are each about 2 to 3 cm in length, about the size of an almond. The ovaries are located within the pelvic cavity. The ovary itself is attached to the uterus via the ovarian ligament. The ovarian stroma forms the bulk of the adult ovary. Oocytes develop within the outer layer of this stroma, each surrounded by supporting cells. This grouping of an oocyte and its supporting cells is called a **follicle**.

The Fallopian Tubes

The fallopian tubes are the conduit of the **oocyte** from the ovary to the uterus. Each of the two fallopian tubes is close to, but not directly connected to, the ovary.

- The **isthmus** is the narrow medial end of each uterine tube that is connected to the uterus.
- The wide distal **infundibulum** flares out with slender, finger-like projections called **fimbriae**.
- The middle region of the tube, called the **ampulla**, is where fertilization often occurs.

The fallopian tubes have three layers:

- An outer serosa
- A middle smooth muscle layer
- An inner mucosal layer
 - In addition to its mucus-secreting cells, the inner mucosa contains ciliated cells that beat in the direction of the uterus, producing a current that will be critical to moving the **oocyte**.

Did You Know?

Fallopian tubes are not connected to the ovaries. Instead fimbriae catch the oocyte like a baseball in a glove.

The Uterus and Cervix

The **uterus** is the muscular organ that nourishes and supports the growing embryo. Its average size is approximately 5 cm wide by 7 cm long and it has three sections.

- The portion of the uterus **superior** to the opening of the uterine tubes is called the **fundus**.
- The middle section of the uterus is called the **body of uterus** (or corpus).
- The **cervix** is the narrow **inferior** portion of the uterus that projects into the vagina.
 - The cervix produces mucus secretions that become thin and stringy under the influence of high systemic plasma estrogen concentrations, and these secretions can facilitate sperm movement through the reproductive tract.

The wall of the uterus is made up of three layers:

- **Perimetrium:** the most superficial layer and serous membrane.
- **Myometrium:** a thick layer of smooth muscle responsible for uterine contractions.
- **Endometrium:** the innermost layer containing a connective tissue lining covered by epithelial tissue that lines the lumen. It provides the site of implantation for a fertilized egg and sheds during menstruation if no egg is fertilized.

Check Your Knowledge of the Female Reproductive System

Female Reproductive System Medical Abbreviations

Learn the abbreviations using the list below.

Female Reproductive System Medical Abbreviations

- **BC** (birth control)
- **BSO** (bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy)
- **Cx** (cervix)
- **D&C** (dilation and curettage)
- **FCC** (fibrocystic changes to the breast)
- **GYN** (gynecology)
- **HPV** (human papillomavirus)
- **HRT** (hormone replacement therapy)
- **HSG** (hysterosalpingogram)
- **IUD** (intrauterine device)
- **LAVH** (laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy)
- **PCOS** (polycystic ovarian syndrome)
- **PID** (pelvic inflammatory disease)
- **PMS** (premenstrual syndrome)
- **SGH** (sonohysterography)
- **TAH** (total abdominal hysterectomy)
- **TLH** (total laparoscopic hysterectomy)
- **TSS** (toxic shock syndrome)
- **TVH** (total vaginal hysterectomy)
- **TVS** (transvaginal sonography)
- **UAE** (uterine artery embolization)

Activity source: Female Reproductive System Common Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Concept Check

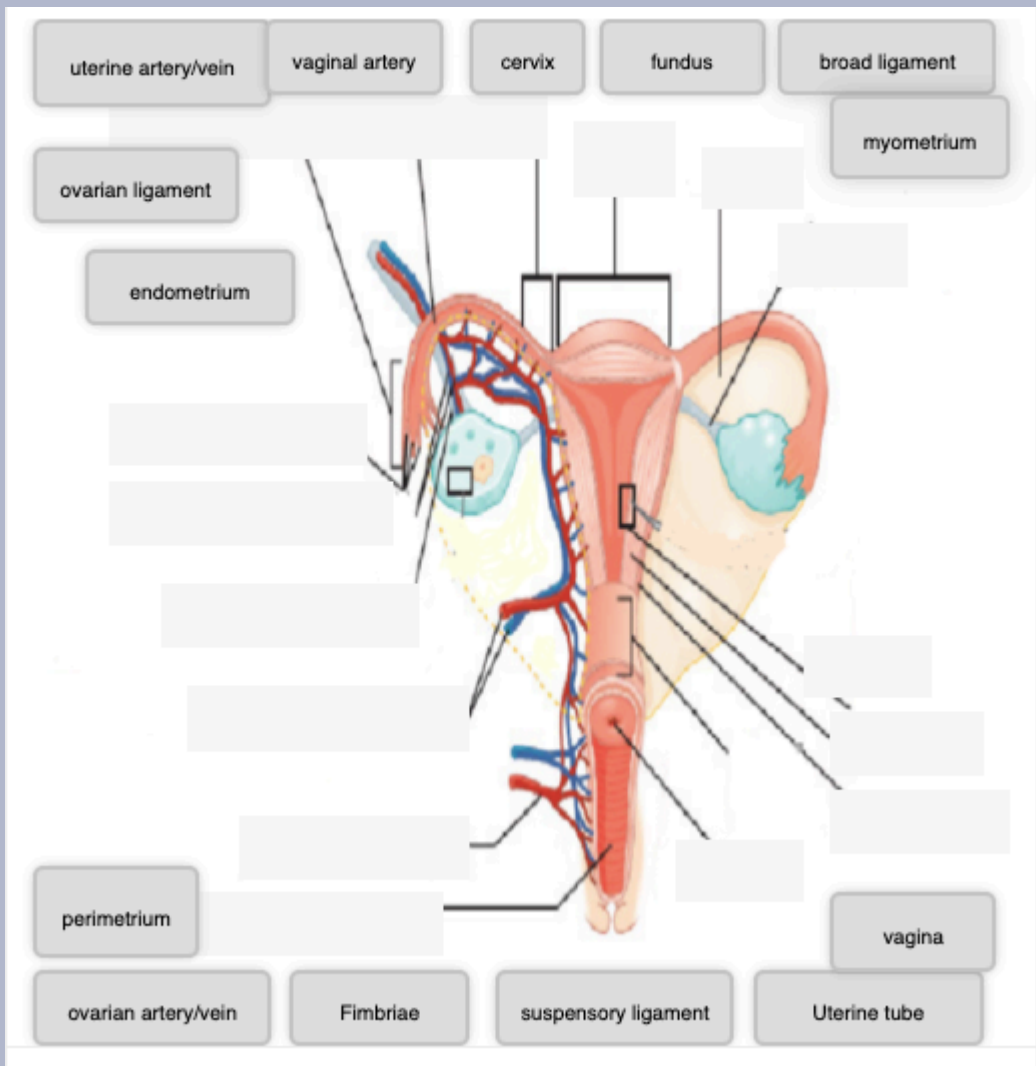
- Write or draw out the components of the pathway that an **oocyte** takes from beginning to end.
- Why do you think the **fallopian tubes** are not connected to the **ovaries**?

Anatomy Labeling Activity

Anatomy Labeling Activity (Text Version)

Label the diagram correctly with the following words:

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Broad Ligament | 6. Cervix | 11. Ovarian artery/vein |
| 2. Fundus | 7. Myometrium | 12. Fimbrae |
| 3. Uterine Tube | 8. Ovarian Ligament | 13. Suspensory Ligament |
| 4. Uterine artery/vein | 9. Endometrium | 14. Vagina |
| 5. Vaginal Artery | 10. Perimetrium | |



Anatomy Labeling Activity Diagram (Text Version)

Diagram of female reproductive system featuring anatomy organs and structures. The _____[Blank 1] also known as the fallopian tubes are positioned at the right top portion of the diagram. Extending from the uterine tube is finger-like projects known as _____[Blank 2]. The _____[Blank 3] is also known as the womb, is a hollow, muscular organ located in the pelvis between the bladder and rectum. The _____[Blank 4] supplies blood to the uterus. The _____[Blank 5] of uterus, also called the uterine fundus, refers to the dome-shaped, rounded superior part of the body of the uterus that lies above the opening. The _____[Blank 6] and the round ligaments of the uterus serve as secondary support for the uterus within the pelvis. The _____[Blank 7] is a fold of tissue arising from the peritoneum and extends out from the ovaries. The _____[Blank 8] connects the ovaries to the lateral surface of the uterus. The _____[Blank 9] supplies blood to the ovaries. The three layers of the uterus from outside to inside are the _____[Blank 10], _____[Blank 11], _____[Blank 12]. The neck of the uterus is called the cervix. The _____[Blank 13] is a muscular canal connecting the

cervix of the uterus and serves as the birth canal during childbirth. The _____[Blank 14] supplies the vagina with blood.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Female Reproductive System Anatomy by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

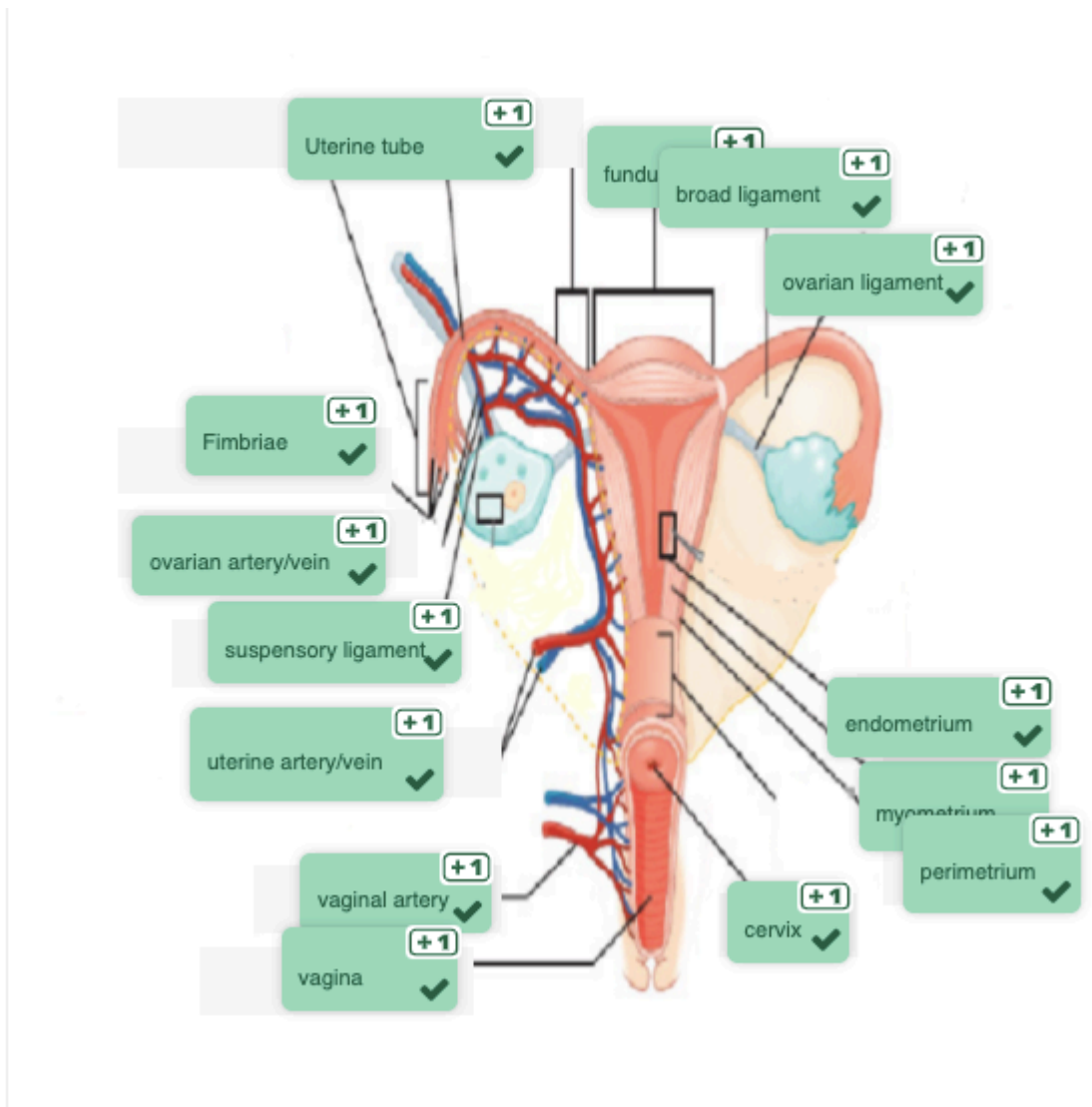
Image Descriptions

Figure 7.2 image description: This figure shows the parts of the vulva. The right panel shows the external anterior view and the left panel shows the internal anteriolateral view. The major parts are labeled (from top): prepuce, glans clitoridis, labia minora, corpus cavernosum, bulb of vestibule, urethral opening, labia majora, vaginal opening, opening of right Bartholin's gland, Bartholin's glands, anus. [\[Return to Figure 7.2\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Female Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Female Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Anatomy Labeling Activity Diagram (Text Version) Diagram of female reproductive system featuring anatomy organs and structures. The **uterine tube** also known as the fallopian tubes are positioned at the right top portion of the diagram. Extending from the uterine tube is finger-like projects known as **fimbriae**. The **uterus** is also known as the womb, is a hollow, muscular organ located in the pelvis between the bladder and rectum. The **uterine artery/vein** supplies blood to the uterus. The **fundus** of uterus, also called the uterine fundus, refers to the dome-shaped, rounded superior part of the body of the uterus that lies above the opening. The **broad ligament** and the round ligaments of the uterus serve as secondary support for the uterus within the pelvis. The **suspensory ligament** is a fold of tissue arising from the peritoneum and extends out from the ovaries. The **ovarian ligament** connects the ovaries to the lateral surface of the uterus. The **ovarian artery/vein** supplies blood to the ovaries. The three layers of the uterus from outside to inside are the **endometrium**, **myometrium**, **perimetrium**. The neck of the uterus is called the cervix. The **vagina** is a muscular canal connecting the cervix of the uterus and serves as the birth canal during childbirth. The **vaginal artery** supplies the vagina with blood.

7.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Female Reproductive System

Ovulation

Following ovulation, the Fallopian tube receives the oocyte. Oocytes lack flagella, and therefore cannot move on their own.

- High concentrations of estrogen that occur around the time of ovulation induce contractions of the smooth muscle along the length of the Fallopian tube.
- These contractions occur every 4 to 8 seconds, causing the oocyte to flow towards the uterus, through the coordinated beating of the cilia that line the outside and lumen of the length of the Fallopian tube, which pulls the oocyte into the interior of the tube.
- Once inside, the muscular contractions and beating cilia move the oocyte slowly toward the uterus.
- When fertilization does occur, sperm typically meet the egg while it is still moving through the ampulla.

Watch this video

Watch the MedLine Plus video [Ovulation \[Video\]](#) to observe ovulation and its initiation in response to the release of FSH and LH from the pituitary gland.

Media 7.2: Ovulation. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

The Menstrual Cycle

The menstrual cycle is a series of changes the female body goes through monthly to prepare for pregnancy. There are three phases of the menstrual cycle.

1. The **menses phase** of the menstrual cycle is the phase during which reproductive hormone levels are low, the woman menstruates, and the lining is shed. The menses phase lasts between 2 – 7 days with an average of 5 days.
2. The **proliferative phase** is when menstrual flow ceases and the endometrium begins to **proliferate**. During this phase, reproductive hormones are working in **homeostasi** to trigger ovulation on approximately day 14 of a typical 28-day menstrual cycle. Ovulation marks the end of the proliferative phase.
3. The **secretory phase** is when the endometrial lining prepares for implantation of a fertilized egg. If no pregnancy occurs within approximately 10- 12 days, the endometrium will grow thinner and shed starting

the first day of the next cycle.

Menopause

Menopause is the period of life when a woman will permanently stop having menstrual flows. The menopause is determined after the woman has gone 1 year with no menstruation periods. Menopause is a natural process of a woman growing older. It does not require treatment unless the woman is suffering frequent or severe symptoms. Common menopause symptoms are hot flashes, vaginal dryness, trouble sleeping, and mood changes. Symptoms may improve in the second year after menopause.

Medical Terms in Use

Female Reproductive System Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Female Reproductive System (Text version)

Practice these female reproductive medical terms that are not easily broken into word parts.

1. **adenomyosis**

- (ad-ě-nō-mī-Ō-sis)
- growth of endometrium into the other muscular portion of the uterus

2. **anovulation**

- (an-ov-yŭ-LĀ-shŏn)
- absence of ovulation

3. **Bartholin's glands**

- (BAR-tō-lĭns glĀns)
- Also known as greater vestibular glands they are responsible to secrete mucus to keep the vestibular area moist

4. **breast cancer**

- brest KAN-sĕr

- malignant tumor of the breast
5. **cervical cancer**
 - SĚR-vi-kāl KAN-sěr
 - malignant tumor of the cervix, which progresses from cervical dysplasia to carcinoma. Its cause is linked to human papillomavirus (HPV) infection.
 6. **contraception**
 - kon-trā-SEP-shōn
 - intentional prevention of conception (pregnancy)
 7. **dyspareunia**
 - dis-pǎ-ROO-nē-ǎ
 - difficult or painful intercourse
 8. **endometrial cancer**
 - en-dō-MĚ-trē-āl KAN-sěr
 - malignant tumor of the endometrium (also called uterine cancer)
 9. **fibrocystic changes of the breast (FCC)**
 - fī-brō-SĪS-tīk brest
 - fibrosis, benign cysts, and pain or tenderness in one or both breasts (also called fibrocystic breasts)
 10. **fistula**
 - FIS-chŭ-lǎ
 - abnormal passageway between two organs or an internal organ and the body surface
 11. **hormonal replacement therapy (HRT)**
 - replacement of hormones, estrogen, and progesterone, typically to treat symptoms associated with menopause
 12. **menopause**
 - MEN-ō-poz
 - cessation of menstruation
 13. **oligoovulation**
 - ol-i-gō-ov-yŭ-LĀ-shōn
 - infrequent ovulation
 14. **ovarian cancer**

- ō-VAR-ē-ǎn KAN-sĕr
 - malignant tumor of the ovary
15. **ovulation**
- ov-yŭ-LĀ-shŏn
 - release of ovum from a mature Graafian follicle
16. **Papanicolaou smear**
- pǎp-ǎ-NĒ-kǎ-low smĕr
 - PAP test – A smear method for examining cells, that is used to detect cancers of the cervix
17. **pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)**
- inflammation of some or all of the female pelvic organs
18. **polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS)**
- pŏl-ē-SĪS-tĭk Ō-vǎ-rĕ SĪN-drŏm
 - condition typically characterized by hormonal imbalances, ovulatory dysfunction, and multiple ovarian cysts.
19. **premenstrual syndrome**
- prĕ-MĒN-stroo-ǎl SĪN-drŏm
 - syndrome involving physical and emotional symptoms occurring up to 10 days before menstruation. Symptoms include nervous tension, irritability, mastalgia, edema, and headache.
20. **prolapse**
- PRŌ-laps
 - displacement of an organ or anatomic structure from its normal position
21. **speculum**
- SPEK-yŭ-lŭm
 - instrument for opening a body cavity to allow visual inspection
22. **toxic shock syndrome**
- severe illness characterized by high fever, rash, vomiting, diarrhea, and myalgia followed by hypotension and, in severe cases, shock and death. Typically occurs in women using tampons and caused by Staphylococcus aureus and Streptococcus pyogenes
23. **tubal ligation**
- TOO-bǎl lĭ-GĀ-shŏn
 - surgical closure of the fallopian tubes for sterilization

24. **uterine fibroid**

- ŪT-ĕ-rĭn FIB-royd
- benign tumor of the uterine muscle

25. **uterine prolapse**

- ŪT-ĕ-rĭn PRŌ-laps
- downward displacement of the uterus into the vagina

26. **vaginal fistula**

- VAJ-ĭn-ăl FIS-chŭ-lă
- abnormal opening between the vagina and another organ, such as the urinary bladder, colon, or rectum

Activity Source: Female Reproductive System terms not built from word parts from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./Some H5P audio re-recorded by Tania Deane and David McCuaig and text version added.

Medical Terms in Context 1

Medical Terms in Context (Text Version)

Use the words below to fill in the medical report:

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| • Transvaginal | • Pain | • Cysts |
| • Laparoscopy | • Endometrial | • Pelvic |
| • Dysmenorrhea | • Tissue | • Endometriosis |

FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM – MEDICAL REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Stacey ROBERTS

AGE: 28 Sex: Female

DOB: October 27

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: July 22

ADMITTING PHYSICIAN: Adam Vance, MD, Gynecology

DIAGNOSIS: Endometriosis

HISTORY: This 28-year-old white female came to me with symptoms of _____ [Blank 1]. She presented with _____[Blank 2], menorrhagia, and pain with intercourse.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: During a _____[Blank 3] exam, abnormalities were felt. A _____[Blank 4] ultrasound was performed, and _____[Blank 5] were identified.

TREATMENT: I have discussed the results of the ultrasound and have recommended a laparoscopy to provide more information on the location, extent, and size of the _____[Blank 6] implants. A _____[Blank 7] sample will be sent for further testing. If possible, the endometriosis implants will be removed.

PLAN: Ms. Roberts has agreed to the laparoscopy. I have prescribed Orilissa to help with the _____[Blank 8]. My office will set up an appointment for the _____[Blank 9].

Adam Vance, MD, Gynecology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Female Reproductive System – Medical Report by Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Terms in Context 2

Medical Terms in Context (Text Version)

Use the words below to fill in the medical report:

- Edema
- Blood Pressure
- Ovarian
- Menorrhagia
- Auscultation
- Murmur
- Spotting
- Chronic
- Oophoritis
- Urination
- Abdominal
- RLQ

FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM – MEDICAL REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Megan WESTOVER

AGE: 29

SEX: Female

DOB: November 22

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: June 4

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN: Adam Vance, MD, Gynecology

HISTORY: A 29-year-old woman complains of right _____[Blank 1] pain. She has fever with chills, nausea, and pain during _____[Blank 2] for 3 days. She is in the 4th day of her menstrual cycle and has _____[Blank 3]. She has had intermenstrual _____[Blank 4] for the last 3 menstrual cycles. She had a hysterectomy due to a breast cancer 9 years ago. She has no other history of _____[Blank 5] illness.

PHYSICAL AND EXAMINATION: VITAL SIGNS: Temperature 102.2, _____[Blank 6] 115/75, and pulse 92, regular. Respiratory rate 16. LUNGS: Normal breath sounds. HEART: No _____[Blank 7], regular rhythm. ABDOMEN: There is a tenderness to deep palpation in the _____[Blank 8]. Pain triggers when the patient bends forward. Normal to _____[Blank 9]. BACK: No flank tenderness. EXTREMITIES: Normal with no _____[Blank 10].

LABORATORY: No UTI, urinalysis done in the clinic negative.

ASSESSMENT: Rule out _____[Blank 11]. No evidence of UTI currently.

PLAN

1. CBC lab testing.
2. Pelvic ultrasound focused on _____ [Blank 12] structures, transvaginal ultrasound.
3. Begin treatment empirically with Ampicillin 500 mg daily.
4. Follow up with the patient after the blood and ultrasound results.

Adam Vance, MD, Gynecology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Female Reproductive System – Medical Report by Heather Scudder and Sheila Bellefeuille, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). /Text version added.

Medical Terms in Context 3

Medical Terms in Context (Text Version)

Using the words below fill in the consultation report:

- Cyanosis
- Mastectomy
- Chemotherapy
- Breast
- HEENT
- Murmurs
- Weight
- Distended
- Erythema
- Lesion

FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Abigail LANGMAN

AGE: 51

SEX: Female

DOB: July 27

DATE OF CONSULTATION: October 8

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Adam Vance, MD, OB/GYN

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Possible breast cancer.

HISTORY: Patient is a 51-year-old woman here for a check-up because of a suspicious lump that was found on her yearly mammogram. Patient is worried about possible _____[Blank 1] cancer.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: GENERAL: No acute distress. VITAL SIGNS: Temperature is 98.1°F. Pulse is 72, BP is 110/72 mm Hg. Respirations 16. _____[Blank 2] is 186 pounds, height is 5 feet, 8 inches.

_____ [Blank 3]: Eyes are equal and responsive. Ears are normal, no discharge. Nose is normal. Throat is normal and without _____[Blank 4]. LUNGS: Clear to auscultation. CARDIOVASCULAR: Regular rate and rhythm, no _____[Blank 5]. ABDOMEN: Palpation is soft, not _____[Blank 6], nontender.

BREAST: RIGHT: Tender to the touch on right side and has a hard lump about the size of a golf ball near the axilla. LEFT: Normal to the touch, no discomfort. EXTREMITIES: Without edema, _____[Blank 7], or clubbing.

SOCIAL HISTORY: Mother had breast cancer at the age of 48 and had a _____[Blank 8] to remove the left breast. Patient has been scheduled for yearly mammograms since the age of 45 to check for possible signs of early breast cancer. Father has a history of stage 1 rectal cancer treated with 3 rounds of _____[Blank 9]. The patient does not smoke or use recreational drugs, she does like a glass of wine 3-4 nights a week.

Patient states she is quite worried since scheduling an appointment to follow up her mammogram results. Patient has experiencing anxiety which is affecting her eating and sleeping routine.

ASSESSMENT: Patient is a 51-year-old woman here for a check-up because a suspicious lump found on her yearly mammogram. Patient is otherwise healthy and is not currently on any medications.

PLAN

1. 1. Ultrasound of the right breast.
2. 2. Biopsy of the _____[Blank 10] for pathology. Avoid overexertion or lifting of arms above shoulder height after the biopsy
3. 3. Follow-up appointment in 2-3 weeks for results.

Adam Vance, MD, OB/GYN

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:³

Activity source: Female Reproductive System – Medical Report by Heather Scudder and Sheila Bellefeuille, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Female Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Female Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Endometriosis 2. Dysmenorrhea 3. Pelvic 4. Transvaginal 5. Cysts 6. Endometrial 7. Tissue 8. Pain 9. Laparoscopy
2. 1. Abdominal 2. Urination 3. Menorrhagia 4. Spotting 5. Chronic 6. Blood Pressure 7. Murmur 8. RLQ 9. Auscultation 10. Edema 11. Oophoritis 12. Ovarian
3. 1. Breast, 2. Weight, 3. HEENT 4. Erythema, 5. Murmurs, 6. Distended, 7. Cyanosis, 8. Mastectomy, 9. Chemotherapy, 10. Lesion

7.4 - Female Reproductive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Cancer

Breast Cancer

Breast cancer starts in the cells that line the ducts or the lobule of the breast. Some warning signs include a new lump in the breast or **axilla**, thickening or swelling, irritation or dimpling of the breast skin, redness or flaky skin, pain, discharge (all in the breast or nipple area), and change in breast size. Risk factors include family history, obesity, hormonal treatment, and changes in breast cancer-related genes (BRCA1 or BRCA2) (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, n.d.; Cancer Care Ontario, n.d.).

Treatment options include chemotherapy, radiation, and surgical interventions, such as **mastectomy**, biopsy, incision and drainage, and **mammoplasty** (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, n.d.; Cancer Care Ontario, n.d.). To learn more about breast cancer, view the [Cancer Care Ontario: Breast Cancer web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Cervical Cancer

Cervical cancer is a typically slow-growing cancer and is highly curable when found and treated early. Advanced cervical cancer may cause abnormal bleeding or discharge from the vagina, such as bleeding after sex. It is diagnosed during a Papanicolaou test (or Pap smear), which looks for precancers (cell changes) on the cervix. The Pap test can find cervical cancer early, when treatment is most effective. The Pap test only screens for cervical cancer (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

The HPV (Human papillomavirus) test looks for HPV strains, which is the virus that can cause precancerous cell changes. Almost all cervical cancers are caused by HPV. HPV is a common virus that is passed from one person to another during sexual contact. In Canada, there is the HPV vaccine. The age of administration varies between the provinces and territories. See below under HPV for more information about the HPV vaccine (York Region Health Connect, n.d.). To learn more about cervical cancer, please visit the [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's cervical cancer factsheet \[PDF\]](#).

Endometriosis

Endometriosis is an abnormal condition of the **endometrium**. Endometriosis occurs when a tissue similar to the endometrium grows and implants outside the uterus. The female hormone estrogen causes these implants to grow, bleed, and break down. They are implanted outside the uterus and have no way to leave the body. They

become painful, inflamed, and swollen. The inflammation causes scar tissue around nearby organs, which can interfere with their normal functioning and cause pain (Canadian Women's Health Network, 2012).

Endometriosis generally appears between the ages of 15 and 50. Signs and symptoms may include **dysmenorrhea**, **lumbago**, **dyspareunia**, menstrual irregularity, and infertility. One third of women diagnosed with endometriosis have no symptoms at all. Diagnosis may include **laparoscopy** and endometrial biopsy. Treatment may include medication and surgical interventions such as **hysterectomy** and **oophorectomy**. The cause of endometriosis is unknown (Canadian Women's Health Network, 2012). To learn more about endometriosis, visit the [World Health Organization's page on Endometriosis \[New Tab\]](#).

PCOS

Polycystic Ovary Syndrome (PCOS) has no known etiology, but researchers have linked it to excessive insulin production. Excessive insulin in the body can release extra male hormones in women. Since the ovaries produce high levels of **androgens**, this causes the eggs to develop into cysts and instead of releasing during ovulation, the cysts build up and enlarge. The most common symptoms of PCOS include **oligomenorrhea**, **amenorrhea**, **polymenorrhea**, enlarged ovaries with multiple small painless cysts or follicles that form in the ovary, **acrochordons**, **acanthosis nigricans**, **hirsutism**, thinning hair, acne, weight gain, anxiety, depression, hyperglycemia, and infertility (Canadian Women's Health Network, 2012a).

Treatments like medications such as birth control pills or **antiandrogens** can help balance the patient's hormones and relieve some of the symptoms (Canadian Women's Health Network, 2012a). To learn more about PCOS, visit the [World Health Organization's page on PCOS \[New Tab\]](#).

Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs)

The terms for Sexually Transmitted Infections (STI) and Sexuality Transmitted Diseases (STD) are often used interchangeably. Sexuality Transmitted Diseases (STD) implies the disease was acquired through sexual transmission. A disease is a disorder of structure or function in a human, which produces specific signs or symptoms. A disease must be managed, as in the case of Human Immunodeficiency Virus (which can also be acquired through the transmission of other bodily fluids; thus not solely sexual transmission). The treatment may include **antiretrovirals** or **anti-virals** (Urology Care Foundation, 2019).

Chlamydia (CT)

Chlamydia is one of the most common sexually transmitted infections (STIs) caused by bacteria that infect the cervix, urethra, and other reproductive organs. Chlamydia is easy to treat and can be cured. Many people with chlamydia do not have any symptoms and unknowingly pass the infection to their sexual partner(s). If symptoms develop, they usually appear two to six weeks after sexual contact with an infected person. While females are most often asymptomatic, they may experience **cervicitis**. Left untreated, chlamydia in females can lead to Pelvic

Inflammatory Disease (PID), which can cause permanent damage to the reproductive organs and subsequent infertility (Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) Chlamydia, 2018) (Chlamydia and Gonorrhoea, n.d.).

Chlamydia spreads through unprotected oral, anal or vaginal sex with an infected person. Chlamydia can be spread to the eyes via the hands with direct contact with infected fluids. Until a patient finishes their treatment, they continue to have the infection and can continue to pass it to others. Chlamydia is treated with antibiotic pills. If the patient has **epididymitis**, they may need to be hospitalized and be treated with intravenous (IV) antibiotics. All sexual partners within the past 60 days should be examined, treated, and informed that having no symptoms does not mean there is no infection (Klein, 2023).

Gonorrhoea (Gonococcus) – (GC)

Gonorrhoea is a sexually transmitted infection (STI) caused by bacteria that infects the cervix, urethra, and other reproductive organs. Infections can also infect the throat and anus. Gonorrhoea can be treated and cured. Many people infected with Gonorrhoea have no symptoms and can unknowingly pass the infection on to their sexual partner(s). If symptoms develop, they may appear two to seven days after sexual contact with an infected person. Symptoms vary depending on which part of the body is infected. Females may experience abnormal vaginal bleeding, discharge, or **dysuria**. Left untreated, Gonorrhoea in females may lead to pelvic inflammatory disease and fertility complications, such as ectopic pregnancy. Gonorrhoea infection from oral sex may lead to sore throat and swollen glands. Gonorrhoea infection from anal sex may cause itchiness and discharge from the anus. Gonorrhoea is spread through unprotected oral, vaginal or anal sex with an infected person. Until the patient finishes their treatment, they continue to have the infection and can pass it to others (Klein, 2023).

Gonorrhoea is treated with oral **antibiotics** in combination with an **intramuscular** (IM) injection. It is important that one complete the treatment and abstain from unprotected sexual activity for at least seven days following treatment. All sexual partners within the past 60 days should be examined, treated, and informed that having no symptoms does not mean there is no infection (Klein, 2023).

Reportable Diseases

Both chlamydia and gonorrhoea are reportable diseases to the Ministry of Health. Therefore, the local health department will be calling the doctors office or patient to ensure correct treatment was received and sexual partners have been followed up with testing and treatment. To learn more about STIs and STDs such as chlamydia and gonorrhoea, please go to the [Public Health Ontario web page on sexually transmitted infections \[New Tab\]](#).

Human Papillomavirus- HPV

HPV is a common sexually transmitted infection (STI). Both males and females can be infected with HPV. Almost three quarters of sexually active individuals have been exposed to HPV during their lifetime. There are over 100 strains of HPV and some strains of HPV can cause visible genital warts. The warts are usually painless, but may

be itchy, uncomfortable, and hard to treat. Some strains of HPV cause genital, anal, throat, and cervical cancers. HPV spreads through sexual activity and skin-to-skin contact in the genital area with an infected person. Since some people are **asymptomatic**, they don't know they have the virus and consequently pass the virus to their sexual partners. Treatments are available for genital warts, but there is no cure for HPV (York Region Health Connect, n.d.). To learn more about HPV symptoms, treatments, and prognosis, visit the [Mayo Clinic page on HPV Infection \[New Tab\]](#).

HPV Vaccine

A vaccine called Gardasil® 9 is available for 9 HPV strains. This vaccine assists the immune system in protecting the body against infections and diseases caused by HPV (York Region Health Connect, n.d.). To learn more about Gardasil® 9 treatments, please visit the [Gardasil® 9 website \[New Tab\]](#).

Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV)

Genital herpes is a sexually transmitted infection (STI) that is caused by a virus called herpes simplex virus (HSV). There are two types of herpes simplex viruses:

- Type 1- oral herpes or cold sores (HSV-1)
- Type 2- genital herpes (HSV-2)

These viruses are very similar and either type can cause genital herpes or cold sores. Symptoms might include **dysuria**, enlarged glands, **myalgia**, **arthralgia** and fever. Once a patient is infected with HSV, the virus remains in their body even after the symptoms are gone and can cause recurring outbreaks. Between the outbreaks, the virus stays in their body. When the virus becomes active again, the symptoms return but are usually less painful and heal faster. Recurring outbreaks vary from person-to-person, however they can be triggered by emotional or physical stress, exposure to sunlight, hormonal changes, poor nutrition, sexual intercourse, lack of sleep or a low immune system (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2022).

Herpes is spread through direct contact with the sores or blisters of an infected person. Contact (and transfer of the virus) can occur from genitals-to-genitals, mouth-to-genitals or mouth-to-mouth. Herpes can also be passed to the anal area. Herpes spreads easily during sexual contact while symptoms are present or just before an outbreak of symptoms. An infected person may spread herpes even when they have *no* symptoms; this is called **asymptomatic** shedding. One can spread the herpes virus to other parts of their body after touching the sores; **autoinoculation**. The fingers, eyes, and other body areas can accidentally become infected in this way. Hand washing after touching sores and blisters is recommended to prevent spreading the virus (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2022).

There is no cure for herpes. Antiviral pills help to reduce symptoms and speed the healing of blisters or sores and are prescribed by a doctor. Treatment of symptoms may be managed with medication for pain, bath salts, cold compresses, and urinating in water may help to relieve discomfort. Keep the infected area clean and dry, wear cotton underwear and loose clothing to reduce discomfort. All sexual partner(s) should be informed. The only way to reduce the risk of transmission of herpes is to avoid direct contact with the sores and to use condoms.

Condoms will reduce but not eliminate risk as the virus can be present and shed from the skin in the genital area (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2022).

To learn more about the symptoms, complications, treatments and prognosis of HSV please visit the Mayo Clinic's page on [Genital Herpes \[New Tab\]](#), or [Public Health Ontario's Testing Index \[New Tab\]](#).

Female Reproductive System Medical Abbreviations

Reproductive Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) Abbreviations

- **AB** (Antibiotic)
- **CT** (Chlamydia)
- **GC** (Gonorrhea)
- **HPV** (Human Papillomavirus)
- **HSV** (Herpes Simplex Virus)
- **PID** (Pelvic Inflammatory Disease)
- **STD** (Sexually Transmitted Diseases)
- **STI** (Sexually Transmitted Infections)

Activity source: Reproductive Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures related to the Female Reproductive System

Gynecology

A **gynecologist** is a specialist in the area of **gynecology**, focusing on the diagnosis, treatment, management and prevention of diseases and disorders of the female reproductive system. Obstetrics is a specialty that provides care through pregnancy, labour, and **puerperium**. Further subspecialties in women's health include contraception, reproductive **endocrinology**, infertility, adolescent gynecology, **endoscopy** and gynecological oncology (Canadian Medical Association, 2018). To learn more about obstetrics or gynecology, please follow visit the [Canadian Medical Association's Obstetrics/Gynecology Profile page \[PDF\]](#).

Hysterectomy

A **hysterectomy** [/pb_glossary](#) is done to stage or treat female reproductive cancers, treat precancerous conditions of the cervix and some non-cancerous conditions that have not responded to other forms of treatment. There are three types of hysterectomy:

- A **total hysterectomy** removes both the uterus and the cervix.
- A **subtotal hysterectomy** removes the uterus only.
- A **radical hysterectomy** removes uterus, cervix, part of the vagina, and ligaments.

Sometimes the ovaries and fallopian tubes are removed at the same time that a hysterectomy is done. A [\[pb_glossary id="220"\]](#)bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO) removes both ovaries and fallopian tubes. A **unilateral** salpingo-oophorectomy removes one ovary and one Fallopian tube (Canadian Cancer Society, 2020). To learn more about hysterectomy, please visit the [Canadian Cancer Society's page on hysterectomies](#) [\[New Tab\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Female Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Female Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Female Reproductive System Vocabulary

Acanthosis Nigricans

A disorder that causes darkening and thickening of the skin on the neck, groin, underarms or skin folds.

Acrochordons

Skin tags, teardrop-sized pieces of skin that can be as large as raisins and are typically found in the armpits or neck area.

Amenorrhea

Absence of periods.

Androgens

Male hormones.

Antiandrogens

A group of medications that counteract the effects of male hormones.

Antibiotics

Medications that stop bacterial infections.

Antiretrovirals

Treatment that works against the virus replication.

Anti-virals

Treatments that work effectively against a virus.

Asymptomatic

Pertaining to without symptoms.

Autoinoculation

Self inoculation.

Axilla

The armpit.

Bartholin's glands

Also known as greater vestibular glands they are responsible to secrete mucus to keep the vestibular area moist.

Bilateral

Pertaining to both sides.

Douching

Washing the vagina with fluid.

Dysmenorrhea

Painful periods.

Dyspareunia

Painful intercourse.

Dysuria

Painful urination.

Endocrinology

The study of the endocrine glands and hormones.

Endometrium

The innermost layer containing a connective tissue lining covered by epithelial tissue that lines the lumen. Provides the site of implantation for a fertilized egg. Sheds during menstruation if no egg is fertilized.

Endoscopy

Process of viewing internally.

Fornix

Superior portion of the vagina.

Gametes

Haploid reproductive cells that contribute genetic material to form an offspring.

Gynecologist

Specialist in the study and treatment of the female reproductive system.

Gynecology

The study of the female reproductive system.

Hirsutism

Excessive hair growth in a pattern typically seen in males.

Homeostasis

Biological process that results in stable equilibrium.

Hysterectomy

Surgical removal of the uterus.

Inferior

Pertaining to below.

Intramuscular

Pertaining to within the muscle.

Laparoscopy

Process of viewing internal organs.

Lumbago

Lower back pain.

Mammoplasty

Surgical repair of the breast particularly after a mastectomy.

Mastectomy

Excision of breast(s) and or breast tissue.

Oligomenorrhea

Infrequent or irregular periods.

Oocyte

Female gamete.

Oophorectomy

Surgical removal of one or both ovaries.

Polymenorrhea

Excessive bleeding during one's period.

Polyuria

Frequent urination.

Proliferate

Reproduce rapidly.

Puerperium

Time directly after childbirth.

Superior

Pertaining to above.

Unilateral

Pertaining to one side.

Urethritis

Inflammation of the urethra.

Test Yourself

Female Reproductive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text Version)

1. The site of implantation for a fertilized egg or the layer that sheds during menstruation if no egg is fertilized is called _____. [Blank 1].
 - a. Endometrium
 - b. Oocyte
 - c. Puerperium
2. Hysterectomy is the _____. [Blank 2].
 - a. Surgical removal of the breast(s)
 - b. Surgical removal of the uterus
 - c. Surgical removal of the fallopian/uterine tubes
3. Pain periods is called _____. [Blank 3].
 - a. Dysmenorrhea
 - b. Amenorrhea
 - c. Oligomenorrhea
4. Painful Intercourse is called _____. [Blank 4].
 - a. Dysuria
 - b. Dyspareunia
 - c. Dysmenorrhea

5. The superior portion of the vagina is called _____ [Blank 5].
- Axilla
 - Bartholin's glands
 - Fornix

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Female Reproductive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Female Reproductive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Female Reproductive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. Endometrium 2. Surgical removal of the uterus 3. Dysmenorrhea 4. Dyspareunia 5. Fornix

References

- Canadian Breast Cancer Network. (n.d.) *What is breast cancer?* Canadian Breast Cancer Network: Information. <https://cbcnc.ca/en/what-is-breast-cancer>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Obstetrics/gynecology profile*. Canadian Medical Association Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/obgyn-e.pdf>
- Cancer Care Ontario. (n.d.). *Breast cancer*. Ontario Health. <https://www.cancercareontario.ca/en/types-of-cancer/breast-cancer>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2019, January). *Cervical cancer: Inside knowledge about gynecologic cancer*. CDC: Cancer. https://www.cdc.gov/cancer/cervical/pdf/cervical_facts.pdf?src=SocialMediaToolkits
- CrashCourse. (2015, October 2015). *Reproductive system, part 1 – Female reproductive system: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #40* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RFDatCchpus>
- Klein, J., Kay, C., MD. (2023, February 16). *What is the difference between chlamydia and gonorrhea?* Medical News Today. <https://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/chlamydia-and-gonorrhea>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2021, October 12). *HPV infection*. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/hpv-infection/symptoms-causes/syc-20351596>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2022, November 22). *Genital herpes*. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/genital-herpes/symptoms-causes/syc-20356161>
- Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion. (2023, December 15). *Chlamydia*. Public Health Ontario. <https://www.publichealthontario.ca/en/diseases-and-conditions/infectious-diseases/sexually-transmitted-infections/chlamydia>
- Ontario Agency for Health Protection and Promotion. (2023, December 15). *Gonorrhea*. Public Health Ontario. <https://www.publichealthontario.ca/en/diseases-and-conditions/infectious-diseases/sexually-transmitted-infections/gonorrhea>
- Urology Care Foundation. (2019). *What are sexually transmitted infections (STIs) or diseases (STDs)*. Urology Care Foundation: Urologic Conditions. [https://www.urologyhealth.org/urologic-conditions/sexually-transmitted-infections#Acquired_Immune_Deficiency_Syndrome_\(AIDS\)](https://www.urologyhealth.org/urologic-conditions/sexually-transmitted-infections#Acquired_Immune_Deficiency_Syndrome_(AIDS))
- World Health Organization. (2023, March 24). *Endometriosis*. World Health Organization: Fact Sheets. <https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/endometriosis>
- World Health Organization. (2023, June 28). *Polycystic ovary syndrome*. World Health Organization: Fact Sheets. <https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/polycystic-ovary-syndrome>

CHAPTER 8: OBSTETRICS

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [8.1 – Introduction to Obstetrics](#)
- [8.2 – Procedures Related to Obstetrics](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

8.1 - Introduction to Obstetrics

Learning Objectives

- Identify the common processes in obstetrics and explore procedures, diagnostics tests and common complications related to obstetrics
- Describe the specialty of obstetrics and other medical specialties associated with obstetrics
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of obstetrics
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of obstetric terminology

Obstetric Word Parts

Review the list of word parts to memorize for obstetrics:

Prefix

- **ante-** (before)
- **dys-** (painful, laboured, difficult)
- **micro-** (small)
- **multi-** (many)
- **neo-** (new)
- **nulli-** (none)
- **post-** (after)
- **pre-** (before)

Combining Form

- **amni/o** (amnion, amniotic fluid)
- **cephal/o** (head)
- **chori/o** (chorion)

- **embryo/o** (embryo)
- **esophag/o** (esophagus)
- **fet/i** (fetus, unborn offspring)
- **fet/o** (fetus, unborn offspring)
- **gravid/o** (pregnancy)
- **lact/o** (milk)
- **nat/o** (birth)
- **omphal/o** (umbilicus, navel)
- **par/o** (to bear, labour, childbirth, give birth to)
- **part/o** (to bear, labour, childbirth, give birth to)
- **prim/i** (first)
- **pseud/o** (false)
- **puerper/o** (childbirth)
- **pylor/o** (pylorus, pyloric sphincter)
- **terat/o** (malformations)

Suffix

- **-a** (no meaning, noun ending)
- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-amnios** (amnion, amniotic fluid)
- **-cyesis** (pregnancy)
- **-e** (noun ending, no meaning)
- **-gen** (substance that produced, agent that produced)
- **-genic** (producing, originating, causing)
- **-graphy** (process of recording)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-is** (noun suffix, no meaning)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist who studies and treats, physician who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-rrhea** (discharge, flow)
- **-rrhexis** (rupture)
- **-stenosis** (constriction, narrowing)
- **-tocia** (birth, labour)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)
- **-um** (noun ending, no meaning)
- **-us** (noun ending, no meaning)

Activity source: Obstetrics Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Introduction to Obstetrics

Obstetrics is a specialty that is concerned with the mother and fetus during pregnancy, childbirth, and the immediate postpartum period. Obstetricians study obstetrics and gynecology and are referred to as OB/GYN (Obstetrics and Gynecology).

Watch [Reproductive System, Part 4 – Pregnancy & Development: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #43 \(11 min\)](#)

Obstetrics Medical Terms

Obstetrics Medical Terms (Text version)

Practice the following words related to obstetrics by breaking into word parts and pronouncing. Audio recordings of word pronunciations are available through the online book.

1. **amnionitis**

- amnion/itis
- *rebel does not follow the rules
- inflammation of the amnion

2. **oligohydramnios**

- olig/o/hydr/amnios
- scanty amnion water
- a condition where there is minimal amniotic fluid within the placental sac. This can restrict the fetus from movement and growth

3. **polyhydramnios**

- poly/hydr/amnios
- much amnion water

4. **amniotomy**

- amni/o/tomy
- incision into the amnion to induce labour

5. **amniocentesis**

- amni/o/centesis
 - surgical puncture into the amnion to remove a small amount of fluid for testing. The fluid is tested for potential fetal abnormalities
6. **amniochorial**
- amni/o/chori/al
 - pertaining to the amnion and chorion
7. **amniorrhea**
- amni/o/rrhea
 - discharge (escape) of amniotic fluid
8. **amniorrhesis**
- amni/o/rrhexis
 - rupture of the amnion
9. **microcephalus**
- micr/o/cephal/us
 - small head
10. **chorioamnionitis**
- chori/o/amnion/itis
 - inflammation of the chorion and amnion
11. **choriocarcinoma**
- chori/o/carcinoma
 - cancerous tumour of the chorion
12. **embryogenic**
- embry/o/genic
 - producing an embryo
13. **embryoid**
- embry/oid
 - resembling an embryo
14. **transesophageal fistula**
- trans/esophag/eal fistula
 - abnormal passageway between the trachea and esophagus
15. **fetal**

- fet/al
- pertaining to the fetus

16. **gravida**

- gravid/a
- pregnant (woman)
- Note, that this is referring to a woman who is or has been pregnant regardless of outcome

17. **multigravida**

- multi/gravid/a
- many pregnancies
- A woman who has been pregnant two or more times regardless of outcome

18. **lactic**

- lact/ic
- pertaining to milk

19. **lactogenic**

- lact/o/genic
- producing milk

20. **lactorrhoea**

- lact/o/rrhea
- discharge of milk

21. **natal**

- nat/al
- pertaining to birth

22. **neonate**

- neo/nate
- newborn
- (infant from birth to four weeks of age)

23. **neonatologist**

- neo/nat/o/logist
- physician who studies and treats disorders of the newborn

24. **neonatology**

- neo/nat/o/logy
- study of the newborn

25. **postnatal**

- post/nat/al
- pertaining to after birth
- (reference to the newborn)

26. **prenatal**

- pre/nat/al
- pertaining to before birth

27. **omphalitis**

- omphal/itis
- inflammation of the umbilicus

28. **omphalocele**

- omphal/o/cele
- herniation of the umbilicus

29. **multipara**

- multi/par/a
- many births

30. **nullipara**

- nulli/par/a
- no pregnancies
- a woman who has never been pregnant

31. **para**

- par/a
- a woman who has given birth to an offspring after 20 weeks, live or stillborn

32. **postpartum**

- post/part/um
- after childbirth
- referring to the mother

33. **antepartum**

- ante/part/um
- before childbirth
- referencing the mother

34. **intrapartum**

- intra/part/um
 - within (during) labour and delivery
35. **primigravida**
- primi/gravid/a
 - first pregnancy
36. **primipara**
- primi/par/a
 - first birth
37. **pseudocyesis**
- pseud/o/cyesis
 - false pregnancy
38. **puerperal**
- puerper/al
 - pertaining to immediately after childbirth
39. **puerpera**
- puerper/a
 - childbirth
40. **pyloric stenosis**
- pylor/ic stenosis
 - narrowing of the pylorus or pyloric sphincter
41. **teratogen**
- terat/o/gen
 - agent producing malformations
 - (in a developing embryo) such as chemicals, viruses and environmental factors
42. **teratogenic**
- terat/o/genic
 - producing malformations
43. **teratology**
- terat/o/logy
 - the study of malformations
44. **dystocia**

- dys/tocia
 - labour that is difficult
45. **hysterorrhexis**
- hyster/o/rrhexis
 - rupture of the uterus
46. **episiotomy**
- episi/o/tomy
 - incision into the vulva
47. **pelvic sonography**
- pelv/ic son/o/graphy
 - process of recording sound pertaining to the pelvis
48. **amenorrhea**
- a/men/o/rrhea
 - absence of menstrual flow
49. **hyperemesis gravida**
- hyper/emesis gravida
 - Excessive vomiting during pregnancy
50. **neonatal**
- neo/nat/al
 - pertaining to newborn
51. **nulligravida**
- null/i/gravida
 - A woman who has never been pregnant
52. **episiotomy**
- episi/o/tomy
 - Incision into the vulva to widen the vaginal opening to prevent ripping or tearing of the perineum during delivery

Activity source: Obstetrics Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Fertilization

Fertilization occurs when a **sperm** and an **oocyte** (egg) combine. Each of these reproductive cells is a haploid cell containing half of the genetic material needed to form a human being; their combination forms a single diploid cell. This new single cell is called a **zygote**.

Most of the time, a woman releases a single egg during an ovulation cycle.

- In approximately 1 percent of ovulation cycles, two eggs are released and both are fertilized.
 - Two zygotes form, implant, and develop, resulting in the birth of **dizygotic (or fraternal) twins**. Because dizygotic twins develop from two eggs fertilized by two sperm, they are no more identical than siblings born at different times.
- Less common, one zygote can divide into two separate offspring during early development. This results in the birth of **monozygotic (or identical) twins**.

A full-term pregnancy lasts approximately 270 days (approximately 38.5 weeks) from conception to birth. Because it is easier to remember the first day of the last menstrual period (LMP) than to estimate the date of conception, obstetricians set the due date as 284 days (approximately 40.5 weeks) from the LMP. This assumes that conception occurred on day 14 of the woman's cycle, which is usually a good approximation. The 40 weeks of an average pregnancy are usually discussed in terms of three trimesters, each approximately 13 weeks. During the second and third trimesters, the pre-pregnancy uterus is about the size of a fist and grows dramatically to contain the fetus, causing a number of anatomical changes in the mother.

Stages of Childbirth

The process of childbirth can be divided into three stages (see [Figure 8.1](#)):

- Stage 1: cervical dilation
- Stage 2: expulsion of the newborn
- Stage 3: after birth

For vaginal birth to occur, the cervix must dilate fully to 10 cm in diameter, wide enough to deliver the newborn's head. The dilation stage is the longest stage of labour and typically takes 6-12 hours. However, it varies widely and may take minutes, hours, or days, depending in part on whether the mother has given birth before. In each subsequent labour, this stage tends to be shorter.

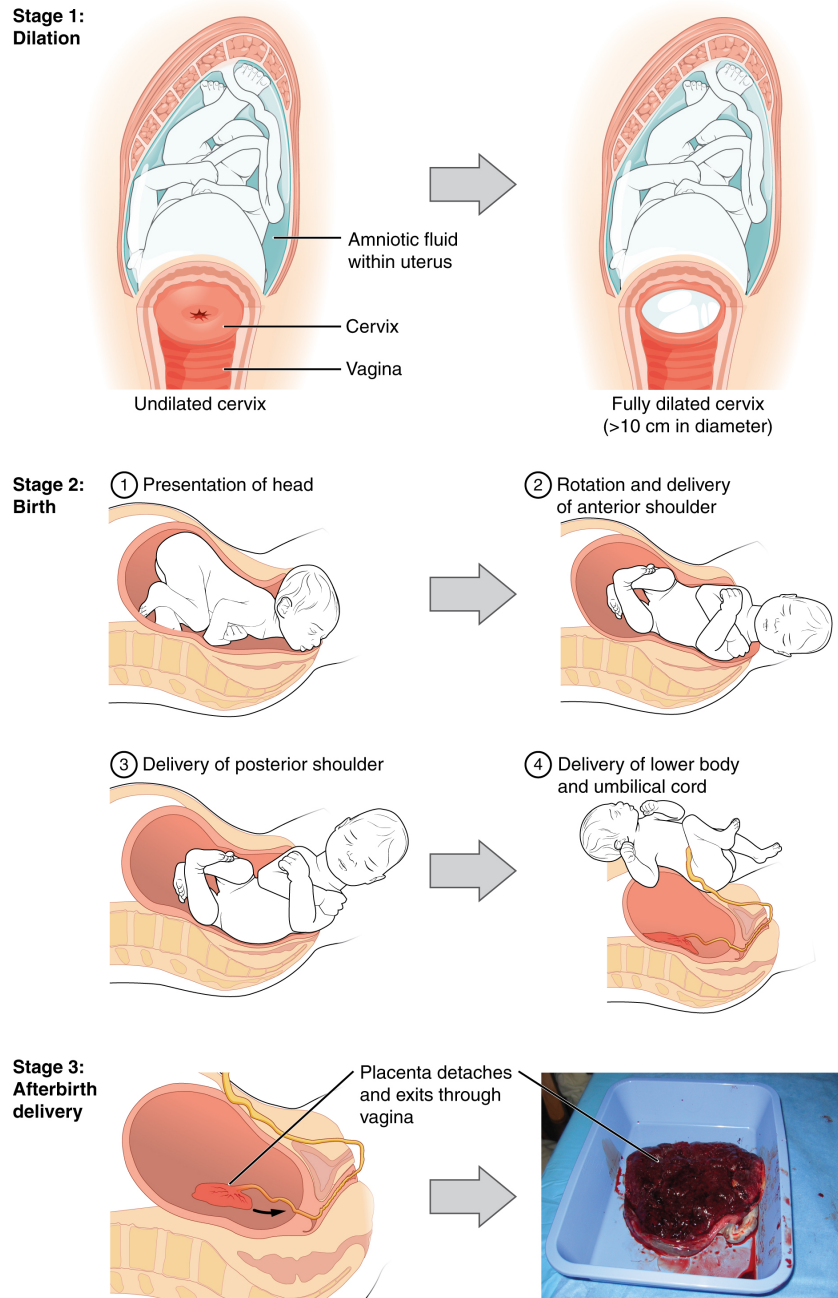


Figure 8.1 Stages of Childbirth. The stages of childbirth include Stage 1, early cervical dilation; Stage 2, full dilation and expulsion of the newborn; and Stage 3, delivery of the placenta and associated fetal membranes. (The position of the newborn's shoulder is described relative to the mother). From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [\[Fig. 8.1 Image description.\]](#)

Concept Check

- How is a **due date** determined?
- Explain the difference between a **monozygotic pregnancy** and a **dizygotic pregnancy**.

Homeostasis in the Newborn: Apgar Score

In the minutes following birth, a newborn must undergo dramatic systemic changes to be able to survive outside the womb. An obstetrician, midwife, or nurse can estimate how well a newborn is doing by obtaining an **Apgar score**. The Apgar score was introduced in 1952 by the anesthesiologist Dr. Virginia Apgar as a method to assess the effects on the newborn of anesthesia given to the labouring mother. Healthcare providers now use it to assess the general well-being of the newborn, whether or not analgesics or anesthetics were used.

The five criteria for the Apgar score (skin colour, heart rate, reflex, muscle tone, and respiration) are assessed and each criterion is assigned a score of 0, 1, or 2. Scores are taken at 1 minute after birth and again at 5 minutes after birth. Each time scores are taken, the five scores are added together. High scores (out of a possible 10) indicate the baby has made the transition from the womb well, whereas lower scores indicate that the baby may be in distress.

The technique for determining an Apgar score is quick and easy, painless for the newborn, and does not require any instruments except for a stethoscope. A convenient way to remember the five scoring criteria is to apply the mnemonic APGAR:

- **A**ppearance (skin colour)
- **P**ulse (heart rate)
- **G**rimace (reflex)
- **A**ctivity (muscle tone)
- **R**espiration

Of the five Apgar criteria, heart rate and respiration are the most critical. Poor scores for either of these measurements may indicate the need for immediate medical attention to resuscitate or stabilize the newborn. In general, any score lower than 7 at the 5-minute mark indicates that medical assistance may be needed. A total score below 5 indicates an emergency situation. Normally, a newborn will get an intermediate score of 1 for some of the Apgar criteria and will progress to a 2 by the 5-minute assessment. Scores of 8 or above are normal.

Check Your Knowledge of Obstetrics Medical Terms and Abbreviations

Obstetrics Medical Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Obstetrics Words Not Easily Broken into Word Parts (Text version)

1. **abortion (AB) (ă-BOR-shŏn)**
 - termination of the pregnancy before the fetus is viable
2. **abruptio placentae (ă-BRŪP-shē-ō plā-SENT-ā)**
 - pre-mature separation of the placenta from the uterine wall
3. **Apgar score (AP-gar skŏr)**
 - Evaluation of a newborn's physical condition within one to five minutes after birth, which was developed by and named for Virginia Apgar (making this an eponym).
4. **Breech (brēch)**
 - The position of the fetus is feet first. Ideally, the position of the fetus should be head first.
5. **Cesarean section (CS, C-section) (si-ZAR-ē-ăn SEK-shŏn)**
 - Delivery of the fetus through an abdominal incision
6. **cephalic presentation (sē-FAL-ĭk prē-zen-TĀ-shŏn)**
 - birth position in which any part of the head emerges first
7. **Cephalic version (sē-FAL-ĭk VĚR-zhŏn)**
 - pertaining to turning the head; this procedure is done on the fetus when they are in the head-down position.
8. **cerclage (sēr-KLĀZH)**
 - Suturing of the cervix to prevent dilation and premature delivery
9. **colostrum (kŏ-LOS-trŭm)**
 - thin, milky fluid secreted by the breast during pregnancy and the first few days after delivery
10. **congenital anomaly (kŏn-JĚN-ĭ-tăl ă-NOM-ă-lē)**

- abnormality present at birth
11. **eclampsia (e-KLAMP-sē-ă)**
 - a serious condition in pregnancy with hypertension; patients are at risk of coma, convulsions and even death.
 12. **Ectopic pregnancy (ek-TOP-ik PREG-nān-sē)**
 - Pregnancy occurring outside the uterus, commonly in the fallopian tube.
 13. **Induction (in-DŪK-shŏn)**
 - The process of bringing on or starting labour. This may be done with a membrane sweep or through the use of IV oxytocin
 14. **in vitro fertilization (IVF) (in VĒ-trō fĕrt-ĭ-ĭ-ZĀ-shŏn)**
 - method of fertilizing human ova outside the body and placing the zygote in the uterus
 15. **lactation (lak-TĀ-shŏn)**
 - secretion of milk
 16. **lochia (LŌ-kē-ă)**
 - vaginal discharge after birth
 17. **meconium (mē-KŌ-nē-ŭm)**
 - first stool of the newborn
 18. **midwife (MĪD-wĭf)**
 - individual who practices midwifery
 19. **craniocerebral**
 - practice of assisting in childbirth
 20. **Obstetrician (ob-stĕ-TRISH-ăn)**
 - Physician who specializes in obstetrics
 21. **Obstetrics (OB) (ŏb-STE-triks)**
 - medical specialty dealing with pregnancy, childbirth, and puerperium
 22. **parturition (păr-tū-RĪSH-ŭn)**
 - act of giving birth
 23. **placenta previa (plă-SENT-ă PRĒ-vē-ă)**

- abnormally low implantation of the placenta on the uterine wall, can result in hemorrhage and a c- section
24. **preeclampsia (prē-ě-KLAMP-sē-ă)**
 - The abnormal condition in pregnancy where the patient experiences hypertension, edema and proteinuria is called, but with no convulsions. Can progress to eclampsia.
 25. **premature infant (prē-mă-CHŪR IN-fănt)**
 - infant born before completing 37 weeks of gestation (also called preterm infant)
 26. **puerperium (pū-ěr-PĒ-rē-ŭm)**
 - period from delivery until the reproductive organs return to normal (approximately six weeks)
 27. **quickening (KWĪK-ĕn-ĭng)**
 - first feeling of movement of the fetus in utero by the pregnant woman
 28. **stillborn (STIL-bōrn)**
 - an infant that is born dead

Activity source: Obstetrics Words Not Built From Word Parts from [Medical Terminology](#). by Grimm et al., licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Some H5P audio re-recorded by Tania Deane and David McCuaig and text version added.

Obstetrics Abbreviations

Review the list of common abbreviates below.

Obstetrics Common Abbreviations

- **AB** (abortion)
- **AFP** (Alpha-fetoprotein test)
- **AI** (artificial insemination)
- **CS, C-section** (cesarean section)
- **CVS** (chorionic villus sampling)
- **DOB** (date of birth)

- **EDD** (expected or estimated date of delivery)
- **FAS** (fetal alcohol syndrome)
- **IVF** (in vitro fertilization)
- **LMP** (last menstrual period)
- **multip** (multipara)
- **NB** (newborn)
- **OB** (obstetrics)
- **primip** (primipara)
- **RDS** (respiratory distress syndrome)
- **VBAC** (vaginal birth after cesarean section)
- **ZIFT** (Zygote intrafallopian transfer)

Activity Source: Obstetrics Common Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Obstetrics Pathology Report

Obstetrics- Pathology Report (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the pathology report:

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|
| • salpingectomy | • fallopian | • cassettes |
| • ectopic | • tube | • microscopic |
| • ultrasound | • clots | • pregnancy |

OBSTETRICS – PATHOLOGY REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Bonnie PERRY

AGE: 34

SEX: Female

DOB: May 3

PATIENT ID: 900132

DATE OF ADMISSION AND SURGERY: June 14

ADMITTING DIAGNOSIS: Ectopic pregnancy

SURGEON: Adam Vance, MD, OB/GYN

PATHOLOGY ID: Specimen No. 05-S-899

SPECIMEN RECEIVED: June 14 Specimen Reported: June 18

SURGICAL PROCEDURE: Right partial _____[Blank 1].

CLINICAL HISTORY: This 34-year-old white female had an _____[Blank 2] pregnancy as proven by pelvic _____[Blank 3].

TISSUE RECEIVED: Right fallopian tube.

GROSS DESCRIPTION: The specimen designated right _____[Blank 4] tube was examined reveals the presence of a fallopian tube measuring 5.9 cm in length and 2.3 cm in average diameter. Sectioning of the _____[Blank 5] shows it to be distended with blood _____[Blank 6] and possible field tissue. The sections were taken, and placed in three _____[Blank 7], A through C, for embedding.

MICROSCOPIC DESCRIPTION: _____[Blank 8] examination performed.

MICROSCOPIC DIAGNOSIS: Ruptured tubal _____[Blank 9].

Joseph Gibbs, MD, Anatomic & Clinical Pathology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your Answers: ¹

Activity source: Obstetrics- Pathology Report by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 8.1 image description: This multi-part figure shows the different stages of childbirth. The top panel shows dilation of the cervix (undilated vs fully dilated), the middle panel shows birth (presentation of the head, rotation and delivery of anterior shoulder, delivery of posterior shoulder, delivery of lower body and umbilical cord), and the bottom panel shows afterbirth delivery. [\[Return to Figure 8.1\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “Obstetrics” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Obstetrics chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1.salpingectomy, 2.ectopic, 3.ultrasound, 4.fallopian, 5.tube, 6. clots, 7.cassettes, 8. Microscopic, 9.pregnancy

8.2 - Procedures Related to Obstetrics

In Vitro Fertilization (IVF)

IVF, which stands for **in vitro fertilization**, is an assisted reproductive technology. *In vitro*, which in Latin translates to *in glass*, refers to a procedure that takes place outside of the body. There are many different indications for IVF. For example, a woman may produce normal eggs, but the eggs cannot reach the uterus because the uterine tubes are blocked or otherwise compromised. A man may have a low sperm count, low sperm motility, sperm with an unusually high percentage of morphological abnormalities, or sperm that are incapable of penetrating the zona pellucida of an egg. [Figure 8.2](#) illustrates the steps involved in IVF.

Did You Know?

According to Health Canada, one in six Canadian couples have struggled with conceiving (Fertility, 2019).

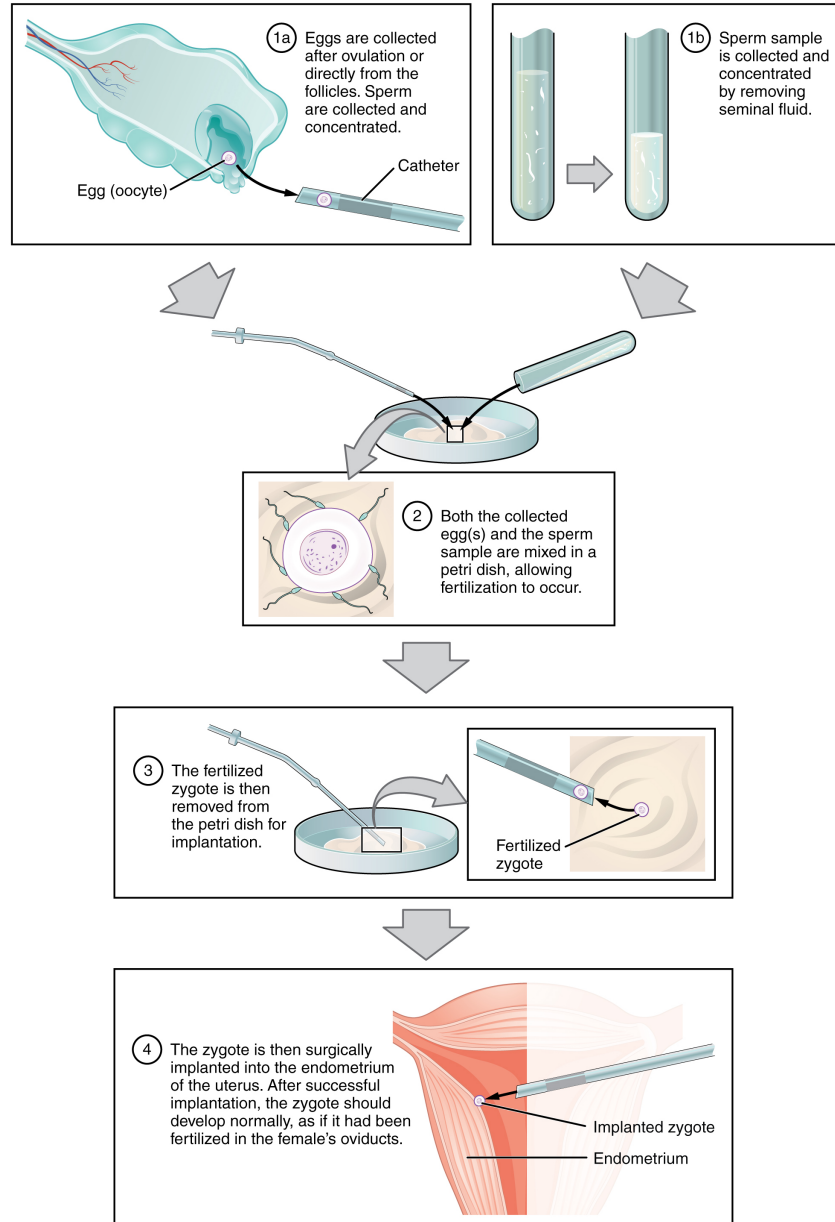


Figure 8.2 IVF. In vitro fertilization involves egg collection from the ovaries, fertilization in a petri dish, and the transfer of embryos into the uterus. From Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 8.2 Image description.]

Prenatal Screening and Diagnostic Testing

Approximately 4% of Canadian babies are born with a congenital anomaly. The most common anomalies include structural heart defects, cleft lip/palate, or anomalies like Down syndrome. Prenatal testing may include blood work, ultrasound, **chorionic villus sampling (CVS)** and **amniocentesis** (Genetics Education Canada Knowledge Organization, 2019). To learn more about prenatal screening tests, visit GECKO's [Guide to Understanding Prenatal Screening Tests \[PDF\]](#).

Image Descriptions

Figure 8.2 image description: This multi-part figure shows the different steps of in vitro fertilization. The top panel shows how the oocytes and the sperm are collected and prepared (text reads: 1a) eggs are collected after ovulation or directly from the follicles. Sperm are collected and concentrated. 1b) Sperm sample is collected and concentrated by removing seminal fluid). The next panel shows the sperm and oocytes being mixed in a petri dish (text labels read: 2) both the collected eggs and the sperm sample are mixed in a petri dish, allowing fertilization to occur). The panel below that shows the fertilized zygote being prepared for implantation (text labels read: 3a) the fertilized zygote is then removed from the petri dish for implantation. 3b) fertilized zygote). The last panel shows the fertilized zygote being implanted into the uterus (text label reads: 4) The zygote is then surgically implanted into the endometrium of the uterus. After successful implantation, the zygote should develop normally, as if it had been fertilized in the female's oviducts). [\[Return to Figure 8.2\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “Obstetrics” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Obstetrics chapter content into sub-chapters.

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Obstetrics Vocabulary

Abortion

Termination of a pregnancy before the fetus is viable.

Alpha-fetoprotein test (AFP)

A maternal blood test to detect potential fetal abnormalities such as neural tube defects or multiple pregnancies; The AFP is taken between 14 and 19 weeks gestation.

Amenorrhea

Absences of the flow of menses, no period; one of the first signs of pregnancy or menopause.

Amniocentesis

Surgical puncture to remove a small amount of amniotic fluid through a needle via the abdomen. The fluid is tested for any potential fetal abnormalities.

Artificial insemination

A process where the semen is introduced into the vagina by mechanical means, thus called artificial.

Breech

The position of the fetus is feet first. Ideally, the position of the fetus should be headfirst for a safer delivery.

Caesarian section (CS, c-section)

Delivery of the fetus through an abdominal incision.

Cephalopelvic disproportion

A condition where the infant's head is larger than the pelvic outlet and therefore will require a c-section.

Cerclage

A suture inserted into the cervix to prevent dilation and prevention miscarriage. The suture is removed when the fetus is full-term and allows the vaginal delivery to proceed.

Cephalic version

Pertaining to turning the head; this procedure is done on the fetus when they are in the head-down position.

Chorionic villus sampling

A small piece of placenta is taken and tested to determine potential for birth defects.

Dilation and curettage (D&C)

A procedure where the cervix is dilated (widened) and a curette (a sharp instrument) is used to remove the lining of the uterus. This procedure is conducted when there is abnormal bleeding from the uterus and also to remove any products of conception, for example following an incomplete miscarriage or abortion.

Eclampsia

A very serious condition in pregnancy with hypertension; patients are at high risk of coma, convulsions, and even death.

Ectopic pregnancy

The embryo implants any other place but the inner endo-uterine lining.

Episiotomy

A procedure where an incision is made to widen the vaginal opening to prevent ripping or tearing of the perineum during delivery.

Gestation

The process of being pregnant.

Gestational Diabetes

The condition of developing diabetes during pregnancy. The newborn tend to be large at delivery and the mother is monitored closely for weight gain and glucose testing. The goal is to balance the sugars so the fetus is not too large for a vaginal delivery.

Gestational Hypertension

A condition where there is an increase in blood pressure during pregnancy. Blood pressure is monitoring closely during pregnancy for the safety of the mother and infant.

Hyperemesis

Excessive vomiting during pregnancy.

Hyperemesis Gravidarum

Hyperemesis can occur with any pregnant women, even a woman who miscarries. Often these women may require hospitalization for fluid and electrolyte intake.

Induction

The process of bringing on or starting labour. This may be done with a membrane sweep or through the use of IV oxytocin.

In vitro Fertilization (IVF)

A process where the ova is fertilized outside the body and then implanted into the uterus.

Meconium Staining

When the fetus defecates while in utero; the first defecation is called meconium, it is black and sticky. If the infant inhales the meconium upon delivery or through the birth canal, the meconium can be aspirated into the lungs and stick to the lung tissue. The newborn will have problems breathing and go into distress. The newborn's umbilical cord will be stained a brownish colour.

Natal

Pertaining to born.

Neonatal

Pertaining to the newborn. For example neonatal record, neonatal unit

Non-stress test

Test conducted on the pregnant woman to assess the fetal heart rate (FHR).

Nulligravida

A woman who has never been pregnant.

Obstetrician

The person who specializes in the study of obstetrics and gynecology and are referred to as OB/GYN Obstetrics and Gynecology.

Oligohydramnios

A condition where there is minimal amniotic fluid within the placental sac. Too little fluid can restrict the fetus from movement and growth.

Oocyte

Female gamete.

Oxytocia

A rapid birth.

Placenta Abruptio or Abruptio Placenta

Occurs when the placenta prematurely becomes detached from the uterine wall. This is a medical emergency and requires an immediate c-section to save both the woman and infant's lives. The infant will not be getting oxygen from the mother and the mother may hemorrhage.

Placenta Previa

Occurs when the placenta partially or completely covers the cervical os (opening).

Polyhydramnios

A condition where there is excessive amniotic fluid in the placenta. The delivery will be a c-section to prevent bleeding during delivery of the fetus.

Preeclampsia

The abnormal condition in pregnancy where the patient experiences hypertension, edema and proteinuria.

Primigravida

First pregnancy.

Sperm

Male gamete (spermatozoon).

Vaginal Birth Following a C-Section

Having a vaginal delivery after a previous c-section delivery.

Zygote

Process of fertilization is complete and results in a single-celled diploid zygote with all the genetic instructions it needs to develop into a human.

Zygote Intrafallopian Transfer (ZIFT)

Mixing of the ova and sperm in a laboratory. Fertilization is confirmed to grow into zygotes and then are inserted into the Fallopian tubes (Healthwise Staff, 2018).

Obstetrics Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Obstetrics Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Termination of a pregnancy before the fetus is viable is called _____. [Blank 1].
 - a. Abortion
 - b. Amniocentesis
 - c. Gestation
2. The abnormal condition in pregnancy where the patient experiences hypertension, edema and proteinuria is called _____. [Blank 2].
 - a. Hyperemesis Gravida
 - b. Preeclampsia
 - c. Dystocia
3. When the embryo implants any other place but the inner endo-uterine lining it is called a(n) _____. [Blank 3].

- a. Ectopic pregnancy
 - b. Placenta Previa
 - c. Zygote intrafallopian transfer
4. A condition where the infant's head is larger than the pelvic outlet and therefore will require a c-section is called _____[Blank 4].
- a. Cephalopelvic disproportion
 - b. Cephalic version
 - c. Induction
5. A test conducted on the pregnant woman to assess the fetal heart rate is called _____[Blank 5].
- a. Alpha-fetoprotein test
 - b. Non-stress test
 - c. Meconium staining

Check your Answers:¹

Activity source: Obstetrics Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “Obstetrics” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Obstetrics chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Abortion, 2. Preeclampsia, 3. Ectopic pregnancy, 4. Cephalopelvic disproportion, 5. Non-stress test,

References

CrashCourse. (2019, November 23). *Reproductive system, part 4 - Pregnancy & development: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #43* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/BtsSbZ85yiQ>

Genetics Education Canada Knowledge Organization. (2019, January). *A guide to understanding prenatal screening tests*. <https://geneticseducation.ca/uploads/Prenatal%20screening%20-%20Public%20Brochure%20-%20Final%20-%20Jan2019.pdf>

Government of Canada. (2023, June 5). *Fertility*. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/fertility/fertility.html>

New York Presbyterian. (2023, November 27). *Gamete And Zygote Intrafallopian Transfer (GIFT And ZIFT)*. New York Presbyterian: Health Library. <https://www.nyp.org/healthlibrary/other-details/gamete-and-zygote-intrafallopian-transfer-gift-and-zift?lancode=>

CHAPTER 9: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM - HEART

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [9.1 - Introduction to the Heart](#)
- [9.2 - Anatomy of the Heart](#)
- [9.3 - Physiology of the Heart](#)
- [9.4 - Heart Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

9.1 - Introduction to the Heart

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the heart
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the heart
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of heart terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the heart and explore common diseases, disorders, and diagnostic tests and procedures

Cardiovascular System – Heart Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the cardiovascular system – Heart.

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **bi-** (two)
- **brady-** (slow)
- **endo-** (within, in)
- **epi-** (on, upon, over)
- **hypo-** (below, deficient)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **inter-** (between)
- **pan-** (all, total)
- **peri-** (surrounding, around)
- **tachy-** (fast, rapid)
- **tri-** (three)

Combining Form

- **atri/o** (atrium)
- **cardi/o/** (heart)
- **ech/o** (sound)
- **electr/o** (electricity)
- **symptomato/o** (symptom)
- **valv/o** (valve)
- **valvul/o** (valve)
- **ventricul/o** (ventricle)

Suffix

- **-ac** (pertaining to)
- **-apheresis** (removal)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-centesis** (surgical puncture to aspirate fluid)
- **-ectomy** (excision, surgical removal)
- **-genic** (producing, originating, causing)
- **-gram** (record, radiographic image)
- **-graph** (instrument used to record)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-ia** (condition of, diseased state, abnormal state)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-lysis** (loosening, dissolution, separating)
- **-megaly** (enlarged, enlargement)
- **-logist** (specialist, physician who studies and treats)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition)
- **-tomy** (cut into, incision)
- **-ous** (pertaining to)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-penia** (abnormal reduction in number)
- **-pexy** (surgical fixation, suspension)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-poiesis** (formation)
- **-sclerosis** (hardening)
- **-scope** (instrument used to view)
- **-scopy** (process of viewing)
- **-stasis** (stop, stopping, controlling)
- **-stenosis** (narrowing, constriction)

Activity source: Cardiovascular System Heart Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical](#)

[Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Introduction to the Heart

The heart is a fist-sized vital organ that has *one* job: to pump blood. If one assumes an average **heart rate** of 75 beats per minute, a human heart would beat approximately 108,000 times in one day, more than 39 million times in one year, and nearly 3 billion times during a 75-year lifespan. At rest, each of the major pumping chambers of the heart ejects approximately **70 mL blood per contraction** in an adult. This would be equal to **5.25 liters of blood** per minute and approximately 14,000 liters per day. Over one year, that would equal 10,000,000 liters of blood sent through roughly 100,000 km of blood vessels. In order to understand how that happens, it is necessary to understand the anatomy and physiology of the heart.

Watch [The Heart, Part 1 – Under Pressure: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #25 \(10 min\)](#)

Cardiovascular System – Heart Medical Terms

Cardiovascular System – Heart Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following cardiovascular system – heart medical terms by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **endocarditis**
 - end/o/card/itis
 - Inflammation of the inner (lining) of the heart
2. **echocardiogram**
 - ech/o/cardi/o/gram
 - a record (using) sound of the heart
3. **bradycardia**
 - brady/card/ia
 - condition of slow heart (rate)

4. **electrocardiograph**

- electr/o/cardi/o/graph
- instrument used to record the electrical (activity) of the heart

5. **tachycardia**

- tachy/card/ia
- condition of fast/rapid heart (rate)

6. **pericardiocentesis**

- peri/cardi/o/centesis
- Surgical puncture to aspirate fluid from the (sac) surrounding the heart

7. **electrocardiogram**

- electr/o/cardi/o/gram
- a record of electrical (activity) of the heart

8. **electrocardiography**

- electr/o/cardi/o/graphy
- process of recording the electrical (activity) of the heart

9. **valvulitis**

- valvul/itis
- inflammation of a valve

10. **pericarditis**

- peri/card/itis
- inflammation of the (sac) surrounding the heart

11. **asymptomatic**

- a/symptomat/ic
- pertaining to without symptoms

12. **myocarditis**

- my/o/card/itis
- inflammation of the muscle of the heart

13. **cardiomegaly**

- cardi/o/megaly
- enlarged heart

14. **atherosclerosis**

- ather/o/scler/osis
 - abnormal condition of plaque (build up) causing constriction
15. **valvuloplasty**
- valvul/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of a valve
16. **Cardiologist**
- Cardi/o/logist
 - A physician who studies and treats diseases of the heart
17. **cardiac**
- cardi/ac
 - pertaining to the heart
18. **cardiology**
- cardi/o/logy
 - study of the heart
19. **atrioventricular**
- atri/o/ventricul/ar
 - pertaining to the atrium and ventricle
20. **cardiogenic**
- cardi/o/genic
 - originating in the heart
21. **cardiomyopathy**
- cardi/o/my/o/pathy
 - disease of the heart muscle

Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Heart Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Heart](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A

derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Heart chapter content into sub-chapters.

9.2 - Anatomy of the Heart

Location

The human heart is located within the thoracic cavity, between the lungs in the space known as the **mediastinum**. [Figure 9.1](#) shows the position of the heart within the thoracic cavity. Within the mediastinum, the heart is separated from the other mediastinal structures by a tough membrane known as the pericardium, or pericardial sac, and sits in its own space called the **pericardial cavity**. The **great vessels**, which carry blood to and from the heart, are attached to the superior surface of the heart, which is called the base. The base of the heart is located at the level of the third costal cartilage. The inferior tip of the heart is called the apex. The apex lies just to the left of the sternum between the junction of the fourth and fifth ribs.

Concept Check 1

- On the diagram below ([Figure 9.1](#)), locate the **mediastinum**, the **pericardial cavity**, the **base** of the heart and the **apex** of the heart.
- Locate the largest vein in the body **superior vena cava**.

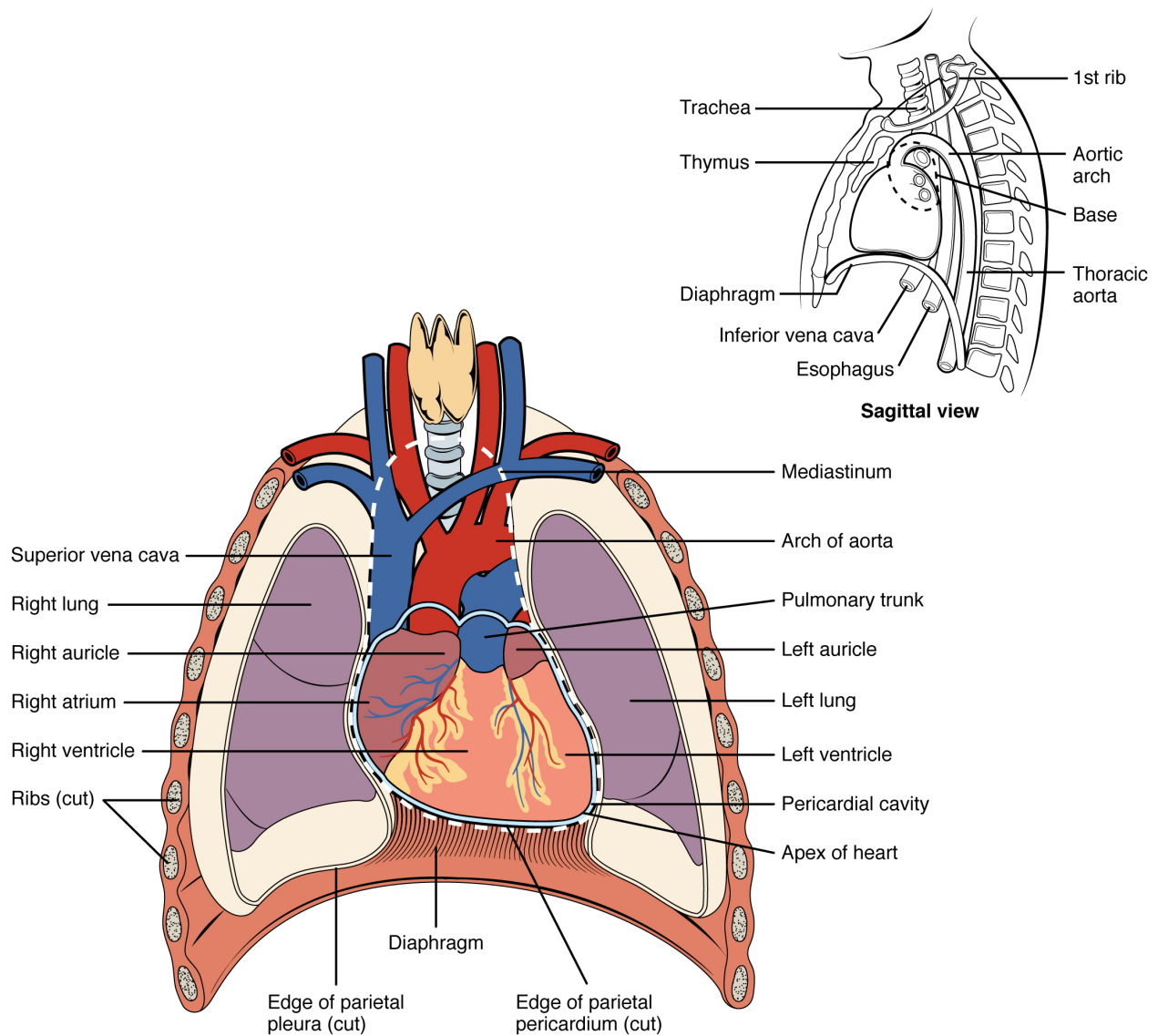


Figure 9.1. Position of the Heart in the Thorax. The heart is located within the thoracic cavity, medially between the lungs in the mediastinum. It is about the size of a fist, is broad at the top, and tapers toward the base. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0. [Fig. 9.1 Image description.]

Membranes and Layers of the Heart Walls

The heart and the **roots of the great vessels** are surrounded by a membrane known as the **pericardium** or **pericardial sac** (Figure 9.2). The pericardium consists of two distinct sub layers:

- The sturdy outer fibrous pericardium is made of tough, dense connective tissue that protects the heart and holds it in position.
- The inner **serous** pericardium is separated by the **pericardial cavity** and contains pericardial fluid. It consists of two layers:

- the outer **parietal pericardium**, which is fused to the fibrous pericardium.
- the inner **visceral pericardium**, or **epicardium**, which is fused to the heart and forms the outer layer of the heart wall.

The walls of the heart consist of three layers:

- The outer **epicardium**, which is another name for the visceral pericardium mentioned above.
- The thick, middle **myocardium**, which is made of muscle tissue and gives the heart its ability to contract.
- The inner **endocardium**, which lines the heart chambers and is the main component of the heart valves.

Concept Check 2

- Look at [Figure 9.2](#) below, and name the layers of the heart wall and surrounding membranes, starting with the innermost layer.
- As shown on the diagram, suggest why the **myocardium** layer is thicker than the **endocardium** layer.

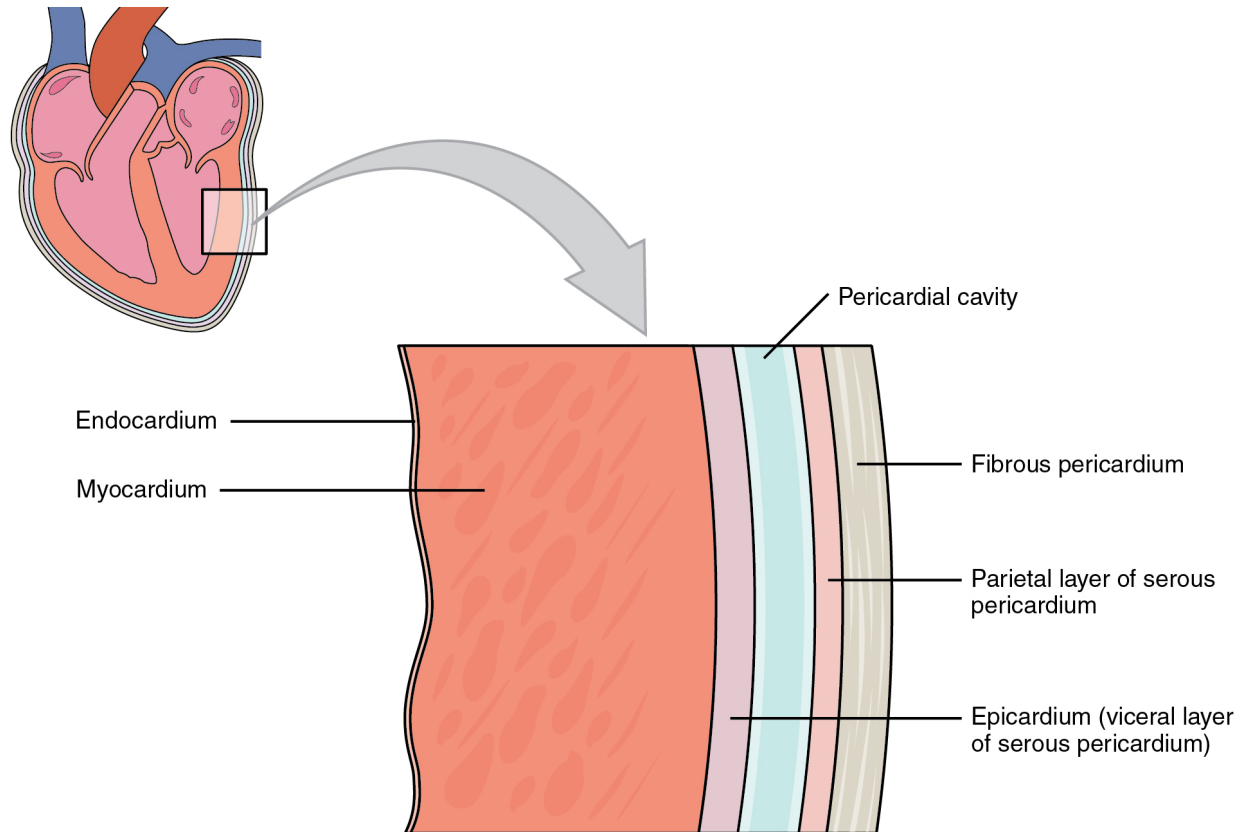


Figure 9.2. Pericardial Membranes and Layers of the Heart Wall. The pericardial membrane that surrounds the heart consists of three layers and the pericardial cavity. The heart wall also consists of three layers. The pericardial membrane and the heart wall share the epicardium. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig 9.2 Image description.]

Internal Structures of the Heart

The heart consists of four chambers:

- The upper chambers are the right and left **atria** (singular: atrium).
- The lower chambers are the right and left **ventricles** (singular: ventricle).

The **interventricular septum** is a muscular wall that separates the right and left ventricles. The interatrial septum separates the right and left atria.

The atrium and ventricle on each side of the heart are separated by an atrioventricular (AV) valve:

- The right AV valve, or **tricuspid valve**, separates the right atrium and right ventricle.
- The left AV valve, or **bicuspid valve**, separates the left ventricle and the left atrium. This valve is also called the **mitral valve**.

There are also two semilunar valves:

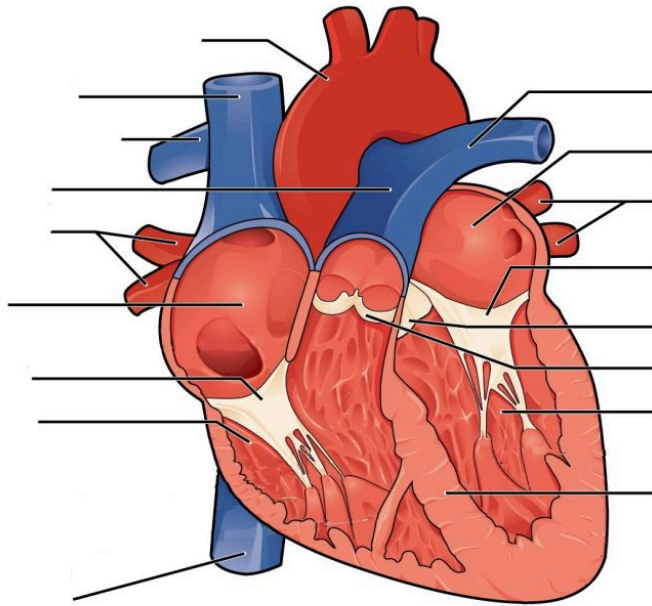
- The **pulmonary valve** separates the right ventricle from the pulmonary trunk.
- The **aortic valve** separates the left ventricle from the aorta (De Saix, et al., 2013).

Anatomy Labeling Activity

Cardiovascular System: The Heart Anatomy (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Aortic valve | 7. Inferior vena cava | 13. Right pulmonary veins |
| 2. Mitral (bicuspid) valve | 8. Left pulmonary artery | 14. Right pulmonary artery |
| 3. Aorta | 9. Right atrium | 15. Pulmonary valve |
| 4. Pulmonary trunk | 10. Left pulmonary veins | 16. left ventricle |
| 5. Tricuspid valve | 11. Left atrium | 17. Superior vena cava |
| 6. Interventricular septum | 12. Right ventricle | |



Anterior view

Cardiovascular System: The Heart Anatomy Diagram (Text Version)

This diagram shows the heart with an anterior view. The view shows from (from top, clockwise): the largest artery in the body known as the _____[Blank 1]. The _____[Blank 2] is shown which is the only vein in the body to carry oxygenated blood. The heart is divided into four chambers the _____[Blank 3] is one of the four chambers of the heart it is in the upper left portion of the heart. The _____[Blank 4] also know as the bicuspid valve contains to cusps or flaps and is positioned between the left atrium and lower left ventricle. The _____[Blank 5] is a structure

located between the aorta and _____[Blank 6] of the heart which is the left lower chamber of the heart. The _____[Blank 7] is a thick wall of tissue divided the right side of the heart from the left. The _____[Blank 8] lies between the right atrium and pulmonary artery. The _____[Blank 9] is a large vein that carries deoxygenated blood to the heart. The _____[Blank 10] is the lower right chamber of the heart. The _____[Blank 11] lies between the right ventricle and the _____[Blank 12] which is the upper right chamber of the heart. The _____[Blank 13] transfer oxygenated blood from the lungs to the heart. The _____[Blank 14] is part of the _____[Blank 15] and transfers deoxygenated blood to the lungs. The _____[Blank 16] a large vein that returns deoxygenated blood from systemic circulation to the right atrium of the heart.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Cardiovascular System: The Heart Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

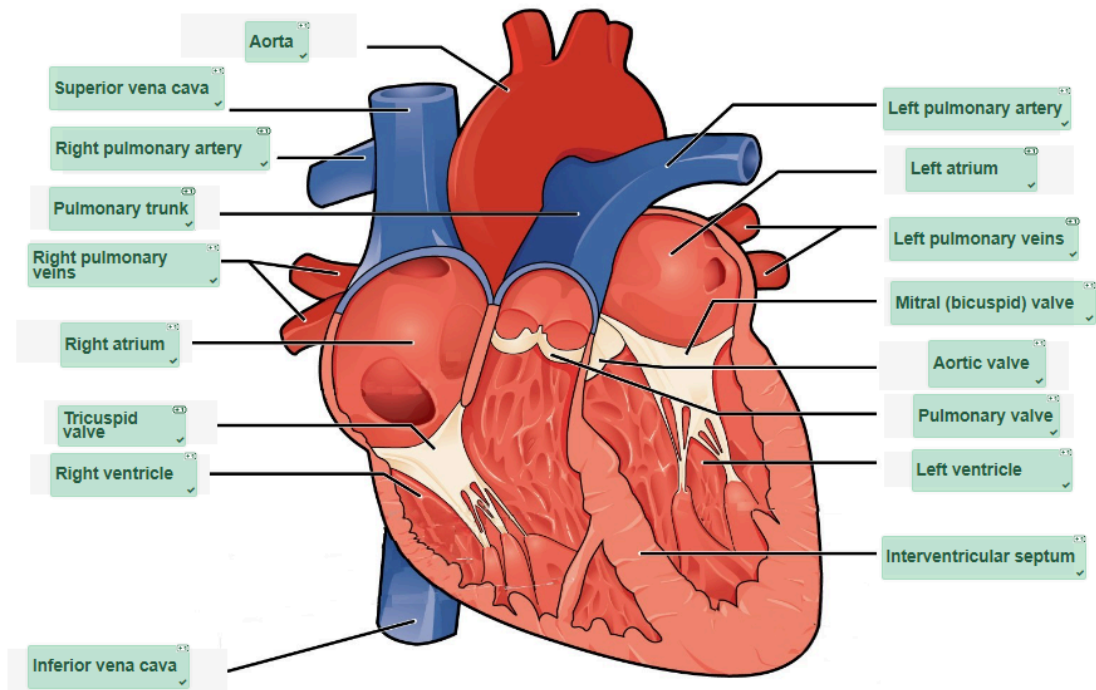
Figure 9.1 image description: This diagram shows the location of the heart in the thorax (sagittal and anterior views). The sagittal view labels read (from top, clockwise): first rib, aortic arch, thoracic arch, esophagus, inferior vena cava, diaphragm, thymus, trachea. The anterior view labels read (from top, clockwise): mediastinum, arch of aorta, pulmonary trunk, left auricle, left lung, left ventricle, pericardial cavity, apex of heart, edge of parietal pericardium, diaphragm, edge of parietal pleura, ribs, right ventricle, right atrium, right auricle, right lung, superior vena cava. [\[Return to Figure 9.1\]](#).

Figure 9.2 image description: This image shows a magnified view of the structure of the heart wall. Labels read (from top, clockwise): pericardial cavity, fibrous pericardium, parietal layer of serous pericardium, epicardium (visceral layer of serous pericardium), myocardium, endocardium. [\[Return to Figure 9.2\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Heart](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Heart chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Check your answers: Cardiovascular System: The Heart Anatomy Diagram (Text Version) This diagram shows the heart with an anterior view. The view shows from (from top, clockwise): the largest artery in the body known as the **aorta**. The **left pulmonary vein** is shown which is the only vein in the body to carry oxygenated blood. The heart is divided into four chambers the **left atrium** is one of the four chambers of the heart it is in the upper left portion of the heart. The **mitral valve** also know as the bicuspid valve contains to cusps or flaps and is positioned between the left atrium and lower left ventricle. The **aortic valve** is a structure located between the aorta and **left ventricle** of the heart which is the left lower chamber of the heart. The **interventricular septum** is a thick wall of tissue divided the right side of the heart from the left. The **pulmonary valve** lies between the right atrium and pulmonary artery. The **inferior vena cava** is a large vein that carries deoxygenated blood to the heart. The **right ventricle** is the lower right chamber of the heart. The **tricuspid valve** lies between the right ventricle and the **right atrium** which is the upper right chamber of the heart. The **right pulmonary veins** transfer oxygenated blood from the lungs to the heart. The **pulmonary trunk** is part of the **right pulmonary artery** and transfers deoxygenated blood to the lungs. The **superior vena cava** a large vein that returns deoxygenated blood from systemic circulation to the right atrium of the heart.

9.3 - Physiology of the Heart

In order for the heart to do its job of pumping blood to the lungs and to the body, nutrients and oxygen must be supplied to the cells of the heart. The heart also needs to coordinate its contractions so that all parts are working together to pump blood effectively. To understand how all of this works together to give the heart its ability to pump blood, we will examine three interdependent aspects of heart function.

1. Circulation through the heart: blood is pumped by the heart in order to provide oxygen and nutrients to every cell in the body.
2. The heart as an organ (coronary blood supply): the heart is an organ, made of cells and tissues which require their own blood supply.
3. The heart's electrical conduction system: the heart is able to independently generate and transmit instructions to the myocardium, in order to make it contract and pump the blood.

I. Circulation Through the Heart: The Heart as a Pump

The heart pumps blood to two distinct but linked circulatory systems called the pulmonary and systemic circuits. The **pulmonary circuit** transports blood to and from the lungs, where it picks up oxygen and drops off carbon dioxide. The **systemic circuit** transports freshly oxygenated blood to virtually all of the tissues of the body and returns relatively deoxygenated blood and carbon dioxide to the heart to be sent back to the pulmonary circulation.

Did You Know?

The heart sounds heard through a stethoscope are the sounds of the four heart valves opening and closing at specific times during one cardiac cycle.

1. Blood that is carrying carbon dioxide and waste products from the body tissues is returned to the **right atrium** via the **superior vena cava** and the **inferior vena cava**.
2. From the right atrium, the deoxygenated blood moves through the **tricuspid valve** into the right ventricle.
3. The **right ventricle** pumps deoxygenated blood through the **pulmonary valve** into the **pulmonary trunk**, which splits into the **right and left pulmonary arteries**, leading toward the lungs. These arteries branch many times before reaching the **pulmonary capillaries**, where gas exchange occurs: carbon dioxide exits the blood and oxygen enters. The pulmonary arteries are the only arteries in the postnatal body that carry deoxygenated blood. Did you notice that they are often coloured blue on diagrams of the heart?
4. Freshly oxygenated blood returns from the lungs to the **left atrium** via the **pulmonary veins**. These veins

are the only postnatal veins in the body that carry highly oxygenated blood and are often coloured red on heart images.

5. From the left atrium, the blood moves through the **mitral valve** into the **left ventricle**.
6. The left ventricle pumps blood through the **aortic valve**, into the **aorta**, delivering blood to all parts of the body.

Concept Check 1

- On [Figure 9.3](#) below, use your finger to trace the pathway of blood flowing through the right side of the heart, naming each each of the following structures as you encounter them: superior and inferior venae cavae, right atrium, tricuspid valve, right ventricle, pulmonary valve, right and left pulmonary arteries.
- Suggest what would happen if the **aorta** experienced a blockage or constriction.

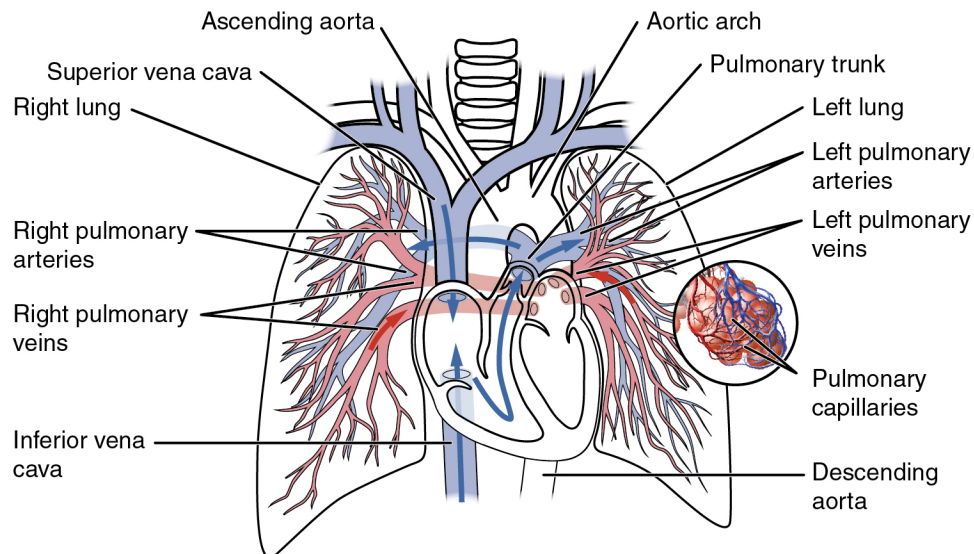


Figure 9.3. Pulmonary Circuit Blood exiting from the right ventricle flows into the pulmonary trunk, which bifurcates into the two pulmonary arteries. These vessels branch to supply blood to the pulmonary capillaries, where gas exchange occurs within the lung alveoli. Blood returns via the pulmonary veins to the left atrium. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 9.3 Image description](#).]

Pulmonary Circuit

Blood exiting from the right ventricle flows into the pulmonary trunk, which bifurcates into the two pulmonary arteries. These vessels branch to supply blood to the pulmonary capillaries, where gas exchange occurs within the lung alveoli. Blood returns via the pulmonary veins to the left atrium.

Concept Check 2

- On [Figure 9.4](#) below, use your finger to trace the pathway of blood flowing through the left side of the heart, naming each of the following structures as you encounter them: right and left pulmonary veins, left atrium, mitral valve, left ventricle, aortic valve, aorta.

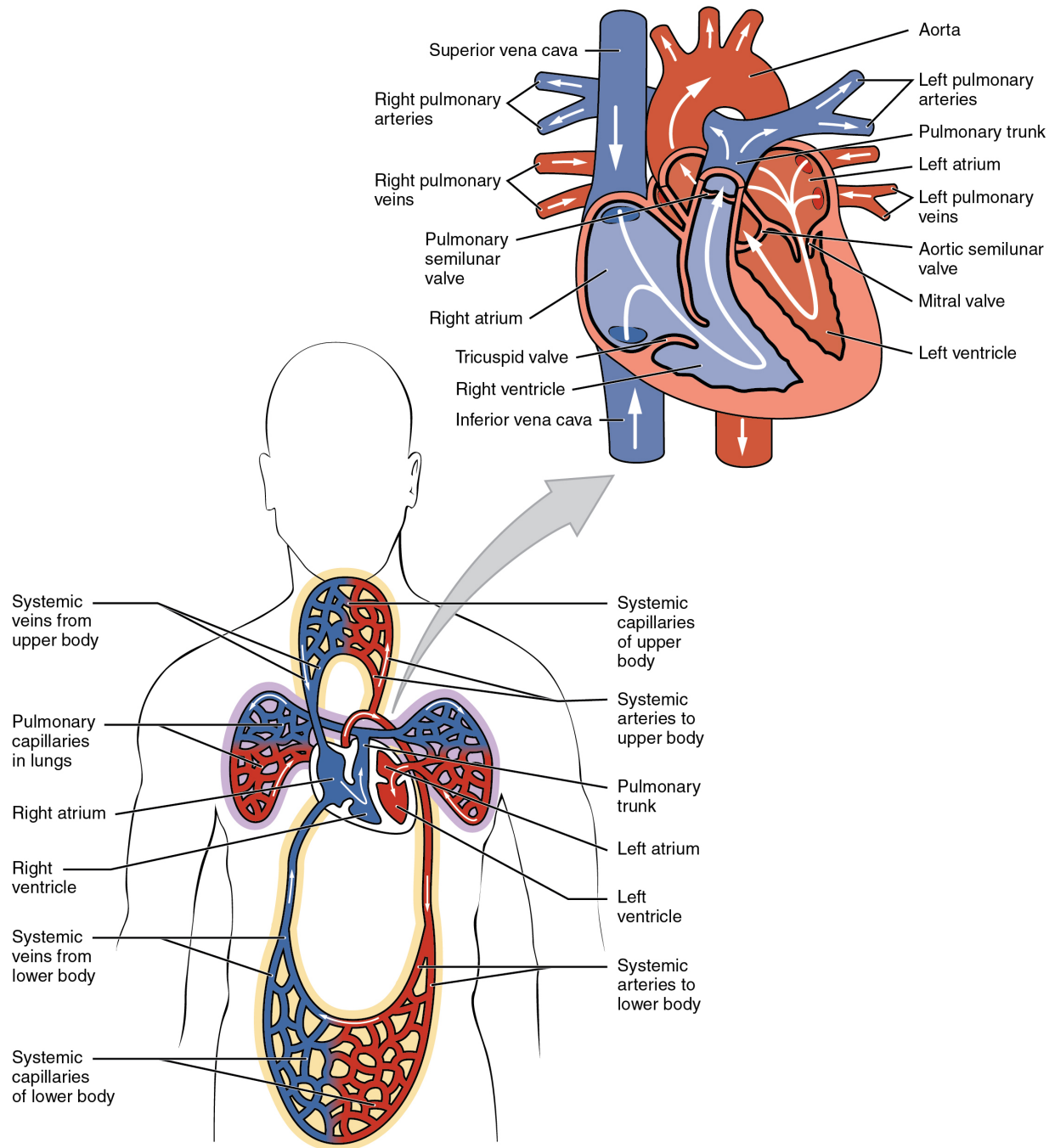


Figure 9.4. Dual System of the Human Blood Circulation. Blood flows from the right atrium to the right ventricle, where it is pumped into the pulmonary circuit. The blood in the pulmonary artery branches is low in oxygen but relatively high in carbon dioxide. Gas exchange occurs in the pulmonary capillaries (oxygen into the blood, carbon dioxide out), and blood high in oxygen and low in carbon dioxide is returned to the left atrium. From here, blood enters the left ventricle, which pumps it into the systemic circuit. Following exchange in the systemic capillaries (oxygen and nutrients out of the capillaries and carbon dioxide and wastes in), blood returns to the right atrium and the cycle is repeated. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 9.4 Image description.]

Cardiac Cycle

The process of pumping and circulating blood is active, coordinated, and rhythmic. Each heartbeat represents one cycle of the heart receiving blood and ejecting blood.

- **Diastole** is the portion of the cycle in which the heart is relaxed and the atria and ventricles are filling with blood. The AV valves are open so that blood can move from the atria to the ventricles.
- **Systole** is the portion of the cycle in which the heart contracts, AV valves slam shut, and the ventricles eject blood to the lungs and to the body through the open semilunar valves. Once this phase ends, the semilunar valves close in preparation for another filling phase.

2. The Heart as an Organ: The Coronary Blood Supply

Myocardial cells require their own blood supply to carry out their function of contracting and relaxing the heart in order to pump blood. Their own blood supply provides nutrients and oxygen and carry away carbon dioxide and waste. These functions are provided by the coronary arteries and coronary veins.

Concept Check 3

On the image ([Figure 9.5](#)) below, locate the three main coronary arteries:

- **Anterior interventricular artery** (more commonly known as the **left anterior descending artery, or LAD**)
- **Circumflex artery (Cx)**
- **Right coronary artery (RCA)**

Follow the path of each of these three arteries to try to determine which parts of the myocardium each artery (along with its many smaller branches) supplies with blood.

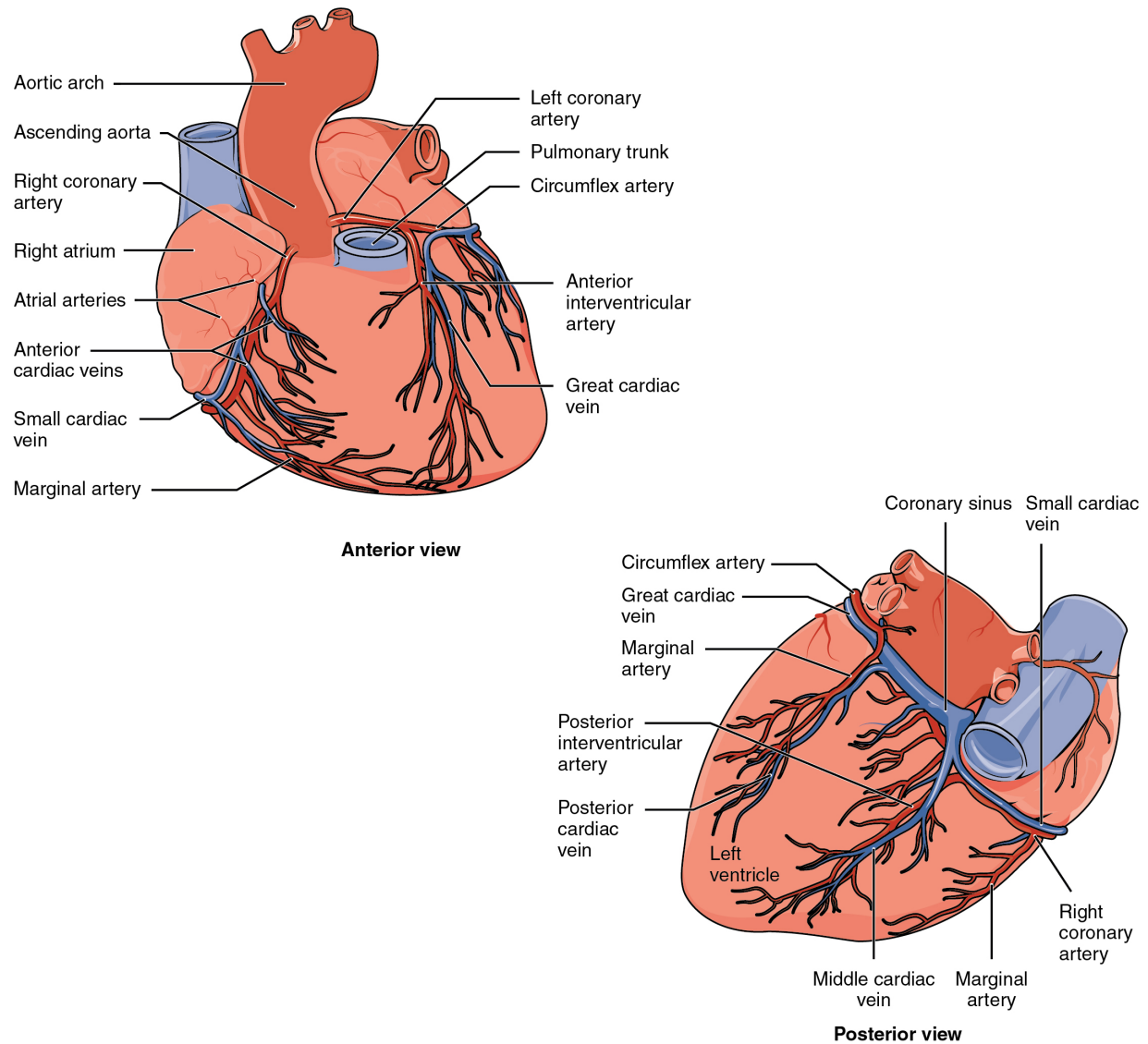


Figure 9.5 Coronary Circulation. The anterior view of the heart shows the prominent coronary surface vessels. The posterior view of the heart shows the prominent coronary surface vessels. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 9.5 Image description.](#)]

3. The Heart's Electrical Conduction System

In order for all parts of the heart to work together to beat regularly and effectively, the heart has its own electrical system, which initiates and conducts each heartbeat through the entire myocardium. Specialized groups of heart cells perform this function all on their own, without requiring messages from the central nervous system.

Watch [The Heart, Part 2 - Heart Throbs: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #26 \(9:30 min\) on YouTube](#)

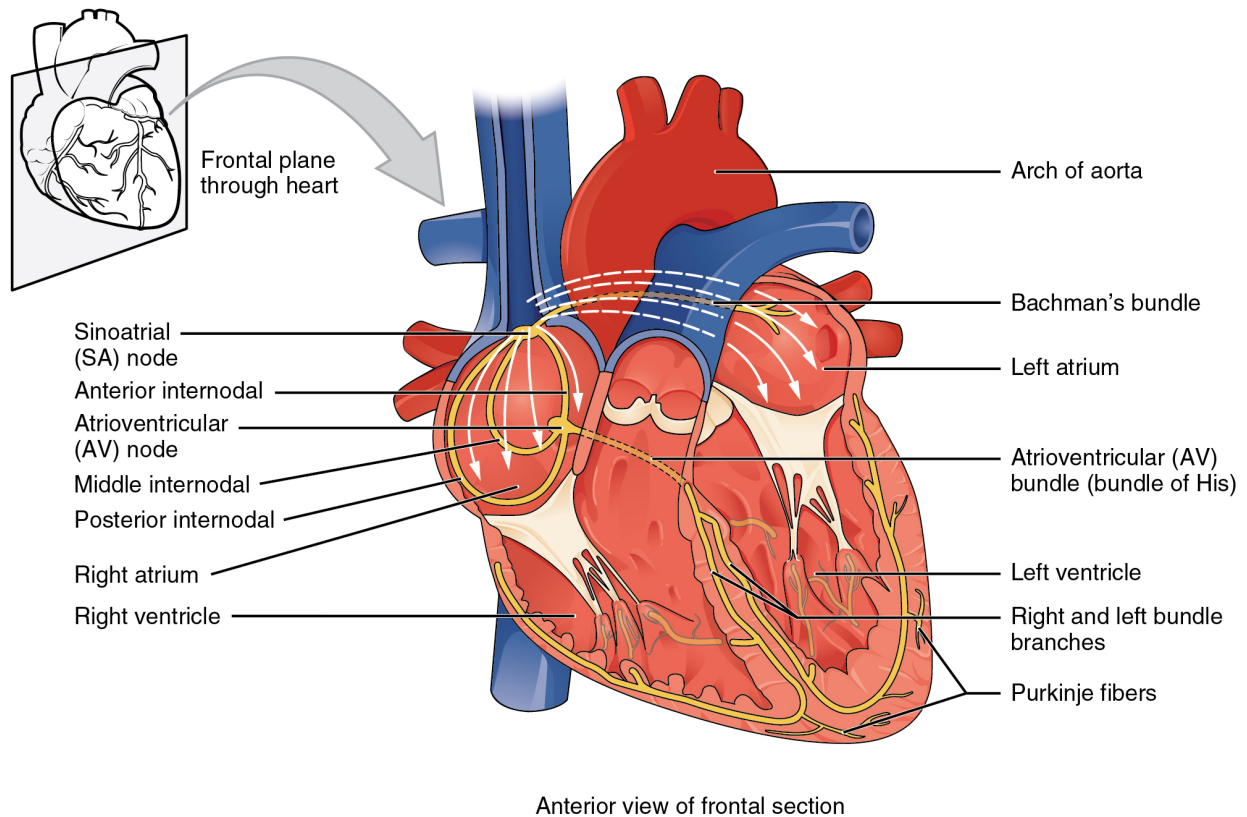


Figure 9.6. Conduction System of the Heart. Specialized conducting components of the heart include the sinoatrial node, the internodal pathways, the atrioventricular node, the atrioventricular bundle, the right and left bundle branches, and the Purkinje fibers. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 9.6 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check 4

- On the image ([Figure 9.6](#)) above, trace the electrical impulse generated by the heart's pacemaker (the **sinoatrial node**, or **SA node**) through the rest of the conduction system, including the **atrioventricular (AV) node**, the **atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His)**, the **right and left bundle branches**, and the **Purkinje fibers**.

We can detect and record the electrical activity of the heart's conduction system using an electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG). [Figure 9.7](#) shows the electrical impulse originating in the SA node (step 2) and travelling through the heart's conduction system, allowing the heart to complete one cardiac cycle. Each waveform on the ECG tracing represents electricity moving through and affecting a different part of the heart. Did you notice that the **AV valves** close when the electrical impulse reaches the ventricles, just before systole occurs?

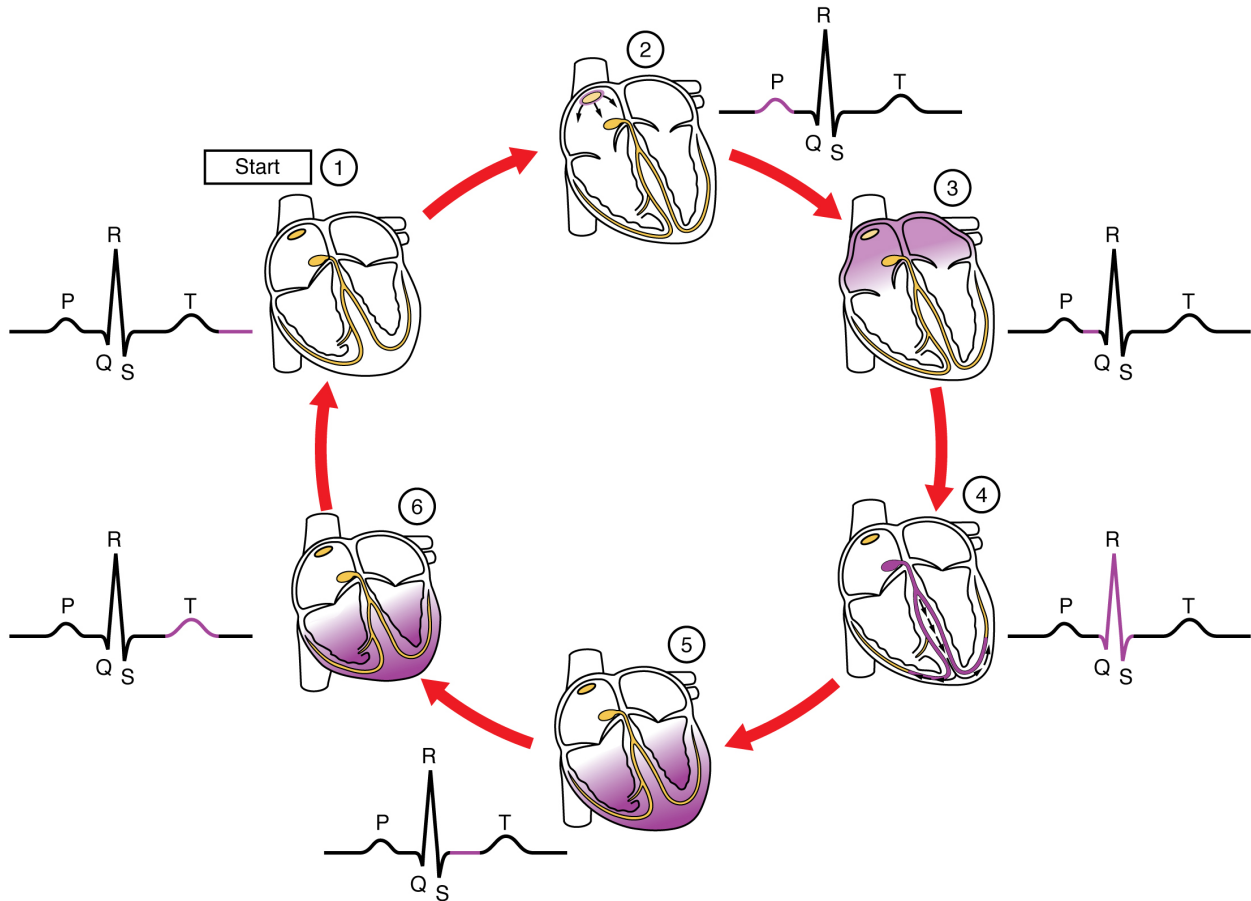


Figure 9.7. ECG Tracing Correlated to the Cardiac Cycle. This diagram correlates an ECG tracing with the electrical and mechanical events of a heart contraction. Each segment of an ECG tracing corresponds to one event in the cardiac cycle. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 9.7 Image description.](#)]

Heart Medical Terms and Abbreviations

Cardiovascular System – Heart Terms Not Easily Broken Down

Cardiovascular System – Heart Terms Not Easily Broken Down (Text Version)

Practice the following **cardiovascular system** words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **arrhythmia**
 - deviation in the normal pattern (rhythm) of a heartbeat
2. **congenital**
 - present at birth
3. **stethoscope**
 - An instrument used to hear heart and lung sounds
4. **aneurysm**
 - localized dilation of the wall of a blood vessel
5. **diastole**
 - Phase in the cardiac cycle where heart muscles relax allowing the chambers to fill with blood.
6. **bruit**
 - abnormal blowing, swishing heart sound heard on auscultation
7. **syncope**
 - brief lapse in consciousness (faint)
8. **auscultation**
 - listening to a patient's heart sounds
9. **occlude**
 - block or close tightly
10. **sphygmomanometer**

- instrument used to measure blood pressure
- 11. **diaphoresis**
 - profuse (excessive) sweating
- 12. **myocardial infarction (MI)**
 - heart attack, caused by lack of blood flow and oxygen to the heart
- 13. **systole**
 - Phase in cardiac cycle when ventricles contract and eject blood

Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Heart not easily broken down by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Heart Abbreviations

Many terms and phrases related to the cardiovascular system- heart are abbreviated. Learn these common abbreviations by expanding the list below.

Cardiovascular System – Heart Common Abbreviations

- **ACS** (acute coronary syndrome)
- **AFib** (atrial fibrillation)
- **AV** (atrioventricular)
- **BP** (blood pressure)
- **CABG** (coronary artery bypass graft)
- **CAD** (coronary artery disease)
- **CCU** (coronary care unit, cardiac care unit)
- **CPR** (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)
- **DVT** (deep vein thrombosis)
- **ECG, EKG** (electrocardiogram)
- **ECHO** (echocardiogram)
- **HF** (Heart Failure)
- **HHD** (hypertensive heart disease)
- **HTN** (hypertension)

- **IV** (intravenous)
- **MI** (Myocardial Infarction)
- **PAD** (peripheral artery disease)
- **PTCA** (percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty)
- **SPECT** (single-photon emission computed tomography)
- **TEE** (transesophageal echocardiogram)

Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Heart Common Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 9.3 image description: This diagram shows the network of blood vessels in the lungs. Labels read (from top, clockwise (left-side of the body): aortic arch, pulmonary trunk, left lung, left pulmonary arteries, left pulmonary vein, pulmonary capillaries, descending aorta, (right side of body) inferior vena cava, right pulmonary veins, right pulmonary arteries, right lung, superior vena cava, ascending aorta. [\[Return to Figure 9.3\]](#).

Figure 9.4 image description: The top panel shows the human heart with the arteries and veins labeled (from top, clockwise): aorta, left pulmonary arteries, pulmonary trunk, left atrium, left pulmonary veins, aortic semilunar valve, mitral valve, left ventricle, inferior vena cava, right ventricle, tricuspid valve, right atrium, pulmonary semilunar valve, right pulmonary veins, right pulmonary arteries, superior vena cava. The bottom panel shows a rough map of the the human circulatory system. Labels read (from top, clockwise): systemic capillaries of upper body, systemic arteries to upper body, pulmonary trunk, left atrium, left ventricle, systemic arteries to lower body, systemic capillaries of lower body, systemic veins from lower body, right ventricle, right atrium, pulmonary capillaries in lungs, systemic veins from upper body. [\[Return to Figure 9.4\]](#).

Figure 9.5 image description: The top panel of this figure shows the anterior view of the heart while the bottom panel shows the posterior view of the heart. The different blood vessels are labeled. Anterior view labels (from top of diagram, clockwise): left coronary artery, pulmonary trunk, circumflex artery, anterior interventricular artery, great cardiac vein, small cardiac vein, anterior cardiac veins, atrial arteries, right atrium, right coronary artery, ascending aorta, aortic arch. Posterior view labels (from top of diagram, clockwise): coronary sinus, small cardiac vein, right coronary artery, marginal artery, middle cardiac vein, posterior cardiac vein, posterior interventricular artery, marginal artery, great cardiac vein, circumflex artery. [\[Return to Figure 9.5\]](#).

Figure 9.6 image description: This image shows the anterior view of the frontal section of the heart with the major parts labeled. Labels read (from top of diagram, clockwise) arch of aorta, Bachman's bundle, atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His), left ventricle, right and left bundle branches, Purkinje fibers, right ventricle, right atrium, posterior intermodal, middle intermodal, atrioventricular node, anterior intermodal, Sinoatrial node. [\[Return to Figure 9.6\]](#).

Figure 9.7 image description: This diagram shows the six different stages of heart contraction and relaxation along with the stages in the QT cycle. [\[Return to Figure 9.7\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Heart](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Heart chapter content into sub-chapters.

9.4 - Heart Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Cardiomyopathy

The heart of a well-trained athlete can be considerably larger than the average person's heart. This is because exercise results in an increase in muscle cells called **hypertrophy**. Hearts of athletes can pump blood more effectively at lower rates than those of non-athletes. However, when an enlarged heart is not the result of exercise, it may be due to **hypertrophic cardiomyopathy**. The cause of an abnormally enlarged heart muscle is unknown, but the condition is often undiagnosed and can cause sudden death in apparently otherwise healthy young people (Betts et al., 2013).

Other types of cardiomyopathy include:

- **Dilated cardiomyopathy**, which also has an unknown cause and is seen in people of any age. In this disorder, one of the ventricles of the heart is larger than normal.
- **Arrhythmogenic cardiomyopathy**, an inherited condition which results in irregular heart rhythms.
- **Restrictive cardiomyopathy**, which is a complication of other conditions that cause the myocardium to scar or stiffen (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2023).

Cardiomyopathy may also be caused by myocardial infarctions, myocardial infections, pregnancy, alcohol or cocaine abuse, autoimmune and endocrine diseases. Because the myocardium is responsible for contracting and pumping blood, patients with cardiomyopathy experience impaired heart function which may lead to heart failure (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2023). To learn more about cardiomyopathy, visit the [CDC's cardiomyopathy web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Heart Failure

Heart failure is defined as the inability of the heart to pump enough blood to meet the needs of the body. It is also called **congestive heart failure (CHF)**. This condition causes swelling in the lower extremities and shortness of breath due to a buildup of fluid in the lungs. It may be caused by cardiomyopathy and it may lead to **hypertension** and heart valve disorders (Heart & Stroke, n.d.). To learn more, visit the [Heart & Stroke's congestive heart failure web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Valvular Heart Disease

The four heart valves open and close at specific times during the cardiac cycle in order to ensure that blood flows in only one direction through the heart. This requires that these valves open and close completely. Infections

such as rheumatic disease or bacterial endocarditis can affect the heart valves and result in scar tissue formation which interferes with valve function. Other causes of heart valve disease include: congenitally malformed valves, autoimmune diseases, and other cardiovascular diseases, such as aortic aneurysms and atherosclerosis (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

Concept check

Do you remember the **names** and **locations** of the 4 heart valves?

Heart valve disease may be asymptomatic or cause **dyspnea**, **arrhythmias**, fatigue, and other symptoms. It is often detected when a **heart murmur** is heard through a stethoscope (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

- **Mitral Valve Prolapse**

- The mitral (bicuspid) valve is diseased or malformed and is not able to close completely, allowing the regurgitation of blood back into the left atrium during systole. Because some of the blood goes back into the atrium, insufficient blood is pumped out of the ventricle into the systemic circulation. This inability to close properly and the resulting regurgitation may also be found in other heart valves (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

- **Aortic Stenosis**

- The aortic valve is narrowed and hardened, preventing it from opening fully and allowing sufficient blood to travel to the systemic circulation. Any heart valve can be stenosed, but this disorder most often affects the aortic valve (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

Visit the [CDC's page on valvular heart disease \[New Tab\]](#) to learn more.

Aneurysms

An aneurysm is a defect in the wall of an artery in which the wall becomes thin and weak and starts to balloon out as blood pulses against the vessel wall. This can happen to any artery and even to the myocardial walls. Aneurysms sometimes occur in the portion of the aorta that is in the thorax (see [Figure 9.8](#)). If these aneurysms start to leak between layers of the vessel wall, the condition is known as aortic dissection. If an aortic or cardiac aneurysm bursts, there is sudden, massive internal bleeding (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021).

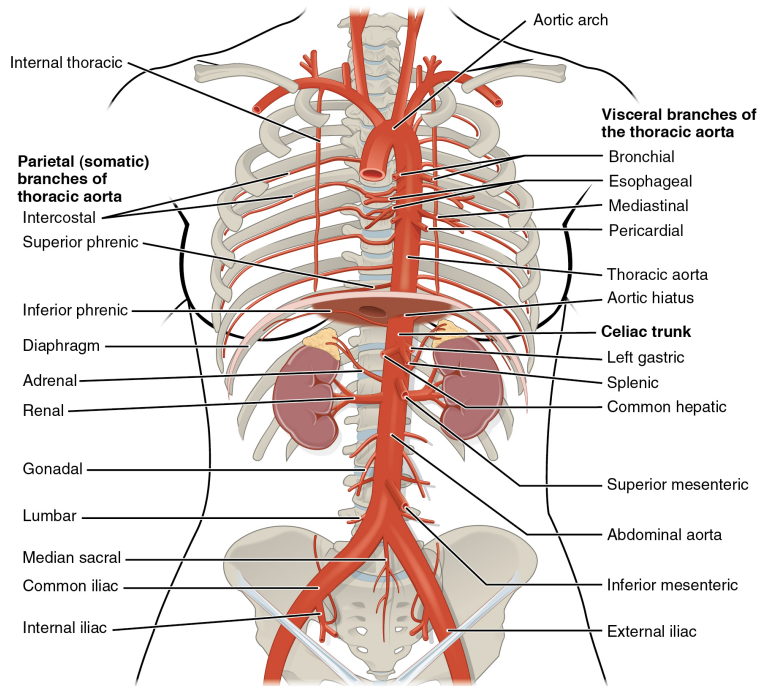


Figure 9.8. Arteries of the Thoracic and Abdominal Regions The thoracic aorta gives rise to the arteries of the visceral and parietal branches. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 9.8 Image description.]

People who smoke, have **hypertension**, **hypercholesterolemia**, and/or **atherosclerosis** have an increased risk of developing aneurysms. Having a family history of aneurysms or certain genetic diseases may also increase a person's risk of developing an aneurysm.

Aneurysms are often asymptomatic and may be detected incidentally during diagnostic tests that are being done for other reasons. They are sometimes repaired surgically and sometimes treated with medications such as **antihypertensives** (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021; Tittley, n.d.). Visit the [Canadian Society for Vascular Surgery's page on thoracic aortic aneurysms](#) [New Tab] to learn more.

Heart Defects

Fetal circulation is different from **postnatal** circulation. There are 2 extra openings in the fetal heart: the **foramen ovale** and the **ductus arteriosus**, which allow blood circulation that bypasses the immature fetal lungs. The fetal blood is reoxygenated by the mother's lungs and transported between mother and fetus via the placenta. These two openings usually close around the time of birth (Betts, et al., 2013).

Septal defects are commonly first detected through **auscultation**. Unusual heart sounds may be detected because blood is not flowing and valves are not closing correctly. Medical imaging is ordered to confirm or rule out a diagnosis. In many cases, treatment may not be needed.

- **Patent ductus arteriosus** is a congenital condition in which the ductus arteriosus fails to close. If untreated, the condition can result in congestive heart failure.
- **Patent foramen ovale** is one type of atrial septal defect (ASD) due to a failure of the hole in the **interatrial septum** to close at birth.
 - As much as 20 – 25 percent of the general population may have a patent foramen ovale; most have the benign, asymptomatic version, but in extreme cases, a surgical repair is required to close the opening permanently.
- **Tetralogy of Fallot** is a congenital condition that may also occur from exposure to unknown environmental factors; it occurs when there is an opening in the **interventricular septum** caused by blockage of the pulmonary trunk, normally at the pulmonary semilunar valve. This allows blood that is relatively low in oxygen from the right ventricle to flow into the left ventricle and mix with the blood that is relatively high in oxygen.
 - Symptoms include a distinct heart murmur, low blood oxygen percent saturation, **dyspnea**, **polycythemia**, **clubbing of the fingers and toes**, and in children, difficulty in feeding or failure to grow and develop.
 - It is the most common cause of **cyanosis** following birth. Other heart defects may also accompany this condition, which is typically confirmed by **echocardiography** imaging.
- In the case of severe septal defects, including both tetralogy of fallot and patent foramen ovale, failure of the heart to develop properly can lead to a condition commonly known as a **blue baby**. Regardless of normal skin pigmentation, individuals with this condition have an insufficient supply of oxygenated blood, which leads to **cyanosis**, especially when active (Betts et al., 2013).

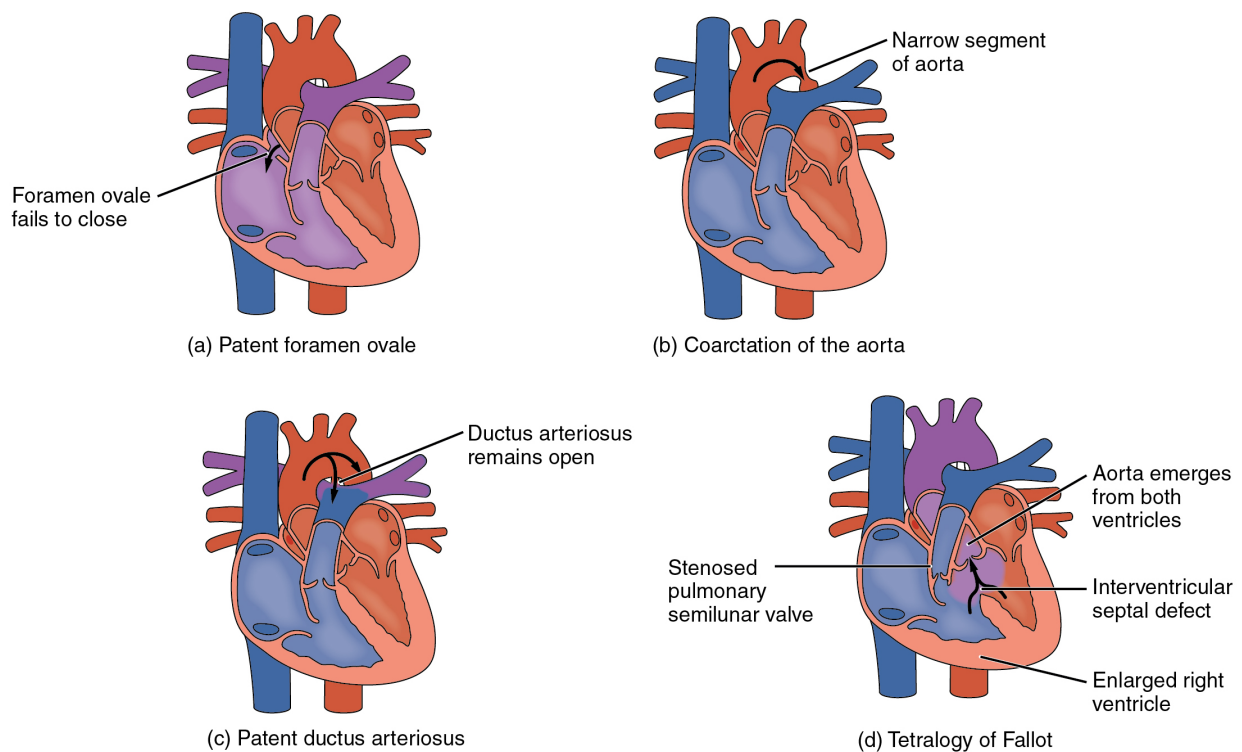


Figure 9.9. Congenital Heart Defects. (a) A patent foramen ovale defect is an abnormal opening in the interatrial septum, or more commonly, a failure of the foramen ovale to close. (b) Coarctation of the aorta is an abnormal narrowing of the aorta. (c) A patent ductus arteriosus is the failure of the ductus arteriosus to close. (d) Tetralogy of Fallot includes an abnormal opening in the interventricular septum. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 9.9 Image description.]

Diseases of the Coronary Circulation

Coronary Artery Disease (CAD)

Coronary artery disease occurs when the buildup of **plaque** in the coronary arteries obstructs the flow of blood and decreases **compliance** of the vessels. This condition is called **atherosclerosis**. As the disease progresses and coronary blood vessels become more and more narrow, cells of the myocardium become **ischemic**, which causes symptoms of **angina pectoris** in some patients. If untreated, coronary artery disease can lead to MI.

The image below shows the blockage of coronary arteries on an **angiogram** (Betts et al., 2013).

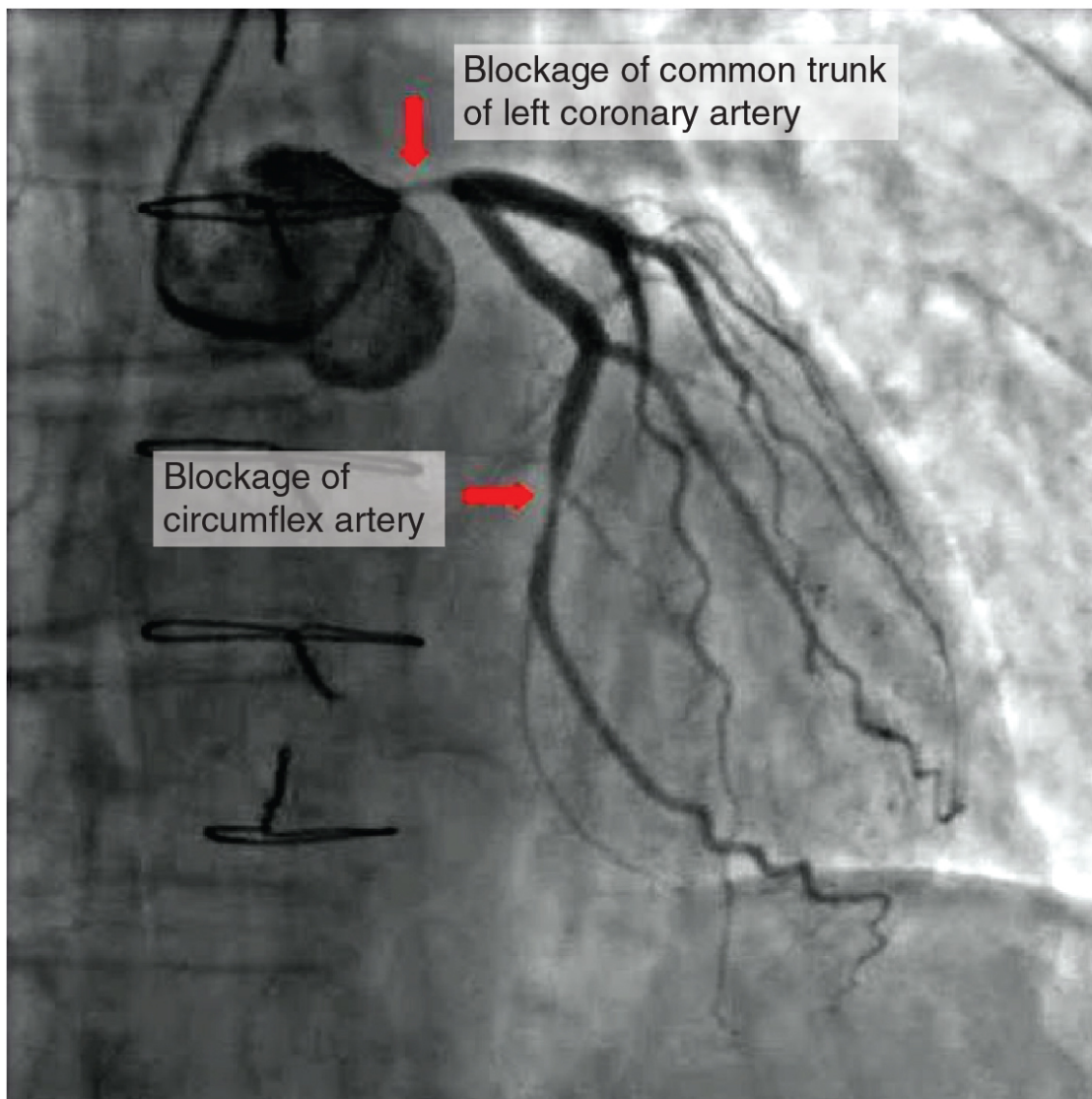


Figure 9.10. Angiogram of Atherosclerotic Coronary Arteries. In this coronary angiogram (X-ray), the dye makes visible two occluded coronary arteries. Such blockages can lead to decreased blood flow (ischemia) and insufficient oxygen (hypoxia) delivered to the cardiac tissues. If uncorrected, this can lead to cardiac muscle death (myocardial infarction). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

CAD is progressive and chronic. Risk factors include smoking, family history, **hypertension**, obesity, diabetes, high alcohol consumption, lack of exercise, stress, and **hyperlipidemia**. Treatments may include medication, changes to diet and exercise, angioplasty with a balloon catheter, insertion of a stent, or coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) (Betts et al., 2013).

- **Angioplasty** is a procedure in which the **occlusion** is mechanically widened with a balloon. A specialized catheter with an expandable tip is inserted into a blood vessel in the arm or leg, and then directed to the site of the occlusion. At this point, the balloon is inflated to compress the plaque material and to open the vessel to increase blood flow. Once the balloon is deflated and retracted, a stent consisting of a specialized mesh is typically inserted at the site of occlusion to reinforce the weakened and damaged walls and prevent re-occlusion.
- **Coronary bypass surgery (Coronary artery bypass graft CABG)** is a surgical procedure which grafts a replacement vessel obtained from another part of the body to bypass the occluded area (Betts et al., 2013).

Myocardial Infarction

Myocardial infarction (MI) is the medical term for a heart attack.

An MI normally results from a lack of blood flow to a region of the heart, resulting in death of the cardiac muscle cells. An MI often occurs when a coronary artery is blocked by the buildup of atherosclerotic plaque. It can also occur when a piece of an atherosclerotic plaque breaks off and travels through the coronary arterial system until it lodges in one of the smaller vessels. MIs may be triggered by excessive exercise, in which the partially occluded artery is no longer able to pump sufficient quantities of blood, or severe stress, which may induce spasm of the smooth muscle in the walls of the vessel (Betts et al., 2013).

Did You Know 1?

It is estimated that between 22 and 64 percent of myocardial infarctions are **silent MIs**.

In the case of **acute MI (AMI)**, there is often sudden pain beneath the sternum (retrosternal pain) called angina pectoris, often radiating down the left arm in males but not in female patients. Other common symptoms include **dyspnea**, **palpitations**, nausea and vomiting, **diaphoresis**, anxiety, and **syncope**. Many of the symptoms are shared with other medical conditions, including anxiety attacks and simple indigestion, so differential diagnosis is critical (Betts et al., 2013).

An MI can be confirmed by examining the patient's **ECG**.

Other diagnostic tests include:

- **echocardiography**
- **CT**
- **MRI**
- Common blood tests indicating an MI include elevated levels of **creatin kinase MB** and **cardiac troponin**, both of which are released by damaged cardiac muscle cells (Betts et al., 2013)

MIs may induce dangerous heart rhythms and even cardiac arrest. Important risk factors for MI include coronary artery disease, age, smoking, high blood levels of **LDL**, low levels of **HDL**, **hypertension**, **diabetes mellitus**, obesity, lack of physical exercise, chronic kidney disease, excessive alcohol consumption, and use of illegal drugs (Betts et al., 2013).

Diseases of the (Electrical) Conduction System

Arrhythmia

Did You Know 2?

Arrhythmia does *not* mean an absence of a heartbeat! That would be **asystole**, or flat line! Arrhythmia is defined as the absence of a *regular* rhythm, meaning that the heart rate is either too fast, too slow or just irregular.

The heart's natural pacemaker, the sinoatrial (SA) node, initiates an electrical impulse 60-90 times per minute in a resting adult. This impulse travels through the heart's conduction system in order to ensure a smooth, coordinated pumping action. This electrical activity can be detected and recorded through the skin using an **electrocardiograph**. **Arrhythmias** may occur when the SA node fails to initiate an impulse, or when the conduction system fails to transmit that impulse through the heart.

In the event that the electrical activity of the heart is severely disrupted, cessation of electrical activity or fibrillation may occur. In fibrillation, the heart beats in a wild, uncontrolled manner, which prevents it from being able to pump effectively.

- **Atrial fibrillation** is a serious condition, but as long as the ventricles continue to pump blood, the patient's life may not be in immediate danger.
- **Ventricular fibrillation** is a medical emergency that requires life support, because the ventricles are not effectively pumping blood. Left untreated, ventricular fibrillation may lead to brain death.

The most common treatment is **defibrillation**, which uses special paddles to apply a charge to the heart from an external electrical source in an attempt to establish a normal sinus rhythm. A defibrillator effectively stops the heart so that the SA node can trigger a normal conduction cycle. **External automated defibrillators (EADs)** are being placed in areas frequented by large numbers of people, such as schools, restaurants, and airports. These devices contain simple and direct verbal instructions that can be followed by non-medical personnel in an attempt to save a life (Betts et al., 2013).

Abnormal Heart Rates

Bradycardia is the condition in which resting adult heart rate drops below 60 bpm. A client exhibiting symptoms such as weakness, fatigue, dizziness, **syncope**, chest discomfort, palpitations or respiratory distress may indicate that the heart is not providing sufficient oxygenated blood to the tissues. If the patient is not exhibiting symptoms, then bradycardia is not considered clinically significant. The term **relative bradycardia** may be used with a patient who has a HR in the normal range but is still suffering from these symptoms. Most patients remain asymptomatic as long as the HR remains above 50 bpm.

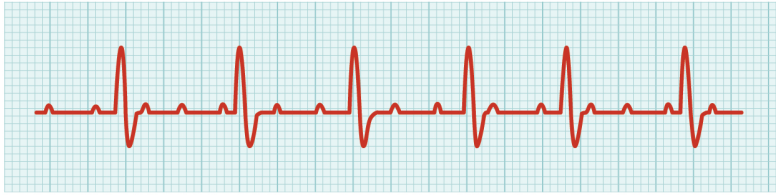
Tachycardia is the condition in which the resting rate is above 100 bpm. Tachycardia is not normal in a resting patient and may be detected in pregnant women or individuals experiencing extreme stress. Some individuals may remain **asymptomatic**, but when present, symptoms may include dizziness, shortness of breath, rapid pulse, heart palpitations, chest pain, or syncope. Treatment depends upon the underlying cause, but may include medications, **implantable cardioverter defibrillators**, **ablation**, or surgery (Betts et al., 2013).

Heart Block

A **heart block** refers to an interruption in the normal conduction pathway. Heart blocks are generally named after the part of the conduction system that is causing the problem. For example, bundle branch blocks occur within either the left or right atrioventricular bundle branches.

AV blocks are often described by degrees. A **first-degree or partial block** indicates a delay in conduction between the SA and AV nodes. A **second-degree or incomplete block** occurs when some impulses from the SA node reach the AV node and continue, while others do not. In the **third-degree or complete block**, there is no correlation between atrial activity and ventricular activity. This means that none of the impulses generated by the SA node get transmitted to the rest of the heart and the AV node must take over as the primary pacemaker, initiating contractions at 40–60 beats per minute, which is adequate to maintain consciousness.

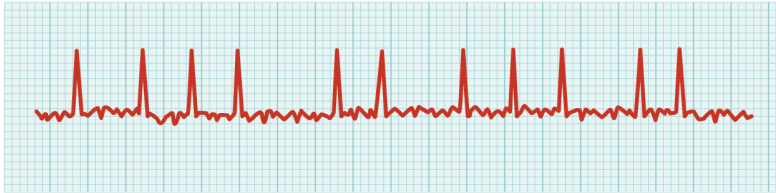
In order to speed up the heart rate and restore full **sinus rhythm**, a cardiologist can implant an **artificial pacemaker**, which delivers electrical impulses to the heart muscle to ensure that the heart continues to contract and pump blood effectively. These artificial pacemakers are programmable by the cardiologists and can either provide stimulation temporarily upon demand or on a continuous basis. Some devices also contain built-in defibrillators (Betts et al., 2013).



(a) Second-degree (partial) block

Note how half of the P waves are not followed by the QRS complex and T waves while the other half are.

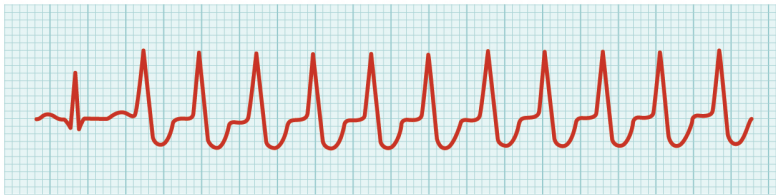
Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate (pulse)?



(b) Atrial fibrillation

Note the abnormal electrical pattern prior to the QRS complexes. Also note how the frequency between the QRS complexes has increased.

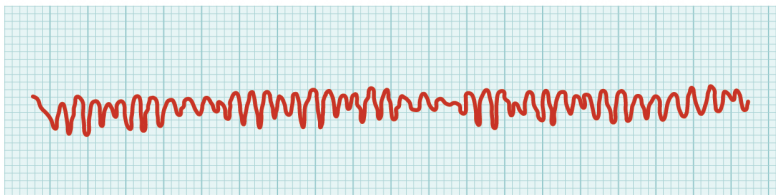
Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate (pulse)?



(c) Ventricular tachycardia

Note the unusual shape of the QRS complex, focusing on the "S" component.

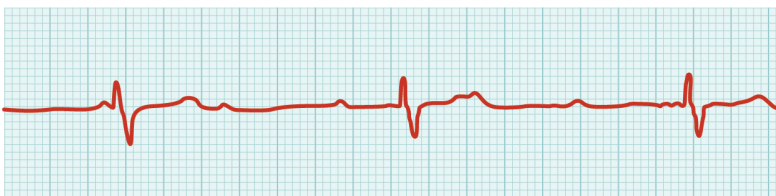
Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate (pulse)?



(d) Ventricular fibrillation

Note the total lack of normal electrical activity.

Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate (pulse)?



(e) Third-degree block

Note that in a third-degree block some of the impulses initiated by the SA node do not reach the AV node while others do. Also note that the P waves are not followed by the QRS complex.

Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate (pulse)?

Figure 9.11. Common ECG Abnormalities. (a) In a second-degree or partial block, one-half of the P waves are not followed by the QRS complex and T waves while the other half are. (b) In atrial fibrillation, the electrical pattern is abnormal prior to the QRS complex, and the frequency between the QRS complexes has increased. (c) In ventricular tachycardia, the shape of the QRS complex is abnormal. (d) In ventricular fibrillation, there is no normal electrical activity. (e) In a third-degree block, there is no correlation between atrial activity (the P wave) and ventricular activity (the QRS complex). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0. [Fig. 9.11 Image description.]

Cardiovascular System – Consultation Report

Cardiovascular System – Consultation Report (Text version)

Fill in the consultation report with the words listed below:

- shortness
- ECG
- implant
- embolism
- BP
- venous
- CBC and Diff
- hypercholesterolemia
- cardiovascular
- hypertension,
- WBC
- bradycardia
- intravenous

PATIENT NAME: Lorna GILBERT

AGE: 52

SEX: Female

DOB: February 27

DATE OF CONSULTATION: June 12

REQUESTING PHYSICIAN: Trevor Sharpe, MD, Family Medicine

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Kevin Palmer, MD, Cardiology

HISTORY: This 52-year-old female was referred to our cardiology clinic by her family physician Dr. Trevor Sharpe. She had visited her physician last month with complaints of persistent fatigue, dizziness, light-headedness, fainting, and an inability to exercise without experiencing _____[Blank 1] of breath. She claims that she is otherwise healthy; however, there is a history of _____[Blank 2] diseases in her family. Her father had developed DVT during a long flight and subsequently suffered from pulmonary _____[Blank 3]. Her mother had idiopathic intracranial _____[Blank 4] and died from MI at a relatively young age. The patient has 3 siblings, 2 of them suffering from hypertension and _____[Blank 5].

LABORATORY DATA: The laboratory results show normal _____[Blank 6]. Hemoglobin, Hct, _____[Blank 7] count, and platelet count are within normal range. The patient's PT and partial thromboplastin time are normal.

ALLERGIES: She is not allergic to any medications.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: Today the patient is alert and oriented but feels completely exhausted. She is also complaining of a mild chest pain. Her _____[Blank 8]- is 180/110. Heart rate is in the high 50s with irregular rate and rhythm. **NECK:** is supple, without jugular _____[Blank 9] distention or bruits. **LUNGS:** are clear, without wheezing, rhonchi, or rales.

IMPRESSION: I suspect the patient suffers from _____[Blank 10] and needs a pacemaker to regulate her heart rhythms. However, given the significant history of cardiovascular disorders in her family, I will order more tests before making a definite diagnosis.

PLAN: I will admit the patient to a telemetry bed and monitor her for 48 hours. If her chest pain worsens, she will be moved to CCU and will be treated with _____[Blank 11] nitroglycerin. An _____[Blank 12] has also been ordered to confirm bradycardia. If the ECG results confirm

my speculations, the patient will be scheduled for a pacemaker _____[Blank 13] as soon as possible.

Kevin Palmer, MD, Cardiology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Consultation Report by Seedah Akram & Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Heart

Cardiologists and Cardiovascular Surgeons

Cardiologists are medical doctors that specialize in diagnosing and treating heart disease non-invasively. Cardiovascular/thoracic surgeons provide surgical treatments for the heart and other thoracic organs (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). To learn more about these specialists, please visit the CMA's [Canadian Specialty Profiles web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Cardiology Technologists

Cardiology Technologists complete a college training program and perform diagnostic tests such as **electrocardiography**, stress testing, Holter monitor testing, ambulatory blood pressure testing, as well as **pacemaker** monitoring and programming (Canadian Society of Cardiology Technologists, n.d.). Please visit the [Canadian Society of Cardiology Technologists web page \[New Tab\]](#) for more information.

Cardiovascular Perfusionists

Cardiovascular perfusionists complete a college training program and are responsible for operation of the heart-lung bypass machine during open heart surgery. They also monitor the patient's vitals, administering IV

fluids, and other drugs (Michener Institute of Education, n.d.). Please visit the [Michener Institute's Cardiovascular Perfusion program page \[New Tab\]](#) for more information.

Image Descriptions

Figure 9.8 image description: This diagram shows the arteries in the thoracic and abdominal cavity. Visceral branches of the thoracic aorta labels (from top): bronchial, esophageal, mediastinal, pericardial, thoracic aorta, aortic hiatus, celiac trunk, left gastric, splenic, common hepatic, superior mesenteric, abdominal aorta, inferior mesenteric, external iliac. Parietal (somatic) branches of thoracic aorta labels (from top): intercostal, superior phrenic, inferior phrenic, diaphragm, adrenal, renal, gonadal, lumbar, medial sacral, common iliac, internal iliac. [\[Return to Figure 9.8\]](#).

Figure 9.9 image description: This diagram shows the structure of the heart with different congenital defects. The top left panel shows patent foramen ovale (label reads foramen ovale fails to close), the top right panel shows coarctation of the aorta (label reads narrow segment of aorta), the bottom left panel shows patent ductus arteriosus (label reads Ductus arteriosus remains open) and the bottom right shows tetralogy of fallot (labels read aorta emerges from both ventricles, interventricular septal defect, enlarged right ventricle, stenosed pulmonary semilunar valve). [\[Return to Figure 9.9\]](#).

Figure 9.11 image description: In this image the QT cycle for different heart conditions are shown. From top to bottom, the arrhythmias shown are second-degree partial block (text reads: Note how half of the P waves are not followed by the QRS complex and T waves while the other half are. Question: what would you expect to happen to heart rate?), atrial fibrillation (text reads: Note the abnormal electric pattern prior to the QRS complexes. Also note how the frequency between the QRS complexes has increased. Question: What t would you expect to happen to heart rate?), ventricular tachycardia (text reads: Note the unusual shape of the QRS complex, focusing on the S component. Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate?), ventricular fibrillation (text reads: Note the total lack of normal electrical activity. Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate?), and third degree block (text reads: Note that in a third-degree block some of the impulses initiated by the SA node do not reach the AV node while others do. Also note that the P waves are not followed by the QRS complex. Question: What would you expect to happen to heart rate?). [\[Return to Figure 9.11\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Heart](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Heart chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. shortness 2. cardiovascular 3. embolism 4. hypertension 5. hypercholesterolemia 6. CBC and Diff 7. WBC 8. BP 9. venous 10. bradycardia 11. intravenous 12. ECG 13. implant

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Cardiovascular System – Heart Vocabulary

5.25 liters of blood

The volume of blood ejected by the ventricle in one minute is called the cardiac output.

70 mL blood per contraction

The amount of blood ejected from the ventricle in one contraction is called the stroke volume.

Ablation

Using extreme heat or extreme cold to destroy cells in part of the heart which were causing abnormal rhythms.

Angina Pectoris

Chest pain.

Angiogram

An x-ray of the coronary blood vessels using a special catheter and an injection of dye.

Antihypertensives

Class of medications used to treat high blood pressure.

Arrhythmias

Absence of a regular heart rhythm.

Asymptomatic

Pertaining to without symptoms.

Atherosclerosis

A hardening of the arteries that involves the accumulation of plaque.

Auscultation

Listening to the heart using a stethoscope.

AV

Atrioventricular: the area of the heart where the atria and ventricles meet.

AV Valves

Atrioventricular valves: mitral (bicuspid) valve allows blood to flow from left atrium to left ventricle, tricuspid valve allows blood to flow from right atrium to right ventricle.

Bradycardia

Pertaining to a slow heart (rate).

Cardiac Troponin

The regulatory protein for muscle contraction.

Clubbing of the fingers and toes

Broadening of the nails and exaggerated curvature of the nails.

Compliance

The ability of the blood vessels to dilate and constrict as needed.

Congenital

Present at birth.

Creatine Kinase MB

An enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of creatine to phosphocreatine, consuming ATP.

CT

Computerized tomography: a special 3-dimensional x-ray, also called CAT=Computerized Axial Tomography.

Cyanosis

Abnormal condition of blue (bluish colour, lips and nail beds). Typically caused by low oxygenation.

Diabetes Mellitus

An endocrine system disorder in which the pancreas does not produce insulin or the cells of the body do not respond to insulin. This results in high levels of glucose in the blood.

Diaphoresis

Sweating.

Ductus Arteriosus

Connection between pulmonary trunk and aorta in the fetal heart.

Dyspnea

Difficult breathing.

ECG

ECG/EKG both these abbreviations mean electrocardiogram or a recording of the electrical impulses in the heart.

Echocardiography

Process of using sound to record the heart.

Electrocardiograph

Instrument used to record electrical activity within the heart.

Foramen Ovale

Opening between right and left atria, which is normal in the fetal heart.

Great Vessels

The great vessels include the superior vena cava, inferior vena cava, aorta and pulmonary trunk.

HDL

High-density lipoprotein, often referred to as 'good' cholesterol.

Heart Murmur

An abnormal heart sound.

Heart Rate

The number of times the heart contracts in one minute.

Hypercholesterolemia

Higher than normal levels of cholesterol in the blood.

Hyperlipidemia

Excessive fat in the blood.

Hypertension

High blood pressure.

Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators (ICD)

An electronic implant that provides an automatic shock to convert a dangerous heart rhythm to a normal heart rhythm.

Inferior Vena Cava

One of the two largest veins in the body. It carries deoxygenated blood from the torso and legs back to the heart.

Interatrial Septum

The wall separating the right and left atria.

Interventricular Septum

The wall of myocardium that separates the right and left ventricles.

Ischemic

Ischemia is a condition in which cells receive insufficient amounts of blood and oxygen.

LDL

Low-density lipoprotein, often referred to as 'bad' cholesterol.

Mitral Valve

Also known as the bicuspid valve.

MRI

Magnetic Resonance Imaging: Highly detailed images produced using a strong magnet and radio waves.

Pacemaker

An electronic implant that initiates a heart beat.

Palpitations

A feeling in the chest that may be caused by an irregular heart rhythm.

Pericardial fluid

Pericardial fluid is a serous fluid which allow the 2 layers of serous pericardium to slide smoothly against each other as the heart beats.

Plaque

A fatty material including cholesterol, connective tissue, white blood cells, and some smooth muscle cells.

Polycythemia

A disorder in which too many red blood cells are produced.

Pulmonary Trunk

Very large artery referred to as a trunk, a term indicating that the vessel gives rise to several smaller arteries.

Roots of the Great Vessels

The part of each great vessel (aorta, pulmonary trunk, inferior vena cava, superior vena cava) that connects to the base of the heart.

Serous

You may recall that serous membranes throughout the body are folded back on themselves, which results in a double-layered membrane separated by serous fluid. The serous membrane surrounding the lungs is called pleura. The serous membrane surrounding the abdominopelvic organs is called peritoneum.

Silent Mis

A myocardial infarction without symptoms. The patient may not know that they are having an MI.

Sinus Rhythm

This is the rhythm set by the heart's pacemaker, the sinoatrial node and is usually approximately 60–90 beats per minute in a resting adult.

Superior Vena Cava

One of the two largest veins in the body. It carries deoxygenated blood from the head and upper extremities back to the heart.

Syncope

Fainting.

Tachycardia

Condition of a fast heart (rate).

Cardiovascular System – Heart Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Cardiovascular System – Heart Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. _____[Blank 1] is the ability of the blood vessels to dilate and constrict as needed.
 - a. Compliance
 - b. LDL
 - c. Syncope
2. A disorder in which too many red blood cells are produced is called _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Mitral valve
 - b. Polycythemia
 - c. Great vessels
3. _____[Blank 3] is difficult breathing.
 - a. Dyspnea
 - b. Pacemaker
 - c. Roots of the Great Vessels
4. A condition in which cells receive insufficient amounts of blood and oxygen is called

_____ [Blank 4].

- a. Diaphoresis
 - b. Ischemic
 - c. Serous
5. Using extreme heat or extreme cold to destroy cells in part of the heart which were causing abnormal rhythms is called _____ [Blank 5].
- a. Congenital
 - b. Ablation
 - c. Cyanosis

Check your Answers:¹

Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Heart Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Heart](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Heart chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Compliance, 2. Polycythemia, 3. Dyspnea, 4. Ischemic, 5. Ablation

References

- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Canadian specialty profiles*. <https://www.cma.ca/canadian-specialty-profiles>
- Canadian Society of Cardiology Technologists. (n.d.). *Becoming a registered cardiology technologist*. <https://www.csct.ca/education/about-being-rct>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2019, December 9). *Valvular heart disease*. CDC. https://www.cdc.gov/heartdisease/valvular_disease.htm
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2021, September 27). *Aortic aneurysm*. CDC. https://www.cdc.gov/heartdisease/aortic_aneurysm.htm
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2023, February 21). *Cardiomyopathy*. CDC. <https://www.cdc.gov/heartdisease/cardiomyopathy.htm>
- CrashCourse. (2015, July 6). *The heart, part 1 – Under pressure: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #25* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/X9ZZ6tcxArl>
- CrashCourse. (2015, July 13). *The heart, part 2 – Heart throbs: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #26* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/FLBMwcvOaEo>
- Heart & Stroke. (n.d.). *Heart failure*. Heart and Stroke Foundation. <https://www.heartandstroke.ca/heart/conditions/heart-failure>
- Mitchener Institute for Education. (n.d.). *Cardiovascular perfusion*. Michener Institute of Education at UHN. <https://michener.ca/program/cardiovascular-perfusion/>
- Tittley, J. G. (n.d.). *Thoracic aortic aneurysms (TAA)*. Retrieved from Canadian Society for Vascular Surgery: [https://canadianvascular.ca/Thoracic-Aortic-Aneurysms-\(TAA\)](https://canadianvascular.ca/Thoracic-Aortic-Aneurysms-(TAA))

CHAPTER 10: CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM - BLOOD VESSELS AND BLOOD

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [10.1 – Introduction to the Blood Vessels and Blood](#)
- [10.2 – Anatomy of the Blood Vessels](#)
- [10.3 – Physiology of the Blood & Blood Vessels](#)
- [10.4 – Blood Vessels Diseases, Disorders, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

10.1 - Introduction to the Blood Vessels and Blood

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of blood vessels and the composition of blood
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of blood vessels and the blood system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of blood vessel and blood system medical terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the blood vessels and blood and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic test and procedures

Blood Vessels and Blood Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the cardiovascular system – blood.

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **pan-** (all, total)
- **epi-** (on, upon, over)
- **inter-** (between)
- **peri-** (surrounding, around)
- **endo-** (within, in)
- **hypo-** (below, deficient)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **poly-** (many, much)

Combining Form

- **angi/o** (vessel, blood vessel)
- **aort/o** (aorta)
- **arteri/o** (artery)
- **ather/o** (fatty plaque)
- **cyt/o** (cell)
- **hemat/o** (blood)
- **hem/o** (blood)
- **isch/o** (deficiency, blockage)
- **lymph/o** (lymph, lymph tissue)
- **lymphaden/o** (lymph node, lymph tissue)
- **myel/o** (bone marrow, spinal cord)
- **phleb/o** (vein)
- **plasm/o** (plasma)
- **therm/o** (heat)
- **thromb/o** (clot)
- **thym/o** (thymus gland)
- **splen/o** (spleen)
- **ven/o** (vein)

Suffix

- **-ac** (pertaining to)
- **-apheresis** (removal)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-centesis** (surgical puncture to aspirate fluid)
- **-ectomy** (excision, surgical removal)
- **-emia** (in the blood)
- **-genic** (producing, originating, causing)
- **-gram** (record, radiographic image)
- **-graph** (instrument used to record)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-ia** (condition of, diseased state, abnormal state)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (specialty)
- **-lysis** (loosening, dissolution, separating)
- **-megaly** (enlarged, enlargement)
- **-logist** (specialist, physician who studies and treats)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition)
- **-tomy** (cut into, incision)
- **-ous** (pertaining to)

- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-penia** (abnormal reduction in number)
- **-pexy** (surgical fixation, suspension)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-poiesis** (formation)
- **-sclerosis** (hardening)
- **-stenosis** (narrowing, constriction)
- **-scope** (instrument used to view)
- **-scopy** (process of viewing)
- **-stasis** (stop, stopping, controlling)
- **-stenosis** (narrowing, constriction)

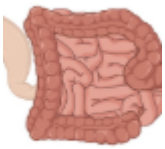
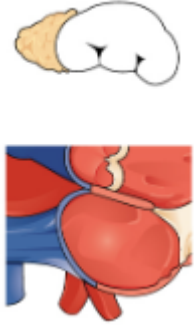
Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Blood Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#).
/Text version added.

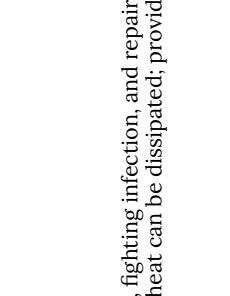
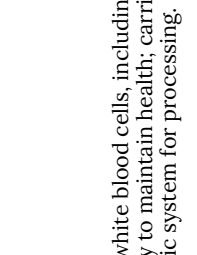
Introduction to the Blood Vessels and Blood

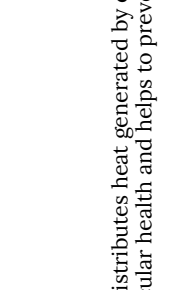
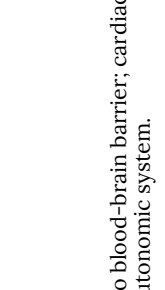
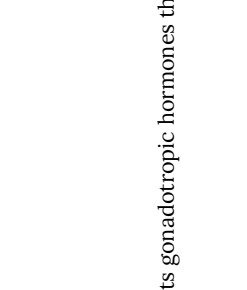
Our large, complex bodies need blood to deliver nutrients to and remove wastes from our trillions of cells. The heart, as discussed in the previous chapter, pumps blood throughout the body in a network of blood vessels. Together, these three components—blood, heart, and vessels—make up the cardiovascular system.

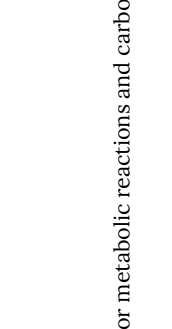
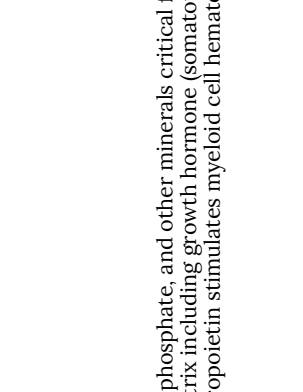
Virtually every cell, tissue, organ, and system in the body is impacted by the circulatory system. This includes the generalized and more specialized functions of transport of materials, capillary exchange, maintaining health by transporting white blood cells and various immunoglobulins (antibodies), hemostasis, regulation of body temperature, and helping to maintain **acid-base** balance. [Table 10.1](#) summarizes the important relationships between the circulatory system and the other body systems.

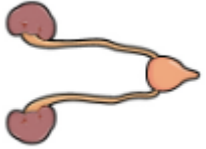
Table 10.1 Interaction of the Circulatory System with Other Body Systems. A table depicting the various body systems and the role of the circulatory system in each.
 Adapted from Betts, et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

System	Role of Circulatory System
<p>Digestive</p>  <p>Digestive System</p>	<p>Absorbs nutrients and water; delivers nutrients (except most lipids) to liver for processing by hepatic portal vein; provides nutrients essential for hematopoiesis and building hemoglobin.</p>
<p>Endocrine</p>  <p>Endocrine System</p>	<p>Delivers hormones: atrial natriuretic hormone (peptide) secreted by the heart; atrial cells to help regulate blood volumes and pressures; epinephrine, ANH, angiotensin II, ADH, and thyroxine to help regulate blood pressure; estrogen to promote vascular health in women and men.</p>

System	Role of Circulatory System
<p>Integumentary</p>  <p>Integumentary System</p>	<p>Carries clotting factors, platelets, and white blood cells for hemostasis, fighting infection, and repairing damage; regulates temperature by controlling blood flow to the surface, where heat can be dissipated; provides some coloration of integument; acts as a blood reservoir.</p>
<p>Lymphatic</p>  <p>Lymphatic System</p>	<p>Transports various white blood cells, including those produced by lymphatic tissue, and immunoglobulins (antibodies) throughout the body to maintain health; carries excess tissue fluid not able to be reabsorbed by the vascular capillaries back to the lymphatic system for processing.</p>

System	Role of Circulatory System
<p>Muscular</p>  <p>Muscular System</p>	<p>Provides nutrients and oxygen for contraction; removes lactic acid and distributes heat generated by contraction; muscular pumps aid in venous return; exercise contributes to cardiovascular health and helps to prevent atherosclerosis.</p>
<p>Nervous</p>  <p>Nervous System</p>	<p>Produces cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) within choroid plexuses; contributes to blood-brain barrier; cardiac and vasomotor centers regulate cardiac output and blood flow through vessels via the autonomic system.</p>
<p>Reproductive</p>  <p>Reproductive System</p>	<p>Aids in erection of genitalia in both sexes during sexual arousal; transports gonadotropic hormones that regulate reproductive functions.</p>

System	Role of Circulatory System
<p>Respiratory</p>  <p>Respiratory System</p>	<p>Provides blood for critical exchange of gases to carry oxygen needed for metabolic reactions and carbon dioxide generated as byproducts of these processes.</p>
<p>Skeletal</p>  <p>Skeletal System</p>	<p>Provides calcium, phosphate, and other minerals critical for bone matrix; transports hormones regulating buildup and absorption of matrix including growth hormone (somatotropin), thyroid hormone, calcitronins, and parathyroid hormones; erythropoietin stimulates myeloid cell hematopoiesis; some level of protection for select vessels by bony structures.</p>

System	Role of Circulatory System
<p>Urinary</p>  <p>Urinary System</p>	<p>Delivers 20% of resting circulation to kidneys for filtering, reabsorption of useful products, and secretion of excesses; regulates blood volume and pressure by regulating fluid loss in the form of urine and by releasing the enzyme renin that is essential in the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism.</p>

Watch [Blood Vessels, Part 1 – Form and Function: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #27 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood Medical Terms

Cardiovascular System – Blood, medical terms (Text Version)

Practice the following cardiovascular system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **angioscope (angi/o/scope)**
 - Instrument used for visual examination of blood vessels
2. **arteriogram(arteri/o/gram)**
 - radiographic image of an artery
3. **phlebectomy(phleb/ectomy)**
 - excision of a vein
4. **hemolysis(hem/o/lysis)**
 - dissolution of (red) blood (cells)
5. **multiple myeloma(multiple myel/oma)**
 - tumours of the bone marrow
6. **lymphoma (lymph/oma)**
 - tumour of lymphatic tissue (malignant)
7. **thrombocytopenia(thromb/o/cyt/o/penia)**
 - abnormal reduction of (blood) clotting cells
8. **polyarteritis (poly/arter/itis)**
 - Inflammation of many (sites in the) arteries
9. **angiосcopy(angi/o/scopy)**
 - visual examination of blood vessels
10. **intravenous (IV) (intra/ven/ous)**

- pertaining to within a vein
- 11. **thrombophlebitis (thromb/o/phleb/itis)**
 - inflammation of a vein associated with a (blood) clot
- 12. **pancytopenia (pan/cyt/o/penia)**
 - abnormal reduction of (all) blood cells
- 13. **plasmapheresis (plasm/apheresis)**
 - removal of plasma
- 14. **hematopoiesis (hemat/o/poiesis)**
 - formation of blood (cells)
- 15. **lymphadenopathy (lymphaden/o/pathy)**
 - disease of lymph nodes
- 16. **thrombosis(thromb/osis)**
 - abnormal condition of (blood) clot
- 17. **venogram (ven/o/gram)**
 - radiographic image of a vein
- 18. **hematology (hemat/o/logy)**
 - study of blood
- 19. **aortic stenosis (aort/ic stenosis)**
 - narrowing, pertaining to the aorta
- 20. **angioplasty (angi/o/plasty)**
 - surgical repair of a blood vessel
- 21. **aortogram (aort/o/gram)**
 - Radiographic image of the aorta
- 22. **splenomegaly (splen/o/megaly)**
 - enlarged spleen
- 23. **thrombolysis (thromb/o/lysis)**
 - dissolution of a (blood) clot

24. **splenopexy (splen/o/pexy)**
 - surgical fixation of the spleen
25. **endarterectomy(end/arter/ectomy)**
 - Rebel does not follow the rules
 - Excision within the artery
26. **hypothermia (hypo/therm/ia)**
 - condition of (body) temperature that is below (normal)
27. **thrombus (thromb/us)**
 - (blood) clot (attached to the interior wall of artery or vein)
28. **hematologist (hemat/o/logist)**
 - Physician who specializes and treats blood disorders
29. **thymoma (thym/oma)**
 - tumour of the thymus gland
30. **hematoma (hemat/oma)**
 - tumour composed of blood
31. **arteriosclerosis (arteri/o/sclerosis)**
 - hardening of the arteries
 - hardening of fatty plaque (on arterial wall)
32. **thymectomy (thym/ectomy)**
 - excision of the thymus gland
33. **angioma (angi/oma)**
 - tumour composed of blood vessels
34. **atherosclerosis (ather/o/sclerosis)**
 - hardening of fatty plaque
35. **lymphadenitis (lymphaden/itis)**
 - inflammation of lymph nodes
36. **myelopoiesis (myel/o/poiesis)**
 - formation of bone marrow

37. **angiography(angi/o/graphy)**
 - radiographic imaging of blood vessels
38. **angiostenosis (angi/o/stenosis)**
 - narrowing of a blood vessel
39. **hemostasis (hem/o/stasis)**
 - stoppage of bleeding
40. **leukocytopenia (leuk/o/cyt/o/penia)**
 - abnormal reduction of white (blood) cells
41. **splenectomy (splen/ectomy)**
 - Excision of the spleen
42. **phlebotomy (phleb/o/tomy)**
 - incision into a vein
43. **phlebitis(phleb/itis)**
 - inflammation of a vein
44. **erythrocytopenia (erythr/o/cyt/o/penia)**
 - abnormal reduction of red (blood) cells
45. **atherectomy (ather/ectomy)**
 - Excision of fatty plaque

Activity source: “Cardiovascular System – Blood, medical terms” by Kimberlee Carter, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#) from “[Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to Text.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood chapter content into sub-chapters.

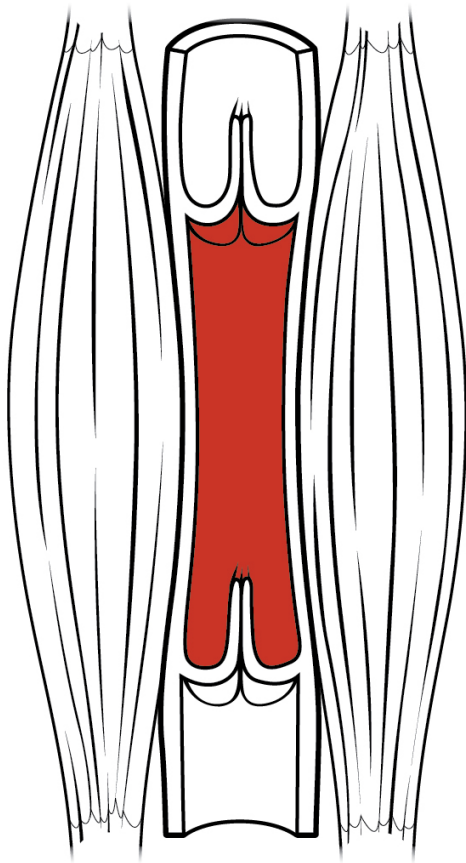
10.2 - Anatomy of the Blood Vessels

Blood pumped by the heart flows through a series of vessels known as arteries, arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins before returning to the heart.

Overview of Blood Vessels

- **Arteries** transport blood away from the heart and branch into smaller vessels, forming arterioles.
- **Arterioles** distribute blood to capillary beds, the sites of exchange with the body tissues.
- A **capillary** is a microscopic channel that supplies blood to the tissues themselves, a process called **perfusion**.
 - Exchange of gases and other substances occurs in the capillaries between the blood and the surrounding cells and their tissue fluid (interstitial fluid).
 - For capillaries to function, their walls must be leaky, allowing substances to pass through.
 - Capillaries lead back to small vessels known as **venules**.
- **Venules** are small **veins** that converge into larger veins.
- A **vein** is a blood vessel that conducts blood toward the heart.
 - Compared to arteries, veins are thin-walled vessels with large and irregular lumens.
 - Larger veins are commonly equipped with valves that promote the unidirectional flow of blood toward the heart and prevent backflow toward the capillaries caused by the inherent low blood pressure in veins as well as the pull of gravity.
 - Other ways in which the body assists the transport of venous blood back to the heart involve contractions of skeletal muscles in the extremities (see figure below), as well as pressure variations caused by breathing motion in the chest.

Muscles relaxed,
valves closed



Muscles contracted,
valve above muscle opens

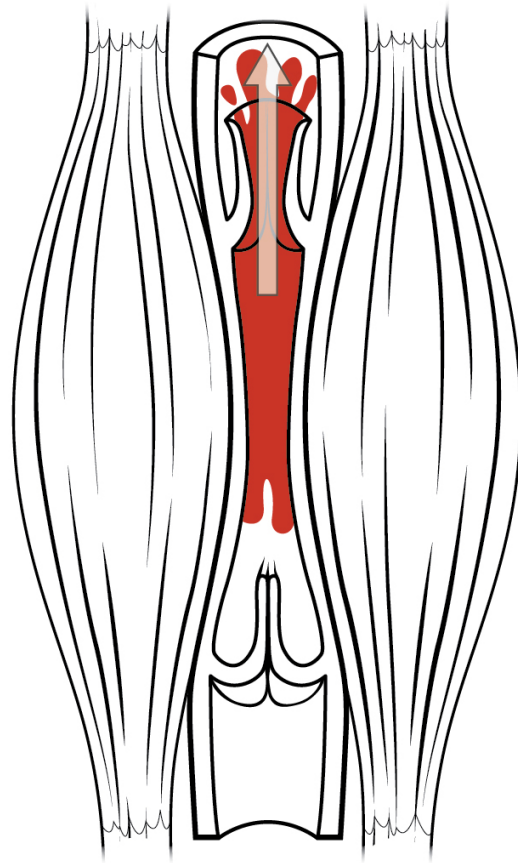
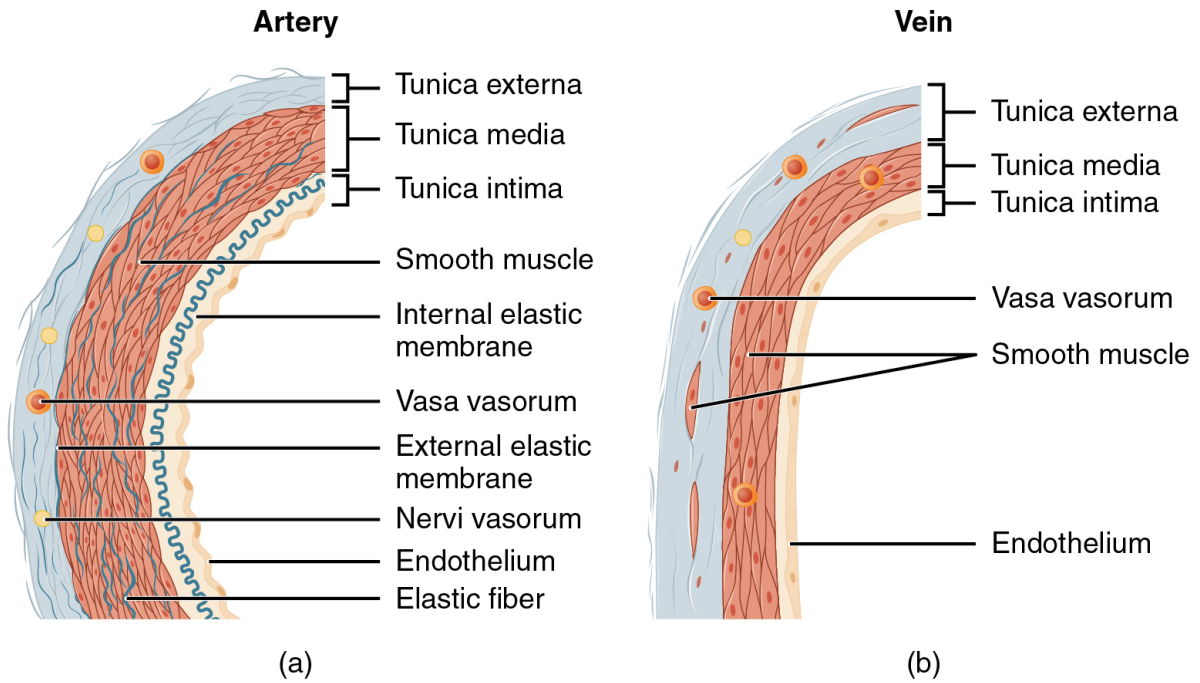


Figure 10.1 Skeletal Muscle Pump. The contraction of skeletal muscles surrounding a vein compresses the blood and increases the pressure in that area. This action forces blood closer to the heart where venous pressure is lower. Note the importance of the one-way valves to assure that blood flows only in the proper direction. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 10.1 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check 1

- Select the correct bolded word: arteries always carry blood **away from/towards** the heart.
- Select the correct bolded word: veins always carry blood **away from/towards** the heart.

Both arteries and veins have the same three distinct tissue layers, called **tunics**, for the garments first worn by ancient Romans. From the most interior layer to the outer, these tunics are the **tunica intima**, the **tunica media**, and the **tunica externa**. The smooth muscle in the middle layer, the tunica media, provides the vessel with the ability to **vasoconstrict** and **vasodilate** as needed to ensure sufficient blood flow.



(c)

Figure 10.2 Structure of Blood Vessels. (a) Arteries and (b) veins share the same general features, but the walls of arteries are much thicker because of the higher pressure of the blood that flows through them. (c) A micrograph shows the relative

differences in thickness. LM × 160. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School © 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 10.2 Image description.](#)]

The table below compares the features of arteries and veins.

Table 10.2. Comparison of Arteries and Veins. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Characteristic	Arteries	Veins
Direction of blood flow	Conducts blood away from the heart	Conducts blood toward the heart
General appearance	Rounded	Irregular, often collapsed
Pressure	High	Low
Wall thickness	Thick	Thin
Relative oxygen concentration	Higher in systemic arteries	Lower in systemic veins
	Lower in pulmonary arteries	Higher in pulmonary veins
Valves	Not present	Present most commonly in limbs and in veins inferior to the heart

The Major Arteries and Veins in the Human Body

Many arteries and veins share the same names, parallel one another throughout the body, and are very similar on the right and left sides of the body. For example, you will find a pair of **femoral** arteries and a pair of femoral veins, with one vessel on each side of the body. In contrast, some vessels closer to the midline of the body, such as the aorta, are unique and not paired. Names of vessels may change with location. Like a street that changes name as it passes through an intersection, an artery or vein can change names as it passes an anatomical landmark. For example, the left **subclavian** artery becomes the **axillary** artery as it passes into the axillary region, and then becomes the **brachial** artery as it enters the upper arm. The next two diagrams illustrate the major arteries and veins in the human body.

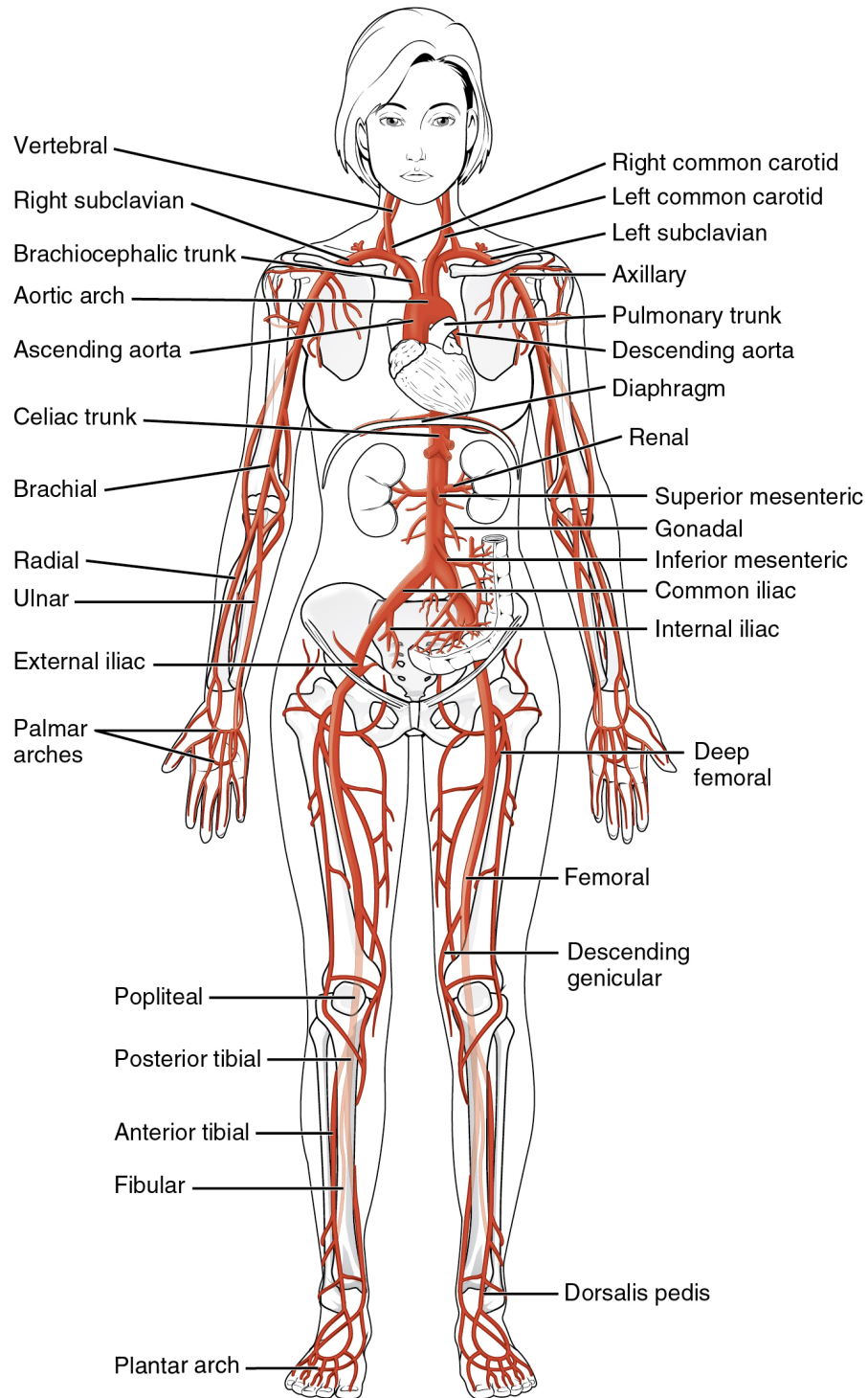


Figure 10.3 Systemic Arteries. The major systemic arteries shown here deliver oxygenated blood throughout the body. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 10.3 Image description.](#)]

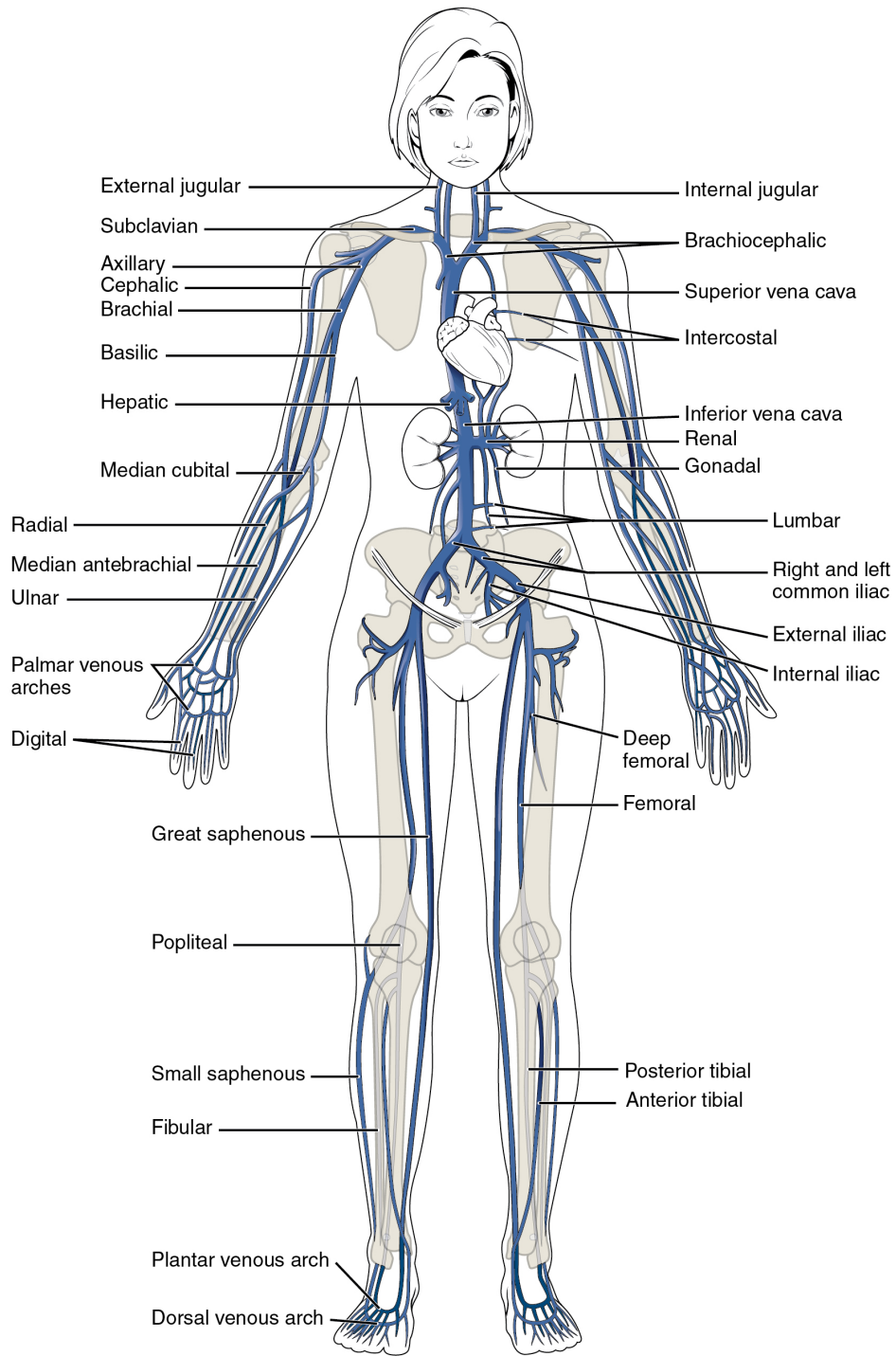


Figure 10.4 Major Systemic Veins of the Body. The major systemic veins of the body are shown here in an anterior view. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 10.4 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check 2

- Without looking back at the images of the main arteries and veins of the body, can you **name** and **locate** 3 arteries and 3 veins in your body?

Image Descriptions

Figure 10.1 image description: The left panel shows the structure of a skeletal muscle vein pump when the muscle is relaxed, and the right panel shows the structure of a skeletal muscle vein pump when the muscle is contracted. [\[Return to Figure 10.1\]](#).

Figure 10.2 image description: The top left panel of this figure shows the ultrastructure of an artery (labels read from top: tunica externa, tunica media, tunica intima, smooth muscle, internal elastic membrane, vasa vasorum, external elastic membrane, nervi vasorum, endothelium, elastic fiber), and the top right panel shows the ultrastructure of a vein (labels read from top: tunica externa, tunica media, tunica intima, vasa vasorum, smooth muscle, endothelium). The bottom panel shows a micrograph with the cross sections of an artery and a vein. [\[Return to Figure 10.2\]](#).

Figure 10.3 image description: The major arteries in the human body. Labels read (from top, clockwise) right common carotid, left common carotid, axillary, pulmonary trunk, descending aorta, diaphragm, renal, superior mesenteric, gonadal, inferior mesenteric, common iliac, internal iliac, deep femoral, femoral, descending genicular, dorsalis pedis, plantar arch, fibular, anterior tibial, posterior tibial, popliteal, palmar arches, external iliac, ulnar, radial, brachial, celiac trunk, ascending aorta, aortic arch, brachiocephalic trunk, right subclavian, vertebral. [\[Return to Figure 10.3\]](#).

Figure 10.4 image description: The major veins in the human body. Labels read (from top, clockwise) internal jugular, brachiocephalic, superior vena cava, intercostal, inferior vena cava, gonadal, lumbar, right and left common iliac, external iliac, internal iliac, deep femoral, femoral, posterior tibial, anterior tibial, dorsal venous arch, plantar venous arch, fibular, small saphenous, popliteal, great saphenous, digital, palmar venous arches, ulnar, median antebrachial, medial cubital, hepatic, basilic, brachial, cephalic, axillary, subclavian, externa jugular. [\[Return to Figure 10.4\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood chapter content into sub-chapters.

10.3 - Physiology of the Blood & Blood Vessels

Physiology of the Blood Vessels

Arteries and veins transport blood in two distinct circuits: the **systemic circuit** and the **pulmonary circuit**. Systemic arteries provide blood rich in oxygen to the body's tissues. The blood returned to the heart through systemic veins has less oxygen, since much of the oxygen carried by the arteries has been delivered to the cells. In contrast, in the pulmonary circuit, arteries carry blood low in oxygen exclusively to the lungs for gas exchange. Pulmonary veins then return freshly oxygenated blood from the lungs to the heart to be pumped back out into systemic circulation.

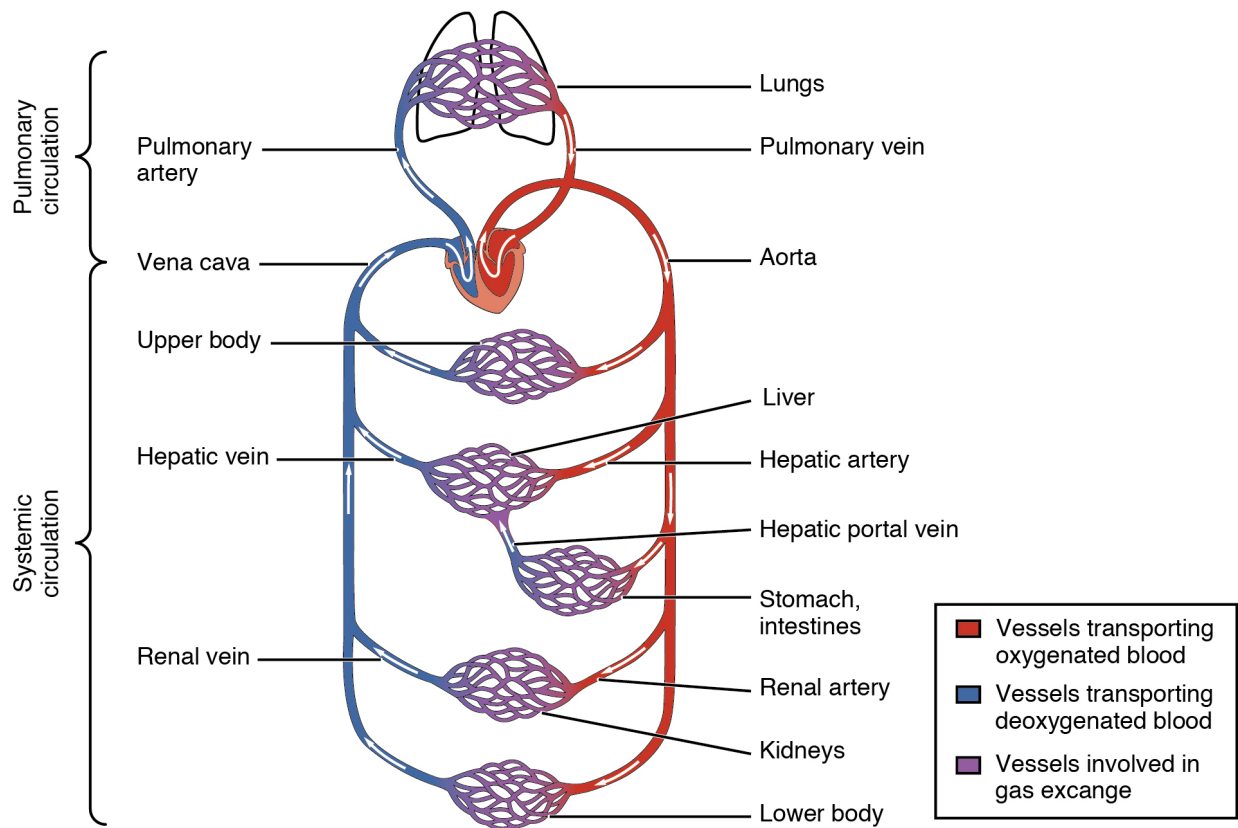


Figure 10.5 Cardiovascular Circulation. The pulmonary circuit moves blood from the right side of the heart to the lungs and back to the heart. The systemic circuit moves blood from the left side of the heart to the head and body and returns it to the right side of the heart to repeat the cycle. The arrows indicate the direction of blood flow, and the colors show the relative levels of oxygen concentration. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 10.5 Image description.]

Blood Pressure

Blood pressure is the force exerted by blood upon the walls of the blood vessels or the chambers of the heart.

Blood pressure may be measured in capillaries and veins, as well as the vessels of the pulmonary circulation; however, the general term 'blood pressure' refers to the pressure of blood flowing in the arteries of the systemic circulation. Blood pressure is one of the critical parameters measured on virtually every patient in every healthcare setting. The technique used today was developed more than 100 years ago by a pioneering Russian physician, Dr. Nikolai Korotkoff. Turbulent blood flow through the vessels can be heard as a soft ticking while measuring blood pressure; these sounds are known as **Korotkoff sounds**. Blood pressure is measured in mm Hg and is usually obtained from the **brachial artery** using a **sphygmomanometer** and a stethoscope. Blood pressure is recorded as **systolic pressure** over **diastolic pressure**.

Did You Know 1?

120/80 mm Hg is a normal, healthy blood pressure. **60-100** beats per minute is a normal, resting, adult pulse.

Five variables influence blood flow and blood pressure:

- **Cardiac output**
- **Vessel Compliance**
- Volume of the blood
- **Viscosity** of the blood
- Blood vessel length and diameter

Pulse

Each time the heart ejects blood forcefully into the circulation, the arteries must expand and then **recoil** to accommodate the surge of blood moving through them. This expansion and recoiling of the arterial wall is called the **pulse** and allows us to measure **heart rate**. Pulse can be palpated manually by placing the tips of the fingers across an artery that runs close to the body surface, such as the radial artery or the common carotid artery. These sites and other pulse sites are shown in the figure below.

Both the rate and the strength of the pulse are important clinically. A high or irregular pulse rate can be caused by physical activity or other temporary factors, but it may also indicate a heart condition. The pulse strength indicates the strength of ventricular contraction and cardiac output. If the pulse is strong, then systolic pressure is high. If it is weak, systolic pressure has fallen, and medical intervention may be warranted.

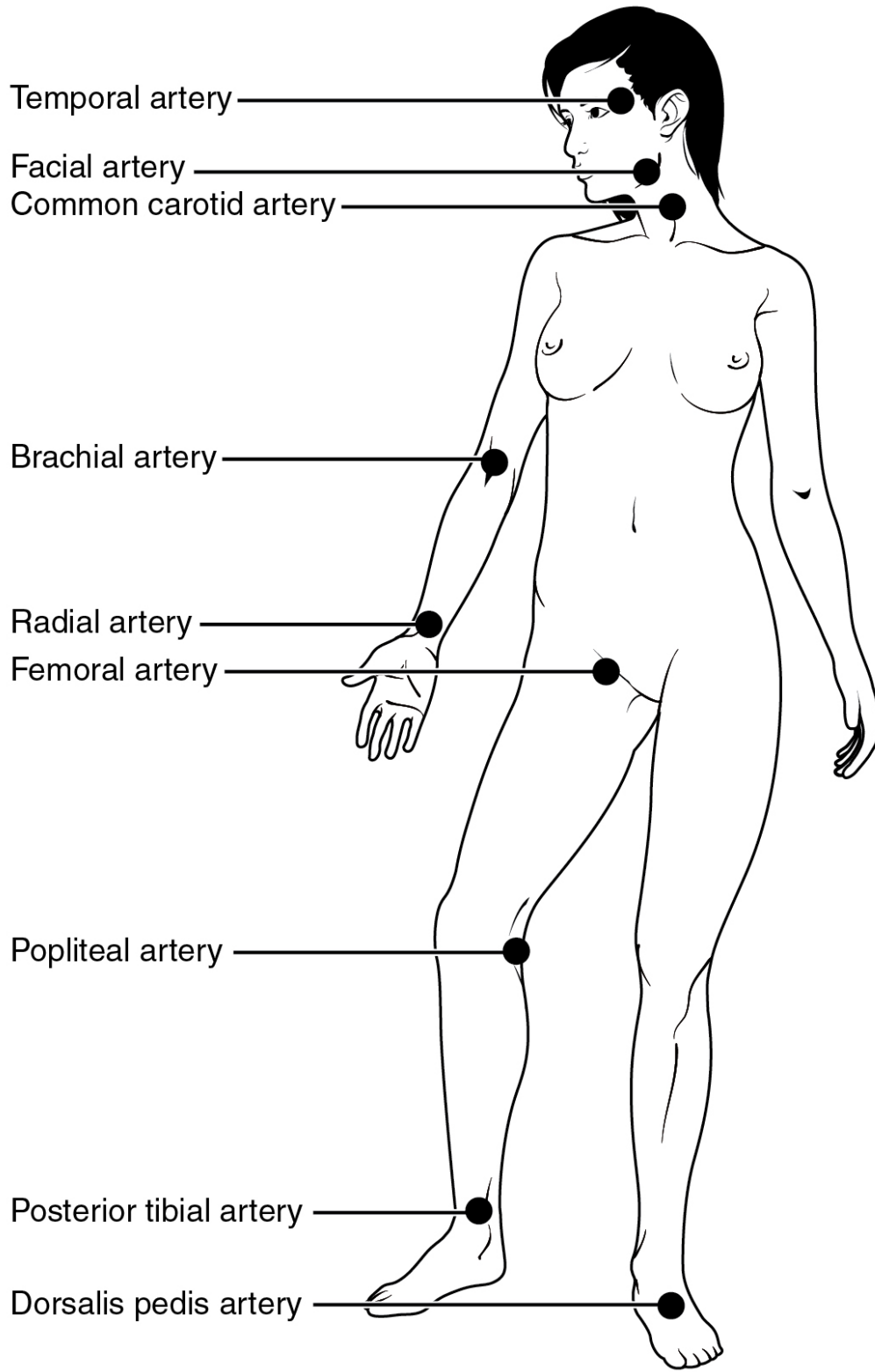


Figure 10.6 Pulse Sites. The pulse is most readily measured at the radial artery, but can be measured at any of the pulse points shown. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 10.6 Image description.](#)]

The Composition (Anatomy) of Blood and the Functions of the Components

Blood is a connective tissue made up of cellular elements and an extracellular matrix. The cellular elements are referred to as the **formed elements and** include **red blood cells (RBCs)**, **white blood cells (WBCs)**, and **platelets**. The extracellular matrix, called **plasma**, makes blood unique among connective tissues because it is fluid. This fluid, which is mostly water, perpetually suspends the formed elements and enables them to circulate throughout the body within the cardiovascular system.

Did You Know 2?

Blood constitutes approximately 8% of adult body weight.

In the laboratory, blood samples are often **centrifuged** in order to separate the components of blood from one another (see the figure below). **Erythrocytes** are the heaviest elements in blood and settle at the very bottom of the tube. Above the erythrocyte layer we see the **buffy coat**, a pale, thin layer of **leukocytes** and **thrombocytes**, which together make up less than 1% of the sample of whole blood. Above the buffy coat is the blood plasma, normally a pale, straw-colored fluid, which constitutes the remainder of the sample.

In normal blood, about 45 percent of a sample is erythrocytes, which is referred to as the **hematocrit**. The hematocrit of any one sample can vary significantly, however, about 36–50 percent, according to gender and other factors. Not counting the buffy coat, which makes up less than 1% of the blood, we can estimate the mean plasma percentage to be the percent of blood that is not erythrocytes: approximately 55%.

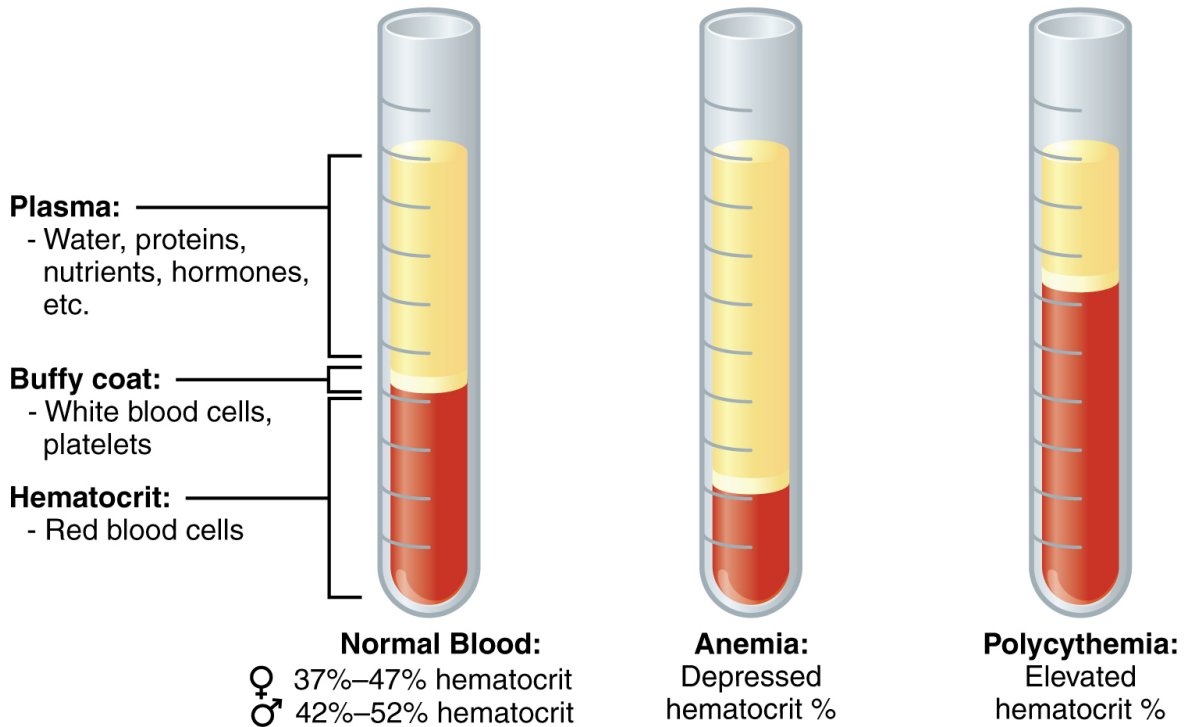


Figure 10.7 Composition of Blood. The cellular elements of blood include a vast number of erythrocytes and comparatively fewer leukocytes and platelets. Plasma is the fluid in which the formed elements are suspended. A sample of blood spun in a centrifuge reveals that plasma is the lightest component. It floats at the top of the tube separated from the heaviest elements, the erythrocytes, by a buffy coat of leukocytes and platelets. Hematocrit is the percentage of the total sample that is comprised of erythrocytes. Depressed and elevated hematocrit levels are shown for comparison. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 10.7 Image description.]

The table below provides a useful summary of the components of blood and their functions.

Table 10.3 a & b – Major Blood Components: . This table displays the components of blood and their associated functions. Adapted from [Betts et al., 2013](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yhmed.2013.05.001). Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Table 10.3a Major Blood Components: Plasma 46-63 percent of blood

Subcomponent and % of Component	Type and % (Where appropriate)	Site of production	Major function(s)
Water 92 percent	Fluid	Absorbed by intestinal tract or produced by metabolism	Transport medium
Plasma protein - Albumin	Albumin 54 - 60 percent	Liver	Maintain osmotic concentration, transport lipid molecules
Plasma protein - Alpha Globulins	Globulins (35 - 38 percent overall)	Alpha globulins - liver	Transport, maintain osmotic concentration
Plasma protein - Beta globulins	Globulins 35 - 38 percent (35 - 38 percent overall)	Beta globulins - liver	Transport, maintain osmotic concentration
Plasma protein - Gamma Globulins	Globulins 35 - 38 percent (35 - 38 percent overall)	Gamma globulins (immunoglobulins) - plasma cells	Immune responses
Plasma protein - Fibrinogen	Fibrinogen 4 - 7 percent	Liver	Blood clotting in hemostasis

Subcomponent and % of Component	Type and % (Where appropriate)	Site of production	Major function(s)
Regulatory proteins < 1 percent	Hormones and enzymes	Various sources	Regulate various body functions
Other solutes 1 percent	Nutrients, gases, and wastes	Absorbed by intestinal tract, exchanged in respiratory system, or produced by cells	Numerous and varied

Table 10.3b Major Blood Components. Formed elements 37 – 54 percent

Subcomponent and % of Component	Type and % (Where appropriate)	Site of production	Major function(s)
Erythrocytes 99 percent	Erythrocytes	Red bone marrow	Transport gases, primarily oxygen and some carbon dioxide
Leukocytes < 1 percent Platelets < 1 percent (overall)	Granular Leukocytes: neutrophils eosinophils basophils	Red bone marrow	Nonspecific immunity
Leukocytes < 1 percent Platelets < 1 percent (overall)	Agranular leukocytes: lymphocytes	Lymphocytes: bone marrow and lymphatic tissue	Lymphocytes: specific immunity
Leukocytes < 1 percent Platelets < 1 percent (overall)	Agranular leukocytes: monocytes	Monocytes: redbone marrow	Monocytes: nonspecific immunity
Platelets < 1 percent	n/a	Megakaryocytes: Red Bone Marrow	Hemostasis

Concept Check 1

Use the table above to answer these questions:

- What substance makes up *most* of the plasma?
- What are some general functions of plasma and its components?
- What is the function of **erythrocytes**?
- What is the overall function of **leukocytes**? (Hint: which word appears in all 3 chart cells that list leukocyte functions?)
- What is the function of **platelets**?

Blood Plasma

Like other fluids in the body, plasma is composed primarily of water. In fact, it is about 92% water. Dissolved or suspended within this water is a mixture of substances, most of which are proteins. The major components of plasma and their functions are summarized in the table above.

Formed Elements (Erythrocytes, Leukocytes, Thrombocytes)

Table 10.4a below summarizes the main facts about the formed elements in blood. Table 10.4b shows a more in-depth look at Leukocytes (white blood cells).

Table 10.4a Summary of Formed Elements in Blood. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

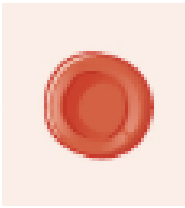

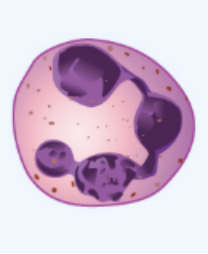

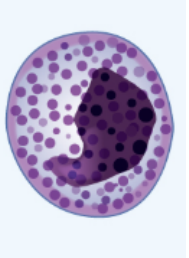
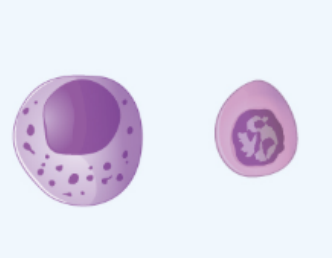

Formed Element	Major Subtypes	Number Present per Microliter (µL) and Mean Range	Appearance in a Standard Blood Smear	Summary of Functions	Comments
Erythrocytes (red blood cells)  Red Blood Cell	n/a	5.2 million (4.4-5.0 million)	Flattened biconcave disk; no nucleus; pale red colour	Transport oxygen and some carbon dioxide between tissues and lungs	Lifespan of approximately 120 days
Leukocytes (white blood cells)	n/a	7000 (5000 – 10,000)	Obvious dark-staining nucleus	All function in body defenses	Exit capillaries and move into tissues; lifespan of usually a few hours or days
Platelets  Platelete Cells	n/a	350,000 (150,000 – 500,000)	Cellular fragments surrounded by a plasma membrane and containing granules; purple stain	Hemostasis plus release growth factors for repair and healing of tissue	Formed from megakaryocytes that remain in the red bone marrow and shed platelets into circulation

Table 10.4b Leukocytes (white blood cells) in Blood. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Major Subtypes	Number Present per Microliter (μL) and Mean Range	Appearance in a Standard Blood Smear	Summary of Functions	Comments
<p>Granulocytes including neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils</p> <p>Neutrophils</p>  <p>Neutrophil Cell</p>	<p>4360 (1800-9950)</p>	<p>Abundant granules in cytoplasm; nucleus normal lobed</p>	<p>Nonspecific (innate) resistance to disease</p>	<p>Classified according to</p>
<p>Eosinophils</p>  <p>Eosinophil Cell</p>	<p>4150 (1800-7300)</p>	<p>Nuclear lobes increase with age; pale lilac granules</p>	<p>Phagocytic; particularly effective against bacteria. Release cytotoxic chemicals from granules</p>	<p>Most common leucocyte</p>
	<p>165 (0-700)</p>	<p>Nucleus generally two-lobed; bright red-orange granules</p>	<p>Phagocytic cells; particularly effective with antigen-antibody complexes. Release antihistamines. Increase in allergies and parasitic infections</p>	<p>Lifespan of minutes</p>

<p>Basophils</p>  <p>Basophil Cell</p>	<p>44 (0-150)</p>	<p>Nucleus generally two-lobed but difficult to see due to presence of heavy, dense, dark purple granules</p>	<p>Promotes inflammation</p>	<p>Least common le</p>
<p>Agranulocytes including lymphocytes and monocytes</p> <p>Lymphocytes</p>  <p>Lymphocytes Cell</p>	<p>2640 (1700-4950)</p> <p>2185 (1500-4000)</p>	<p>Lack abundant granules in cytoplasm; have a simple-shaped nucleus that may be indented</p> <p>Spherical cells with a single often large nucleus occupying much of the cell's volume; stains purple; see in large (natural killer cells) and small (B and T cells) variants</p>	<p>Body defenses</p> <p>Primarily specific (adaptive) immunity; T cells directly attack other cells (cellular immunity). B cells release antibodies (humoral immunity); natural killer cells are similar to T cells but nonspecific</p>	<p>Group consists of</p> <p>Initial cells originate in lymphatic tissue; exposure to a pathogen; lifespan</p>

<p>Monocytes</p>  <p>Monocytes Cell</p>	<p>455 (200-950)</p>	<p>Largest leukocyte with an indented or horseshoe-shaped nucleus</p>	<p>Very effective phagocytic cells engulfing pathogens or worn out cells; also serve as antigen-presenting cells (APCs) for other components of the immune system</p>	<p>Produced in red bone marrow, leaving circulation</p>
--	----------------------	---	---	---

Hemopoiesis/Hematopoiesis

The lifespan of the formed elements is very brief. Although one type of leukocyte (memory cells) can survive for years, most **erythrocytes**, **leukocytes**, and **platelets** normally live only a few hours to a few weeks. Thus, the body must form new blood cells and platelets quickly and continuously, a process known as **hemopoiesis**.

In children, hemopoiesis can occur in the medullary cavity of long bones; in adults, the process is largely restricted to the cranial and pelvic bones, the vertebrae, the sternum, and the proximal **epiphyses** of the femur and humerus. Throughout adulthood, the liver and spleen maintain their ability to generate the formed elements. This process is referred to as **extramedullary hemopoiesis**. When a disease such as bone cancer destroys the bone marrow, causing hemopoiesis to fail, extramedullary hemopoiesis may be initiated .

All formed elements arise from stem cells of the red bone marrow, called **hemopoietic stem cell**, or **hemocytoblast**. Hemopoiesis begins when the hemopoietic stem cell is exposed to appropriate chemical stimuli collectively called **hemopoietic growth factors**, which prompt it to divide and differentiate. One daughter cell remains a hemopoietic stem cell, allowing hemopoiesis to continue. The other daughter cell becomes either of two types of more specialized stem cells. Follow the chart below from top to bottom to learn how stem cells become mature formed elements of blood.

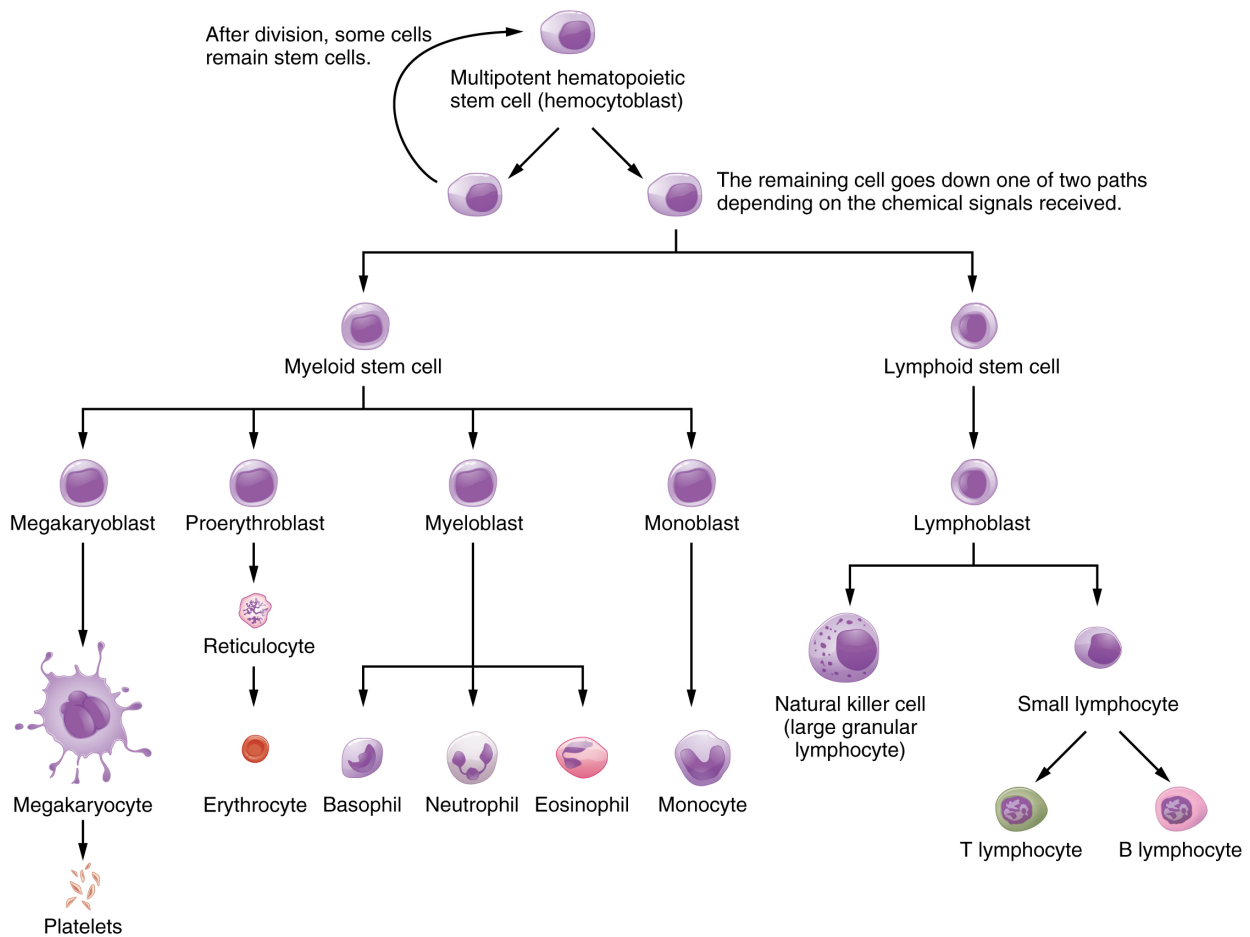


Figure 10.8 Hematopoietic System of Bone Marrow. Hemopoiesis is the proliferation and differentiation of the formed elements of blood. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [\[Fig. 10.8 Image description.\]](#)

Erythrocytes

The most abundant formed elements in blood, erythrocytes are basically sacs packed with an oxygen-carrying compound called hemoglobin. Production of erythrocytes in the red bone marrow occurs at the staggering rate of more than 2 million cells per second. For this production to occur, raw materials including iron, copper, zinc B-vitamins, glucose, lipids, and amino acids must be present in adequate amounts. Erythrocytes live only 120 days on average, and thus must be continually replaced. Worn-out erythrocytes are **phagocytized** by **macrophages** and their hemoglobin is broken down. The breakdown products are recycled or removed as wastes.

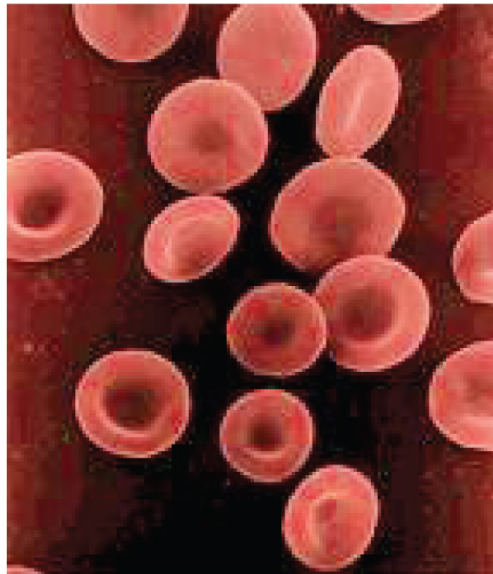


Figure 10.9 Shape of Red Blood Cells. Erythrocytes are biconcave discs with very shallow centers. This shape optimizes the ratio of surface area to volume, facilitating gas exchange. It also enables them to fold up as they move through narrow blood vessels. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Leukocytes

Leukocytes protect the body against invading microorganisms and body cells with mutated DNA, and they clean up debris, thus they are a major component of the body's defenses against disease. Figure 13.10 shows the different types of leukocytes.

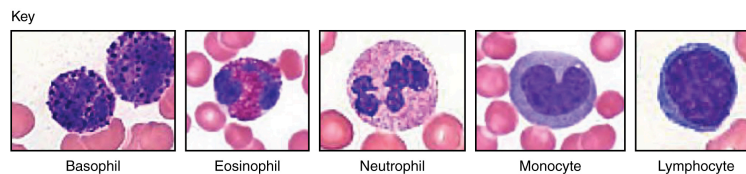


Figure 10.10 Leukocytes. (Micrographs provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School © 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

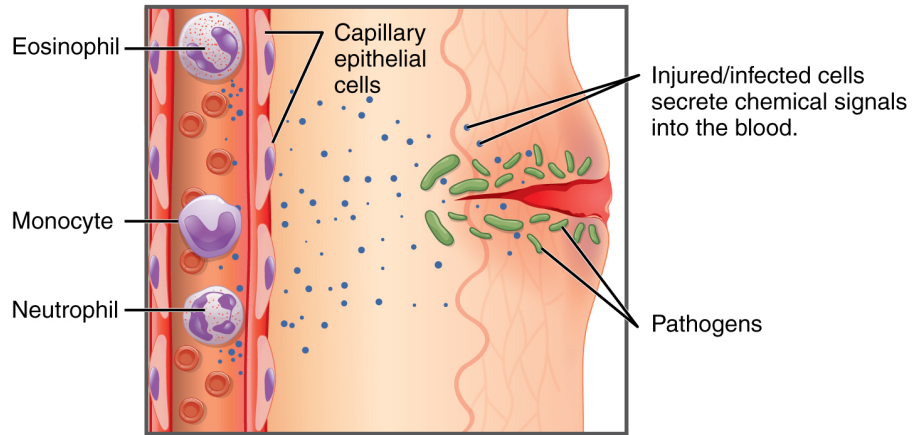
Concept Check 2

- What is **hemoglobin**?
- Can you name the 5 types of **leukocytes**?

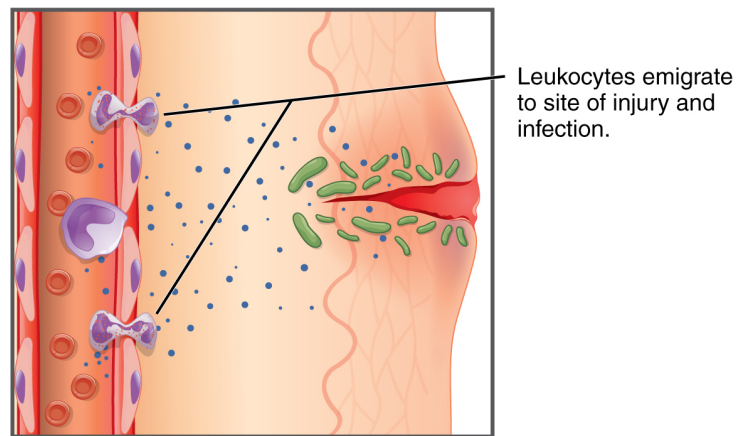
Leukocytes routinely leave the bloodstream to perform their **defensive** functions in the body's tissues, where they are often given distinct names, such as **macrophage** or **microglia**, depending on their function. As shown in Figure 1 below, they leave the capillaries—the smallest blood vessels—or other small vessels through a process known as **emigration** or **diapedesis** in which they squeeze through adjacent cells in a blood vessel wall.

Once they have exited the capillaries, some leukocytes will take up fixed positions in lymphatic tissue, bone marrow, the spleen, the thymus, or other organs. Others will move about through the tissue spaces, sometimes wandering freely, and sometimes moving toward the direction in which they are drawn by chemical signals, a mechanism known as **positive chemotaxis**.

① Leukocytes in the blood respond to chemical attractants released by pathogens and chemical signals from nearby injured cells.



② The leukocytes squeeze between the cells of the capillary wall as they follow the chemical signals to where they are most concentrated (positive chemotaxis).



③ Within the damaged tissue, monocytes differentiate into macrophages that phagocytize the pathogens. The eosinophils and neutrophils release chemicals that break apart pathogens. They are also capable of phagocytosis.

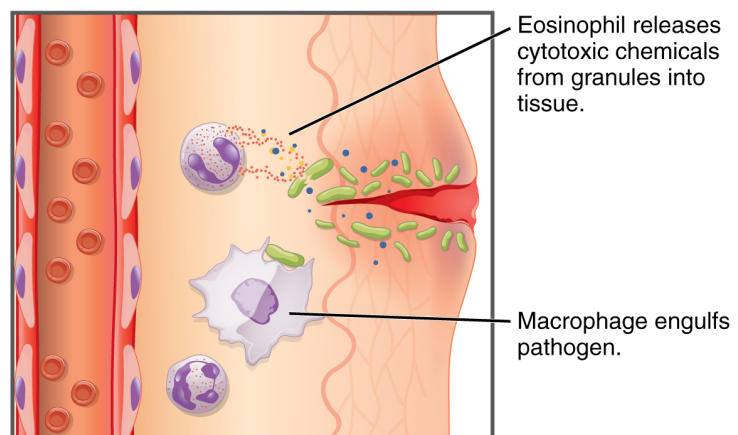


Figure 10.11 Emigration. Leukocytes exit the blood vessel and then move through the connective tissue of the dermis toward the site of a wound. Some leukocytes, such as the eosinophil and neutrophil, are characterized as granular leukocytes. They release chemicals from their granules that destroy pathogens; they are also capable of phagocytosis. The monocyte differentiates into a macrophage that then phagocytizes the pathogens. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 10.11 Image description.]

Lymphocytes

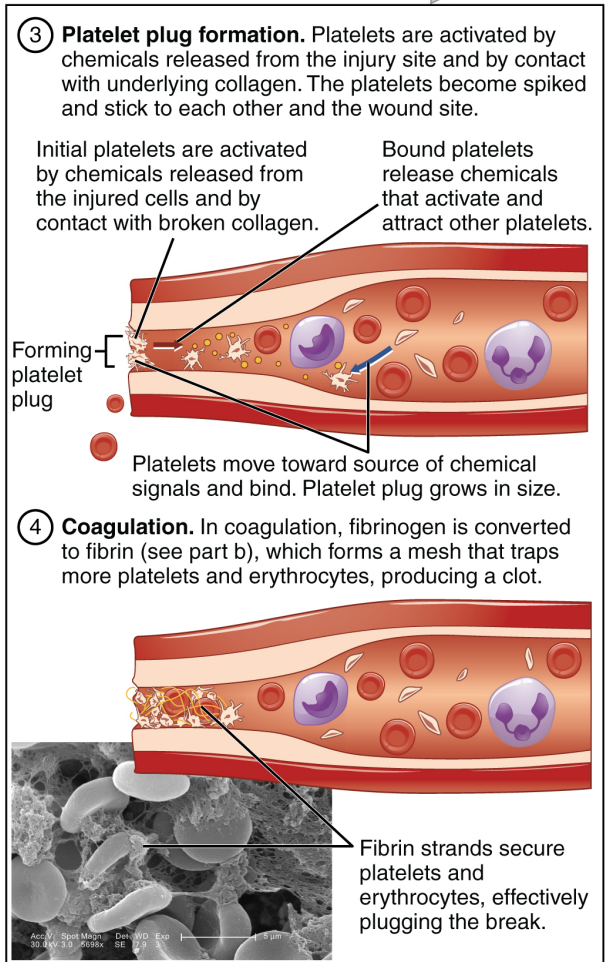
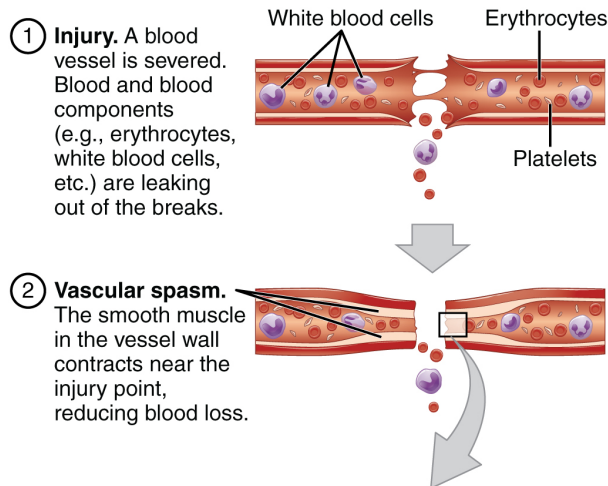
Lymphocytes are one of the types of leukocytes and will be discussed in more detail here, since they tie into the next chapter which discussed the body's defenses. The three major groups of lymphocytes include natural killer cells, B cells, and T cells.

- **Natural killer (NK) cells** are capable of recognizing cells that do not express “self” proteins on their plasma membrane or that contain foreign or abnormal markers. These “non-self” cells include cancer cells, cells infected with a virus, and other cells with atypical surface proteins.
- **B lymphocytes (B cells)** and **T lymphocytes (T cells)**, play prominent roles in defending the body against specific pathogens (disease-causing microorganisms) and are involved in specific immunity. B cells undergo a maturation process in the bone marrow, whereas T cells undergo maturation in the thymus. This site of the maturation process gives rise to the name B and T cells.
 - **Plasma cells**, a type of B cell, produce the antibodies or immunoglobulins that bind to specific foreign or abnormal components of plasma membranes.
 - **T cells** provide immunity by physically attacking foreign or diseased cells.
 - **Memory cells** are a variety of both B and T cells that form after exposure to a pathogen and mount rapid responses upon subsequent exposures. Unlike other leukocytes, memory cells live for many years.

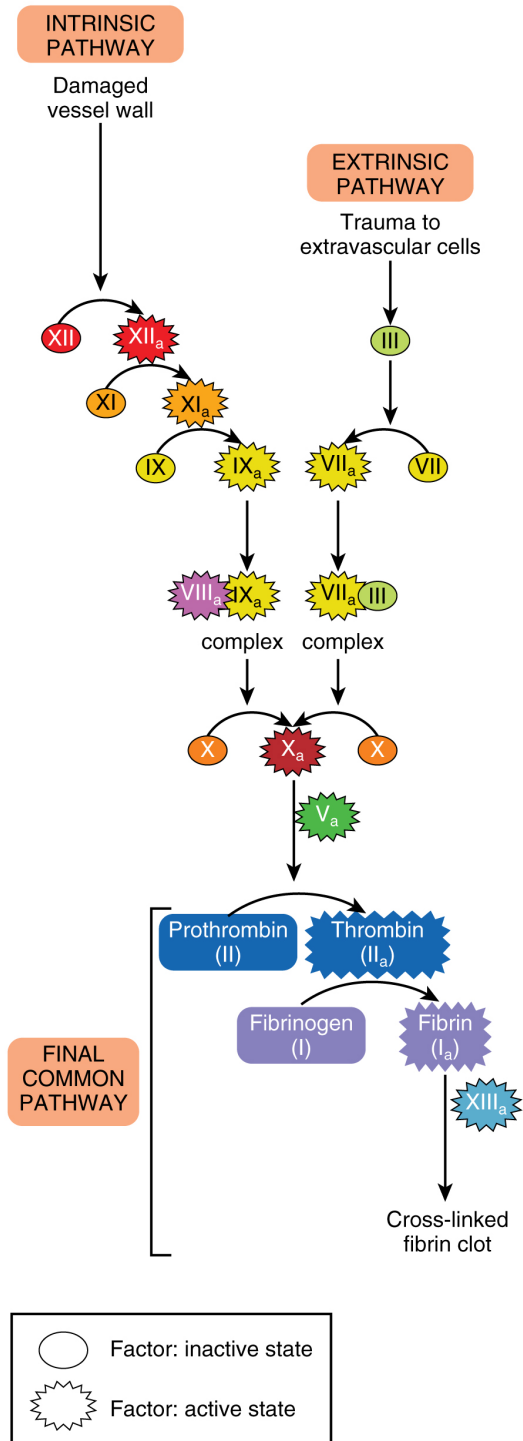
Platelets

After entering the circulation, approximately one-third of the newly-formed platelets migrate to the spleen for storage for later release in response to any rupture in a blood vessel. They then become activated to perform their primary function, which is to limit blood loss. Platelets remain only about 10 days, then are **phagocytized** by **macrophages**.

Platelets are key players in **hemostasis**, the process by which the body seals a ruptured blood vessel and prevents further loss of blood. Although rupture of larger vessels usually requires medical intervention, hemostasis is quite effective in dealing with small, simple wounds. There are three steps to the process: vascular spasm, the formation of a platelet plug, and coagulation (blood clotting). Failure of any of these steps will result in **hemorrhage**. The figure below summarizes the steps of hemostasis.



(a) The general steps of clotting



(b) Fibrin synthesis cascade

Figure 10.12 Hemostasis. (a) An injury to a blood vessel initiates the process of hemostasis. Blood clotting involves three steps. First, vascular spasm constricts the flow of blood. Next, a platelet plug forms to temporarily seal small openings in the vessel. Coagulation then enables the repair of the vessel wall once the leakage of blood has stopped. (b) The synthesis of fibrin in blood clots involves either an intrinsic pathway or an extrinsic pathway, both of which lead to a common pathway. (credit a: Kevin MacKenzie). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 10.12 Image description.]

Fibrinolysis is the process in which a clot is degraded in a healing vessel. An **anticoagulant** is any substance that opposes coagulation. Several circulating plasma anticoagulants play a role in limiting the coagulation process to the region of injury and restoring a normal, clot-free condition of blood.

Concept Check 3

- Can you explain what happens in each step of **hemostasis**?
- Describe an **anticoagulant**.

Physiology of Blood

Although carrying oxygen and nutrients to cells and removing wastes from cells is the main function of blood, it is important to realize that blood also serves in defense, distribution of heat, and maintenance of homeostasis.

Transportation

- Nutrients from the foods you eat are absorbed in the digestive tract. Most of these travel in the bloodstream directly to the liver, where they are processed and released back into the bloodstream for delivery to body cells.
- Oxygen from the air you breathe diffuses into the blood, which moves from the lungs to the heart, which then pumps it out to the rest of the body.
- Endocrine glands scattered throughout the body release their products, called **hormones**, into the bloodstream, which carries them to distant target cells.
- Blood also picks up **cellular wastes** and byproducts, and transports them to various organs for removal. For instance, blood moves carbon dioxide to the lungs for **exhalation** from the body, and various waste products are transported to the kidneys and liver for excretion from the body in the form of urine or bile.

Defense

- Leukocytes protect the organism from disease-causing bacteria, cells with **mutated** DNA that could multiply to become cancerous, or body cells infected with viruses.
- When damage to the vessels results in bleeding, blood platelets and certain proteins dissolved in the plasma, interact to block the ruptured areas of the blood vessels involved. This protects the body from

further blood loss.

Homeostasis

- If you were exercising on a warm day, your rising core body temperature would trigger several homeostatic mechanisms, including increased transport of blood from your core to your body periphery, which is typically cooler. As blood passes through the vessels of the skin, heat would be dissipated to the environment, and the blood returning to your body core would be cooler. In contrast, on a cold day, blood is diverted away from the skin to maintain a warmer body core. In extreme cases, this may result in frostbite.
- Blood helps to regulate the water content of body cells.
- Blood also helps to maintain the chemical balance of the body. Proteins and other compounds in blood act as buffers, which thereby help to regulate the **pH** of body tissues. The pH of blood ranges from 7.35 to 7.45.

Concept Check 4

These three terms all sound similar. Can you explain them by breaking down the word parts?

- Hemostasis
- Homeostasis
- Hemopoiesis

Blood Types

In order to understand blood types, it is important to understand several terms that relate to the body's **immune** functions (discussed in detail in the next chapter).

- **Antigens** are substances that the body does not recognize as belonging to itself (“self”) and that therefore trigger a **defensive response** from the leukocytes of the immune system. Many people have antigens on the surfaces of their red blood cells. More than 50 antigens have been identified on erythrocyte membranes, but the most significant in terms of their potential harm to patients are classified in two groups: the ABO blood group and the Rh blood group.
- **Antibodies** are proteins which are produced by **plasma cells** in response to a “non-self” antigen being

present in the body. Antibodies attach to the antigens on the plasma membranes of the erythrocytes in a blood transfusion and cause them to adhere to one another.

- Agglutination refers to the resulting clumps of red blood cells that are formed in such an antigen-antibody reaction. These clumps can block small blood vessels, thereby cutting off the supply of oxygen and nutrients to the tissues.
- **Hemolysis**, or the breakdown of the erythrocyte's cell membrane, takes place as the clumps of red cells start to degrade. The resulting release of the cell's contents, mainly hemoglobin, into the bloodstream can cause kidney failure.

ABO Blood Group

ABO blood types are **genetically** determined. Each type is determined by the presence or absence of certain **antigens** on the individual's red blood cell membrane, as well as the presence or absence of certain **antibodies**. Normally the body must be exposed to a **foreign antigen** before an antibody can be produced. This is not the case for the ABO blood group, in which some blood types come preloaded with their own set of antibodies against another type. The table below shows the ABO blood group as well as the universal donor and recipient in relation to blood transfusions.

	Blood Type			
	A	B	AB	O
Red Blood Cell Type				
Antibodies in Plasma	 Anti-B	 Anti-A	None	 Anti-A and Anti-B
Antigens in Red blood Cell	 A antigen	 B antigen	 A and B antigens	None
Blood Types Compatible in an Emergency	A, O	B, O	A, B, AB, O (AB ⁺ is the universal recipient)	O (O is the universal donor)

Figure 10.13 ABO Blood Groups. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

- Blood Type A
 - People whose erythrocytes have **A antigens** on their erythrocyte membrane surface.
 - People who have type A blood, without any prior exposure to incompatible blood, have preformed **anti-B antibodies** circulating in their blood. These antibodies will cause a serious immune reaction if they encounter blood that has B antigens.
- Blood Type B
 - People whose erythrocytes have **B antigens**.
 - People with type B blood have preformed **anti-A antibodies**.
- Blood Type AB
 - People can also have **both A and B antigens** on their erythrocytes, in which case they are blood type AB.
 - Individuals with type AB blood, **do not have preformed antibodies** to either A or B antigens.
- Blood Type O
 - People with **neither A nor B antigens** are designated blood type O.
 - People with type O blood have **both anti-A and anti-B antibodies** circulating in their blood plasma.

Rh Blood Group

The **Rh blood group** is classified according to the presence or absence of a second erythrocyte **antigen** identified as Rh. Those who have the Rh D antigen present on their erythrocytes are described as Rh positive (Rh^+) and those who lack it are Rh negative (Rh^-). Note that the Rh group is distinct from the ABO group, so any individual, no matter their ABO blood type, may have or lack this Rh antigen. When identifying a patient's blood type, the Rh group is designated by adding the word positive or negative to the ABO type. For example, A positive (A^+) means ABO group A blood with the Rh antigen present, and AB negative (AB^-) means ABO group AB blood without the Rh antigen.

Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn (HDN)

Antibodies to the Rh antigen are produced only in Rh^- individuals after exposure to the antigen. This process, called sensitization, occurs following a transfusion with Rh-incompatible blood or, more commonly, with the birth of an Rh^+ baby to an Rh^- mother.

- In a **first pregnancy**, problems are rare, since the baby's Rh^+ cells rarely cross the **placenta**. However, during or immediately after birth, the Rh^- mother can be exposed to the baby's Rh^+ cells (Figure below). Research has shown that this occurs in about 13–14 percent of such pregnancies. After exposure, the mother's immune system begins to generate anti-Rh antibodies.
- In a **second pregnancy**, if a mother should conceive a Rh^+ baby, the Rh antibodies she has produced can cross the placenta into the fetal bloodstream and destroy the fetal RBCs. This condition is known as **hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN)** or erythroblastosis fetalis. This may cause anemia in mild cases, but the agglutination and hemolysis can be so severe that without treatment the fetus may die in the womb or shortly after birth.

- A drug known as RhoGAM, short for Rh immune globulin, can temporarily prevent the development of Rh antibodies in the Rh⁻ mother, thereby averting this potentially serious disease for the fetus. RhoGAM antibodies destroy any fetal Rh⁺ erythrocytes that may cross the placental barrier. RhoGAM is normally administered to Rh⁻ mothers during weeks 26–28 of pregnancy and within 72 hours following birth.

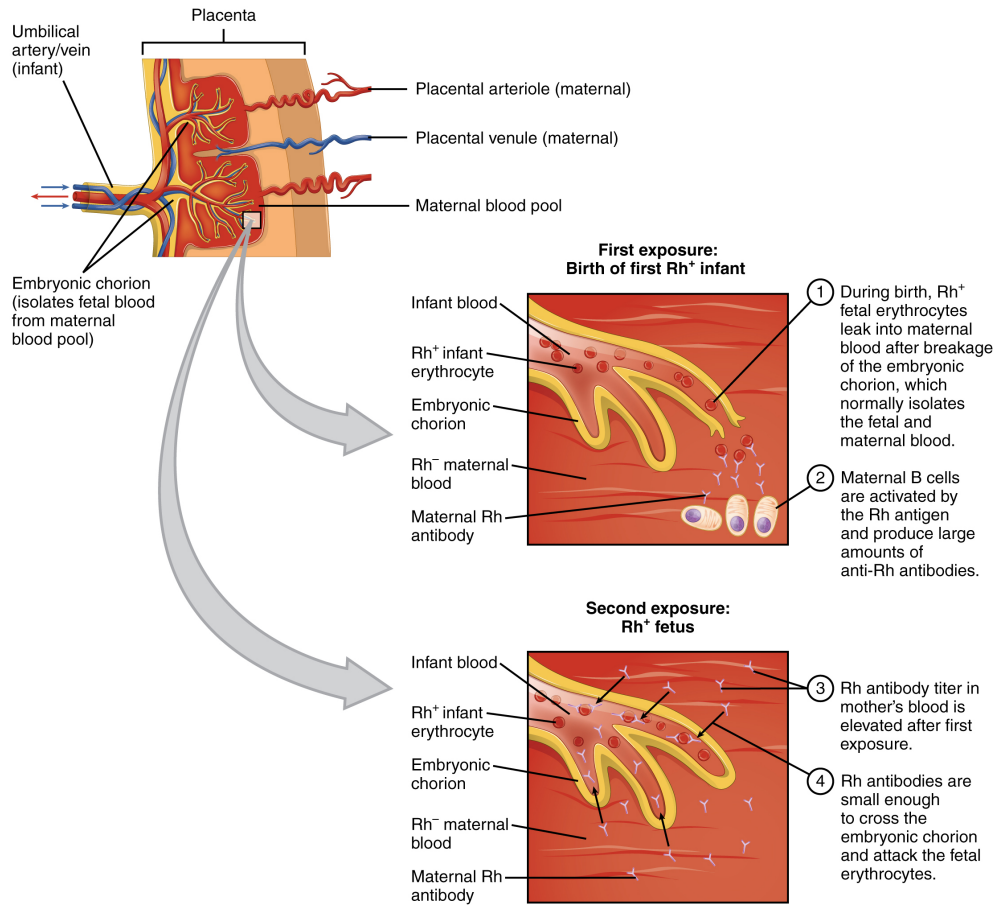


Figure 10.14 Erythroblastosis Fetalis. The first exposure of an Rh⁻ mother to Rh⁺ erythrocytes during pregnancy induces sensitization. Anti-Rh antibodies begin to circulate in the mother's bloodstream. A second exposure occurs with a subsequent pregnancy with an Rh⁺ fetus in the uterus. Maternal anti-Rh antibodies may cross the placenta and enter the fetal bloodstream, causing agglutination and hemolysis of fetal erythrocytes. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Blood Transfusions

Figure 10.15 is an example of a commercially produced “bedside” card which enables quick typing of both a recipient's and donor's blood before transfusion. The card contains three reaction sites or wells. One is coated with an anti-A antibody, one with an anti-B antibody, and one with an anti-D antibody (tests for the presence of Rh factor D). Mixing a drop of blood and saline into each well enables the blood to interact with a preparation of type-specific antibodies, also called anti-seras. Agglutination of RBCs in a given site indicates a positive identification of the blood antigens, in this case A and Rh antigens for blood type A+. To avoid serious and potentially fatal immune reactions, the donor's and recipient's blood types must match

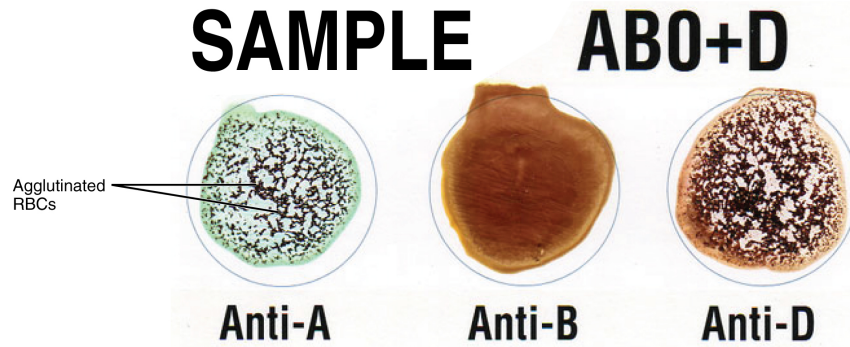


Figure 10.15. Cross Matching Blood Types. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

To avoid transfusion reactions, it is best to transfuse only matching blood types; that is, a type B⁺ recipient should ideally receive blood only from a type B⁺ donor and so on. That said, in emergency situations, when acute **hemorrhage** threatens the patient's life, there may not be time for cross matching to identify blood type. In these cases, blood from a **universal donor** may be transfused.

Blood Vessel Medical Terms Word Parts

Blood Vessel Medical Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Cardiovascular System – Blood Terms Not Easily broken down (Text Version)

Practice the following cardiovascular blood terms by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **phlebotomist**
 - A specially trained person who draws blood or injects IV fluids
2. **anaphylaxis**
 - exaggerated reaction to a previously encountered antigen may start out as mild reaction but can quickly become severe resulting in anaphylactic shock
3. **anemia**
 - reduction in number of erythrocytes

4. immunodeficiency

- deficient immune response caused by immune system dysfunction brought on by disease or immune suppressive drugs.

5. ischemia

- condition of deficient blood flow due to a constriction or obstruction of a blood vessel

6. sepsis

- toxic condition due to spread of bacteria or their toxins from an infection

Activity source: “Cardiovascular System – Blood Terms Not Easily Broken Down” by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 10.5 image description: This diagram shows how oxygenated and deoxygenated blood flow through the major organs in the body. Pulmonary circulation involves the lungs, pulmonary artery and vein, vena cava, and aorta. Systemic circulation involves the upper body, hepatic vein, renal vein, aorta, liver, hepatic artery, hepatic portal vein, stomach, intestines, renal artery, kidneys, and lower body. [\[Return to Figure 10.5\]](#).

Figure 10.6 image description: The pulse points as shown on a woman's body. Labels read (from top) temporal artery, facial artery, common carotid artery, brachial artery, radial artery, femoral artery, popliteal artery, posterior tibial artery, dorsalis pedis artery. [\[Return to Figure 10.6\]](#).

Figure 10.7 image description: This figure shows three test tubes with a red and yellow liquid in them. The left panel shows normal blood, the center panel shows anemic blood and the right panel shows polycythemic blood. Labels indicate plasma (water, proteins, nutrients, hormones etc.), buffy coat (white blood cells, platelets), and hematocrit (red blood cells). [\[Return to Figure 10.7\]](#).

Figure 10.8 image description: This flowchart shows the pathways in which a multipotent hematopoietic stem cell differentiates into the different cell types found in blood. From the top (multipotent hematopoietic stem cell) can divide and some cells remain stem cells, while the remaining cell goes down one of two paths depending on the chemical signals received: myeloid stem cell or lymphoid stem cell. A myeloid stem cell then can become either a megakaryoblast (which then turns into a megakaryocyte, then becomes platelets), or it can become a proerythroblast (which then becomes a reticulocyte, then becoming an erythrocyte), or it can become a myeloblast (which then becomes either a basophil, neutrophil, eosinophil), or it can become a monoblast (which then becomes a monocyte). If the cell becomes a lymphoid stem cell, it then becomes a lymphoblast, which then becomes either a natural killer cell or a small lymphocyte (either T or B lymphocyte). [\[Return to Figure 10.8\]](#).

Figure 10.11 image description: This figure shows how leukocytes respond to chemical signals from injured cells. The top panel shows chemical signals sent out by the injured cells (text labels read: 1) Leukocytes in the

blood respond to chemical attractants released by pathogens and chemical signals from nearby injured cells). The middle panel shows leukocytes migrating to the injured cells (text labels read: 2) the leukocytes squeeze between the capillary wall as they follow the chemical signals to where they are most concentrated (positive chemotaxis)). The bottom panel shows macrophages phagocytosing the pathogens (text label reads: 3) Within the damaged tissue, monocytes differentiate into macrophages that phagocytize the pathogens. The eosinophils and neutrophils release chemicals that break apart pathogens. They are also capable of phagocytosis). [\[Return to Figure 10.11\]](#).

Figure 10.12 image description: This figure details the steps in the clotting of blood. Each step is shown along with a detailed text box describing the steps on the left. On the right, a signaling pathway shows the different chemical signals involved in the clotting process. The steps described: 1. Injury: a blood vessel is severed. Blood and blood components (e.g. erythrocytes, white blood cells, etc.) are leaking out of the breaks. 2. Vascular spasm: the smooth muscle in the vessel wall contracts near the injury point reducing blood loss. 3. Platelet plug formation: platelets are activated by chemicals released from the injury site and by contact with underlying collagen. The platelets become spiky and stick to each other and the wound site. Initial platelets are activated by chemicals released from the injured cells and by contact with broken collagen. Bound platelets release chemicals that activate and attract other platelets. Platelets move toward source of chemical signals and bind. Platelet plug grows in size. 4. Coagulation. In coagulation, fibrinogen is converted to fibrin (see part b), which forms a mesh that traps more platelets and erythrocytes, producing a clot. Part B Fibrin synthesis cascade: Intrinsic pathway (damaged vessel wall), Extrinsic pathway (trauma to extravascular cells), final common pathway (cross-linked fibrin clot). [\[Return to Figure 10.12\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood chapter content into sub-chapters.

10.4 - Blood Vessels Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Common Diseases and Disorders of Blood Vessels and/or Blood

Arteriosclerosis

Arteriosclerosis is normally defined as the more generalized loss of **compliance**, “hardening of the arteries,” whereas **atherosclerosis** is a more specific term for the build-up of **plaque** in the walls of the vessel and is a specific type of arteriosclerosis.

When arteriosclerosis causes vessel compliance to be reduced, pressure and resistance within the vessel increase. This is a leading cause of **hypertension** and **coronary heart disease**, as it causes the heart to work harder to overcome this resistance. Any artery in the body can be affected by these pathological conditions, and individuals who have pathologies like coronary artery disease may also be at risk for other vascular injuries, like strokes or peripheral arterial disease.

Atherosclerosis is a type of arteriosclerosis in which **plaques** form when circulating triglycerides, cholesterol and other substances seep between the damaged endothelial lining cells and become trapped within the artery wall, resulting in narrowed arteries and impaired blood flow (see [Figure 10.16](#)) (Betts et al., 2013).

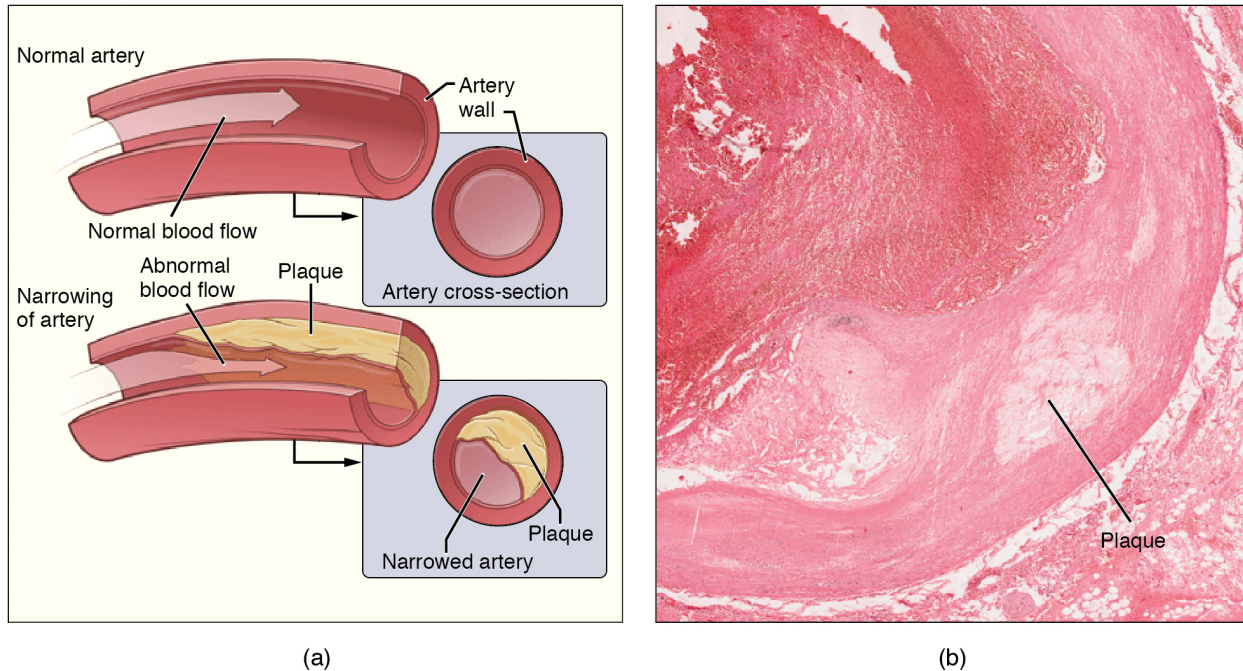


Figure 10.16 Atherosclerosis. (a) Atherosclerosis can result from plaques formed by the buildup of fatty, calcified deposits in an artery. (b) Plaques can also take other forms, as shown in this micrograph of a coronary artery that has a buildup of connective tissue within the artery wall. LM \times 40. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 10.16 Image description](#).]

Sometimes a plaque can rupture, causing microscopic tears in the artery wall that allow blood to leak into the tissue on the other side. When this happens, platelets rush to the site to clot the blood. This clot can further obstruct the artery and—if it occurs in a coronary or cerebral artery—cause a sudden heart attack or stroke. Alternatively, plaque can break off and travel through the bloodstream as an **embolus** until it blocks a more distant, smaller artery.

Peripheral arterial disease (PAD, also called peripheral vascular disease, PVD), occurs when atherosclerosis affects arteries in the legs. A major risk factor for both arteriosclerosis and atherosclerosis is advanced age, as the conditions tend to progress over time. There is also a distinct genetic component, and pre-existing hypertension and/or diabetes also greatly increase the risk. However, obesity, poor nutrition, lack of physical activity, and tobacco use all are major risk factors.

Treatment of atherosclerosis includes lifestyle changes, such as weight loss, smoking cessation, regular exercise, and adoption of a diet low in sodium and saturated fats. Medications to reduce cholesterol and blood pressure may be prescribed. For blocked coronary arteries, **angioplasty** or **coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)** surgery may be warranted. In an carotid endarterectomy, plaque is surgically removed from the walls of a the **carotid artery**, which is the main source of oxygenated blood for the brain (Betts et al., 2013).

Edema and Varicose Veins

Despite the presence of valves and the contributions of other anatomical and physiological adaptations that assist in moving blood through veins, over the course of a day, some blood will inevitably pool, especially in the lower limbs, due to the pull of gravity. Any blood that accumulates in a vein will increase the pressure within it, which can then be reflected back into the smaller veins, venules, and eventually even the capillaries. This increased pressure in the capillaries will push of fluids out of the capillaries and into the interstitial fluid, causing a condition called **edema**.

Most people experience a daily accumulation of tissue fluid, especially if they spend much of their work life on their feet (like most health professionals). However, clinical edema goes beyond normal swelling and requires medical treatment. Edema has many potential causes, including **hypertension** and heart failure, severe protein deficiency, renal failure, and many others. In order to treat edema, which is a sign rather than a discrete disorder, the underlying cause must be diagnosed and alleviated.



Figure 10.17 Varicose Veins. Varicose veins are commonly found in the lower limbs. (credit: [Image by Thomas Kriese, CC BY 2.0](#)). From Betts et al., 2013.

Edema may be accompanied by varicose veins, especially in the superficial veins of the legs (see [Figure 10.17](#)). This disorder arises when defective valves allow blood to accumulate within the veins, causing them to distend, twist, and become visible on the surface of the skin. Varicose veins may occur in both sexes, but are more common

in women and are often related to pregnancy. More than simple cosmetic blemishes, varicose veins are often painful and sometimes itchy or throbbing. Without treatment, they tend to grow worse over time. The use of support hose, as well as elevating the feet and legs whenever possible, may be helpful in alleviating this condition (Betts, et al., 2013).

Hypertension

Hypertension is defined as chronic and persistent blood pressure measurements of 140/90 mm Hg or above. Pressures between 120/80 and 140/90 mm Hg are defined as prehypertension. Hypertension is typically a **silent disorder** and patients may fail to recognize the seriousness of their condition and fail to follow their treatment plan, putting them at risk for a heart attack or stroke. Hypertension may also lead to an **aneurysm, peripheral arterial disease**, chronic kidney disease, or heart failure (Betts et al., 2013).

Hemorrhage

Minor blood loss is managed by **hemostasis** and repair. Hemorrhage is a loss of blood that cannot be controlled by hemostatic mechanisms. Initially, the body responds to hemorrhage by initiating mechanisms aimed at increasing blood pressure and maintaining blood flow. Ultimately, however, blood volume will need to be restored, either through physiological processes or through medical intervention. If blood loss is less than 20 percent of total blood volume, fast-acting homeostatic mechanisms causing increased cardiac output and vasoconstriction would usually return blood pressure to normal and redirect the remaining blood to the tissues. Blood volume will then need to be restored via slower-acting homeostatic mechanisms to increase body fluids and erythrocyte production (Betts et al., 2013).

Circulatory Shock

The loss of too much blood may lead to **circulatory shock**, a life-threatening condition in which the circulatory system is unable to maintain blood flow to adequately supply sufficient oxygen and other nutrients to the tissues to maintain cellular metabolism. It should not be confused with emotional or psychological shock. Typically, the patient in circulatory shock will demonstrate an increased heart rate but decreased blood pressure. Urine output will fall dramatically, and the patient may appear confused or lose consciousness. Unfortunately, shock is an example of a positive-feedback loop that, if uncorrected, may lead to the death of the patient (Betts et al., 2013).

There are several recognized forms of shock:

- **Hypovolemic shock** in adults is typically caused by hemorrhage, although in children it may be caused by fluid losses related to severe vomiting or diarrhea.
- **Cardiogenic shock** results from the inability of the heart to maintain cardiac output. Most often, it results from a myocardial infarction (heart attack), but it may also be caused by arrhythmias, valve disorders, cardiomyopathies, cardiac failure, or simply insufficient flow of blood through the cardiac vessels.
- **Vascular shock** occurs when arterioles lose their normal muscular tone and dilate dramatically. It may arise

from a variety of causes, and treatments almost always involve fluid replacement and medications, called inotropic or pressor agents, which restore tone to the muscles of the vessels.

- **Anaphylactic shock** is a severe allergic response that causes the widespread release of histamines, triggering vasodilation throughout the body.
- **Obstructive shock**, as the name would suggest, occurs when a significant portion of the vascular system is blocked. It is not always recognized as a distinct condition and may be grouped with cardiogenic shock, including **pulmonary embolism** and **cardiac tamponade**. Treatments depend upon the underlying cause and, in addition to administering fluids intravenously, often include the administration of anticoagulants, removal of fluid from the pericardial cavity, or air from the thoracic cavity, and surgery as required. The most common cause is a **pulmonary embolism**. Other causes include stenosis of the aortic valve, cardiac tamponade, and a **pneumothorax** (Betts et al., 2013).

Blood Disorders

Erythrocyte Disorders

Changes in the levels of RBCs can have significant effects on the body's ability to effectively deliver oxygen to the tissues (Betts et al., 2013).

Did You Know?

'O₂ sat' or 'percent sat' is the percent saturation, that is, the percentage of hemoglobin sites occupied by oxygen in a patient's blood.

Anemia

The size, shape, and number of erythrocytes, and the number of hemoglobin molecules can have a major impact on a person's health. When the number of RBCs or hemoglobin is deficient, the general condition is called **anemia**. There are more than 400 types of anemia.

Anemia can be broken down into three major groups: those caused by blood loss, those caused by faulty or decreased RBC production, and those caused by excessive destruction of RBCs. In addition to these causes, various disease processes also can lead to anemias. These include chronic kidney diseases often associated with

a decreased production of **EPO**, **hypothyroidism**, some forms of cancer, **lupus**, and **rheumatoid arthritis** (Betts, et al., 2013).

Blood Loss Anemias:

Causes:

- Bleeding from wounds or other lesions, including ulcers, hemorrhoids, inflammation of the stomach (gastritis), and some cancers of the gastrointestinal tract.
 - The excessive use of aspirin or other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen can trigger ulceration and gastritis.
- Excessive menstruation and loss of blood during childbirth.

Anemias Caused by Faulty or Decreased RBC Production:

- **Sickle cell anemia**
 - A genetic disorder involving the production of an abnormal type of hemoglobin which delivers less oxygen to tissues and causes erythrocytes to assume a sickle (or crescent) shape.
- **Iron deficiency anemia**
 - The most common type of anemia and results when the amount of available iron is insufficient to allow production of sufficient heme.
- **Vitamin deficiency anemia** (Generally insufficient vitamin B12 and folate).
- **Megaloblastic anemia** involves a deficiency of vitamin B12 and/or folate, often due to inadequate dietary intake.
- **Pernicious anemia** is caused by poor absorption of vitamin B12 and is often seen in patients with **Crohn's disease**, surgical removal of the intestines or stomach (common in some weight loss surgeries), intestinal parasites, and **AIDS**.
- **Aplastic anemia** is the condition in which myeloid stem cells are defective or replaced by cancer cells, resulting in insufficient quantities of RBCs being produced. This condition can be inherited or it may be triggered by radiation, medication, chemotherapy, or infection.
- **Thalassemia** is an inherited condition typically occurring in individuals from the Middle East, the Mediterranean, Africa, and Southeast Asia, in which maturation of the RBCs does not proceed normally. The most severe form is called Cooley's anemia (Betts et al., 2013).

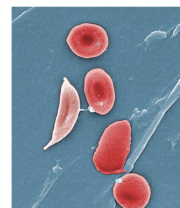


Figure 10.18 Sickle Cells. (credit: [Image](#) by Janice Haney Carr, [PDM](#)). From Betts et al., 2013. [\[Image description.\]](#)

Polycythemia

Polycythemia is an elevated RBC count and is detected in a patient's elevated **hematocrit** percentage in a complete blood cell testing. It can occur transiently in a person who is dehydrated; when water intake is inadequate or water losses are excessive, the plasma volume falls. As a result, the hematocrit rises. A mild form of polycythemia is chronic but normal in people living at high altitudes. Some elite athletes train at high elevations specifically to induce this phenomenon. Finally, a type of bone marrow disease called polycythemia vera causes

an excessive production of immature erythrocytes. Polycythemia vera can dangerously elevate the **viscosity** of blood, raising blood pressure and making it more difficult for the heart to pump blood throughout the body. It is a relatively rare disease that occurs more often in men than women, and is more likely to be present in elderly patients those over 60 years of age (Betts et al., 2013).

Platelet Disorders/Clotting Disorders

Thrombocytosis

Thrombocytosis is a condition in which there are too many platelets. This may trigger **thrombosis**, a potentially fatal disorder. A **thrombus** (plural = thrombi) is an aggregation of platelets, erythrocytes, and even WBCs typically trapped within a mass of fibrin strands. While the formation of a clot is a normal step in **hemostasis**, thrombi can form within an intact or only slightly damaged blood vessel, adhering to the vessel wall and decreasing or obstructing the flow of blood (Betts et al., 2013).

Thrombophilia

Thrombophilia, also called hypercoagulation, is a condition in which there is a tendency to form thrombosis. This may be an inherited disorder or may be caused by other conditions including **lupus**, immune reactions to heparin, **polycythemia vera**, **thrombocytosis**, **sickle cell disease**, pregnancy, and even obesity.

When a portion of a thrombus breaks free from the vessel wall and enters the circulation, it is referred to as an **embolus**. An embolus that is carried through the bloodstream can be large enough to block a vessel critical to a major organ. When it becomes trapped, an embolus is called an **embolism**. In the heart, brain, or lungs, an embolism may accordingly cause a heart attack, a stroke, or a pulmonary embolism (Betts et al., 2013).

Thrombocytopenia

Thrombocytopenia is a condition in which there is an insufficient number of platelets, possibly leading to ineffective blood clotting and excessive bleeding (Betts et al., 2013).

Hemophilia

Hemophilia is a group of related genetic disorders in which certain plasma clotting factors are lacking, inadequate or nonfunctional. Patients with hemophilia bleed from even minor internal and external wounds and leak blood into joint spaces after exercise and into urine and stool. Regular infusions of clotting factors isolated from healthy donors can help prevent bleeding in hemophiliac patients. At some point, genetic therapy will become a viable option (Betts et al., 2013).

Leukocyte Disorders

Leukopenia

Leukopenia is a condition in which too few leukocytes are produced. If this condition is pronounced, the individual may be unable to ward off disease (Betts et al., 2013).

Leukocytosis

Leukocytosis is excessive leukocyte proliferation. Although leukocyte counts are high, the cells themselves are often nonfunctional, leaving the individual at increased risk for disease (Betts et al., 2013).

Leukemia

Leukemia is a cancer involving an abundance of leukocytes. It may involve only one specific type of leukocyte from either the myeloid line (myelocytic leukemia) or the lymphoid line (lymphocytic leukemia). In chronic leukemia, mature leukocytes accumulate and fail to die. In acute leukemia, there is an overproduction of young, immature leukocytes. In both conditions, the cells do not function properly (Betts et al., 2013).

Lymphoma

Lymphoma is a form of cancer in which masses of malignant T and/or B lymphocytes collect in lymph nodes, the spleen, the liver, and other tissues. As in leukemia, the malignant leukocytes do not function properly, and the patient is vulnerable to infection. Some forms of lymphoma tend to progress slowly and respond well to treatment. Others tend to progress quickly and require aggressive treatment, without which they are rapidly fatal (Betts et al., 2013).

Other Conditions Related to Abnormal Leukocyte Counts

Table 10.5. Conditions Related to Abnormal White Blood Cell Counts. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Cell Type	Conditions Related to High Counts	Conditions Related to Low Counts
Neutrophil	Infection, inflammation, burns, unusual stress	Drug toxicity, other disorders
Eosinophil	Allergies, parasitic worm infestations, some autoimmune diseases	Drug toxicity, stress
Basophil	Allergies, parasitic infections, hypothyroidism	Pregnancy, stress, hyperthyroidism
Lymphocyte	Viral infections, some cancers	chronic illness, immunosuppression (due to HIV or steroid therapy)
Monocyte	Viral or fungal infections, tuberculosis, some forms of leukemia, other chronic diseases	Bone marrow suppression

Bone Marrow Biopsy/Bone Marrow Transplant

Sometimes, a healthcare provider will order a **bone marrow biopsy**, a diagnostic test of a sample of red bone marrow, or a **bone marrow transplant**, a treatment in which a donor's healthy bone marrow—and its stem cells—replaces the faulty bone marrow of a patient. These tests and procedures are often used to assist in the diagnosis and treatment of various severe forms of anemia, such as **thalassemia major** and **sickle cell anemia**, as well as some types of cancer, specifically leukemia.

In the past, bone marrow sampling or transplant was very painful, as the procedure involved inserting a large-bore needle into the region near the iliac crest of the pelvic bones. Now, direct sampling of bone marrow can often be avoided as stem cells can be isolated in just a few hours from a sample of a patient's blood. The isolated stem cells are then grown in culture using the appropriate **hemopoietic growth factors**, and analyzed or sometimes frozen for later use.

For an individual requiring a transplant, a matching donor is essential to prevent the immune system from destroying the donor cells—a phenomenon known as **tissue rejection**. To treat patients with bone marrow transplants, it is first necessary to destroy the patient's own diseased marrow through radiation and/or chemotherapy. Donor bone marrow stem cells are then infused into the recipient's bloodstream, so that they can establish themselves in the recipient's bone marrow (Betts et al., 2013).

Check Your Knowledge of Cardiovascular System Terms and Abbreviations

Common Cardiovascular System – Blood, Abbreviations

Many terms and phrases related to the cardiovascular system – blood are abbreviated. Learn these common abbreviations by expanding the list below.

Cardiovascular System – Blood Abbreviations

- **aPTT** (activated partial thromboplastin time)
- **CBC and Diff** (complete blood count and differential)
- **CPK** (creatine phosphokinase)
- **Hct** (hematocrit)
- **Hgb** (hemoglobin)
- **PT** (prothrombin time)
- **RBC** (red blood cell, erythrocyte)
- **WBC** (white blood cell, leukocyte)

Activity source: Cardiovascular System – Blood Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#).
/ Converted to text.

Cardiovascular System – Consultation Report

Cardiovascular System – Consultation Report (Text version)

Fill in the consultation report with using the following words:

- Angiogram
- defect
- palpitations
- infection
- blood pressure
- coronary

PATIENT NAME: Jack MIRANDA

AGE: 74

SEX: Male

DATE OF CONSULTATION: March 26, 2020

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Kevin Palmer, MD, Cardiology

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Coronary artery disease.

PAST MEDICAL HISTORY

1. Coronary artery disease. He had an NST MI in July 2015. _____[Blank 1] showed three-vessel disease and had PCT of RCA OM1. LAD had 60% stenosis which was no significant by FFR and medical management was recommended. He had a Grade 2 left ventricular function after the MI, but it improved a year later. His last echocardiogram in 2019 showed preserved ejection fraction at 60 with no significant valvular abnormalities and no significant wall motion abnormalities. He had an exercise Myoview in 2018 where he could achieve a workload of 9 Mets without symptoms or electrical changes. Perfusion images showed a wall fixed inferior _____[Blank 2] in keeping with his previous inferior MI.
2. Hypertension.
3. Hypercholesterolemia.
4. Ex-smoker quit in 2016.
5. Rare alcohol.
6. Gout.
7. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia.

MEDICATIONS

Aspirin 81 mg q.d.
Bisoprolol 5 mg q.d.
Candesartan 60 mg q.d.
Atorvastatin 80 mg q.d.
Ezetrol 10 mg q.d.
Allopurinol 300 mg q.d.

HISTORY: Overall, he has been feeling well. He denies any exertional symptoms with usual activity. He walks his dog 20 minutes a day and denies any chest pain, shortness of breath. He denies orthopnea, _____[Blank 3], dizziness presyncope, or syncope.

He was recently hospitalized with a respiratory _____[Blank 4]. He was treated with antibiotics and was discharged 2 days later. He has been feeling better and has gone back to his usual activities.

In regards to his CLL, he has been stable with usual lymphocyte count around 30. No other cytopenia. No splenomegaly. He is being followed with a surveillance strategy with regular CBCs by hematologist.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: On physical exam he is alert and oriented in no acute distress, hemodynamically stable, _____[Blank 5] 120/70, heart rate 60 with regular rhythm, there is no evidence of volume overload, lungs are clear. Lab work showed white cell count of 30 with lymphocytes, 25 hemoglobin, 122 platelets, 340 creatinine, 70 EGFR, 75 sodium, 144 potassium, 5.6, A1c 5.4L, DL 1.2.

SUMMARY: Mr. Miranda seems to be stable from the cardiac point of view. He has a history of _____[Blank 6] artery disease with previous MI treated with PCI of RCA and OM1. He has a residual 60% stenosis of LAD that was not significant by FFR. He is on antiplatelet agents, high intensity statin therapy, and the combination of ARB's and beta-blockers. As long as his functional capacity remains stable, we do not need to do a follow up. Exercise treadmill test but should his symptoms change, this should be considered.

PLAN: His blood pressure is well controlled. His LDL is within the goal. There is no history of diabetes. He quit smoking 2016. I made no changed to his current treatment plan and advised him to come back in a year's time and earlier, should symptoms change.

Kevin Palmer, MD, Cardiology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Neurological System – History and Physical Examination by Sheila Bellefeuille & Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Blood Vessels and Blood

Vascular Surgeons

Vascular surgery is a specialty in which the physician treats diseases of the blood and lymphatic vessels. This includes repair and replacement of diseased or damaged vessels, removal of plaque from vessels, minimally invasive procedures, including the insertion of venous catheters, and traditional surgery (Betts et al., 2013; Canadian Society for Vascular Surgery, n.d.). For more information, please visit the [Canadian Society for Vascular Surgery website \[New Tab\]](#).

Hematologists

Hematologists are specialist physicians that diagnose and treat blood disorders. These physicians must be well-versed in a wide array of laboratory procedures, basic medical disciplines, and clinical medicine (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). To learn more about hematologists, visit the [Canadian Medical Association's specialty profile on hematology \[PDF\]](#).

Diagnostic Vascular Technologist

Also known as Canadian Registered Vascular Sonographers (CRVS®), these specialists are technologists that image the vascular system (Sonography Canada, 2021). To learn more, visit the [Sonography Canada Credentials web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Phlebotomist

Phlebotomists are professionals trained to draw blood (phleb- = “a blood vessel”; -tomy = “to cut”). When more than a few drops of blood are required, phlebotomists perform a venipuncture, typically of a surface vein in the arm. They perform a capillary stick on a finger, an earlobe, or the heel of an infant when only a small quantity of blood is required. An arterial stick is collected from an artery and used to analyze blood gases. After collection, the blood may be analyzed by medical laboratories or perhaps used for transfusions, donations, or research (Betts et al., 2013).

Image Descriptions

Figure 10.16 image description: The left panel (a) shows the cross-section of a normal and a narrowed artery. A normal artery has no plaque along the artery walls which means there is normal blood flow. In a narrow artery,

plaque forms on the arterial walls causing abnormal blood flow. The right panel (b) shows a micrograph of an artery with plaque in it. [\[Return to Figure 10.16\]](#).

Figure 10.18 image description: This photograph shows red blood cells of a person suffering from sickle cell anemia. Instead of being discoid shaped like healthy blood cells, sickle red blood cells are shaped like a sickle. [\[Return to Figure 10.18\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1) Angiogram 2) defect 3) palpitations 4) infection 5) blood pressure 6) coronary

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Cardiovascular System-Blood Vocabulary

ABG

Arterial blood gas. This test measures blood pH, oxygen and CO₂ levels in a sample of arterial blood, usually taken from the wrist.

AIDS

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, caused by infection with the HIV virus.

Aneurysm

Weakening of the wall of a blood vessel, causing it to thin and balloon out, and possibly eventually burst, resulting in internal bleeding.

Angioplasty

A balloon-tip catheter is fed through a blood vessel up to the site of the narrowing, the balloon is inflated to re-open the artery. A stent is sometimes placed at the site to reinforce the arterial wall and to prevent re-occlusion.

Anti-B Antibodies

Proteins that will mount an immune response against B antigens.

Antibodies

Also called immunoglobulins, proteins produced by B lymphocytes in response to a non-self antigen.

Antigens

A substance that provokes an immune response. This happens because the immune system sees the antigen as foreign, or 'non-self' (does not belong in that body).

Arteries

Blood vessels that transport blood away from the heart.

Arterioles

A very small artery that leads to a capillary.

Arteriosclerosis

Hardening of arteries.

Atherosclerosis

A hardening of the arteries that involves the accumulation of plaque.

Brachial Artery

Large artery in the upper arm near the biceps muscle.

Capillary

A microscopic channel that supplies blood to the tissues through perfusion.

Cardiac Output

Cardiac output is the measurement of blood flow from the heart through the ventricles, and is usually measured in liters per minute. Any factor that causes cardiac output to increase, by elevating heart rate or stroke volume or both, will elevate blood pressure and promote blood flow.

Cardiac Tamponade

The pericardial sac surrounding the heart has filled with blood or other fluid and the resulting pressure is preventing the heart from beating effectively.

Cardiogenic

Originating from the heart.

Carotid Artery

A large artery in the neck.

Celiac Disease

Inflammation of the intestines caused by exposure to gluten.

Centrifuged

A centrifuge is a common piece of laboratory equipment used to spin test tubes at a high speed in order to separate components in a liquid by weight.

Chemoreceptors

Cells that sense changes in chemical levels.

Chemotaxis

Movement in response to chemicals; a phenomenon in which injured or infected cells and nearby leukocytes emit the equivalent of a chemical "911" call, attracting more leukocytes to the site.

Compliance

The ability of any compartment to expand to accommodate increased content. The greater the compliance of an artery, the more effectively it is able to expand to accommodate surges in blood flow without increased resistance or blood pressure.

Coronary Artery Bypass Graft (CABG)

In a coronary bypass procedure, a non-vital superficial vessel from another part of the body (often the great saphenous vein) or a synthetic vessel is inserted to create a path around the blocked area of a coronary artery.

Coronary Heart Disease

Also called coronary artery disease (CAD); the blood vessels that supply blood to the myocardium become hardened and narrowed, impairing the delivery of oxygen to the heart muscle.

Crohn Disease

A type of inflammatory bowel disease.

Diapedesis

dia- = “through”; -pedan = “to leap”

Diastolic Pressure

The diastolic pressure is the lower value (usually about 80 mm Hg) and represents the arterial pressure of blood during ventricular relaxation, or diastole.

Edema

Swelling.

Embolus

A freely moving piece of a substance (plaque or blood clot) that travels through the circulation until it blocks a smaller blood vessel, cutting off the supply of oxygen to the tissue.

Endothelium

The lining of the lumen of a blood vessel.

Epiphyses

The ends of long bones, singular is epiphysis.

EPO

Erythropoietin is a hormone produced by the kidneys that plays an important role in the homeostasis of red blood cells levels in the body.

Erythrocytes

Red blood cells.

Extramedullary Hemopoiesis

Hemopoiesis outside the medullary cavity of adult bones.

Heart Rate

The number of times the heart contracts in one minute.

Hematocrit

A lab test which measures the percentage red blood cells in a sample of whole blood. It represents how much of the person's blood is made up of red blood cells, by volume.

Hemolysis

Breaking apart of the erythrocyte cell membrane, allowing its contents to leak out.

Hemopoiesis

Also called hematopoiesis; from the Greek root haima- = "blood"; -poiesis = "production".

Hemopoietic Growth Factors

Chemical messengers which promote the proliferation and differentiation of formed elements and include erythropoietin, thrombopoietin, colony-stimulating factors, and interleukins.

Hemorrhage

Excessive or uncontrolled bleeding from the blood vessels.

Hemostasis

The process by which the body seals a ruptured blood vessel to prevent further blood loss.

Homeostasis

Biological process that results in stable equilibrium.

Hypertension

High blood pressure.

Hypothyroidism

Underactive thyroid gland, insufficient production of thyroid hormones (T3 and T4).

Hypovolemic

hypo=below, lower than normal, volemic=pertaining to volume (in this case, the volume of blood in the body).

Hypoxemia

Low blood oxygen levels.

Hypoxia

Literally: 'lower than normal amount of oxygen to tissues'. Hypoxia means that a tissue is not getting enough oxygen to survive and cell death is likely.

Ischemia

Insufficient blood and oxygen to cells of an organ. These cells are starving for oxygen, but they are still alive.

Leukocytes

White blood cells.

Lupus

An autoimmune disease in which the body mounts an immune response against its own tissues, causing chronic inflammation and tissue damage.

Macrophages

A type of leukocyte (usually a monocyte) that has the ability to ingest and destroy other cells or pathogens.

Medulla Oblongata

A part of the brain stem responsible for control of heart rate and breathing.

Perfusion

The delivery of blood to an area/tissue/organ.

Peripheral Arterial Disease

The obstruction of vessels in peripheral regions of the body.

pH

A measure of how acidic or alkaline a substance is, as determined by the number of free hydrogen ions in the substance.

Phagocytized

Also phagocytosed, this is the process by which certain cells are able to 'eat' other cells or substances by engulfing them.

Placenta

The organ of gas and nutrient exchange between the baby and the mother.

Plaque

A fatty material including cholesterol, connective tissue, white blood cells, and some smooth muscle cells.

Plasma Cells

A type of B lymphocyte that produces antibodies which bind to specific foreign or abnormal antigens, in order to destroy them.

Pneumothorax

An excessive amount of air is present in the thoracic cavity, outside of the lungs, putting pressure on the lungs and interfering with venous return, pulmonary function, and delivery of oxygen to the tissues.

Polycythemia Vera

A type of bone marrow disease that causes an excessive production of immature erythrocytes.

Pulmonary Embolism

A piece of a blood clot or other substance has broken free from its original location and traveled through the bloodstream to lodge in a smaller vessel in the lungs. This causes an obstruction in that vessel and hypoxia to the tissues supplied by that vessel.

Rheumatoid Arthritis

An autoimmune disorder in which the body mounts an immune response against its own joint tissues, causing inflammation and damage to the joints.

Sickle Cell Disease

Also called sickle cell anemia; A genetic disorder involving the production of an abnormal type of hemoglobin which delivers less oxygen to tissues and causes erythrocytes to assume a sickle (or crescent) shape.

Silent Disorder

A disease or disorder that often lacks signs or symptoms.

Sphygmomanometer

A blood pressure cuff attached to a measuring device, or gauge.

Systolic Pressure

The systolic pressure is the higher value (typically around 120 mm Hg) and reflects the arterial pressure resulting from the ejection of blood during ventricular contraction, or systole.

Thalassemia

An inherited condition typically occurring in individuals from the Middle East, the Mediterranean, African, and Southeast Asia, in which maturation of the RBCs does not proceed normally. The most severe form is called Cooley's anemia.

Thrombocytes

Also called platelets, these are cell fragments that aid in blood clotting.

Thrombocytosis

A condition in which there are too many platelets.

Thrombosis

Formation of unwanted blood clots.

Tissue Rejection

Also called organ rejection. The recipient's immune system recognizes the transplanted tissue, the graft, as non-self and mounts an immune response against it, ultimately destroying it.

Vasoconstrict

The smooth muscle layer in the blood vessel wall contracts, causing the vessel diameter to narrow. This increases blood pressure in the vessel.

Vasodilate

The smooth muscle layer in the wall of the blood vessel relaxes, allowing the vessel to widen. This decreases blood pressure in the vessel.

Vein

Blood vessels that carry blood back to the heart.

Venules

Extremely small veins.

Vessel Compliance

The ability of any compartment to expand to accommodate increased content. The greater the compliance of an artery, the more effectively it is able to expand to accommodate surges in blood flow without increased resistance or blood pressure.

Viscosity

The thickness of fluids that affects their ability to flow.

Cardiovascular System -Blood Vessels and Blood Glossary

Cardiovascular System -Blood Vessels and Blood Glossary (Text version)

1. Proteins produced by B lymphocytes in response to a non-self antigen are called _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Antibodies
 - b. Capillaries
 - c. Macrophages
2. An autoimmune disorder in which the body mounts an immune response against its own joint tissues, causing inflammation and damage to the joints is referred to as _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Rheumatoid Arthritis
 - b. Sickle Cell Disease
 - c. Crohn Disease

3. A freely moving piece of a substance (plaque or blood clot) that travels through the circulation until it blocks a smaller blood vessel, cutting off the supply of oxygen to the tissue is called _____[Blank 3].
- a. Embolus
 - b. Perfusion
 - c. Perfusion
4. _____[Blank 4] is the thickness of fluids that affects their ability to flow.
- a. Viscosity
 - b. Pneumothorax
 - c. Thrombosis
5. The process by which the body seals a ruptured blood vessel to prevent further blood loss is called _____[Blank 5].
- a. Homeostasis
 - b. Hemostasis
 - c. Hemopoiesis

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Cardiovascular System –Blood Vessels and Blood Glossary by Tiffany Hunt, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to Text.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Cardiovascular System – Blood Vessels and Blood chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Antibodies, 2. Rheumatoid Arthritis, 3. Embolus, 4. Viscosity, 5. Hemostasis

References

Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Hematology profile*. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/hematology-e.pdf>

Canadian Society for Medical Laboratory Science. (n.d.). *Who are lab professionals*. <https://www.csmls.org/Medical-Laboratory-Professionals/About/Who-are-Lab-Professionals.aspx>

Canadian Society for Vascular Surgery. (2020). *Patients: What is vascular surgery?* <https://canadianvascular.ca/Patients>

CrashCourse. (2015, July 20). *Blood vessels, part 1 – Form and function: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #27* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/v43ej5lCeBo>

Sonography Canada. (2021, November 19). *Credentials*. Sonography Canada: Certification. <https://sonographycanada.ca/certification/credentials>

CHAPTER 11: LYMPHATIC AND IMMUNE SYSTEMS

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [11.1 – Introduction to the Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)
- [11.2 – Anatomy & Physiology of the Lymphatic System](#)
- [11.3 – The Organization of the Immune System](#)
- [11.4 – Diseases and Disorders](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

11.1 - Introduction to the Lymphatic and Immune Systems

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of lymphatic and immune systems
- Identify and describe the organization of the lymphatic system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the lymphatic and immune systems
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of lymphatic and immune system medical terminology medical terms of the lymphatic and immune systems
- Identify the medical specialties associated with lymphatic and immune systems and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Word Parts for the Lymphatic and Immune Systems

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the lymphatic and immune systems.

Prefix

- **a-** (no, not, negates meaning)
- **an-** (no, not, negates meaning)

Combining Form

- **immun/o** (immune, immunity)
- **lymph/o** (lymph, lymph tissue)
- **lymphaden/o** (lymph gland, lymph node)

- **myel/o** (bone marrow, spinal cord)
- **splen/o** (spleen)
- **thym/o** (thymus gland)

Suffix

- **-cyte** (cell)
- **-ectomy** (excision, cut out)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist, physician who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-megaly** (enlarged, enlargement)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumor, swelling)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing)

Activity source: Lymphatic System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Introduction to the Lymphatic and Immune Systems

The **lymphatic system** is a series of vessels, ducts, and trunks that remove interstitial fluid from the tissues and return it to the blood. The lymphatic vessels are also used to transport dietary lipids and cells of the **immune system**. Cells of the immune system, lymphocytes, all come from the hematopoietic system of the bone marrow. Primary lymphoid organs, the bone marrow and thymus gland, are the locations where lymphocytes proliferate and mature. Secondary lymphoid organs are the site in which mature lymphocytes congregate to mount immune responses. Many immune system cells use the lymphatic and circulatory systems for transport throughout the body to search for and then protect against pathogens.

This chapter begins by describing the anatomy and physiology of the lymphatic system, whose immune functions lead us into a discussion of the body's multifaceted defenses, which together make up the immune system. Since the lymphatic system shares organs with a number of other body systems, the pathology discussed near the end of this chapter mainly focuses on disorders of the immune system.

Watch [Lymphatic System: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #44 \(9 min\) on YouTube](#)

Lymphatic and Immune Systems Medical Terms

Lymphatic System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following **lymphatic system** words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **autoimmune disease (aut/o/immun/e disease)**
 - A disease caused by the inability for the body to distinguish its own (self) cells from foreign substances, producing antibodies that attacks its own tissues
2. **immune (immun/e)**
 - Resistant to specific pathogens
3. **immunodeficiency (immun/o/deficiency)**
 - deficient immune response caused by the immune system dysfunction
4. **Immunologist (Immun/o/logist)**
 - specialist who studies and treats immune system disorders
5. **immunology (immun/o/logy)**
 - study of disorders of the immune system
6. **phagocytosis (phag/o/cyt/osis)**
 - Process where some white blood cells engulf invading microorganisms

Activity source: “Lymphatic System Medical Terms” by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Lymphatic and Immune Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

11.2 - Anatomy & Physiology of the Lymphatic System

The lymphatic vessels begin as open-ended capillaries, which feed into larger and larger lymphatic vessels, and eventually empty into the bloodstream. Along the way, the lymph travels through the lymph nodes, which are commonly found near the groin, armpits, neck, chest, and abdomen. Humans have about 500–600 lymph nodes throughout the body (see [Figure 11.1](#)). Several organs and tissues that participate in immunity are also part of the lymphatic system.

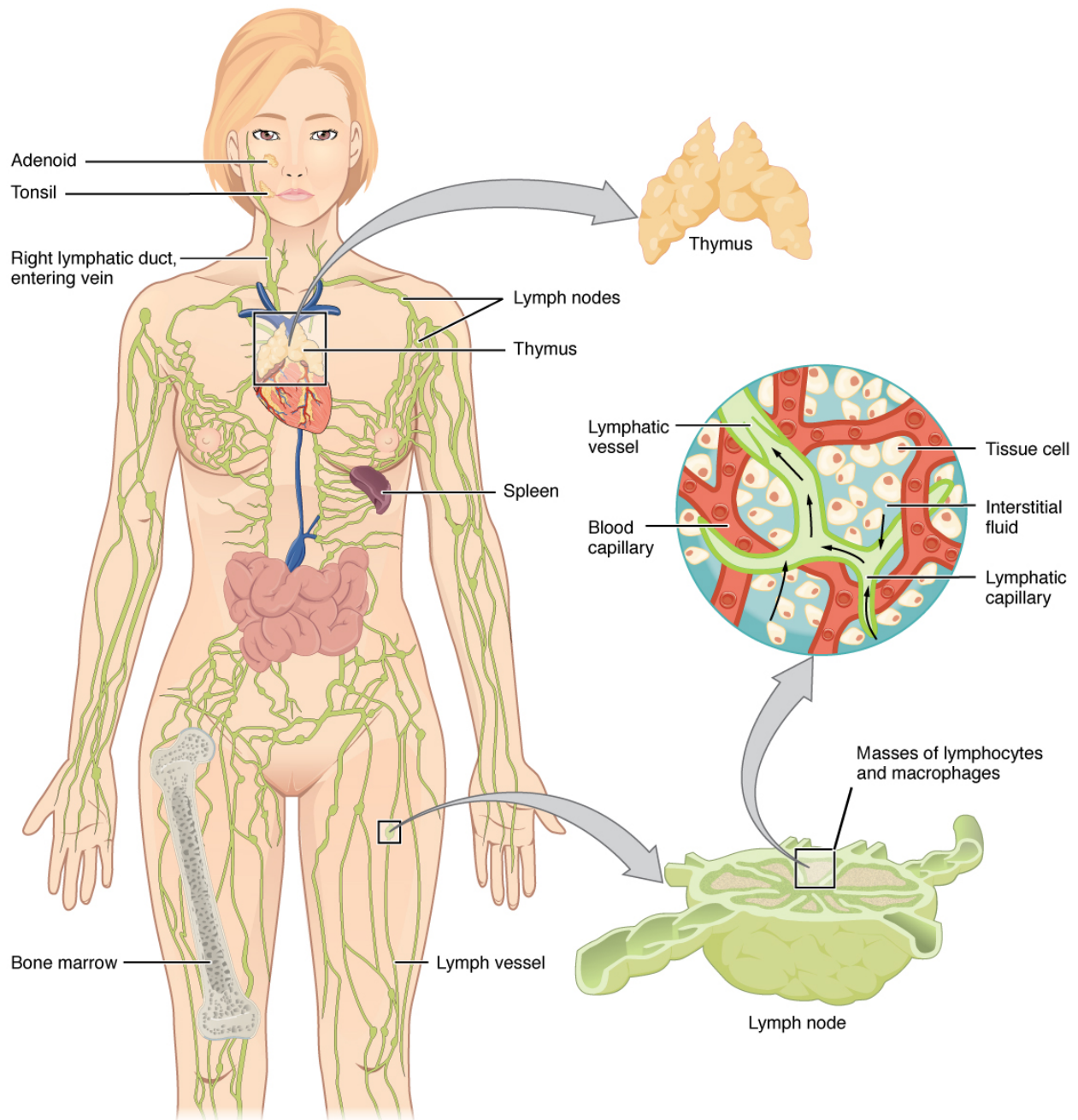


Figure 11.1 Anatomy of the Lymphatic System. Lymphatic vessels in the arms and legs convey lymph to the larger lymphatic vessels in the torso. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 11.1 Image description.]

Lymphatic Capillaries

An important function of the lymphatic system is to return the fluid (lymph) to the blood. **Lymph** may be thought of as recycled blood plasma. Blood pressure causes leakage of fluid from the blood capillaries, resulting in the accumulation of fluid in the **interstitial space**. In humans, 20 liters of plasma is released into the interstitial space

of the tissues each day due to capillary leakage. The blood vessels reabsorb 17 liters of this **interstitial fluid**, leaving three litres in the tissues for the lymphatic system to transport back to the circulation. If the lymphatic system is damaged in some way, such as by being blocked by cancer cells or destroyed by injury, interstitial fluid accumulates in the tissue spaces, causing a condition called lymphedema.

Did You Know 1?

Lymphatic vessels and blood vessels are similar in structure and function. Lymph is not actively pumped by the heart, but is forced through the vessels by the movements of the body muscles (Betts, et al., 2013).

Lymphatic capillaries, also called the terminal lymphatics, are vessels where interstitial fluid enters the lymphatic system to become lymph. Located in almost every tissue in the body, these vessels are interlaced among the arterioles and venules of the circulatory system in the soft connective tissues of the body. See [Figure 11.2](#). Exceptions are the central nervous system, bone marrow, bones, teeth, and the cornea of the eye, which do not contain lymph vessels.

Lymph capillaries in the tissue spaces

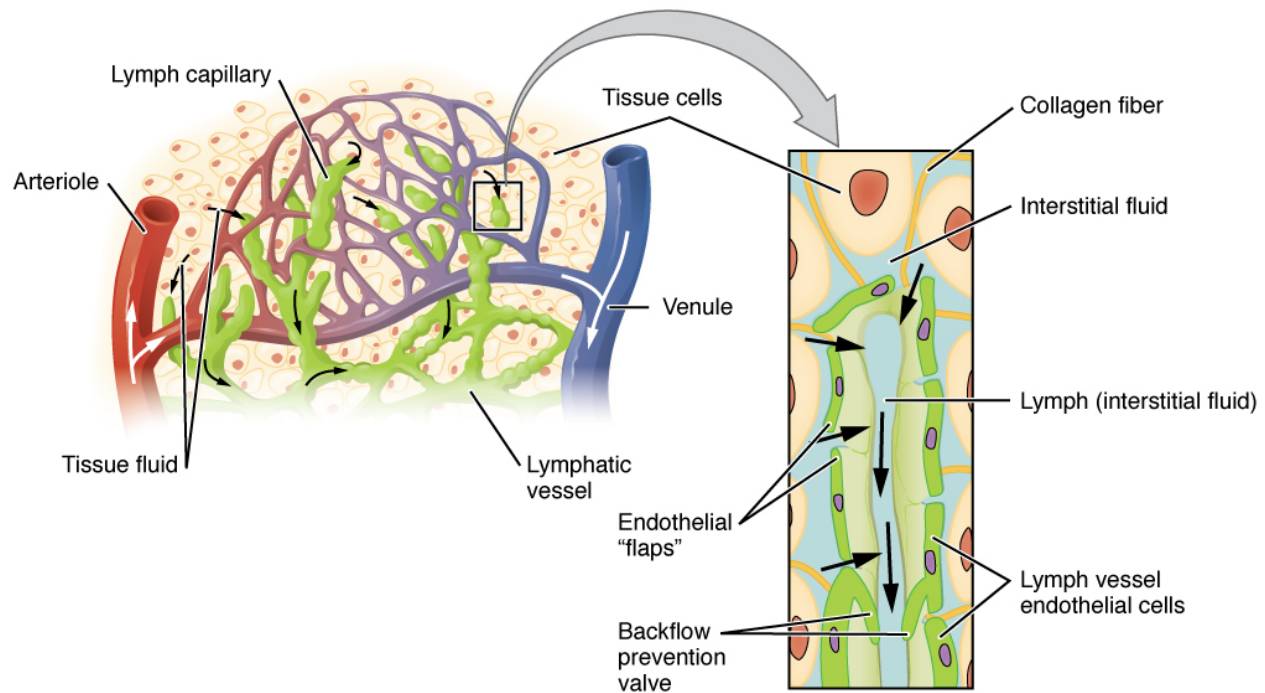


Figure 11.2 Lymphatic Capillaries. Lymphatic capillaries are interlaced with the arterioles and venules of the cardiovascular system. Collagen fibers anchor a lymphatic capillary in the tissue (inset). Interstitial fluid slips through spaces between the overlapping endothelial cells that compose the lymphatic capillary. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 11.2 Image description.](#)]

Larger Lymphatic Vessels, Trunks, and Ducts

The lymphatic capillaries empty into larger lymphatic vessels, which are similar to veins in terms of their three-tunic structure and the presence of valves. These one-way valves are located fairly close to one another, and each one causes a bulge in the lymphatic vessel, giving the vessels a beaded appearance (see [Figure 11.2](#)).

In general, **superficial lymphatics** follow the same routes as veins, whereas **deep lymphatic vessels** of the viscera generally follow the paths of arteries. The superficial and deep lymphatics eventually merge to form larger lymphatic structures known as **lymphatic trunks**. On the right side of the body, the right sides of the head, thorax, and right upper limb trunks drain lymph fluid into the right subclavian vein via the **right lymphatic duct** (see [Figure 11.3](#)). On the left side of the body, the trunks from the remaining portions of the body drain into the larger **thoracic duct**, which drains into the left subclavian vein. The thoracic duct itself begins just beneath the diaphragm in the **cisterna chyli**.

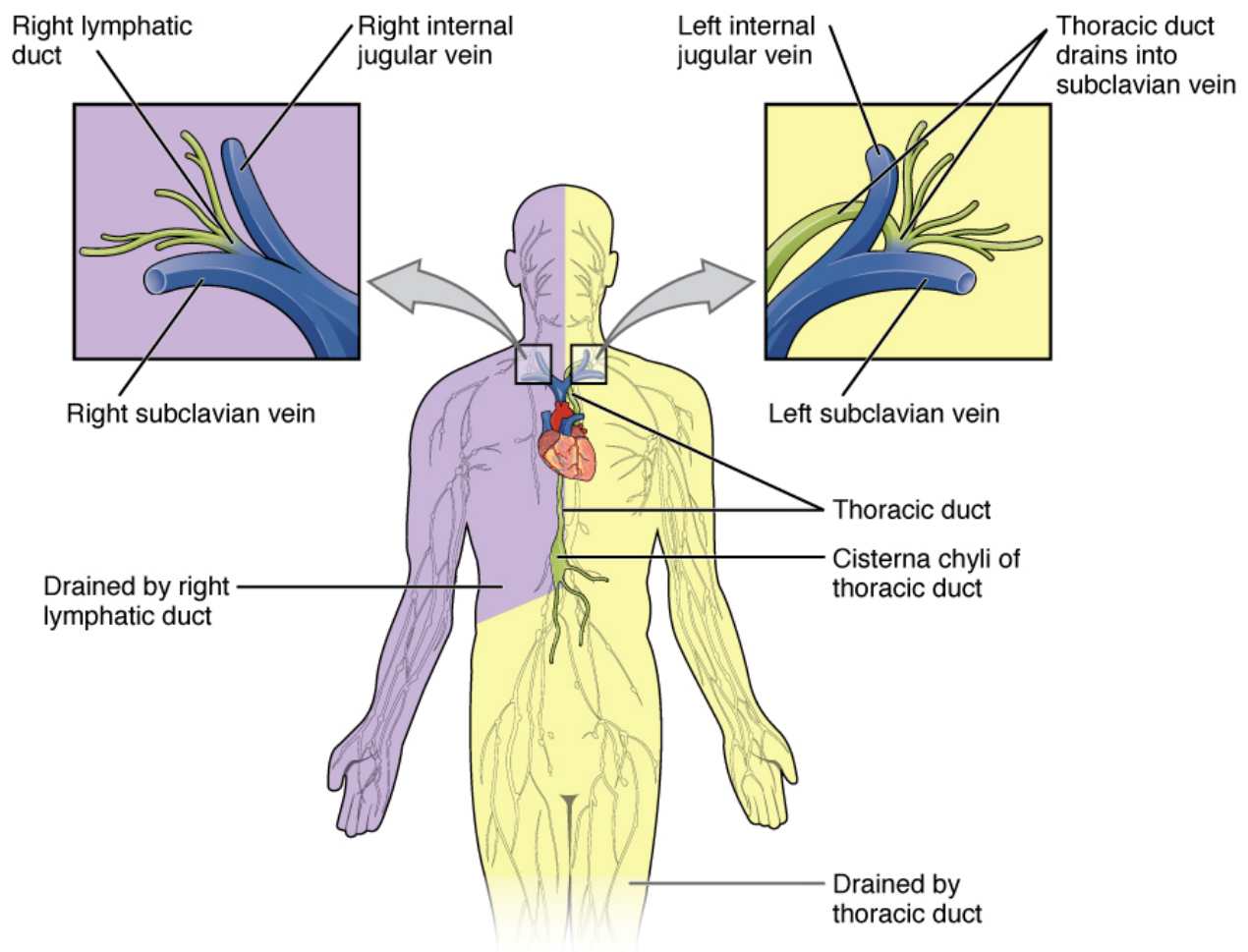


Figure 11.3 Major Trunks and Ducts of the Lymphatic System. The thoracic duct drains a much larger portion of the body than does the right lymphatic duct. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 11.3 Image description.](#)]

Primary Lymphoid Organs

The **primary lymphoid organs** are the bone marrow and thymus gland. The lymphoid organs are where lymphocytes mature, proliferate, and are selected, which enables them to attack pathogens without harming the cells of the body.

- Bone Marrow
 - Recall that all blood cells, including lymphocytes, are formed in the red bone marrow. The B cell undergoes nearly all of its development in the red bone marrow, whereas the immature T cell, called a **thymocyte**, leaves the bone marrow and matures largely in the thymus gland.
- Thymus
 - The **thymus** gland, where T cells mature, is a **bilobed** organ found in the space between the sternum and the aorta of the heart (see [Figure 11.4](#)). Connective tissue holds the lobes closely together but also separates them and forms a capsule.
 - The loss of immune function with age is called immunosenescence. One major cause of age-related immune deficiencies is **thymic involution**.
 - The shrinking of the thymus gland begins at birth at a rate of about three percent tissue loss per year. This shrinking continues until 35–45 years of age, then the rate declines to about one percent loss per year for the rest of one's life. At that pace, the total loss of thymic epithelial tissue and **thymocytes** would occur at about 120 years of age. So, in theory, 120 years could be the maximum life span.

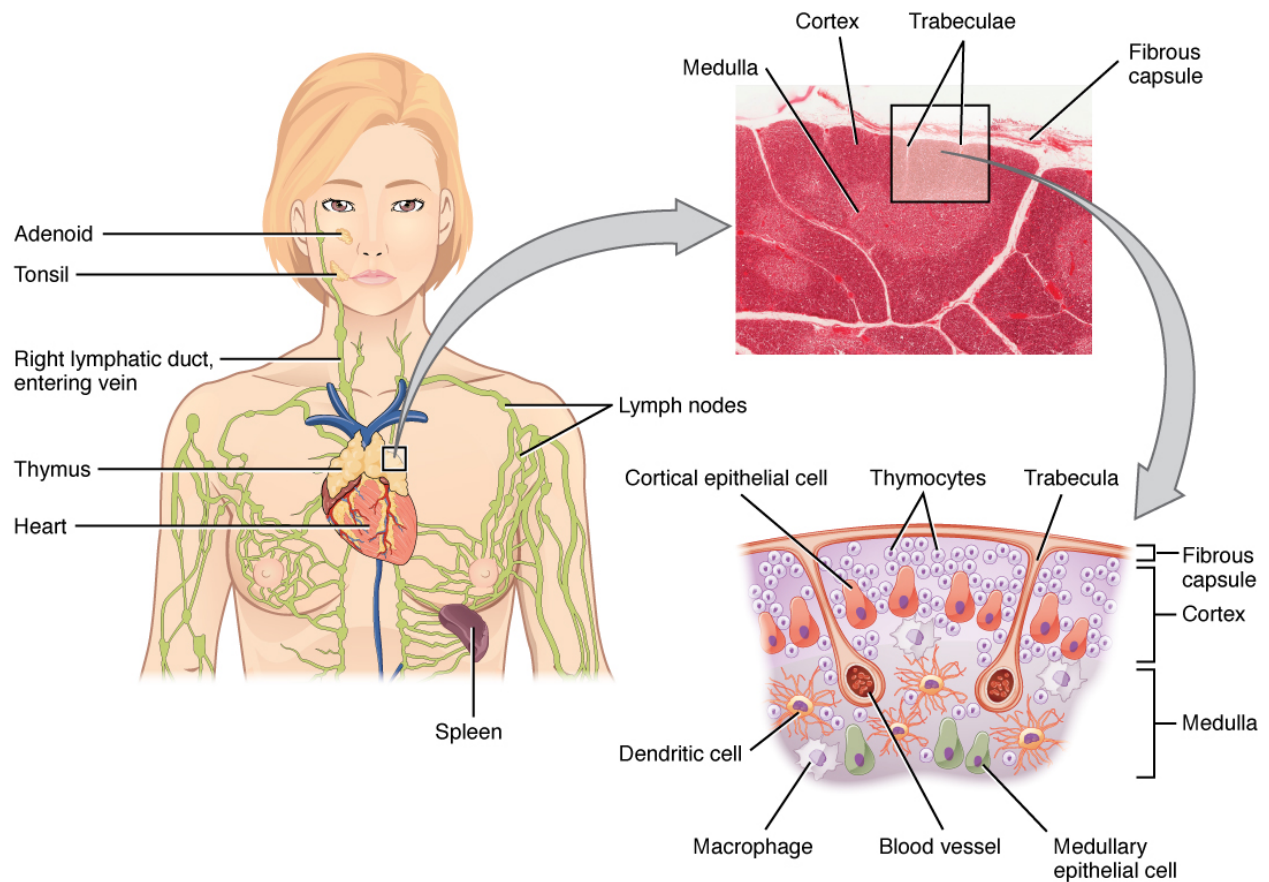


Figure 11.4 Location, Structure, and Histology of the Thymus. The thymus lies above the heart. The trabeculae and lobules, including the darkly staining cortex and the lighter staining medulla of each lobule, are clearly visible in the light micrograph of the thymus of a newborn. LM \times 100. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 11.4 Image description.]

Concept Check

- Do you remember what the suffix “-oid” means?
- Can you explain the term **lymphoid**?

Did You Know 2?

The thymus gland produces a hormone called thymosin and is therefore also considered to be part of the endocrine system.

Secondary Lymphoid Organs

Lymphocytes develop and mature in the **primary lymphoid organs**, but they mount immune responses from the **secondary lymphoid organs**, which include the lymph nodes, spleen, and lymphoid nodules. A **naïve lymphocyte** is one that has left the primary organ, where it learned to function immunologically, and entered a secondary lymphoid organ where it waits to encounter an antigen against which it will mount a response (see [Figure 11.5](#)).

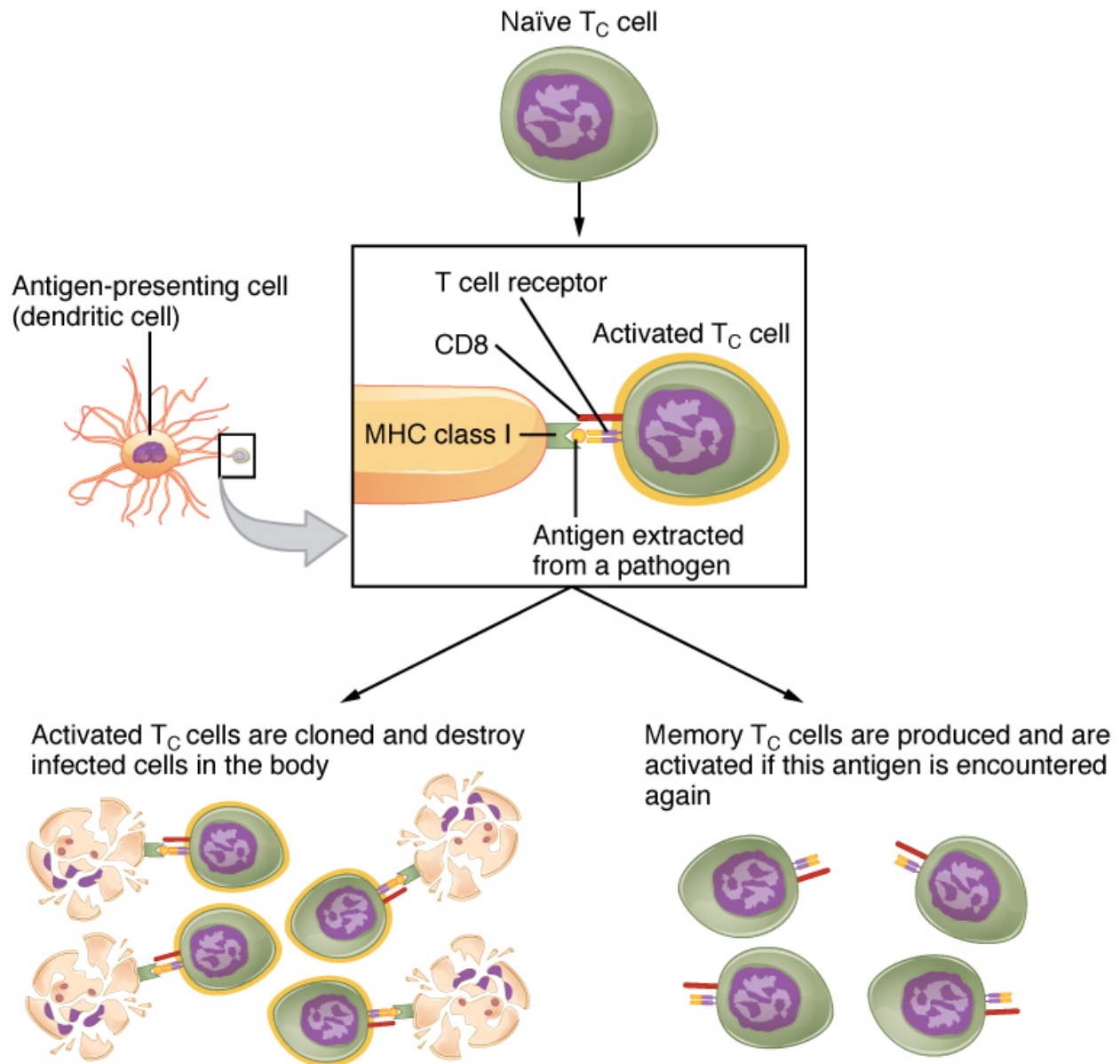


Figure 11.5 Clonal Selection and Expansion of T Lymphocytes. Stem cells differentiate into T cells with specific receptors, called clones. The clones with receptors specific for antigens on the pathogen are selected for and expanded. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 11.5 Image description.]

Lymph Nodes

Lymph nodes function to remove debris and pathogens from the lymph, and are thus sometimes referred to as the “filters of the lymph” (see [Figure 11.6](#)). Any bacteria that infect the interstitial fluid are taken up by the lymphatic capillaries and transported to a regional lymph node. Dendritic cells and macrophages within this organ internalize and kill many of the pathogens that pass through, thereby removing them from the body. The lymph node is also the site of **adaptive immune responses** mediated by T cells, B cells, and accessory cells of the adaptive immune system.

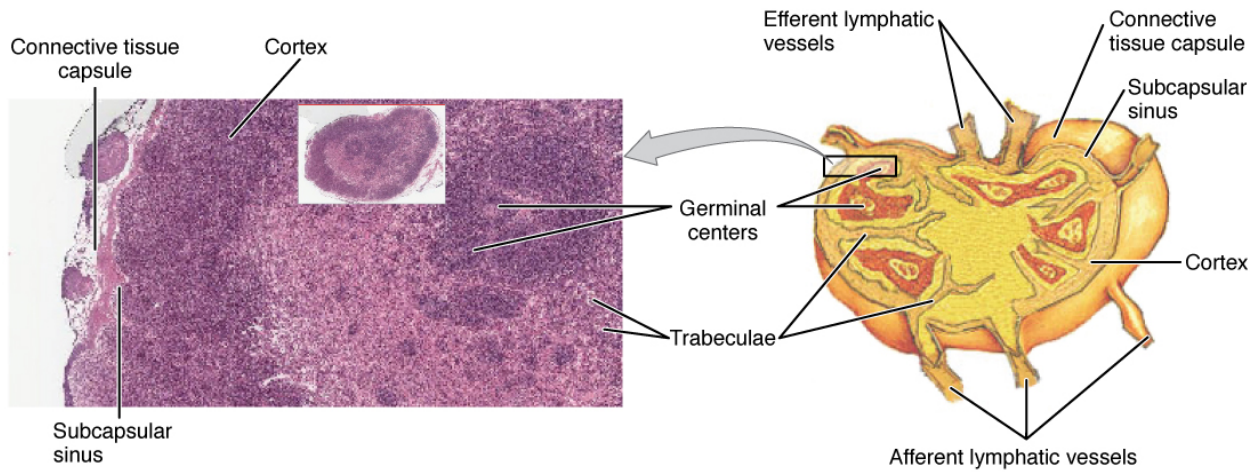


Figure 11.6 Structure and Histology of a Lymph Node. Lymph nodes are masses of lymphatic tissue located along the larger lymph vessels. The micrograph of the lymph nodes shows a germinal center, which consists of rapidly dividing B cells surrounded by a layer of T cells and other accessory cells. LM \times 128. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School \textcopyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 11.6 Image description.](#)]

Did You Know 3?

You can live without your spleen. Do you remember the term for “surgical removal of the spleen”?

Spleen

The **spleen** is a vascular organ that is somewhat fragile due to the absence of a capsule. It is about 12 cm long and is attached to the lateral border of the stomach. The spleen is sometimes called the “filter of the blood” because of its extensive vascularization and the presence of macrophages and dendritic cells that remove microbes and other materials from the blood, including dying red blood cells. The spleen also functions as the location of immune responses to blood-borne pathogens.

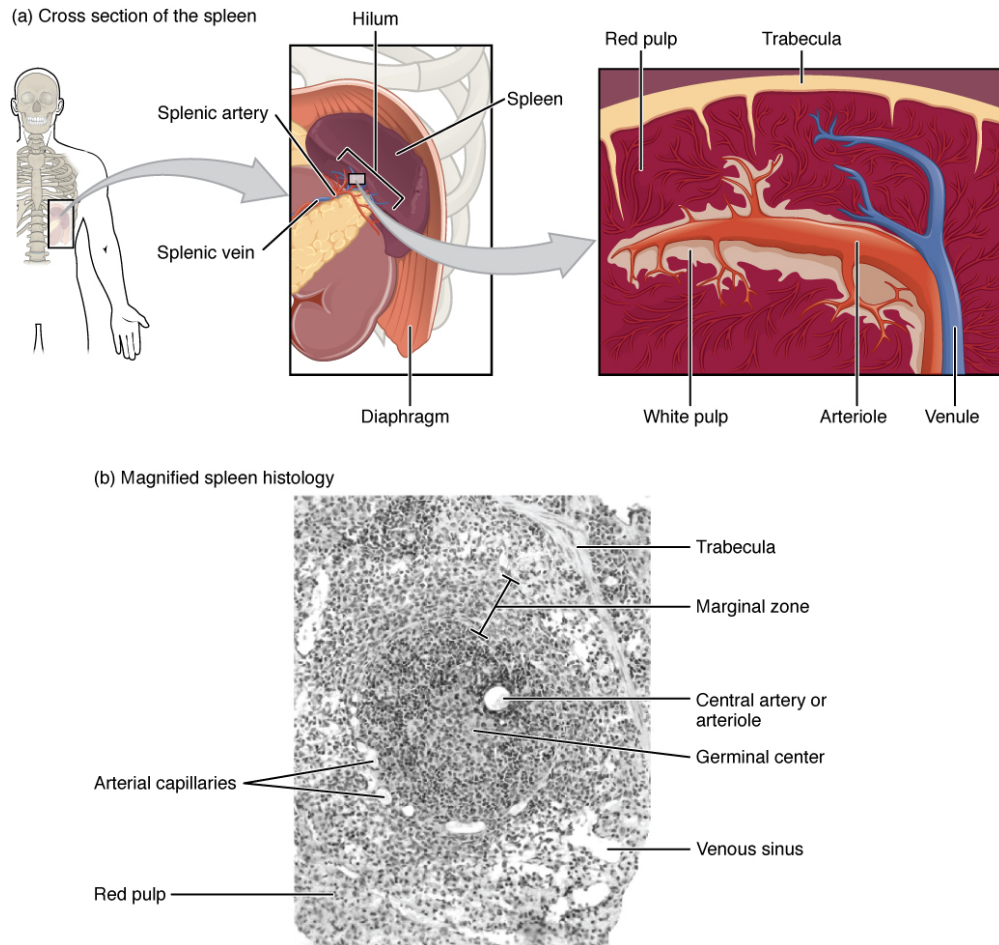


Figure 11.7 Spleen. (a) The spleen is attached to the stomach. (b) A micrograph of spleen tissue shows the germinal center. The marginal zone is the region between the red pulp and white pulp, which sequesters particulate antigens from the circulation and presents these antigens to lymphocytes in the white pulp. EM \times 660. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 11.7 Image description.](#)]

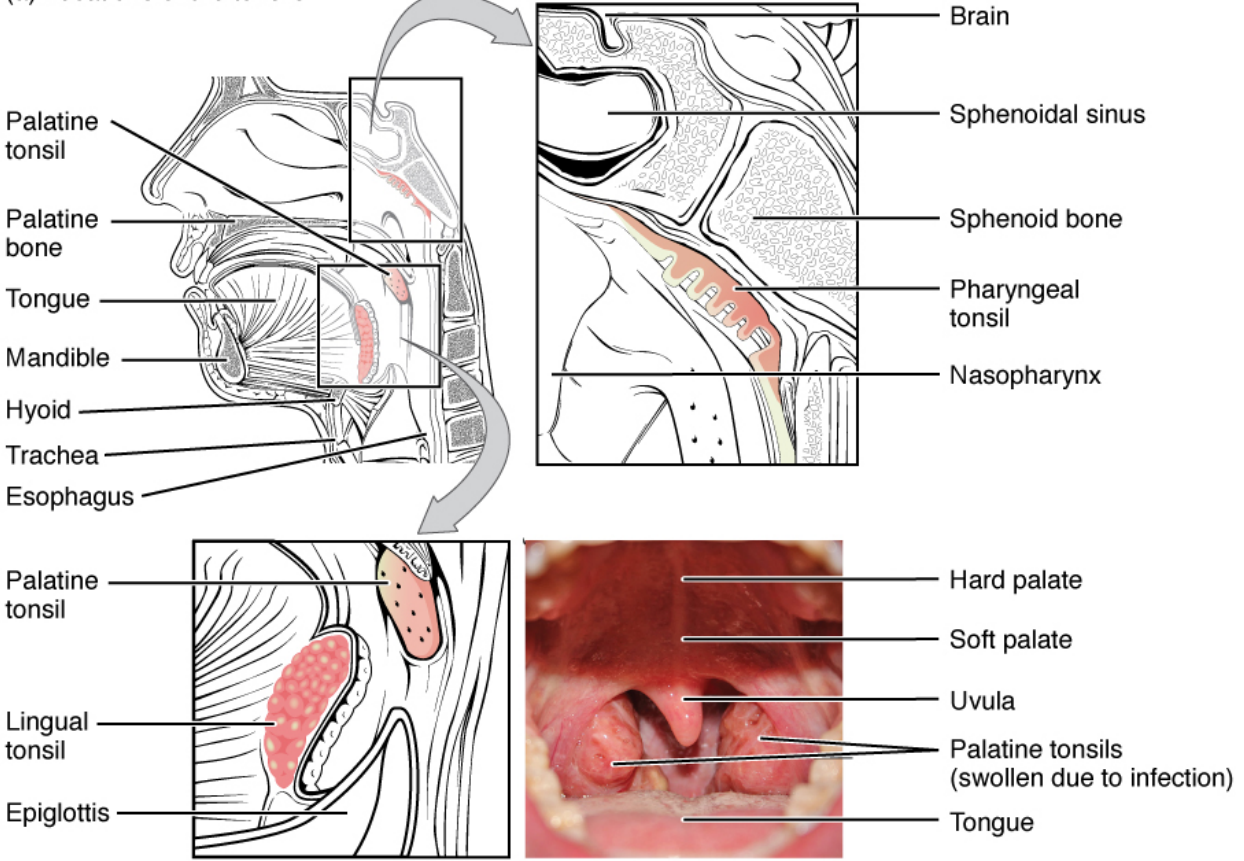
Lymphoid Nodules

The other lymphoid tissues, the **lymphoid nodules**, consist of a dense cluster of lymphocytes without a surrounding fibrous capsule. These nodules are located in the respiratory and digestive tracts, areas routinely exposed to environmental pathogens.

Tonsils are lymphoid nodules located along the inner surface of the pharynx and are important in developing immunity to oral pathogens (see [Figure 11.8](#)). The tonsil located at the back of the throat, the pharyngeal tonsil, is sometimes referred to as the adenoid when swollen. Such swelling is an indication of an active immune response to infection. Tonsils have deep grooves called **crypts**, which accumulate all sorts of materials taken into the body through eating and breathing and actually “encourage” pathogens to penetrate deep into the tonsillar tissues where they are eliminated. A major function of tonsils is to help children’s bodies recognize, destroy, and develop immunity to common environmental pathogens so that they will be protected in their later lives. Tonsils are

often removed in children who have recurring throat infections since swollen palatine tonsils can interfere with breathing and/or swallowing.

(a) Locations of the tonsils



(b) Histology of palatine tonsil

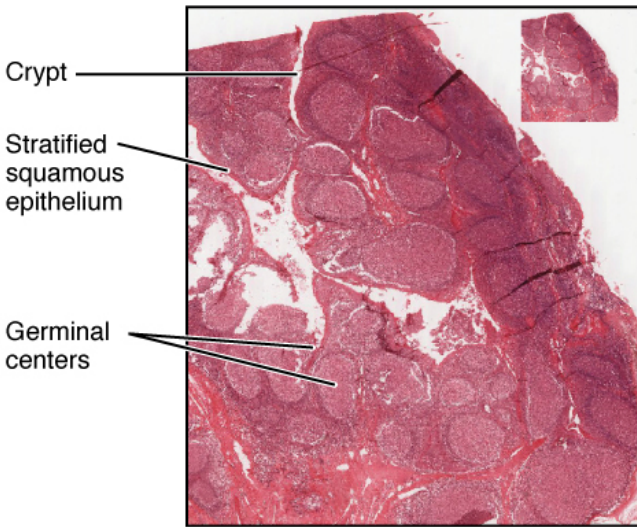


Figure 11.8. Locations and Histology of the Tonsils. (a) The pharyngeal tonsil is located on the roof of the posterior superior wall of the nasopharynx. The palatine tonsils lay on each side of the pharynx. (b) A micrograph shows the palatine tonsil tissue. LM \times 40. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under

Concept Check

Tonsils are named after their locations.

- Look at the figure above and determine which anatomical structure is closely associated with each set of tonsils and was therefore used to name the tonsils; for example, the **lingual tonsils** are named after the **tongue** (lingula).
- Can you tell which structures were used to name the **palatine tonsils** and the **pharyngeal tonsils**?

Bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT) consists of lymphoid follicular structures with an overlying epithelial layer found along the bifurcations of the bronchi and between bronchi and arteries. These tissues, in addition to the tonsils, are effective against inhaled **pathogens**.

Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) consists of an aggregate of lymphoid follicles directly associated with mucous membrane. MALT makes up dome-shaped structures found underlying the mucosa of the gastrointestinal tract, breast tissue, lungs, and eyes. Peyer's patches, a type of MALT in the small intestine, are especially important for immune responses against ingested substances (see [Figure 11.9](#)). Peyer's patches contain specialized cells that sample material from the intestinal lumen and transport it to nearby follicles so that **adaptive immune responses** to potential **pathogens** can be mounted.



Figure 11.9 Mucosa-associated Lymphoid Tissue (MALT) Nodule. LM \times 40. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 11.9 Image description.](#)]

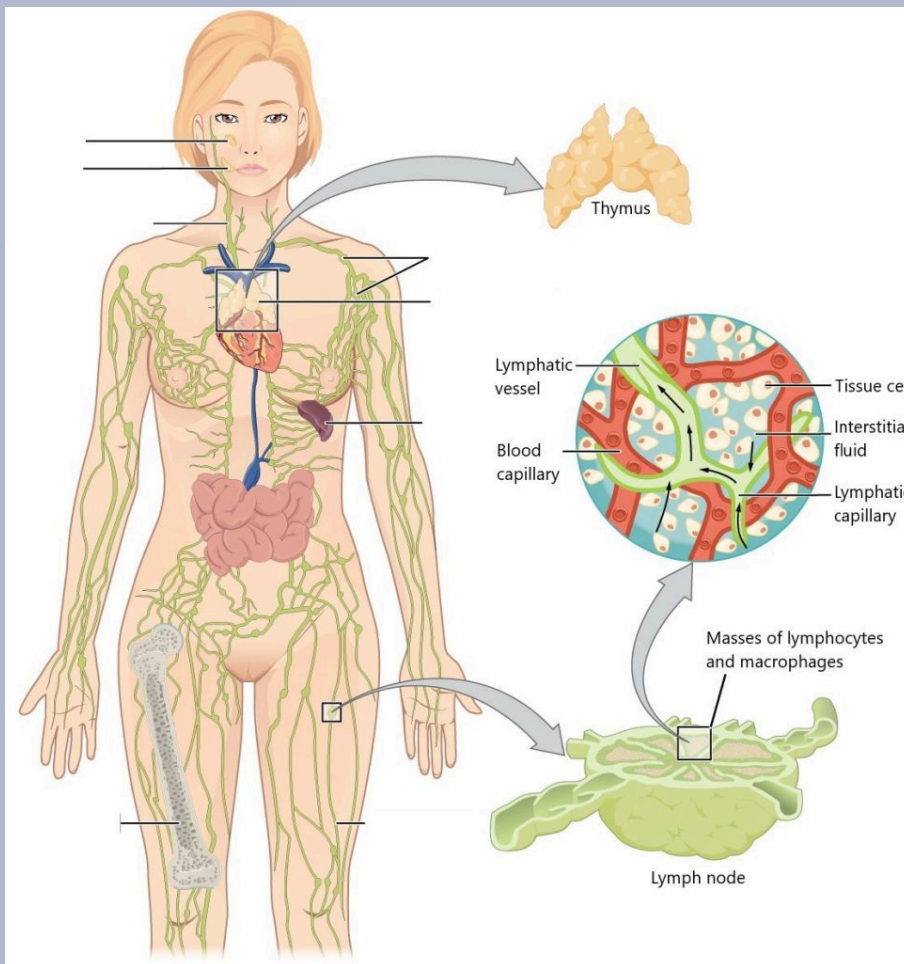
Check Your Knowledge of the Lymphatic System

Anatomy Labeling Activity

Lymphatic System Anatomy (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| 1. Adenoid | 4. Thymus | 7. Right lymphatic duct, entering vein |
| 2. Lymph nodes | 5. Bone marrow | 8. Lymph vessel |
| 3. Tonsil | 6. Spleen | |



Lymphatic System Anatomy Diagram (Text Version)

The diagram shows a female human body standing upright, and the entire lymphatic system is shown and labeled (clockwise from top): The _____ [Blank 1] is a small gland located in the centre of the chest and it is responsible for supporting the immune function by producing T-cells a type of white blood cell which fights infections and diseases. A collection of oval shaped structures known as _____ [Blank 2] serve as filtration units. The _____ [Blank 3] is an organ located under the left part of the diaphragm and is responsible for blood filtration. Thin-walled tube known as a _____ [Blank 4] carry lymph tissue throughout the body. The _____ [Blank 5] is a primary site for T-cell activity in the lymphatic system. The _____ [Blank 6] receives lymph fluid from the right side of the head, neck, and thorax, as it drains the venous system. Located at the back of the throat is a fleshy structure known as the _____ [Blank 7] and serves as the first line of defence against inhaled harmful substances. Located in the nasopharyngeal region is the _____ [Blank 8] which also filter and trap harmful substances from entering the body. The right panel shows magnified images of the thymus and the lymph node. Labels read (clockwise from top): tissue cell, interstitial fluid, lymphatic capillary, blood capillary, lymphatic vessel. Label of lymph node reads masses of lymphocytes and macrophages.

Check your answers ¹

Activity source: Lymphatic System Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 11.1 image description: The left panel shows a female human body, and the entire lymphatic system is shown. Labels read (clockwise from top): thymus, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, lymph vessel, bone marrow, right lymphatic duct, entering vein, tonsil, adenoid. The right panel shows magnified images of the thymus and the lymph node. Labels read (clockwise from top): tissue cell, interstitial fluid, lymphatic capillary, blood capillary, lymphatic vessel. Label of lymph node reads masses of lymphocytes and macrophages. [\[Return to Figure 11.1\]](#).

Figure 11.2 image description: This image shows the lymph capillaries in the tissue spaces. Labels read (clockwise, from top): lymph capillary, tissue cells, venule, lymphatic vessel, tissue fluid, arteriole. It also shows a magnified image shows the interstitial fluid and the lymph vessels. Labels read (clockwise, from top): collagen fiber, interstitial fluid, lymph, lymph vessel endothelial cells, backflow prevention valve, endothelial flaps. [\[Return to Figure 11.2\]](#).

Figure 11.3 image description: This figure shows the lymphatic trunks and the duct system in the human body. Labels read (clockwise from top) thoracic duct, cisterna chyli of thoracic duct, drained by thoracic duct, drained by right lymphatic duct. Callouts to the left and right show the magnified views of the left and right jugular vein respectively. Labels read (right lymphatic duct): right internal jugular vein, right subclavian vein, right lymphatic duct; (left jugular vein): left internal jugular vein, thoracic duct drains into subclavian vein, left subclavian vein. [\[Return to Figure 11.3\]](#).

Figure 11.4 image description: The left panel of this figure shows the head and chest of a woman and the location of the thymus is marked. Labels read (clockwise, from top) lymph nodes, spleen, heart, thymus, right lymphatic duct entering vein, tonsil, adenoid. The top right panel shows a micrograph of the thymus. Labels read (from left to right): medulla, cortex, trabeculae, fibrous capsule. The bottom right panel shows a magnified view of the structure of the thymus. Labels read (clockwise, from top): thymocytes, trabecula, fibrous capsule, cortex, medulla (layers), medullary epithelial cell, blood vessel, macrophage, dendritic cell, cortical epithelial cell. [\[Return to Figure 11.4\]](#).

Figure 11.5 image description: This flowchart shows the process in which a naïve T cell become activated T cells in the left part of the pathway and memory cells in the right part of the pathway. A naïve T cell becomes an activated T cell when an antigen-presenting cell is introduced. The antigen is extracted from a pathogen and then either activated T cells are cloned and destroy the infected cells in the body, and/or memory T cells are produced and are activated if this antigen is encountered again. [\[Return to Figure 11.5\]](#).

Figure 11.6 image description: The left panel of this figure shows a micrograph of the cross section of a lymph node. Labels indicate the connective tissue capsule, cortex, and subcapsular sinus. The right panel shows the structure of a lymph node. Labels indicate (from top, clockwise) the efferent lymphatic vessels, connective tissue capsule, subcapsular sinus, cortex, afferent lymphatic vessels, trabecula, germinal centers. [\[Return to Figure 11.6\]](#).

Figure 11.7 image description: The top left panel shows the location of the spleen in the human body. The top center panel shows a close up view of the location of the spleen. Labels read (clockwise, from top): hilum, spleen, diaphragm, splenic vein, splenic artery. The top right panel shows the blood vessels and spleen tissue. Labels read (from left to right, top then bottom) red pulp, trabecula (bottom) white pulp, arteriole, venule. The bottom panel shows a histological micrograph Labels read (clockwise, from top): trabecula, marginal zone, central artery or arteriole, germinal center, venous sinus, red pulp, arterial capillaries. [\[Return to Figure 11.7\]](#).

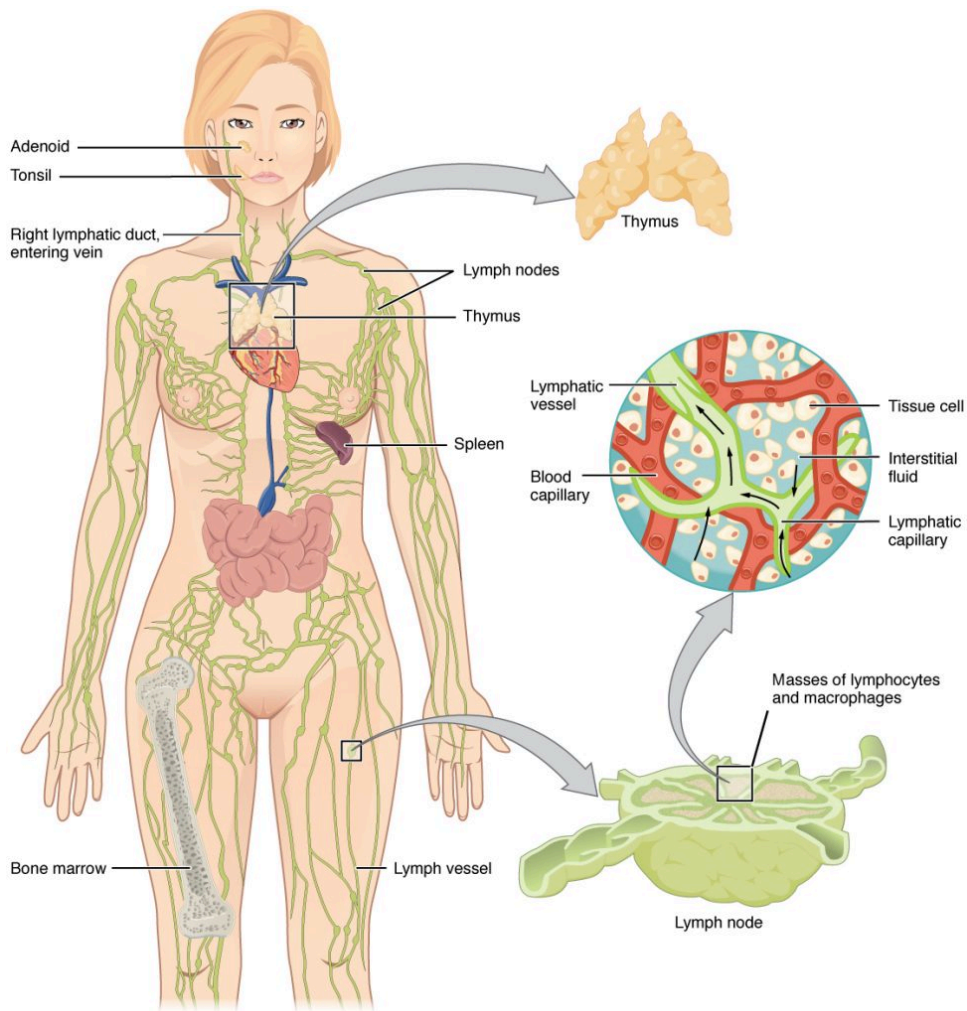
Figure 11.8 image description: The top panel of this image shows the locations of the tonsils. Labels read (clockwise from top): palatine tonsil, palatine bone, tongue, mandible, hyoid, trachea, esophagus. Callout shows the location of the pharyngeal tonsil. Labels read (from top): brain, sphenoidal sinus, sphenoid bone, pharyngeal tonsil, nasopharynx. Another callout details the location of the palatine tonsil. Labels read (from top): palatine tonsil, lingual tonsil, epiglottis. Another callout shows a photograph of the back of the throat where the tonsils are located. Labels read (from top) hard palate, soft palate, uvula, palatine tonsils (swollen due to infection) and tongue. The bottom panel shows the histological micrograph of the tonsils. Labels read (from top): crypt, stratified squamous epithelium, germinal centers. [\[Return to Figure 11.8\]](#).

Figure 11.9 image description: This figure shows a micrograph of a mucosa associated lymphoid tissue (MAST) nodule. Labels indicate the mucosa and Peyer's patches (which appear to be dark purple). [\[Return to Figure 11.9\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Lymphatic and Immune Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Check your answers:

Lymphatic System Anatomy Diagram (Text Version) The diagram shows a female human body standing upright, and the entire lymphatic system is shown and labeled (clockwise from top): The **thymus** is a small gland located in the centre of the chest and it is responsible for supporting the immune function by producing T-cells a type of white blood cell which fights infections and diseases. A collection of oval shaped structures known as **lymph nodes** serve as filtration units. The **spleen** is an organ located under the left part of the diaphragm and is responsible for blood filtration. Thin-walled tube known as a **lymph vessel** carry lymph tissue throughout the body. The **bone marrow** is a primary site for T-cell activity in the lymphatic system. The **right lymphatic duct entering vein** receives lymph fluid from the right side of the head, neck, and thorax, as it drains the venous system. Located at the back of the throat is a fleshy structure known as the **tonsil** and serves as the first line of defence against inhaled harmful substances. Located in the nasopharyngeal region is the **adenoids** which also filter and trap harmful substances from entering the body. The right panel shows magnified images of the thymus and the lymph node. Labels read (clockwise from top): tissue cell, interstitial fluid, lymphatic capillary, blood capillary, lymphatic vessel. Label of lymph node reads masses of lymphocytes and macrophages.

11.3 - The Organization of the Immune System

The immune system is a collection of barriers, cells, and soluble proteins that interact and communicate with each other in extraordinarily complex ways. The modern model of immune function is organized into a three phases immune response (based on the timing of their effects). Ideally, this response will rid the body of a pathogen entirely (see [Figure 11.10](#)).

Think of a primary infection as a race between the pathogen and the immune system:

1. The pathogen bypasses **barrier defenses** and starts to multiply in the host's body.
2. During the first 4 to 5 days, the **innate immune response** will partially control, but not stop the pathogen growth.
3. The slower but more specific and effective **adaptive immune response** gears up and becomes progressively stronger; it will begin to clear the pathogen from the body. This clearance is referred to as **seroconversion**. It should be noted that seroconversion does not necessarily mean a patient is getting well.

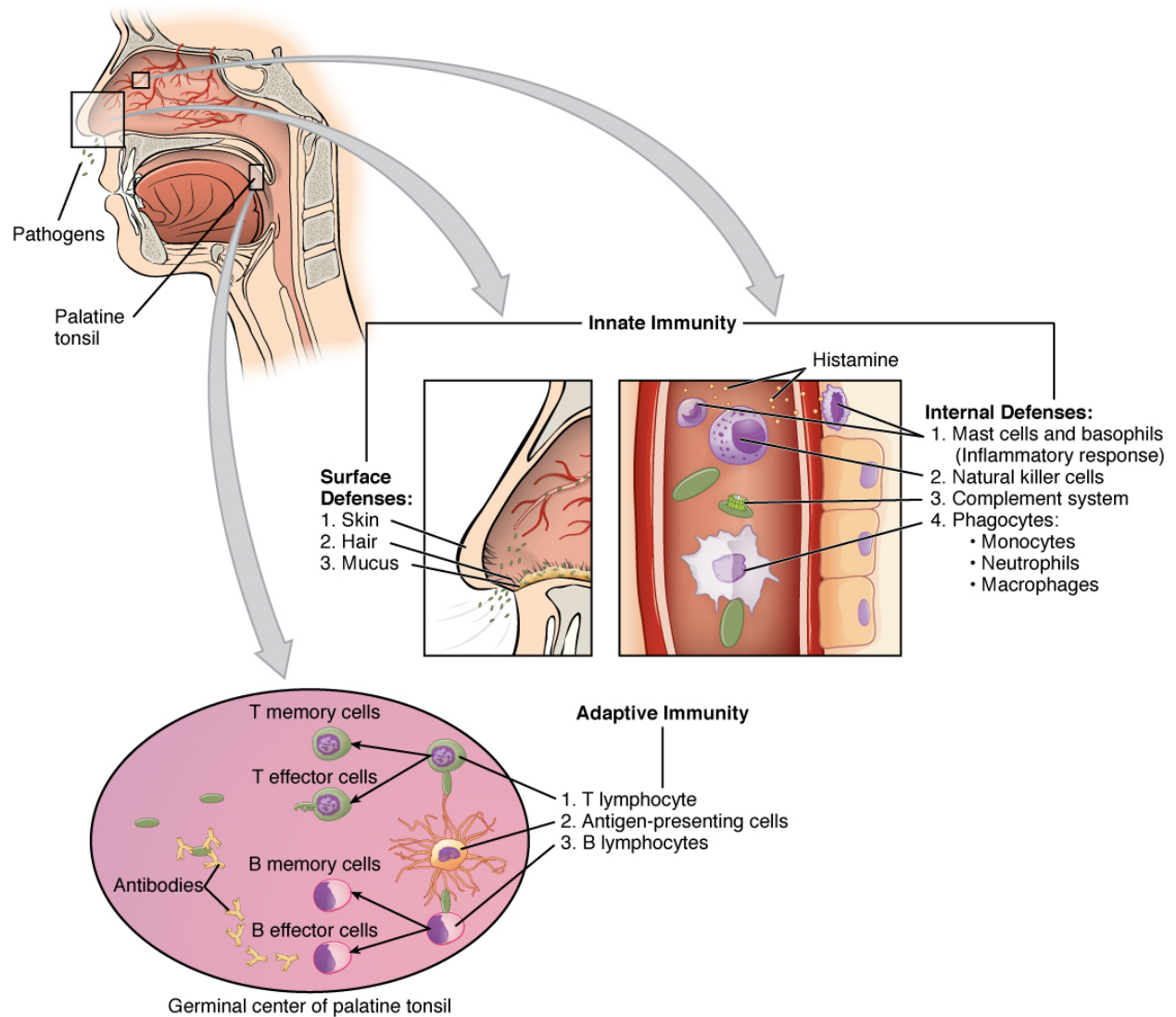


Figure 11.10 Cooperation between Innate and Adaptive Immune Responses. The innate immune system enhances adaptive immune responses so they can be more effective. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Phase I: Barrier Defenses

Barrier defenses are part of the body's most basic innate defense mechanisms. They are not a response to infections, but rather are continuously working to protect against pathogens by preventing them from entering the body, destroying them after they enter, or flushing them out before they can establish themselves.

Barrier defenses examples:

- **Skin:**
 - Keratinized cells of the surface are too dry for bacteria to grow and are continuously sloughed off, along with pathogens that are on their surfaces.

- **Skin (sweat glands, sebaceous glands):**
 - Lower pH than pathogens prefer, may contain substances that are toxic to pathogens; washing action.
- **Oral cavity (salivary glands):**
 - Lysozyme is an enzyme that destroys bacteria.
- **Stomach:**
 - Low pH, which is fatal to many pathogens.
- **Mucosal:**
 - Traps both microbes and debris, and facilitates their removal.
- **Normal flora (nonpathogenic bacteria):**
 - Prevents pathogens from growing on **mucosal** surfaces.

Phase 2: Innate Immune Response

Innate immune responses are critical to the early control of infections. Whereas barrier defenses are the body's first line of physical defense against pathogens, innate immune responses are the first line of physiological defense. Innate responses occur rapidly, but with less specificity and effectiveness than the adaptive immune response. Within the first few days of an infection, a series of antibacterial proteins are induced, each with activities against certain bacteria. Additionally, **interferons** are induced that protect cells from viruses in their vicinity. Finally, the innate immune response does not stop when the adaptive immune response is developed. In fact, both can cooperate and one can influence the other in their responses against pathogens.

Innate immune responses (and early induced responses) are in many cases ineffective at completely controlling pathogen growth, but they slow pathogen growth and allow time for the adaptive immune response to strengthen and either control or eliminate the pathogen. The innate immune system also sends signals to the cells of the adaptive immune system, guiding them in how to attack the pathogen.

Watch [Immune System, Part 1: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #45 \(9 min\) on YouTube](#)

Concept Check 1

Do you know the difference between these terms?

- **Intercellular**
- **Intracellular**
- **Interstitial**

Cells of the Innate Immune Response

Phagocytes: Macrophages and Neutrophils

A phagocyte is a cell that is able to surround and engulf a particle or cell, a process called **phagocytosis**. The phagocytes of the immune system engulf other particles or cells, either to clean an area of debris, old cells, or to kill pathogenic organisms such as bacteria. Macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells are the major phagocytes of the immune system and are the body's fast acting, front line immunological defense against organisms that have breached barrier defenses and have entered the body.

Macrophages not only participate in innate immune responses but have also evolved to cooperate with lymphocytes as part of the adaptive immune response. Macrophages exist in many tissues of the body, either freely roaming through connective tissues or fixed to reticular fibers within specific tissues such as lymph nodes. When pathogens breach the body's barrier defenses, macrophages are the first line of defense.

A **neutrophil** is a phagocytic cell that is attracted via chemotaxis from the bloodstream to infected tissues. It contains cytoplasmic granules, which in turn contain a variety of vasoactive mediators such as histamine. Whereas macrophages act like sentries, always on guard against infection, neutrophils can be thought of as military reinforcements that are called into a battle to hasten the destruction of the enemy.

A **monocyte** is a circulating precursor cell that differentiates into either a macrophage or **dendritic cell**, which can be rapidly attracted to areas of infection by signal molecules of inflammation.

Natural Killer Cells

NK cells are a type of lymphocyte that have the ability to induce **apoptosis** in cells infected with pathogens such as *intracellular* bacteria and viruses. If apoptosis is induced before the virus has the ability to synthesize and assemble all its components, no infectious virus will be released from the cell, thus preventing further infection.

Soluble Mediators of the Innate Immune Response

The previous discussions have alluded to chemical signals that can induce cells to change various physiological characteristics, such as the expression of a particular receptor. These soluble factors are secreted during innate or early induced responses, and later during adaptive immune responses. Cytokines and Chemokines

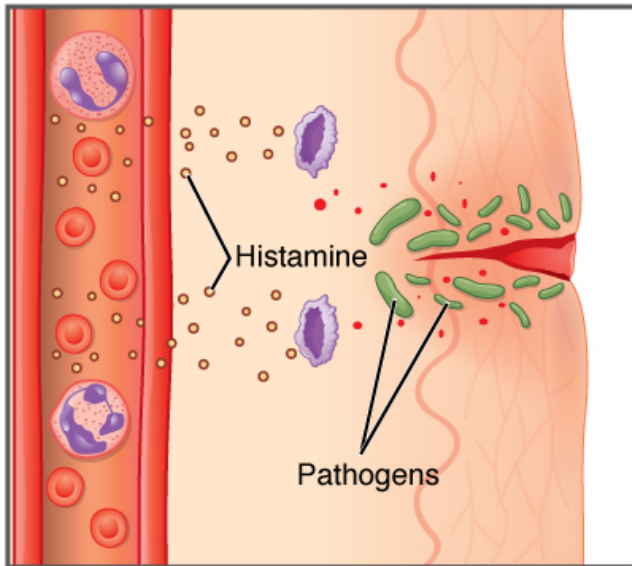
A **cytokine** is a signaling molecule that allows cells to communicate with each other over short distances. Cytokines are secreted into the intercellular space, and the action of the cytokine induces the receiving cell to change its physiology. A **chemokine** is a soluble chemical mediator similar to cytokines except that its function is to attract cells (chemotaxis) from longer distances.

Early Induced Proteins

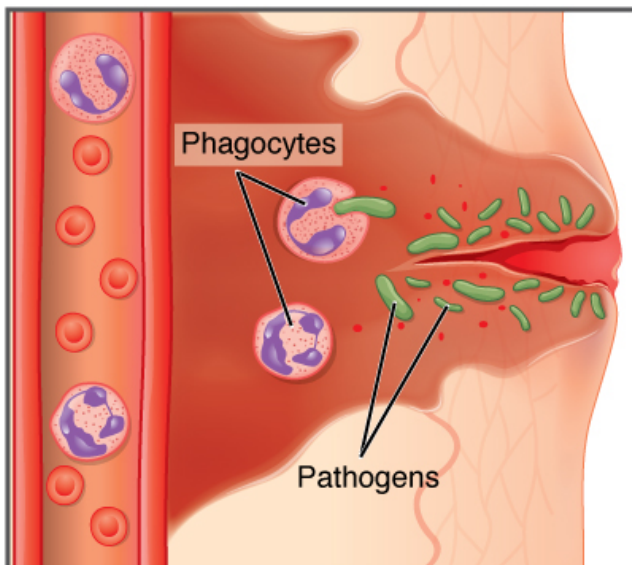
Early induced proteins are those that are not constitutively present in the body, but are made as they are needed early during the innate immune response. **Interferons** are an example of early induced proteins. Cells infected with viruses secrete interferons that travel to adjacent cells and induce them to make antiviral proteins. Thus, even though the initial cell is sacrificed, the surrounding cells are protected.

Inflammatory Response

The hallmark of the innate immune response is **inflammation**. Stub a toe, cut a finger, or do any activity that causes tissue damage, and inflammation will result, with its four characteristics: **heat, redness, pain,** and **swelling** (“loss of function” is sometimes mentioned as a fifth characteristic). It is important to note that inflammation does not have to be initiated by an infection, but can also be caused by tissue injuries. The release of damaged cellular contents into the site of injury is enough to stimulate the response, even in the absence of breaks in physical barriers that would allow pathogens to enter (by hitting your thumb with a hammer, for example). The inflammatory reaction brings in phagocytic cells to the damaged area to clear cellular debris and encourages the entry of clotting factors to set the stage for wound repair. Inflammation also facilitates the transport of antigen to lymph nodes by dendritic cells for the development of the adaptive immune response.



① Mast cells detect injury to nearby cells and release histamine, initiating inflammatory response.



② Histamine increases blood flow to the wound sites, bringing in phagocytes and other immune cells that neutralize pathogens. The blood influx causes the wound to swell, redden, and become warm and painful.

Figure 11.11 Inflammatory Response. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

The above image summarizes the following events in the inflammatory response:

- The released contents of injured cells stimulate the release of substances from **mast cells** including histamine, leukotrienes, and prostaglandins.
- **Histamine** increases blood flow to the area by **vasodilation**, resulting in **heat** and **redness**. Histamine also increases the permeability of local capillaries, causing plasma to leak out and form interstitial fluid, resulting in **swelling**.
- **Leukotrienes** attract neutrophils from the blood by **chemotaxis**.
 - When local infections are severe, neutrophils are attracted to the sites of infections in large numbers, and as they phagocytose the pathogens and subsequently die, their accumulated cellular remains are

visible as pus at the infection site.

- **Prostaglandins** cause vasodilation by relaxing vascular smooth muscle and are a major cause of the **pain** associated with inflammation. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as aspirin and ibuprofen relieve pain by inhibiting prostaglandin production.

Concept Check 2

- Do you remember the suffix used to describe 'inflammation'?
- Describe what causes the pain associated with inflammation.

Acute inflammation is a short-term innate immune response to an insult to the body. If the cause of the inflammation is not resolved, however, it can lead to **chronic inflammation**, which is associated with major tissue destruction and fibrosis.

Phase 3: Adaptive Immune Response

Watch [Immune System, Part 2: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #46 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Benefits of the Adaptive Immune Response

- **Specificity**
 - The ability to specifically recognize and mount a response against almost any pathogen.
 - **Antigens** are recognized by receptors on the surface of B and T lymphocytes.
- **Immunological Memory**
 - The first exposure to a pathogen is called a **primary adaptive response**.
 - Symptoms of a first infection, called primary disease, are always relatively severe because it takes time for an initial adaptive immune response to a pathogen to become effective.
 - Upon re-exposure to the same pathogen, a **secondary adaptive immune response** is generated, which is stronger and faster than the primary response, often eliminating the pathogen before it can cause damage or even symptoms.
 - This secondary response is the basis of **immunological memory**, which gives us **immunity**.

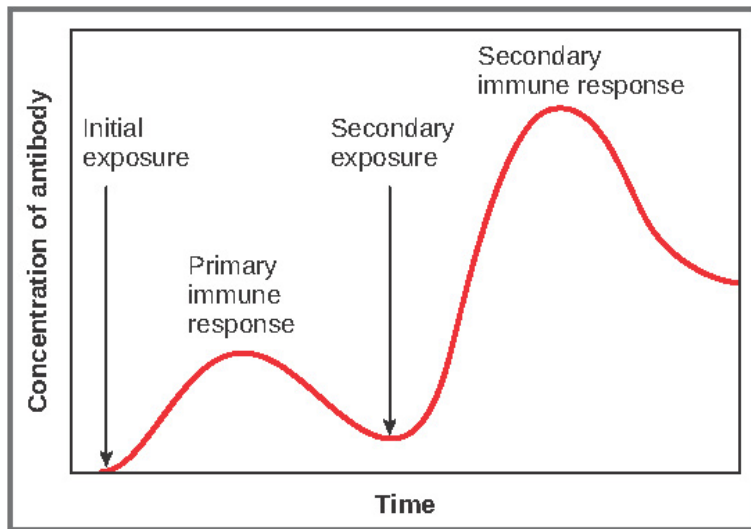


Figure 11.12 Primary and Secondary Antibody Responses. Antigen A is given once to generate a primary response and later to generate a secondary response. When a different antigen is given for the first time, a new primary response is made. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 11.12 Image description.](#)]

- **Self Recognition**

- The ability to distinguish between self-antigens, those that are normally present in the body, and foreign antigens, those that might be on a potential pathogen.
- As T and B cells mature, there are mechanisms in place that prevent them from recognizing self-antigen, preventing a damaging immune response against the body. When these mechanisms fail, their breakdown leads to autoimmune diseases.

Lymphocytes: B Cells, T Cells, Plasma Cells

As stated above, lymphocytes are the primary cells of adaptive immune responses. These cells were introduced in the previous chapter and are summarized in the following table:

Table 11.1 Cells of the Adaptive Immune Response. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Cell Type	Description and Details
Plasma Cell	B cell (lymphocyte) that has been activated through exposure to an antigen and produces antibodies against that antigen (see the figure below) There are 5 classes of antibodies (IgM, IgG, IgE, IgA, IgD), each functioning in different ways:

IgM promotes chemotaxis, **opsonization**, and cell lysis, making it a very effective antibody against bacteria at early stages of a primary antibody response

IgG is the one that crosses the placenta to protect the developing fetus from disease and exits the blood to the interstitial fluid to fight extracellular pathogens

IgA is the only antibody to leave the interior of the body to protect body surfaces. IgA is also of importance to newborns, because this antibody is present in mother's breast milk (colostrum), which serves to protect the infant

IgE is associated with allergies and **anaphylaxis**

T Cell

Different T cell types have the ability to either secrete soluble factors that communicate with other cells of the adaptive immune response or destroy cells infected with intracellular pathogen.

- Cytotoxic T Cell (Tc) kill target cells by inducing apoptosis using the same mechanism as NK cells: killing a virally infected cell before the virus can complete its replication cycle results in the production of no infectious particles.
- Helper T Cell (Th) release **cytokines**, which help to develop and regulate other immune system cells.
- Suppressor T Cell (also called regulatory T cell) control T Cell response, in order to prevent too many T cells from being formed during an immune response.

Memory B Cell cells and T cells formed during primary exposure to a pathogen (see the figure below) remain in the body for a long time after an infection and are able to mount a fast and effective immune response to a pathogen if it is encountered a second time, preventing the pathogen from causing disease.

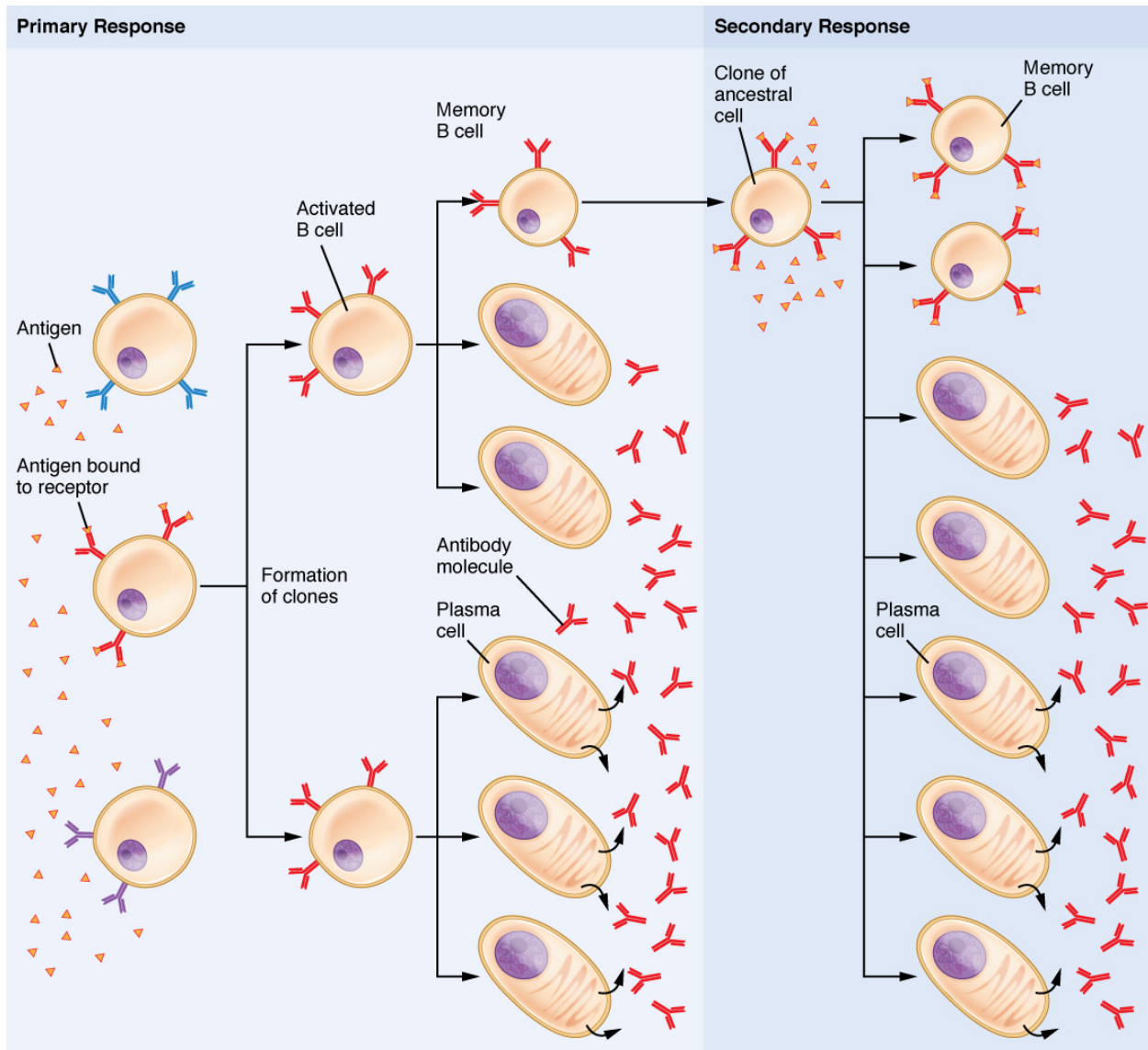


Figure 11.13 Clonal Selection of B Cells. During a primary B cell immune response, both antibody-secreting plasma cells and memory B cells are produced. These memory cells lead to the differentiation of more plasma cells and memory B cells during secondary responses. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 11.13 Image description.]

Active Versus Passive Immunity

Immunity to pathogens, and the ability to control pathogen growth so that damage to the tissues of the body is limited, can be acquired by:

1. The active development of an immune response in the infected individual.
- or**
2. The passive transfer of immune components from an immune individual to a non-immune one.

The downside to this passive immunity is the lack of the development of immunological memory. Once the antibodies are transferred, they are effective for only a limited time before they degrade.

Table 11.2 Active Versus Passive Immunity. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Immunity	Natural	Artificial
Active: resistance to pathogens acquired during an adaptive immune response	Result of memory cells formed during the adaptive immune response to a pathogen	Vaccine response. Through vaccination, one avoids the disease that results from the first exposure to the pathogen, yet reaps the benefits of protection from immunological memory. Vaccination was one of the major medical advances of the twentieth century and led to the eradication of smallpox and the control of many infectious diseases, including polio, measles, and whooping cough
Passive: transfer of antibodies from an immune person to a nonimmune person	Trans-placental antibodies from mother to fetus and maternal antibodies in breast milk protect newborn from infections	Immunoglobulin injections taken from animals previously exposed to a specific pathogen; a fast-acting method of temporarily protecting an individual who was possibly exposed to a pathogen

Evasion of the Immune System by Pathogens

The immune system and pathogens are in a slow, evolutionary race to see who stays on top. Early childhood is a time when the body develops much of its immunological memory that protects it from diseases in adulthood. Pathogens have shown the ability, however, to evade the body's immune responses, as described below.

- **Protective adaptations:** It is important to keep in mind that although the immune system has evolved to be able to control many pathogens, pathogens themselves have evolved ways to evade the immune response. An example is in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, which has evolved a complex cell wall that is resistant to the digestive enzymes of the macrophages that ingest them, and thus persists in the host, causing the chronic disease tuberculosis.
- **Multiple strains:** Bacteria sometimes evade immune responses because they exist in multiple strains, each having different surface antigens and requiring individual adaptive immune responses. One example is a small group of strains of *S. aureus*, called methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), which has become resistant to multiple antibiotics.
- **Antigen mutation:** Because viruses' surface molecules mutate continuously, viruses like influenza change enough each year that the flu vaccine for one year may not protect against the flu common to the next. New vaccine formulations must be derived for each flu season.
- **Genetic recombination:** An example is the influenza virus, which contains gene segments that can recombine when two different viruses infect the same cell. Recombination between human and pig influenza viruses led to the 2010 H1N1 swine flu outbreak.
- **Immunosuppression:** Pathogens, especially viruses, can produce immunosuppressive molecules that impair immune function.

Tissue Transplantation

With the use of **tissue typing** and anti-rejection drugs, transplantation of organs and the control of the anti-transplant immune response have made huge strides in the past 50 years.

Immunosuppressive drugs such as cyclosporine A have made transplants more successful, but tissue matching is still key. Family members, since they share a similar genetic background, are much more likely to share **MHC** molecules than unrelated individuals do.

One disease of transplantation occurs with bone marrow transplants, which are used to treat various diseases, including **SCID** and **leukemia**. Because the bone marrow cells being transplanted contain lymphocytes capable of mounting an immune response, and because the recipient's immune response has been destroyed before receiving the transplant, the donor cells may attack the recipient tissues, causing **graft-versus-host disease**. Symptoms of this disease, which usually include a rash and damage to the liver and mucosa, are variable, and attempts have been made to moderate the disease by first removing mature T cells from the donor bone marrow before transplanting it.

Immune Responses Against Cancer

It is clear that with some cancers, like Kaposi's sarcoma (see [Figure 11.14](#)), for example, that a healthy immune system does a good job at controlling them. This disease, which is caused by the human herpes virus, is almost never observed in individuals with strong immune systems. Other examples of cancers caused by viruses include liver cancer caused by the hepatitis B virus and cervical cancer caused by the human papilloma virus. As these last two viruses have vaccines available for them, getting vaccinated can help prevent these two types of cancer by stimulating the immune response.

On the other hand, as cancer cells are often able to divide and mutate rapidly, they may escape the immune response, just as certain pathogens, such as HIV, do.

There are three stages in the immune response to many cancers:

1. **Elimination** occurs when the immune response first develops toward tumor-specific antigens specific to the cancer and actively kills most cancer cells.
2. **Equilibrium** is the period that follows, during which the remaining cancer cells are held in check.
3. **Escape** of the immune response, and resulting disease, occurs because many cancers mutate and no longer express any specific antigens for the immune system to respond to.

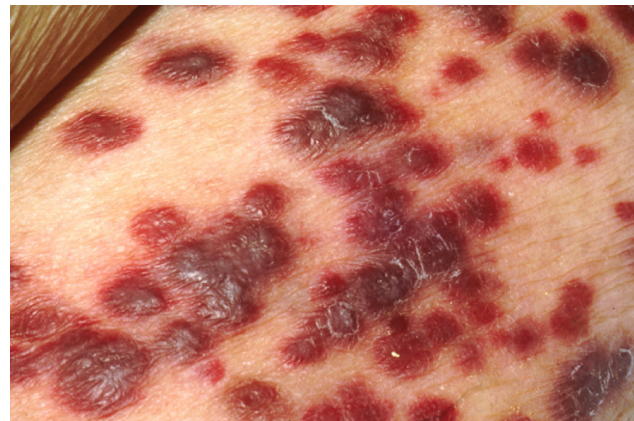


Figure 11.14 Kaposi's Sarcoma Lesions. (credit: [Image](#) by National Cancer Institute, [CC BY 3.0](#)). From Betts et al., 2013.

This fact has led to extensive research in trying to develop ways to enhance the early immune response to

completely eliminate the early cancer and thus prevent a later escape. One method that has shown some success is the use of cancer vaccines. These differ from other vaccines in that they are directed against the cells of one's own body. Treated cancer cells are injected into cancer patients to enhance their anti-cancer immune response and thereby prolong survival. The immune system has the capability to detect these cancer cells and proliferate faster than the cancer cells do, thus overwhelming the cancer in a similar way as they do for viruses. Cancer vaccines are being developed for malignant melanoma and renal (kidney) cell carcinoma.

Immune Responses and Stress

In order to protect the entire body from infection, the immune system is required to interact with other organ systems, sometimes in complex ways. For example, hormones such as cortisol (naturally produced by the adrenal cortex) and prednisone (synthetic) are well known for their abilities to suppress T cell immune mechanisms, hence, their prominent use in medicine as long-term, anti-inflammatory drugs.

One well-established interaction of the immune, nervous, and endocrine systems is the effect of stress on immune health. In the human vertebrate evolutionary past, stress was associated with the fight-or-flight response, largely mediated by the central nervous system and the adrenal medulla. This stress was necessary for survival since fighting or fleeing usually resolved the problem in one way or another. It has been found that short-term stress diverts the body's resources towards enhancing innate immune responses. This has the ability to act fast and would seem to help the body prepare better for possible infections associated with the trauma that may result from a fight-or-flight exchange.

On the other hand, there are no physical actions to resolve most modern day stresses, including short-term stressors like taking examinations and long-term stressors such as being unemployed or losing a spouse. The effect of stress can be felt by nearly every organ system, and the immune system is no exception (see [Table 11.3](#)). Chronic stress, unlike short-term stress, may inhibit immune responses even in otherwise healthy adults. The suppression of both innate and adaptive immune responses is clearly associated with increases in some diseases.

Table 11.3 Effects of Stress on Body Systems. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

System	Stress-Related Illness
Integumentary system	Acne, skin rashes, irritation
Nervous system	Headaches, depression, anxiety, irritability, loss of appetite, lack of motivation, reduced mental performance
Muscular and skeletal systems	Muscle and joint pain, neck and shoulder pain
Circulatory system	Increased heart rate, hypertension, increased probability of heart attacks
Digestive system	Indigestion, heartburn, stomach pain, nausea, diarrhea, constipation, weight gain or loss
Immune system	Depressed ability to fight infections
Male reproductive system	Lowered sperm production, impotence, reduced sexual desire
Female reproductive system	Irregular menstrual cycle, reduced sexual desire

Immune System Medical Terms

Medical Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Lymphatic System Medical Terms Not Easily Broken Down (Text Version)

Practice the following lymphatic system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **allergen**
 - Substance capable of producing an allergic (hypersensitivity) reaction
2. **Allergist**
 - Specialist who studies and treats allergies
3. **allergy**
 - inflammatory response due to a hypersensitivity to a substance
4. **acute inflammation**
 - Inflammation occurring for a limited time period, rapidly developing
5. **afferent lymphatic vessels**
 - vessels that lead into a lymph node
6. **antibody**
 - antigen-specific protein secreted by plasma cells, immunoglobulin
7. **antigen**
 - molecule recognized by the receptors of b and t lymphocytes
8. **chronic inflammation**
 - Inflammation occurring for long periods of time
9. **chyle**
 - lipid-rich lymph inside the lymphatic capillaries of the small intestine
10. **efferent lymphatic vessels**
 - vessels that lead out of a lymph node

11. **erythroblastosis fetalis**
 - Also called HDN (hemolytic disease of newborn) disease of RH-positive newborns in RH-negative mothers with multiple RH-positive children. Resulting from the action of maternal antibodies against fetal blood.
12. **Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)**
 - In bone marrow transplants, occurs when the transplanted cells mount an immune response against the recipient
13. **immunological memory**
 - ability of the adaptive immune response to mount a stronger and faster immune response upon re-exposure to a pathogen
14. **innate immune response**
 - rapid but relatively non-specific immune response
15. **lymph**
 - fluid contained within the lymphatic system
16. **lymph node**
 - one of the bean-shaped organs found associated with the lymphatic vessels
17. **Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID)**
 - Genetic mutation that affects both t cell and b cell arms of the immune response
18. **Spleen**
 - Secondary lymphoid organ that filters pathogens from the blood and remove degenerating or damage blood cells
19. **Thymus**
 - Primary lymphoid organ, where t lymphocytes proliferate and mature
20. **Tonsils**
 - Lymphoid nodules associated with the nasopharynx
21. **vaccine**
 - An agent administered by injection, orally or nasal spray that provides active acquired immunity to a particular infectious disease.
22. **Apoptosis**

- Programmed Cell Death

23. Bone Marrow

- tissue found inside bones, the site of all blood cell differentiation and maturation of b lymphocytes

24. Immunity

- Post infection, memory cells remain in the body providing an immune response to the same pathogen. This protects us from getting sick by the same pathogen

25. Histamine

- Vasoactive mediator in granules of mast cells
Primary cause of allergies and anaphylactic shock

26. Inflammation

- Immune response characterized by heat, redness, pain, and swelling

27. Interstitial

- Between cells of the tissues

28. Interstitial Space

- Spaces between individual cells in the tissues

29. Passive Immunity

- Transfer of immunity (usually by injection of antibodies) to a pathogen by an individual who lacks immunity.

Activity source: Endocrine System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0.](#) /
Converted to Text.

Lymphatic and Immune System Abbreviations

Lymphatic System Common Abbreviations

- **AIDS** (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)
- **CBC and Diff** (complete blood count and differential)
- **GVHD** (Graft-versus-host Disease)
- **Hct** (hematocrit)
- **HDN** (hemolytic disease of the newborn)
- **Hgb** (hemoglobin)
- **HIV** (human immunodeficiency virus)
- **IV** (Intravenous)
- **SCID** (severe combined immunodeficiency)
- **SPECT** (single-photon emission computed tomography)
- **WBC** (White Blood Cell)

Activity source: Lymphatic System Common Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 11.12 image description: This graph shows the antibody concentration as a function of time in primary and secondary response. Initial exposure indicates a low concentration of antibody, which then elevates over time during the primary immune response. It decreases a little during secondary exposure, but then spikes during the secondary immune response. [\[Return to Figure 11.12\]](#).

Figure 11.13 image description: This flow chart shows how the clonal selection of B cells takes place. The left panel shows the primary response and the right panel shows the secondary response. During a primary B cell immune response, both antibody-secreting plasma cells and memory B cells are produced. These memory cells lead to the differentiation of more plasma cells and memory B cells during secondary responses. [\[Return to Figure 11.13\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Lymphatic and Immune Systems chapter content into subchapters.

11.4 - Lymphatic Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

The immune response can be under-reactive or over-reactive, leading to a state of disease. The factors that maintain immunological homeostasis are complex and incompletely understood.

Underactive Immune System: Immunodeficiencies

Suppressed immunity can result from inherited genetic defects or by acquiring viruses (Betts et al., 2013).

Inherited Immunodeficiencies/SCID

While many inherited immunodeficiencies exist, the most serious is **severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID)**. This complex disease is caused by many different genetic defects which result in impaired B cell and T cell arms of the adaptive immune response. Children with this disease usually die of opportunistic infections within their first year of life unless they receive a bone marrow transplant. Such a procedure had not yet been perfected for David Vetter, the “boy in the bubble,” who was treated for SCID by having to live in a sterile plastic cocoon for the 12 years before his death from infection in 1984. One of the features that make bone marrow transplants work as well as they do is the proliferative capability of hematopoietic stem cells of the bone marrow. Only a small amount of bone marrow from a healthy donor is given intravenously to the recipient. It finds its own way to the bone where it populates it, eventually reconstituting the patient’s immune system, which is usually destroyed beforehand by treatment with radiation or chemotherapeutic drugs (Betts et al., 2013).

New treatments for SCID using gene therapy (inserting nondefective genes into cells taken from the patient and giving them back) have the advantage of not needing the tissue match required for standard transplants. Although not a standard treatment, this approach holds promise, especially for those in whom standard bone marrow transplantation has failed (Betts et al., 2013).

Acquired Immunodeficiency/HIV and AIDS

Although many viruses cause suppression of the immune system, only **HIV** wipes it out completely. HIV is transmitted through semen, vaginal fluids, and blood, and can be caught by risky sexual behaviors and the sharing of needles by intravenous drug users. There are sometimes, but not always, flu-like symptoms in the first 1 to 2 weeks after infection. The presence of anti-HIV antibodies indicates a positive HIV test. Because **seroconversion** takes different lengths of time in different individuals, multiple HIV tests are given months apart to confirm or eliminate the possibility of infection.

After seroconversion, the amount of virus circulating in the blood drops and stays at a low level for several years.

During this time, the levels of **CD4 T cells** decline steadily, until at some point, the immune response is so weak that opportunistic disease and eventually death result.

Treatment for the disease consists of drugs that target virally encoded proteins that are necessary for viral replication but are absent from normal human cells. By targeting the virus itself and sparing the cells, this approach has been successful in significantly prolonging the lives of HIV-positive individuals (Betts et al., 2013).

Overactive Immune System: Hypersensitivities and Autoimmune Diseases

Hypersensitivities

Over-reactive immune responses include the **hypersensitivities**: allergies and inflammatory responses to nonpathogenic environmental substances (Betts et al., 2013). The table below compares different hypersensitivities.

Table 11.4 Table Summarizing Types of Hypersensitivities. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Type of Hypersensitivity	Details and Explanation
Type I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allergies and allergic asthma • Major symptoms of inhaled allergens are the nasal edema and runny nose caused by the increased vascular permeability and increased blood flow of nasal blood vessels • ‘Immediate Hypersensitivity’: usually rapid and occur within just a few minutes • Mild allergies are usually treated with antihistamines • Severe allergies that may cause anaphylactic shock, which can be fatal within 20 to 30 minutes if untreated; epinephrine raises blood pressure and relaxes bronchial smooth muscle and is routinely used to counteract the effects of anaphylactic shock
Type II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Occurs during mismatched blood transfusions and blood compatibility diseases such as erythroblastosis fetalis
Type III	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Occurs with diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus
Type IV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ‘Delayed hypersensitivity’-takes 24-72 hours to develop • A standard cellular immune response in which the first exposure to an antigen is called sensitization, such that on re-exposure, an immune response results • The classical test for delayed hypersensitivity is the tuberculin test for tuberculosis, where bacterial proteins from <i>M. tuberculosis</i> are injected into the skin. A couple of days later, a positive test, as indicated by an induration, means that the patient has been exposed to the bacteria and exhibits a cellular immune response to it • Another type of delayed hypersensitivity is contact sensitivity, where substances such as the metal nickel cause a red and swollen area upon contact with the skin in an individual who was previously sensitized to the metal.

Autoimmune Responses

The worst cases of the immune system over-reacting are autoimmune diseases in which the immune systems begin to attack cells of the patient's own body, causing chronic inflammation and significant damage. The trigger for these diseases is often unknown, although environmental and genetic factors are likely involved. Treatments are usually based on resolving the symptoms using immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory drugs. Figure 11.15 below provides two examples of autoimmune diseases: rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)(Betts et al., 2013).

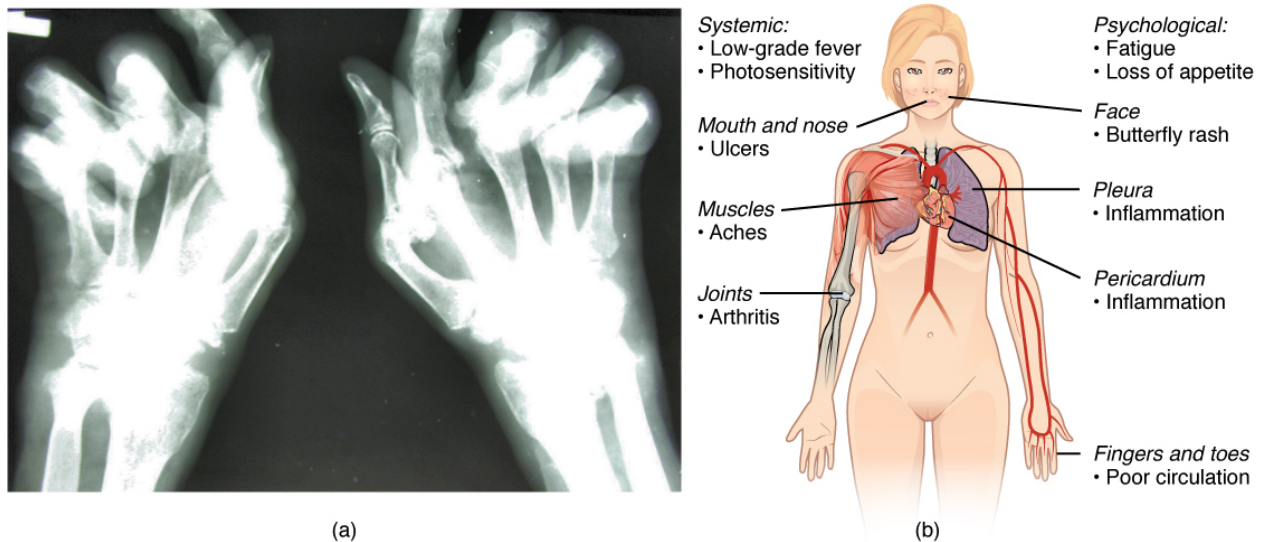


Figure 11.15 Autoimmune Disorders: Rheumatoid Arthritis and Lupus. (a) Extensive damage to the right hand of a rheumatoid arthritis sufferer is shown in the x-ray. (b) The diagram shows a variety of possible symptoms of systemic lupus erythematosus. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 11.15 Image description.](#)]

Overall, there are more than 80 different autoimmune diseases, which are a significant health problem in the elderly. Table 11.5 below lists several of the most common autoimmune diseases, the antigens that are targeted (autoantigen or “self” antigen), and the resulting tissue damage (Betts et al., 2013).

Table 11.5 Autoimmune Diseases. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Disease	Autoantigen	Symptoms
Celiac disease	Tissue transglutaminase	Damage to small intestine
Diabetes mellitus type I	Beta cells of pancreas	Low insulin production; inability to regulate serum glucose
Graves' disease	Thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (antibody blocks receptor)	Hyperthyroidism
Hashimoto's thyroiditis	Thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (antibody mimics hormone and stimulates receptor)	Hypothyroidism
Lupus erythematosus	Nuclear DNA and proteins	Damage of many body systems
Myasthenia gravis	Acetylcholine receptor in neuromuscular junctions	Debilitating muscle weakness
Rheumatoid arthritis	Joint capsule antigens	Chronic inflammation of joints

Lymphoma

Lymphoma was briefly discussed in the previous chapter.

Lymphatic Medical Terms in Use

Medical Terms in Context

Lymphatic System – Medical Report (Text version)

Fill in the following medical reporting using the words listed below:

- itchy
- runny
- allergies
- dander
- medications
- distress
- heart
- drainage
- Dyspnea
- rhinitis
- iron

PATIENT NAME: Sally WESSON

AGE: 43

SEX: Female

DOB: September 26

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: March 20

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN: Trevor Sharpe, MD

CHIEF COMPLAINT: Allergies.

HISTORY: A 43-year-old Asian female states being very tired and irritable. She had presented watery and _____[Blank 1] eyes, itchy throat, sneezing, _____[Blank 2] and stuffy nose. She has family history of _____[Blank 3]. She always struggled with many different allergies: dust, pollen, cat and dog _____[Blank 4]. She had tried different types of over-the-counter allergy _____[Blank 5], but they didn't help to alleviate the symptoms. She is currently taking Reactine 5 mg daily which does not relieve all of her symptoms.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: GENERAL: Patient is pale and in moderate _____[Blank 6]. VITAL SIGNS: Weight 160 pounds, B/P 120/80, _____[Blank 7] rate 90 beats per minute, respiratory rate 18 per minute, temperature 98.6 F. HEENT: EYES: Red, watery, itching, burning and swelling. EARS: Normal. NOSE: Mouth breathing, sneezing, runny and itchy nose, post-nasal _____[Blank 8], nasal congestion. THROAT: Itchy and swollen. CHEST: _____[Blank 9] and wheezing.

MEDICATIONS

1. Reactine 5 mg _____[Blank 10].
2. Escitalopram 20 mg q.d.
3. Lorazepam 0.5 mg p.r.n. nightly at bedtime.
4. Fenofibrate 145 mg q.h.s.

ASSESSMENT

1. Patient has severe seasonal allergic _____[Blank 11].
2. Possible anemia.

PLAN

1. Recommended Reactive 10 mg q.d.
2. Referred to an allergist to provide patient more options for allergy treatments.
3. Ordered a blood work to check her _____[Blank 12] and cholesterol levels.
4. Follow up in 4 days to review her blood work results.

Trevor Sharpe, MD

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: "Lymphatic System – Medical Report" by Sheila Bellefeuille & Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Lymphatic System – Medical Report

Lymphatic System – Medical Report (Text version)

Fill in the following medical report using the words listed below:

- stones
- fatigued
- fever
- tonsillitis
- temperature
- cervical
- dysphagia
- erythema
- crypts
- tonsillolith
- pseudomembranes
- tonsillectomy
- gargles

PATIENT NAME: Celine CAMERON

AGE: 16

SEX: Female

DOB: March 25

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: August 4

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN: Grant Talbot, MD, Pediatrics

HISTORY: This is a 16-year-old female today with complaints of throat pain. She has been struggling with inflamed tonsils for the last 2 weeks. The patient claims that tonsil _____[Blank 1] are forming and that a white film has appeared over their tonsils. She has been feeling very _____[Blank 2], has developed a mild _____[Blank 3] and occasionally feel nauseous.

The client has a family history of _____[Blank 4] resulting in tonsillectomy. She mentioned that her grandmother experienced recurrent tonsillitis around the same age. The condition of tonsillitis has occurred on 2 other occasions in the past 5 months.

PHYSICAL AND EXAMINATION: Ms. Cameron is in no acute distress. She appears fatigued. VITAL SIGNS: Blood Pressure 132/83, _____[Blank 5] is slightly elevated at 99.6, pulse 67. She is in generally in good condition. Throat palpation was performed. There is significant enlargement of the _____[Blank 6] lymph nodes. She appears to be experiencing _____[Blank 7]. Throat was examined and revealed swelling, _____[Blank 8] and tonsillar _____[Blank 9] visible. A _____[Blank 10] was seen to be forming within one of the crypts. Celine's claims of _____[Blank 11] were also confirmed. She denies any symptoms such as a nasal discharge, cough, or abdominal pain. Throat was swabbed.

ASSESSMENT: Ms. Cameron appears to be experiencing recurrent tonsillitis correlated to exaggerated tonsillar crypts. Possible _____[Blank 12] may be required.

PLAN

1. Patient was given a referral to an ENT specialist and may require tonsillectomy.
2. The patient was instructed to follow a diet of soft, smooth foods and soothing liquids.
3. It was suggested that the patient use saltwater _____[Blank 13] in the mornings and before bed.

4. A prescription of Amoxicillin 400 mg p.o. p.c.

Grant Talbot, MD, Pediatrics

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:²

Activity source: “Lymphatic System – Medical Report” by Sheila Bellefeuille and Healthier Scudder, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#) from “[Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)” In [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to Text.

Lymphatic System – Medical Report

Lymphatic System – Medical Report (Text version)

Fill in the following medical report using the words listed below:

- dysphagia
- prescribed
- lymph
- enlarged
- ibuprofen
- erythromycin
- tonsillectomy
- surgery

PATIENT NAME: Jason MACDONALD

AGE: 7

SEX: Male

DOB: August 19

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: November 15

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN: Grant Talbot, MD, Pediatrics

DIAGNOSIS: Tonsillitis

HISTORY: This 7-year-old white male has been seen by me on several occasions over the last two years. He has complained of pharyngitis, _____[Blank 1], and fever. I have _____[Blank 2] erythromycin in the past.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: When I examined Jason today, he once again had the same complaints as in

the past. I also noticed that the _____[Blank 3] nodes in his neck were _____[Blank 4] and tender. He had a temperature of 39 degrees.

TREATMENT: I gave Jason _____[Blank 5] for his fever and prescribed _____[Blank 6] again.

PLAN: It is my recommendation that Jason undergo a _____[Blank 7]. Jason's parents are in agreement. I will make the arrangements for Jason's _____[Blank 8].

Grant Talbot, MD, Pediatrics

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ³

Activity source: "Lymphatic System – Medical Report" by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Lymphatic and Immune Systems

Clinical Immunology/Allergy is a medical specialty that diagnoses and treats diseases of the immune system (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). For more information, please visit the [Canadian Medical Association Specialty Profiles Clinical Immunology page \[PDF\]](#).

Skin testing (for allergies) is done by a clinical immunologist/allergist to identify allergens in Type I hypersensitivity. In skin testing, allergen extracts are injected into the epidermis, and a positive result of the **wheal and flare response** usually occurs within 30 minutes. The soft center is due to fluid leaking from the blood vessels and the redness is caused by the increased blood flow to the area that results from the dilation of local blood vessels at the site (Betts et al., 2013).

Image Descriptions

Figure 11.15 image description: The left panel of this figure shows an x-ray image of a person's hand with rheumatoid arthritis, and the right panel of this figure shows a woman's body with labels showing the different responses in the body when the patient suffers from lupus. Labels (from top, clockwise) read: psychological:

fatigue, loss of appetite, face butterfly rash, pleura inflammation, pericardium inflammation, fingers and toes poor circulation, joints arthritis, muscles aches, mouth and nose ulcers, systemic: low-grade fever photosensitivity. [\[Return to Figure 11.15\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Lymphatic and Immune Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. itchy, 2. runny, 3. allergies, 4. dander, 5. medication, 6. distress, 7. heart 8. drainage, 9. Dyspnea, 10. daily, 11. rhinitis, 12. iron
1. stones, 2. fatigue, 3. fever 4. tonsillitis, 5. temperature, 6. cervical, 7. dysphagia, 8. erythema, 9. crypts, 10. tonsillolith, 11. pseudomembranes, 12. tonsillectomy, 13. gargles
1. dysphagia, 2. prescribed, 3. lymph, 4. enlarged, 5. ibuprofen, 6. erythromycin, 7. tonsillectomy, 8. surgery

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Lymphatic System and Immune System Vocabulary

Active immunity

Immunity developed from an individual's own immune system.

Acute inflammation

Inflammation occurring for a limited time period; rapidly developing.

Adaptive immune response

Relatively slow but very specific and effective immune response controlled by lymphocytes.

Afferent lymphatic vessels

Lead into a lymph node.

Allergens

Antigens that evoke type 1 hypersensitivity (allergy) responses.

Anaphylactic Shock

Also called anaphylaxis. An inhaled, ingested or injected (bee sting) allergen causes a significant drop in blood pressure along with contractions of smooth muscles of the airways.

Antibody

Antigen-specific protein secreted by plasma cells, immunoglobulin.

Antigen

Molecule recognized by the receptors of b and t lymphocytes.

Apoptosis

Programmed cell death.

B cells

Lymphocytes that act by differentiating into an antibody-secreting plasma cell.

Barrier defenses

Antipathogen defenses deriving from a barrier that physically prevents pathogens from entering the body to establish an infection.

Bone marrow

Tissue found inside bones, the site of all blood cell differentiation and maturation of b lymphocytes.

Bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (balt)

Lymphoid nodule associated with the respiratory tract.

CD4 T Cells

CD4 is the receptor that HIV uses to get inside T cells and reproduce. CD4+ helper T cells play an important role in T cell immune responses and antibody responses.

Chemokine

Soluble, long-range, cell-to-cell communication molecule.

Chemotaxis

Movement in response to chemicals; a phenomenon in which injured or infected cells and nearby leukocytes emit the equivalent of a chemical “911” call, attracting more leukocytes to the site.

Chronic inflammation

Inflammation occurring for long periods of time.

Chyle

Lipid-rich lymph inside the lymphatic capillaries of the small intestine.

Cisterna chyli

Bag-like vessel that forms the beginning of the thoracic duct.

Complement

Enzymatic cascade of constitutive blood proteins that have antipathogen effects, including the direct killing of bacteria.

Crypts

Histologically, tonsils do not contain a complete capsule, and the epithelial layer invaginates deeply into the interior of the tonsil to form tonsillar crypts.

Cytokine

Soluble, short-range, cell-to-cell communication molecule.

Deep Lymphatic Vessels

Lymphatic vessels of the organs.

Efferent lymphatic vessels

Lead out of a lymph node.

Erythroblastosis fetalis

Disease of rh factor-positive newborns in rh-negative mothers with multiple rh-positive children; resulting from the action of maternal antibodies against fetal blood.

Genetic mutation that affects both t cell and b cell arms of the immune response.

Genetic Recombination

The combining of gene segments from two different pathogens.

Graft-versus-host disease

In bone marrow transplants, occurs when the transplanted cells mount an immune response against the recipient.

Histamine

Vasoactive mediator in granules of mast cells and is the primary cause of allergies and anaphylactic shock.

HIV

Human Immunodeficiency Virus. An infectious disease usually transmitted via blood or sexual fluids. It attacks the immune system and can lead to AIDS.

Hypersensitivities

Reacting to something that would not normally evoke a reaction.

Immune system

Series of barriers, cells, and soluble mediators that combine to respond to infections of the body with pathogenic organisms.

Immunity

After an infection, memory cells remain in the body for a long time and can very quickly mount an immune response against the same pathogen if it tries to re-infect. This protects us from getting diseases from the same pathogen over again.

Immunological memory

Ability of the adaptive immune response to mount a stronger and faster immune response upon re-exposure to a pathogen.

Induration

A firm, raised reddened patch of skin.

Inflammation

Basic innate immune response characterized by heat, redness, pain, and swelling.

Innate immune response

Rapid but relatively nonspecific immune response.

Intercellular

Between cells.

Interferons

Early induced proteins made in virally infected cells that cause nearby cells to make antiviral proteins.

Interstitial Fluid

Fluid that has leaked out of blood capillaries into the tissue spaces.

Interstitial

Between cells of the tissues, often used interchangeably with 'intercellular'.

Interstitial Space

Spaces between individual cells in the tissues.

Intracellular

Inside the cell membrane or within the cell.

Leukemia

A cancer involving an abundance of leukocytes. It may involve only one specific type of leukocyte from either the myeloid line (myelocytic leukemia) or the lymphoid line (lymphocytic leukemia). In chronic leukemia, mature leukocytes accumulate and fail to die. In acute leukemia, there is an overproduction of young, immature leukocytes. In both conditions the cells do not function properly.

Lymph

Fluid contained within the lymphatic system.

Lymph node

One of the bean-shaped organs found associated with the lymphatic vessels.

Lymphatic capillaries

Smallest of the lymphatic vessels and the origin of lymph flow.

Lymphatic system

Network of lymphatic vessels, lymph nodes, and ducts that carries lymph from the tissues and back to the bloodstream.

Lymphatic trunks

Large lymphatics that collect lymph from smaller lymphatic vessels and empties into the blood via lymphatic ducts.

Lymphocytes

White blood cells characterized by a large nucleus and small rim of cytoplasm.

Lymphoid nodules

Unencapsulated patches of lymphoid tissue found throughout the body.

Lymphoma

A form of cancer in which masses of malignant T and/or B lymphocytes collect in lymph nodes, the spleen, the liver, and other tissues. These leukocytes do not function properly, and the patient is vulnerable to infection.

Macrophage

Ameboid phagocyte found in several tissues throughout the body.

Mast cell

Cell found in the skin and the lining of body cells that contains cytoplasmic granules with vasoactive mediators such as histamine.

Memory t cells

Long-lived immune cell reserved for future exposure to an pathogen.

MHC

Major Histocompatibility Complex molecules, also called Human Leukocyte Antigen (HLA) are protein structures found on the outside of cells that help the immune system recognize non-self antigens.

Monocyte

Precursor to macrophages and dendritic cells seen in the blood.

Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (malt)

Lymphoid nodule associated with the mucosa.

Mucosal

Mucous membranes line body cavities that open to the outside world, including the respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, urinary tract and reproductive tracts.

Naïve lymphocyte

Mature b or t cell that has not yet encountered antigen for the first time.

Natural killer cell (nk)

Cytotoxic lymphocyte of innate immune response.

Neutrophil

Phagocytic white blood cell recruited from the bloodstream to the site of infection via the bloodstream.

Opsonization

An antibody or an antimicrobial protein binds to a pathogen, thereby marking it as a target for phagocytes.

Passive immunity

Transfer of immunity to a pathogen to an individual that lacks immunity to this pathogen usually by the injection of antibodies.

Pathogens

Disease causing agents.

Phagocytosis

Movement of material from the outside to the inside of the cells via vesicles made from invaginations of the plasma membrane.

Plasma cell

Differentiated b cell that is actively secreting antibody.

Primary adaptive response

Immune system's response to the first exposure to a pathogen.

Primary lymphoid organ

Site where lymphocytes mature and proliferate, red bone marrow and thymus gland.

Right lymphatic duct

Drains lymph fluid from the upper right side of body into the right subclavian vein.

S. aureus

Staphylococcus aureus is a bacterium that is commonly found in minor skin infections, as well as in the nose of some healthy people.

Secondary adaptive response

Immune response observed upon re-exposure to a pathogen, which is stronger and faster than a primary response.

Secondary lymphoid organs

Sites where lymphocytes mount adaptive immune responses, examples include lymph nodes and spleen.

Seroconversion

The reciprocal relationship between virus levels in the blood and antibody levels. As the antibody levels rise, the virus levels decline, and this is a sign that the immune response is being at least partially effective (partially, because in many diseases, seroconversion does not necessarily mean a patient is getting well).

Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (scid)

Genetic mutation that affects both t cell and b cell arms of the immune response.

Spleen

Secondary lymphoid organ that filters pathogens from the blood (white pulp) and removes degenerating or damaged blood cells (red pulp).

Superficial Lymphatics

Lymphatic vessels of the subcutaneous tissues of the skin.

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

SLE is an autoimmune disease in which the immune system recognizes its own cell antigens as being “non-self” and mounts an immune response against them. As a result, many body tissues and vital organs become chronically inflamed and damaged.

T cell

Lymphocyte that acts by secreting molecules that regulate the immune system or by causing the destruction of foreign cells, viruses, and cancer cells.

Thoracic duct

Large duct that drains lymph from the lower limbs, left thorax, left upper limb, and the left side of the head.

Thymocytes

Lymphocytes that develop into T-cells in the thymus gland.

Thymus

Primary lymphoid organ, where t lymphocytes proliferate and mature.

Tonsils

Lymphoid nodules associated with the nasopharynx.

Tissue typing

The determination of MHC molecules in the tissue to be transplanted to better match the donor to the recipient.

Vaccine

A killed or weakened pathogen or its components that, when administered to a healthy individual, leads to the development of immunological memory (a weakened primary immune response) without causing much in the way of symptoms.

Vasodilation

The smooth muscle layer in the wall of the blood vessel relaxes, allowing the vessel to widen. This decreases blood pressure in the vessel.

Wheal and flare response

A soft, pale swelling at the site surrounded by a red zone.

Lymphatic and Immune Systems Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Lymphatic and Immune Systems Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Vasoactive mediator in granules of mast cells and is the primary cause of allergies and anaphylactic shock is called _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Histamine
 - b. Mast cell
 - c. Cisterna chyli
2. Large duct that drains lymph from the lower limbs, left thorax, left upper limb, and the left side of the head is referred to as _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Thoracic duct
 - b. Lymph
 - c. Plasma cell
3. _____[Blank 3] is the primary lymphoid organ; where t lymphocytes proliferate and mature.
 - a. Lymphatic capillaries
 - b. Thymus
 - c. Antigen
4. Tissue found inside bones; the site of all blood cell differentiation and maturation of b lymphocytes are called _____[Blank 4].
 - a. Neutrophil
 - b. Interferons
 - c. Bone marrow
5. Ability of the adaptive immune response to mount a stronger and faster immune response upon re-exposure to a pathogen is called _____[Blank 5].
 - a. Immunological memory
 - b. Chemokine
 - c. Barrier defenses

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Lymphatic and Immune Systems Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Lymphatic and Immune Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Lymphatic and Immune Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Histamine 2. Thoracic duct, 3. Thymus, 4. Bone marrow, 5. Immunological memory.

References

Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Clinical immunology/allergy profile*. Canadian Medical Association Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/immunology-allergy-e.pdf>

CrashCourse. (2015, November 30). *Lymphatic system: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #44* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/I7orwMgTQ5I>

CrashCourse. (2015, December 8). *Immune system, part 1: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #45* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/GIJK3dwCWCw>

CrashCourse. (2015, December 14). *Immune system, part 2: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #46* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/2DFN4IBZ3rI>

CHAPTER 12: DIGESTIVE SYSTEM (GASTROINTESTINAL)

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [12.1 – Introduction to the Digestive System](#)
- [12.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Digestive System](#)
- [12.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Digestive System](#)
- [12.4 – Diseases and Disorders of the Digestive System](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

12.1 - Introduction to the Digestive System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy and describe the main functions of the digestive system and accessory structures
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the digestive system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of digestive system medical terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the digestive system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Digestive System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the digestive system.

Prefix

- **hemi-** (half)
- **endo-** (within, in)
- **sub-** (under, below)
- **dys-** (painful, abnormal, difficult, laboured)

Combining Form

- **abdomin/o** (abdomen, abdominal)
- **an/o** (anus)
- **antr/o** (antrum)
- **append/o** (appendix)
- **appendic/o** (appendix)

- **cec/o** (cecum)
- **celi/o** (abdomen, abdominal cavity)
- **cheil/o** (lip)
- **cholangi/o** (bile duct)
- **chol/e** (gall, bile)
- **choledoch/o** (common bile duct)
- **col/o** (colon)
- **colon/o** (colon)
- **diverticul/o** (diverticulum)
- **duoden/o** (duodenum)
- **enter/o** (intestine)
- **esophag/o** (esophagus)
- **gastr/o** (stomach)
- **gingiv/o** (gum)
- **gloss/o** (tongue)
- **hepat/o** (liver)
- **herni/o** (hernia, protrusion of an organ through a membrane or cavity wall)
- **ile/o** (ileum)
- **jejun/o** (jejunum)
- **lapar/o** (abdomen, abdominal cavity)
- **lingu/o** (tongue)
- **or/o** (mouth)
- **palat/o** (palate)
- **pancreat/o** (pancreas)
- **peritone/o** (peritoneum)
- **polyp/o** (polyp, small growth)
- **proct/o** (rectum)
- **pylor/o** (pylorus, pyloric sphincter)
- **rect/o** (rectum)
- **sial/o** (saliva, salivary gland)
- **sigmoid/o** (sigmoid colon)
- **steat/o** (fat)
- **stomat/o** (mouth)
- **uvul/o** (uvula)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-cele** (hernia, protrusion)
- **-centesis** (surgical puncture to aspirate fluid)
- **-ectomy** (excision)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graph** (instrument used to record)

- **-graphy** (process of recording)
- **-ia** (condition of, diseased state, abnormal state)
- **-iasis** (condition)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist or physician who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-malacia** (softening)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-sis** (abnormal condition)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-pepsia** (digestion)
- **-phagia** (eating or swallowing)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-ptosis** (prolapse, drooping)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing, repairing)
- **-rrhea** (flow, discharge)
- **-scope** (instrument used for visualization)
- **-scopy** (process of viewing, visualization)
- **-stomy** (creation of an artificial opening)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)

Activity source: Digestive System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Introduction to the Digestive System

The digestive system is continually at work, yet people seldom appreciate the complex tasks it performs in a choreographed biologic symphony. Consider what happens when you eat an apple. Of course, you enjoy the apple's taste as you chew it, but in the hours that follow, unless something goes amiss and you get a stomachache, you don't notice that your digestive system is working. You may be taking a walk or studying or sleeping, having forgotten all about the apple, but your stomach and intestines are busy digesting it and absorbing its vitamins and other nutrients. By the time any waste material is excreted, the body has appropriated all it can use from the apple. In short, whether you pay attention or not, the organs of the digestive system perform their specific functions, allowing you to use the food you eat to keep you going.

This chapter examines the structure and functions of these organs, and explores the mechanics and chemistry of the digestive processes. The function of the digestive system is to break down the foods you eat, release their nutrients, and absorb those nutrients into the body. Although the small intestine is the workhorse of the system, where the majority of digestion occurs, and where most of the released nutrients are absorbed into the blood or lymph, each of the digestive system organs makes a vital contribution to this process (see [Figure 12.1](#)).

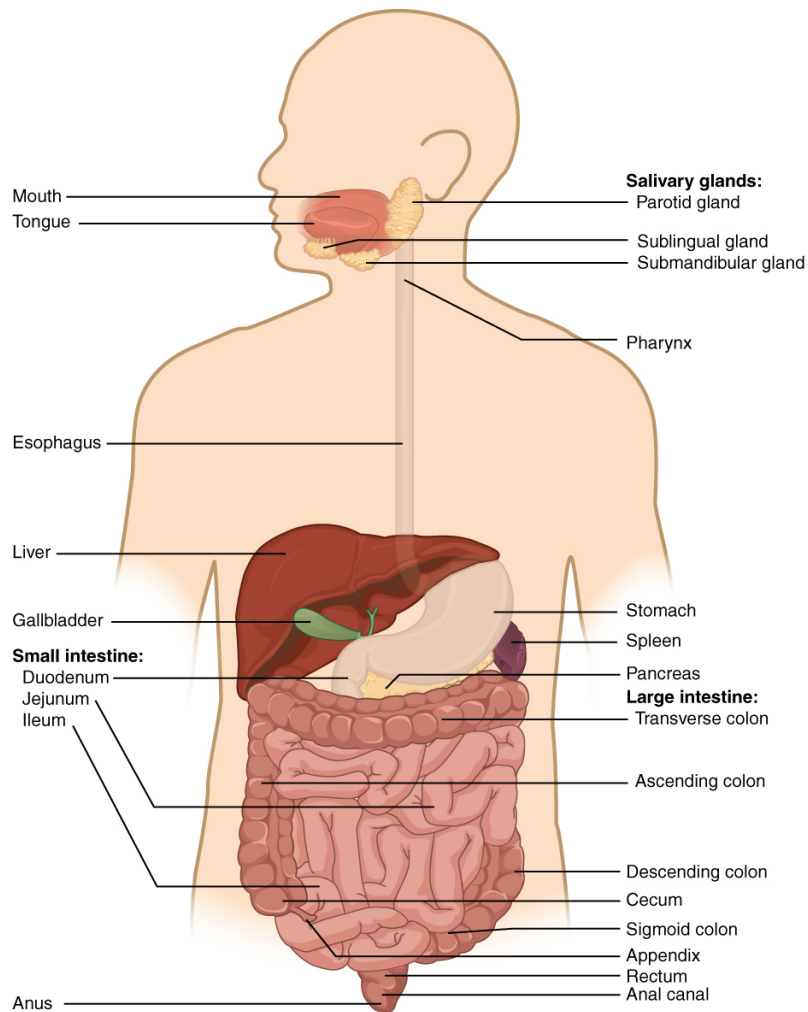


Figure 12.1 Components of the Digestive System. All digestive organs play integral roles in the life-sustaining process of digestion. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 12.1 Image description.]

Watch [Digestive System, Part 1: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #33 \(11 min\)](#)

Digestive System Medical Terms

Now that you have memorized the word parts, see if you can break down the following digestive terms and define them.

Digestive System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following **digestive system** words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **gastroenterology (gastr/o/enter/o/logy)**
 - study of the stomach and intestines
2. **cholecystitis (chol/e/cyst/itis)**
 - inflammation of the gallbladder
3. **proctoscope (proct/o/scope)**
 - instrument used to view the rectum
4. **pyloroplasty (pylor/o/plasty)**
 - surgical repair of the pylorus
5. **hepatomegaly (hepat/o/megaly)**
 - enlarged liver
6. **gastric (gastr/ic)**
 - pertaining to the stomach
7. **cholangiography (cholangi/o/graphy)**
 - radiographic imaging of the bile duct
8. **gastroenterologist (gastr/o/enter/o/logist)**
 - specialist who studies and treats stomach and intestines
9. **cholangiogram (cholangi/o/gram)**
 - radiographic image of the bile duct
10. **hepatoma (hepat/oma)**
 - tumour of the liver

11. **pancreatitis (pancreat/itis)**
 - inflammation of the pancreas
12. **esophagogram (esophag/o/gram)**
 - radiographic image of the esophagus
13. **steatosis (steat/osis)**
 - abnormal condition of fat
14. **rectocele (rect/o/cele)**
 - protrusion of the rectum
15. **endoscope (endo/scope)**
 - instrument used to view within (hollow organs)
16. **abdominal (abdomin/al)**
 - pertaining to the abdomen
17. **proctoptosis (proct/o/ptosis)**
 - condition of prolapse of the rectum
18. **diverticulitis (diverticul/itis)**
 - inflammation of the diverticulum
19. **oral (or/al)**
 - pertaining to the mouth
20. **appendectomy (append/ectomy)**
 - excision of the appendix
21. **esophagoscopy (esophag/o/scopy)**
 - process of viewing the esophagus
22. **cheilorrhaphy (cheil/o/rrhaphy)**
 - suturing of the lip
23. **glossorrhaphy (gloss/o/rrhaphy)**
 - suturing of the tongue
24. **pyloromyotomy (pylor/o/my/o/tomy)**

- incision into the pyloric muscle
- 25. **gastroplasty (gastr/o/plasty)**
 - surgical repair of the stomach
- 26. **colectomy (col/ectomy)**
 - excision of the colon
- 27. **sigmoidoscopy (sigmoid/o/scopy)**
 - process of viewing the sigmoid colon
- 28. **palatitis (palat/itis)**
 - inflammation of the palate
- 29. **esophageal (esophag/eal)**
 - pertaining to the esophagus
- 30. **colitis (col/itis)**
 - inflammation of the colon
- 31. **ileocecal (ile/o/cec/al)**
 - pertaining to the ileum and cecum
- 32. **gastrectomy (gastr/ectomy)**
 - excision of the stomach
- 33. **anoplasty (an/o/plasty)**
 - surgical repair of the anus
- 34. **cholelithiasis (chole/lith/iasis)**
 - condition of gallstones
- 35. **gastroscopy (gastr/o/scopy)**
 - process of viewing the stomach
- 36. **colostomy (col/o/stomy)**
 - creation of an artificial opening in the colon
- 37. **polyposis (polyp/osis)**
 - abnormal condition of (multiple) polyps

38. **laparoscopy (lapar/o/scopy)**
 - process of viewing the abdominal cavity
39. **cholecystectomy (chole/cyst/ectomy)**
 - excision of the gallbladder to remove stones
40. **glossitis (gloss/itis)**
 - inflammation of the tongue
41. **cholangioma (cholangi/oma)**
 - tumour of the bile duct
42. **pancreatic (pancreat/ic)**
 - pertaining to the pancreas
43. **stomatitis (stomat/itis)**
 - inflammation of the mouth
44. **ileocecal (ile/o/cec/al)**
 - pertaining to the ileum and cecum
45. **nasogastric (nas/o/gastr/ic)**
 - pertaining to the nose and stomach
46. **proctoscopy (proct/o/scopy)**
 - process of viewing the rectum
47. **herniorrhaphy (herni/o/rrhaphy)**
 - suturing of a hernia
48. **appendicitis (appendic/itis)**
 - inflammation of the appendix
49. **gingivectomy (gingiv/ectomy)**
 - excision of the gums
50. **gastroenterocolitis (gastr/o/enter/o/col/itis)**
 - inflammation of the stomach, intestines, and colon
51. **choledocholithotomy (choledoch/o/lith/o/tomy)**

- incision into the common bile duct to remove stones
- 52. **gastroscope (gastr/o/scope)**
 - instrument used to view the stomach
- 53. **diverticulosis (diverticul/osis)**
 - abnormal condition of having diverticula
- 54. **uvulitis (uvul/itis)**
 - inflammation of the uvula
- 55. **dysphagia (dys/phagia)**
 - difficult swallowing
- 56. **gastrostomy (gastr/o/stomy)**
 - creation of an artificial opening in the stomach
- 57. **hemicolectomy (hemi/col/ectomy)**
 - excision of half of the colon
- 58. **choledocholithiasis (choledoch/o/lith/iasis)**
 - condition of stones in the common bile duct
- 59. **uvulectomy (uvul/ectomy)**
 - excision of the uvula
- 60. **peritoneal (periton/eal)**
 - pertaining to the peritoneum
- 61. **ileostomy (ile/o/stomy)**
 - creation of an artificial opening in the ileum
- 62. **steatorrhea (steat/o/rrhea)**
 - discharge of fat
- 63. **sialolith (sial/o/lith)**
 - stone in the salivary gland
- 64. **proctology (proct/o/logy)**
 - study of disease and disorders of the rectum

65. **gastrojejunostomy (gastr/o/jejun/o/stomy)**
 - creation of an artificial opening between the stomach and the jejunum
66. **rectal (rect/al)**
 - pertaining to the rectum
67. **gingivitis (gingiv/itis)**
 - inflammation of the gums
68. **colonoscopy (colon/o/scopy)**
 - process of viewing the colon
69. **colorectal (col/o/rect/al)**
 - pertaining to the colon and rectum
70. **anal (an/al)**
 - pertaining to the anus
71. **duodenal (duoden/al)**
 - pertaining to the duodenum
72. **abdominocentesis (abdomin/o/centesis)**
 - surgical puncture to aspirate fluid from the abdomen
73. **hepatitis (hepat/itis)**
 - inflammation of the liver
74. **laparoscope (lapar/o/scope)**
 - instrument used to view the abdominal cavity
75. **antrectomy (antr/ectomy)**
 - excision of the antrum (of the stomach)
76. **enterorrhaphy (enter/o/rrhaphy)**
 - suturing of the intestine
77. **esophagitis (esophag/itis)**
 - inflammation of the esophagus
78. **uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP)**

- uvul/o/palat/o/pharyng/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the uvula, palate, and pharynx
79. **peritonitis (periton/itis)**
- inflammation of the peritoneum
80. **diverticulectomy (diverticul/ectomy)**
- excision of the diverticula
81. **enteropathy (enter/o/pathy)**
- disease of the intestines
82. **proctologist (proct/o/logist)**
- Specialist who studies and treats diseases of the rectum
83. **gastritis (gastr/itis)**
- inflammation of the stomach
84. **abdominoplasty (abdomin/o/plasty)**
- surgical repair of the abdomen
85. **celiotomy (celi/o/tomy)**
- incision into the abdominal cavity
86. **gastroenteritis (gastr/o/enter/itis)**
- inflammation of the stomach and intestines
87. **endoscopy (endo/scopy)**
- process of viewing within (hollow organs)
88. **palatoplasty (palat/o/plasty)**
- surgical repair of the palate
89. **laparotomy (lapar/o/tomy)**
- incision into the abdominal cavity
90. **colonoscope (colon/o/scope)**
- instrument used to view the colon
91. **polypectomy (polyp/ectomy)**
- excision of polyps

92. **gastrojejunostomy (gastr/o/jejun/o/stomy)**
 - creation of an artificial opening between the stomach and the jejunum
93. **CT colonography (CT colon/o/graphy)**
 - radiographic imaging of the colon using computed tomography
94. **esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD)**
 - esophag/o/gastr/o/duoden/o/scopy
 - process of viewing the esophagus, stomach and duodenum
95. **stomatogastric (stomat/o/gastr/ic)**
 - pertaining to the mouth and stomach
96. **celiac (celi/ac)**
 - pertaining to the abdomen
97. **gastromalacia (gastr/o/malacia)**
 - softening of the stomach
98. **dyspepsia (dys/pepsia)**
 - difficult digestion
99. **esophagogastroplasty (esophag/o/gastr/o/plasty)**
 - surgical repair of the esophagus and stomach
100. **sublingual (sub/lingu/al)**
 - pertaining to under the tongue
101. **steatohepatitis (steat/o/hepat/itis)**
 - inflammation of liver associated with fat

Activity source: Digestive System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Digestive System

Practice with this activity:

Digestive System(Text version)

Fill in the blanks using the following list of words:

- polyp
- palpate
- obesity
- hemorrhoids
- emesis
- melena
- flatus
- ascites
- feces
- reflux
- nausea
- cirrhosis
- dysentery
- adhesion
- stoma

The Physician during an examination will _____[Blank 1] to feel for texture, size, consistency and location of body parts with hands.

A _____[Blank 2] is a small tumour-like growth that extend from the surface of a mucous membrane.

_____ [Blank 3] is an abnormal increase in the proportion of fat cells resulting in excess body weight for height.

Distended and swollen veins in the rectum and anus are called _____[Blank 4].

The medical term for vomiting is _____[Blank 5].

_____ [Blank 6] is black tarry stool that contains blood from the gastrointestinal tract.

_____ [Blank 7] is the medical term for gas in the gastrointestinal tract.

Abnormal intraperitoneal accumulation of fluid with large amount of proteins and electrolytes is _____[Blank 8].

_____ is fecal matter.

Abnormal backward flow is called _____[Blank 10].

The urge to vomit is _____[Blank 11].

_____ [Blank 12] is a chronic degenerative disease of the liver due to alcohol abuse.

_____ [Blank 13] is an inflammation of the intestine presenting with abdominal pain and bloody diarrhea.

A band of scar tissue that binds anatomic surfaces to each other is called an _____[Blank 14].

The surgical opening between an organ and the surface of the body is called a _____[Blank 15].

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Digestive System by Alyssa Arsenault, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#) from “[Digestive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to Text.

Image Descriptions

Figure 12.1 image description: This diagram shows the digestive system of a human being, with the major organs labeled. Labels read (clockwise, from top): salivary glands: parotid gland, sublingual gland, submandibular gland; pharynx, stomach, spleen, pancreas, large intestine: transverse colon, ascending colon, descending colon, cecum, sigmoid colon, appendix, rectum, anal canal, anus; small intestine: duodenum, jejunum, ileum, gall bladder, liver, esophagus, tongue, mouth. [\[Return to Figure 12.1\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Digestive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Digestive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. palpate, 2. polyp, 3. obesity, 4. hemorrhoids, 5. emesis, 6. melena, 7. flatus, 8. ascites, 9. feces, 10. reflux, 11. nausea, 12. cirrhosis, 13. dysentery, 14. adhesion, 15. stoma

12.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Digestive System

The Mouth

The cheeks, tongue, and palate frame the mouth, which is also called the **oral cavity** (or buccal cavity). The structures of the mouth are illustrated in [Figure 12.2](#).

At the entrance to the mouth are the lips, or **labia** (singular = labium). Their outer covering is skin, which transitions to a mucous membrane in the mouth proper. Lips are very vascular with a thin layer of keratin, hence the reason they are red.

The pocket-like part of the mouth that is framed on the inside by the gums and teeth and on the outside by the cheeks and lips is called the **oral vestibule**. Moving farther into the mouth, the opening between the oral cavity and throat (oropharynx) is called the **fauces** (like the kitchen “faucet”). The main open area of the mouth, or oral cavity proper, runs from the gums and teeth to the fauces.

When you are chewing, you do not find it difficult to breathe simultaneously. The next time you have food in your mouth, notice how the arched shape of the roof of your mouth allows you to handle both digestion and respiration at the same time. This arch is called the palate. The anterior region of the palate serves as a wall (or septum) between the oral and nasal cavities as well as a rigid shelf against which the tongue can push food. It is created by the maxillary and palatine bones of the skull and, given its bony structure, is known as the hard palate. If you run your tongue along the roof of your mouth, you'll notice that the hard palate ends in the posterior oral cavity, and the tissue becomes fleshier. This part of the palate, known as the **soft palate**, is composed mainly of skeletal muscle. You can therefore manipulate, subconsciously, the soft palate—for instance, to yawn, swallow, or sing (see [Figure 12.2](#)).

Did You Know i?

You can eat upside down. Food doesn't need gravity to reach your stomach. Peristalsis, a wave-like muscle movement, pushes food along.

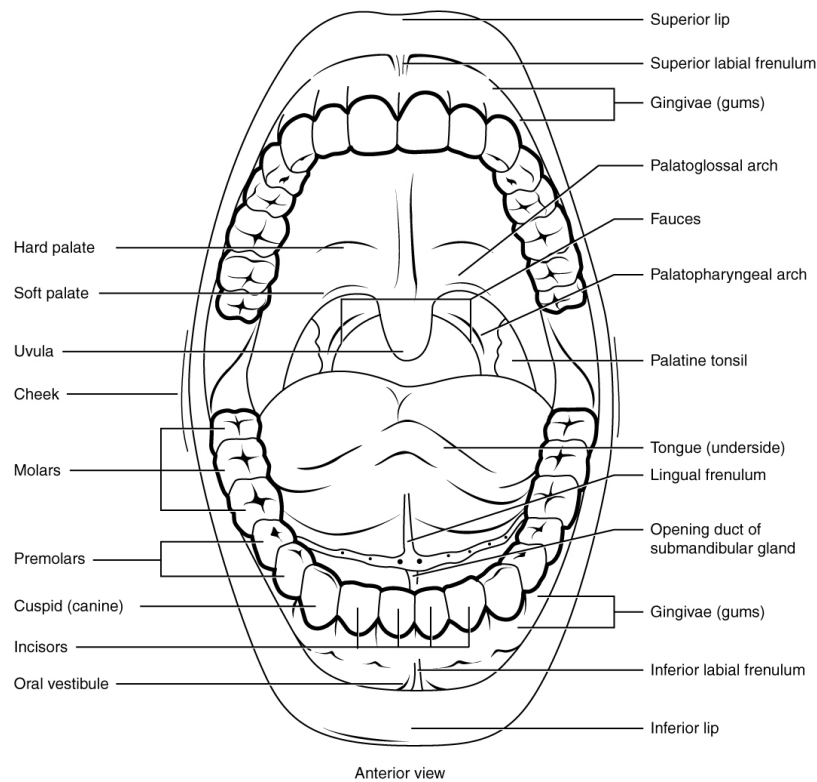


Figure 12.2 Mouth. The mouth includes the lips, tongue, palate, gums, and teeth. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 12.2 Image description.]

A fleshy bead of tissue called the **uvula** drops down from the center of the posterior edge of the soft palate. Although some have suggested that the uvula is a vestigial organ, it serves an important purpose. When you swallow, the soft palate and uvula move upward, helping to keep foods and liquid from entering the **nasal cavity**. Unfortunately, it can also contribute to the sound produced by snoring. Two muscular folds extend downward from the soft palate, on either side of the uvula. Toward the front, the **palatoglossal arch** lies next to the base of the tongue; behind it, the **palatopharyngeal arch** forms the superior and lateral margins of the fauces. Between these two arches are the **palatine tonsils**, clusters of lymphoid tissue that protect the pharynx. The **lingual tonsils** are located at the base of the tongue.

Tongue

Perhaps you have heard it said that the **tongue** is the strongest muscle in the body. Those who stake this claim cite its strength proportionate to its size. Although it is difficult to quantify the relative strength of different muscles, it remains indisputable that the tongue is a workhorse, facilitating **ingestion**, **mechanical digestion**, **chemical digestion** (lingual lipase), sensation (of taste, texture, and temperature of food), swallowing, and vocalization.

The tongue is attached to the mandible, the styloid processes of the temporal bones, and the hyoid bone. The hyoid is unique in that it only distantly/indirectly articulates with other bones. The tongue is positioned over

the floor of the oral cavity. A medial septum extends the entire length of the tongue, dividing it into symmetrical halves.

The top and sides of the tongue are studded with papillae, extensions of lamina propria of the mucosa, which are covered in **stratified squamous epithelium** (see [Figure 12.3](#)).

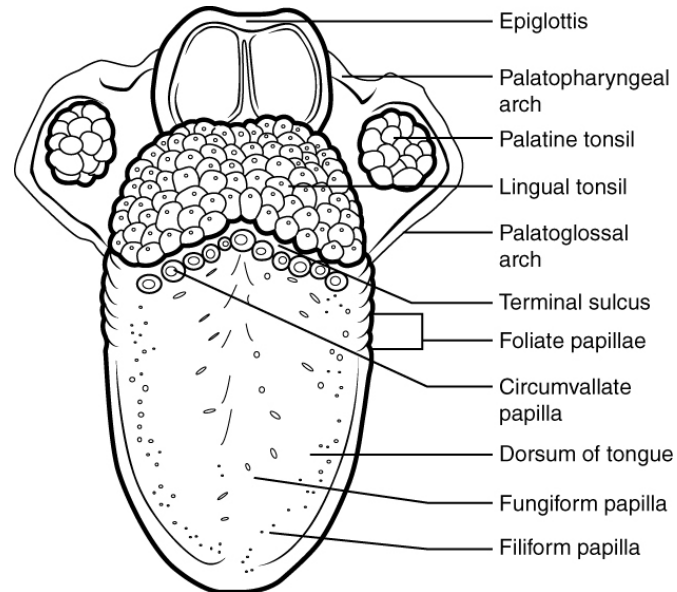


Figure 12.3 Tongue. This superior view of the tongue shows the locations and types of lingual papillae. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 12.3 Image description](#).]

Salivary Glands

Many small **salivary glands** are housed within the mucous membranes of the mouth and tongue. These minor **exocrine** glands are constantly secreting **saliva**, either directly into the oral cavity or indirectly through ducts, even while you sleep. In fact, an average of 1 to 1.5 liters of saliva is secreted each day. Usually, just enough saliva is present to moisten the mouth and teeth. Secretion increases when you eat, because saliva is essential to moisten food and initiate the chemical breakdown of **carbohydrates**. Small amounts of saliva are also secreted by the **labial glands** in the lips. In addition, the **buccal glands** in the cheeks, palatal glands in the palate, and lingual glands in the tongue help ensure that all areas of the mouth are supplied with adequate saliva.

Concept Check 1

- Describe how the **anatomy** of the **mouth** permits breathing and chewing at the same time
- Explain the role **saliva** performs in the digestive system

Pharynx

The pharynx (throat) is involved in both digestion and respiration. It receives food and air from the mouth, and air from the nasal cavities. When food enters the pharynx, involuntary muscle contractions close off the air passageways. A short tube of skeletal muscle lined with a **mucous membrane**, the pharynx runs from the posterior oral and nasal cavities to the opening of the esophagus and larynx. It has three subdivisions. The most superior, the nasopharynx, is involved only in breathing and speech. The other two subdivisions, the **oropharynx** and the **laryngopharynx**, are used for both breathing and digestion. The oropharynx begins inferior to the nasopharynx and is continuous below with the laryngopharynx. The inferior border of the laryngopharynx connects to the esophagus, whereas the anterior portion connects to the larynx, allowing air to flow into the bronchial tree.

Esophagus

The esophagus is a muscular tube that connects the pharynx to the stomach. It is approximately 25.4 cm (10 in) in length, located posterior to the trachea, and remains in a collapsed form when not engaged in swallowing. As you can see in [Figure 12.4](#), the esophagus runs a mainly straight route through the mediastinum of the thorax. To enter the abdomen, the esophagus penetrates the diaphragm through an opening called the esophageal hiatus.

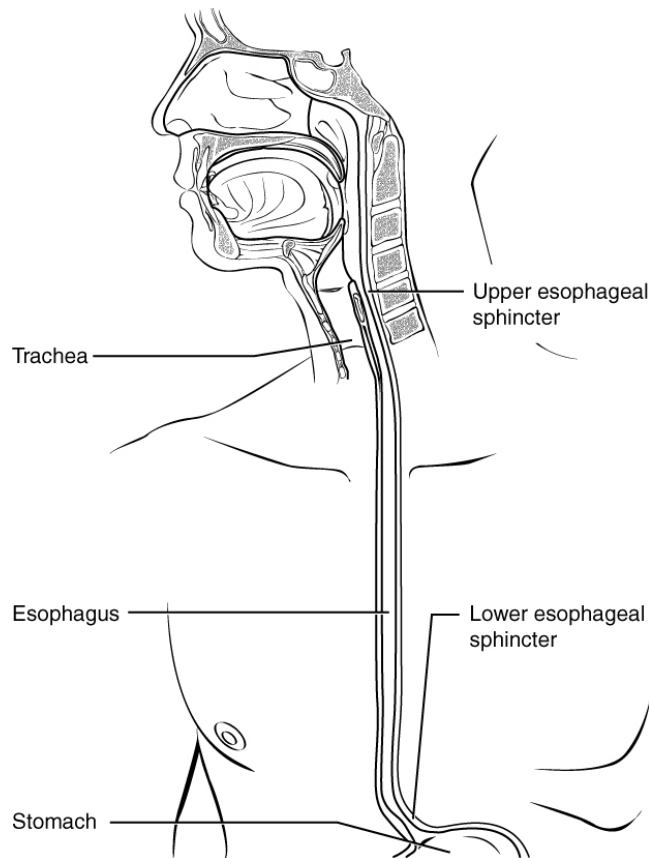


Figure 12.4 Esophagus. The upper esophageal sphincter controls the movement of food from the pharynx to the esophagus. The lower esophageal sphincter controls the movement of food from the esophagus to the stomach. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 12.4 Image description.](#)]

Passage of Food Through the Esophagus

The upper **esophageal sphincter**, which is continuous with the inferior pharyngeal **constrictor**, controls the movement of food from the pharynx into the esophagus. The upper two-thirds of the esophagus consists of both smooth and skeletal muscle fibers, with the latter fading out in the bottom third of the esophagus. Rhythmic waves of **peristalsis**, which begin in the upper esophagus, propel the bolus of food toward the stomach. Meanwhile, secretions from the esophageal mucosa lubricate the esophagus and food. Food passes from the esophagus into the stomach at the lower esophageal sphincter (also called the gastroesophageal or cardiac sphincter). Recall that sphincters are muscles that surround tubes and serve as valves, closing the tube when the sphincters contract and opening it when they relax.

Stomach

There are four main regions in the **stomach**: the cardia, fundus, body, and pylorus (see [Figure 12.5](#)). The **cardia** (or

cardiac region) is the point where the esophagus connects to the stomach and through which food passes into the stomach. Located inferior to the diaphragm, above and to the left of the cardia is the dome-shaped **fundus**. Below the fundus is the **body**, the main part of the stomach. The funnel-shaped **pylorus** connects the stomach to the duodenum. The wider end of the funnel, the **pyloric antrum**, connects to the body of the stomach. The narrower end is called the **pyloric canal**, which connects to the duodenum. The smooth muscle **pyloric sphincter** is located at this latter point of connection and controls stomach emptying. In the absence of food, the stomach deflates inward, and its mucosa and submucosa fall into a large fold called a **ruga**.

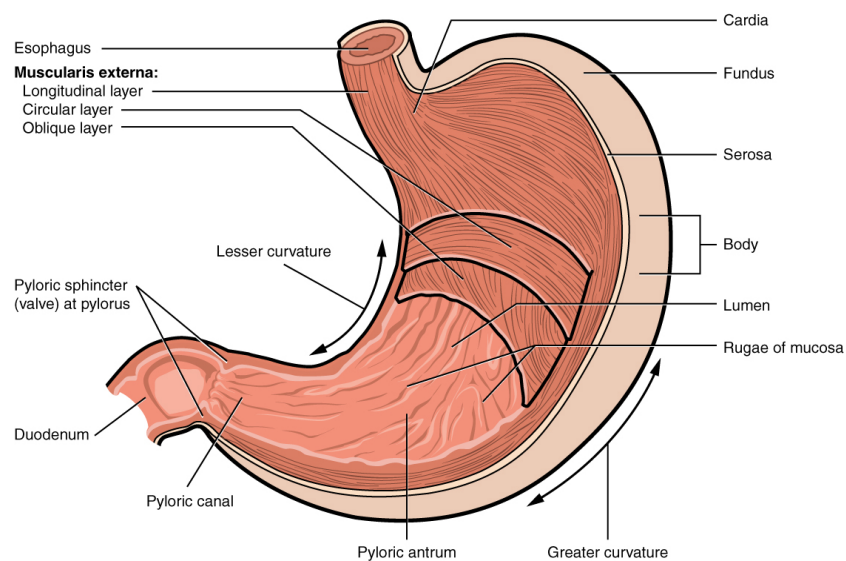


Figure 12.5 Stomach. The stomach has four major regions: the cardia, fundus, body, and pylorus. The addition of an inner oblique smooth muscle layer gives the muscularis the ability to vigorously churn and mix food. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 12.5 Image description.]

The **convex** lateral surface of the stomach is called the greater curvature; the **concave** medial border is the lesser curvature. The stomach is held in place by the lesser omentum, which extends from the liver to the lesser curvature, and the greater **omentum**, which runs from the greater curvature to the posterior abdominal wall. Partially digested food mixed with digestive juices of the stomach becomes known as chyme.

Small Intestines

Chyme released from the stomach enters the **small intestine**, which is the primary digestive organ in the body. Not only is this where most digestion occurs, it is also where practically all absorption occurs. The longest part of the **alimentary canal**, the small intestine is about 3.05 meters (10 feet) long in a living person (but about twice

as long in a cadaver due to the loss of muscle tone). Since this makes it about five times longer than the large intestine, you might wonder why it is called “small.” In fact, its name derives from its relatively smaller diameter of only about 2.54 cm (1 in), compared with 7.62 cm (3 in) for the large intestine. As we’ll see shortly, in addition to its length, the folds and projections of the lining of the small intestine work to give it an enormous surface area, which is approximately 200 m², more than 100 times the surface area of your skin. This large surface area is necessary for complex processes of digestion and absorption that occur within it.

Did You Know 2?

Your body absorbs 90 per cent of our nutrients through the **small intestine**, into your blood.

The coiled tube of the small intestine is subdivided into three regions. From **proximal** (at the stomach) to **distal**, these are the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum (see [Figure 12.6](#)).

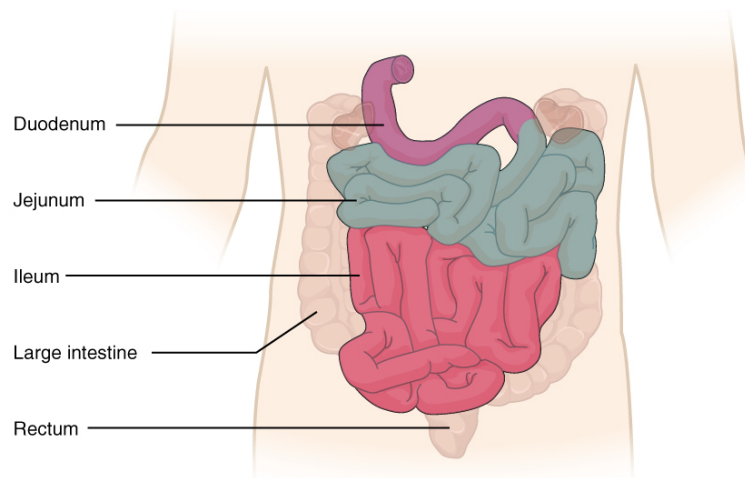


Figure 12.6 Small Intestine. The three regions of the small intestine are the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 12.6 Image description.](#)]

Large Intestines

The **large intestine** is the terminal part of the alimentary canal. The primary function of this organ is to finish the absorption of nutrients and water, synthesize certain vitamins, form feces, and eliminate feces from the body.

The large intestine runs from the appendix to the anus. It frames the small intestine on three sides. Despite being about one-half as long as the small intestine, it is called large because it is more than twice the diameter of the small intestine, about 3 inches.

The large intestine is subdivided into four main regions: the cecum, the colon, the rectum, and the anus. The ileocecal valve, located at the opening between the ileum and the large intestine, controls the flow of **chyme** from the small intestine to the large intestine.

Cecum

The first part of the large intestine is the **cecum**, a sac-like structure that is suspended inferior to the ileocecal valve. It is about 6 cm (2.4 in) long, receives the contents of the ileum, and continues the absorption of water and salts. The **appendix** (or vermiform appendix) is a winding tube that attaches to the cecum. Although the 7.6-cm (3-in) long appendix contains **lymphoid** tissue, suggesting an immunologic function, this organ is generally considered vestigial. However, at least one recent report assumes a survival advantage conferred by the appendix: in diarrheal illness, the appendix may serve as a bacterial reservoir to repopulate the enteric bacteria for those surviving the initial phases of the illness. Moreover, its twisted anatomy provides a haven for the accumulation and multiplication of enteric bacteria. The **mesoappendix**, the mesentery of the appendix, tethers it to the mesentery of the ileum.

Colon

The cecum blends seamlessly with the **colon**. Upon entering the colon, the food residue first travels up the **ascending colon** on the right side of the abdomen. At the inferior surface of the liver, the colon bends to form the **right colic flexure** (hepatic flexure) and becomes the **transverse colon**. The region defined as hindgut begins with the last third of the transverse colon and continues on. Food residue passing through the transverse colon travels across to the left side of the abdomen, where the colon angles sharply immediately inferior to the spleen, at the **left colic flexure** (splenic flexure). From there, food residue passes through the **descending colon**, which runs down the left side of the posterior abdominal wall. After entering the pelvis inferiorly, it becomes the s-shaped **sigmoid colon**, which extends medially to the midline (see [Figure 12.7](#)). The ascending and descending colon and the rectum (discussed next) are located in the retroperitoneum. The transverse and sigmoid colon are tethered to the posterior abdominal wall by the mesocolon.

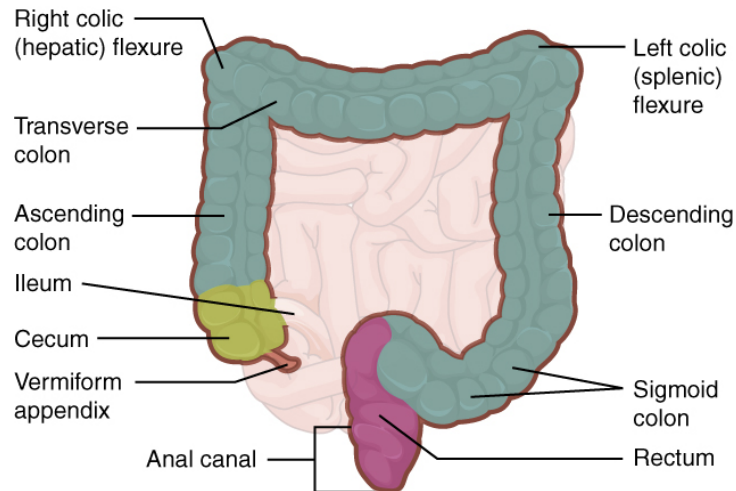


Figure 12.7 Large Intestine. The large intestine includes the cecum, colon, and rectum. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 12.7 Image description.](#)]

Accessory Organs of Digestion

Chemical digestion in the small intestine relies on the activities of three accessory digestive organs: the liver, pancreas, and gallbladder (see [Figure 12.8](#)). The digestive role of the liver is to produce bile and export it to the duodenum. The gallbladder primarily stores, concentrates, and releases bile. The pancreas produces pancreatic juice, which contains digestive enzymes and **bicarbonate** ions, and delivers it to the duodenum.

Concept Check 2

On the Figure 6 diagram, locate the following **anatomical organs** and consider how these organs **support** the digestive process:

- Liver
- Pancreas
- Gallbladder

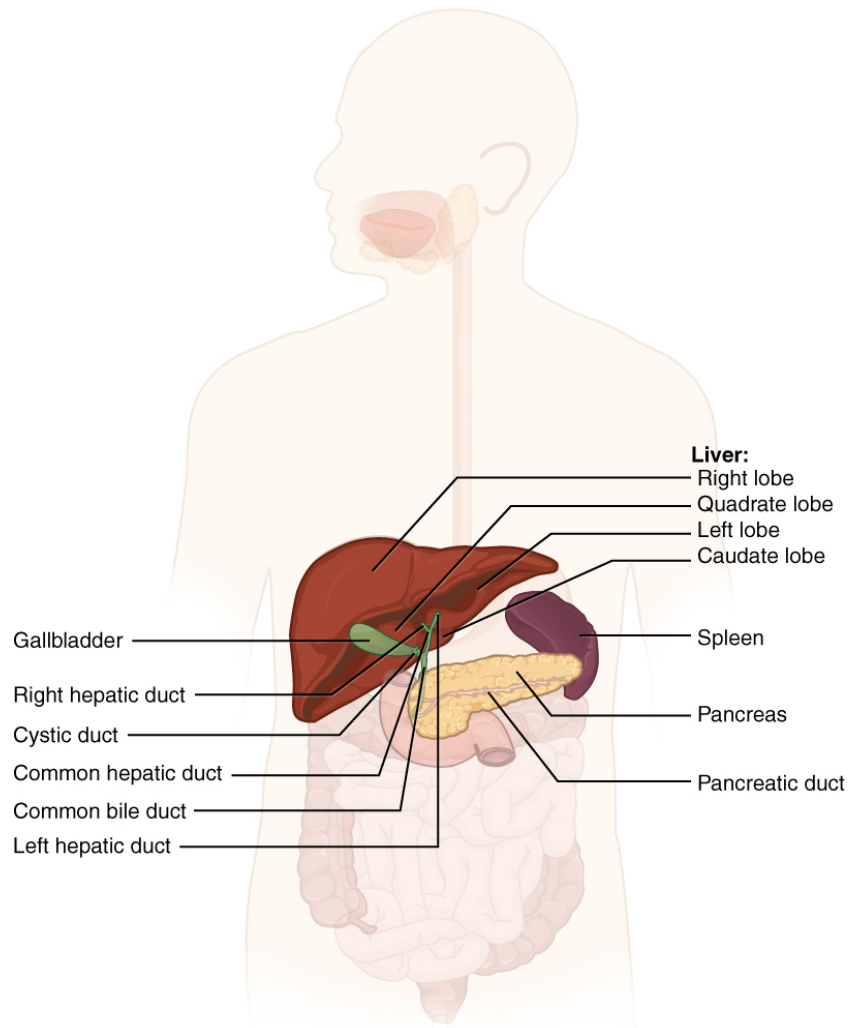


Figure 12.8 Accessory Organs. The liver, pancreas, and gallbladder are considered accessory digestive organs, but their roles in the digestive system are vital. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [Fig. 12.8 Image description.]

Liver

The **liver** is the largest gland in the body, weighing about three pounds in an adult. It is also one of the most important organs. In addition to being an accessory digestive organ, it plays a number of roles in metabolism and regulation. The liver lies inferior to the diaphragm in the right upper quadrant of the abdominal cavity and receives protection from the surrounding ribs.

The liver is divided into two primary lobes: a large right lobe and a much smaller left lobe. In the right lobe, some anatomists also identify an inferior **quadrate** lobe and a posterior caudate lobe, which are defined by internal features. The liver is connected to the abdominal wall and diaphragm by five peritoneal folds referred to as ligaments.

The **porta hepatis** (“gate to the liver”) is where the **hepatic artery** and **hepatic portal vein** enter the liver. These

two vessels, along with the common hepatic duct, run behind the lateral border of the lesser omentum on the way to their destinations. The hepatic portal vein delivers partially deoxygenated blood containing nutrients absorbed from the small intestine and actually supplies more oxygen to the liver than do the much smaller hepatic arteries. In addition to nutrients, drugs and toxins are also absorbed. After processing the bloodborne nutrients and toxins, the liver releases nutrients needed by other cells back into the blood, which drains into the central vein and then through the hepatic vein to the inferior vena cava. With this **hepatic** portal circulation, all blood from the alimentary canal passes through the liver. This largely explains why the liver is the most common site for the metastasis of cancers that originate in the alimentary canal.

Bile produced by the liver is a mixture secreted by the liver to accomplish the **emulsification** of lipids in the small intestine.

Bilirubin, the main bile pigment, is a waste product produced when the spleen removes old or damaged red blood cells from circulation. These breakdown products, including proteins, iron, and toxic bilirubin, are transported to the liver via the splenic vein of the hepatic portal system. In the liver, proteins and iron are recycled, whereas bilirubin is excreted in the bile. It accounts for the green color of bile. Bilirubin is eventually transformed by intestinal bacteria into stercobilin, a brown pigment that gives your stool its characteristic color! In some disease states, bile does not enter the intestine, resulting in white ('acholic') stool with a high fat content, since virtually no fats are broken down or absorbed.

Between meals, bile is produced but conserved. The valve-like hepatopancreatic ampulla closes, allowing **bile** to divert to the gallbladder, where it is concentrated and stored until the next meal.

Pancreas

The soft, oblong, glandular **pancreas** lies transversely in the retroperitoneum behind the stomach. Its head is nestled into the "c-shaped" curvature of the duodenum with the body extending to the left about 15.2 cm (6 in) and ending as a tapering tail in the **hilum** of the spleen. It is a curious mix of **exocrine** (secreting digestive enzymes) and endocrine (releasing hormones into the blood) functions ([Figure 12.9](#)).

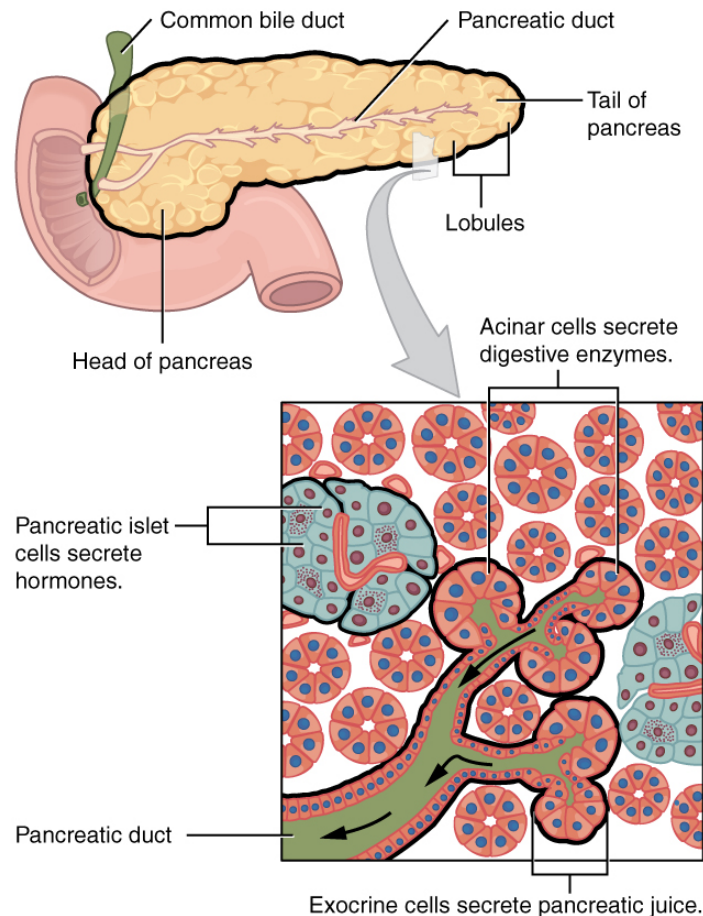


Figure 12.9 Exocrine and Endocrine Pancreas. The pancreas has a head, a body, and a tail. It delivers pancreatic juice to the duodenum through the pancreatic duct. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [\[Fig. 12.9 Image description.\]](#)

The exocrine part of the pancreas arises as little grape-like cell clusters, each called an **acinus** (plural = acini), located at the terminal ends of pancreatic ducts. These acinar cells secrete enzyme-rich **pancreatic juice** into tiny merging ducts that form two dominant ducts. The larger duct fuses with the common bile duct (carrying bile from the liver and gallbladder) just before entering the duodenum via a common opening (the hepatopancreatic ampulla). The smooth muscle sphincter of the hepatopancreatic **ampulla** controls the release of pancreatic juice and bile into the small intestine. The second and smaller pancreatic duct, the **accessory duct** (duct of Santorini), runs from the pancreas directly into the duodenum, approximately 1 inch above the hepatopancreatic ampulla. When present, it is a persistent remnant of pancreatic development.

Scattered through the sea of exocrine acini are small islands of endocrine cells, the islets of Langerhans. These vital cells produce the hormones pancreatic polypeptide, insulin, glucagon, and somatostatin.

Gallbladder

The **gallbladder** is 8–10 cm (~3–4 in) long and is nested in a shallow area on the posterior aspect of the right lobe of the liver. This muscular sac stores, concentrates, and, when stimulated, propels the bile into the duodenum via the common bile duct. It is divided into three regions. The **fundus** is the widest portion and tapers medially into the body, which in turn narrows to become the neck. The neck angles slightly superiorly as it approaches the hepatic duct. The cystic duct is 1–2 cm (less than 1 in) long and turns inferiorly as it bridges the neck and hepatic duct.

The simple columnar epithelium of the gallbladder mucosa is organized in rugae, similar to those of the stomach. There is no submucosa in the gallbladder wall. The wall's middle, muscular coat is made of smooth muscle fibers. When these fibers contract, the gallbladder's contents are ejected through the **cystic duct** and into the bile duct ([Figure 12.10](#)). Visceral peritoneum reflected from the liver capsule holds the gallbladder against the liver and forms the outer coat of the gallbladder. The gallbladder's mucosa absorbs water and ions from bile, concentrating it by up to 10-fold (Betts et al., 2013).

Concept Check 3

- Locate the **cystic duct** on the diagram shown.
- Consider what **complications** could arise if this duct was blocked or obstructed.

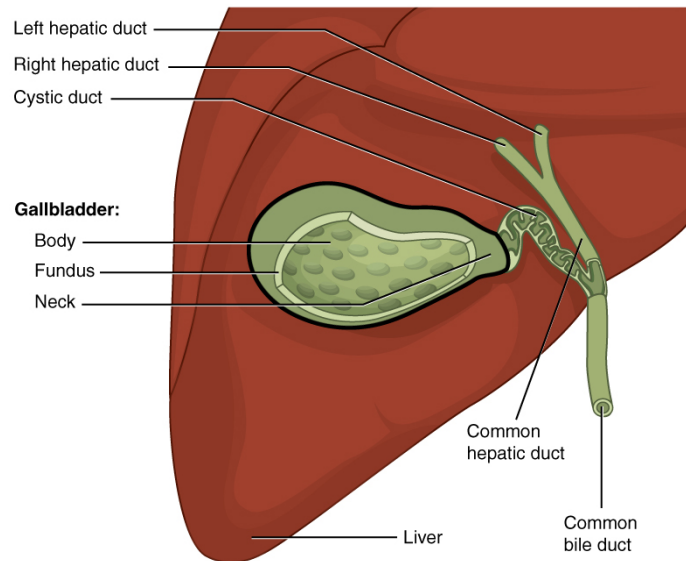


Figure 12.10 Gallbladder. The gallbladder stores and concentrates bile, and releases it into the two-way cystic duct when it is needed by the small intestine. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 12.10 Image description.](#)]

Watch the following video to see the structure of the liver and how this structure supports the functions of the liver, including the processing of nutrients, toxins, and wastes. At rest, about 1500 mL of blood per minute flow through the liver. What percentage of this blood flow comes from the hepatic portal system? (Betts et al., 2013).

Watch [How the Body Works: The Architecture of the Liver \(1 min\) on YouTube](#)

Check Your Knowledge of the Digestive System

Anatomy Labeling Activity

Digestive System Anatomy (Text Version)

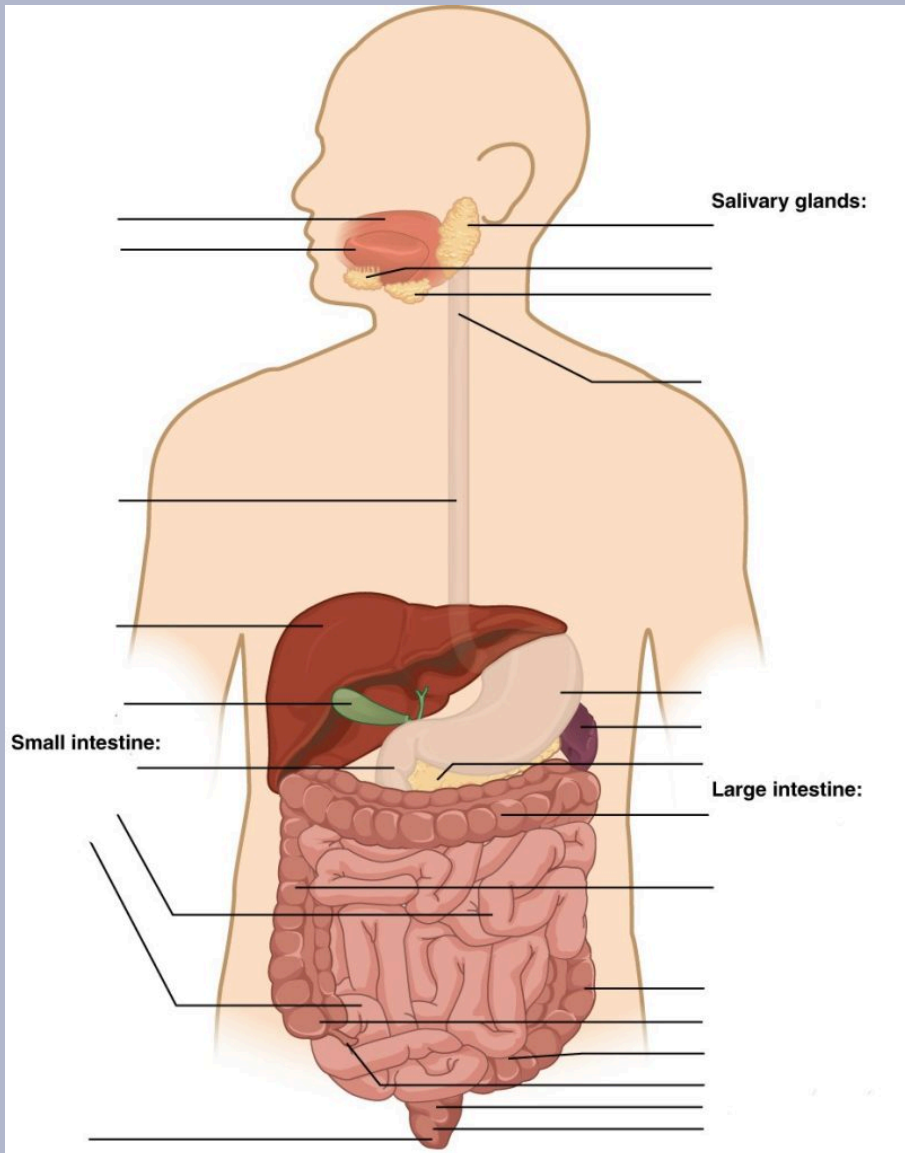
Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

1. Gallbladder

2. Mouth

3. Jejunum

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 4. Tongue | 11. Descending colon | 18. Ascending colon |
| 5. Ileum | 12. Duodenum | 19. Cecum |
| 6. Sigmoid colon | 13. Esophagus | 20. Stomach |
| 7. Liver | 14. Transverse colon | 21. Spleen |
| 8. Submandibular gland | 15. Pharynx | 22. Rectum |
| 9. Anal canal | 16. Anus | 23. Appendix |
| 10. Parotid gland | 17. Sublingual gland | 24. Pancreas |



Digestive System Anatomy Diagram (Text Version)

This diagram shows an anterior view of the head and torso of the human body with the anatomical organs and structures comprising the digestive system identified. From the top working clockwise. Located in the mouth or oral cavity are three glands which secrete saliva containing enzymes to aid in digestion these include: _____[Blank 1], _____[Blank 2], and the _____[Blank 3]. When the ingested food is ready to leave the mouth, it is transferred to the throat to swallow, the throat is also

known as the _____[Blank 4]. The _____[Blank 5] is a muscular hollow organ which aids in the digestive process by breaking down food for digestion. While the _____[Blank 6] located under the left portion of the diaphragm, helps to filter blood. The _____[Blank 7] is an accessory organ responsible for producing a hormone known as insulin and insulin is critical in the metabolism of sugars. The large intestines have many structural components _____[Blank 8], _____[Blank 9], _____[Blank 10], _____[Blank 11], and _____[Blank 12] with these structures responsible for the final stage of digestion known as elimination. A small finger-like projections hangs from the cecum known as the _____[Blank 13] and this structure has a role in the development of the immune system in early human development. As a continuation of the sigmoid colon a hollow structure known as the _____[Blank 14] is identified. Next, is the final segment of the digestive system and is a structure measuring about 3 to 4 cm long known as the _____[Blank 15]. Fecal matter is expelled through the terminal opening in the digestive system called the _____[Blank 16]. The small intestines divided into three distinct parts; the is the third part _____[Blank 17], the _____[Blank 18] is the second part, and the _____[Blank 19] is the first part. The _____[Blank 20] is an accessory organ of digestion and is responsible for storing bile for when it is needed to breakdown fats in the process of digestion. The _____[Blank 21] located in the upper right side of the abdomen is responsible for producing the bile to send to the gallbladder for storage until it the bile is released. The _____[Blank 22] connects the pharynx to the stomach it is responsible for gently moving the food from the pharynx to the stomach. The _____[Blank 23] located in the mouth is responsible for moving the food around in the mouth during the chewing or mastication process. The _____[Blank 24] also known as the oral cavity contains the saliva glands, the teeth and tongue and begins the process of digestion.

Check your answers ¹

Activity source: Digestive System Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./ Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 12.2 image description: This diagram shows an anterior view of the structure of the mouth. The teeth, lips, tongue, gums and many other parts are labeled. Labels read (clockwise from top): superior lip, superior labial frenulum, gingivae, palatoglossal arch, fauces, palatopharyngeal arch, palatine tonsil, tongue, lingual frenulum, opening duct of submandibular gland, gingivae, inferior labial frenulum, inferior lip, oral vestibule, incisors, cuspid, premolars, molars, cheek, uvula, soft palate, hard palate. [\[Return to Figure 12.2\]](#).

Figure 12.3 image description: This diagram shows the structures of the tongue and lingual papillae. Labels read (from top): epiglottis, palatopharyngeal arch, palatine tonsil, lingual tonsil, palatoglossal arch, terminal sulcus, foliate papillae, circumvallate papilla, dorsum of tongue, fungiform papilla, filiform papilla. [\[Return to Figure 12.3\]](#).

Figure 12.4 image description: This diagram shows the esophagus, going from the mouth to the stomach. The

upper and the lower esophageal sphincter are labeled. Labels read (from top): upper esophageal sphincter, trachea, esophagus, lower esophageal sphincter, stomach. [\[Return to Figure 12.4\]](#).

Figure 12.5 image description: This image shows a cross-section of the stomach, and the major parts: the cardia, fundus, body and pylorus are labeled. Labels read (from top of stomach): esophagus, muscular externa (longitudinal layer, circular layer, oblique layer), cardia, fundus, serosa, lesser and greater curvatures, lumen, rugae of mucosa, pyloric antrum, pyloric canal, pyloric sphincter valve at pylorus, duodenum. [\[Return to Figure 12.5\]](#).

Figure 12.6 image description: This diagram shows the small intestine. The different parts of the small intestine are labeled. Labels read (from top of small intestine): duodenum, jejunum, ileum, large intestine, rectum. [\[Return to Figure 12.6\]](#).

Figure 12.7 image description: This image shows the large intestine; the major parts of the large intestine are labeled. Labels read (from start of large intestinal tract): vermiform complex, cecum, ileum, ascending colon, transverse colon, right colic hepatic flexure, left colic splenic flexure, descending colon, sigmoid colon, rectum, anal canal. [\[Return to Figure 12.7\]](#).

Figure 12.8 image description: This diagram shows the accessory organs of the digestive system. The liver, spleen, pancreas, gallbladder and their major parts are shown. Labels read: liver (right lobe, quadrate lobe, left lobe, caudate lobe), spleen, pancreas, pancreatic duct, gall bladder right hepatic duct, cystic duct, common hepatic duct, common bile duct, left hepatic duct. [\[Return to Figure 12.8\]](#).

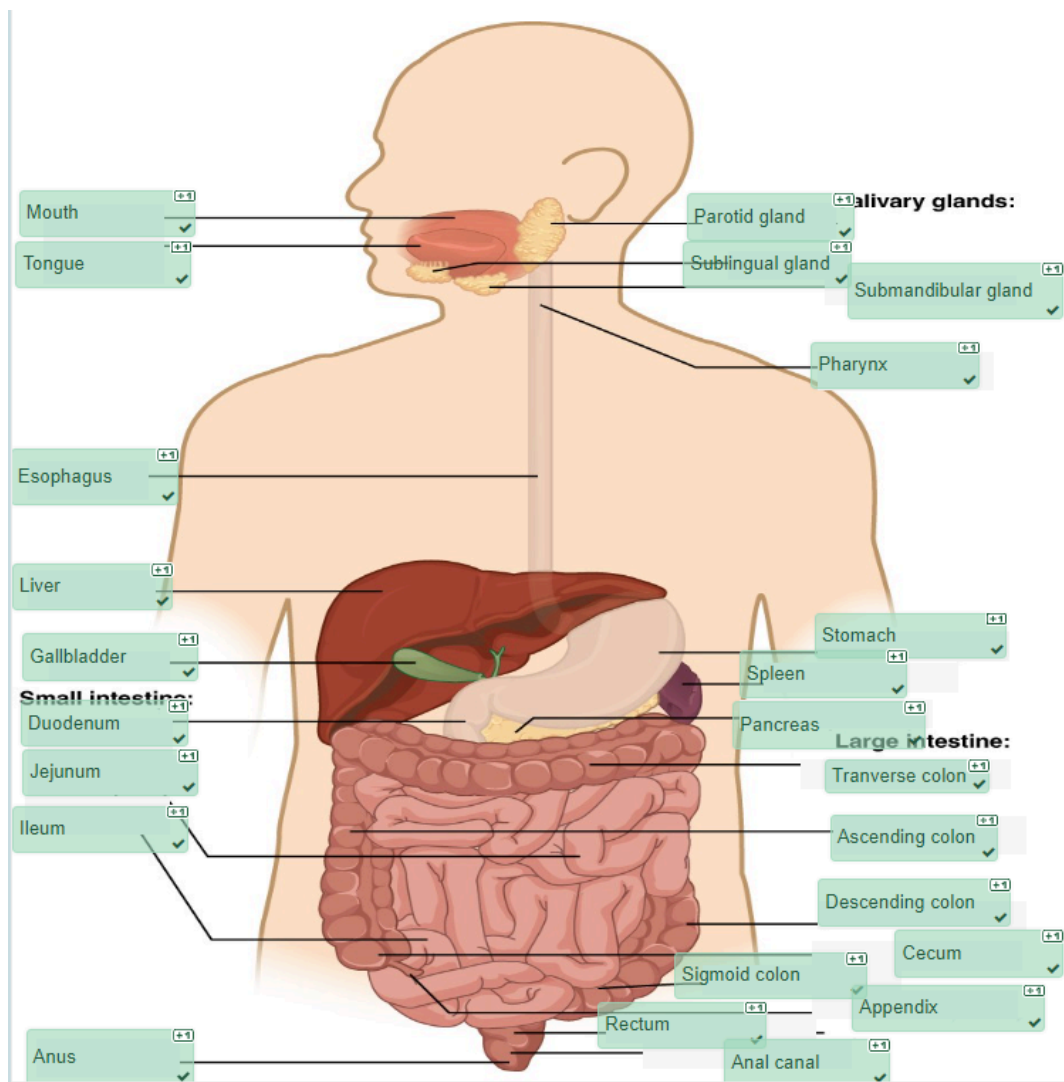
Figure 12.9 image description: This figure shows the pancreas and its major parts. Labels read (from left to right): common bile duct, head of pancreas, pancreatic duct, lobules, tail of pancreas. A magnified view of a small region of the pancreas shows the pancreatic islet cells, the acinar cells, exocrine cells, and the pancreatic duct. [\[Return to Figure 12.9\]](#).

Figure 12.10 image description: This figure shows the gallbladder and its major parts are labeled. Labels read (starting in gallbladder): body, fundus, neck, cystic duct, common hepatic duct, common bile duct, left and right hepatic ducts, liver. [\[Return to Figure 12.10\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Digestive System](#)” In [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Digestive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Check

your answers: Digestive System Anatomy Diagram (Text Version) This diagram shows an anterior view of the head and torso of the human body with the anatomical organs and structures comprising the digestive system identified. From the top working clockwise Located in the mouth or oral cavity are three glands which secrete saliva containing enzymes to aid in digestion these include: **parotid gland**, **sublingual gland**, and the **submandibular gland**. When the ingested food is ready to leave the mouth, it is transferred to the throat to swallow, the throat is also known as the **pharynx**. The **stomach** is a muscular hollow organ which aids in the digestive process by breaking down food for digestion. While the **spleen** located under the left portion of the diaphragm, helps to filter blood. The **pancreas** is an accessory organ responsible for producing a hormone known as insulin and insulin is critical in the metabolism of sugars. The large intestines have many structural components **transverse colon**, **ascending colon**, **descending colon**, **cecum**, and **sigmoid colon** with these structures responsible for the final stage of digestion known as elimination. A small finger-like projections hangs from the cecum known as the **appendix** and this structure has a role in the development of the immune system in early human development. As a continuation of the sigmoid colon a hollow structure known as the **rectum** is identified. Next, is the final segment of the digestive system and is a structure measuring about 3 to 4 cm long known as the **anal canal**. Fecal matter is expelled through the terminal opening in the digestive system called the **anus**. The small intestines divided into three distinct parts; the is the third part **ileum**, the **jejunum** is the second part, and the **duodenum** is the first part. The **gall bladder** is an accessory organ of digestion and is responsible for storing bile for when it is needed to breakdown fats in the process of digestion. The **liver** located in the upper right side of the abdomen is responsible for producing the bile to send to the gallbladder for storage until it the bile is released. The **esophagus** connects the pharynx to the stomach it is responsible for gently moving the food from the pharynx to the stomach. The **tongue** located in the mouth is responsible

for moving the food around in the mouth during the chewing or mastication process. The **mouth** also known as the oral cavity contains the saliva glands, the teeth and tongue and begins the process of digestion.

12.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Digestive System

The main functions of the digestive system are:

- Ingesting food
- Digesting food
- Absorbing nutrients
- Elimination of waste products

Digestive Processes

The processes of digestion include six activities: ingestion, **propulsion**, mechanical or physical digestion, chemical digestion, absorption, and **defecation**.

The first of these processes, **ingestion**, refers to the entry of food into the alimentary canal through the mouth. There, the food is chewed and mixed with saliva, which contains enzymes that begin breaking down the carbohydrates in the food plus some lipid digestion via lingual lipase. Chewing increases the surface area of the food and allows an appropriately sized bolus to be produced.

Food leaves the mouth when the tongue and pharyngeal muscles propel it into the esophagus. This act of swallowing, the last voluntary act until defecation, is an example of **propulsion**, which refers to the movement of food through the digestive tract. It includes both the voluntary process of swallowing and the involuntary process of peristalsis. **Peristalsis** consists of sequential, alternating waves of contraction and relaxation of alimentary wall smooth muscles, which act to propel food along (see [Figure 12.11](#)). These waves also play a role in mixing food with digestive juices. Peristalsis is so powerful that foods and liquids you swallow enter your stomach even if you are standing on your head.

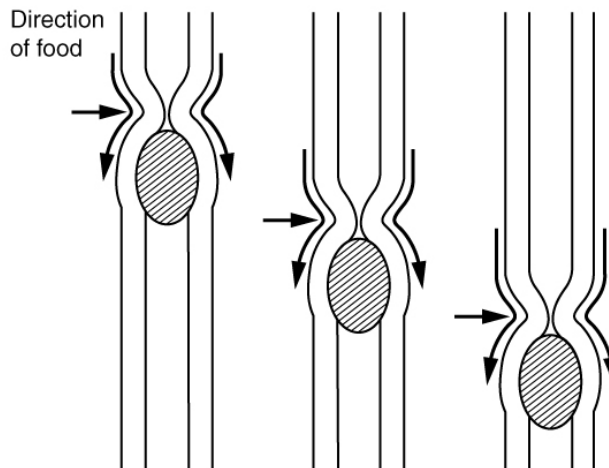


Figure 12.11. Peristalsis. Peristalsis moves food through the digestive tract with alternating waves of muscle contraction and relaxation. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).
[\[Fig. 12.11 Image description.\]](#)

Digestion includes both mechanical and chemical processes. **Mechanical digestion** is a purely physical process that does not change the chemical nature of the food. Instead, it makes the food smaller to increase both surface area and mobility. It includes **mastication**, or chewing, as well as tongue movements that help break food into smaller bits and mix food with saliva. Although there may be a tendency to think that mechanical digestion is limited to the first steps of the digestive process, it occurs after the food leaves the mouth as well. The mechanical churning of food in the stomach serves to further break it apart and expose more of its surface area to digestive juices, creating an acidic “soup” called **chyme**. **Segmentation**, which occurs mainly in the small intestine, consists of localized contractions of circular muscle of the muscularis layer of the alimentary canal. These contractions isolate small sections of the intestine, moving their contents back and forth while continuously subdividing, breaking up, and mixing the contents. By moving food back and forth in the intestinal lumen, segmentation mixes food with digestive juices and facilitates absorption.

In **chemical digestion**, starting in the mouth, digestive secretions break down complex food molecules into their chemical building blocks (for example, proteins into separate amino acids). These secretions vary in composition but typically contain water, various enzymes, acids, and salts. The process is completed in the small intestine.

Food that has been broken down is of no value to the body unless it enters the bloodstream and its nutrients are put to work. This occurs through the process of **absorption**, which takes place primarily within the small intestine. There, most nutrients are absorbed from the lumen of the alimentary canal into the bloodstream through the epithelial cells that make up the mucosa. Lipids are absorbed into **lacteals** and are transported via the lymphatic vessels to the bloodstream.

In **defecation**, the final step in digestion, undigested materials are removed from the body as feces.

Digestive System: From Appetite Suppression to Constipation

Age-related changes in the digestive system begin in the mouth and can affect virtually every aspect of the digestive system. Taste buds become less sensitive, so food isn't as appetizing as it once was. A slice of pizza is a challenge, not a treat, when you have lost teeth, your gums are diseased, and your salivary glands aren't producing enough saliva. Swallowing can be difficult, and ingested food moves slowly through the alimentary canal because of reduced strength and tone of muscular tissue. **Neurosensory** feedback is also dampened, slowing the transmission of messages that stimulate the release of enzymes and hormones.

Pathologies that affect the digestive organs—such as **hiatal hernia**, **gastritis**, and **peptic ulcer** disease—can occur at greater frequencies as you age. Problems in the small intestine may include duodenal ulcers, **maldigestion**, and **malabsorption**. Problems in the large intestine include hemorrhoids, diverticular disease, and constipation. Conditions that affect the function of accessory organs—and their abilities to deliver pancreatic enzymes and bile to the small intestine—include jaundice, acute pancreatitis, cirrhosis, and gallstones.

In some cases, a single organ is in charge of a digestive process. For example, ingestion occurs only in the mouth and defecation only in the anus. However, most digestive processes involve the interaction of several organs and occur gradually as food moves through the alimentary canal (see [Figure 12.12](#)).

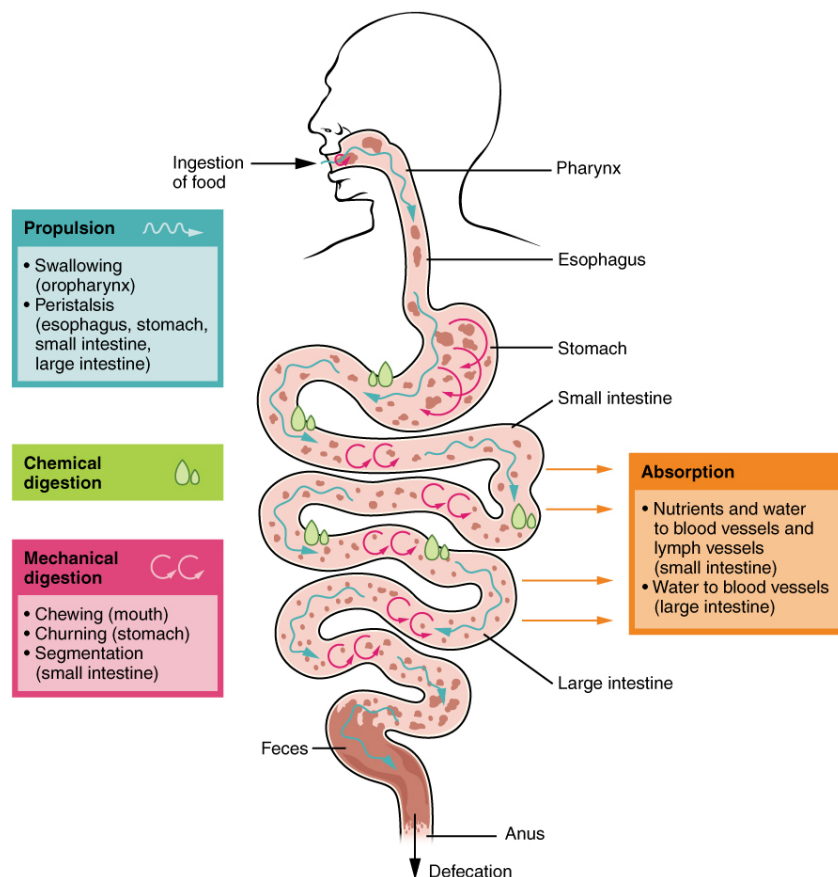


Figure 12.12. Digestive Processes. The digestive processes are ingestion, propulsion, mechanical digestion, chemical digestion, absorption, and defecation. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 12.12 Image description.](#)]

Some chemical digestion occurs in the mouth. Some absorption can occur in the mouth and stomach, for example, alcohol and aspirin.

Regulatory Mechanisms

Neural and endocrine regulatory mechanisms work to maintain the optimal conditions in the lumen needed for digestion and absorption. These regulatory mechanisms, which stimulate digestive activity through mechanical and chemical activity, are controlled both extrinsically and intrinsically.

Watch [Digestive System, Part 3: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #35 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Digestive System Medical Terms and Abbreviations

Medical Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Digestive System terms (Text Version)

Practice the following **digestive system** medical terms that are not easily broken into word parts.

1. **ascites**
 - abnormal intraperitoneal accumulation of fluid with large number of proteins and electrolytes
2. **hemorrhoids**
 - distended and swollen veins in the rectum and anus
3. **nausea**
 - urge to vomit
4. **stoma**
 - surgical opening between an organ and the surface of the body
5. **adhesion**

- band of scar tissue that binds anatomic surfaces to each other
- 6. **emesis**
 - vomiting
- 7. **cirrhosis**
 - chronic degenerative disease of the liver
- 8. **polyp**
 - small tumour-like growth that extends from the surface of a mucous membrane
- 9. **feces**
 - stool, fecal matter
- 10. **obesity**
 - abnormal increase in the proportion of fat cells resulting in excess body weight for height
- 11. **dysentery**
 - inflammation of the intestine presenting with abdominal pain and bloody diarrhea
- 12. **melena**
 - black tarry stool that contains blood from the GI tract
- 13. **flatus**
 - gas in the GI tract
- 14. **reflux**
 - abnormal backward flow
- 15. **palpate**
 - physical examination technique: The examiner feels for texture, size, consistency, and location of body parts with hands.

Activity source: Digestive System terms not easily broken down into word parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Common Digestive Abbreviations

Digestive System Abbreviations

- **APR** (abdominoperineal resection)
- **BE** (barium enema)
- **EGD** (esophagogastroduodenoscopy)
- **ERCp** (endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography)
- **EUS** (endoscopic ultrasound)
- **FOBT** (fecal occult blood test)
- **GERD** (gastroesophageal reflux disease)
- **GI** (gastrointestinal)
- **H.pylori** (*Helicobacter pylori*)
- **IBS** (irritable bowel syndrome)
- **N&V** (nausea and vomiting)
- **PEG** (percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy)
- **UC** (ulcerative colitis)
- **UGI** (upper gastrointestinal)
- **UPPP** (uvulopalatopharyngoplasty)

Activity source: Digestive System Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /
Converted to text.

Image Descriptions

Figure 12.11 image description: This image shows the peristaltic movement of food. In the left image, the food bolus is towards the top of the esophagus and arrows pointing downward show the direction of movement of the peristaltic wave. In the center image, the food bolus and the wave movement are closer to the center of the esophagus and in the right image, the bolus and the wave are close to the bottom end of the esophagus. [[Return to Figure 12.11](#)].

Figure 12.12 image description: This image shows the different processes involved in digestion. The image shows how food travels from the mouth through the major organs. Associated textboxes list the various digestive processes: Absorption (nutrients and water to blood vessels and lymph vessels (small intestine), water to blood vessels (large intestine)), propulsion (swallowing (oropharynx), peristalsis (esophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine), chemical digestion, mechanical digestion (chewing (mouth), churning (stomach), segmentation

(small intestine)). Parts of the digestive tract are labelled: ingestion of food, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine, feces, anus, defecation. [\[Return to Figure 12.12\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Digestive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Digestive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

12.4 - Digestive Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease

This condition is largely caused by gastric acid flowing upwards from the stomach into the esophagus. Those suffering from the condition will often feel a burning sensation radiating near the top of the stomach (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2023). To learn more about GERD, visit the Mayo Clinic's [Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease \(GERD\) page \[New Tab\]](#).

Cholecystitis

This condition is known as inflammation of the gall bladder. Gallstone development can block the gall bladder's release of bile leading to an inflammatory response. Surgical removal (cholecystectomy) or laser stone crushing known as lithotripsy are often the treatment options ("Cholecystitis", 2023). To learn more about cholecystitis, visit the [Radiology Info's cholecystitis web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Cirrhosis

Cirrhosis is a condition whereby the liver scars. Advanced cirrhosis is life-threatening. It generally can not be reversed. It is caused by different forms of liver disease and chronic alcoholism (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2023).

Cirrhosis often has no signs or symptoms until liver damage is extensive and may include:

- Fatigue
- Easily bleeding or bruising
- Loss of appetite
- Nausea
- Edema
- Weight loss
- Itchy skin
- Jaundice
- Ascitis (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2023).

To learn more about cirrhosis, visit the [Mayo Clinic's Cirrhosis web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Esophageal Cancer

This is cancer of the esophagus. The cancer can occur anywhere along the esophageal tube, and can be caused by factors including tobacco use, alcohol, and chronic acid reflux (Canadian Digestive Health Foundation, 2020). To learn more about esophageal cancer, visit the CDHF's [Esophageal Cancer web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Hepatitis A, B and C

Inflammation of the liver is referred to as hepatitis. This condition can be caused by several factors such as viruses, alcohol consumption, toxins, and drug interactions. In some cases it can also be caused by an autoimmune response in the body. There are five types of viral hepatitis: A, B, C, D, and E (Booth, 2018). To learn more, visit [Healthline's article on Hepatitis \[New Tab\]](#).

Celiac Sprue (Celiac Disease)

Individuals with celiac disease have an immune sensitivity reaction occurring in the small intestines when they consume gluten. Typically, people with this condition are genetically predisposed to the condition. Damage to the small intestine will occur if continued consumption of gluten occurs. Once diagnosed, individuals eat a gluten-free diet as the best approach for the management of the condition (Celiac Disease Foundation, n.d.). To learn more, visit the [Celiac Disease Foundation's What is Celiac Disease? article \[New Tab\]](#).

Crohn's Disease and Ulcerative Colitis

Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis are chronic inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) whereby a section or segments of the digestive tract experience inflammation. Crohn's disease can occur anywhere along the digestive tract from the mouth to the anus, although it is most often found in the small intestines. This often leads to the malabsorption of nutrients from food. Ulcerative colitis is localized inflammation and ulcers in the colon (Crohn's and Colitis Canada, n.d.). To learn more, visit [Crohn's and Colitis Canada's page about Crohn's and Colitis diseases \[New Tab\]](#).

Colon Cancer

Colon cancer is a cancer formation in the colon portion of the digestive tract. It is typically found in older adults. Colon cancer is often diagnosed through a colonoscopy (Canadian Digestive Health Foundation, 2020). To learn more, visit the [CDHF's page on colon cancer \[New Tab\]](#).

Hernia

A hernia occurs when an organ or fatty tissue squeezes through a weak spot in a surrounding muscle or connective tissue. A hiatal hernia is found in the upper stomach region.

Irritable Bowel Syndrome

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a common disorder affecting the large intestines. IBS often involves abdominal pain as sensitive nerve tissue within the colon reacts to the movement of food and waste through the digestive tract. Along with the abdominal pain individuals often experience gas and bloating. Diet and lifestyle modifications often help in the management of the condition (Canadian Digestive Health Foundation, 2020). To learn more about irritable bowel syndrome, visit the [CDHF's web page on IBS \[New Tab\]](#).

Polyps

A polyp is a small growth of tissue protruding outward from the intestinal wall. Some cancers in the intestines start off as a polyp. Typically, they are found in people over the age of 50. Polyps start as a small collection of cells found within the colon. Most are harmless but can transition over time into cancerous growth (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2023). To learn more about polyps, review the [Mayo Clinic's patient information page on polyps \[New Tab\]](#).

Digestive System Medical Terms in Use

Digestive System – Consultation Report

Digestive System – Consultation Report (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the consultation report:

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|----------|
| 1. diarrhea | 5. resists walking | 9. eyes |
| 2. treatment | 6. session | 10. gait |
| 3. electrolytes | 7. vomiting | |
| 4. Glucose | 8. stools | |

PATIENT NAME: Alex WEBB

AGE: 30

DOB: November 10

SEX: Male

CONSULTANT: Louis D. Wainwright, MD, Gastroenterology

REQUESTING PHYSICIAN: Trevor Sharpe, MD, Family Medicine

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Please evaluate GI distress.

I was asked to see this 30-year old male in consultation because of unremitting nausea, _____[Blank 1], _____[Blank 2], abdominal pain, dizziness, and low-grade fever. The patient has a poor appetite but reports no weight loss. He has noted some postprandial cramping, midepigastic pain, and unremitting diarrhea but no blood in the _____[Blank 3]. He states he is “healthier,” but he still has some dizziness.

Initial treatment consisted of IV fluids and control of _____[Blank 4]. Thereafter, the patient was progressed to clear fluids and soft diet. He has done well on this routine; however, his dizziness has persisted. Fever has resolved.

On admission, the patient’s lab data revealed CBC with hematocrit of 142, hemoglobin 25 with differential of neutrophils 51%, bands 8%, lymphocytes 26%, monocytes 6%, basophils none. Serum electrolytes were normal. Potassium was low at 3.5, BUN: creatinine ratio was normal. _____[Blank 5] was within normal range. Stool studies were within normal.

On examination, I find the patient to be lethargic and uncomfortable with mild nausea and dizziness. He prefers to keep his eyes closed. On examination of the _____[Blank 6], I find no nystagmus. There is pallor to the skin, and he seems cool to the touch. Upon standing by the bedside, the patient is unsteady. Although he _____[Blank 7], when he attempts to walk, his _____[Blank 8] is halting, and he tends to fall to the left side. Abdomen is flat and nontender. Bowel sounds are WNL. Rectal exam deferred.

RECOMMENDATIONS: I think we should continue essential _____[Blank 9] of this gentleman. Because of the symptoms of dizziness on admission, we may want to consider a CT scan to rule out an intracerebral bleed or subdural hematoma. My opinion at this time is that we are dealing with a resolving _____[Blank 10] of gastritis.

Thank you for asking me to see this patient. I will be glad to follow him with you throughout his hospital stay.

Louis D. Wainwright, MD, Gastroenterology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Digestive System – Consultation Report by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical](#)

Digestive System – Operative Report

Digestive System – Operative Report (Text version)

Use the words listed below to fill in the operative report:

- esophagitis
- ulceration
- lateral
- stomach
- GE
- sporadic
- retroflexion
- bleeding
- antrum
- duodenum
- lidocaine
- duodenitis

PATIENT NAME: Bruce WEBSTER

AGE: 48

SEX: Male

DOB: September 23

DATE OF ADMISSION: July 2

DATE OF PROCEDURE: July 2

ADMITTING PHYSICIAN: Trevor Sharpe, MD, Family Medicine

SURGEON: Louis D. Wainwright, MD, Gastroenterology

PREOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: GI Bleed.

POSTOPERATIVE DIAGNOSES:

1. Severe _____[Blank 1].
2. Gastroesophageal _____[Blank 2].
3. No Significant bleeding seen in the stomach.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURE: Gastrointestinal endoscopy.

ANESTHESIA: _____[Blank 3] 1%.

PROCEDURE: The patient was placed into the left _____[Blank 4] position. A scope was introduced from the mouth, under visualization and advanced to the upper part of the _____[Blank 5], upper part of esophagus, middle of esophagus, _____[Blank 6] junction, and some _____[Blank 7] bleeding was seen at the GE junction. The scope was moved through the upper part of the stomach into the _____[Blank 8]. The _____[Blank 9] showed some inflammation and the scope was then brought out. _____[Blank 10] was not performed. The scope was then brought back slowly. Mild _____[Blank 11] was also seen and a little bit of ulceration noted at GE junction.

CONCLUSION: Severe esophagitis, may be some source of _____[Blank 12] from there, but no active bleeding at this time.

Louis D. Wainwright, MD, Gastroenterology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Digestive System – Operative Report by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Digestive System

Gastroenterology

This specialty is focused on the diagnosis and treatment of conditions afflicting the digestive system. Gastroenterology is a branch of internal medicine. A physician who specializes in this area is known as a gastroenterologist (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). To learn more about gastroenterology, visit the [Canadian Medical Association's Gastroenterology profile page \[PDF\]](#).

Procedures

Upper and Lower Gastrointestinal Series

This is a diagnostic procedure involving the introduction of a contrast medium known as barium. Barium can be introduced by ingesting or by enema. After induction of the barium, x-rays can be taken of the upper and lower gastrointestinal system structures (Johns Hopkins Medicine, 2020). To learn more, visit [Johns Hopkins Medicine's web page on barium x-rays \[New Tab\]](#).

Fecal Occult Blood Test

This is a test for hidden blood in a fecal sample. A patient is provided with a card to place a small segment of fecal output. The sample is viewed under a microscope to look for blood. Blood detection can be an indicator of an abnormal growth occurring in the intestines (Johns Hopkins Medicine, 2020).

Stool Culture

This procedure involves the collection of a small sample of feces which is analyzed for abnormal bacterial growth through a culture check (Johns Hopkins Medicine, 2020).

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy

An EGD (upper endoscopy) is a procedure by which a physician examines the upper gastrointestinal tract (esophagus, stomach, duodenum) using a special instrument called an endoscope. The physician examines the tissues and is able to take a biopsy, if needed (Johns Hopkins Medicine, 2020).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Digestive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Digestive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. diarrhea, 2. vomiting, 3. stools, 4. electrolytes, 5. Glucose, 6. eyes, 7. resists walking, 8. gail 9. treatment, 10. session
2. 1. esophagitis, 2. ulceration, 3. lidocaine, 4. lateral, 5. stomach, 6. GE, 7. sporadic, 8. antrum, 9. duodenum, 10. retroflexion, 11. duodenitis, 12. bleeding

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Digestive System Vocabulary

Ampulla

A sac-like enlargement of a canal or duct.

Bicarbonate

A by-product of the body's metabolism.

Carbohydrates

The sugars, starches and fibers found in fruits, grains, vegetables and milk products.

Convex

Curved outwards.

Distal

Away from the center of the body or from the point of attachment.

Emulsification

The process of breaking down the fat into smaller blood cells which makes it easy for enzymes to function and digest food.

Exocrine

To secrete externally, directly or through a duct.

Fundus

A part of a hollow organ.

Hiatal

Location where the diaphragm has a small opening (hiatus) through which the esophagus passes before connecting.

Hilum

A concave region where blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves also enter the lungs.

Labia

Lips of the mouth.

Lacteals

The lymphatic vessels of the small intestine which absorb digested fats.

Lingual Tonsils

A collection of lymphatic tissue located in the lamina propria of the root of the tongue.

Lymphoid

Resembling lymph or lymphatic tissues.

Malabsorption

A disorder that occurs when people are unable to absorb nutrients from their diets.

Maldigestion

Poor breakdown of food.

Nasal Cavity

The inside of your nose.

Neurosensory

Relating to afferent nerves.

Omentum

Fatty tissue that stretches over the abdomen, plays a role in immune response and the growth of certain cancers.

Palatine Tonsils

A pair of soft tissue masses located at the rear of the throat (pharynx).

Proximal

Situated nearer to the center of the body or the point of attachment.

Pyloric Sphincter

A band of smooth muscle at the junction between the pylorus of the stomach and the duodenum of the small intestine.

Quadrangle

A square or rectangular shape.

Stratified Squamous Epithelium

Cells arranged in layers upon a basal membrane.

Digestive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Digestive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

- _____ [Blank 1] is a band of smooth muscle at the junction between the pylorus of the stomach and the duodenum of the small intestine.
 - Ampulla
 - Quadrante
 - Pyloric sphincter
- Fatty tissue that stretches over the abdomen, plays a role in immune response and the growth of certain cancers is called _____ [Blank 2].
 - Fundus
 - Convex
 - Omentum
- The process of breaking down the fat into smaller blood cells which makes it easy for enzymes to function and digest food is called _____ [Blank 3].
 - Bicarbonate
 - Malabsorption
 - Emulsification
- _____ [Blank 4] is the location where the diaphragm has a small opening through which the esophagus passes before connecting.
 - Hiatal
 - Lacteals
 - Hilum
- Situated nearer to the center of the body or the point of attachment is the _____ [Blank 5].
 - Proximal
 - Distal
 - Quadrante

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Digestive System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#).
/Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Digestive System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Digestive System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Pyloric sphincter, 2. Omentum, 3. Emulsification, 4. Hiatal, 5. Proximal,

References

- Booth, S. (2018, August 13). *Everything you need to know about hepatitis A, B, C, D, E*. Healthline. <https://www.healthline.com/health-news/everything-you-need-to-know-about-hepatitis#1>
- Canadian Digestive Health Foundation. (2020). *Colon cancer*. <https://cdhf.ca/digestive-disorders/colon-cancer/>
- Canadian Digestive Health Foundation. (2020). *Esophageal cancer*. <https://cdhf.ca/digestive-disorders/esophageal-cancer/what-is-esophageal-cancer/>
- Canadian Digestive Health Foundation. (2020). *Irritable bowel syndrome*. <https://cdhf.ca/digestive-disorders/irritable-bowel-syndrome-ibs/>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Gastroenterology profile*. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/gastroenterology-e.pdf>
- Celiac Disease Foundation. (n.d.) *What is celiac disease?* Celiac Disease Foundation: About Celiac Disease. <https://celiac.org/about-celiac-disease/what-is-celiac-disease/>
- “Cholecystitis”. (2023, July 15). Radiologyinfo.org. <https://www.radiologyinfo.org/en/info.cfm?pg=cholecystitis>
- CrashCourse. (2015, September 7). *Digestive system, part 1: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #33* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/embed/yIoTRGfcMqM>
- CrashCourse (2015, September 22). *Digestive system, part 3: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #35* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/jGme7BRkpuQ>
- Crohns and Colitis Canada. (n.d.). *What are Chron’s and colitis?* <https://crohnsandcolitis.ca/About-Crohn-s-Colitis/What-are-Crohns-and-Colitis>
- Izzo, D. [Daniel Izzo]. (2007, August 3). *How the body works : The architecture of the liver* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Gn-ibhGE7PI>
- Johns Hopkins Medicine. (2020). *Barium x-rays (upper and lower GI)*. <https://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/health/conditions-and-diseases/barium-xrays-upper-and-lower-gi>
- Johns Hopkins Medicine. (2020). *Digestive diagnostic procedures*. <https://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/health/treatment-tests-and-therapies/digestive-diagnostic-procedures>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2023, January 4). *Gastroesophageal reflux disease*. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/gerd/symptoms-causes/syc-20361940>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2023, February 11). *Cirrhosis*. Mayo Clinic. Available from: <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/cirrhosis/symptoms-causes/syc-20351487>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2023, March 2). *Colon polyps*. Mayo Clinic. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/colon-polyps/symptoms-causes/syc-20352875>

CHAPTER 13: SKELETAL SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [13.1 – Introduction to the Skeletal System](#)
- [13.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Skeletal System](#)
- [13.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Skeletal System](#)
- [13.4 – Skeletal Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

13.1 - Introduction to the Skeletal System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy of the skeletal system and describe the main functions of the skeletal system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the skeletal system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of skeletal system terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the skeletal system and explore common diseases, disorders, and procedures

Skeletal System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the musculoskeletal system.

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **ab-** (away from)
- **ad-** (towards)
- **brady-** (slow)
- **dys-** (painful, difficult, abnormal, laboured)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **inter-** (between)
- **intra-** (within, in)
- **poly-** (many, much)
- **sub-** (below, under)
- **supra-** (above)
- **sym-** (together, joined)

- **syn-** (together, joined)

Combining Form

- **ankyl/o** (stiff, bent)
- **aponeur/o** (aponeurosis)
- **arthr/o** (joint)
- **burs/o** (bursa)
- **carp/o** (carpals, wrist)
- **chondr/o** (cartilage)
- **clavic/o** (clavicle, collarbone)
- **clavicul/o** (clavicle, collarbone)
- **cost/o** (ribs)
- **crani/o** (cranium)
- **disk/o** (intervertebral disk)
- **femor/o** (femur, upper leg bone)
- **fibul/o** (fibula, lower leg bone)
- **humer/o** (humerus, upper arm bone)
- **ili/o** (ilium)
- **ischi/o** (ischium)
- **kinesi/o** (movement, motion)
- **kyph/o** (increased convexity of the spine)
- **lord/o** (bent forward, increased concavity of the spine)
- **lumb/o** (loin, lumbar region of the spine)
- **mandibul/o** (mandible, lower jawbone)
- **maxill/o** (maxilla, upper jawbone)
- **menisc/o** (meniscus, crescent)
- **myel/o** (spinal cord)
- **oste/o** (bone)
- **patell/o** (patella, kneecap)
- **pelv/i** (pelvis, pelvic bone)
- **pelv/o** (pelvis, pelvic bone)
- **petr/o** (stone)
- **phalang/o** (phalanges, bones of finger and toes)
- **pub/o** (pubis)
- **rachi/o** (vertebral spine, vertebral column)
- **radi/o** (nerve root)
- **scapul/o** (scapula, shoulder blade)
- **scoli/o** (crooked, curved)
- **spondyl/o** (vertebra, spine, vertebral column)
- **stern/o** (sternum, breastbone)
- **tars/o** (tarsals, ankle bones)
- **ten/o** (tendon)

- **tendin/o** (tendon)
- **tend/o** (tendon)
- **tibi/o** (tibia, lower leg bone)
- **uln/o** (ulna, lower arm bone)
- **vertebr/o** (vertebra, spine, vertebral column)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-algia** (pain)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-asthenia** (weakness)
- **-centesis** (surgical puncture to aspirate fluid)
- **-clasia** (break)
- **-clasis** (break)
- **-clast** (break)
- **-desis** (surgical fixation, fusion)
- **-ectomy** (excision, surgical removal, cutting out)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-lysis** (loosening, separating, dissolution)
- **-malacia** (softening)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-sis** (abnormal condition)
- **-penia** (abnormal reduction)
- **-physis** (growth)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing, repairing)
- **-sarcoma** (malignant tumour)
- **-schisis** (split, fissure)
- **-scopy** (process of viewing, visual examination)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)
- **-trophy** (nourishment, development)

Activity source: Skeletal System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to text.

Introduction to the Skeletal System

The skeletal system forms the framework of the body. It is the body system composed of bones, cartilage and ligaments. Each bone serves a particular function and varies in size, shape and strength. Bones are weight-bearing structures in your body and can therefore change in thickness as you gain or lose weight. The skeletal system performs the following critical functions for the human body:

- supports the body
- facilitates movement
- protects internal organs
- produces blood cells
- stores and releases minerals and fat

Watch [The Skeletal System: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #19 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Skeletal System Medical Terms

Skeletal System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following **skeletal system** words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **ulnoradial**
 - uln/o/radi/al
 - pertaining to the ulna and radius
2. **tarsectomy**
 - tars/ectomy
 - excision of the tarsal
3. **osteocyte**
 - oste/o/cyte
 - bone cell
4. **cranioschisis**
 - crani/o/schisis
 - fissure of the cranium

5. **carpectomy**

- carp/ectomy
- excision of a carpal (wrist)

6. **chondroplasty**

- chondr/o/plasty
- surgical repair of cartilage

7. **cranioplasty**

- crani/o/plasty
- surgical repair of the cranium

8. **pelvisacral**

- pelv/i/sacr/al
pertaining to the pelvis and sacrum

9. **subscapular**

- sub/scapul/ar
- pertaining to below the scapula

10. **tenosynovitis**

- ten/o/synov/itis
- inflammation of the tendon and synovial membrane

11. **sarcopenia**

- arc/o/penia
- abnormal reduction of connective tissue presenting as skeletal muscle mass loss and loss of strength

12. **tibial**

- tibi/al
- pertaining to the tibia

13. **discitis**

- disc/itis
- Inflammation of the intervertebral disk

14. **phalangectomy**

- phalang/ectomy
- excision of the phalanges

15. **sternoclavicular**
 - stern/o/clavicul/ar
 - pertaining to sternum and clavicle
16. **humeral**
 - humer/al
 - pertaining to the humerus
17. **arthralgia**
 - arthr/algia
 - painful joint
18. **lumbosacral**
 - lumb/o/sacr/al
 - pertaining to the lumbar region of the spine and sacrum
19. **hyperkinesia**
 - hyper/kines/ia
 - condition of excessive movement
20. **radial**
 - radi/al
 - pertaining to radius
21. **vertebroplasty**
 - vertebr/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of the vertebral column
22. **arthrodesis**
 - arthr/o/desis
 - surgical fixation of a joint
23. **rachischisis**
 - rach/ischisis
 - fissure of vertebral column
24. **pubic**
 - pub/ic
 - pertaining to pubis
25. **intercostal**

- inter/cost/al
 - pertaining to between the ribs
26. **osteopetrosis**
- oste/o/petr/osis
 - abnormal condition of stone-like bones
27. **ankylosis**
- ankyl/osis
 - abnormal condition of stiffness
28. **sternoid**
- stern/oid
 - resembling the sternum
29. **chondrectomy**
- chondr/ectomy
 - excision of cartilage
30. **osteonecrosis**
- oste/o/necr/osis
 - abnormal condition of bone death (lack of blood supply)
31. **synovial sarcoma**
- synovi/al sarcoma
 - malignant tumor pertaining to the synovial membrane
32. **dystrophy**
- dys/trophy
 - abnormal development
33. **synovectomy**
- synov/ectomy
 - excision of the synovial membrane
34. **osteopenia**
- oste/o/penia
 - abnormal reduction of bone mass
35. **kyphosis**
- kyph/osis

- abnormal condition of convexity of the spine
36. **osteitis**
- oste/itis
 - inflammation of bone
37. **hypertrophy**
- hyper/trophy
 - excessive development
38. **spondylosis**
- spondyl/osis
abnormal condition of the vertebrae
39. **spondylarthritis**
- spondyl/arthr/itis
 - inflammation of the vertebra and joint
40. **cranial**
- crani/al
 - pertaining to the cranium
41. **osteoclasia**
- oste/o/clasis
surgical breaking of a bone
42. **costochondral**
- cost/o/chondr/al
 - pertaining to ribs and cartilage
43. **arthroscopy**
- arthr/o/scopy
process of viewing a joint
44. **pelvic**
- pelv/ic
 - pertaining to pelvis, pelvic bone
45. **lumbar**
- lumb/ar
 - pertaining to the lumbar region of the spine

46. **osteomyelitis**

- oste/o/myel/itis
- inflammation of bone and bone marrow

47. **osteoblast**

- oste/o/blast
- developing bone cell

48. **tenorrhaphy**

- ten/o/rrhaphy
- suturing of a tendon

49. **clavicular**

- clavicul/ar
- pertaining to the clavicle

50. **rachiotomy**

- rachi/o/tomy
- incision into the vertebral column

51. **intracranial**

- intra/crani/al
- pertaining to within the cranium

52. **tendinitis**

- tendin/itis
- inflammation of the tendon

53. **costectomy**

- cost/ectomy
- excision of rib(s)

54. **vertebrocostal**

- vertebr/o/cost/al
- pertaining to vertebrae and ribs

55. **bursectomy**

- burs/ectomy
- excision of bursa

56. **laminectomy**

- lamin/ectomy
 - excision of the lamina
57. **craniotomy**
- crani/o/tomy
 - incision into the cranium
58. **pubofemoral**
- pub/o/femor/al
 - pertaining to pubic bone and femur
59. **submandibular**
- sub/mandibul/ar
 - pertaining to under the mandible
60. **patellectomy**
- patell/ectomy
 - excision of the kneecap
61. **lumbocostal**
- lumb/o/cost/al
 - pertaining to the lumbar region of the spine and ribs
62. **intervertebral**
- inter/vertebr/al
 - pertaining to between the vertebrae
63. **femoral**
- femor/al
 - pertaining to the femur
64. **lordosis**
- lord/osis
 - abnormal condition of increased concavity of the spine (bent forward)
65. **arthroplasty**
- arthr/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of a joint
66. **iliofemoral**
- ili/o/femor/al

- pertaining to the ilium and femur
67. **bursitis**
- burs/itis
 - inflammation of the bursa
68. **arthrography**
- arthr/o/graphy
 - process of recording a joint
69. **subcostal**
- sub/cost/al
 - pertaining to below the ribs
70. **sternoclavicular**
- stern/o/clavicul/ar
 - pertaining to the sternum and clavicle
71. **dyskinesia**
- dys/kines/ia
 - condition of difficult movement
72. **bradykinesia**
- brady/kines/ia
 - condition of slow movement
73. **sacral**
- sacr/al
 - pertaining to the sacrum
74. **arthritis**
- arthr/itis
 - inflammation of a joint
75. **diskectomy**
- disk/ectomy
 - excision of the intervertebral disk
76. **maxillitis**
- maxill/itis
 - inflammation of the maxilla

77. **suprapatellar**

- supra/patell/ar
- pertaining to above the knee cap

78. **ischiofibular**

- ischi/o/fibul/ar
- pertaining to the ischium and fibula

79. **tenomyoplasty**

- ten/o/my/o/plasty
- surgical repair of the tendon and muscle

80. **arthrocentesis**

- arthr/o/centesis
- surgical puncture to aspirate fluid from a joint

81. **osteosarcoma**

- oste/o/sarcoma
- malignant tumour of bone

82. **osteochondritis**

- oste/o/chondr/itis
- inflammation of bone and cartilage

83. **ostectomy**

- ost/ectomy
- excision of bone

84. **osteoarthritis**

- oste/o/arthritis
- inflammation of the bone and joint

85. **carpal**

- carp/al
- pertaining to carpal (wrist)

86. **chondromalacia**

- chondr/o/malacia
- softening of cartilage

87. **submaxillary**

- sub/maxill/ary
 - pertaining to under the maxilla
88. **arthroclasia**
- arthr/o/clasia
 - surgical breaking of a joint
89. **meniscitis**
- menisc/itis
 - inflammation of the meniscus
90. **meniscectomy**
- menisc/ectomy
 - excision of the meniscus
91. **maxillectomy**
- maxill/ectomy
 - excision of the maxilla
92. **substernal**
- sub/stern/al
 - pertaining to below the sternum
93. **osteomalacia**
- oste/o/malacia
 - softening of bone
94. **scoliosis**
- scoli/osis
 - abnormal condition of (lateral) curved spine
95. **ulnoradial**
- uln/o/radi/al
 - pertaining to the ulna and nerve root

Activity source: Skeletal System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Skeletal System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Skeletal System chapter content into sub-chapters.

13.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Skeletal System

The skeletal system includes all of the bones, cartilages, and ligaments of the body that support and give shape to the body and body structures. The **skeleton** consists of the bones of the body. For adults, there are 206 bones in the skeleton. Younger individuals have higher numbers of bones because some bones fuse together during childhood and adolescence to form an adult bone. The primary functions of the skeleton are to provide a rigid, internal structure that can support the weight of the body against the force of gravity, and to provide a structure upon which muscles can act to produce movements of the body.

In addition to providing for support and movements of the body, the skeleton has protective and storage functions. It protects the internal organs, including the brain, spinal cord, heart, lungs, and pelvic organs. The bones of the skeleton serve as the primary storage site for important minerals such as calcium and phosphate. The bone marrow found within bones stores fat and houses the blood-cell producing tissue of the body.

The skeleton is subdivided into two major divisions: the **axial** and **appendicular**.

The Axial Skeleton

The **axial skeleton** forms the vertical, central axis of the body and includes all bones of the head, neck, chest, and back (see [Figure 13.1](#)). It serves to protect the brain, spinal cord, heart, and lungs. It also serves as the attachment site for muscles that move the head, neck, and back and for muscles that act across the shoulder and hip joints to move their corresponding limbs.

The axial skeleton of the adult consists of 80 bones, including the **skull**, the **vertebral column**, and the **thoracic cage**. The skull is formed by 22 bones. Also associated with the head are an additional seven bones, including the **hyoid bone** and the **ear ossicles** (three small bones found in each middle ear). The vertebral column consists of 24 bones, each called a **vertebra**, plus the **sacrum** and **coccyx**. The thoracic cage includes the 12 pairs of **ribs**, and the **sternum**, the flattened bone of the anterior chest.

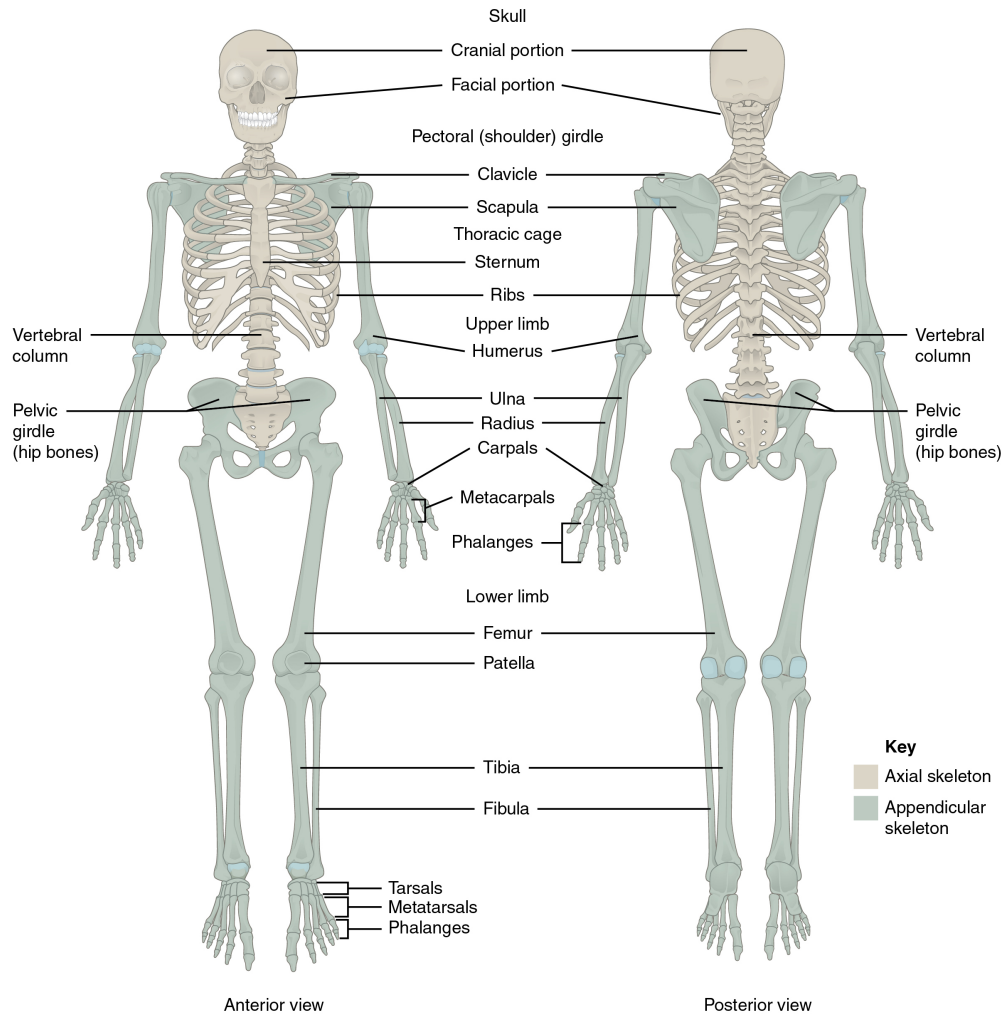


Figure 13.1 Axial and Appendicular Skeleton. The axial skeleton supports the head, neck, back, and chest and thus forms the vertical axis of the body. It consists of the skull, vertebral column (including the sacrum and coccyx), and the thoracic cage, formed by the ribs and sternum. The appendicular skeleton is made up of all bones of the upper and lower limbs. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 13.1 Image description.](#)]

Did You Know 1?

The axial skeleton has 80 bones and includes bones of the skull (and face), vertebral column, and thoracic cage.

The **cranium** or skull supports the face and protects the brain. It is subdivided into the bones of the skull and the bones of the face.

Bones of the Skull

- **Frontal** – forms the forehead
- **Parietal** – the upper lateral sides of the cranium
- **Occipital** – the posterior skull and base of the cranial cavity
- **Temporal** – the lower lateral sides of the cranium
- **Sphenoid** – the ‘keystone’ bone that forms part of the base of skull and eye sockets
- **Ethmoid** – forms part of the nose and orbit and base of the cranium
- **Auditory ossicles** – the small bones of the middle ear
- **External auditory meatus** – the external opening of the ear and temporal bone

Bones of the Face

- **Zygomatic** – the cheekbone
- **Maxillary** – the upper jaw and hard palate
- **Palatine** – the lateral walls of the nose
- **Lacrimal** – the walls of the orbit
- **Inferior conchae** – the lower lateral wall of the nasal cavity
- **Vomer** – the separates the left and right nasal cavity
- **Mandible** – the lower jaw bone (The only movable bone of the skull)
- **Hyoid** – the bone located between the mandible and larynx, not connected to other bones

Bones of the Vertebral Column

The vertebral column is also known as the spinal column or spine (see [Figure 13.2](#)). It consists of a sequence of vertebrae (singular = vertebra), each of which is separated and united by an **intervertebral disc**. Together, the vertebrae and intervertebral discs form the vertebral column. It is a flexible column that supports the head, neck, and body and allows for their movements. It also protects the spinal cord, which passes down the back through openings in the vertebrae.

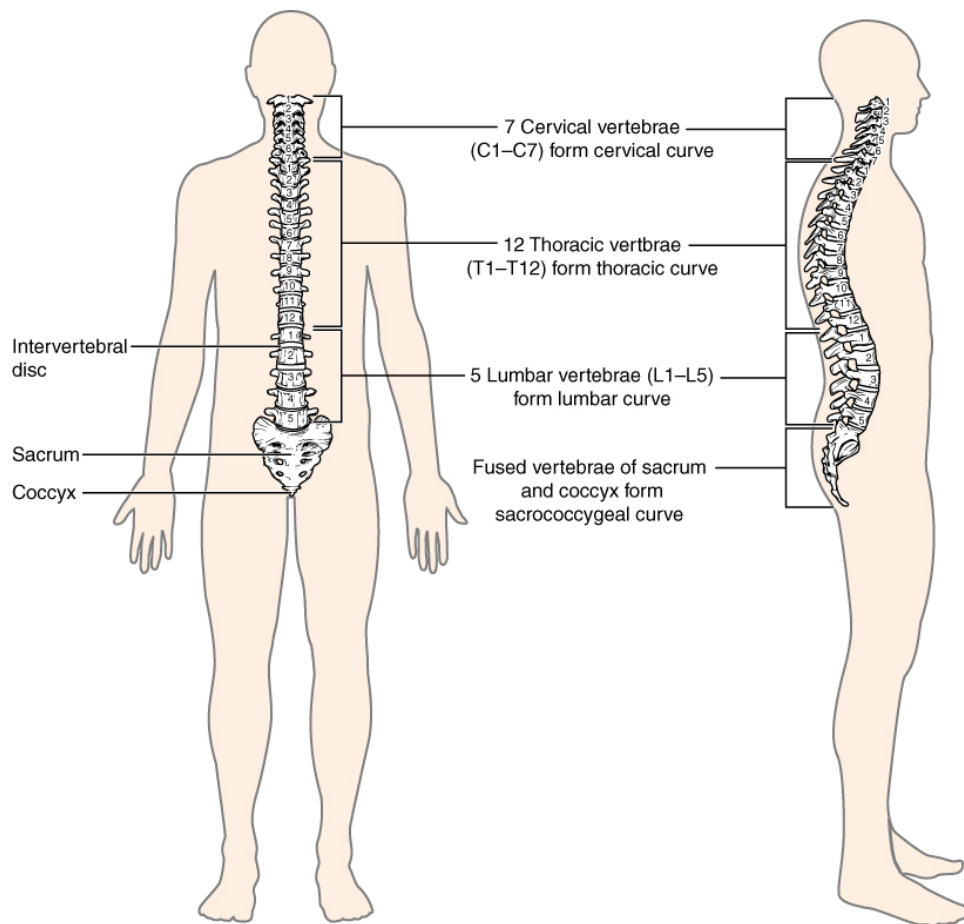


Figure 13.2 Vertebral Column. The adult vertebral column consists of 24 vertebrae, plus the sacrum and coccyx. The vertebrae are divided into three regions: cervical C1–C7 vertebrae, thoracic T1–T12 vertebrae, and lumbar L1–L5 vertebrae. The vertebral column is curved, with two primary curvatures (thoracic and sacrococcygeal curves) and two secondary curvatures (cervical and lumbar curves). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 13.2 Image description.]

Types of Vertebrae

- **Cervical:** C1 to C7 – the first 7 vertebrae in the neck region
- **Thoracic:** T1 to T12 – the next 12 vertebrae that form the outward curvature of the spine
- **Lumbar:** L1 to L5 – the next 5 vertebrae that form the inner curvature of spine
- **Sacrum:** the triangular-shaped bone at the base of the spine
- **Coccyx:** the tailbone

Bones of the Thoracic Cavity

The thoracic cage (rib cage) forms the thorax (chest) portion of the body. It consists of 12 pairs of ribs with their costal cartilages and the sternum (see [Figure 13.3](#)). The ribs are anchored posteriorly to the 12 thoracic vertebrae (T1–T12). The thoracic cage protects the heart and lungs.

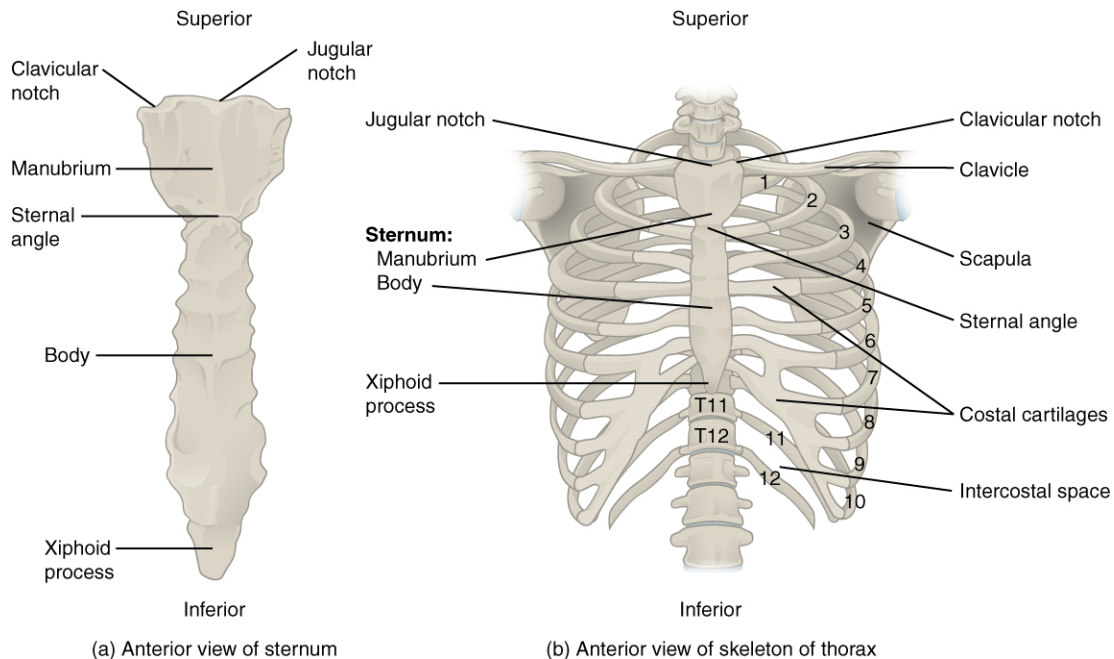


Figure 13.3 Thoracic Cage. The thoracic cage is formed by the (a) sternum and (b) 12 pairs of ribs with their costal cartilages. The ribs are anchored posteriorly to the 12 thoracic vertebrae. The sternum consists of the manubrium, body, and xiphoid process. The ribs are classified as true ribs (1–7) and false ribs (8–12). The last two pairs of false ribs are also known as floating ribs (11–12). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 13.3 Image description.]

Ribs

There are 12 sets of **ribs** and can be divided as such:

- 7 **true ribs** as they are attached to the front of the sternum
- 3 **false ribs** as they are attached to the cartilage that joins the sternum
- 2 **floating ribs** as they are not attached to the front of the sternum

Sternum

The **sternum**, also known as the breast bone, is divided into 3 parts:

- **manubrium** – the upper portion of the breastbone
- **body** – the middle portion of the breastbone
- **xiphoid process** – the lower portion of the breastbone and is made up of cartilage

Concept Check 2

Answer the following questions:

- What is the medical term for the upper jaw bone and for the lower jaw bone?
- What medical term is used for the bones of the inner ear?
- How many bones make up the cervical region of the vertebral column?

The Appendicular Skeleton

The **appendicular skeleton** includes all bones of the upper and lower limbs, plus the bones that attach each limb to the axial skeleton. There are 126 bones in the appendicular skeleton of an adult.

Did You Know 2?

The appendicular skeleton has 126 bones. It is divided into the bones of the upper limbs and lower limbs that attach each limb to skeleton (Betts et al., 2013).

Bones of the Pectoral Girdle

- **Scapula:** the shoulder blades
- **Clavicle:** the collar bones. It connects the sternum to the scapula
- **Acromion:** the extension that forms the bony point of the shoulder

Bones of the Upper Limbs

The bones of the upper limbs include the bones of the arms, wrists, and hands.

Bones of the Arm

- **Humerus**: the bone in upper arm
- **Radius** – the bone that runs thumb-side of the forearm
- **Ulna** – the bone that runs on the side of the little finger of the forearm

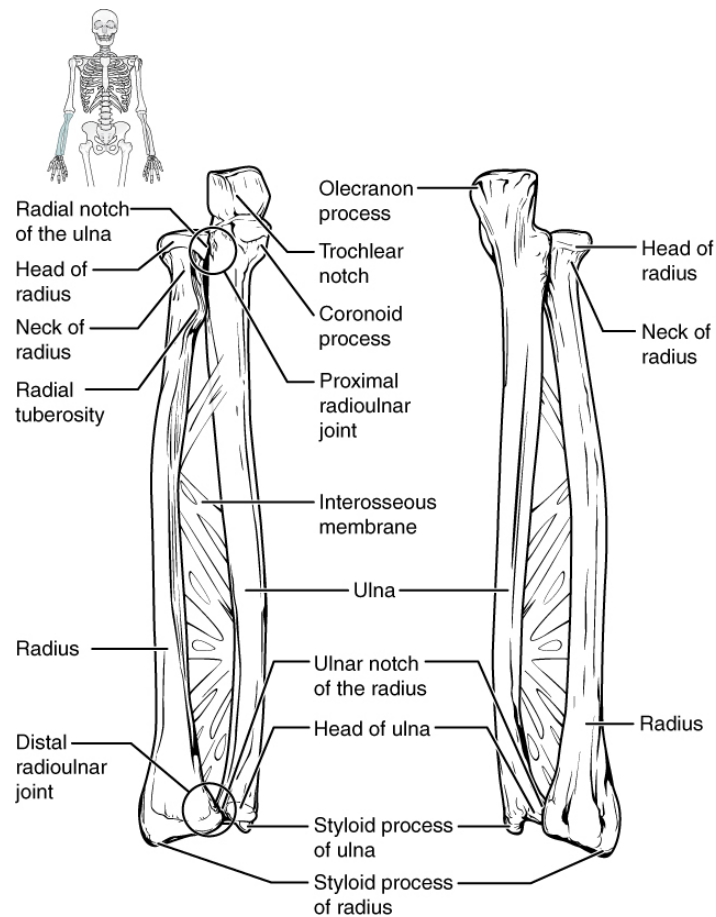


Figure 13.4 Ulna and Radius. The ulna is located on the medial side of the forearm, and the radius is on the lateral side. These bones are attached to each other by an interosseous membrane. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 13.4 Image description.]

Bones of the Wrist and Hand

- **Carpals** – the wrist bones
- **Metacarpals** – the bones in the palm of hand

- **Phalanges** – the finger and toe bones

Each phalanx has three bones: the distal, medial, and proximal. The exception is the thumb and big toe which has two bones: distal and proximal (see Fig 16.5 below). There are 30 bones in each upper limb. Can you count them on your limb?

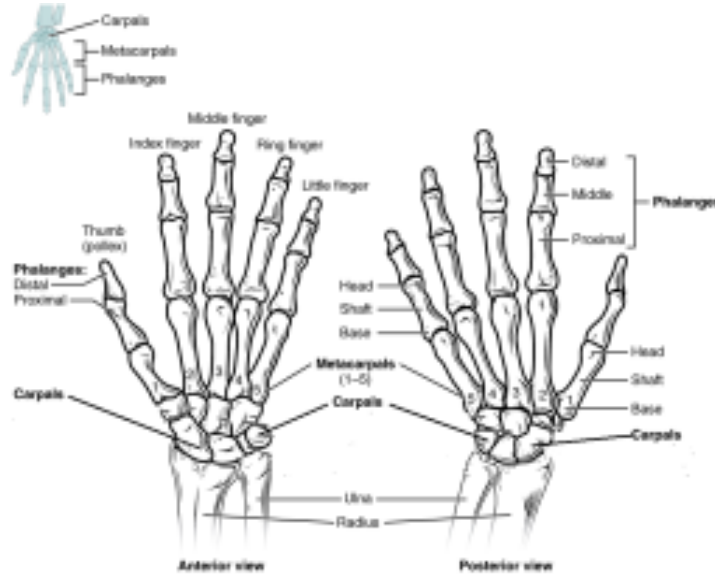


Figure 13.5 Bones of the Hands. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 13.5 Image description.]

Bones of the Pelvic Region

The bones of the pelvic region protect the reproductive, urinary, and excretory organs.

- **Pelvic girdle** – the hip or coxal bone. It is formed by the fusion of three bones during adolescence
- **Ilium** – the largest part of the hip bone
- **Ischium** – the lower portion of the pelvic girdle
- **Pubis** – the anterior portion of the pelvic girdle
- **Pelvis** – consists of four bones: the left and right hip bones as well as the sacrum and coccyx
- **Acetabulum** – the large socket in the pelvic bones that holds the head of the femur

The shape of the pelvic girdle is different for males than females. In the male, it is a funnel shape. In the female it is shaped like a basin to accommodate for the fetus during pregnancy.

Did You know 3?

The femur is the longest and strongest bone of the body, and accounts for approximately one-quarter of a person's total height (Betts et al., 2013).

Bones of the Lower Limbs

The bones of the lower limb include bones of the leg and the feet.

Bones of the Leg

- **Femur** – the thigh bone and is also referred to as the upper leg bone. It is the longest and strongest bone in the human body
- **Patella** – the kneecap
- **Tibia** – the shin bone. It is a medial bone and the main weight-bearing bone of the lower leg
- **Fibula** – the smaller of the lower leg bone (see [Figure 13.6](#))

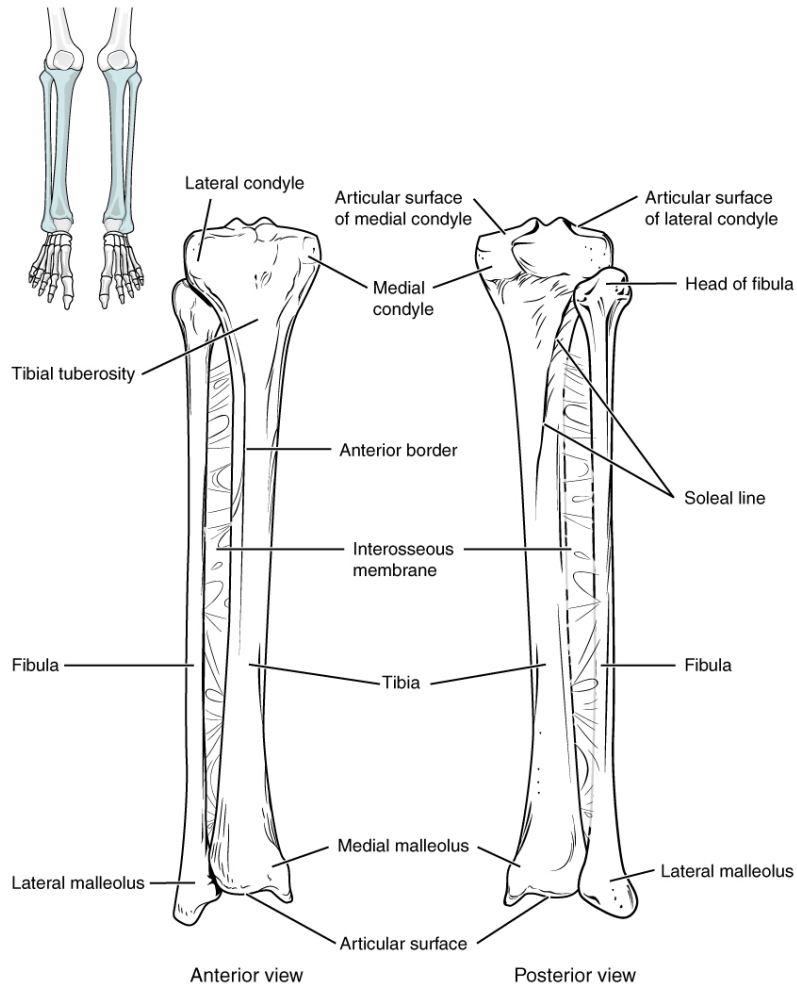


Figure 13.6 Tibia and Fibula. The tibia is the larger, weight-bearing bone located on the medial side of the leg. The fibula is the slender bone of the lateral side of the leg and does not bear weight. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [\[Fig. 13.6 Image description.\]](#)

Bones of the Ankles and Feet

- **Tarsals** – the ankle bones (7 total)
- **Malleous** – the bony protrusions of the ankle bones
- **Talus** – the superior ankle bones
- **Calcaneous** – the heel bones
- **Metatarsals** – the foot bones
- **Phalanges** – the bones of the toes (see [Figure 13.7](#))

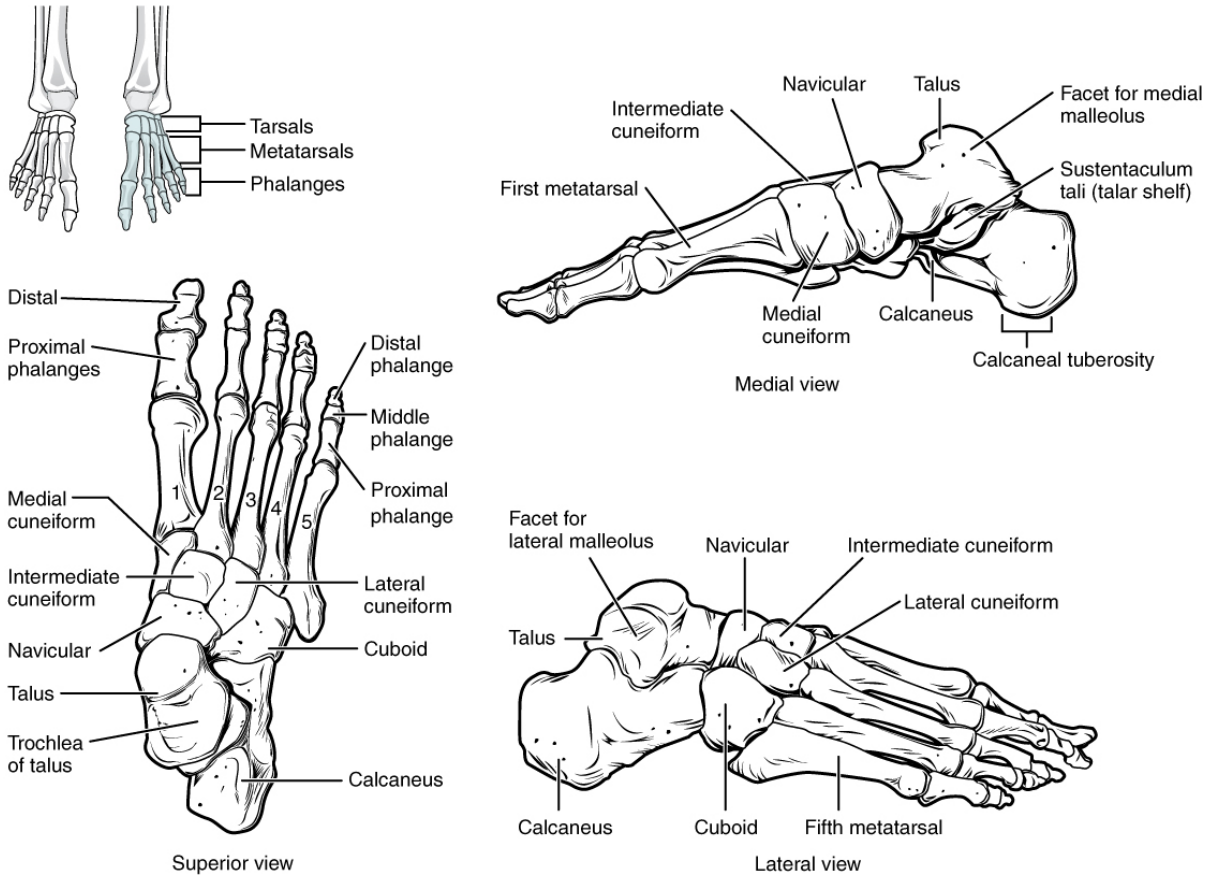


Figure 13.7 Bones of the Foot. The bones of the foot are divided into three groups. The posterior foot is formed by the seven tarsal bones. The mid-foot has the five metatarsal bones. The toes contain the phalanges. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 13.7 Image description.]

Check Your Knowledge of the Skeletal System

Concept Check 1

Answer the following questions:

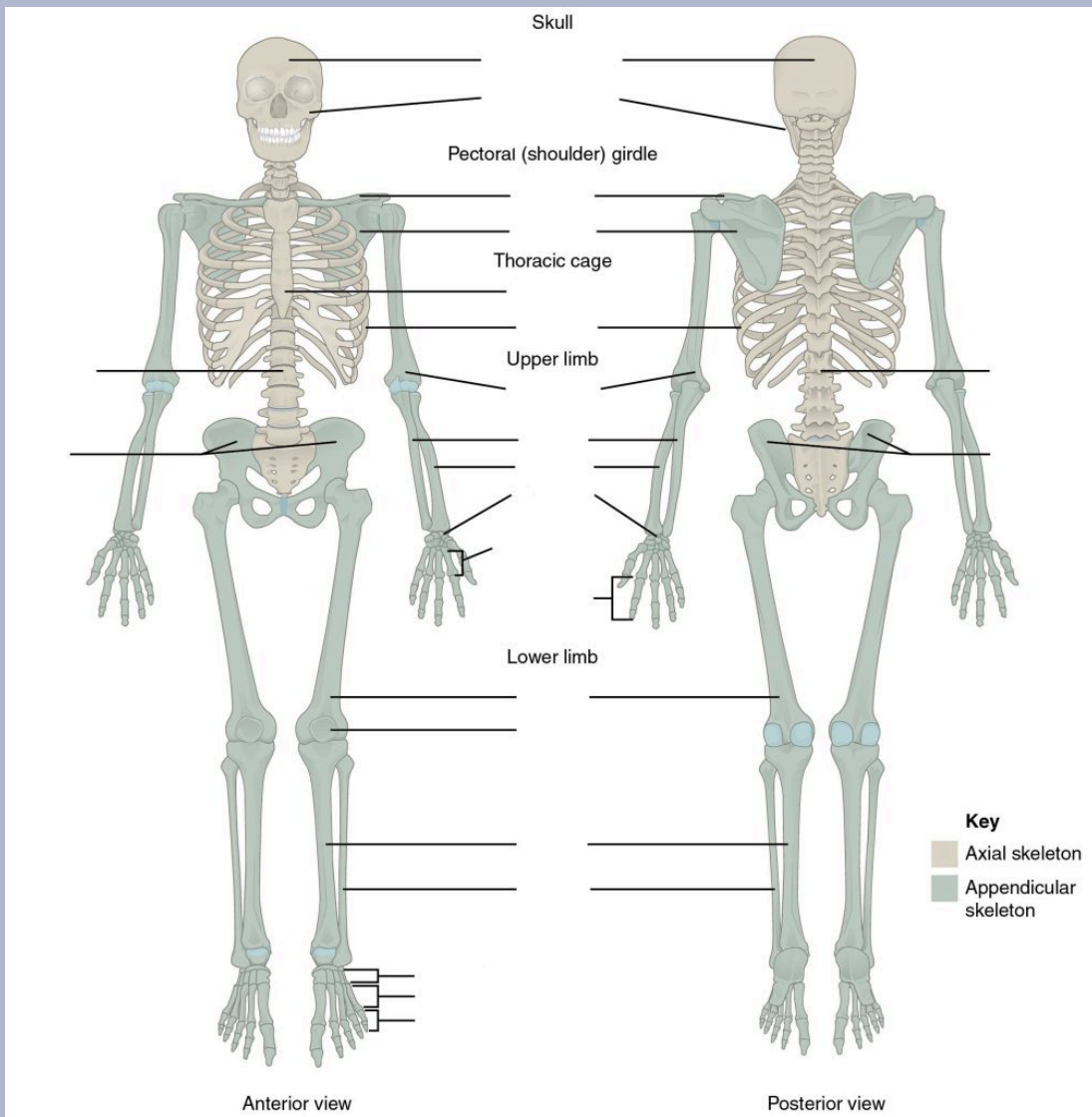
- Is the humerus the same as the funny bone?
- What is the medical term for the kneecap?

Musculoskeletal System-Skeleton Anatomy

Musculoskeletal System-Skeleton Anatomy (Text Version)

Label the diagram with the correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Fibula | 9. Vertebral column | 17. Scapula |
| 2. Clavicle | 10. Tibia | 18. Metatarsals |
| 3. Femur | 11. Ulna | 19. Sternum |
| 4. Cranial portion | 12. Phalanges | 20. Metacarpals |
| 5. Radius | 13. Ribs | 21. Patella |
| 6. Facial portion | 14. Tarsals | 22. Humerus |
| 7. Vertebral column | 15. Phalanges | 23. Carpals |
| 8. Pelvic girdle | 16. Pelvic girdle | |



Check your answers ¹

Activity source: Musculoskeletal System–Skeleton Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 13.1 image description: This diagram shows the human skeleton and identifies the major bones. The left panel shows the anterior view (from the front) and the right panel shows the posterior view (from the back). Labels read (from the top of skull): skull (cranial portion, facial portion), pectoral shoulder girdle, clavicle, scapula, thoracic cage (sternum, ribs), upper limb (humerus, ulna, radius, carpals, metacarpals, phalanges), vertebral

column, pelvic girdle (hip bones), lower limb (femur, patella, tibia, fibula, tarsals, metatarsals, phalanges). [\[Return to Figure 13.1\].](#)

Figure 13.2 image description: This image shows the structure of the vertebral column. The left panel shows the front view of the vertebral column. Labels and the right panel shows the side view of the vertebral column. Labels read (from top): 7 cervical vertebrae (C1-C7) form cervical curve, 12 thoracic vertebrae (T1-T12) form thoracic curve, intervertebral disc, 5 lumbar vertebrae (L1-L5) form lumbar curve, Fused vertebrae of sacrum and coccyx form sacrococcygeal curve, sacrum, coccyx. [\[Return to Figure 13.2\].](#)

Figure 13.3 image description: This figure shows the skeletal structure of the rib cage. The left panel shows the anterior view of the sternum. Labels read (from top): clavicular notch, jugular notch, manubrium, sternal angle, body, xiphoid process. The right panel shows the anterior panel of the sternum including the entire rib cage. Labels read (from top): jugular notch, clavicular notch, clavicle, sternum (manubrium, body, xiphoid process), scapula, sternal angle, costal cartilages, intercostal space. Ribs are numbered 1-12 from the top. [\[Return to Figure 13.3\].](#)

Figure 13.4 image description: This diagram labels the bones of the lower arm (excluding the hands). Labels read (from top): olecranon process, head of radius, radial notch of the ulna, trochlear notch, coronoid process, radial tuberosity, proximal radioulnar joint, neck of radius, radius, interosseous membrane, ulna, ulnar notch of the radius, head of the ulna, distal radioulnar joint, styloid process of ulna, styloid process of radius. [\[Return to Figure 13.4\].](#)

Figure 13.5 image description: This diagram shows an anterior and posterior view of the hands with corresponding labels. Anterior view labels read (from top): middle finger, ring finger, index finger, little finger, thumb, phalanges (distal, proximal), metacarpals, carpals, ulna, radius. Posterior view labels read (from top): Phalanges (distal, middle, proximal), head shaft and base of proximal phalange, head shaft and base of metatarsal, metatarsals 1-5, carpals, ulna, radius. [\[Return to Figure 13.5\].](#)

Figure 13.6 image description: This image shows the structure of the tibia and the fibula. The left panel shows the anterior view. Labels read (from top): lateral condyle, medial condyle, tibial tuberosity, anterior border, interosseous membrane, fibula, tibia, medial malleolus, lateral malleolus, articular surface. The right panel shows the posterior view. Labels read (from top): articular surface of medial and lateral condyles, medial condyle, head of fibula, soleal line, interosseous membrane, tibia, fibula, medial malleolus, lateral malleolus, articular surface. [\[Return to Figure 13.6\].](#)

Figure 13.7 image description: This figure shows the bones of the foot. The left panel shows the superior view. Labels read (from toes): distal, proximal phalanges, distal phalange, middle phalange, proximal phalange, medial cuneiform, intermediate and lateral cuneiforms, navicular, cuboid, talus, trochlea of talus, calcaneus. The top right panel shows the medial view. Labels read (from left to right starting at toe): first metatarsal, medial cuneiform, intermediate cuneiform, navicular, talus, calcaneus, facet for medial malleolus, sustentaculum tali (talar shelf), calcaneal tuberosity. The bottom right panel shows the lateral view. Labels read (from left at the heel to right): calcaneus, talus, facet for lateral malleolus, cuboid, navicular, intermediate and lateral cuneiforms, fifth metatarsal. [\[Return to Figure 13.7\].](#)

13.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Skeletal System

The bones of the skeletal system are comprised of an inner spongy tissue referred to as bone marrow. There are two types of bone marrow, red and yellow. The red bone marrow produces the red blood cells and it does so by a process called **hematopoiesis**. The yellow bone marrow contains adipose tissues which can be a source of energy. The bones of the skeletal system also store minerals such as calcium and phosphate. These minerals are important for the physiological processes in the body and are released into the bloodstream when levels are low in the body.

Joints

Watch [Joints: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #20 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Most bones connect to at least one other bone in the body. The area where bones meet bones or where bones meet cartilage are called **articulations**. Joints can be classified based on their ability to move. At **movable** joints, the articulating surfaces of the adjacent bones can move smoothly against each other. However, other joints may be connected to each other by connective tissue or cartilage. These joints are designed for stability and provide for little or no movement. Importantly, joint stability and movement are related to each other. This means that stable joints allow for little or no mobility between the adjacent bones. Conversely, joints that provide the most movement between bones are the least stable.

Did You Know?

The left and right hip bones are connected by an amphiarthrosis joint.

Based on the function of joints, there are 3 types of joints:

- **Synarthrosis** condition of joints which allow no movement
 - example: joints of the skull
- **Amphiarthrosis** condition of joints which allow some movement
 - example: joints of the pubic symphysis
- **Diarthrosis** condition of joints which allow for free movement

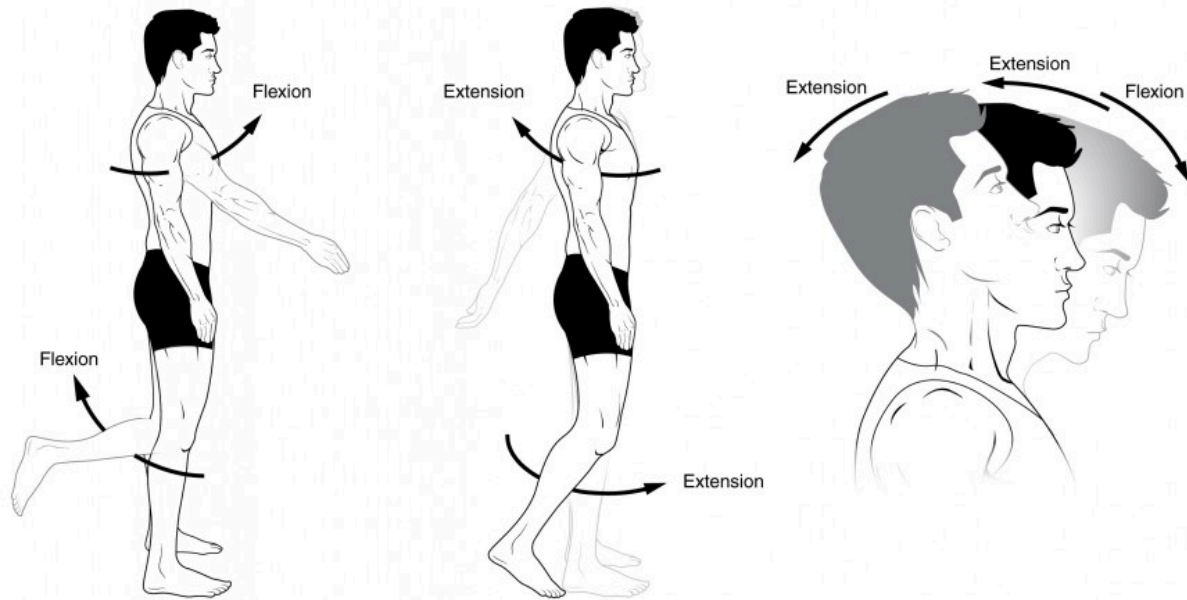
- example: joints of the knee

Structures associated with joints are:

- **Cartilage:** the elastic connective tissue that is found at the ends of bones, nose tip, etc
- **Synovial membrane:** the lining or covering of synovial joints
- **Synovial fluid:** the lubricating fluid found between synovial joints
- **Ligaments:** the tough, elastic connective tissue that connects bone to bone
- **Tendons:** the fibrous connective tissue that attaches muscle to bone
- **Bursa:** the closed, fluid-filled sacs that work as a cushion
- **Meniscus:** C-shaped cartilage that act as a shock absorber between bones

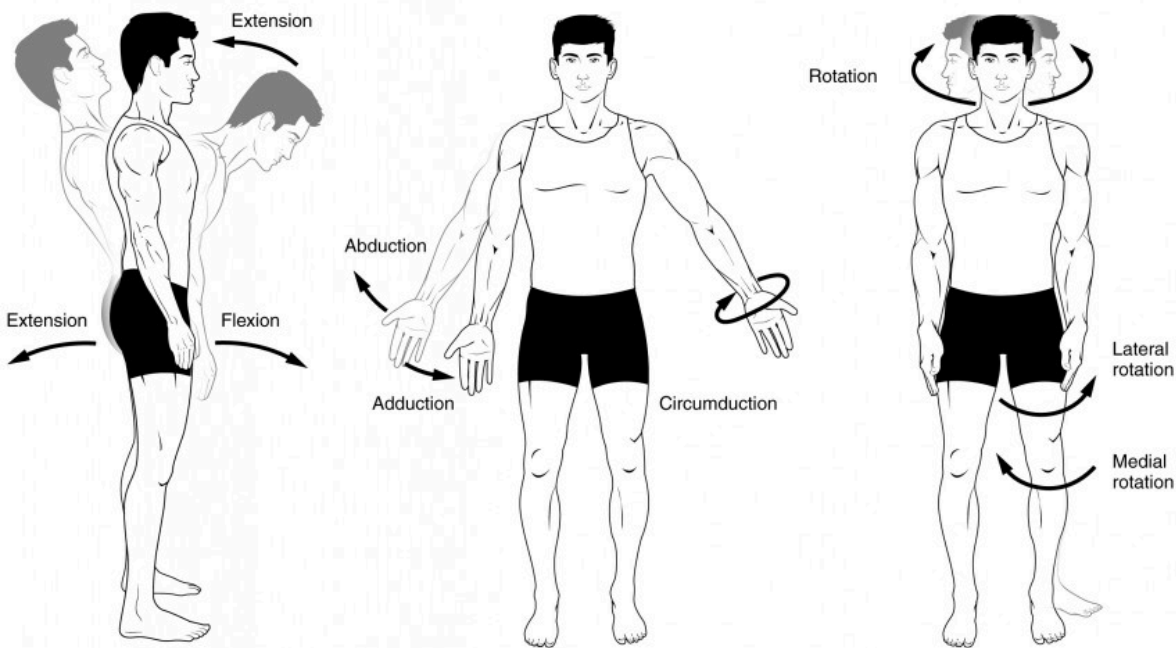
Body Movements

Synovial joints are movable joints and provide most of the body movements. Body movement occurs when the bones, joints and muscles work together.



(a) and (b) Angular movements: flexion and extension at the shoulder and knees

(c) Angular movements: flexion and extension of the neck



(d) Angular movements: flexion and extension of the vertebral column

(e) Angular movements: abduction, adduction, and circumduction of the upper limb at the shoulder

(f) Rotation of the head, neck, and lower limb

Figure 13.8 *Movements of the Body, Part 1*. Synovial joints give the body many ways in which to move. (a) and (b) Flexion and extension motions are in the sagittal (anterior and posterior) plane of motion. These movements take place at the shoulder, hip, elbow, knee, wrist, metacarpophalangeal, metatarsophalangeal, and interphalangeal joints. (c) and (d) Anterior bending of the head or vertebral column is flexion, while any posterior-going movement is extension. (e) Abduction and adduction are motions of the limbs, hand, fingers, or toes in the coronal (medial and lateral) plane of movement. Moving the limb or hand laterally away from the body, or spreading the fingers or toes, is abduction. Adduction brings the limb or hand toward or across the midline of the body, or brings the fingers or toes together. Circumduction is the movement of the limb, hand, or fingers in a circular pattern, using the sequential combination of flexion, adduction, extension, and abduction motions. Adduction/abduction and circumduction take place at the shoulder, hip, wrist, metacarpophalangeal, and metatarsophalangeal joints. (f) Turning of the head side to side or twisting of the body is rotation. Medial and lateral rotation of the upper limb at the shoulder or lower limb at the hip involves turning the anterior surface of the limb toward

the midline of the body (medial or internal rotation) or away from the midline (lateral or external rotation). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 13.8 Image description.](#)]

Flexion and Extension

Flexion and **extension** are movements that take place within the sagittal plane and involve anterior or posterior movements of the body or limbs. For the vertebral column, **flexion** (anterior flexion) is an anterior (forward) *bending* of the neck or body, while **extension** involves a posterior-directed motion, such as *straightening* from a flexed position or bending backwards. **Lateral flexion** is the bending of the neck or body toward the right or left side. These movements of the vertebral column involve both the joints as well as the associated intervertebral disc.

In the limbs, flexion *decreases* the angle between the bones (bending of the joint), while extension *increases* the angle and straightens the joint (see [Figure 13.8\(a-d\)](#)). You will discover in the muscular system chapter that the associated muscles to these movements are the flexor and extensor.

Abduction and Adduction

Abduction and **adduction** motions occur within the coronal plane and involve medial-lateral motions of the limbs, fingers, toes, or thumb. For example, abduction is raising the arm at the shoulder joint, moving it laterally away from the body, while adduction brings the arm down to the side of the body (see [Figure 13.8\(e\)](#)). In the muscular system chapter you will discover that the associated muscles to these movements are the abductor and adductor.

Circumduction

Circumduction is the movement of a body region in a *circular* manner, in which one end of the body region being moved stays relatively stationary while the other end describes a circle. It involves the sequential combination of flexion, adduction, extension, and abduction at a joint (see [Figure 13.8\(e\)](#)).

Rotation

Rotation can occur within the vertebral column, at a **pivot joint**, or at a **ball-and-socket joint**. Rotation of the neck or body is the *twisting* movement produced by the summation of the small rotational movements available between adjacent vertebrae. At a pivot joint, one bone rotates in relation to another bone.

Rotation can also occur at the **ball-and-socket joints** of the shoulder and hip. Here, the humerus and femur rotate around their long axis, which moves the anterior surface of the arm or thigh either toward or away from the midline of the body (see [Figure 13.8\(f\)](#)).

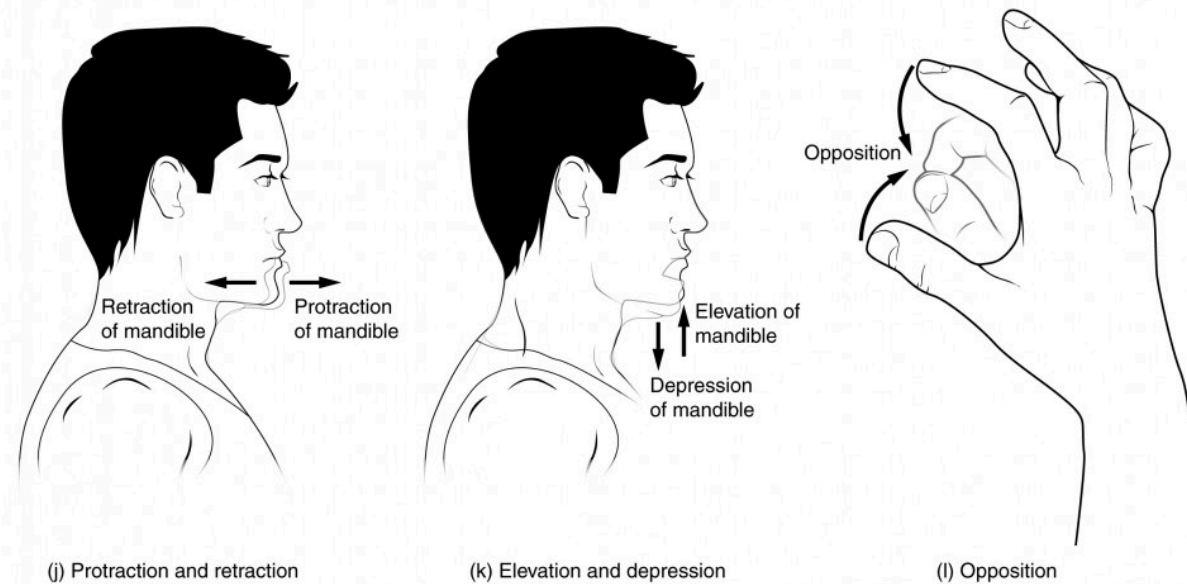
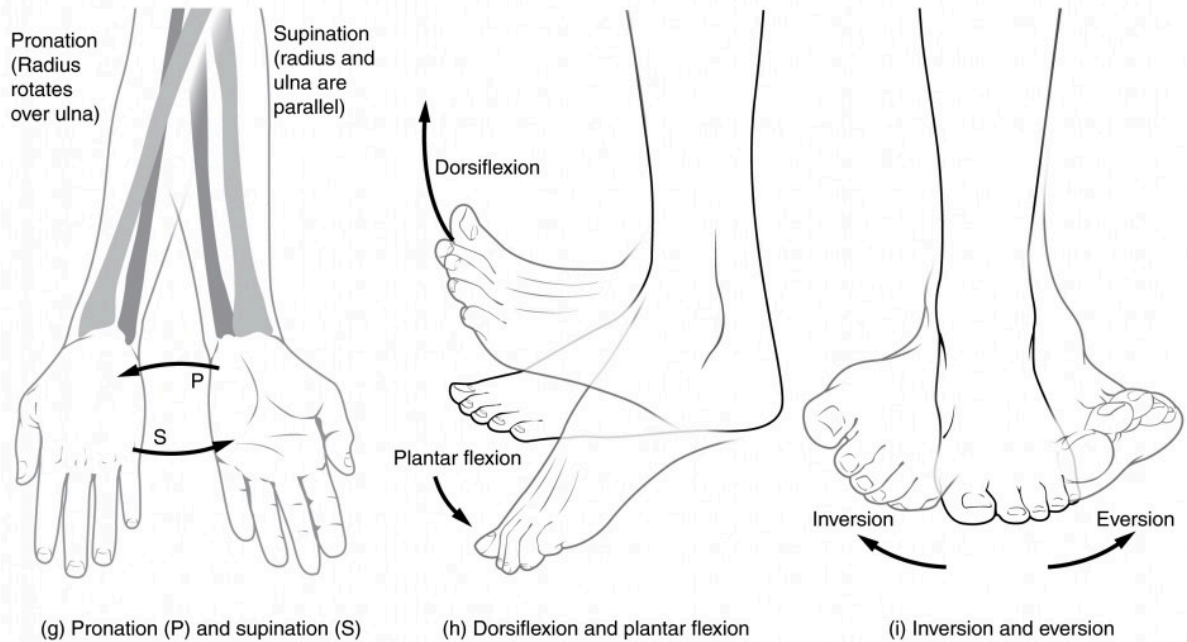


Figure 13.9 Movements of the Body, Part 2. (g) Supination of the forearm turns the hand to the palm forward position in which the radius and ulna are parallel, while forearm pronation turns the hand to the palm backward position in which the radius crosses over the ulna to form an “X.” (h) Dorsiflexion of the foot at the ankle joint moves the top of the foot toward the leg, while plantar flexion lifts the heel and points the toes. (i) Eversion of the foot moves the bottom (sole) of the foot away from the midline of the body, while foot inversion faces the sole toward the midline. (j) Protraction of the mandible pushes the chin forward, and retraction pulls the chin back. (k) Depression of the mandible opens the mouth, while elevation closes it. (l) Opposition of the thumb brings the tip of the thumb into contact with the tip of the fingers of the same hand and reposition brings the thumb back next to the index finger. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Supination and Pronation

Supination and pronation are movements of the forearm. In the anatomical position, the upper limb is held next to the body with the *palm facing forward*. This is the **supinated position** of the forearm. In this position, the radius and ulna are parallel to each other. When the *palm of the hand faces backwards*, the forearm is in the **pronated position**, and the radius and ulna form an X-shape.

Pronation is the movement that allows the palm of the hand to face *backwards*, while in *supination* the palm of the hand faces *forwards*. It helps to remember that supination is the motion you use when scooping up soup with a spoon (see [Figure 13.9\(g\)](#)).

Dorsiflexion and Plantar Flexion

Dorsiflexion and **plantar flexion** are movements at the ankle joint, which is a hinge joint. Lifting the front of the foot so that the top of the *foot moves (upward)* toward the anterior leg is dorsiflexion, while lifting the heel of the foot from the ground or pointing the *toes downward* is plantar flexion. These are the only movements available at the ankle joint (see [Figure 13.9\(h\)](#)).

Inversion and Eversion

Inversion and eversion are complex movements that involve the multiple plane joints among the tarsal bones of the posterior foot (intertarsal joints) and thus are not motions that take place at the ankle joint. **Inversion** is the turning of the foot to angle the bottom of the foot *toward the midline*, while **eversion** turns the bottom of the foot away from the midline. The foot has a greater range of inversion than eversion motion. These are important motions that help to stabilize the foot when walking or running on an uneven surface and aid in the quick side-to-side changes in direction used during active sports such as basketball, racquetball, or soccer (see [Figure 13.9\(i\)](#)).

Protraction and Retraction

Protraction and **retraction** are anterior-posterior movements of the scapula or mandible. Protraction of the scapula occurs when the *shoulder is moved forward*, as when pushing against something or throwing a ball. Retraction is the opposite motion, with the scapula being *pulled posteriorly* and medially toward the vertebral column. For the mandible, protraction occurs when the lower jaw is pushed forward to stick out the chin, while retraction pulls the lower jaw backwards (see [Figure 13.9\(j\)](#)).

Depression and Elevation

Depression and **elevation** are downward and upward movements of the scapula or mandible. The *upward movement of the scapula* and shoulder is elevation, while a *downward movement* is depression. These movements

are used to shrug your shoulders. Similarly, the elevation of the mandible is the upward movement of the lower jaw used to close the mouth or bite on something, and depression is the downward movement that produces an opening of the mouth (see [Figure 13.9\(k\)](#)).

Concept Check

- Discuss the joints involved and movements required for you to cross your arms together in front of your chest.
- Differentiate between pronation and supination.

Musculoskeletal System Body Movements

Musculoskeletal System Body Movements (Text Version)

Practice the following endocrine system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **adduction**
 - moving toward the midline
2. **rotation**
 - turn around on own axis
3. **extension**
 - increased angle between bone and joint by placing a limb in a straight position
4. **abduction**
 - moving away from the midline
5. **inversion**
 - turning inward
6. **supination**

- turn the palm up

7. **eversion**

- turning outward

8. **pronation**

- turn the palm down

9. **flexion**

- decreasing the angle of a joint by bending a limb

Activity source: Musculoskeletal System Body Movements by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Musculoskeletal System – Operative Report

Musculoskeletal System – OPERATIVE REPORT (Text version)

Using the words below fill in the operative report:

- chondromalacia
- x-rays
- arthritis
- Orthopedic
- arthroscopy
- total hip arthroplasty
- femoral
- tendinitis

PATIENT NAME: Mrs. Karen SMITH

AGE: 72 Sex: Female

DATE OF SURGERY: February 24

PREOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: Degenerative arthritis of both hips; more severe on the right side.

POSTOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: Severe degenerative arthritis and severe _____[Blank 1] of the right hip.

NAME OF PROCEDURE: Total hip arthroplasty.

HISTORY: Mrs. Karen Smith is a 72-year-old widow who has been living alone and independently since her husband's premature death 15 years ago. Mrs. Smith has worked for 30 years at the production line in a factory and is now retired.

Mrs. Smith has been experiencing discomfort in her hips, especially the right one, over the parts twenty

years or so. However, what started as a mild discomfort over time turned into severe pain. Now the pain is so bad that she is afraid that it might soon rob her of her independence. She first sought help for her hip pain many years ago. After physical examination, her family physician ordered _____[Blank 2] for both hip joints. Based on the results, it was concluded that the pain was due to severe _____[Blank 3] mainly due to wear and tear. She was advised to lose weight and to take over-the-counter painkillers as needed. She was also referred to a physiotherapist. However, despite the fact that she has lost 10% of her original body weight of 170 pounds and has been adhering to the exercise regimen recommended by her physiotherapist, the pain has grown worse over the years and now is almost unbearable. She was last visited by an orthopedic surgeon and subsequently was admitted to the General Hospital Outpatient _____[Blank 4] Clinic for _____[Blank 5] of both hips.

OPERATIVE REPORT: The patient was brought to the operating room by anesthesia personnel. She was placed on the operating table. A Foley catheter was inserted. The patient was then placed into the lateral decubitus position with her right side up. The right lower extremity was prepped and draped in standard fashion for a _____[Blank 6]. Dissection was carried sharply down through the soft tissue to the greater trochanter. The greater trochanter was used as a landmark to orient the remainder of the dissection which was continued posteriorly and proximally to expose the iliofemoral joint.

The acetabulum was reamed. A 50 mm acetabular shell was used. Femur was debrided using a _____[Blank 7] canal curette. The length of the femoral stem was then checked with the canal curette in place. Appropriate femoral stem and head were selected and implanted. Intraoperative radiographs were obtained to ensure proper component position.

The hip was then checked for range of motion. The patient reached 90 degrees of flexion and full extension with no instability. No abnormality was detected in the surrounding soft tissue. There was no indication of _____[Blank 8].

The area was then closed in a layered fashion. The subcutaneous tissues were closed using surgical Vicryl 5-0 sutures. An incisional VAC was placed over the wound as well. Sponge and needle counts were correct at the end of the operation. The patient tolerated the procedure well and was returned to the recovery room in good condition.

Michael Porter, MD, Orthopedic Surgery

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Musculoskeletal System – Operative Report by Saedah Akram and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Musculoskeletal System – Operative Report

Musculoskeletal System – Operative Report (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the operative report:

- orthopedic
- supination
- colles
- carpal
- tenomyoplasty
- sterilized
- aligned
- fluoroscopy
- tenorrhaphy
- sutured
- splint
- arthralgia
- akinesia
- atrophy

PATIENT NAME: Liam PALMER

AGE: 22

SEX: Male

DOB: December 4

DATE OF ADMISSION: May 5

DATE OF PROCEDURE: May 5

ATTENDING PHYSICIAN: Michael Porter, MD, Orthopedic Surgery

PREOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: Fx of the distal end of radius.

POSTOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS: Fx of the distal end of radius.

ANESTHESIA: General.

INDICATION: This 22-year-old male had been skating earlier today when he lost his balance and fell. Trying to break the fall with an outstretched arm, he landed on his right arm, breaking his wrist. Mr. Palmer was brought to the _____[Blank 1] clinic in Toronto General Hospital. The wrist has been kept in a neutral position since even a slight movement was painful. The injured area is edematous and any attempt for active or passive flexion, extension, _____[Blank 2], or pronation caused a sharp pain that shoots all the way to the right shoulder. Posterior-Anterior and lateral x-rays of the wrist and forearm confirmed _____[Blank 3] fracture of the distal end of radius with the broken piece displaced posteriorly. The _____[Blank 4] bones were intact. The patient required surgery to fix the broken bone. Although not certain at that point, there was a possibility that the patient also required _____[Blank 5].

PROCEDURE: The surgery was done under general anesthesia. The patient's arm was placed in a proper position to allow for an easy and unobstructed access to the surgical area. The surgical area was _____[Blank 6]. A longitudinal incision was made to access the fracture. The fractured bone was realigned, and a metal plate was used to secure the _____[Blank 7] bone and restore stability. Throughout the surgery _____[Blank 8] was used to ensure proper reduction of the bone. The surrounding muscles, tendons, and ligaments were examined to ensure their integrity. There was no need for tenomyoplasty or _____[Blank 9]. Once the surgery was completed, the surgical incision was _____[Blank 10], the wrist was bandaged, and the arm was placed in a long cast to immobilize the wrist and elbow joints. The patient left the operation room in good and stable condition. The patient was discharged from the hospital on the following day. He was scheduled for his first follow

up visit in 3 weeks. At that time, the cast will be replaced with a removable wrist _____[Blank 11] and the patient will be referred to a physiotherapy clinic. Timely rehabilitation is extremely important in these types of fractures to reduce _____[Blank 12] and prevent from _____[Blank 13] and muscle _____[Blank 14].

Michael Porter, MD, Orthopedic Surgery

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM – OPERATIVE REPORT by Saeedha Akram and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 13.8 image description: This multi-part image shows different types of movements that are possible by different joints in the body. Labels read (from top, left): a and b angular movements: flexion and extension at the shoulders and knees, c) angular movements: flexion and extension of the neck (arrows pointing left and right to indicate movement). Labels (from bottom, left) read: d) angular movements: flexion and extension of the vertical column, e) angular movements abduction, adduction, and circumduction of the upper limb at the shoulder, f) rotation of the head, neck, and lower limb. [\[Return to Figure 13.8\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Skeletal System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Skeletal System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. chondromalacia, 2.x-rays, 3.arthritis, 4.Orthopedic, 5.arthroscopy, 6. total hip arthroplasty, 7.femoral, 8.tendinitis

2. 1.orthopedic, 2.supination, 3.Colles, 4.carpal, 5.tenomyoplasty, 5.sterilized, 6.aligned, 7.fluoroscopy, 8.tenorrhaphy, 9.sutured, 10.splint, 11.arthralgia, 12.akinesia, 13.atrophy

13.4 - Skeletal Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Common Diseases and Disorders

Osteoporosis

Health Canada (2018) describes **osteoporosis** as bone loss that causes bones to become weak and thin over time. This weakness can lead to fractures from simple movements and occurs often in the wrist, shoulder, spine, and hip. To learn more about osteoporosis, please visit the [Osteoporosis Health Canada website \[New Tab\]](#).

Arthritis

Arthritis often presents as **edema**, **arthralgia**, and **ankylosis** (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019). Common types of arthritis are **osteoarthritis** (OA), rheumatoid arthritis (RA), **fibromyalgia**, gout, and lupus. To learn more about arthritis, visit the [CDC's Arthritis Basics webpage \[New Tab\]](#).

Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis is the most common form of arthritis and, according to the Arthritis Society, affects Canadians more than the combination of all other types of arthritis. The breakdown of cartilage and bone occurs over time when joints are exposed to heavy workloads either through occupation, obesity, and/or prior injury to a joint. Common symptoms are pain, stiffness, and aching that worsens over time. While there is no cure, symptoms can be managed through exercise, medications and, in severe cases, joint replacements (Arthritis Society, 2020).

Rheumatoid arthritis

The CDC describes **rheumatoid arthritis (RA)** as an autoimmune and inflammatory disease. Autoimmune diseases are disorders in which the immune system overreacts and begins to attack itself. In the case of RA, inflammation of the joint tissues of the hands, wrists and knees is painful and debilitating. Treatments may include immunosuppressive drugs and anti-inflammatory drugs (Betts et al., 2013). RA can also affect other tissues throughout the body and cause problems in organs such as the lungs, heart, and eyes. RA can affect children, and in this case, it is referred to as **juvenile rheumatoid arthritis** (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2022).

Gout

According to the Arthritis Society, gout is an inflammatory arthritis caused when the immune system attacks the crystals that form when uric acid builds up in a joint. Gout has periods of **exacerbation** and remission and is commonly treated through lifestyle changes and medication. While any joint can be affected, it is common in the lower extremities and most often in the big toe (Choy & MacMullan, 2017). To learn more about the causes and treatments, please visit the [Arthritis Society's web page about gout \[New Tab\]](#).

Myasthenia Gravis

The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Strokes describes **myasthenia gravis** as a “**chronic** autoimmune neuromuscular disorder that causes weakness in the skeletal muscle” (Office of Communications and Public Liaison, 2020). To learn more, visit the [National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke's page on Myasthenia Gravis \[New Tab\]](#).

Fibromyalgia

Fibromyalgia is a challenging disease to diagnose, since symptoms manifest differently and are similar to other diseases. Symptoms may include chronic fatigue, gastrointestinal problems, headaches, and increased pain sensitivity. Historically, fibromyalgia was often misdiagnosed or dismissed as not real. According to The National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Disease, there is agreement on the definition and treatment for fibromyalgia, but it is recommended to find a specialist who is familiar with fibromyalgia (National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases, 2021). To learn more about the diagnosis and treatment for fibromyalgia, please visit the [National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases' fibromyalgia web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Osteomyelitis

Osteomyelitis is a bone infection caused when staphylococcus bacteria travels through the blood stream from an infection in one part of the body to the bone. Staphylococcus bacteria is found on the skin and it can transfer to the bone through a wound and/or surgical contamination. The risk increases as people age or if their immune system is compromised (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2022). To learn more about the causes, symptoms and treatments for osteomyelitis, please visit [the Mayo Clinic's osteomyelitis web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Disorders of the Curvature of the Spine

Developmental anomalies, pathological changes, or obesity can enhance the normal vertebral column curves,

resulting in the development of abnormal or excessive curvatures (see [Figure 13.10](#)). Disorders associated with the curvature of the spine include:

- **Kyphosis:** Also referred to as humpback, is an excessive posterior curvature of the thoracic region. This can develop when osteoporosis causes weakening and erosion of the anterior portions of the upper thoracic vertebrae, resulting in their gradual collapse (see [Figure 13.11](#)).
- **Lordosis:** Also referred to as swayback, is an excessive anterior curvature of the lumbar region and is most commonly associated with obesity or late pregnancy. The accumulation of body weight in the abdominal region results in an anterior shift in the line of gravity that carries the weight of the body. This causes an anterior tilt of the pelvis and a pronounced enhancement of the lumbar curve.
- **Scoliosis:** An abnormal lateral curvature accompanied by twisting of the vertebral column. Scoliosis is the most common vertebral abnormality among girls. The cause is usually unknown, but it may result from weakness of the back muscles, defects such as differential growth rates in the right and left sides of the vertebral column, or differences in the length of the lower limbs. When present, scoliosis tends to get worse during adolescent growth spurts. Although most individuals do not require treatment, a back brace may be recommended for growing children. In extreme cases, surgery may be required (Betts et al., 2013).

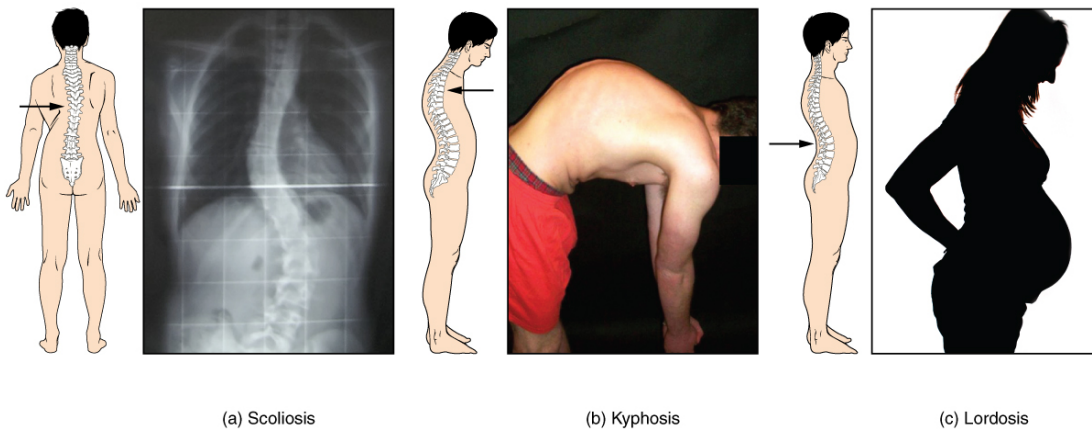


Figure 13.10 Abnormal Curvatures of the Vertebral Column. (a) Scoliosis is an abnormal lateral bending of the vertebral column. (b) An excessive curvature of the upper thoracic vertebral column is called kyphosis. (c) Lordosis is an excessive curvature in the lumbar region of the vertebral column. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 13.10 Image description](#).]

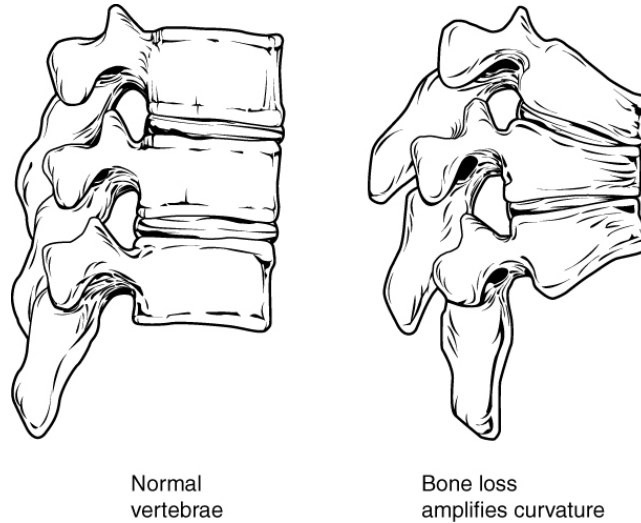


Figure 13.11. Osteoporosis. Osteoporosis is an age-related disorder that causes the gradual loss of bone density and strength. When the thoracic vertebrae are affected, there can be a gradual collapse of the vertebrae. This results in kyphosis, an excessive curvature of the thoracic region. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 13.11 Image description](#).]

Fractures

A **fracture** is a broken bone. It will heal whether or not a physician resets it in its anatomical position. If the bone is not reset correctly, the healing process will keep the bone in its deformed position. **Crepitation or crepitus** is the creaking or popping sound that is heard when fractured bones move against each other. Fractures are classified by their complexity, location, and other features (see [Figure 13.12](#)). Some fractures may be described using more than one term because it may have features of more than one type (e.g., an open transverse fracture) (Betts et al., 2013; Cleveland Clinic, 2022).

Types of fractures include:

- **Closed or simple:** bones are broken but does not protrude the skin
- **Open or compound:** bones are broken and pierce through the skin
- **Transverse;** bone is broken straight across
- **Spiral:** bone has twisted apart
- **Comminuted:** bones are broken and crushed into pieces
- **Greenstick:** bones are partially broken; occurs mainly in children
- **Oblique:** bones are broken at an angle
- **Colles:** bones are broken and occur at the wrist or distal radius
- **Stress:** small crack in a bone

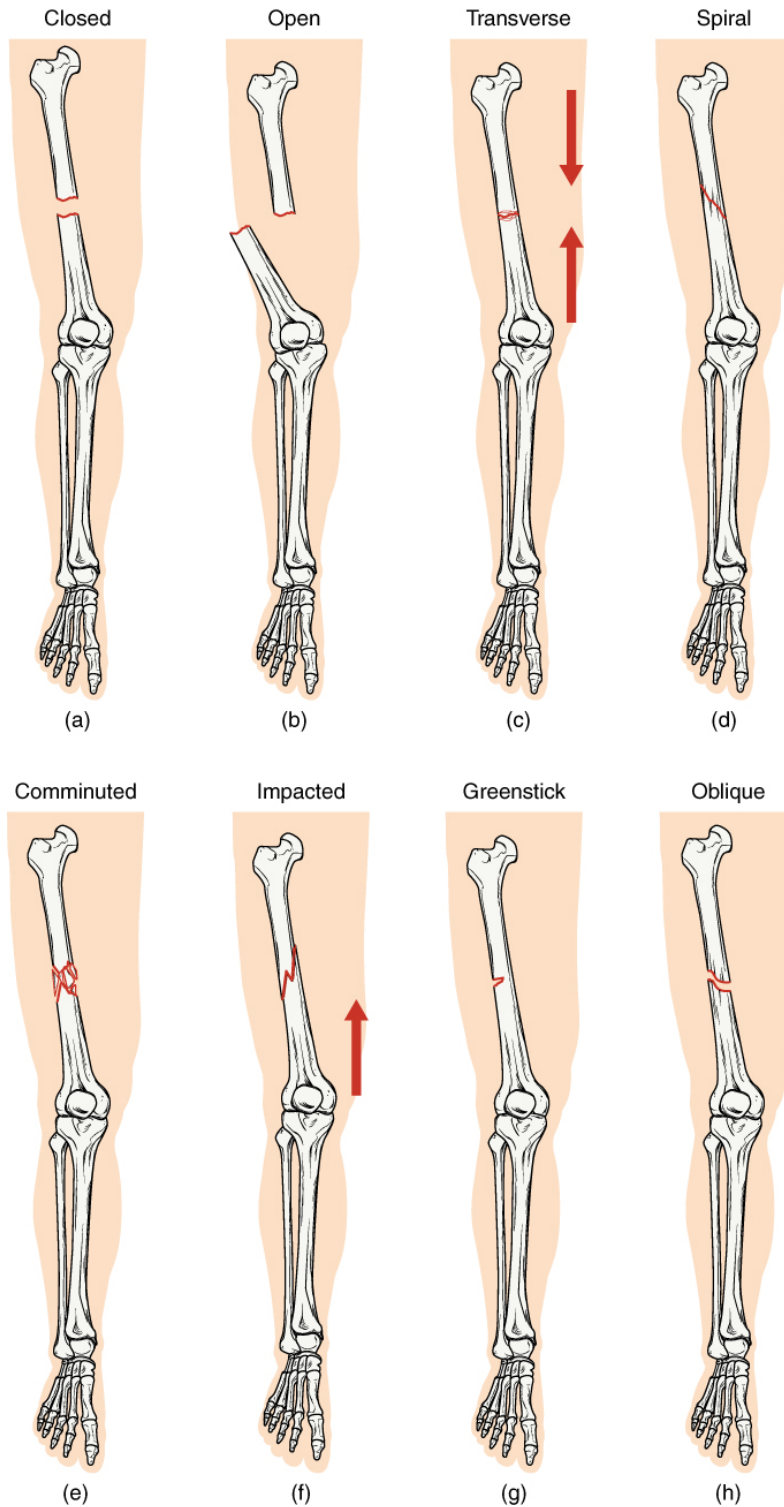


Figure 13.12. Types of Fractures. Compare healthy bone with different types of fractures: (a) closed fracture, (b) open fracture, (c) transverse fracture, (d) spiral fracture, (e) comminuted fracture, (f) impacted fracture, (g) greenstick fracture, and (h) oblique fracture. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 13.12 Image description.]

Bone Cancer

There are three types of primary bone cancers: osteosarcoma, Ewing Sarcoma, and chondrosarcoma. These are considered primary cancers because they originate in the bones. Osteosarcoma and Ewing Sarcoma are cancers found in children, teenagers, and young adults. Ewing Sarcoma is considered to be the more aggressive of the two cancers since it tends to **metastasize** quickly. Osteosarcoma is the most common type of bone cancer and it begins in the tissues of growing bones. Chondrosarcoma is a slow-growing bone cancer that affects adults and rarely metastasizes (Government of Canada, 2013). To learn more, visit the [Public Health Agency of Canada's web page on bone cancer \[New Tab\]](#).

Diagnostic Procedures

Common diagnostic procedures related specifically to the skeletal system include x-rays, bone mineral density testing, and arthroscopy.

- **X-rays** are common diagnostic tests used to confirm or rule out fractures and broken bones. The radiation dose is low so it is considered a safe diagnostic test (Ontario Association of Radiologist, 2020).
- **Dual x-ray absorptiometry (BMD)**, also called a bone mineral density test, is a test to determine osteoporosis by measuring the amount of bone mineral in a particular amount of bone (Radiology Info, 2022).
- **Arthroscopy** is a common procedure performed by orthopedic surgeons to view the inside of a joint to diagnose and/or repair joint problems. The patient is given a local anesthetic and the surgeon inserts an **arthroscope** through an incision in the skin. Depending on what the surgeon finds, a repair of the joint may take place during the procedure (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2022).

Medical Specialties Related to the Skeletal System

Orthopedic Surgeon

Orthopedic Surgeons are medical doctors who complete an additional 5-years of specialized training in the prevention, diagnosis, treatment and surgery of disorders and diseases related to the musculoskeletal systems (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). For more details, please visit the [Canadian Medical Association's page on Orthopedic Surgery \[PDF\]](#).

Rheumatologist

Rheumatologists are medical doctors who have additional training as internists with a sub-specialty in rheumatology. Many rheumatology disorders have an underlying autoimmune disorders. Consequently, rheumatologists are interested in autoimmune disorders and their impact on multiple body systems including the musculoskeletal systems (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). For more details, please follow the link to the [Canadian Medical Association's page on Rheumatology \[PDF\]](#).

Doctor of Chiropractic (DC)/Chiropractor

A Doctor of Chiropractic (DC) is regulated and licensed by each province in Canada. Chiropractors have seven years of university education, a supervised internship, and national examinations. Chiropractors are trained in the prevention, assessment and treatment of the spine, muscular system and nervous system. Chiropractors focus on spinal adjustments, nutrition, and preventing injury without the use of pharmaceuticals or surgical procedures (Cleveland Clinic, 2022). To learn more, visit the [Cleveland Clinic's page on Chiropractic adjustment \[New Tab\]](#).

Physiotherapist

A physiotherapist in Canada has a Master's degree in physiotherapy and has successfully completed a national Physiotherapy Competency Examination (PCE). Physiotherapists use an evidenced-based approach when assessing and designing treatment plans for their clients. Treatments may include exercises, massage, joint manipulation, and occupational retraining (Canadian Physiotherapy Association, n.d.). To learn more, please visit the [Canadian Physiotherapy Association website \[New Tab\]](#).

Image Descriptions

Figure 13.10 image description: This image shows the changes to the abnormal curves of the vertebral columns in different diseases. The left panel shows the change in the curve of the vertebral column in scoliosis, the middle panel shows the change in the curve of the vertebral column in kyphosis, and the right panel shows the change in the curve of the vertebral column in lordosis. [\[Return to Figure 13.10\]](#).

Figure 13.11 image description: This figure shows the changes to the spine in osteoporosis. The left panel shows the structure of normal vertebrae and the right panel shows the curved vertebrae in osteoporosis. [\[Return to Figure 13.11\]](#).

Figure 13.12 image description: In this illustration, each type of fracture is shown on the right femur from an anterior view. In the closed fracture, the femur is broken in the middle of the shaft with the upper and lower halves of the bone completely separated. However, the two halves of the bones are still aligned in that the broken edges are still facing each other. In an open fracture, the femur is broken in the middle of the shaft with the

upper and lower halves of the bone completely separated. Unlike the closed fracture, in the open fracture, the two bone halves are misaligned. The lower half is turned laterally and it has protruded through the skin of the thigh. The broken ends no longer line up with each other. In a transverse fracture, the bone has a crack entirely through its width, however, the broken ends are not separated. The crack is perpendicular to the long axis of the bone. Arrows indicate that this is usually caused by compression of the bone in a superior-inferior direction. A spiral fracture travels diagonally through the diameter of the bone. In a comminuted fracture, the bone has several connecting cracks at its middle. It is possible that the bone could splinter into several small pieces at the site of the comminuted fracture. In an impacted fracture, the crack zig zags throughout the width of the bone like a lightning bolt. An arrow indicates that these are usually caused by an impact that pushes the femur up into the body. A greenstick fracture is a small crack that does not extend through the entire width of the bone. The oblique fracture shown here is travelling diagonally through the shaft of the femur at about a thirty degree angle. [\[Return to Figure 13.12\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Skeletal System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Skeletal System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Skeletal System Vocabulary

Amphiarthrosis

Joints with some movement.

Ankylosis

Abnormal condition of stiffness.

Appendicular Skeleton

Consists of all the bones in the upper and lower limbs.

Arthralgia

Painful joint(s).

Arthritis

Inflammation of the joints.

Articulations

Also known as joints. It is where bones meet bones or bones meet bones.

Autoimmune Diseases/Disorders

Autoimmune diseases are disorders in which the immune system overreacts and begins to attack itself.

Axial Skeleton

Forms the vertical, central axis of the body and includes all bones of the head, neck, chest, and back.

Chronic

A condition that lasts a long time with periods of remission and exacerbation.

Diarthrosis

Freely moveable joints.

Edema

Swelling.

Hematopoiesis

The process in which the body produces blood.

Osteoarthritis

Inflammation of bones and joints.

Osteoporosis

Abnormal condition of bones that are porous.

Synarthrosis

Joints with no movements.

Skeletal System Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Skeletal System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Joints with some movement are called _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Amphiarthrosis
 - b. Diarthrosis
 - c. Synarthrosis
2. The skeleton that consists of all the bones in the upper and lower limbs is called _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Appendicular Skeleton
 - b. Articulations
 - c. Axial Skeleton
3. A condition that lasts a long time with periods of remission and exacerbation is called _____[Blank 3].
 - a. Chronic
 - b. Edema
 - c. Hematopoiesis
4. Forward curvature of the lower lumbar spine is called _____[Blank 4].
 - a. Scoliosis
 - b. Lordosis
 - c. Kyphosis
5. Comminuted fractures are _____[Blank 5].
 - a. bones that are broken but do not protrude the skin
 - b. bones that are broken and crushed into pieces

- c. bones that are broken and pierce through the skin

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Skeletal System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Skeletal System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Skeletal System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. a) Amphiarthrosis, 2. a) Appendicular Skeleton, 3. a) Chronic, 4. b) Lordosis, 5. b) bones that are broken and crushed into pieces.

References

- Arthritis Society. (2020). Osteoarthritis. [https://arthritis.ca/about-arthritis/arthritis-types-\(a-z\)/types/osteoarthritis](https://arthritis.ca/about-arthritis/arthritis-types-(a-z)/types/osteoarthritis)
- Canadian Chiropractic Association. (n.d.) About Canadian chiropractors. <https://chiropractic.ca/about-canadian-chiropractors/>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). Orthopedic surgery profile. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/orthopedic-surgery-e.pdf>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). Rheumatology profile. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/rheumatology-e.pdf>
- Canadian Physiotherapy Association. (n.d.) About physiotherapy in Canada. Canadian Physiotherapy Association: Private Advocacy. <https://physiotherapy.ca/advocacy/about-physiotherapy-in-canada/>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2021, December 2). Arthritis basics. CDC Arthritis Program. <https://www.cdc.gov/arthritis/basics/index.html>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2022, April 7). Rheumatoid arthritis. CDC Arthritis Program. <https://www.cdc.gov/arthritis/basics/rheumatoid-arthritis.html>
- Choy, G., & MacMullan, P. (2017). Gout. Arthritis Society. [https://arthritis.ca/about-arthritis/arthritis-types-\(a-z\)/types/gout](https://arthritis.ca/about-arthritis/arthritis-types-(a-z)/types/gout)
- Cleveland Clinic. (2022, April 25). Chiropractic adjustment. Cleveland Clinic: Health Library. <https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/treatments/21033-chiropractic-adjustment>
- Cleveland Clinic. (2022, September 1). Bone fractures. Cleveland Clinic: Health Library. <https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/diseases/15241-bone-fractures>
- CrashCourse. (2015, May 18). *The skeletal system: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #19* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/embed/rDGqkMHPDqE>
- CrashCourse. (2015, May 26). *Joints: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #20* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/embed/DLxYDoN634c>
- Government of Canada. (2013). Bone cancer. Public Health Agency of Canada. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/chronic-diseases/cancer/bone-cancer.html>
- Government of Canada. (2024, February 15). Osteoporosis. Public Health Agency of Canada. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/chronic-diseases/osteoporosis.html>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2022, August 19). Arthroscopy. Mayo Clinic Patient Care and Health Information. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/tests-procedures/arthroscopy/about/pac-20392974>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2022, November 8). Osteomyelitis. Mayo Clinic Patient Care and Health Information. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/osteomyelitis/symptoms-causes/syc-20375913>

National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases. (2021, June). *What is fibromyalgia?* National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases: Health Topics. <https://www.niams.nih.gov/health-topics/fibromyalgia>

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. (2023, November 20). *Myasthenia gravis*. National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke: Health Information. <https://www.ninds.nih.gov/health-information/disorders/myasthenia-gravis>

Ontario Association of Radiologists. (2020). X-ray. <https://oarinfo.ca/patient-info/radiology-medical-services/x-ray>

Radiology Info. (2022, April 15). *Bone density scan (DEXA or DXA)*. <https://www.radiologyinfo.org/en/info/dexa>

CHAPTER 14: MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [14.1 – Introduction to the Muscular System](#)
- [14.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Muscular System](#)
- [14.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Muscular System](#)
- [14.4 – Muscular Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

14.1 - Introduction to the Muscular System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy of the muscular system and describe the main functions of the muscular system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the muscular system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of muscular system terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the muscular system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Muscular System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the muscular system.

Prefix

- **a-** (absence of, without)
- **ab-** (away from)
- **ad-** (towards)
- **dys-** (painful, difficult, abnormal, laboured)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **inter-** (between)
- **intra-** (within, in)
- **poly-** (many, much)
- **sub-** (below, under)
- **supra-** (above)
- **sym-** (together, joined)

- **syn-** (together, joined)

Combining Form

- **kinesi/o** (movement, motion)
- **my/o** (muscle)
- **myos/o** (muscle)
- **radi/o** (nerve root)
- **sarc/o** (flesh, connective tissue)
- **ten/o** (tendon)
- **tendin/o** (tendon)
- **tend/o** (tendon)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-algia** (pain)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-asthenia** (weakness)
- **-centesis** (surgical puncture to aspirate fluid)
- **-desis** (surgical fixation, fusion)
- **-ectomy** (excision, surgical removal, cutting out)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-lysis** (loosening, separating, dissolution)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-penia** (abnormal reduction)
- **-physis** (growth)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing, repairing)
- **-sarcoma** (malignant tumour)
- **-schisis** (split, fissure)
- **-scopy** (process of viewing, visual examination)
- **-sis** (abnormal condition)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)
- **-trophy** (nourishment, development)

Activity source: Muscular System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to text.

Introduction to the Muscular System

When most people think of muscles, they think of the muscles that are visible just under the skin, particularly of the limbs. The skeletal muscles are so-named because most of them move the skeleton. But there are two additional types of muscles: the smooth muscle and the cardiac muscle. The body has over 600 muscles, which contribute significantly to the body's weight.

Watch [Muscles, Part 2 – Organismal Level: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #22 \(11 min\)](#)

Muscular System Medical Terms

Muscular System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following muscular system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **rhabdomyolysis (rhabd/o/my/o/lysis)**
 - dissolution of a striated muscle
2. **bradykinesia (brady/kines/ia)**
 - condition of slow movement
3. **myorrhaphy (my/o/rrhaphy)**
 - suturing of a muscle
4. **dystrophy (dys/trophy)**
 - abnormal development
5. **tendinitis (tendin/itis)**
 - inflammation of the tendon
6. **electromyogram (electr/o/my/o/gram)**
 - record of the electricity of the muscle
7. **hyperkinesia (hyper/kines/ia)**
 - condition of excessive movement
8. **myasthenia (my/asthenia)**

- weakness of muscles, muscle weakness
- 9. **hypertrophy (hyper/trophy)**
 - excessive development
- 10. **dyskinesia (dys/kines/ia)**
 - condition of difficult movement
- 11. **tenomyoplasty (ten/o/my/o/plasty)**
 - surgical repair of tendon and muscle
- 12. **myeloma (myel/oma)**
 - tumour in the spinal cord
- 13. **myalgia (my/algia)**
 - painful muscles
- 14. **polymyositis (poly/myos/itis)**
 - inflammation of many muscles
- 15. **tenorrhaphy (ten/o/rrhaphy)**
 - suturing of a tendon
- 16. **fibromyalgia (fibr/o/my/algia)**
 - pain in the fibers of muscles

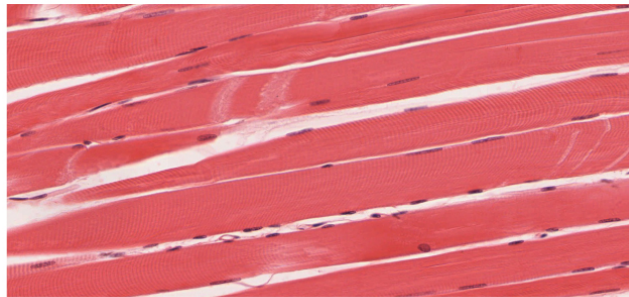
Activity source: Muscular System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

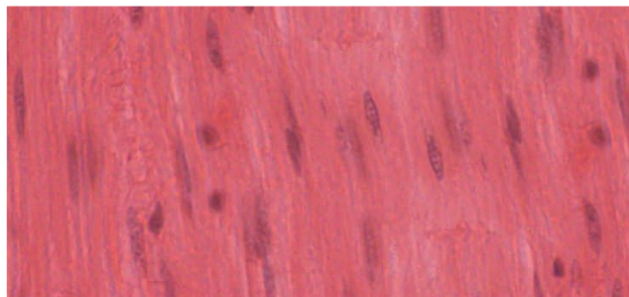
Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Muscular System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Muscular System chapter content into sub-chapters.

14.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Muscular System

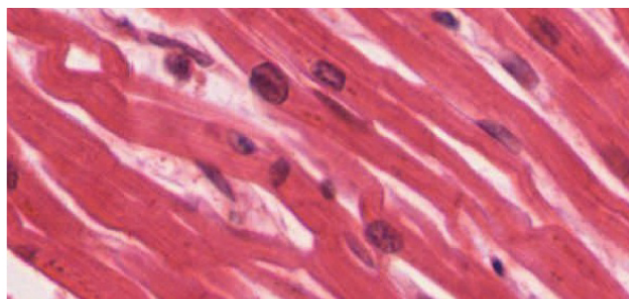
Muscle is one of the four primary tissue types of the body, and it is made up of specialized cells called fibers. The body contains three types of muscle tissue: **skeletal muscle**, **cardiac muscle**, and **smooth muscle** (see [Figure 14.1](#)). All three muscle tissues have some properties in common; they all exhibit a quality called **excitability**, as their plasma membranes can change their electrical states (from polarized to depolarized) and send an electrical wave called an action potential along the entire length of the membrane. Fascia is fibrous connective tissue that encloses muscles.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Figure 14.1 The Three Types of Muscle Tissue. The body contains three types of muscle tissue: (a) skeletal muscle, (b) smooth muscle, and (c) cardiac muscle. (Micrographs provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School © 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Three Types of Muscle Tissues

- **Skeletal:** closely associated with the skeletal system. Also known as striated muscles and are responsible for voluntary muscle movement – such as swallowing, etc.
- **Smooth:** mainly associated with the walls of the internal organs. Also known as visceral muscles and are responsible for involuntary muscle movement – such as breathing, etc.
- **Cardiac:** heart muscle or myocardium. Its appearance is similar to a skeletal muscle and is responsible for the pumping of blood. It gives the heartbeat.

Did You Know?

The gluteus maximus is the largest muscle and the heart is the hardest working muscle.

Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal muscles act not only to produce movement but also to stop movement, such as resisting gravity to maintain posture. Small, constant adjustments of the skeletal muscles are needed to hold a body upright or balanced in any position. Muscles also prevent excess movement of the bones and joints, maintaining skeletal stability and preventing skeletal structure damage or deformation.

Skeletal muscles are located throughout the body at the openings of internal tracts to control the movement of various substances. These muscles allow functions, such as swallowing, urination, and defecation, under voluntary control. Skeletal muscles also protect internal organs (particularly abdominal and pelvic organs) by acting as an external barrier or shield to external trauma and by supporting the weight of the organs.

Skeletal muscles contribute to the maintenance of **homeostasis** in the body by generating heat. This heat is very noticeable during exercise when sustained muscle movement causes body temperature to rise, and in cases of extreme cold, when shivering produces random skeletal muscle contractions to generate heat.

Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle, so named because the cells do not have striations, is present in the walls of hollow organs like the urinary bladder, uterus, stomach, intestines, in the walls of passageways, such as the arteries and veins of the circulatory system, and the tracts of the respiratory, urinary, and reproductive systems. Smooth muscle is also

present in the eyes, where it functions to change the size of the iris and alter the shape of the lens, and in the skin, where it causes hair to stand erect in response to cold temperature or fear.

Cardiac Muscle

Cardiac muscle tissue is only found in the heart. Highly coordinated contractions of cardiac muscle pump blood into the vessels of the circulatory system. Similar to skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle is striated and organized into **sarcomeres**, possessing the same banding organization as skeletal muscle (see [Figure 14.1](#)). Cardiac muscle fibers cells also are extensively branched and are connected to one another at their ends by intercalated discs. An **intercalated disc** allows the cardiac muscle cells to contract in a wave-like pattern so that the heart can work as a pump.

Concept Check

- Compare and contrast the 3 types of muscles tissues.
- Where in the body do you find each of the muscle types?

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Muscular System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Muscular System chapter content into sub-chapters.

14.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Muscular System

The main function of the muscular system is to assist with **movement**. Muscles work as **antagonistic** pairs. As one muscle contracts, the other muscle relaxes. This contraction pulls on the bones and assists with movement. Contraction is the shortening of the muscle fibers while relaxation lengthens the fibers. This sequence of relaxation and contraction is influenced by the nervous system.

Muscles also work to keep the **posture** of the body. This is done through muscle contraction, where the trunk is kept straight either when sitting or standing.

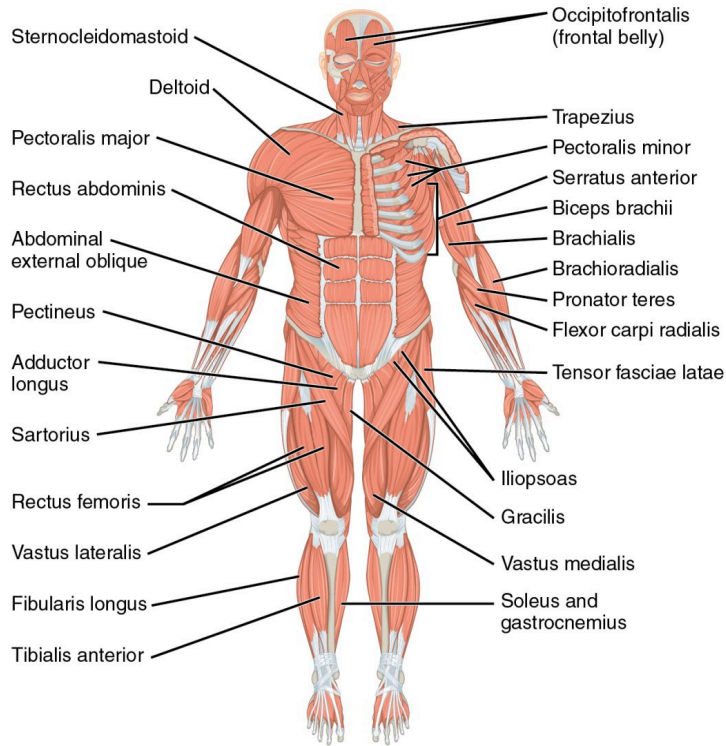
Naming of Muscles

Did You Know?

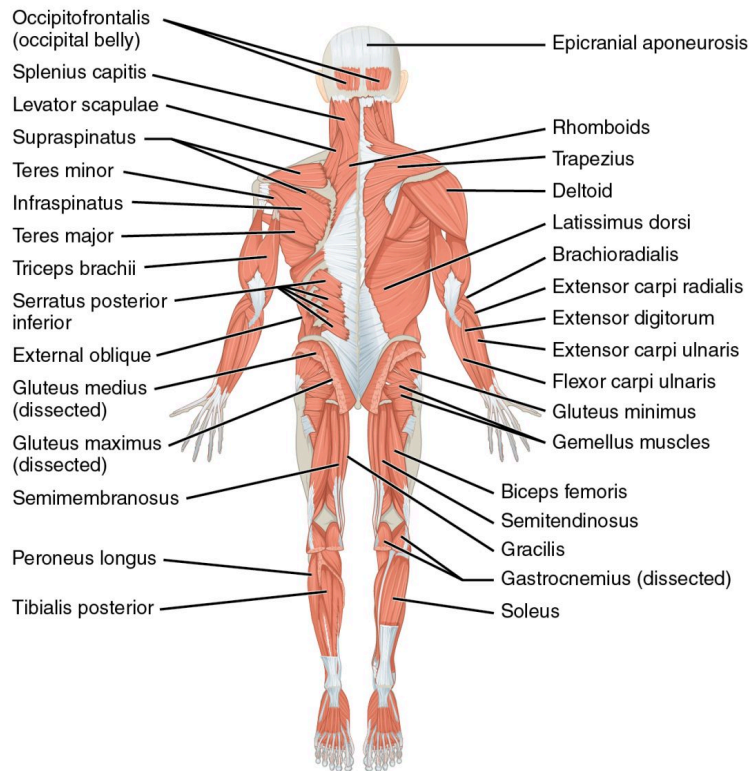
The tongue is made up of many muscles and muscles work in pairs.

There are many **nomenclatures** for naming muscles. Some of these include:

- **divisions:** biceps, triceps, quadriceps
- **size:** maximus (largest), minimus (smallest)
- **shape:** deltoid (triangular), trapezius (trapezoid)
- **action:** flexor (to flex), adductor (towards the midline of the body)



Major muscles of the body.
Right side: superficial; left side:
deep (anterior view)



Major muscles of the body.
Right side: superficial; left side:
deep (posterior view)

Figure 14.2. Overview of the Muscular System. On the anterior and posterior views of the muscular system above, superficial muscles (those at the surface) are shown on the right side of the body while deep muscles (those underneath the superficial muscles) are shown on the left half of the body. For the legs, superficial muscles are shown in the anterior view while the posterior view shows both superficial and deep muscles. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 14.2 Image description.](#)]

Table 14.1a-b. Understanding a Muscle Name from the Latin. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Table 14.1a. Understanding a Muscle Name from the Latin. Example: abductor digiti minimi. Translation: A muscle that moves the little finger or toe away. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Word	Latin Root 1	Latin Root 2	Meaning
abductor	ab = away from	duct = to move	a muscle that moves away from
digiti	digitus = digit	n/a	refers to a finger or toe
minimi	minimus = mini, tiny	n/a	little

Table 14.1b. Understanding a Muscle Name from the Latin. Example: adductor digiti minimi. Translation: A muscle that moves the little finger or toe toward. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Word	Latin Root 1	Latin Root 2	Meaning
adductor	ad = to, toward	duct = to move	a muscle that moves towards
digiti	digitus = digit	n/a	refers to a finger or toe
minimi	minimus = mini, tiny	n/a	little

Muscular System Medical Abbreviations

Muscular System Abbreviations

- **DC** (Doctor of Chiropractic)
- **DO** (Doctor of Osteopathy)
- **EMG** (Electromyogram)
- **MD** (Muscular Dystrophy)
- **MG** (myasthenia gravis)
- **Ortho** (orthopedics)

Activity source: Muscular System Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Converted to text.

Image Descriptions

Figure 14.2 image description: The top panel shows the anterior view of the human body with the major muscles labeled. Labels read (from top, head): occipitofrontalis (frontal belly), sternocleidomastoid, trapezius, deltoid, pectoralis minor, serratus anterior, pectoralis major, arm muscles: biceps brachii, brachialis, brachioradialis, pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, abdominal: rectus abdominis, abdominal external oblique, lower body: tensor fasciae latae, iliopsoas, pectineus, adductor longus, sartorius, gracilis, rectus femoris, vastus lateralis, vastus medialis, fibularis longus, tibialis anterior. The bottom panel shows the posterior view of the human body with the major muscles labeled. Labels read (from top, head, left side): epicranial aponeurosis, occipitofrontalis, splenius capitis, levator scapulae, rhombus, trapezius, supraspinatus, teras minor, infraspinatus, teres major, triceps brachii, seratus posterior inferior, external oblique, lower body: gluteus medius, gluteus maximus, semimebranosus, peroneus longus, tibialis posterior, (right side, from top) trapezius, deltpid, latissimus dorsi, arm: brachioradialis, extensor carpi radialis, extensor digitorum, extensor carpi ulnaris, flexor carpi ulnaris, lower body: gluteus minimus, gemellus muscles, biceps femoris, semitendinosus, gracilis, gastrocnemius, soleus. [\[Return to Figure 14.2\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Muscular System](#)” in [Building a Medical](#)

[Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Muscular System chapter content into sub-chapters.

14.4 - Muscular Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Common Diseases and Disorders

Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy

Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy (DMD) is caused by the inability of the body to make dystrophin (a muscle protein). This causes the muscles to become weak as the person ages. This disease primarily affects boys, and signs and symptoms typically present before the age of five. Signs and symptoms may include frequent falls and trouble keeping up with peers. Since all muscles are affected, the person will eventually require a wheelchair and assistance with breathing (Muscular Dystrophy Canada, 2020). To learn more, please visit [Muscular Dystrophy Canada's neuromuscular disorders web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Cerebral Palsy

Cerebral Palsy (CP) is caused by an interruption to the normal development of a person's brain, leading to weakness in muscles. Depending on the area of the brain that is affected, signs and symptoms will vary in the type and severity between individuals. Balance and coordination are often challenging due to the inability to control muscles (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2024; Ontario Federation for Cerebral Palsy, 2018). To learn more about Cerebral Palsy, please visit the [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention \[New Tab\]](#).

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

Carpal tunnel syndrome may present with pain, numbness or weakness in the hand(s) caused by pressure on the median nerve. Some causes for this pressure are work-related, such as keyboarding with improper body mechanics, illnesses such as arthritis, and even pregnancy (Cleveland Clinic, 2024). To learn more, visit [Cleveland Clinic's Carpal Tunnel web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Paralysis

Paralysis is the loss of strength and control of the muscles in parts of the body. Paralysis can be localized, where it affects specific areas such as the face, feet, vocal cords, etc., or it can be generalized, where it affects a larger area of the body. There are various types of generalized paralysis, including:

- **Paresis:** a partial paralysis wherein there is still some control of the muscles
- **Paraplegia:** paralysis that affects both legs and lower part of the body
- **Quadriplegia:** affects both arms, both legs and sometimes from the neck down
- **Hemiplegia:** affects one side of the body. For example, the arm and leg on the same side of the body (Cleveland Clinic, 2021)

To learn more about paralysis, please visit the Cleveland Clinic's [Paralysis information web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Sprain and Strain

A **sprain** is an injury to a joint whereby a ligament is stretched or torn.

A **strain** is an injury to a muscle whereby a tendon is stretched or torn.

Diagnostic Procedures

Electromyography (EMG) is a procedure that assesses the function of nerve cells that control muscles. Electrodes, either attached to the skin or inserted into the muscle, allow for the recording of electrical impulses. EMG can indicate functional problems with the peripheral nerves, muscles, or with the signals between the nerves and the muscles. This is just one test in a series of tests that assist in the diagnosis of neuromuscular disorders (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2019). To learn more, please visit the [Mayo Clinic's Electromyography web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) is a test that uses radio frequency waves and a magnetic field to produce clear images that aid in the diagnosis of a wide range of conditions (London Health Sciences Centre, 2020). Leung (2017) notes that there has been increased clinical use of MRI for the treatment and monitoring of muscular disorders due to the high-quality MRI images that distinguish skeletal muscles from fat (para. 4).

Range of Motion Testing is a diagnostic procedure used to determine the amount of movement around a specific joint.

Medical Terminology in Context

Musculoskeletal System – Referral Letter

Musculoskeletal System – Referral Letter (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the referral letter:

- CTS
- tingling
- numbness
- osteoarthritis
- clumsiness
- metacarpal
- atrophy
- arthrodesis
- flexion
- tenorrhaphy
- median
- ligament

PATIENT NAME: Mrs. Anna JONES

AGE: 65

SEX: Female

DOB: June 29

REASON FOR REFERRAL: Evaluation and consideration for surgery for treating carpal tunnel syndrome.

Dear Dr. Porter

I am referring Mrs. Jones for evaluation and consideration for surgery for treating _____[Blank 1]. Mrs. Jones is 65 years old. She has moved to this area 2 years ago and I have been her primary care physician since then. Recently she has been complaining of _____[Blank 2], tingling, burning, and pain in her right hand, primarily in the thumb, index, and middle fingers. Occasionally the pain and _____[Blank 3] travel up the forearm toward her shoulder. The patient reports that the pain and unusual sensations have started gradually and worsened over the past couple of years.

The patient has worked as a data entry clerk at a pharmaceutical company for 35 years. Her work involved sitting at her desk and typing on a computer for an average of 7 hours on each workday. She is retired now. The patient reports that during the past few months she has also felt weakness and _____[Blank 4] in her hand, and this has made her everyday life difficult. She can tell that her grip is not as strong as before since she frequently drops things. Now she is finding the simple tasks such as buttoning her clothes, cutting vegetables, and brushing her teeth challenging. The x-ray of the right hand and wrist shows clear signs of _____[Blank 5] and osteoporosis of carpal and _____[Blank 6] bones. On visual examination there is no muscle . The wrist has limited _____[Blank 7] and extension range of motion.

It is important to note that the patient had been in a car accident in her teenage years and had suffered from a compact fracture of her left wrist bones. Multiple surgeries, including arthroplasty and _____[Blank 8], were done to restore the functionality of the left wrist and hand. Eventually, her orthopedic surgeon performed a subtotal _____[Blank 9] of the wrist to provide a stable and pain-free joint with a limited useful range of motion.

Based on the aforementioned observations and findings I have determined that Mrs. Jones is a fit

candidate for CTS surgery. A proper cut in the transverse carpal _____[Blank 10] would release the pressure off the _____[Blank 11] nerve and relieve the symptoms.

Thank you for seeing Mrs. Jones. Please do not hesitate to contact me directly with any questions or comments you may have concerning her care. Also, please keep me updated on her progress and kindly refer her back to my care once her condition resolves.

Trevor Sharpe, MD, Family Medicine

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Musculoskeletal System – Referral Letter by Saeedeh Akram and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties Related to Muscular System

Orthopedic Surgeon

Orthopedic Surgeons are medical doctors who complete an additional 5-years of specialized training in the prevention, diagnosis, treatment and surgery of disorders and diseases related to the musculoskeletal systems (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). For more details, please visit the [Canadian Medical Association's page on Orthopedic Surgery \[PDF\]](#).

Neurologist

Neurologists are medical doctors who complete an additional 5 years of specialized training in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of disorders and conditions related to the brain, spinal cord, nerves and muscles (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). For more details, visit the [Canadian Medical Association's page on Neurology profile \[PDF\]](#).

Kinesiologist

Kinesiologists are regulated health-care professionals with a four-year degree in kinesiology or related discipline. In Ontario, a kinesiologist must be registered and in good standing with the College of Kinesiologists of Ontario. Kinesiologists work in a variety of settings that assist people with pain management, injury prevention, and health promotion through biomechanics (College of Kinesiologists of Ontario, n.d.). To learn more, visit [the College of Kinesiologists of Ontario's website \[New Tab\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Muscular System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Muscular System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. CTS, 2. numbness, 3. tingling, 4. clumsiness, 5. osteoarthritis, 6. metacarpal, 7. atrophy, 8. tenorrhaphy, 9. arthrodesis, 10. ligament, 11. median

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Muscular System Vocabulary

Antagonistic

In opposition to each other.

Cardiac muscle

The heart muscle also known as the myocardium. Its appearance is similar to skeletal muscle. It pumps blood and gives the heartbeat.

Electromyography (EMG)

Measures muscle response or electrical activity in response to a nerve's stimulation of the muscle.

Fibromyalgia

Pain in the fibrous tissues of muscles.

Hemostasis

Biological process that results in stable equilibrium.

Hemiplegia

Paralysis that affects one side of the body.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

Radiofrequency waves and a strong magnetic field provide clear and detailed pictures of internal organs and tissues.

Myasthenia Gravis

Grave or serious muscle weakness.

Paraplegia

Paralysis that affects both legs and lower part of the body.

Paresis

Partial paralysis wherein there is still some control of the muscles.

Quadriplegia

Affects both arms, both legs and sometimes from the neck down.

Skeletal muscle

Also known as striated muscles. Skeletal muscles are responsible for voluntary muscle movement.

Smooth muscle

Also known as visceral muscles. Smooth muscle is mainly associated with the walls of internal organs. Smooth muscles are responsible for involuntary muscle movement.

Sprain

Injury to a joint whereby a ligament is stretched or torn.

Strain

Injury to a muscle whereby a tendon is stretched or torn.

Muscular System Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Muscular System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Muscle that is associated with the walls of internal organs and is responsible for involuntary muscle movement is called _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Skeletal muscle
 - b. Smooth muscle
 - c. Cardiac muscle
2. Paralysis that effects one side of the body is called_____ [Blank 2].
 - a. paraplegia
 - b. paresis
 - c. hemiplegia
3. An injury to a joint whereby a ligament is stretched or torn is called _____[Blank 3].
 - a. a sprain
 - b. a strain
 - c. fibromyalgia
4. Myasthenia Gravis is _____[Blank 4].
 - a. pain in the fibrous tissues of muscles.
 - b. grave or serious muscle weakness.
 - c. partial paralysis wherein there is still some control of the muscles.
5. Skeletal muscle is responsible for _____[Blank 5].

- a. voluntary muscle movement.
- b. pumping blood.
- c. involuntary muscle movement.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Muscular System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY-4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Muscular System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Muscular System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. Smooth muscle, 2. hemiplegia, 3. a sprain, 4. grave or serious muscle weakness, 5.voluntary muscle movement

References

- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Neurology profile*. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/neurology-e.pdf>
- Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Orthopedic surgery profile*. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/orthopedic-surgery-e.pdf>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2024, February 28). *What is cerebral palsy?* CDC. <https://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/cp/facts.html>
- Cleveland Clinic. (2021, June 10). *Paralysis*. Cleveland Clinic: Health Library. <https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/diseases/15345-paralysis>
- Cleveland Clinic. (2024, January 12). *Carpal tunnel syndrome*. Cleveland Clinic: Health Library. <https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/diseases/4005-carpal-tunnel-syndrome>
- College of Kinesiologists of Ontario. (n.d.). *About kinesiology*. <https://www.coko.ca/patients-and-clients/about-kinesiology/>
- CrashCourse. (2015, July 15). *Muscles, part 2 – Organismal level: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #22* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/I80Xx7pA9hQ>
- Leung, J. (2016, November 25). *Magnetic resonance imaging patterns of muscle involvement in genetic muscle diseases: a systematic review*. *Journal of Neurology*, 264(7), 1320-1333. <https://dx.doi.org/10.1007%2Fs00415-016-8350-6>
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2019, May 21). *Electromyography (EMG)*. Mayo Clinic Patient Care and Information. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/tests-procedures/emg/about/pac-20393913>
- Muscular Dystrophy Canada. (2020). *About Neuromuscular disorders: Duchenne muscular dystrophy*. <https://muscle.ca/discover-md/types-of-neuromuscular-disorders/>
- Ontario Federation for Cerebral Palsy. (2018). *About cerebral palsy*. OFCP. <https://www.ofcp.ca/about-cerebral-palsy>

CHAPTER 15: SENSORY SYSTEMS

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [15.1 – Introduction to the Sensory Systems](#)
- [15.2 – Anatomy & Physiology of the Sensory System](#)
- [15.3 – Sensory Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

15.1 - Introduction to the Sensory Systems

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy of the sensory systems and describe the main functions of the sensory systems
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the sensory systems
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of sensory systems terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the sensory systems and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures related to the sensory systems

Sensory Systems Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the sensory systems.

Prefix

- **bi-** (two)
- **bin-** (two)
- **a-** (absence of, without, no, not, negates meaning)
- **an-** (absence of, without, no, not negates meaning)
- **endo-** (within, in)

Combining Form

- **audi/o** (hearing)
- **aur/o** (ear)
- **aur/i** (ear)
- **blephar/o** (eyelid)

- **cochle/o** (cochlea)
- **conjunctiv/o** (conjunctiva)
- **cor/o** (pupil)
- **corne/o** (cornea)
- **core/o** (pupil)
- **cry/o** (cold)
- **dacry/o** (tear, tear duct)
- **dipl/o** (two, double)
- **ir/o** (iris)
- **irid/o** (iris)
- **is/o** (equal)
- **kerat/o** (cornea)
- **labyrith/o** (labyrinth, inner ear)
- **lacrim/o** (tear, tear duct)
- **mastoid/o** (mastoid bone)
- **myring/o** (tympanic membrane, eardrum)
- **ocul/o** (eye)
- **ophthalm/o** (eye)
- **opt/o** (vision)
- **ot/o** (ear)
- **phac/o** (lens)
- **phak/o** (lens)
- **phot/o** (light)
- **pupill/o** (pupil)
- **retin/o** (retina)
- **scler/o** (sclera)
- **staped/o** (stapes, middle ear)
- **ton/o** (tension, pressure)
- **tympan/o** (tympanic membrane, middle ear)
- **vestibul/o** (vestibule)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-algia** (pain)
- **-ar** (pertaining to)
- **-ary** (pertaining to)
- **-ectomy** (excision or surgical removal)
- **-eal** (pertaining to)
- **-gram** (record, radiographic image)
- **-graphy** (process of recording)
- **-ia** (condition of, diseased or abnormal state)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)

- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist or physician who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-malacia** (softening)
- **-meter** (instrument used to measure)
- **-metry** (process of measuring)
- **-oma** (tumour, swelling)
- **-opia** (vision as it relates to condition)
- **-plegia** (paralysis)
- **-ptosis** (prolapse, drooping, sagging)
- **-stomy** (creation of artificial opening)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-pexy** (surgical fixation)
- **-phobia** (abnormal fear, aversion to specific things)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-plegia** (paralysis)
- **-rrhea** (flow, discharge)
- **-sclerosis** (hardening)
- **-scope** (instrument used to view)
- **-scopy** (process of viewing)
- **-sis** (abnormal condition)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)

Activity source: Sensory Systems Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Introduction to the Sensory Systems

Ask anyone what the senses are, and they are likely to list the five major senses as **taste, smell, touch, hearing, and sight**. However, these are not all of the senses. The most obvious omission from this list is **balance**. Touch can be further subdivided into pressure, vibration, stretch, and hair follicle position on the basis of the type of **mechanoreceptors** that perceive these touch sensations. Other overlooked senses include temperature perception by **thermoreceptors** and pain perception by **nociceptors**.

Within the realm of physiology, senses can be classified as either general or special. A **general sense** is one that is distributed throughout the body and has receptor cells within the structures of other organs. Mechanoreceptors in the skin, muscles, or the walls of blood vessels are examples of this type. General senses often contribute to the sense of touch, as described above, or to **proprioception** and **kinesthesia**, or to a **visceral** sense, which is most important to autonomic functions. A **special sense** is one that has a specific organ devoted to it, namely the eye, inner ear, tongue, or nose.

Gustation (Taste) and Olfaction (Smell)

Watch [Taste & Smell: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #16 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Sensory Systems Medical Terms

Sensory Systems Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following sensory system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **anisocoria (an-ī-sō-KŌR-ē-ă)**
 - condition of absence of equal pupil (size)
2. **aphakia (ă-FĀ-kē-ă)**
 - condition of no lens
3. **audiogram (OD-ē-ō-gram)**
 - graphic record (radiographic image) of hearing
4. **audiologist (od-ē-OL-ŏ-jĭst)**
 - specialist who studies and treats the hearing
5. **audiology (od-ē-OL-ŏ-jē)**
 - study of the hearing
6. **audiometer (od-ē-OM-ēt-ěr)**
 - instrument used to measure hearing
7. **audiometry (od-ē-OM-ě-trē)**
 - measuring hearing
8. **aural (OR-ăl)**
 - pertaining to the ear
9. **binocular (bĭn-ŌK-ŭ-lăr)**
 - pertaining to both eyes

10. **blepharitis (blĕf-ăr-Ī-tīs)**
 - inflammation of the eyelid
11. **blepharoplasty (BLĕF-ă-rō-plăs-tĕ)**
 - surgical repair of the eyelid
12. **blepharoptosis (BLĕF-ă-rōp-TŌ-sīs)**
 - condition of drooping of the eyelid
13. **cochlear (KOK-lĕ-ăr)**
 - pertaining to the cochlea
14. **cochlear implant (KOK-lĕ-ă IM-plant)**
 - pertaining to the cochlear implant
15. **conjunctivitis (kŏn-jŭnk-tĭ-VĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the conjunctiva
16. **corneal (KOR-nĕ-ă)**
 - pertaining to the cornea
17. **cryoretinopexy (krĭ-ŏ-RET-in-ŏ-pek-sĕ)**
 - surgical fixation of the retina using extreme cold
18. **dacrocystitis (dak-rĕ-ŏ-sis-TĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the tear (lacrimal) sac
19. **dacryocystorhinostomy (dak-rĕ-ŏ-sis-tŏ-rĭ-NOS-tŏ-mĕ)**
 - creation of an artificial opening between the lacrimal sac and the nose
20. **diplopia (dip-LŌ-pĕ-ă)**
 - condition of double vision
21. **electrocochleography (ĕ-lek-trŏ-kok-lĕ-OG-ră-fĕ)**
 - process of recording the electrical activity in the cochlea
22. **endophthalmitis (ĕn-dŏf-thăl-MĪ-tīs)**
 - inflammation within the eye
23. **intraocular (in-tră-OK-yŭ-lăr)**

- pertaining to within the eye
- 24. **iridectomy (ir-ĭ-DEK-tō-mē)**
 - excision of (part of) the iris
- 25. **iridoplegia (ir-ĭ-dō-PLĒ-j(ē)-ă, ĭr)**
 - paralysis of the iris
- 26. **iridotomy (ĭr-ĭ-DŌT-ō-mē)**
 - incision into the iris
- 27. **iritis (ĭ-RĪT-ĭs)**
 - inflammation of the iris
- 28. **isocoria (ĭ-sō-KŌ-rē-ă)**
 - condition of equal pupils
- 29. **keratitis (ker-ă-TĪT-ĭs)**
 - inflammation of the cornea
- 30. **keratomalacia (kĕr-ă-tō-mă-LĀ-shē-ă)**
 - condition of softening of the cornea
- 31. **keratometer (kĕr-ă-TŌM-ĕ-ter)**
 - instrument used to measure (the curvature) of the eye
- 32. **keratoplasty (KER-ăt-ō-plas-tē)**
 - surgical repair of the cornea
- 33. **labyrinthectomy (lab-ĭ-rin-THEK-tō-mē)**
 - excision of the inner ear (labyrinth)
- 34. **labyrinthitis (lab-ĭ-rin-THĪT-ĭs)**
 - inflammation of the inner ear (labyrinth)
- 35. **lacrimal (LAK-rĭ-măl)**
 - pertaining to the tear duct
- 36. **leukocoria (loo-kō-KŌR-ē-ă)**
 - condition of white pupil

37. **mastoidectomy (mās-tōy-d-ĚK-tō-mē)**
 - excision of the mastoid bone
38. **mastoiditis (mas-toyd-ĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the mastoid bone
39. **mastoidotomy (mās-toyd-ŎT-ō-mē)**
 - incision into the mastoid bone
40. **myringitis (mĭr-ĭn-JĪ-tĭs)**
 - inflammation of the tympanic membrane
41. **myringoplasty (mĭr-ĪN-gō-plāst-ē)**
 - surgical repair of the tympanic membrane
42. **myringotomy (mĭr-ĭn-GŎT-ō-mē)**
 - incision into the tympanic membrane
43. **nasolacrimal (nā-zō-LAK-rĭ-māl)**
 - pertaining to the nose and the tear duct
44. **nasopharyngeal (nā-zō-FAR-in-gēl)**
 - pertaining to the nose and pharynx (throat)
45. **oculomycosis (ök-ū-lō-mĭ-KŎ-sĭs)**
 - abnormal condition of the eye caused by a fungus
46. **ophthalmalgia (ōf-thāl-MĀL-jē-ă)**
 - condition of pain in the eye
47. **ophthalmic (of-THAL-mik)**
 - pertaining to the eye
48. **ophthalmologist (ōf-thāl-MŎL-ō-jĭst)**
 - specialist of the eye
49. **ophthalmology (Ophth) (ōf-thāl-MŎL-ō-jē)**
 - study of the eye
50. **ophthalmopathy (ōf-thāl-MŎP-ă-thē)**

- disease of the eye
- 51. **ophthalmoplegia (of-thal-mō-PLĒ-j(ē-)-ă)**
 - paralysis of the eye
- 52. **ophthalmoscope (of-THAL-mō-skōp)**
 - instrument used to view the eye
- 53. **ophthalmoscopy (of-thal-MOS-kō-pē)**
 - process of viewing the eye
- 54. **optic (OP-tik)**
 - pertaining to vision
- 55. **optometry (op-TOM-ě-trē)**
 - measuring vision
- 56. **otalgia (ō-TĀL-jē-ă)**
 - condition of pain in the ear
- 57. **otologist (ō-TŌL-ō-jīst)**
 - specialist who studies and treats disorders and diseases of the ear
- 58. **otology (ō-TŌL-ō-jē)**
 - study of the ear
- 59. **otomastoiditis (ō-tō-mas-toyd-ĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the ear and mastoid bone
- 60. **otomycosis (ō-tō-mī-KŌ-sīs)**
 - abnormal condition of fungus in the ear
- 61. **otopyorrhea (ō-tō-pī-ō-RĒ-ă)**
 - discharge of pus from the ear
- 62. **otorhinolaryngologist (ō-tō-RĪ-nō-lăr-ĭn-GŌL-ō-jīst)**
 - specialist or physician who studies and treats diseases and disorders of the ears,
- 63. **otorrhea (ō-tō-RĒ-ă)**
 - discharge from the ear

64. **otosclerosis** (ō-tō-sklē-RŌ-sīs)
 - condition of hardening of the ear
65. **otoscope**(Ō-tō-skōp)
 - instrument used to view the ear
66. **otoscopy** (ō-TŌS-kō-pē)
 - process of viewing the ear
67. **phacomalacia** (fāk-ō-mă-LĀ-shē-ă)
 - condition of softening of the lens
68. **photophobia** (fō-tō-FŌ-bē-ă)
 - condition of sensitivity to light
69. **pseudophakia** (SOOD-ō-FĀ-kē-a)
 - condition of fake lens
70. **pupillary** (PŪ-pī-lēr-ē)
 - pertaining to pupil
71. **pupillometer** (pū-pīl-ŌM-ě-tēr)
 - instrument used to measure the pupil
72. **pupilloscope** (pū-pīl-ŌS-kōp)
 - instrument used to view the pupil
73. **retinal** (RĚT-ī-năl)
 - pertaining to the retina
74. **retinoblastoma** (ret-īn-ō-blas-TŌ-mă)
 - tumour arising from a developing retinal cell
75. **retinopathy** (ret-īn-OP-ă-thē)
 - disease of the retina
76. **retinoscopy** (ret-īn-OS-kō-pē)
 - process of viewing the retina
77. **sclerokeratitis** (sklēr-ō-kēr-ă-TĪ-tīs)

- inflammation of the sclera and cornea
- 78. **scleromalacia (sklĕ-rō-mā-LĀ-sĕ-ă)**
 - softening of the sclera
- 79. **sclerotomy (sklĕ-ROT-ō-mĕ)**
 - incision into the sclera
- 80. **stapedectomy (stā-pĕ-DEK-tō-mĕ)**
 - excision of the stapes
- 81. **tonometer (tō-NOM-ĕt-ĕr)**
 - instrument used to measure pressure (within the eye)
- 82. **tonometry (tō-NOM-ĕ-trĕ)**
 - process of measuring pressure
- 83. **tympanometer (tĭm-pă-NŌM-ĕ-tĕr)**
 - instrument used to measure the middle ear
- 84. **tympanometry (tĭm-pă-NŌM-ĕ-trĕ)**
 - measurement of the tympanic membrane
- 85. **tympanoplasty (tĭm-păn-ō-PLĀS-tĕ)**
 - membranesurgical repair of the tympanic
- 86. **vestibular (ves-TIB-yŭ-lăr)**
 - pertaining to the vestibule
- 87. **vestibulocochlear (ves-tĭ-bŭl-ō-KŌ-klĕ-ar)**
 - vestibul/o/cochle/ar
 - pertaining to the vestibule and cochlea
- 88. **xerophthalmia (zer-of-THAL-mĕ-ă)**
 - xer/ophthalm/ia
 - * Rebel, does not follow the rules*
 - condition of dry eye

Activity source: Sensory Systems Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Gustation (Taste)

Gustation is the special sense associated with the tongue. The surface of the tongue, along with the rest of the oral cavity, is lined by a stratified squamous epithelium. Raised bumps called papillae contain the structures for gustatory transduction. There are **four types of papillae** based on their appearance:

1. **circumvallate**
2. **foliate**
3. **filiform**
4. **fungiform**

Within the structure of the papillae are taste buds that contain specialized gustatory receptor cells for the transduction of taste stimuli. These receptor cells are sensitive to the chemicals contained within foods that are ingested, and they release **neurotransmitters** based on the amount of the chemical in the food. Neurotransmitters from the gustatory cells can activate sensory neurons in the facial, **glossopharyngeal**, and vagus cranial nerves.

Only a few recognized **submodalities** exist within the sense of taste, or gustation. Until recently, only four tastes were recognized: **sweet, salty, sour, and bitter**. Research at the turn of the 20th century led to the recognition of the fifth taste, **umami**, during the mid-1980s. Recent research has suggested that there may also be a sixth taste for **fats** or lipids.

Olfaction (Smell)

Like taste, **olfaction** is also responsive to chemical stimuli. The olfactory receptor neurons are located in a small region within the superior nasal cavity. The nasal epithelium, including the olfactory cells, can be harmed by airborne toxic chemicals. Scent receptor messages travel to the cerebrum, specifically to the primary olfactory cortex that is located in the inferior and medial areas of the temporal lobe and additionally to the hypothalamus, where smells become associated with long-term memory and emotional response.

Did You Know?

The human body can detect over 10,000 odours.

Concept Check

- Which parts of the brain are active with recording and associating scents with memories and emotions?
- Recall and list the four types of papillae (taste buds) found on the tongue.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Sensory Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Sensory Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

15.2 - Anatomy & Physiology of the Sensory System

Audition (Hearing), Equilibrium (Balance), and Somatosensation (Touch)

Watch [Hearing & Balance: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #17 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Audition (Hearing)

Hearing, or **audition**, is the **transduction** of sound waves into a neural signal that is made possible by the structures of the ear (see [Figure 15.1](#)).

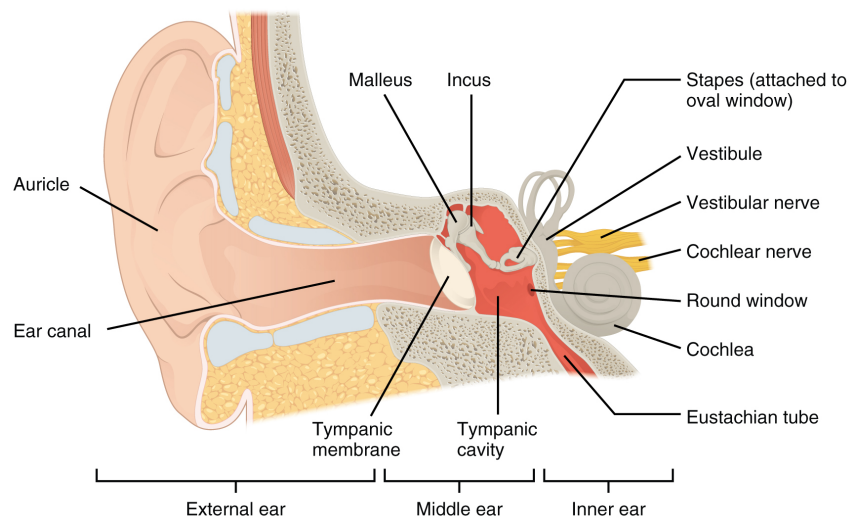


Figure 15.1 Structures of the Ear. The external ear contains the auricle, ear canal, and tympanic membrane. The middle ear contains the ossicles and is connected to the pharynx by the Eustachian tube. The inner ear contains the cochlea and vestibule, which are responsible for audition and equilibrium, respectively. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 15.1 Image description.](#)]

- The **external ear** consists of the auricle, sometimes referred to as the pinna, ear canal, and tympanic membrane. The C-shaped curves of the auricle direct sound waves toward the **auditory canal**. The canal enters the skull through the external auditory meatus of the **temporal bone**. At the end of the auditory canal is the **tympanic membrane**, which vibrates after it is struck by sound waves.

- The **middle ear** consists of the ossicles, oval window, and tympanic membrane. The three **ossicles** are the malleus, incus, and stapes, which are Latin names that roughly translate to hammer, anvil, and stirrup. The malleus is attached to the tympanic membrane and articulates with the incus. The incus, in turn, articulates with the stapes. The stapes is then attached to the inner ear, where the sound waves will be transduced into a neural signal. Vibrations of the ossicles travel through the **oval window**, moving fluid in a wave-like motion. The frequency of the fluid waves match the frequencies of the sound waves. The middle ear is connected to the pharynx through the Eustachian tube, which helps equilibrate air pressure across the **tympanic membrane**. The tube is normally closed but will pop open when the muscles of the pharynx contract during swallowing or yawning.
- The **inner ear** is often described as a **bony labyrinth**, as it is composed of a series of canals embedded within the temporal bone. It consists of the **cochlea which is responsible for hearing** and the **vestibule that is responsible for balance**. The neural signals from these two regions are relayed to the brain stem through separate fiber bundles. However, these two distinct bundles travel together from the inner ear to the brain stem as the **vestibulocochlear** nerve. Sound is transduced into neural signals within the cochlear region of the inner ear, which contains the sensory neurons of the spiral ganglia. These ganglia are located within the spiral-shaped cochlea of the inner ear. The cochlea is attached to the stapes through the oval window.

The image below is a cross-sectional view of the cochlea that shows the scala vestibuli and scala tympani run along both sides of the cochlear duct (see [Figure 15.2](#)). The cochlear duct contains several organs of Corti, which transduce the wave motion of the two scala into neural signals. The organs of Corti lie on top of the basilar membrane, which is the side of the cochlear duct located between the organs of Corti and the scala tympani. As the fluid waves move through the scala vestibuli and scala tympani, the basilar membrane moves at a specific spot, depending on the frequency of the waves. Higher frequency waves move the region of the basilar membrane that is close to the base of the cochlea. Lower frequency waves move the region of the basilar membrane that is near the tip of the cochlea.

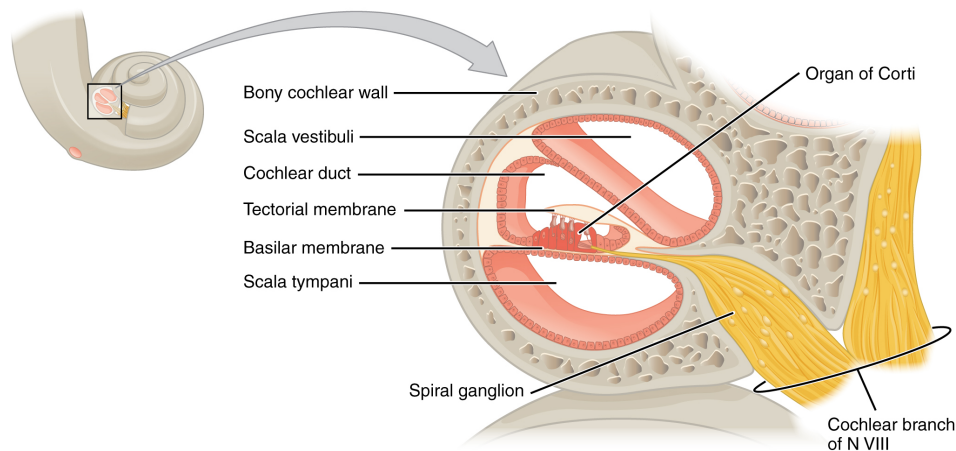


Figure 15.2 Cross Section of the Cochlea. The three major spaces within the cochlea are highlighted. The scala tympani and scala vestibuli lie on either side of the cochlear duct. The organ of Corti, containing the mechanoreceptor hair cells, is adjacent to the scala tympani, where it sits atop the basilar membrane. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 15.2 Image description](#).]

The cochlea encodes auditory stimuli for frequencies between 20 and 20,000 Hz, which is the range of sound that human ears can detect. The unit of Hertz measures the frequency of sound waves in terms of cycles produced per second. Frequencies as low as 20 Hz are detected by hair cells at the apex, or tip, of the cochlea. Frequencies in the higher ranges of 20 KHz are encoded by hair cells at the base of the cochlea, close to the round and oval windows. Most auditory stimuli contain a mixture of sounds at a variety of frequencies and intensities (represented by the amplitude of the sound wave). The hair cells along the length of the cochlear duct, which are each sensitive to a particular frequency, allow the cochlea to separate auditory stimuli by frequency, just as a prism separates visible light into its component colours.

Did You Know?

Sound travels at speed of 1,130 feet per second.

Equilibrium (Balance)

Along with audition, the **inner ear** is responsible for **encoding** information about **equilibrium**. The cells that sense head position, head movement, and body motion are located within the vestibule of the inner ear. Head position is sensed by otolith organs, whereas head movement is sensed by the semicircular canals (see [Figure 15.3](#)). The neural signals generated in the vestibular ganglion are transmitted through the vestibulocochlear nerve to the brain stem and cerebellum.

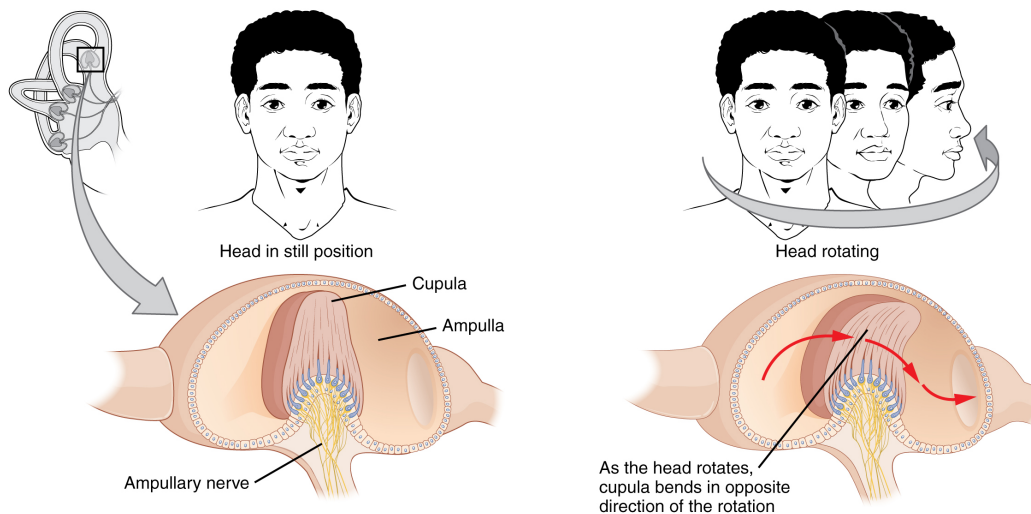


Figure 15.3 Rotational Coding by Semicircular Canals. Rotational movement of the head is encoded by the hair cells in the base of the semicircular canals. As one of the canals moves in an arc with the head, the internal fluid moves in the opposite direction, causing the cupula and stereocilia to bend. The movement of two canals within a plane results in information about the direction in which the head is moving, and activation of all six canals can give a very precise indication of head movement in three dimensions. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [Fig. 15.3 Image description.]

Somatosensation (Touch)

Somatosensation is considered a general sense, as opposed to the special senses discussed in this section. Somatosensation is the group of **sensory modalities** that are associated with touch, **proprioception**, and **interoception**. These modalities include pressure, vibration, light touch, tickle, itch, temperature, pain, proprioception, and kinesthesia. This means that its receptors are not associated with a specialized organ, but are instead spread throughout the body in a variety of organs. Many of the somatosensory receptors are located in the skin, but receptors are also found in muscles, tendons, joint capsules, ligaments, and in the walls of visceral organs.

Did You Know?

With the aging process, humans lose sensory receptors cells including cells which detect pain and temperature changes.

The two types of somatosensory signals that are transduced by free nerve endings are pain and temperature. Temperature receptors are stimulated when local temperatures differ from body temperature. Some

thermoreceptors are sensitive to just cold and others to just heat. **Nociception** is the sensation of potentially damaging stimuli. Mechanical, chemical, or thermal stimuli beyond a set threshold will elicit painful sensations. Stressed or damaged tissues release chemicals that activate receptor proteins in the nociceptors.

For example, the sensation of heat associated with spicy foods involves capsaicin, the active molecule in hot peppers. Capsaicin molecules bind to a transmembrane ion channel in nociceptors that is sensitive to temperatures above 37°C. The dynamics of capsaicin binding with this transmembrane ion channel is unusual because the molecule remains bound for a long time. Because of this, it will decrease the ability of other stimuli to elicit pain sensations through the activated nociceptor. For this reason, capsaicin can be used as a topical analgesic, such as in products such as Icy Hot™.

Concept Check

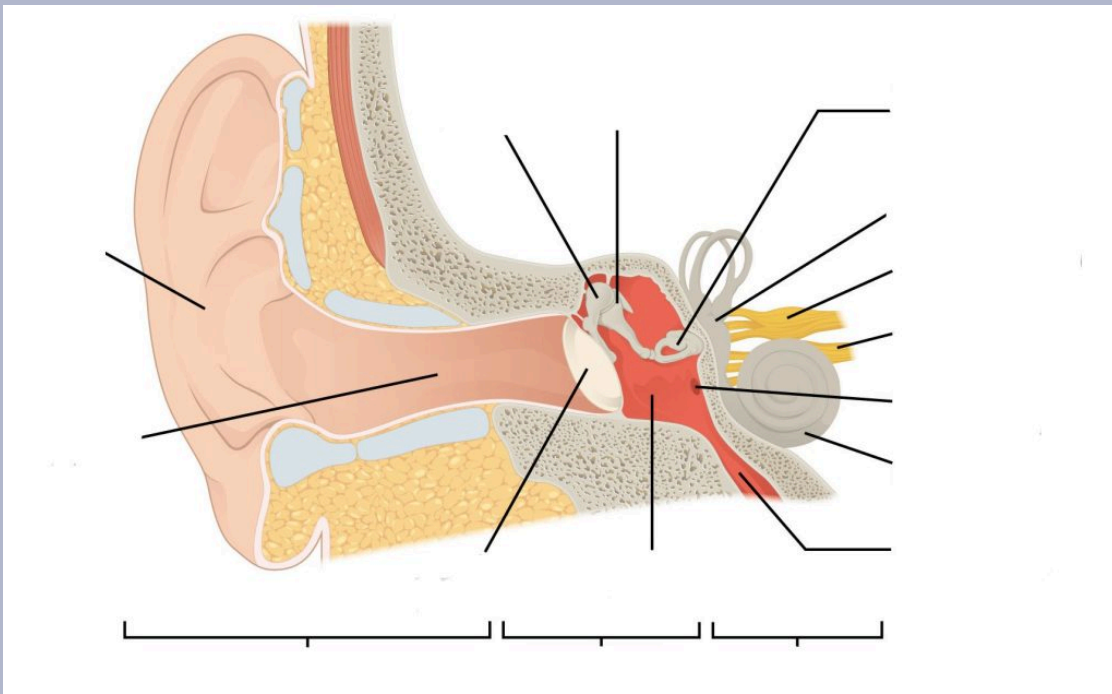
- What structure exists within the ear to assist with maintaining **equilibrium**?
- What are the medical terms used to describe the sense of taste and touch?

Sensory System Ear Anatomy

Sensory System Ear Anatomy labeling activity (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Parieto-occipital sulcus | 7. Eustachian tube | 13. Round window |
| 2. Ear canal | 8. Middle ear | 14. External ear |
| 3. Stapes (attached to oval window) | 9. Tympanic membrane | 15. Cochlea |
| 4. Tympanic cavity | 10. Malleus | 16. Vestibular nerve |
| 5. Vestibule | 11. Incus | |
| 6. Cochlear nerve | 12. Inner ear | |



Check your answers¹

Activity source: Sensory System Ear Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Vision (Sight)

Watch [Vision: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #18 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Vision is the special sense of sight that is based on the transduction of light stimuli received through the eyes. The eyes are located within either orbit in the skull. The bony orbits surround the eyeballs, protecting them and anchoring the soft tissues of the eye (see [Figure 15.4](#)). The eyelids, with lashes at their leading edges, help to protect the eye from abrasions by blocking particles that may land on the surface of the eye.

The inner surface of each lid is a thin membrane known as the palpebral conjunctiva. The conjunctiva extends over the **sclera**, connecting the eyelids to the eyeball. Tears are produced by the lacrimal gland, located beneath the lateral edges of the nose. Tears produced by this gland flow through the lacrimal duct to the medial corner of the eye, where the tears flow over the conjunctiva, washing away foreign particles.

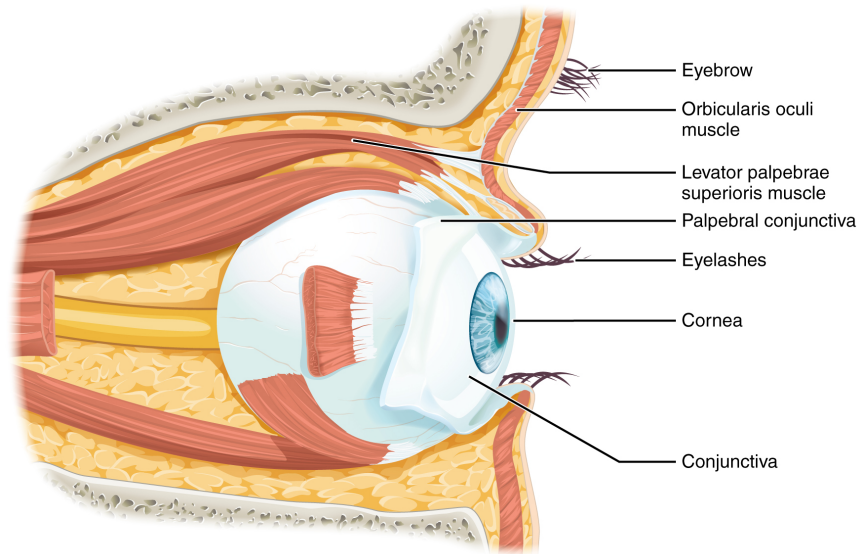


Figure 15.4 The Eye in the Orbit. The eye is located within the orbit and surrounded by soft tissues that protect and support its function. The orbit is surrounded by cranial bones of the skull. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 15.4 Image description.](#)]

Movement of the eye within the orbit is accomplished by the contraction of **six extraocular** muscles that originate from the bones of the orbit and insert into the surface of the eyeball. Four of the muscles are arranged at the cardinal points around the eye and are named for those locations. They are the:

1. superior rectus
2. medial rectus
3. inferior rectus
4. lateral rectus

When each of these muscles contract, the eye moves toward the contracting muscle. For example, when the superior rectus contracts, the eye rotates to look up.

The eye itself is a hollow sphere composed of **three layers** of tissue.

1. The **outermost layer** is the fibrous tunic, which includes the white sclera and clear cornea. The sclera accounts for five-sixths of the surface of the eye, most of which is not visible, though humans are unique compared with many other species in having so much of the “white of the eye” visible (see [Figure 15.5](#)). The transparent cornea covers the anterior tip of the eye and allows light to enter the eye.
2. The **middle layer** of the eye is the vascular tunic, which is mostly composed of the choroid, ciliary body, and iris. The choroid is a layer of highly vascularized connective tissue that provides a blood supply to the eyeball. The choroid is posterior to the ciliary body, a muscular structure that is attached to the lens by zonule fibers. These two structures bend the lens, allowing it to focus light on the back of the eye. Overlaying the ciliary body, and visible in the anterior eye, is the iris—the coloured part of the eye. The iris is a smooth muscle that opens or closes the pupil, which is the hole at the center of the eye that allows light to enter. The iris constricts the pupil in response to bright light and dilates the pupil in response to

dim light.

3. The **innermost layer** of the eye is the neural tunic, or retina, which contains the nervous tissue responsible for photoreception.

The eye is also divided into **two cavities**:

1. The **anterior cavity**

- The anterior cavity is the space between the cornea and lens, including the iris and ciliary body. It is filled with a watery fluid called the aqueous humor.

2. The **posterior cavity**

- The posterior cavity is the space behind the lens that extends to the posterior side of the interior eyeball, where the retina is located. The posterior cavity is filled with a more viscous fluid called the vitreous humor.

The **retina** is composed of several layers and contains specialized cells for the initial processing of visual stimuli. The photoreceptors (rods and cones) change their membrane potential when stimulated by light energy. The change in membrane potential alters the amount of neurotransmitter that the photoreceptor cells release onto bipolar cells in the outer synaptic layer. It is the bipolar cell in the retina that connects a photoreceptor to a retinal ganglion cell (RGC) in the inner synaptic layer. There, amacrine cells additionally contribute to retinal processing before an action potential is produced by the RGC. The axons of RGCs, which lie at the innermost layer of the retina, collect at the optic disc and leave the eye at the optic nerve (see [Figure 15.5](#)). Because these axons pass through the retina, there are no photoreceptors at the very back of the eye, where the optic nerve begins. This creates a “blind spot” in the retina, and a corresponding blind spot in our visual field.

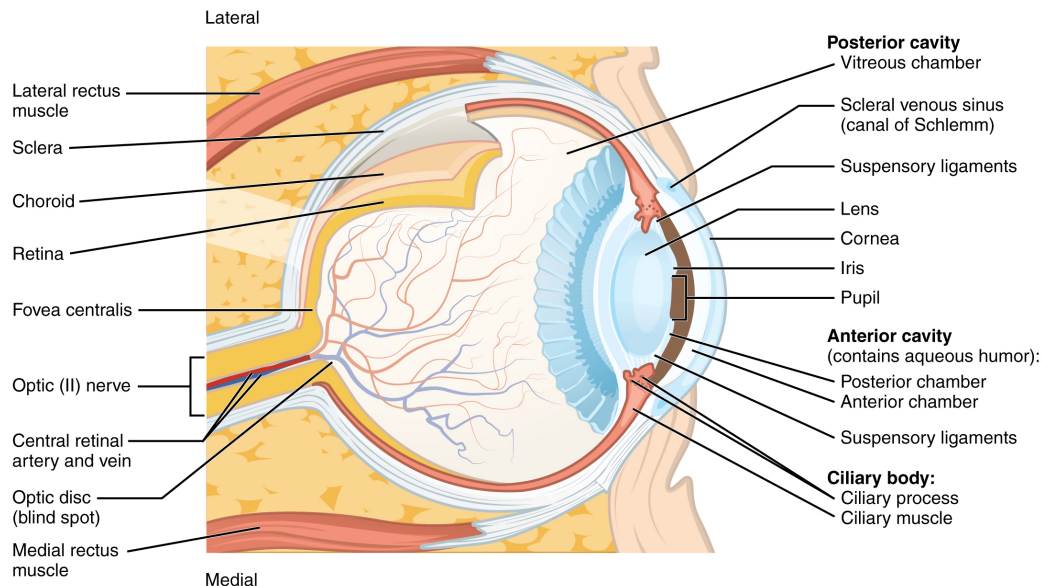


Figure 15.5. Structure of the Eye. The sphere of the eye can be divided into anterior and posterior chambers. The wall of the eye is composed of three layers: the fibrous tunic, vascular tunic, and neural tunic. Within the neural tunic is the retina, with three layers of cells and two synaptic layers in between. The center of the retina has a small indentation known as the fovea. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 15.5 Image description](#).]

Photoreceptors in the retina (rods and cones) are located behind the axons, RGCs, bipolar cells, and retinal blood vessels. A significant amount of light is absorbed by these structures before the light reaches the photoreceptor cells. At the exact center of the retina is a small area known as the fovea. At the fovea, the retina lacks the supporting cells and blood vessels, and only contains photoreceptors. Therefore, **visual acuity**, is greatest at the fovea. This is because the fovea is where the least amount of incoming light is absorbed by other retinal structures (see [Figure 15.5](#)). As one moves in either direction from this central point of the retina, visual acuity drops significantly.

Example: Visual Acuity (VA) between the fovea and peripheral retina

The difference in visual acuity between the fovea and peripheral retina is easily evidenced by looking directly at a word in the middle of this paragraph. The visual stimulus in the middle of the field of view falls on the fovea and is in the sharpest focus. **Without moving your eyes off that word, notice that words at the beginning or end of the paragraph are not in focus.** The images in your peripheral vision are focused by the peripheral retina, and have vague, blurry edges and words that are not as clearly identified. As a result, a large part of the neural function of the eyes is concerned with moving the eyes and head so that important visual stimuli are centered on the fovea.

There are **three types of cone opsins**, that are sensitive to different wavelengths of light and provide us with **colour vision**. By comparing the activity of the three different cones, the brain can extract colour information from visual stimuli (see [Figure 15.6](#)). For example, a bright blue light that has a wavelength of approximately 450 nm would activate the “**red**” cones minimally, the “**green**” cones marginally, and the “**blue**” cones predominantly. The relative activation of the three different cones is calculated by the brain, which perceives the colour as blue. However, cones cannot react to low-intensity light, and rods do not sense the colour of light. Therefore, our low-light vision is, in essence, in **grayscale**. In other words, in a dark room, everything appears as a shade of gray. If you think that you can see colours in the dark, it is most likely because your brain knows what colour something is and is relying on that memory.

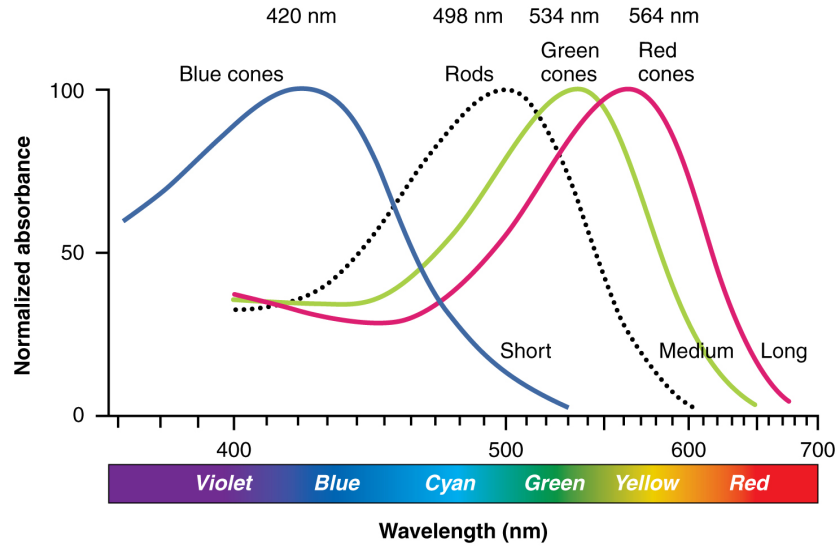


Figure 15.6 Comparison of Colour Sensitivity of Photopigments. Comparing the peak sensitivity and absorbance spectra of the four photopigments suggests that they are most sensitive to particular wavelengths. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 15.6 Image description.](#)]

Sensory Systems Medical Terms, Abbreviations and Anatomy

Sensory System Medical Terms

Sensory System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following sensory system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **anisocoria** (an-ī-sō-KŌR-ē-ă)
 - condition of absence of equal pupil (size)
2. **aphakia** (ă-FĀ-kē-ă)
 - condition of no lens
3. **audiogram** (OD-ē-ō-gram)
 - graphic record (radiographic image) of hearing
4. **audiologist** (od-ē-OL-ŏ-jĭst)

- specialist who studies and treats the hearing
- 5. **audiology (od-ē-OL-ō-jē)**
 - study of the hearing
- 6. **audiometer (od-ē-OM-ēt-ēr)**
 - instrument used to measure hearing
- 7. **audiometry (od-ē-OM-ě-trē)**
 - measuring hearing
- 8. **aural (OR-āl)**
 - pertaining to the ear
- 9. **binocular (bīn-ŌK-ū-lār)**
 - pertaining to both eyes
- 10. **blepharitis (blěf-ār-Ī-tīs)**
 - inflammation of the eyelid
- 11. **blepharoplasty (BLĚF-ā-rō-plās-tē)**
 - surgical repair of the eyelid
- 12. **blepharoptosis (BLĚF-ā-rōp-TŌ-sīs)**
 - condition of drooping of the eyelid
- 13. **cochlear (KOK-lē-ār)**
 - pertaining to the cochlea
- 14. **cochlear implant (KOK-lē-ā IM-plant)**
 - pertaining to the cochlear implant
- 15. **conjunctivitis (kōn-jūnk-tī-VĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the conjunctiva
- 16. **corneal (KOR-nē-ā)**
 - pertaining to the cornea
- 17. **cryoretinopexy (krī-ō-RET-in-ō-pek-sē)**
 - surgical fixation of the retina using extreme cold

18. **dacrocystitis (dak-rē-ō-sis-TĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the tear (lacrimal) sac
19. **dacryocystorhinostomy (dak-rē-ō-sis-tō-rī-NOS-tō-mē)**
 - creation of an artificial opening between the lacrimal sac and the nose
20. **diplopia (dip-LŌ-pē-ă)**
 - condition of double vision
21. **electrocochleography (ē-lek-trō-kok-lē-OG-ră-fē)**
 - process of recording the electrical activity in the cochlea
22. **endophthalmitis (ĕn-dōf-thăl-MĪ-tīs)**
 - inflammation within the eye
23. **intraocular (in-tră-OK-yŭ-lăr)**
 - pertaining to within the eye
24. **iridectomy (ir-ĭ-DEK-tō-mē)**
 - excision of (part of) the iris
25. **iridoplegia (ir-ĭ-dō-PLĒ-j(ē-)ă, ĩr)**
 - condition of paralysis of the iris
26. **iridotomy (ir-ĭ-DŌT-ō-mē)**
 - incision into the iris
27. **iritis (ĭ-RĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the iris
28. **isocoria (ĭ-sō-KŌ-rē-ă)**
 - condition of equal pupils
29. **keratitis (ker-ă-TĪT-īs)**
 - inflammation of the cornea
30. **keratomalacia (kĕr-ă-tō-mă-LĀ-shĕ-ă)**
 - softening of the cornea
31. **keratometer (kĕr-ă-TŌM-ĕ-ter)**

- instrument used to measure (the curvature) of the eye
- 32. **keratoplasty (KER-ăt-ō-plas-tē)**
 - surgical repair of the cornea
- 33. **labyrinthectomy (lab-ĭ-rin-THEK-tō-mē)**
 - excision of the inner ear (labyrinth)
- 34. **labyrinthitis (lab-ĭ-rin-THĪT-ĭs)**
 - inflammation of the inner ear (labyrinth)
- 35. **lacrimal (LAK-rĭ-māl)**
 - pertaining to the tear duct
- 36. **leukocoria (loo-kō-KŌR-ē-ă)**
 - condition of a white pupil
- 37. **mastoidectomy (mās-tōy-d-ĔK-tō-mē)**
 - excision of the mastoid bone
- 38. **mastoiditis (mas-toyd-ĪT-ĭs)**
 - inflammation of the mastoid bone
- 39. **mastoidotomy (mās-toyd-ŌT-ō-mē)**
 - incision into the mastoid bone
- 40. **myringitis (mĭr-ĭn-JĪ-tĭs)**
 - inflammation of the tympanic membrane
- 41. **myringoplasty (mĭr-ĪN-gō-plăst-ē)**
 - surgical repair of the tympanic membrane
- 42. **myringotomy (mĭr-ĭn-GŌT-ō-mē)**
 - incision into the tympanic membrane
- 43. **nasolacrimal (nā-zō-LAK-rĭ-māl)**
 - pertaining to the nose and the tear duct
- 44. **nasopharyngeal (nā-zō-FAR-in-gēl)**
 - pertaining to the nose and pharynx (throat)

45. **oculomycosis** (ōk-ū-lō-mī-KŌ-sīs)
 - abnormal condition of the eye caused by a fungus
46. **ophthalmalgia** (ōf-thāl-MĀL-jē-ă)
 - condition of pain in the eye
47. **ophthalmic** (of-THAL-mik)
 - pertaining to the eye
48. **ophthalmologist** (ōf-thāl-MŌL-ō-jīst)
 - specialist of the eye
49. **ophthalmology** (Ophth) (ōf-thāl-MŌL-ō-jē)
 - study of the eye
50. **ophthalmopathy** (ōf-thāl-MŌP-ă-thē)
 - disease of the eye
51. **ophthalmoplegia** (of-thal-mō-PLĒ-j(ē)-ă)
 - condition of paralysis of the eye
52. **ophthalmoscope** (of-THAL-mō-skōp)
 - instrument used to view the eye
53. **ophthalmoscopy** (of-thal-MOS-kō-pē)
 - process of viewing the eye
54. **optic** (OP-tik)
 - pertaining to vision
55. **optometry** (op-TOM-ē-trē)
 - measuring vision
56. **otalgia** (ō-TĀL-jē-ă)
 - condition of pain in the ear
57. **otologist** (ō-TŌL-ō-jīst)
 - specialist who studies and treats disorders and diseases of the ear
58. **otology** (ō-TŌL-ō-jē)

- study of the ear
59. **otomastoiditis** (ō-tō-mas-toyd-ĪT-īs)
- inflammation of the ear and mastoid bone
60. **otomycosis** (ō-tō-mī-KŌ-sīs)
- abnormal condition of fungus in the ear
61. **otopyorrhea** (ō-tō-pī-ō-RĒ-ă)
- discharge of pus from the ear
62. **otorhinolaryngologist** (ō-tō-RĪ-nō-lār-ĭn-GŎL-ō-jĭst)
- specialist or physician who studies and treats disease and disorder of the ears,
63. **otorrhea** (ō-tō-RĒ-ă)
- discharge from the ear
64. **otosclerosis** (ō-tō-sklē-RŎ-sīs)
- condition of hardening of the ear
65. **otoscope**(Ŏ-tō-skōp)
- instrument used to view the ear
66. **otoscopy** (ō-TŎS-kō-pē)
- process of viewing the ear
67. **phacomalacia** (făk-ō-mă-LĀ-shē-ă)
- condition of softening of the lens
68. **photophobia** (fō-tō-FŎ-bē-ă)
- condition of sensitivity to light
69. **pseudophakia** (SOOD-ō-FĀ-kē-a)
- condition of fake lens
70. **pupillary** (PŪ-pĭ-lēr-ē)
- pertaining to pupil
71. **pupillometer** (pū-pĭl-ŎM-ĕ-tēr)
- instrument used to measure the pupil

72. **pupilloscope (pū-pīl-ŎS-kōp)**
- instrument used to view the pupil
73. **retinal (RĚT-ī-nāl)**
- pertaining to the retina
74. **retinoblastoma (ret-īn-ō-blas-TŎ-mă)**
- tumour arising from a developing retinal cell
75. **retinopathy (ret-īn-OP-ă-thē)**
- disease of the retina
76. **retinoscopy (ret-īn-OS-kō-pē)**
- process of viewing the retina
77. **sclerokeratitis (sklēr-ō-kēr-ă-TĪ-tīs)**
- inflammation of the sclera and cornea
78. **scleromalacia (sklě-rō-mā-LĀ-sē-ă)**
- condition of softening of the sclera
79. **sclerotomy (sklě-ROT-ō-mē)**
- incision into the sclera
80. **stapedectomy (stā-pĕ-DEK-tō-mē)**
- excision of the stapes
81. **tonometer (tō-NOM-ĕt-ĕr)**
- instrument used to measure pressure (within the eye)
82. **tonometry (tō-NOM-ĕ-trē)**
- process of measuring pressure
83. **tympanometer (tīm-pă-NŎM-ĕ-tēr)**
- instrument used to measure the middle ear
84. **tympanometry (tīm-pă-NŎM-ĕ-trē)**
- measurement of the tympanic membrane
85. **tympanoplasty (tīm-păn-ō-PLĀS-tē)**

- membranesurgical repair of the tympanic

86. **vestibular (ves-TIB-yŭ-lār)**

- pertaining to the vestibule

87. **vestibulocochlear (ves-tĭ-bŭl-ō-KŌ-klē-ar)**

- vestibul/o/cochle/ar
- pertaining to the vestibule and cochlea

88. **xerophthalmia (zer-of-THAL-mē-ă)**

- xer/ophthalm/ia
- condition of dry eye

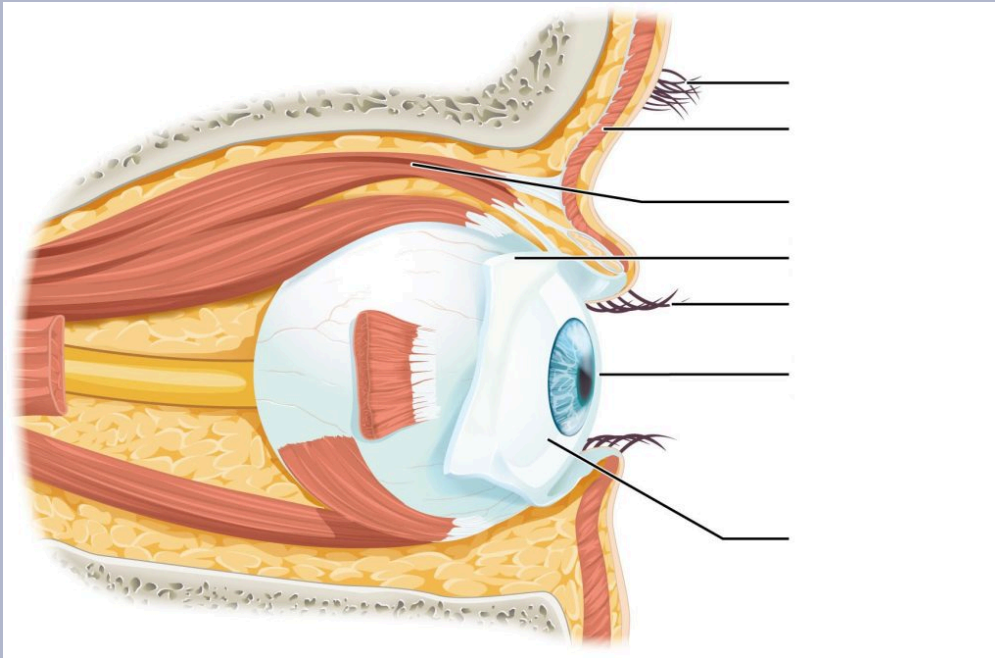
Activity source: Sensory System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Anatomy Labeling Activity

Sensory System Eye Anatomy (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

1. Eyebrow
2. Conjunctiva
3. Levator palpebrae superioris muscle
4. Palpebral conjunctiva
5. Cornea
6. Eyelashes
7. Orbicularis oculi muscle



Check your answers ²

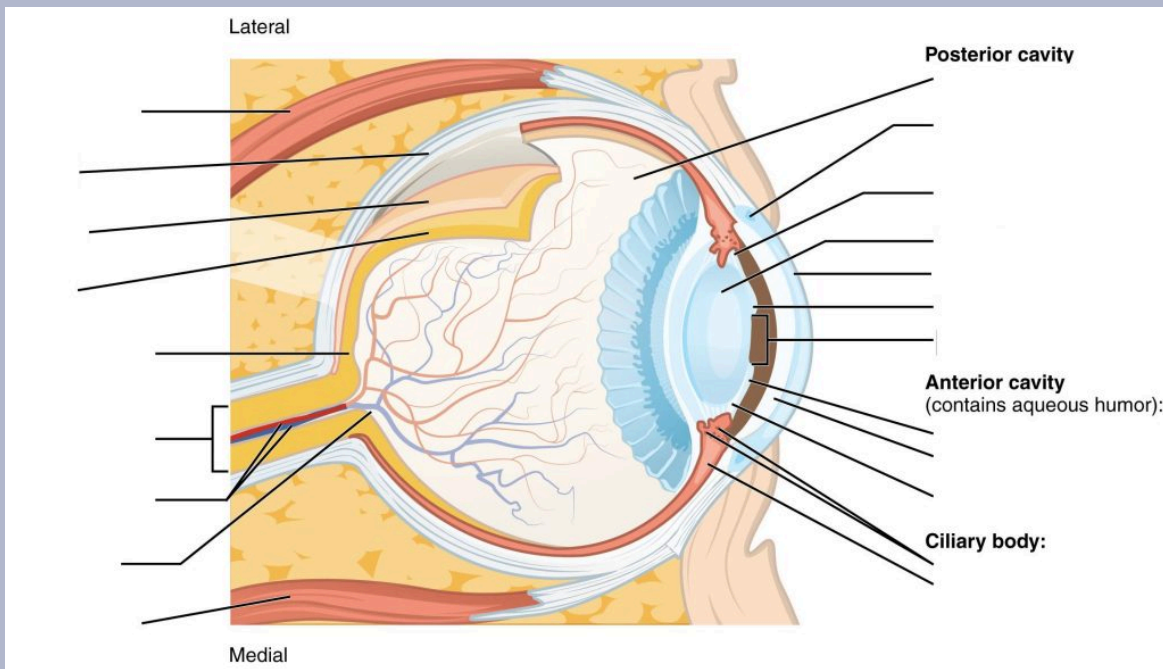
Activity source: Sensory System Eye Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Sensory System Eye Anatomy

Sensory System Eye Anatomy (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Fovea centralis | 9. Choroid | 17. Sclera |
| 2. Suspensory ligaments | 10. Ciliary process | 18. Medial rectus muscle |
| 3. Ciliary muscle | 11. Optic disc (blind spot) | 19. Scleral venous sinus (canal of Schlemm) |
| 4. Retina | 12. Lens | 20. Cornea |
| 5. Posterior chamber | 13. Central retinal artery and vein | 21. Pupil |
| 6. Iris | 14. Suspensory ligaments | |
| 7. Vitreous chamber | 15. Lateral rectus muscle | |
| 8. Anterior chamber | 16. Optic (II) nerve | |



Sensory System Eye Anatomy Diagram (Text Version)

This diagram shows a lateral and medial view of the eyeball. The major parts are labelled. Labels read from top, clockwise: showing the posterior cavity including the following structures: _____[Blank 1], _____[Blank 2] (canal of Schlemm), _____[Blank 3], _____[Blank 4], _____[Blank 5], _____[Blank 6], and _____[Blank 7]. Next is the anterior cavity (contains aqueous humor), _____[Blank 8], _____[Blank 9], and _____[Blank 10]. The Ciliary body _____[Blank 11] and _____[Blank 12], _____[Blank 13], _____[Blank 14] (blind spot of the eye), _____[Blank 15], _____[Blank 16], _____[Blank 17], _____[Blank 18], _____[Blank 19], and _____[Blank 20].

Check your answers ³

Activity source: Sensory System Eye Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Sensory System Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts

Sensory System not easily broken into word parts (Text Version)

1. **astigmatism (Ast)**
 - blurry vision due to irregular curvature of the cornea or lens
2. **Optician**
 - specialist who fills prescriptions for lenses but cannot prescribe
3. **anosmia**
 - condition of being without smell/inability to smell
4. **stye**
 - infection of an oil gland of the eyelid (hordeolum)
5. **amblyopia**
 - reduced vision in one eye
 - associated with strabismus (lazy eye)
6. **Optometrist**
 - specialist who diagnoses, treats, and manages diseases and disorders of the eye
 - Doctor of Optometry
7. **visual acuity (VA)**
 - sharpness or clearness of vision
8. **cataract**
 - abnormal progressive disease of lens characterized by lack of transparency or cloudiness

Activity source: Sensory System Terms Not Easily Broken into Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Common Abbreviations for the Sensory System

Sensory System Abbreviations

- **ARMD** (age-related macular degeneration)
- **Ast** (astigmatism)
- **Em** (emmetropia)
- **IOL** (intraocular lens)
- **IOP** (intraocular pressure)
- **LASIK** (laser-assisted in situ keratomileusis)
- **Ophth** (ophthalmology)
- **PHACO** (phacoemulsification)
- **PRK** (photorefractive keratectomy)
- **VA** (visual acuity)
- **AOM** (acute otitis media)
- **ENT** (ears, nose, throat)
- **EENT** (eyes, ears, nose, and throat)
- **HOH** (hard of hearing)
- **OM** (otitis media)

Activity source: Sensory System Abbreviation by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version.

Image Descriptions

Figure 15.1 image description: This image shows the structure of the ear with the major parts labeled. The ear is divided into 3 parts from left to right: external ear, middle ear, and inner ear. Labels for each part read: external ear (auricle, ear canal), middle ear (tympanic membrane, malleus, incus, tympanic cavity), inner ear (stapes, vestibule, vestibular nerve, cochlear nerve, cochlea, round window, eustachian tube). [\[Return to Figure 15.1\]](#).

Figure 15.2 image description: This diagram shows the structure of the cochlea in the inner ear. Labels read (from top, counterclockwise): bony cochlear wall, scala vestibuli, cochlear duct, tectorial membrane, basilar membrane, scala tympani, spiral ganglion, cochlear branch of N VIII, organ of Corti. [\[Return to Figure 15.2\]](#).

Figure 15.3 image description: The left panel of this image shows a person's head in a still position. Underneath this, the ampullary nerve is shown. Labels read: cupula, ampulla, ampullary nerve). The right panel shows a person rotating his head, and the below that, the direction of movement of the cupula is shown. Label reads: as the head rotates, cupula bends in opposite direction of the rotation. [\[Return to Figure 15.3\]](#).

Figure 15.4 image description: This diagram shows the lateral view of the eye. The major parts are labeled. Labels read (from top): eyebrow, orbicularis oculi muscle, levator palpebrae superioris muscle, palpebral conjunctiva, eyelashes, cornea, conjunctiva. [\[Return to Figure 15.4\]](#).

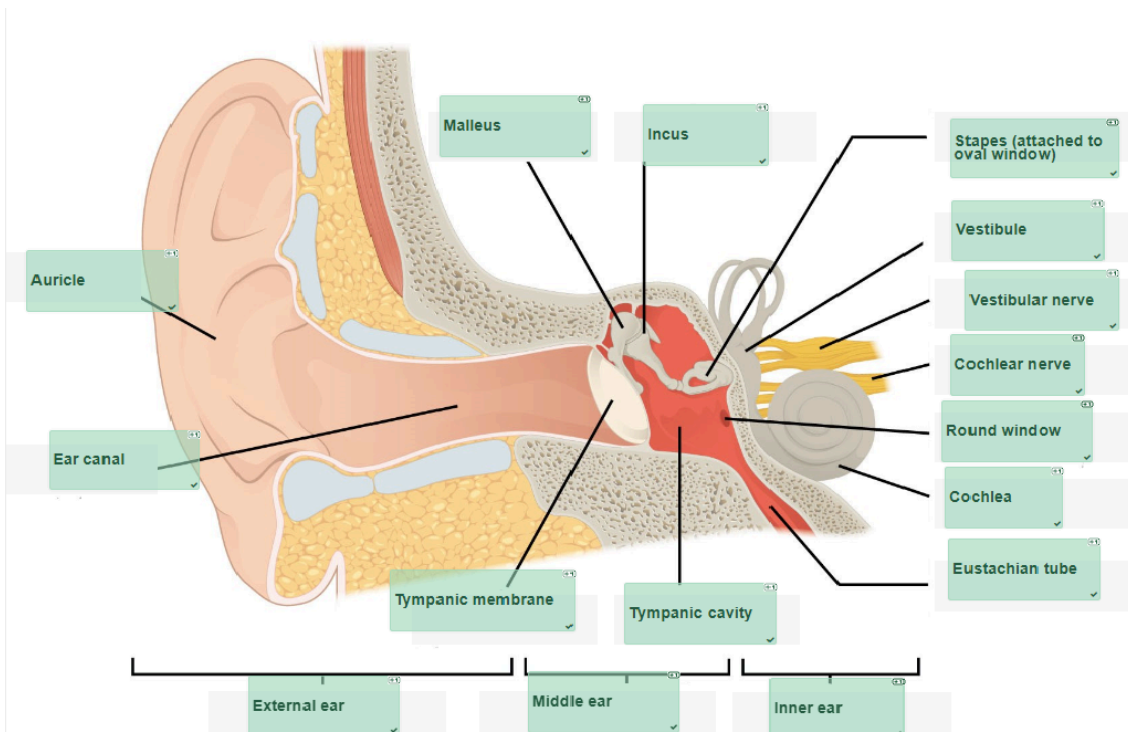
Figure 15.5 image description: This diagram shows a lateral and medial view of the eyeball. The major parts are labelled. Labels read (from top, clockwise): posterior cavity (vitreous chamber, scleral venous sinus (canal of Schlemm), suspensory ligaments, lens, cornea, iris, pupil); anterior cavity (contains aqueous humor, posterior chamber, anterior chamber, suspensory ligaments); Ciliary body (ciliary process and muscle), medial rectus muscle, optic disc (blind spot), central retinal artery and vein, fovea centralis, retina, choroid, sclera, lateral rectus muscle. [\[Return to Figure 15.5\]](#).

Figure 15.6 image description: This graph shows the normalized absorbance versus wavelength for different cell types in the eye. The Y-axis is normalized absorbance, and the X axis is wavelength (nm) with the colours violet, blue, cyan, green, yellow, and red across the bottom. The lines in the graph indicate blue cones which peak at 420 nm; rods which peak at 498 nm; green cones, which peak at 534 nm, and red cones which peak at 564 nm. Blue cones line is labelled as short, green cones as medium, and red cones as long. [\[Return to Figure 15.6\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Sensory Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Sensory Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

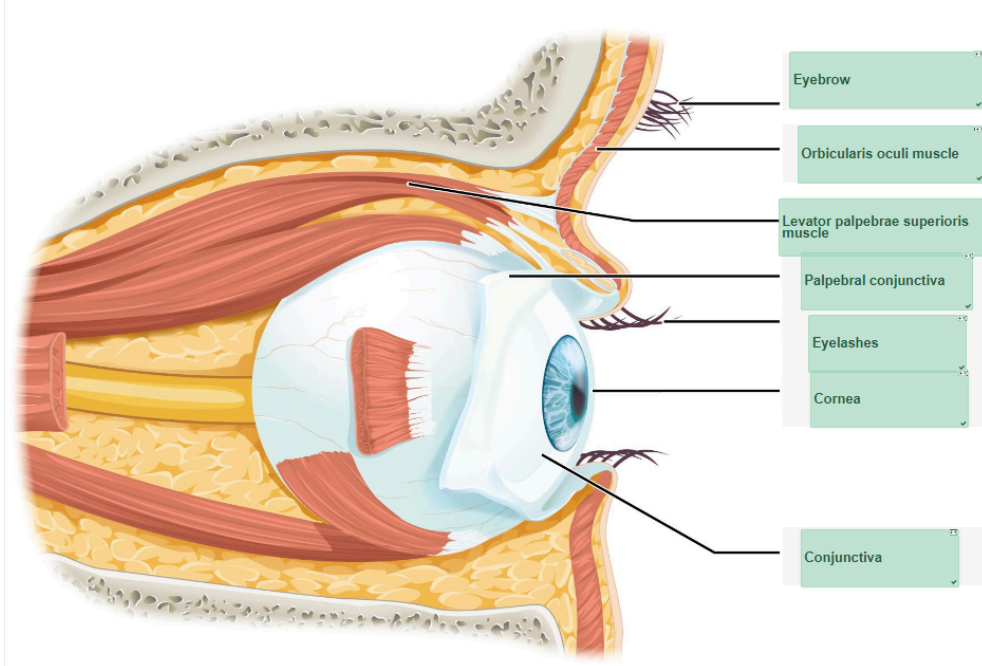
Notes



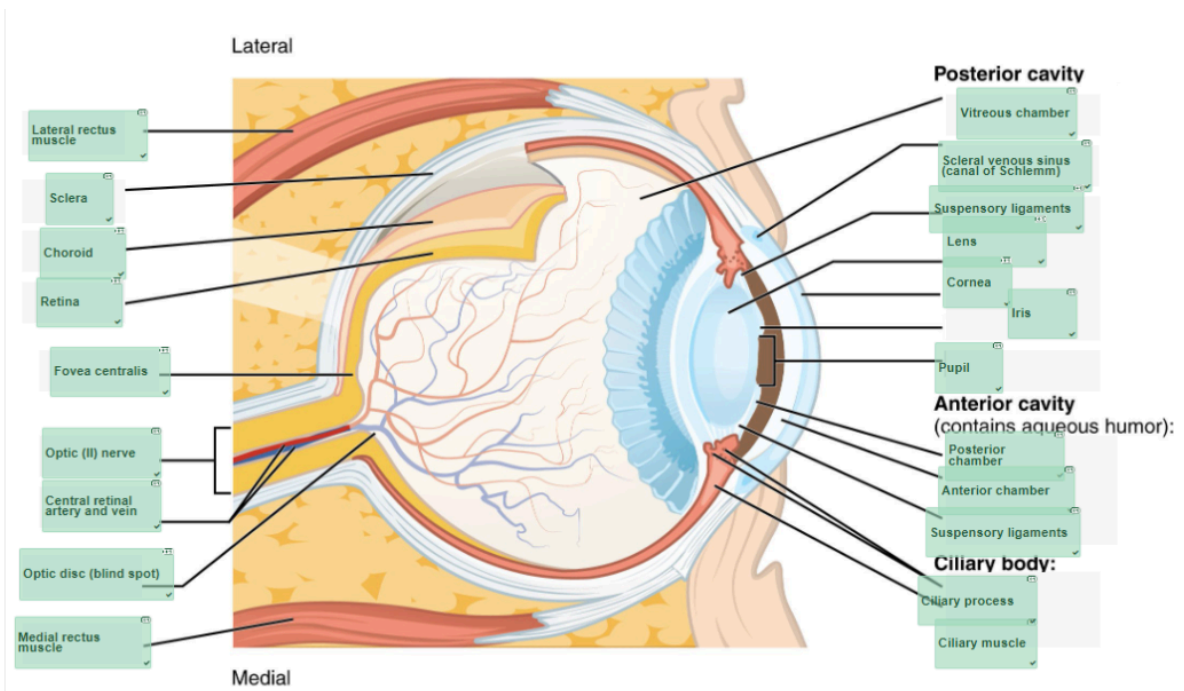
1.

Check your answers: Sensory System Ear Anatomy labeling activity (Text Version)text

Sensory System Eye Anatomy



2.



3.

Check your answers: Sensory System Eye Anatomy Diagram (Text Version) This diagram shows a lateral and medial view of the eyeball. The major parts are labelled. Labels read from top, clockwise: showing the posterior cavity including the following structures: **vitreous chamber**, **scleral venous sinus** (canal of Schlemm), **suspensory ligaments**, **lens**, **cornea**, **iris**, and **pupil**. Next is the anterior cavity (contains aqueous humor), **posterior chamber**, **anterior chamber**, and **suspensory ligaments**. The Ciliary body **ciliary process** and **ciliary muscle**, **medial rectus muscle**, **optic disc** (blind spot of the eye), **central retinal artery and vein**, **foveal centralis**, **optic nerve**, **retina**, **choroid**, **sclera**, and **lateral rectus muscle**.

15.3 - Sensory Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Olfactory Diseases and Disorders

Anosmia

Blunt force trauma to the face, such as that common in many car accidents, can lead to the loss of the olfactory nerve, and subsequently, loss of the sense of smell. This condition is known as **anosmia**. When the frontal lobe of the brain moves relative to the ethmoid bone, the olfactory tract axons may be sheared apart. Professional fighters often experience anosmia because of repeated trauma to the face and head. In addition, certain pharmaceuticals, such as antibiotics, can cause anosmia by killing all the olfactory neurons at once. If no axons are in place within the olfactory nerve, then the axons from newly formed olfactory neurons have no guide to lead them to their connections within the olfactory bulb. There are temporary causes of anosmia, as well, such as those caused by inflammatory responses related to respiratory infections or allergies. Loss of the sense of smell can result in food tasting bland. A person with an impaired sense of smell may require additional spice and seasoning levels for food to be tasted. Anosmia may also be related to some presentations of mild depression because the loss of enjoyment of food may lead to a general sense of despair. The ability of olfactory neurons to replace themselves decreases with age, leading to age-related anosmia. This explains why some elderly people salt their food more than younger people. However, this increased sodium intake can increase blood volume and blood pressure, increasing the risk of cardiovascular diseases in the elderly (Betts, et al., 2013).

Ears, Nose, and Throat Diseases and Disorders

Otitis Media

Otitis Media is known as inflammation of the middle ear canal that involves the eardrum. It is commonly seen in younger children due to bacterial and viral infections. Symptoms include possible fever, cough and cold symptoms, hearing loss, irritability and **otalgia**. Treatment involves symptomatic control as well as antibiotic (Amoxicillin) use if necessary (Government of Canada, 2016). To learn more about **otitis media**, review this website by the [Government of Canada \[PDF\]](#).

Otitis Externa

Otitis Externa is inflammation of the external ear canal and is known as swimmer's ear because it is associated with its exposure to water. Its clinical presentation and management are the same as otitis media (Piercefield

et al., 2011). To learn more about **otitis externa**, review this website from the [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention \[New Tab\]](#).

Conductive Hearing Loss

Hearing loss occurs when something disrupts sound through the mid and outer ear, such as physical damage to the ear drum (perforation). Hearing loss can be managed with pharmacotherapy, surgery, or a combination of the two (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2023).

Sensorineural Hearing Loss

This hearing loss results from damage to the neural structures. Tumors as well as exposure to loud noises (acute/chronic) can lead to this type of hearing loss (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2023). To learn more about sensorineural hearing loss, review the [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's web page about sensorineural hearing loss \[New Tab\]](#).

Tinnitus

Tinnitus is a condition of ringing in the ears. It is due to inflammation of the middle ear. It is the first indicator of nerve damage, particularly in sensorineural hearing loss (National Library of Medicine, 2022). For more information, review this [page on the role of inflammation in tinnitus \[New Tab\]](#) from the National Library of Medicine.

Otosclerosis

This is hardening of the ear due to new bone formation of the inner ear ossicles. The etiology is idiopathic or may be hereditary. Clinical features are consistent with that of conductive hearing loss. Further management is required by an ENT surgeon (Veterans Affairs Canada, 2019). To learn more, visit the [Veterans Affairs Canada web page on Otosclerosis \[New Tab\]](#).

Rhinitis

Rhinitis is inflammation of the nasal cavity mucosal lining, which can lead to congestion and rhinorrhea (runny nose). The causes may be due to allergic reactions as well as viruses. Treatment regimens include symptomatic management, saline sprays, and oral antihistamines (Naclerio, Bachert, & Baraniuk, 2010). To learn more about rhinitis and other nasal conditions, please view [Naclerio, Bachert, & Baraniuk's article Pathophysiology of Nasal Congestion \[New Tab\]](#).

Dacryostenosis

Also known as nasolacrimal obstruction, this is an obstruction of the nasolacrimal duct. It prevents tears from draining from the eyes into the ducts and thus individuals have excessive tearing. The etiology is congenital and is the result of the duct not forming properly. This condition is managed via observation, as it resolves overtime (usually after 1 year) (Merck Manual, 2024). To learn more, visit the [Merck Manual's web page about dacryostenosis \[New Tab\]](#).

Eye Diseases and Disorders

Blindness

The term “blindness” may cover a broad spectrum of visual disabilities such as the inability to see because of injury, disease, or a congenital condition. The parameters for legal blindness are a visual field of 20 degrees or narrower and/or visual acuity is 20/200 or less in both eyes, even after correction. Many of the conditions described below can lead to visual disability, low vision, and legal blindness (Canadian National Institute for the Blind, n.d). To learn more about blindness, visit this website by the [Canadian National Institute for the Blind \[New Tab\]](#).

Cataract

A cataract is a clouding of the normally clear lens of your eye. For people who have cataracts, it may feel like they are looking through cloudy lenses or windows. The lens of the eye loses its flexibility due to the aging process, leading, in some cases, to senile cataracts. Infants are sometime born with congenital cataracts. Treatment usually involves surgery to remove the clouding of the lens (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2023). To learn more, visit the [Mayo Clinic's web page about cataracts \[New Tab\]](#).

Conjunctivitis

This is a condition involving inflammation of the conjunctiva. Its common causes are due to allergens, chemicals, foreign objects, as well as bacterial and viral pathogens. The cause of conjunctivitis determines if it is transmissible from one individual to another. Pink eye caused by the adenovirus, for example, is highly contagious compared to pollen, which is not. Management involves treating the underlying cause of conjunctivitis (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019). To learn more about conjunctivitis, please visit the [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's web page about conjunctivitis \[New Tab\]](#).

Diabetic Retinopathy

This is a disease of the retina caused by diabetes mellitus. The retinal veins dilate, leading to swelling as fluid leaks from blood vessels into the retina. It is estimated that 20% of newly diagnosed diabetics suffer from diabetic retinopathy (American Optometric Association, 2020). To learn more, visit the [American Optometric Association's website on diabetic retinopathy \[New Tab\]](#).

Glaucoma

This disease is part of a group of eye diseases which lead to progressive degeneration of the optic nerve. This, in turn, can lead to loss of nerve tissue that results in gradual irreversible vision loss and potential blindness if not detected and treated early. The most common form of glaucoma is primary open-angle glaucoma. This form is associated with elevated pressure caused by a backup of fluid in the eye (Canadian Association of Optometrists, n.d.). To learn more, visit the [Canadian Association of Optometrists' web page about glaucoma \[New Tab\]](#).

Macular Degeneration/Age-related Macular Degeneration (AMD)

Progressive damage of a portion of the retina is known as the macula. Severe central vision is lost while peripheral vision is retained. This is the leading cause of blindness in people over the age of 55 years (Canadian Association of Optometrists, 2024). To learn more, visit the [Canadian Association of Optometrists' web page on AMD \[New Tab\]](#).

Nystagmus

This is a condition whereby involuntary repetitive eye movements make it impossible to fixate on a single object. The condition is often referred to as dancing eyes (Dubow, 2020). To learn more about nystagmus, view [this website from All About Vision \[New Tab\]](#).

Retinal Detachment

According to the Eye Physicians & Surgeons of Ontario, this condition occurs when the retina gets pulled away or separated from its normal position. Flashing lights, floaters, and what appears to be a grey curtain are all symptoms of a retinal tear, which can lead to a retinal detachment. An ophthalmologist is a retinal specialist who can repair the retinal detachment. If left untreated, a retinal detachment could lead to blindness (Canadian Ophthalmological Society, 2007). To learn more, visit the [Canadian Ophthalmological Society's brochure on Retinal Tear and Detachment \[PDF\]](#).

Strabismus

This is a condition where the affected eye rotates due to mismatched eye coordination. Each eye is focused differently, as described in the conditions below:

- **Esotropia:** the convergence of one or both eyes medially
- **Exotropia:** the deviation of one eye laterally
- **Hypertropia:** the deviation of one eye superiorly
- **Hypotropia:** the deviation of one eye inferiorly

If not managed, the brain may reject input from one eye, resulting in vision loss of the respective eye (amblyopia). **Amblyopia** is a condition also known as lazy eye, which is caused when there is an imbalance of stimuli from the brain to the eyes (one eye receives more than the other). It usually occurs in childhood and requires early intervention to rectify this condition (Canadian Association of Optometrists, 2023). To learn more about strabismus, go to [The Canadian Association of Optometrists' page on the subject \[New Tab\]](#).

Sensory Systems Terms in Use

Sensory System – Consultation Report Activity

Sensory System – Consultation Report (Text Version)

Use the words below to fill in the consultation report:

- eye
- halos
- acuity
- iris
- dilate
- ophthalmoscope
- cataracts
- subcapsular
- surgery
- intraocular

PATIENT NAME: Betty FOX

AGE: 72

SEX: Female

DOB: October 2

DATE OF CONSULTATION: August 5

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Brian Gates, MD, Ophthalmology

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Cataracts

HISTORY: I saw Mrs. Fox, a 72-year-old, for her regular _____[Blank 1] examination. She has been wearing reading glasses for several years now but has noticed that she has been having trouble reading and has been seeing _____[Blank 2] around lights while driving at night.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: A visual _____[Blank 3] test was performed. I used a slit lamp to view the cornea, _____[Blank 4], lens, and the space between the iris and cornea. I detected tiny abnormalities. I administered drops to _____[Blank 5] the pupils to examine the retina. Using an _____[Blank 6], I was able to examine the lenses for signs of _____[Blank 7]. I was able to determine that Mrs. Fox has posterior _____[Blank 8] cataracts in both eyes.

PLAN: I explained to Mrs. Fox that she required cataract _____[Blank 9]. I explained that her clouded lens would be replaced with an _____[Blank 10] lens – a clear artificial lens. She was in agreeance to having the surgery. I told her we would perform the surgery on her right eye first, then in about eight weeks we would do the left eye. Arrangements for her surgery will be made for next month.

Brian Gates, MD, Ophthalmology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers ¹

Activity source: Sensory System – Consultation Report by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version added.

Sensory System – Consultation Report

Sensory System – Consultation Report Activity (Text Version)

Use the words below to fill in the consultation report:

- OS
- watering
- antihistamines
- ophthalmalgia
- erythematous
- thyroid
- abnormalities
- masses
- anaesthetic
- puncta
- nasolacrimal
- dacryocystitis
- dacryocystorhinostomy
- medication

PATIENT NAME: Rose MACKENZIE

AGE: 57

SEX: Female

DOB: November 25

DATE OF CONSULTATION: April 16

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Ashley Cook MD, Ophthalmology

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Epiphora in left eye.

HISTORY: Patient is a 57-year-old female who reports epiphora in _____[Blank 1]. Prior to the encounter, she attempted to cure the condition with various _____[Blank 2]. She states that this has been an ongoing issue for the past 2 years, but the _____[Blank 3] has affected her ability to safely drive over the past 8 months. She denied any persistent _____[Blank 4], although noted that the surface of the eye was occasionally irritated and _____[Blank 5] due to rubbing away the tears. She has had no prior eye surgery and no relevant family or personal history of dermatitis or _____[Blank 6] pathologies.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: Patient is alert and oriented x 3, and in no acute distress. Examination of the eye surface revealed no _____[Blank 7] other than the erythema and tearing. The skin surrounding the eye appeared normal, with no _____[Blank 8] or swelling.

An irrigation test was then conducted. The eye was treated with _____[Blank 9] eye drops prior to the test. A syringe filled with saline was inserted into the left _____[Blank 10] using a hollow wire. The syringe was then pressed to assess the pressure of the left _____[Blank 11] duct. The fluid did not pass through the nose, indicating inflammation of the duct. No further diagnostic testing was required.

ASSESSMENT: Chronic _____[Blank 12] of the left nasolacrimal duct.

PLAN: Return for _____[Blank 13] in 3 months. Patient was instructed to remove tears using tissue instead of her hand to avoid the risk of infection. No _____[Blank 14] is required in the meantime.

Ashley Cook MD, Ophthalmology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers ²

Activity source: Sensory System – Consultation Report Activity by Sheila Bellefeuille & Heather Scudder, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#) from “[Sensory Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Sensory Systems

Several medical specialties support the sensory systems. An **optometrist** is an eye specialist that examines and evaluates for ocular pathology and an optometrist prescribes corrective lenses. An **ophthalmologist** evaluates and manages eye pathology as well as performs surgery. An **otorhinolaryngologist** (ENT) is a physician that

specializes in the ears, nose and throat treatment and conditions. An **audiologist** evaluates and manages individuals with hearing loss.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Sensory Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Sensory Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. eye, 2. halos, 3. acuity, 4. iris, 5. dilate, 6. ophthalmoscope, 7. cataracts, 8. subcapsular, 9. surgery, 10. intraocular
1. OS, 2. antihistamines, 3. watering, 4. ophthalmalgia, 5. erythematous, 6. thyroid, 7. abnormalities, 8. masses, 9. anaesthetic, 10. puncta, 11. nasolacrimal, 12. dacryocystitis, 13. dacryocystorhinostomy, 14. medication

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Sensory System Vocabulary

Acoustic Neuroma

A benign tumour in the internal auditory canal.

Blepharitis

Inflammation of eyelids.

Epistaxis

Nosebleed.

Glossopharyngeal

Pertaining to tongue and throat.

Hyperopia

Farsightedness. Near objects look blurred but distant objects are more clearly visible.

Kinesthesia

Body movement.

Mechanoreceptors

A sensory neuron that responds to mechanical pressure.

Myopia

Nearsightedness. Near objects are clear and seen but far objects are not.

Nociceptors

Sensory neurons that respond to pain.

Ophthalmia Neonatorum

Conjunctivitis in newborns (severe).

Pharyngitis

Inflammation of the pharynx.

Pharyngotonsillitis

Inflammation of the pharynx and tonsils.

Proprioception

Body movement.

Rhinitis

Inflammation of the nasal cavity, which can lead to rhinorrhea.

Rhinorrhea

Runny nose.

Sinusitis

Inflammation of the sinuses.

Stye

Acute infection of the eyelash's hair follicle.

Thermoreceptors

Specialized neurons that respond to changes in temperature.

Tonsillitis

Inflammation of the tonsils.

Tympanic Membrane

Eardrum.

Visceral

Pertaining to internal organs.

Visual Acuity

Sharpness of vision.

Sensory Systems Glossary Reinforcement activity

Sensory Systems Glossary Reinforcement activity (Text Version)

1. Specialized neurons that respond to changes in temperature are called _____. [Blank 1].

- a. thermoreceptors
 - b. mechanoreceptors
 - c. nociceptors
2. Body movement is called _____[Blank 2].
- a. kinesthesia
 - b. visceral
 - c. proprioception
3. Sharpness of vision is called _____[Blank 3].
- a. visual acuity
 - b. proprioception
 - c. kinesthesia
4. Sensory neurons that respond to pain are called _____[Blank 4].
- a. thermoreceptors
 - b. nociceptors
 - c. glossopharyngeal
5. The eardrum is also called _____[Blank 4].
- a. glossopharyngeal
 - b. mechanoreceptors
 - c. tympanic membrane

Check your answers¹

Activity source: Sensory Systems Glossary Reinforcement activity by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Sensory Systems](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Sensory Systems chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. thermoreceptors, 2. kinesthesia, 3. Sharpness of vision is called..., 4. Sensory neurons that respond to pain are called..., 5. The ear-drum is also called...

References

- Allen, R.C. (2024, February). Dacryostenosis. Merck Manual: Consumer Version. <https://www.merckmanuals.com/en-ca/home/eye-disorders/eyelid-and-tearing-disorders/dacryostenosis>
- American Optometric Association. (2020). Diabetic retinopathy. <https://www.aoa.org/patients-and-public/eye-and-vision-problems/glossary-of-eye-and-vision-conditions/diabetic-retinopathy>
- Canadian Association of Optometrists. (2023, March 18). Strabismus (crossed eyes). <https://opto.ca/eye-health-library/strabismus-crossed-eyes>
- Canadian Association of Optometrists. (2024, February 26). Age-related macular degeneration (AMD). <https://opto.ca/eye-health-library/age-related-macular-degeneration-amd>
- Canadian National Institute for the Blind. (n.d.). What is blindness? <https://cnib.ca/en/sight-loss-info/blindness/what-blindness?region=on>
- Canadian Ophthalmological Society. (2007). Retinal detachment. <https://www.cos-sco.ca/wp-content/uploads/2021/12/RetinalDet.pdf>
- CrashCourse. (2015, May 11). Vision: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #18 [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=o0DYP-u1rNM>
- CrashCourse. (2015, April 27). Taste & smell: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #16 [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mFm3yA1nslE>
- CrashCourse. (2015, May 4). Hearing & balance: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #17 [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=le2j7GpC4JU>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2019m January 4). Conjunctivitis (pink eye). CDC. <https://www.cdc.gov/conjunctivitis/about/causes.html>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2023, August 7). Types of hearing loss. CDC. <https://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/hearingloss/types.html>
- Dubow, B. (2020). Nystagmus: Involuntary eye movements. All About Vision. <https://www.allaboutvision.com/conditions/nystagmus.htm>
- Government of Canada. (2016, August). Pediatric and adolescent care- chapter 9 – ears, nose, throat, and mouth. Indigenous Services Canada. https://www.canada.ca/content/dam/hc-sc/migration/hc-sc/fnihah-spnia/alt_formats/pdf/services/nurs-infirm/clin/pediat/ent-ori-eng.pdf
- Mayo Clinic Staff. (2023, September 28). Cataracts overview. Mayo Clinic Patient Care & Health Information. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/cataracts/symptoms-causes/syc-20353790>
- Naclerio, R.M., Bachert, C., & Baraniuk, J.N. (2010, February 17). Pathophysiology of nasal congestion. *International Journal of General Medicine*, 3, 47-57. <https://dx.doi.org/10.2147%2Fijgm.s8088>
- National Library of Medicine. (2022, February 11). *The role of inflammation in tinnitus: A systematic review and*

meta-analysis. National Center for Biotechnology Information. <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC8878384/>

Ontario Association of Optometrists. (n.d.). AMD (*age-related macular degeneration*). <https://opto.ca/health-library/amd%20and%20low%20vision>

Ontario Association of Optometrists. (2023, March 28). *Glaucoma*. <https://opto.ca/health-library/about-glaucoma>

Piercefield, E.W., Collier, S.A., Hlavsa, M.C., & Beach, M.J. (2011, May 20). *Estimated burden of acute otitis externa – United States, 2003-2007*. CDC Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6019a2.htm?s_cid=mm6019a2_w

Veterans Affairs Canada. (2019, February 20). *Otosclerosis*. <https://www.veterans.gc.ca/eng/health-support/physical-health-and-wellness/compensation-illness-injury/disability-benefits/benefits-determined/entitlement-eligibility-guidelines/otoscl>

CHAPTER 16: NERVOUS SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [16.1 – Introduction to the Nervous System](#)
- [16.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Nervous System](#)
- [16.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Nervous System](#)
- [16.4 – Nervous System Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

16.1 - Introduction to the Nervous System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy of the nervous system and describe the main functions of the nervous system
- Analyse, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the nervous system and use correct abbreviations
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of nervous system terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the nervous system and explore common diseases, disorders, and procedures related to the nervous system

Nervous System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the nervous system.

Prefix

- **poly-** (many, much)
- **a-** (absence of, without, no, not)
- **an-** (absence of, without, no, not)
- **pan-** (all, total)
- **post-** (after)
- **para-** (beside, beyond, around, abnormal)
- **pre-** (before)
- **sub-** (below, under)
- **dys-** (painful, abnormal, difficult, laboured)
- **intra-** (within)

- **hemi-** (half)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **inter-** (between)

Combining Form

- **cephal/o** (head)
- **cerebell/o** (cerebellum)
- **cerebr/o** (cerebrum)
- **dur/o** (dura mater, hard)
- **encephal/o** (brain)
- **esthesi/o** (sensation, sensitivity, feeling)
- **gangli/o** (ganglion)
- **ganglion/o** (ganglion)
- **gli/o** (glia, gluey substance)
- **mening/o** (meninges)
- **meningi/o** (meninges)
- **ment/o** (mind)
- **mon/o** (one, single)
- **myel/o** (spinal cord)
- **neur/o** (nerve)
- **phas/o** (speech)
- **poli/o** (gray matter)
- **psych/o** (mind)
- **quadr/i** (four)
- **radic/o** (nerve root)
- **radicul/o** (nerve root)
- **rhiz/o** (nerve root)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-algia** (pain)
- **-cele** (hernia, protrusion)
- **-cyte** (cell)
- **-ectomy** (excision, surgical removal, cutting out)
- **-genic** (producing, originating, causing)
- **-gram** (the record, radiographic image)
- **-graph** (instrument used to record)
- **-graphy** (process of recording, radiographic imaging)
- **-ia** (condition of, diseased state or abnormal state)
- **-ic** (pertaining to)
- **-iatrist** (specialist, physician)

- **-atry** (specialty, treatment)
- **-ictal** (seizure, attack)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist, physician)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-lysis** (loosening, dissolution, separating)
- **-malacia** (softening)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-osis** (abnormal condition)
- **-paresis** (slight paralysis)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-plasty** (surgical repair)
- **-plegia** (paralysis)
- **-sclerosis** (hardening)
- **-rrhaphy** (suturing, repairing)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)

Activity source: Nervous System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Introduction to the Nervous System

The picture you have in your mind of the nervous system probably includes the **brain**, the **nervous tissue** contained within the cranium, and the **spinal cord**, the extension of nervous tissue within the vertebral column. That suggests it is made of two organs—and you may not even think of the spinal cord as an organ—but the nervous system is a very complex structure. Within the brain, many different and separate regions are responsible for many different and separate functions. It is as if the nervous system is composed of many organs that all look similar and can only be differentiated using tools such as the **microscope** or **electrophysiology**.

Watch [The Nervous System, Part 1: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #8 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Nervous System Medical Terms

Nervous System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following **nervous system** words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **quadriplegia**

- quadr/i/plegia
- paralysis of four (limbs)

2. **neurectomy**

- neur/ectomy
- excision of nerves

3. **poliomyelitis**

- poli/o/myel/itis
- inflammation of gray matter of the spinal cord

4. **intracerebral**

- intra/cerebr/al
- pertaining to within the cerebrum

5. **encephalosclerosis**

- encephal/o/sclerosis
- hardening of the brain

6. **interictal**

- inter/ictal
- occurs between seizures or attacks

7. **rhizotomy**

- rhiz/o/tomy
- incision into a nerve root

8. **hyperesthesia**

- hyper/esthesi/a
- excessive sensitivity to stimuli

9. **mental**

- ment/al
 - pertaining to the brain
10. **neuralgia**
- neur/algia
 - pain of the nerves
11. **radiculopathy**
- radicul/o/pathy
 - disease of the nerve roots
12. **panplegia**
- pan/plegia
 - total paralysis
13. **monoparesis**
- mon/o/paresis
 - slight paralysis of one (limb)
14. **duritis**
- dur/itis
 - inflammation of the dura mater
15. **anesthesia**
- an/esthesi/a
 - without (loss of) feeling or sensation
16. **cerebellitis**
- cerebell/itis
 - inflammation of the cerebellum
17. **encephalomalacia**
- encephal/o/malacia
 - softening of the brain
18. **cerebral thrombosis**
- cerebr/al thromb/osis
 - Abnormal condition of blood clot pertaining to the cerebrum (blood clot in a blood vessel in the brain)
19. **craniocerebral**

- crani/o/cerebr/al
 - pertaining to the cranium and cerebrum
20. **glioma**
- gli/oma
 - tumour composed of the glial tissue
21. **psychiatrist**
- psych/iatrist
 - physician who studies and treats disorders of the mind
22. **cephalgia**
- ceph/algia
 - *rebel does not follow the rules*
 - Pain in the head (headache)
23. **neuroma**
- neur/oma
 - tumour made up of nerve (cells)
24. **psychogenic**
- psych/o/genic
 - originating in the mind
25. **polyneuropathy**
- poly/neur/o/pathy
 - disease of many nerves
26. **psychosis**
- psych/osis
 - abnormal condition of the mind
27. **mononeuropathy**
- mon/o/neur/o/pathy
 - disease affecting a single nerve
28. **electroencephalograph**
- electr/o/encephal/o/graph
 - instrument used to record electrical activity of the brain
29. **radicotomy**

- radic/o/tomy
 - incision into a nerve root
30. **aphasia**
- a/phas/ia
 - condition of without speaking
31. **poliomyelitis**
- poli/o/myel/itis
 - inflammation of the gray matter of the spinal cord
32. **gangliitis**
- gangli/itis
 - inflammation of the ganglion
33. **hemiplegia**
- hemi/plegia
 - paralysis of half (right or left) side of the body
34. **subdural hematoma**
- sub/dur/al hemat/oma
 - tumour filled with blood pertaining to below the dura mater
35. **dysphasia**
- dys/phas/ia
 - condition of difficulty speaking
36. **encephalitis**
- encephal/itis
 - inflammation of the brain
37. **subdural**
- sub/dur/al
 - pertaining to below the dura mater
38. **neurology**
- neur/o/logy
 - study of nerves
39. **CT myelography**
- CT myel/o/graphy

- process of recording the spinal cord with computed tomography
40. **glioblastoma**
- gli/o/blast/oma
 - tumour composed of developing glial tissue
41. **neuroid**
- neur/oid
 - resembling a nerve
42. **neuroarthropathy**
- neur/o/arthr/o/pathy
 - disease of the nerves and joints
43. **meningitis**
- mening/itis
 - inflammation of the meninges
44. **hemiparesis**
- hemi/paresis
 - slight paralysis of half (right or left) side of the body
45. **neurorrhaphy**
- neur/o/rrhaphy
 - suturing of a nerve
46. **psychology**
- psych/o/logy
 - study of the mind
47. **neurologist**
- neur/o/logist
 - specialist who studies and treats the nervous system
48. **neuroplasty**
- neur/o/plasty
 - surgical repair of a nerve
49. **psychopathy**
- psych/o/pathy
 - disease of the mind

50. **preictal**

- pre/ictal
- occurs before a seizure or attack

51. **radiculitis**

- radicul/itis
- inflammation of the nerve roots

52. **electroencephalography**

- electr/o/encephal/o/graphy
- process of recording the electrical activity of the brain

53. **cerebral angiography**

- cerebr/al angi/o/graphy
- process of recording (blood) vessel pertaining to the cerebrum

54. **psychiatry**

- psych/iatry
- specialty of the mind

55. **psychosomatic**

- psych/o/somat/ic
- pertaining to the mind and body

56. **neurotomy**

- neur/o/tomy
- incision into a nerve

57. **cerebral**

- cerebr/al
- pertaining to the brain

58. **neuropathy**

- neur/o/pathy
- disease of (peripheral) nerves

59. **myelomalacia**

- myel/o/malacia
- softening of the spinal cord

60. **encephalomyeloradiculitis**

- encephal/o/myel/itis
 - inflammation of brain, spinal cord and nerve roots
61. **monoplegia**
- mon/o/plegia
 - paralysis of one (limb)
62. **meningomyelocele**
- mening/o/myel/o/cele
 - protrusion of the meninges and spinal cord
63. **paresthesia**
- par/esthesi/a
 - * rebel does not follow the rules*
 - abnormal sensation in the extremities
64. **psychologist**
- psych/o/logist
 - specialist of the mind
65. **postictal**
- post/ictal
 - occurs after a seizure or attack
66. **meningioma**
- meningi/oma
 - tumour of the meninges
67. **neurolysis**
- neur/o/lysis
 - dissolution of nerve (for pain management)
68. **electroencephalogram**
- electr/o/encephal/o/gram
 - the record of electrical activity of the brain
69. **gliocyte**
- gli/o/cyte
 - glial cell
70. **polyneuritis**

- poly/neur/itis
- inflammation of many nerves

71. **neuritis**

- neur/itis
- inflammation of the nerves

72. **ganglionectomy**

- ganglion/ectomy
- excision of a ganglion

73. **meningocele**

- mening/o/cele
- protrusion of the meninges

74. **rhizomeningomyelitis**

- rhiz/o/mening/o/myel/itis
- inflammation of the nerve root, meninges and spinal cord

Activity source: Nervous System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Nervous System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Nervous System chapter content into sub-chapters.

16.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Nervous System

The Central and Peripheral Nervous Systems

The nervous system can be divided into two major regions: the central and peripheral nervous systems. The **central nervous system (CNS)** is the brain and spinal cord, and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS)** is everything else (see [Figure 16.1](#)). The brain is contained within the cranial cavity of the skull, and the spinal cord is contained within the vertebral cavity of the vertebral column. It is a bit of an oversimplification to say that the CNS is what is inside these two cavities and the peripheral nervous system is outside of them, but that is one way to start to think about it. In actuality, there are some elements of the peripheral nervous system that are within the cranial or vertebral cavities. The peripheral nervous system is so named because it is on the periphery—meaning beyond the brain and spinal cord. Depending on different aspects of the nervous system, the dividing line between central and peripheral is not necessarily universal.

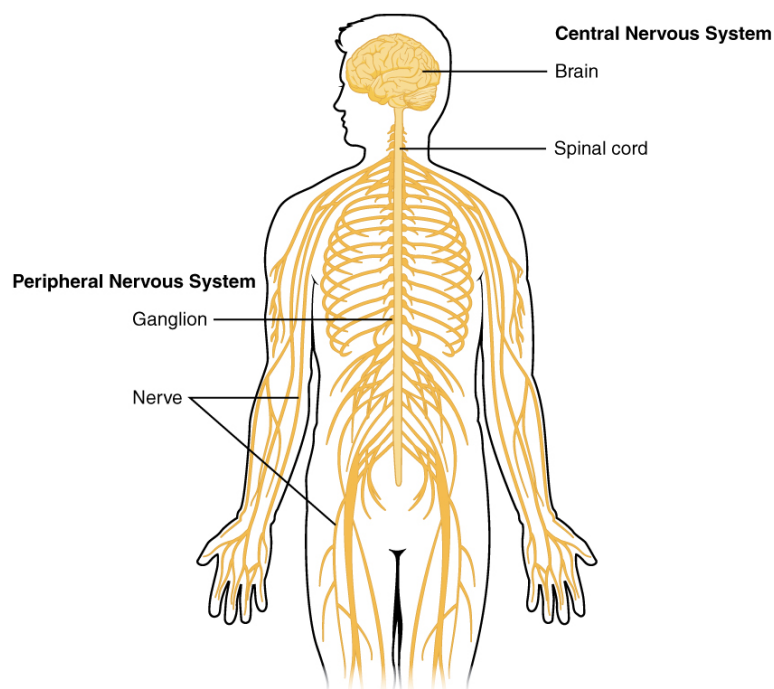


Figure 16.1 Central and Peripheral Nervous System. The structures of the PNS are referred to as ganglia and nerves, which can be seen as distinct structures. The equivalent structures in the CNS are not obvious from this overall perspective and are best examined in prepared tissue under the microscope. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.1 Image description.](#)]

Nervous tissue, present in both the CNS and PNS, contains two basic types of cells: neurons and glial cells. **Neurons** are the primary type of cell that most anyone associates with the nervous system. They are responsible

for the computation and communication that the nervous system provides. They are electrically active and release chemical signals to target cells. Glial cells, or **glia**, are known to play a supporting role for nervous tissue. Ongoing research pursues an expanded role that glial cells might play in signaling, but neurons are still considered the basis of this function. Neurons are important, but without glial support they would not be able to perform their function. A glial cell is one of a variety of cells that provide a framework of tissue that supports the neurons and their activities. The neuron is the more functionally important of the two, in terms of the communicative function of the nervous system. To describe the functional divisions of the nervous system, it is important to understand the structure of a neuron.

Did You Know 1?

The brain has over 100 billion neurons.

Neurons are cells and therefore have a **soma**, or cell body, but they also have extensions of the cell; each extension is generally referred to as a process. There is one important process that every neuron has called an **axon**, which is the fiber that connects a neuron with its target. Another type of process that branches off from the soma is the dendrite. **Dendrites** are responsible for receiving most of the input from other neurons.

Looking at nervous tissue, there are regions that predominantly contain cell bodies and regions that are largely composed of just axons. These two regions within nervous system structures are often referred to as **gray matter** (the regions with many cell bodies and dendrites) or **white matter** (the regions with many axons). [Figure 16.2](#) demonstrates the appearance of these regions in the brain and spinal cord. The colours ascribed to these regions are what would be seen in “fresh,” or unstained, nervous tissue. Gray matter is not necessarily gray. It can be pinkish because of blood content, or even slightly tan, depending on how long the tissue has been preserved. White matter is white because axons are insulated by a lipid-rich substance called myelin. Lipids can appear as white (“fatty”) material, much like the fat on a raw piece of chicken or beef. Actually, gray matter may have that colour ascribed to it because next to the white matter, it is just darker—hence, gray.

The distinction between **gray matter** and **white matter** is most often applied to central nervous tissue, which has large regions that can be seen with the unaided eye. When looking at peripheral structures, often a microscope is used and the tissue is stained with artificial colours. That is not to say that central nervous tissue cannot be stained and viewed under a microscope, but unstained tissue is most likely from the CNS—for example, a frontal section of the brain or cross section of the spinal cord.

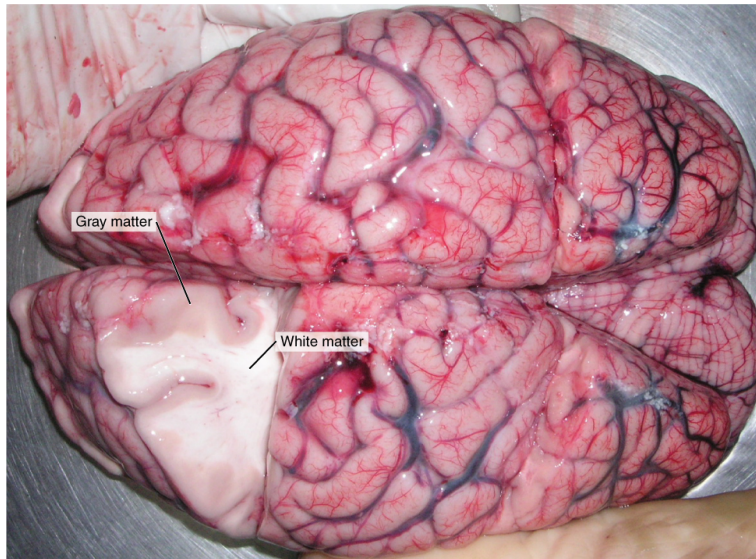


Figure 16.2 Gray Matter and White Matter. A brain removed during an autopsy, with a partial section removed, shows white matter surrounded by gray matter. Gray matter makes up the outer cortex of the brain. (credit: modification of work by "Suseno"/Wikimedia Commons). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.2 Image description.](#)]

The Adult Brain

The adult brain is separated into four major regions: the cerebrum, the diencephalon, the brain stem, and the cerebellum. The cerebrum is the largest portion and contains the cerebral cortex and subcortical nuclei. It is divided into two halves by the longitudinal fissure.

The Cerebrum

The iconic gray mantle of the human brain, which appears to make up most of the mass of the brain, is the **cerebrum** (see [Figure 16.3](#)). The wrinkled portion is the cerebral cortex, and the rest of the structure is beneath that outer covering. There is a large separation between the two sides of the cerebrum called the **longitudinal** fissure. It separates the cerebrum into two distinct halves, a right and left **cerebral hemisphere**. Deep within the cerebrum, the white matter of the corpus callosum provides the major pathway for communication between the two hemispheres of the cerebral cortex.

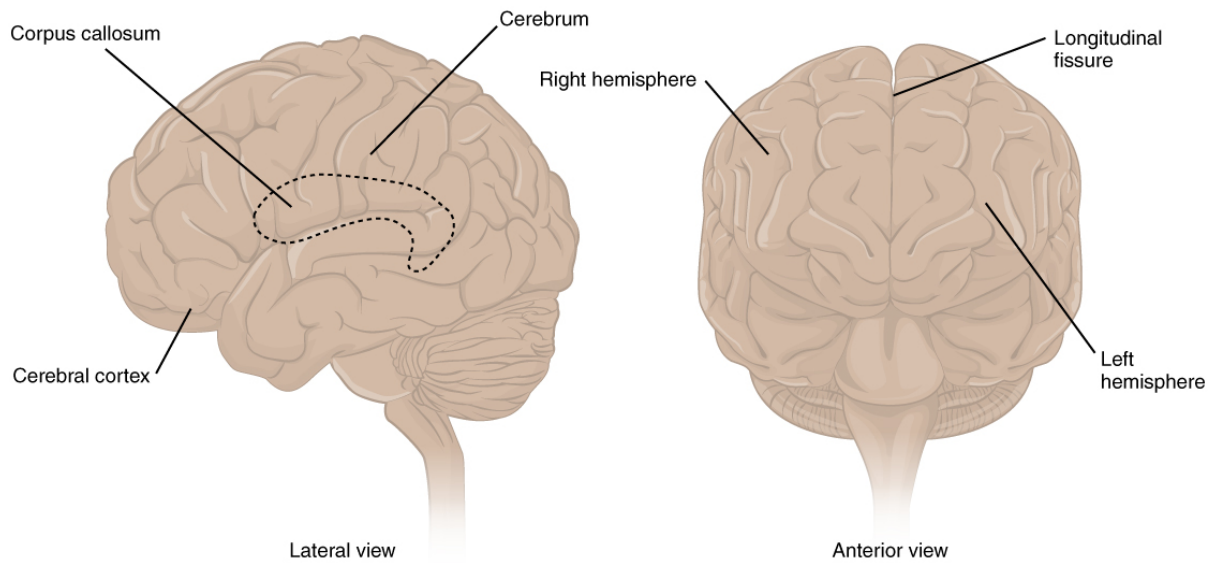


Figure 16.3 The Cerebrum. The cerebrum is a large component of the CNS in humans, and the most obvious aspect of it is the folded surface called the cerebral cortex. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 16.3 Image description.](#)]

Did You Know 2?

The brain is about 75% water and is the fattest organ in the body.

Many of the higher neurological functions, such as memory, emotion, and consciousness, are the result of cerebral function. The complexity of the cerebrum is different across vertebrate species. The cerebrum of the most primitive vertebrates is not much more than the connection for the sense of smell. In mammals, the cerebrum comprises the outer gray matter that is the cortex (from the Latin word meaning “bark of a tree”) and several deep nuclei that belong to three important functional groups. The basal nuclei are responsible for cognitive processing, the most important function being that associated with planning movements. The basal forebrain contains nuclei that are important in learning and memory. The limbic cortex is the region of the cerebral cortex that part of the limbic system, a collection of structures involved in emotion, memory, and behavior.

Cerebral Cortex

The cerebrum is covered by a continuous layer of gray matter that wraps around either side of the forebrain—the

cerebral cortex. This thin, extensive region of wrinkled gray matter is responsible for the higher functions of the nervous system. A gyrus (plural = gyri) is the ridge of one of those wrinkles, and a sulcus (plural = sulci) is the groove between two gyri. The pattern of these folds of tissue indicates specific regions of the cerebral cortex.

The head is limited by the size of the birth canal, and the brain must fit inside the cranial cavity of the skull. Extensive folding in the cerebral cortex enables more gray matter to fit into this limited space. If the gray matter of the cortex were peeled off of the cerebrum and laid out flat, its surface area would be roughly equal to one square meter.

The folding of the cortex maximizes the amount of gray matter in the cranial cavity. During embryonic development, as the **telencephalon** expands within the skull, the brain goes through a regular course of growth that results in everyone's brain having a similar pattern of folds. The surface of the brain can be mapped on the basis of the locations of large gyri and sulci. Using these landmarks, the cortex can be separated into four major regions, or lobes (see [Figure 16.4](#)). The lateral sulcus that separates the temporal lobe from the other regions is one such landmark. Superior to the lateral sulcus are the **parietal lobe** and **frontal lobe**, which are separated from each other by the **central sulcus**. The posterior region of the cortex is the **occipital lobe**, which has no obvious anatomical border between it and the parietal or temporal lobes on the lateral surface of the brain. From the medial surface, an obvious landmark separating the parietal and occipital lobes is called the parieto-occipital sulcus. The fact that there is no obvious anatomical border between these lobes is consistent with the functions of these regions being interrelated.

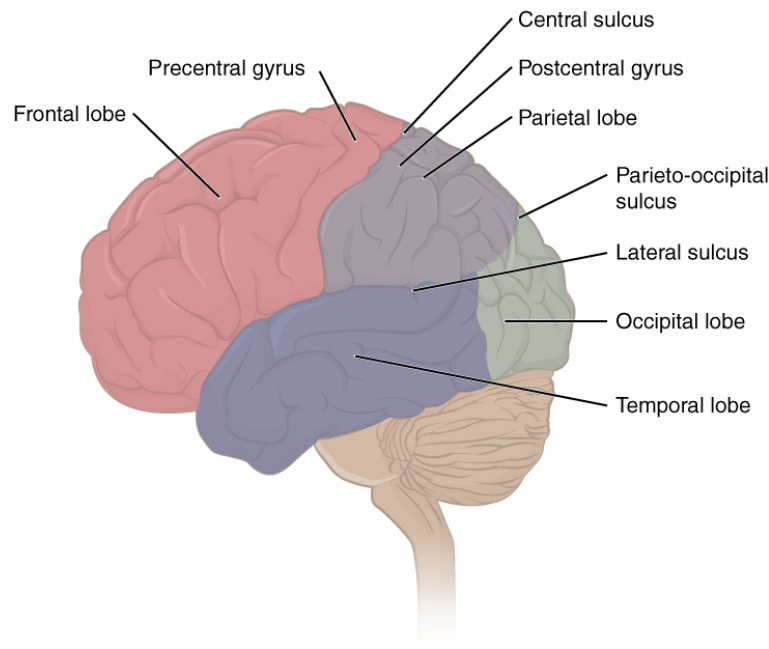


Figure 16.4 Lobes of the Cerebral Cortex. The cerebral cortex is divided into four lobes. Extensive folding increases the surface area available for cerebral functions. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.4 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check 1

- Identify the two major divisions of the nervous system.
- Describe the **cerebral cortex**.
- What are the halves of the cerebrum known as?

The Diencephalon

The diencephalon is deep beneath the cerebrum and constitutes the walls of the third ventricle. The diencephalon can be described as any region of the brain with “thalamus” in its name. The two major regions of the diencephalon are the thalamus itself and the hypothalamus (see [Figure 16.5](#)). There are other structures, such as the epithalamus, which contains the pineal gland, or the subthalamus, which includes the subthalamic nucleus that is part of the basal nuclei.

Thalamus

The **thalamus** is a collection of nuclei that relay information between the cerebral cortex and the periphery, spinal cord, or brain stem. All sensory information, except for the sense of smell, passes through the thalamus before processing by the cortex. For example, the portion of the thalamus that receives visual information will influence what visual stimuli are important, or what receives attention.

The cerebrum also sends information down to the thalamus, which usually communicates motor commands. This involves interactions with the cerebellum and other nuclei in the brain stem. The cerebrum interacts with the basal nuclei, which involves connections with the thalamus. The primary output of the basal nuclei is to the thalamus, which relays that output to the cerebral cortex. The cortex also sends information to the thalamus that will then influence the effects of the basal nuclei.

Hypothalamus

Inferior and slightly anterior to the thalamus is the **hypothalamus**, the other major region of the diencephalon. The hypothalamus is a collection of nuclei that are largely involved in regulating homeostasis. The hypothalamus is the executive region in charge of the **autonomic nervous system** and the endocrine system through its regulation of the anterior pituitary gland. Other parts of the hypothalamus are involved in memory and emotion as part of the limbic system.

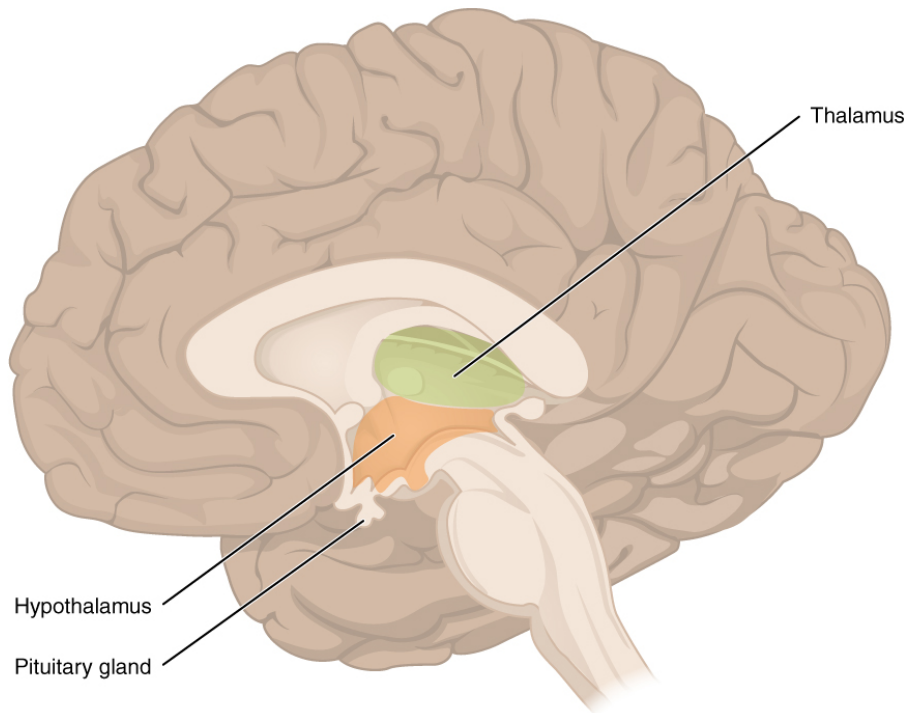


Figure 16.5 The Diencephalon. The diencephalon is composed primarily of the thalamus and hypothalamus, which together define the walls of the third ventricle. The thalami are two elongated, ovoid structures on either side of the midline that make contact in the middle. The hypothalamus is inferior and anterior to the thalamus, culminating in a sharp angle to which the pituitary gland is attached. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [[Fig. 16.5 Image description.](#)]

Brain Stem

The midbrain and hindbrain (composed of the **pons** and the **medulla**) are collectively referred to as the brain stem (see [Figure 16.6](#)). The structure emerges from the ventral surface of the forebrain as a tapering cone that connects the brain to the spinal cord. Attached to the brain stem, but considered a separate region of the adult brain, is the cerebellum. The midbrain coordinates sensory representations of the visual, auditory, and somatosensory perceptual spaces. The pons is the main connection with the cerebellum. The pons and the medulla regulate several crucial functions, including the cardiovascular and respiratory systems and rates.

The cranial nerves connect through the brain stem and provide the brain with the sensory input and motor output associated with the head and neck, including most of the special senses. The major ascending and descending pathways between the spinal cord and brain, specifically the cerebrum, pass through the brain stem.

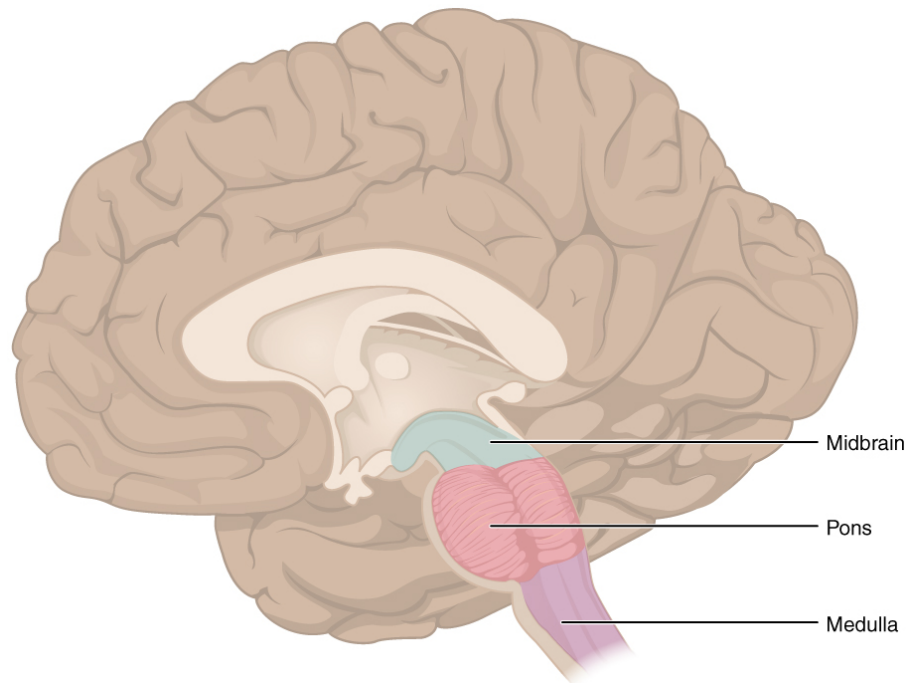


Figure 16.6 The Brain Stem. The brain stem comprises three regions: the midbrain, the pons, and the medulla. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.6 Image description.](#)]

Midbrain

One of the original regions of the embryonic brain, the midbrain is a small region between the thalamus and pons. It is separated into the **tectum** and **tegmentum**, from the Latin words for roof and floor, respectively. The cerebral aqueduct passes through the center of the midbrain, such that these regions are the roof and floor of that canal.

Pons

The word **pons** comes from the Latin word for bridge. It is visible on the anterior surface of the brain stem as the thick bundle of white matter attached to the cerebellum. The pons is the main connection between the cerebellum and the brain stem. The bridge-like white matter is only the anterior surface of the pons; the gray matter beneath that is a continuation of the tegmentum from the midbrain. Gray matter in the tegmentum region of the pons contains neurons receiving descending input from the forebrain that is sent to the cerebellum.

Medulla

The medulla is the region known as the **myelencephalon** in the embryonic brain. The initial portion of the name, “myel,” refers to the significant white matter found in this region—especially on its exterior, which is continuous

with the white matter of the spinal cord. The tegmentum of the midbrain and pons continues into the medulla because this gray matter is responsible for processing cranial nerve information. A diffuse region of gray matter throughout the brain stem, known as the reticular formation, is related to sleep and wakefulness, such as general brain activity and attention.

The Cerebellum

The cerebellum, as the name suggests, is the “little brain.” It is covered in **gyri** and sulci like the cerebrum, and looks like a miniature version of that part of the brain (see [Figure 16.7](#)). The cerebellum is largely responsible for comparing information from the cerebrum with sensory feedback from the periphery through the spinal cord. It accounts for approximately 10 percent of the mass of the brain.

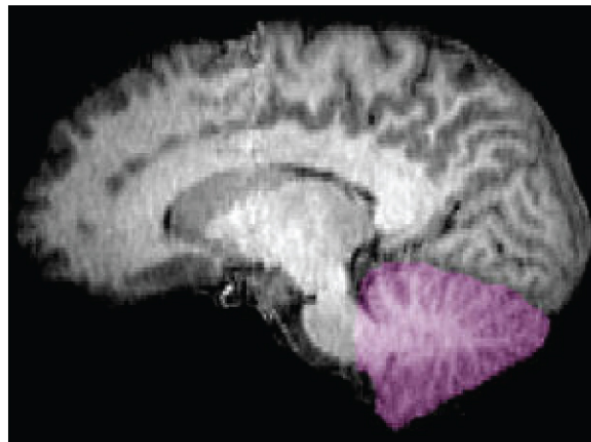
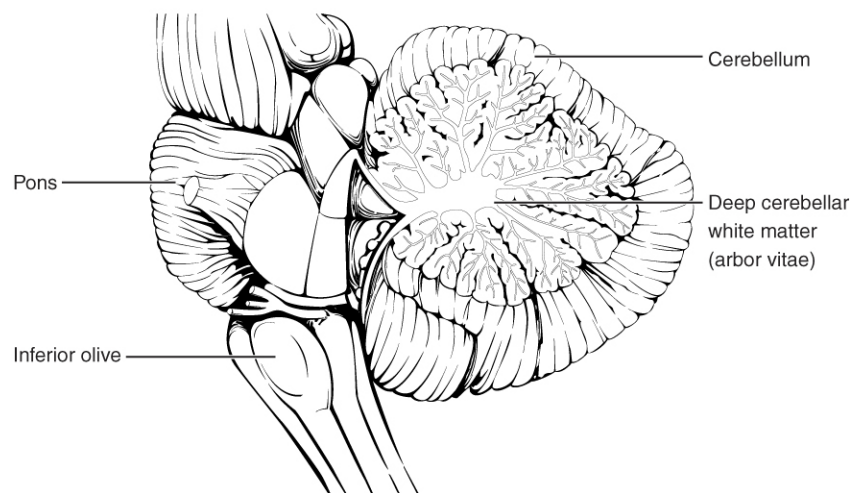


Figure 16.7 The Cerebellum. The cerebellum is situated on the posterior surface of the brain stem. Descending input from the cerebellum enters through the large white matter structure of the pons. Ascending input from the periphery and spinal cord enters through the fibers of the inferior olive. Output goes to the midbrain, which sends a descending signal to the spinal cord. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.7 Image description.](#)]

Concept Check 2

- What is the primary processing purpose of the **medulla**?
- Identify the structure in the brain responsible for sensory feedback through the spinal cord. Suggest what may happen if this function failed.

The Spinal Cord

The description of the CNS is concentrated on the structures of the brain, but the spinal cord is another major organ of the system. Whereas the brain develops out of expansions of the neural tube into primary and then secondary vesicles, the spinal cord maintains the tube structure and is only specialized into certain regions. As the spinal cord continues to develop in the newborn, anatomical features mark its surface. The anterior midline is marked by the anterior median fissure, and the posterior midline is marked by the posterior median sulcus. Axons enter the posterior side through the dorsal (posterior) nerve root, which marks the posterolateral sulcus on either side. The axons emerging from the anterior side do so through the ventral (anterior) nerve root. Note that it is common to see the terms dorsal (dorsal = “back”) and ventral (ventral = “belly”) used interchangeably with posterior and anterior, particularly in reference to nerves and the structures of the spinal cord. You should learn to be comfortable with both.

On the whole, the posterior regions are responsible for sensory functions and the anterior regions are associated with motor functions. This comes from the initial development of the spinal cord, which is divided into the basal plate and the alar plate. The basal plate is closest to the ventral midline of the neural tube, which will become the anterior face of the spinal cord and gives rise to motor neurons. The alar plate is on the dorsal side of the neural tube and gives rise to neurons that will receive sensory input from the periphery.

The length of the spinal cord is divided into regions that correspond to the regions of the vertebral column. The name of a spinal cord region corresponds to the level at which spinal nerves pass through the intervertebral foramina. Immediately adjacent to the brain stem is the following divisions of the spinal cord:

- cervical region
- thoracic region
- lumbar region
- sacral region

Did You Know 3?

The bundle of nerve fibers making up the spinal cord is no thicker than the human thumb.

The spinal cord is not the full length of the vertebral column because the spinal cord does not grow significantly longer after the first or second year, but the skeleton continues to grow. The nerves that emerge from the spinal cord pass through the intervertebral **foramina** at the respective levels. As the vertebral column grows, these nerves grow with it and result in a long bundle of nerves that resembles a horse's tail and is named the **cauda equina**. The sacral spinal cord is at the level of the upper lumbar vertebral bones. The spinal nerves extend from their various levels to the proper level of the vertebral column.

Neurons

Neurons are the cells considered to be the basis of nervous tissue. They are responsible for the electrical signals that communicate information about sensations, and that produce movements in response to those stimuli, along with inducing thought processes within the brain. An important part of the function of neurons is in their structure, or shape. The three-dimensional shape of these cells makes the immense numbers of connections within the nervous system possible.

Parts of a Neuron

As you learned in the first section, the main part of a neuron is the **cell body**, which is also known as the soma (soma = "body"). The cell body contains the nucleus and most of the major organelles. But what makes neurons special is that they have many extensions of their cell membranes, which are generally referred to as processes. Neurons are usually described as having one, and only one, axon—a fiber that emerges from the cell body and projects to target cells. That single axon can branch repeatedly to communicate with many **target** cells. It is the axon that **propagates** the nerve impulse, which is communicated to one or more cells. The other processes of the neuron are dendrites, which receive information from other neurons at specialized areas of contact called synapses. The dendrites are usually highly branched processes, providing locations for other neurons to communicate with the cell body. Information flows through a neuron from the dendrites, across the cell body, and down the axon. This gives the neuron a polarity—meaning that information flows in this one direction. [Figure 16.8](#) shows the relationship of these parts to one another.

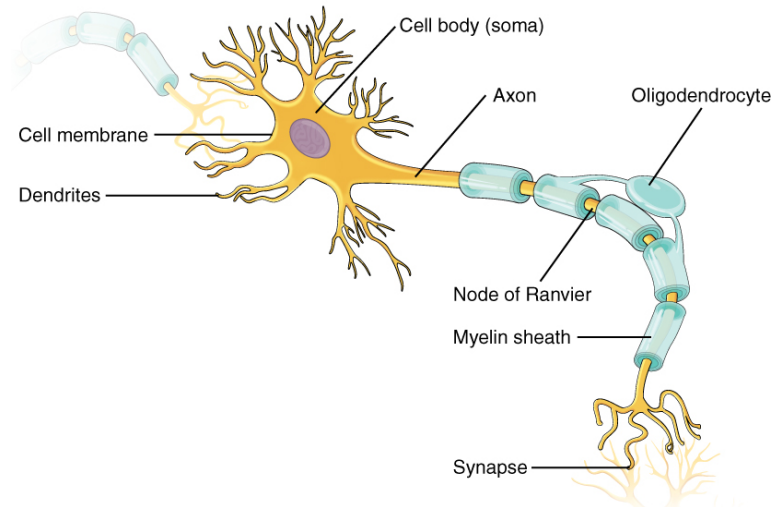


Figure 16.8 Parts of a Neuron. The major parts of the neuron are labeled on a multipolar neuron from the CNS. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.8 Image description.](#)]

Where the axon emerges from the cell body, there is a special region referred to as the **axon hillock**. This is a tapering of the cell body toward the axon fiber. Within the axon hillock, the cytoplasm changes to a solution of limited components called **axoplasm**. Because the axon hillock represents the beginning of the axon, it is also referred to as the initial segment.

Many axons are wrapped by an insulating substance called myelin, which is actually made from glial cells. Myelin acts as insulation much like the plastic or rubber that is used to insulate electrical wires. A key difference between **myelin** and the insulation on a wire is that there are gaps in the myelin covering of an axon. Each gap is called a node of Ranvier and is important to the way that electrical signals travel down the axon. The length of the axon between each gap, which is wrapped in myelin, is referred to as an axon segment. At the end of the axon is the axon terminal, where there are usually several branches extending toward the target cell, each of which ends in an enlargement called a synaptic end bulb. These bulbs are what make the connection with the target cell at the synapse.

Types of Neurons

There are many neurons in the nervous system—a number in the trillions. And there are many different types of neurons. They can be classified by many different criteria. The first way to classify them is by the number of processes attached to the cell body. Using the standard model of neurons, one of these processes is the axon, and the rest are dendrites. Because information flows through the neuron from dendrites or cell bodies toward the axon, these names are based on the neuron's polarity (see [Figure 16.9](#)).

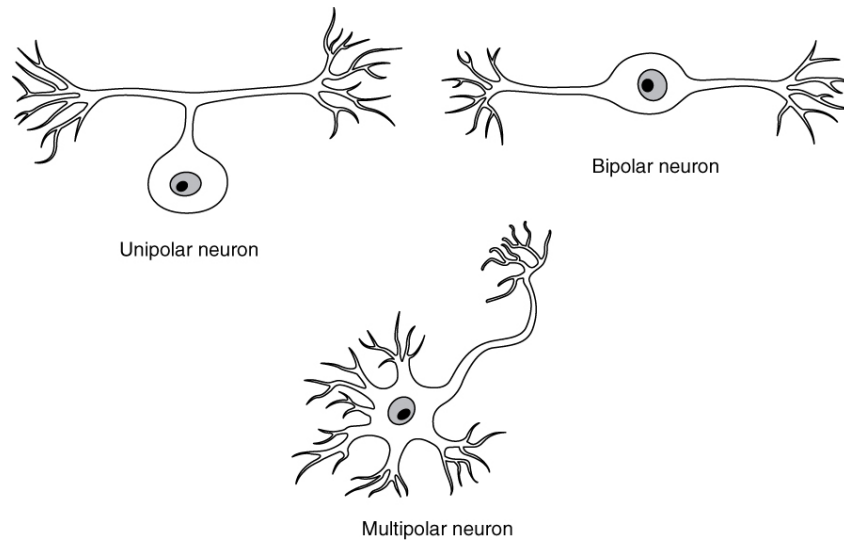


Figure 16.9 Neuron Classification by Shape. Unipolar cells have one process that includes both the axon and dendrite. Bipolar cells have two processes, the axon and a dendrite. Multipolar cells have more than two processes, the axon and two or more dendrites. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.9 Image description.](#)]

Unipolar cells have only one process emerging from the cell. True unipolar cells are only found in invertebrate animals, so the unipolar cells in humans are more appropriately called “pseudo-unipolar” cells. Invertebrate unipolar cells do not have dendrites.

Bipolar cells have two processes, which extend from each end of the cell body, opposite to each other. One is the axon and one the dendrite. Bipolar cells are not very common. They are found mainly in the olfactory epithelium (where smell stimuli are sensed), and as part of the retina.

Multipolar neurons are all of the neurons that are not unipolar or bipolar. They have one axon and two or more dendrites (usually many more). With the exception of the unipolar sensory ganglion cells, and the two specific bipolar cells mentioned above, all other neurons are multipolar.

Neurons can also be classified on the basis of where they are found, who found them, what they do, or even what chemicals they use to communicate with each other. Some neurons referred to in this section on the nervous system are named on the basis of those sorts of classifications (see [Figure 16.10](#)). For example, a multipolar neuron that has a very important role to play in a part of the brain called the cerebellum is known as a Purkinje (commonly pronounced per-KIN-gee) cell. It is named after the anatomist who discovered it (Jan Evangelista Purkinje, 1787–1869).

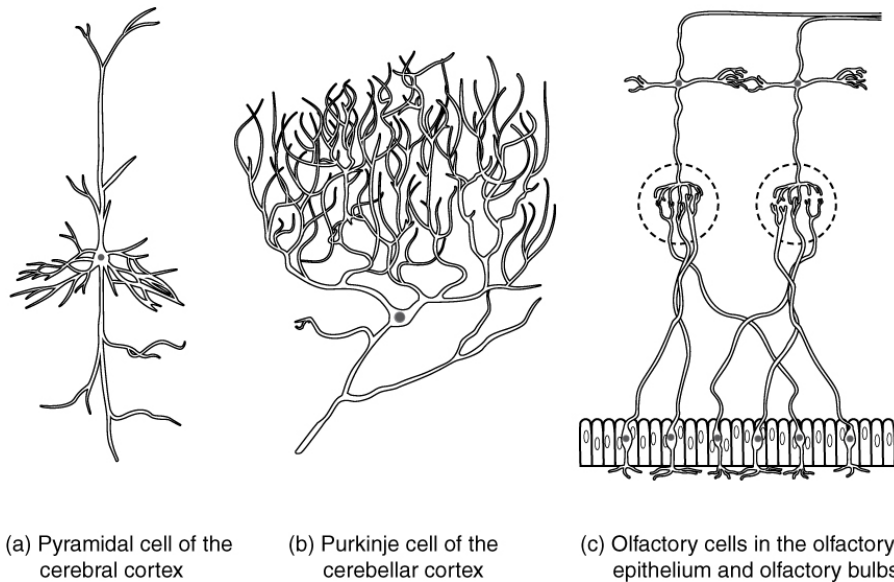


Figure 16.10 Other Neuron Classifications. Three examples of neurons that are classified on the basis of other criteria. (a) The pyramidal cell is a multipolar cell with a cell body that is shaped something like a pyramid. (b) The Purkinje cell in the cerebellum was named after the scientist who originally described it. (c) Olfactory neurons are named for the functional group with which they belong. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.10 Image description.](#)]

Glial Cells

Glial cells, or neuroglia or simply glia, are the other type of cell found in nervous tissue. They are considered to be supporting cells, and many functions are directed at helping neurons complete their function for communication. The name glia comes from the Greek word that means “glue,” and was coined by the German pathologist Rudolph Virchow, who wrote in 1856: “This connective substance, which is in the brain, the spinal cord, and the special sense nerves, is a kind of glue (neuroglia) in which the nervous elements are planted.” Today, research into nervous tissue has shown that there are many deeper roles that these cells play. And research may find much more about them in the future.

There are six types of glial cells. Four of them are found in the CNS and two are found in the PNS. [Table 16.1](#) outlines some common characteristics and functions.

Table 16.1: Glial Cell Types by Location and Basic Function. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

CNS Glia	PNS Glia	Basic Function
Astrocyte	Satellite cell	Support
Oligodendrocyte	Schwann cell	Insulation, myelination
Microglia	–	Immune surveillance and phagocytosis
Ependymal cell	–	Creating CSF

Glial Cells of the CNS

One cell providing support to neurons of the CNS is the astrocyte, so named because it appears to be star-shaped under the microscope (astro- = “star”). **Astrocytes** have many processes extending from their main cell body (not axons or dendrites like neurons, just cell extensions). Those processes extend to interact with neurons, blood vessels, or the connective tissue covering the CNS that is called the pia mater (see [Figure 16.11](#)). Generally, they are supporting cells for the neurons in the central nervous system. Some ways in which they support neurons in the central nervous system are by maintaining the concentration of chemicals in the extracellular space, removing excess signaling molecules, reacting to tissue damage, and contributing to the **blood-brain barrier** (BBB). The blood-brain barrier is a physiological barrier that keeps many substances that circulate in the rest of the body from getting into the central nervous system, restricting what can cross from circulating blood into the CNS. Nutrient molecules, such as glucose or amino acids, can pass through the BBB, but other molecules cannot. This actually causes problems with drug delivery to the CNS. Pharmaceutical companies are challenged to design drugs that can cross the BBB as well as have an effect on the nervous system.

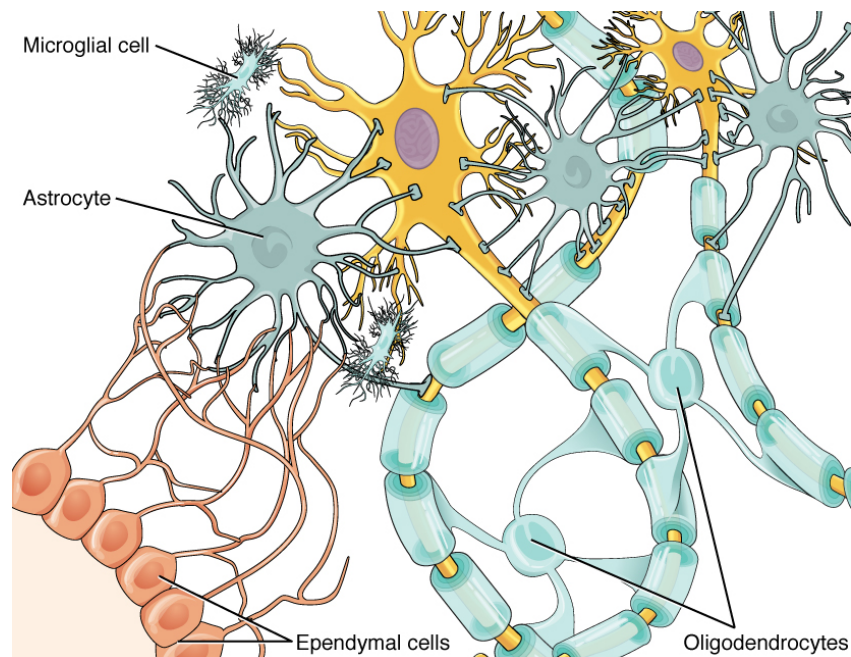


Figure 16.11 Glial Cells of the CNS. The CNS has astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, microglia, and ependymal cells that support the neurons of the CNS in several ways. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.11 Image description.](#)]

Like a few other parts of the body, the brain has a privileged blood supply. Very little can pass through by diffusion. Most substances that cross the wall of a blood vessel into the CNS must do so through an active transport process. Because of this, only specific types of molecules can enter the CNS. Glucose—the primary energy source—is allowed, as are amino acids. Water and some other small particles, like gases and ions, can enter. But most everything else cannot, including white blood cells, which are one of the body’s main lines of defense. While this barrier protects the CNS from exposure to toxic or pathogenic substances, it also keeps out the cells that could protect the brain and spinal cord from disease and damage. The BBB also makes it harder for

pharmaceuticals to be developed that can affect the nervous system. Aside from finding efficacious substances, the means of delivery is also crucial.

Oligodendrocyte, sometimes called just “oligo,” which is the glial cell type that insulates axons in the CNS. The name means “cell of a few branches” (oligo- = “few”; dendro- = “branches”; -cyte = “cell”). There are a few processes that extend from the cell body. Each one reaches out and surrounds an axon to insulate it in myelin.

Microglia are, as the name implies, smaller than most of the other glial cells. Ongoing research into these cells, although not entirely conclusive, suggests that they may originate as white blood cells, called macrophages, that become part of the CNS during early development. While their origin is not conclusively determined, their function is related to what macrophages do in the rest of the body. When macrophages encounter diseased or damaged cells in the rest of the body, they ingest and digest those cells or the pathogens that cause disease. Microglia are the cells in the CNS that can do this in normal, healthy tissue, and they are therefore also referred to as CNS-resident macrophages.

The **ependymal** cell is a glial cell that filters blood to make cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), the fluid that circulates through the CNS. Because of the privileged blood supply inherent in the BBB, the extracellular space in nervous tissue does not easily exchange components with the blood. Ependymal cells line each ventricle, one of four central cavities that are remnants of the hollow center of the neural tube formed during the embryonic development of the brain. They also have cilia on their apical surface to help move the CSF through the ventricular space. The relationship of these glial cells to the structure of the CNS is seen in [Figure 16.11](#).

Glial Cells of the PNS

One of the two types of glial cells found in the PNS is the **satellite** cell. Satellite cells are found in sensory and autonomic ganglia, where they surround the cell bodies of neurons. This accounts for the name, based on their appearance under the microscope. They provide support, performing similar functions in the periphery as astrocytes do in the CNS—except, of course, for establishing the BBB.

The second type of glial cell is the **Schwann** cell, which insulate axons with myelin in the periphery. Schwann cells are different than oligodendrocytes, in that a Schwann cell wraps around a portion of only one axon segment and no others. Oligodendrocytes have processes that reach out to multiple axon segments, whereas the entire Schwann cell surrounds just one axon segment. The nucleus and cytoplasm of the Schwann cell are on the edge of the myelin sheath. The relationship of these two types of glial cells to ganglia and nerves in the PNS is seen in [Figure 16.12](#).

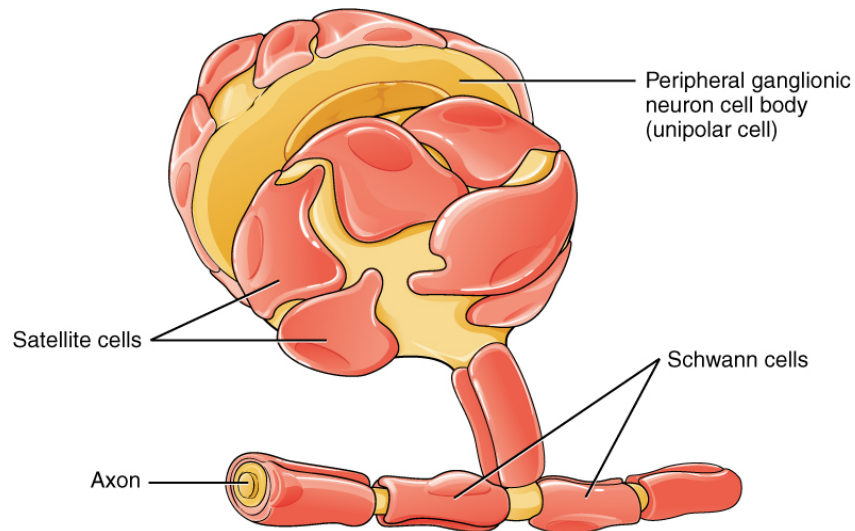


Figure 16.12 Glial Cells of the PNS. The PNS has satellite cells and Schwann cells. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 16.12 Image description.]

Myelin

The appearance of the myelin sheath can be thought of as similar to the pastry wrapped around a hot dog for “pigs in a blanket” or a similar food. The glial cell is wrapped around the axon several times with little to no cytoplasm between the glial cell layers. For **oligodendrocytes**, the rest of the cell is separate from the myelin sheath as a cell process extends back toward the cell body. A few other processes provide the same insulation for other axon segments in the area. For Schwann cells, the outermost layer of the cell membrane contains cytoplasm and the nucleus of the cell as a bulge on one side of the myelin sheath. During development, the glial cell is loosely or incompletely wrapped around the axon. The edges of this loose enclosure extend toward each other, and one end tucks under the other. The inner edge wraps around the axon, creating several layers, and the other edge closes around the outside so that the axon is completely enclosed.

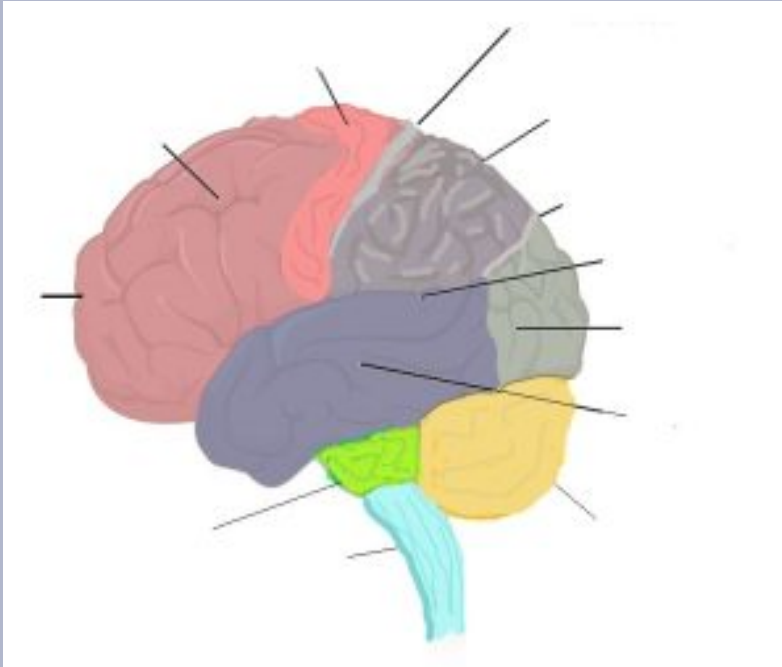
Check Your Knowledge of the Nervous System Brain Anatomy

Nervous System Brain Anatomy Labeling Activity

Nervous System Brain Anatomy Labeling Activity (Text Version)

Label the diagram with correct words listed below:

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Central sulcus, longitudinal fissure | 5. Occipital lobe | 9. Brainstem |
| 2. Pons | 6. Cerebrum | 10. Parietal lobe |
| 3. Precentral gyrus | 7. Cerebellum | 11. Temporal lobe |
| 4. Frontal Lobe | 8. Lateral Sulcus | 12. Parieto-occipital sulcus |



Nervous System Brain Anatomy Labeling Activity Diagram (Text Version)

This diagram shows the lateral view of the brain and the major lobes which are labeled. From the front of the brain (left): _____[Blank 1] is responsible for thought processes, followed by a raised surface area known as _____[Blank 2], a deep groove known as the _____[Blank 3], and another raised area known as _____[Blank 4]. The _____[Blank 5] is responsible for processes senses such as the sense of touch, followed by the _____[Blank 6] which is another deep groove on the surface of the brain. The _____[Blank 7] processes visual fields and the _____[Blank 8], which is responsible for memory capacity. The _____[Blank 9] is responsible for balance, followed by the _____[Blank 10], which is often referred to as the medulla oblongata, and finally is the _____[Blank 11] which is known as the bridge connecting the cerebrum to the cerebellum. The _____ [Blank 12] is a deep groove on the surface of the cerebrum.

Check your answers ¹

Activity source: Nervous System Brain Anatomy labeling activity by Sheila Bellefeuille from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#), illustration from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#), licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)./ Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 16.1 image description: This diagram shows a silhouette of a human highlighting the nervous system. The central nervous system is composed of the brain and spinal cord. The brain is a large mass of ridged and striated tissue within the head. The spinal cord extends down from the brain and travels through the torso, ending in the pelvis. Pairs of enlarged nervous tissue, labeled ganglia, flank the spinal cord as it travels through the rib area. The ganglia are part of the peripheral nervous system, along with the many thread-like nerves that radiate from the spinal cord and ganglia through the arms, abdomen and legs. [\[Return to Figure 16.1\].](#)

Figure 16.2 image description: This photo shows an enlarged view of the dorsal side of a human brain. The right side of the occipital lobe has been shaved to reveal the white and gray matter beneath the surface blood vessels. The white matter branches through the shaved section like the limbs of a tree. The gray matter branches and curves on outside of the white matter, creating a buffer between the outer edges of the occipital lobe and the internal white matter. [\[Return to Figure 16.2\].](#)

Figure 16.3 image description: This figure shows the lateral view on the left panel and anterior view on the right panel of the brain. The major parts including the cerebrum are labeled. Lateral view labels (clockwise from top) read: cerebrum, cerebral cortex, corpus callosum (located on the interior of the brain). Anterior view labels indicate the right and left hemispheres, and the longitudinal fissure between them. [\[Return to Figure 16.3\].](#)

Figure 16.4 image description: This figure shows the lateral view of the brain and the major lobes are labeled. From the front of the brain (left) labels read: frontal lobe, precentral gyrus, central sulcus, postcentral gyrus, parietal lobe, lateral sulcus, occipital lobe, temporal lobe. [\[Return to Figure 16.4\].](#)

Figure 16.5 image description: This figure shows the location of the thalamus, hypothalamus and pituitary gland in the brain. Each part is labelled respectively. The thalamus is located in the midsection of the brain. The hypothalamus is located below the thalamus, and the pituitary gland below that. [\[Return to Figure 16.5\].](#)

Figure 16.6 image description: This figure shows the location of the midbrain, pons and the medulla in the brain that make up the brain stem. The midbrain is located at the top, the pons is located beneath that, and the medulla is the lowest most point of the brain stem. [\[Return to Figure 16.6\].](#)

Figure 16.7 image description: This figure shows the location of the cerebellum in the brain which is located on the posterior surface of the brain stem. Labels read (top, left): pons, inferior olive, (top, right) cerebellum, deep cerebellar white matter (arbor vitae). In the top panel, a lateral view labels the location of the cerebellum and the deep cerebellar white matter. In the bottom panel, a photograph of a brain, with the cerebellum in pink is shown. [\[Return to Figure 16.7\].](#)

Figure 16.8 image description: This illustration shows the anatomy of a neuron. The neuron has a very irregular cell body (soma) containing a purple nucleus. There are six projections protruding from the top, bottom and left side of the cell body. Each of the projections branches many times, forming small, tree-shaped structures protruding from the cell body. The right side of the cell body tapers into a long cord called the axon. The axon is insulated by segments of myelin sheath, which resemble a semitransparent toilet paper roll wound around the axon. The myelin sheath is not continuous, but is separated into equally spaced segments. The bare axon segments between the sheath segments are called nodes of Ranvier. An oligodendrocyte is reaching its two arm like projections onto two myelin sheath segments. The axon branches many times at its end, where it connects to the dendrites of another neuron. Each connection between an axon branch and a dendrite is called a synapse.

The cell membrane completely surrounds the cell body, dendrites, and its axon. The axon of another nerve is seen in the upper left of the diagram connecting with the dendrites of the central neuron. [\[Return to Figure 16.8\].](#)

Figure 16.9 image description: Three illustrations show some of the possible shapes that neurons can take. In the unipolar neuron, the dendrite enters from the left and merges with the axon into a common pathway, which is connected to the cell body. The axon leaves the cell body through the common pathway, the branches off to the right, in the opposite direction as the dendrite. Therefore, this neuron is T shaped. In the bipolar neuron, the dendrite enters into the left side of the cell body while the axon emerges from the opposite (right) side. In a multipolar neuron, multiple dendrites enter into the cell body. The only part of the cell body that does not have dendrites is the part that elongates into the axon. [\[Return to Figure 16.9\].](#)

Figure 16.10 image description: This diagram contains three black and white drawings of more specialized nerve cells. Part A shows a pyramidal cell of the cerebral cortex, which has two, long, nerve tracts attached to the top and bottom of the cell body. However, the cell body also has many shorter dendrites projecting out a short distance from the cell body. Part B shows a Purkinje cell of the cerebellar cortex. This cell has a single, long, nerve tract entering the bottom of the cell body. Two large nerve tracts leave the top of the cell body but immediately branch many times to form a large web of nerve fibers. Therefore, the Purkinje cell somewhat resembles a shrub or coral in shape. Part C shows the olfactory cells in the olfactory epithelium and olfactory bulbs. It contains several cell groups linked together. At the bottom, there is a row of olfactory epithelial cells that are tightly packed, side-by-side, somewhat resembling the slats on a fence. There are six neurons embedded in this epithelium. Each neuron connects to the epithelium through branching nerve fibers projecting from the bottom of their cell bodies. A single nerve fiber projects from the top of each neuron and synapses with nerve fibers from the neurons above. These upper neurons are cross shaped, with one nerve fiber projecting from the bottom, top, right and left sides. The upper cells synapse with the epithelial nerve cells using the nerve tract projecting from the bottom of their cell body. The nerve tract projecting from the top continues the pathway, making a ninety degree turn to the right and continuing to the right border of the image. [\[Return to Figure 16.10\].](#)

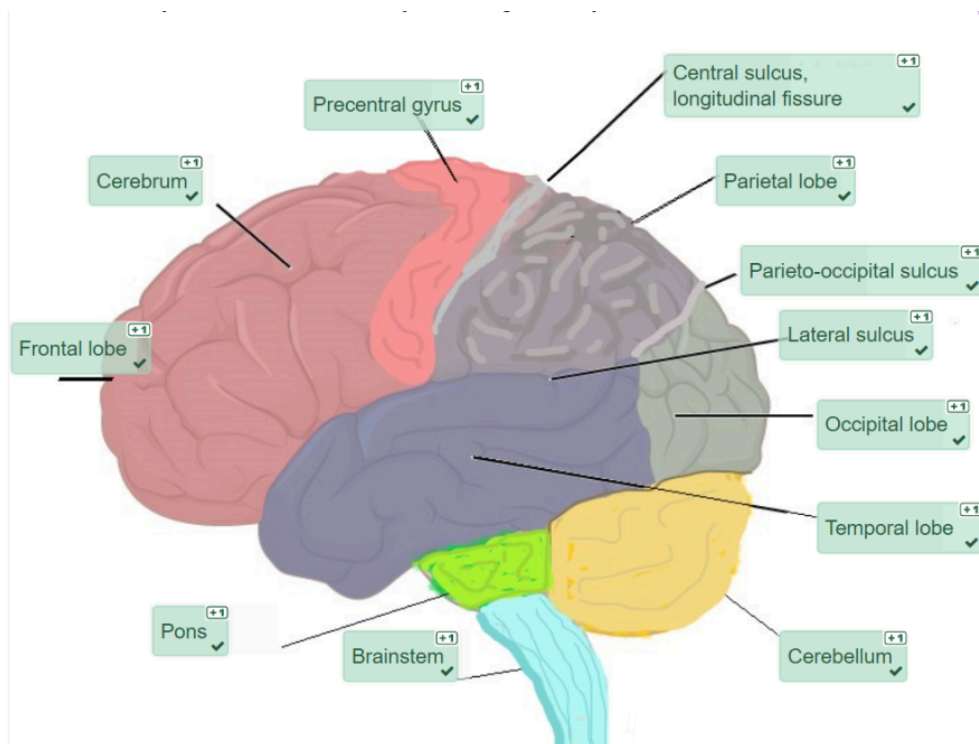
Figure 16.11 image description: This diagram shows several types of nervous system cells associated with two multipolar neurons. Astrocytes are star shaped-cells with many dendrite like projections but no axon. They are connected with the multipolar neurons and other cells in the diagram through their dendrite like projections. Ependymal cells have a teardrop shaped cell body and a long tail that branches several times before connecting with astrocytes and the multipolar neuron. Microglial cells are small cells with rectangular bodies and many dendrite like projections stemming from their shorter sides. The projections are so extensive that they give the microglial cell a fuzzy appearance. The oligodendrocytes have circular cell bodies with four dendrite like projections. Each projection is connected to a segment of myelin sheath on the axons of the multipolar neurons. The oligodendrocytes are the same color as the myelin sheath segment and are adding layers to the sheath using their projections. [\[Return to Figure 16.11\].](#)

Figure 16.12 image description: This diagram shows a collection of PNS glial cells. The largest cell is a unipolar peripheral ganglionic neuron which has a common nerve tract projecting from the bottom of its cell body. The common nerve tract then splits into the axon, going off to the left, and the dendrite, going off to the right. The cell body of the neuron is covered with several satellite cells that are irregular, flattened, and take on the appearance of fried eggs. Schwann cells wrap around each myelin sheath segment on the axon, with their nucleus creating a small bump on each segment. [\[Return to Figure 16.12\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Nervous System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Nervous System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Check your answers: Nervous System Brain Anatomy labeling activity Diagram (Text Version) This diagram shows the lateral view of the brain and the major lobes which are labeled. From the front of the brain (left): **frontal lobe** is responsible for thought processes and is part of the **cerebrum**, followed by a raised surface area known as **precentral gyrus**, a deep groove known as the **central sulcus**, and another raised area known as **postcentral gyrus**. The **parietal lobe** is responsible for processes senses such as the sense of touch, followed by the **lateral sulcus** which is another deep groove on the surface of the brain. The **occipital lobe** processes visual fields and the **temporal lobe**, which is responsible for memory capacity. The **cerebellum** is responsible for balance, followed by the **brainstem** which is often referred to as the medulla oblongata, and finally is the **pons**, which is known as the bridge connecting the cerebrum to the cerebellum. The **parieto-occipital sulcus** is a deep groove on the surface of the cerebrum.

16.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Nervous System

The nervous system is involved in receiving information about the environment around us (sensation) and generating responses to that information (motor responses). The nervous system can be divided into regions that are responsible for sensation (sensory functions) and for the response (motor functions). But there is a third function that needs to be included. Sensory input needs to be integrated with other sensations, as well as with memories, emotional state, or learning (cognition). Some regions of the nervous system are termed integration or association areas. The process of integration combines sensory perceptions and higher cognitive functions such as memories, learning, and emotion to produce a response.

Sensation

The first major function of the nervous system is sensation—receiving information about the environment to gain input about what is happening outside the body (or, sometimes, within the body). The sensory functions of the nervous system register the presence of a change from homeostasis or a particular event in the environment, known as a stimulus. The senses we think of most are the “big five”: taste, smell, touch, sight, and hearing. The stimuli for taste and smell are both chemical substances (molecules, compounds, ions, etc.), touch is physical or mechanical stimuli that interact with the skin, sight is light stimuli, and hearing is the perception of sound, which is a physical stimulus similar to some aspects of touch. There are actually more senses than just those, but that list represents the major senses. Those five are all senses that receive stimuli from the outside world, and of which there is conscious perception. Additional sensory stimuli might be from the internal environment (inside the body), such as the stretch of an organ wall or the concentration of certain ions in the blood.

Response

The nervous system produces a response on the basis of the stimuli perceived by sensory structures. An obvious response would be the movement of muscles, such as withdrawing a hand from a hot stove, but there are broader uses of the term. The nervous system can cause the contraction of all three types of muscle tissue. For example, skeletal muscle contracts to move the skeleton, cardiac muscle is influenced as heart rate increases during exercise, and smooth muscle contracts as the digestive system moves food along the digestive tract. Responses also include the neural control of glands in the body as well, such as the production and secretion of sweat by the eccrine and merocrine sweat glands found in the skin to lower body temperature.

Responses can be divided into those that are voluntary or conscious (contraction of skeletal muscle) and those that are involuntary (contraction of smooth muscles, regulation of cardiac muscle, activation of glands). Voluntary responses are governed by the somatic nervous system and involuntary responses are governed by the autonomic nervous system, which are discussed in the next section.

Integration

Stimuli that are received by sensory structures are communicated to the nervous system where that information is processed. This is called integration. Stimuli are compared with, or integrated with, other stimuli, memories of previous stimuli, or the state of a person at a particular time. This leads to the specific response that will be generated. Seeing a baseball pitched to a batter will not automatically cause the batter to swing. The trajectory of the ball and its speed will need to be considered. Maybe the count is three balls and one strike, and the batter wants to let this pitch go by in the hope of getting a walk to first base. Or maybe the batter's team is so far ahead, it would be fun to just swing away.

Controlling the Body

The nervous system can be divided into two parts mostly on the basis of a functional difference in responses. The **somatic nervous system (SNS)** is responsible for conscious perception and voluntary motor responses. Voluntary motor response means the contraction of skeletal muscle, but those contractions are not always voluntary in the sense that you have to want to perform them. Some somatic motor responses are reflexes, and often happen without a conscious decision to perform them. If your friend jumps out from behind a corner and yells “Boo!” you will be startled and you might scream or leap back. You didn't decide to do that, and you may not have wanted to give your friend a reason to laugh at your expense, but it is a reflex involving skeletal muscle contractions. Other motor responses become automatic (in other words, unconscious) as a person learns motor skills (referred to as “habit learning” or “procedural memory”).

The **autonomic nervous system (ANS)** is responsible for involuntary control of the body, usually for the sake of homeostasis (regulation of the internal environment). Sensory input for autonomic functions can be from sensory structures tuned to external or internal environmental stimuli. The motor output extends to smooth and cardiac muscle as well as glandular tissue. The role of the autonomic system is to regulate the organ systems of the body, which usually means to control homeostasis. Sweat glands, for example, are controlled by the autonomic system. When you are hot, sweating helps cool your body down. That is a homeostatic mechanism. But when you are nervous, you might start sweating also. That is not homeostatic, it is the physiological response to an emotional state.

There is another division of the nervous system that describes functional responses. The **enteric nervous system (ENS)** is responsible for controlling the smooth muscle and glandular tissue in your digestive system. It is a large part of the PNS, and is not dependent on the CNS. It is sometimes valid, however, to consider the enteric system to be a part of the autonomic system because the neural structures that make up the enteric system are a component of the autonomic output that regulates digestion. There are some differences between the two, but for our purposes here there will be a good bit of overlap. See [Figure 16.13](#) for examples of where these divisions of the nervous system can be found.

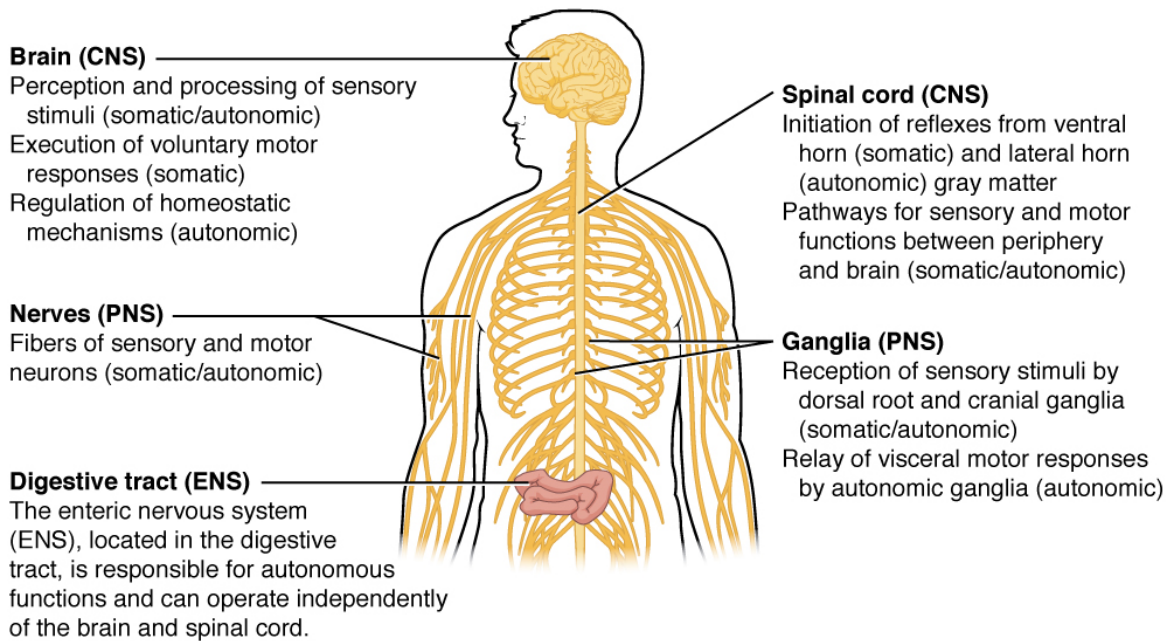


Figure 16.13 Somatic, Autonomic, and Enteric Structures of the Nervous System. Somatic structures include the spinal nerves, both motor and sensory fibers, as well as the sensory ganglia (posterior root ganglia and cranial nerve ganglia). Autonomic structures are found in the nerves also, but include the sympathetic and parasympathetic ganglia. The enteric nervous system includes the nervous tissue within the organs of the digestive tract. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 16.13 Image description.]

Functions of the Cerebral Cortex

The cerebrum is the seat of many of the higher mental functions, such as memory and learning, language, and conscious perception, which are the subjects of subtests of the **mental status** exam. The cerebral cortex is the thin layer of gray matter on the outside of the cerebrum. It is approximately a millimeter thick in most regions and highly folded to fit within the limited space of the cranial vault. These higher functions are distributed across various regions of the cortex, and specific locations can be said to be responsible for particular functions. There is a limited set of regions, for example, that are involved in language function, and they can be subdivided on the basis of the particular part of language function that each governs.

Cognitive Abilities

Assessment of cerebral functions is directed at cognitive abilities. The abilities assessed through the mental status exam can be separated into four groups: orientation and memory, language and speech, sensorium, and judgment and abstract reasoning.

Orientation and Memory

Orientation is the patient's awareness of his or her immediate circumstances. It is awareness of time, not in terms of the clock, but of the date and what is occurring around the patient. It is awareness of place, such that a patient should know where he or she is and why. It is also awareness of who the patient is—recognizing personal identity and being able to relate that to the examiner. The initial tests of orientation are based on the questions, “Do you know what the date is?” or “Do you know where you are?” or “What is your name?” Further understanding of a patient's awareness of orientation can come from questions that address remote memory, such as “Who is the President of the United States?”, or asking what happened on a specific date.

Memory is largely a function of the temporal lobe, along with structures beneath the cerebral cortex such as the hippocampus and the amygdala. The storage of memory requires these structures of the medial temporal lobe. A famous case of a man who had both medial temporal lobes removed to treat intractable epilepsy provided insight into the relationship between the structures of the brain and the function of memory.

The prefrontal cortex can also be tested for the ability to organize information. In one subtest of the mental status exam called set generation, the patient is asked to generate a list of words that all start with the same letter, but not to include proper nouns or names. The expectation is that a person can generate such a list of at least 10 words within 1 minute. Many people can likely do this much more quickly, but the standard separates the accepted normal from those with compromised prefrontal cortices.

Read the New York Times Magazine article [Forgetting Everything \[New Tab\]](#) to learn about a young man who texts his fiancée in a panic as he finds that he is having trouble remembering things. At the hospital, a neurologist administers the mental status exam, which is mostly normal except for the three-word recall test. The young man could not recall them even 30 seconds after hearing them and repeating them back to the doctor. An undiscovered mass in the mediastinum region was found to be Hodgkin's lymphoma, a type of cancer that affects the immune system and likely caused antibodies to attack the nervous system. The patient eventually regained his ability to remember, though the events in the hospital were always elusive. Considering that the effects on memory were temporary, but resulted in the loss of the specific events of the hospital stay, what regions of the brain were likely to have been affected by the antibodies and what type of memory does that represent?

Language and Speech

Language is, arguably, a very human aspect of neurological function. There are certainly strides being made in understanding communication in other species, but much of what makes the human experience seemingly unique is its basis in language. Any understanding of our species is necessarily reflective, as suggested by the question “What am I?” and the fundamental answer to this question is suggested by the famous quote by René Descartes: “Cogito Ergo Sum” (translated from Latin as “I think, therefore I am”). Formulating an understanding of yourself is largely describing who you are to yourself. It is a confusing topic to delve into, but language is certainly at the core of what it means to be self-aware.

The neurological exam has two specific subtests that address language. One measures the ability of the patient to understand language by asking them to follow a set of instructions to perform an action, such as “touch your right finger to your left elbow and then to your right knee.” Another subtest assesses the fluency and coherency

of language by having the patient generate descriptions of objects or scenes depicted in drawings, and by reciting sentences or explaining a written passage.

An important example of multimodal integrative areas is associated with language function (see [Figure 16.14](#)). Adjacent to the auditory association cortex, at the end of the lateral sulcus just anterior to the visual cortex, is **Wernicke's area**. In the lateral aspect of the frontal lobe, just anterior to the region of the motor cortex associated with the head and neck, is Broca's area. Both regions were originally described on the basis of losses of speech and language, which is called **aphasia**. The aphasia associated with Broca's area is known as an **expressive aphasia**, which means that speech production is compromised. This type of aphasia is often described as non-fluency because the ability to say some words leads to broken or halting speech. Grammar can also appear to be lost. The aphasia associated with Wernicke's area is known as a **receptive aphasia**, which is not a loss of speech production, but a loss of understanding of content. Patients, after recovering from acute forms of this aphasia, report not being able to understand what is said to them or what they are saying themselves, but they often cannot keep from talking.

The two regions are connected by white matter tracts that run between the posterior temporal lobe and the lateral aspect of the frontal lobe. **Conduction aphasia** associated with damage to this connection refers to the problem of connecting the understanding of language to the production of speech. This is a very rare condition, but is likely to present as an inability to faithfully repeat spoken language.

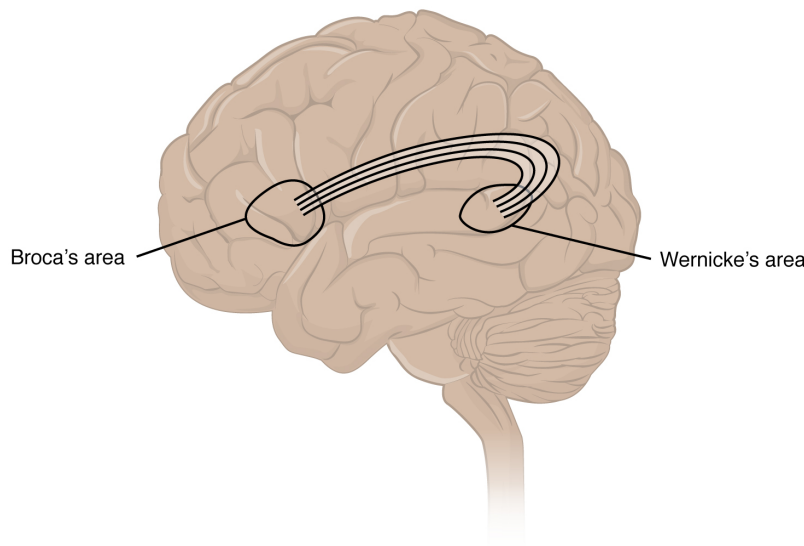


Figure 16.14 Broca's and Wernicke's Areas. Two important integration areas of the cerebral cortex associated with language function are Broca's and Wernicke's areas. The two areas are connected through the deep white matter running from the posterior temporal lobe to the frontal lobe. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Sensorium

Those parts of the brain involved in the reception and interpretation of sensory stimuli are referred to collectively as the sensorium. The cerebral cortex has several regions that are necessary for sensory perception.

Several of the subtests can reveal activity associated with these sensory modalities, such as being able to hear a question or see a picture. Two subtests assess specific functions of these cortical areas.

The first is praxis, a practical exercise in which the patient performs a task completely on the basis of verbal description without any demonstration from the examiner. The second subtest for sensory perception is gnosis, which involves two tasks. The first task, known as stereognosis, involves the naming of objects strictly on the basis of the somatosensory information that comes from manipulating them. The patient keeps their eyes closed and is given a common object, such as a coin, that they have to identify. The patient should be able to indicate the particular type of coin, such as a dime versus a penny, or a nickel versus a quarter, on the basis of the sensory cues involved. For example, the size, thickness, or weight of the coin may be an indication, or to differentiate the pairs of coins suggested here, the smooth or corrugated edge of the coin will correspond to the particular denomination. The second task, graphesthesia, is to recognize numbers or letters written on the palm of the hand with a dull pointer, such as a pen cap.

Judgment and Abstract Reasoning

Planning and producing responses requires an ability to make sense of the world around us. Making judgments and reasoning in the abstract are necessary to produce movements as part of larger responses. For example, when your alarm goes off, do you hit the snooze button or jump out of bed? Is 10 extra minutes in bed worth the extra rush to get ready for your day? Will hitting the snooze button multiple times lead to feeling more rested or result in a panic as you run late? How you mentally process these questions can affect your whole day.

The prefrontal cortex is responsible for the functions responsible for planning and making decisions. In the mental status exam, the subtest that assesses judgment and reasoning is directed at three aspects of frontal lobe function. First, the examiner asks questions about problem solving, such as “if you see a house on fire, what would you do?” The patient is also asked to interpret common proverbs, such as “don’t look a gift horse in the mouth.” Additionally, pairs of words are compared for similarities, such as apple and orange, or lamp and cabinet.

Everyday Connections

Left Brain, Right Brain

Popular media often refer to right-brained and left-brained people, as if the brain were two independent halves that work differently for different people. This is a popular misinterpretation of an important neurological phenomenon. As an extreme measure to deal with a debilitating condition, the corpus callosum may be sectioned to overcome intractable epilepsy. When the connections between the two cerebral hemispheres are cut, interesting effects can be observed.

The reason for this is that the language functions of the cerebral cortex are localized to the left hemisphere in 95 percent of the population. Additionally, the left hemisphere is connected to the right side of the body through the corticospinal tract and the ascending tracts of the spinal cord. Motor commands from the precentral gyrus control the opposite side of the body, whereas sensory information processed by the postcentral gyrus is

received from the opposite side of the body. For a verbal command to initiate movement of the right arm and hand, the left side of the brain needs to be connected by the corpus callosum. Language is processed in the left side of the brain and directly influences the left brain and right arm motor functions, but is sent to influence the right brain and left arm motor functions through the corpus callosum. Likewise, the left-handed sensory perception of what is in the left pocket travels across the corpus callosum from the right brain, so no verbal report on those contents would be possible if the hand happened to be in the pocket.

People who have had their corpus callosum cut can perform two independent tasks at the same time because the lines of communication between the right and left sides of his brain have been removed. Whereas a person with an intact corpus callosum cannot overcome the dominance of one hemisphere over the other, this patient can. If the left cerebral hemisphere is dominant in the majority of people, why would right-handedness be most common?

Common Nervous System Abbreviations

Common Nervous System Abbreviations

- **AD** (Alzheimer's disease)
- **ADHD** (attention deficit hyperactivity disorder)
- **ALS** (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis)
- **CNS** (central nervous system)
- **CP** (cerebral palsy)
- **CSF** (cerebrospinal fluid)
- **CTE** (chronic traumatic encephalopathy)
- **CVA** (cerebrovascular accident)
- **EEG** (electroencephalogram)
- **EP studies** (evoked potential studies)
- **LP** (lumbar puncture)
- **MRI** (magnetic resonance imaging)
- **MS** (multiple sclerosis)
- **OCD** (obsessive-compulsive disorder)
- **PD** (Parkinson's disease)
- **PET** (positron emission tomography)
- **PNS** (peripheral nervous system)
- **PTSD** (post-traumatic stress disorder)
- **SAH** (subarachnoid hemorrhage)
- **TIA** (transient ischemic attack)

Activity Source: Nervous System Abbreviations by Kim Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Image Descriptions

Figure 16.13 image description: A silhouette of a human with only the brain, spinal cord, PNS ganglia, nerves and a section of the digestive tract visible. The brain, which is part of the CNS, is the area of perception and processing of sensory stimuli (somatic/autonomic), the execution of voluntary motor responses (somatic), and the regulation of homeostatic mechanisms (autonomic). The spinal cord, which is part of the CNS, is the area where reflexes are initiated. The gray matter of the ventral horn initiates somatic reflexes while the gray matter of the lateral horn initiates autonomic reflexes. The spinal cord is also the somatic and autonomic pathway for sensory and motor functions between the PNS and the brain. The nerves, which are part of the PNS, are the fibers of sensory and motor neurons, which can be either somatic or autonomic. The ganglia, which are part of the PNS, are the areas for the reception of somatic and autonomic sensory stimuli. These are received by the dorsal root ganglia and cranial ganglia. The autonomic ganglia are also the relay for visceral motor responses. The digestive tract is part of the enteric nervous system, the ENS, which is located in the digestive tract and is responsible for autonomous function. The ENS can operate independent of the brain and spinal cord. [\[Return to Figure 16.13\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Nervous System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Nervous System chapter content into sub-chapters.

16.4 - Nervous Systems Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Neurodegenerative Diseases – Alzheimer’s Disease, Parkinson’s Disease, Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS), Multiple sclerosis (MS)

A class of disorders that affect the nervous system are the neurodegenerative diseases: Alzheimer’s disease, Parkinson’s disease, Huntington’s disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Creutzfeld–Jacob disease, multiple sclerosis (MS), and other disorders that are the result of nervous tissue degeneration. In diseases like Alzheimer’s, Parkinson’s, or ALS, neurons die; in diseases like MS, myelin is affected. Some of these disorders affect motor function and others present with dementia. Some are the result of genetics, such as Huntington’s disease, or the result of autoimmunity, such as MS; others are not entirely understood, such as Alzheimer’s and Parkinson’s diseases.

Several diseases can result from the demyelination of axons. The causes of these diseases are not the same; some have genetic causes, some are caused by pathogens, and others are the result of autoimmune disorders. Though the causes are varied, the results are largely similar. The myelin insulation of axons is compromised, making electrical signaling slower (Betts et al., 2013).

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is one such disease. It is an example of an autoimmune disease. The antibodies produced by lymphocytes (a type of white blood cell) mark myelin as something that should not be in the body. This causes inflammation and the destruction of the myelin in the central nervous system. As the insulation around the axons is destroyed by the disease, scarring becomes obvious (Betts et al., 2013).

Guillain-Barre (pronounced gee-YAN bah-RAY) syndrome is an example of a demyelinating disease of the peripheral nervous system. It is also the result of an autoimmune reaction, but the inflammation is in peripheral nerves. Sensory symptoms or motor deficits are common, and autonomic failures can lead to changes in the heart rhythm or a drop in blood pressure, especially when standing, which causes dizziness (Betts et al., 2013).

Other Nerve Disorders

Infection, trauma, and congenital disorders can all lead to significant signs, as identified through the neurological exam. It is important to differentiate between an acute event, such as stroke, and a chronic or global condition, such as blunt force trauma. Responses seen in the neurological exam can help. A loss of language function observed in all its aspects is more likely a global event as opposed to a discrete loss of one function, such as not being able to say certain types of words. A concern, however, is that a specific function—such as controlling the muscles of speech—may mask other language functions. The various subtests within the mental status exam can address these finer points and help clarify the underlying cause of the neurological loss (Betts et al., 2013).

Stroke

Damage to the nervous system can be limited to individual structures or can be distributed across broad areas of the brain and spinal cord. Localized, limited injury to the nervous system is most often the result of circulatory problems. The loss of blood flow to part of the brain is known as a **stroke**, or a cerebrovascular accident (CVA). There are two main types of stroke, depending on how the blood supply is compromised: ischemic and hemorrhagic. An **ischemic stroke** is the loss of blood flow to an area because vessels are blocked or narrowed. This is often caused by an embolus, which may be a blood clot or fat deposit. Ischemia may also be the result of thickening of the blood vessel wall, or a drop in blood volume in the brain known as **hypovolemia**. A **hemorrhagic stroke** is bleeding into the brain because of a damaged blood vessel. Accumulated blood fills a region of the cranial vault and presses against the tissue in the brain (see [Figure 16.15](#)) (Betts et al., 2013).

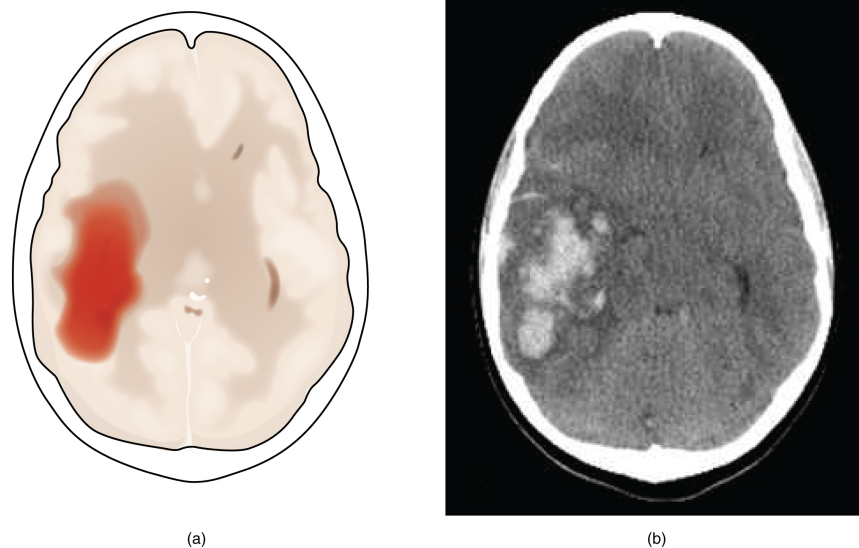


Figure 16.15 Hemorrhagic Stroke. (a) A hemorrhage into the tissue of the cerebrum results in a large accumulation of blood with an additional edema in the adjacent tissue. The hemorrhagic area causes the entire brain to be disfigured as suggested here by the lateral ventricles being squeezed into the opposite hemisphere. (b) A CT scan shows an intraparenchymal hemorrhage within the parietal lobe. (credit b: James Heilman). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 16.15 Image description.](#)]

Cerebral Palsy

Cerebral Palsy (CP) is caused by an interruption to the normal development of a person's brain leading to weakness with muscles. Depending on the area of the brain that is affected, signs and symptoms will vary in the type and severity between individuals. Balance and coordination are often challenging due the inability to control muscles (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2024, Ontario Federation for Cerebral Palsy, 2018). To learn more about cerebral palsy, please visit the [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's web page on cerebral palsy](#) [[New Tab](#)].

Traumatic Brain Injury (TBI)

According to the Minister of Health, approximately 20,000 people in Canada are hospitalized (each year) for traumatic brain injuries. Brain injuries range from moderate to severe and include concussions. TBI can be caused by falls, automobile accidents, sports, assaults, and strokes. Investment has been made to educate people on how to prevent TBIs with a focus on concussions from sports (Taylor, 2019).

Neurological System Medical Terms in Use

Neurological System

Neurological System – History and Physical Examination (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the history and physical examination form:

- festination
- depression
- fatigue
- postural
- rigidity
- cognition
- downgoing
- q.i.d

PATIENT NAME: Susan LOGAN

AGE: 62

SEX: Female

DOB: March 24

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: December 10

ADMITTING PHYSICIAN: Martin Lewis, MD, Neurology

DIAGNOSIS: Parkinson disease

HISTORY: This pleasant and co-operative 62-year-old woman has advanced parkinsonism which presents for more than 10 years. It is affecting her daily living to a great degree. She has minor difficulty with ADLs noted in difficulty dressing and meal preparation. She has had frequent falls occasionally related to freezing or to _____[Blank 1] but also occurring without any apparent cause. She has marked hesitancy on changing direction and unsteadiness after exertion and develops _____[Blank 2]. She has a minor problem with sialorrhea, eating, and swallowing. She can maintain basic personal hygiene without any difficulty. However, showering or bathing requires assistance. She has had some symptoms of anxiety and _____[Blank 3] along with her Parkinson disease.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: On neurologic exam, she did have mild-to-moderate impairment in _____[Blank 4] and short-time memory, although she is alert and oriented x3. She has pronounced tremor, worse in the left arm than the right. She has marked _____[Blank 5] in the upper left extremity; mild in the right. She has marked reduction of movement with long delays in initiating movement and frequent freezing. She has a moderately-flexed posture and cannot straighten

to command. She has _____[Blank 6] instability. Her speech is mildly dysarthric. She has paucity of spontaneous facial expression. She has an unsteady and erratic gait characterized by shuffling strides with festination in propulsion. She can arise from a chair with difficulty only after multiple attempts. Deep tendon reflexes (DTRs) are symmetrical, and toes are _____[Blank 7]. Cranial nerves are intact and unremarkable.

TREATMENT AND PLAN: She has been on Sinemet 25/100 t.i.d. for the last 7 years or so. She will be going on vacation soon, and I do not wish to start a second antiparkinsonian medication while she away from medical supervision. However, I have asked her to increase her Sinemet dose to _____[Blank 8]. We will see how she does with Sinemet and plan to add bromocriptine 1 mg per day when she returns.

FOLLOW UP: The patient has been scheduled for follow up in 3 weeks, upon her return from vacation. Her treatment regimen will be adjusted at that time.

Martin Lewis, MD, Neurology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Neurological System – History and Physical Examination by Sheila Bellefeuille and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Neurological System – Consultation Report

Neurological System – Consultation Report (Text version)

Use the word below to fill in the consultation report:

- cognition
- dementia
- hypertension
- downgoing
- neurological
- symptomatic
- MRI
- stroke
- blurred

NEUROLOGICAL SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT

PATIENT NAME: Robert BROWN

AGE: 74

SEX: Male

DOB: July 5

DATE OF CONSULTATION: April 15

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Martin Lewis, MD, Neurology

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Assessment of cognitive changes and testing.

HISTORY: The patient presented a few days ago with a marked change in _____[Blank 1] identified by his family members and care staff. The reports describe two episodes of the patient presenting a somewhat confused state, instability with a “holding of the temples” and a report of blurring vision. The patient was also observed holding on to walls and furniture to walk around. This seems to have been two transient episodes and has not recurred since. Prior to that, he had maintained excellent cognitive abilities with full lingual ability, no signs of aphasia, _____[Blank 2] or loss of consciousness. The cognitive decline noticed was not of gradual onset but rather an acute change within hours to a day. The time span is unclear as the patient lives alone and there was a time lapse between a family visit and the arrival of a personal care assistant.

The patient is a good historian to questioning and does admit to some recent occasional headaches and _____[Blank 3] vision. These are new to him as he reports never having “had a headache” in his “whole life”. He reports that the blurring is not constant but only seems to occur when he turns his head to right or left suddenly. There is a “tilting sensation” like he will fall but this clears when he brings his head back to center. He has no history of epilepsy or seizure disorders. No history of TM or ear trauma.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: HEENT: Head is normocephalic. EYES: PERRLA. EARS: Auditory exam reveals intact TMs bilaterally. No erythema. The nose and throat exam is unremarkable. NECK: JVD appears normal. VITAL SIGNS: Blood pressure is 132/86 with no previous history of _____[Blank 4]. Pulse is 83 and resp. 22 but the patient does admit to feeling anxious during the assessment. Temperature 37C.

NEURO: Orientation and language are normal. Extremity strength testing show some minimal weakness in the right upper. Reflexes are normal. Toes are _____[Blank 5] bilaterally. Has difficulty with heel-and toe-walk and is unable to tandem walk. The gait is alternately normal and minimally spastic.

IMPRESSION: What appears to be a transient or acute cognitive change with altered awareness, headache and cephalo-positional blurring of vision. There is some _____[Blank 6] change, although minimal and not clinically diagnostic, as evidenced by the slight changes in gait during testing but it does not remain consistently. This is puzzling.

PLAN: It is still not clear to me what these spells are. Some of the neurological possibilities to be considered are TIA, _____[Blank 7], brain and spinal cord tumors, inflammation, infection, vascular irregularities, and some neurodegenerative disorders. I have ordered a stat cerebral _____[Blank 8], electroencephalogram (EEG) and blood levels for CBC, chem panel. However, I feel we should also rule out the more common possibilities of pseudo-seizure, vertigo, and inner ear anomalies and am in the process of making these appropriate bookings.

I have booked a follow up with this patient in 10 days to review the results. He and his family have been advised to contact me immediately if he has another “spell” or to present to the ER where we can complete testing when the patient is _____[Blank 9].

Thank you for this most interesting referral. I will be in touch after I have reviewed the patient.

Martin Lewis, MD, Neurology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: NEUROLOGICAL SYSTEM – CONSULTATION REPORT by Sheila Bellefeuille and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Neurological System- Follow Up Report

Neurological System – Follow Up Report (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the follow-up report:

- electroencephalogram
- balance
- pathology
- vertigo
- coordination
- white matter
- hemorrhagic
- wasting
- calcifications
- mass
- somnolence
- symptomatic

PATIENT NAME: Randy NORTON

AGE: 74

SEX: Male

DOB: October 14

DATE OF ASSESSMENT: January 18

ASSESSING PHYSICIAN: Martin Lewis, MD, Neurology

REASON FOR ASSESSMENT: Follow up assessment of cognitive changes and testing.

HISTORY: This 74-year-old patient was seen in consultation 10 days ago for assessment of cognitive changes. He underwent prescribed testing in the forms of cerebral MRI, _____[Blank 1] (EEG) and blood was drawn for CBC and chem panel. The patient was seen by our local ENT for inner ear and _____[Blank 2] testing. Test results showed normal hearing. No evidence of an inner ear _____[Blank 3] that might have contributed to the _____[Blank 4] or lack of balance and _____[Blank 5] reported as part of the presenting symptoms.

TEST RESULTS: Cerebral MRI reveals a few T2 hyperintensities in the _____[Blank 6] in the

left temporal lobe. The right hemisphere shows some diffuse _____[Blank 7] and some occipital wasting. There are multiple, small dark _____[Blank 8] areas and a few areas indicative of ischemia.

EEG: This showed some depressive effect indicative of an encephalopathy. The patient did not sleep during the exam but did show some signs of _____[Blank 9]. CBC and chem panels were normal.

IMPRESSIONS: This patient present with testing result that may be warning for Alzheimer wasting and also, some localized hemorrhagic events that have since stopped. This type of “leakage” is often not _____[Blank 10], and I do not feel that they are connected to his presenting complaints. I see no signs of tumor or _____[Blank 11] formation nor infectious process.

On repeat verbal assessment, the patient reports he has not experienced any more of the spells. We will follow him closely in regards to the _____[Blank 1]2 with a repeat MRI and perhaps a CT also in 3 months for results comparison to see whether the wasting has advanced or receded.

Thank you for asking me in on this most interesting case.

Martin Lewis, MD, Neurology

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ³

Activity source: Neurological System – Follow Up Report by Sheila Bellefeuille and Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties

Primary Specialist – Neurologist

Neurologists are medical doctors who complete an additional 5 years of specialized training in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of disorders and conditions related to the brain, spinal cord, nerves and muscles (Canadian Medical Association, 2019). For more details, please follow the link to the [Canadian Medical Association's page on Neurology profile \[PDF\]](#).

Procedures Related to the Nervous System

Lumbar Puncture

A neurologist may order this procedure to test cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). This procedure is recommended if they believe symptoms are caused by a problem in the nervous system that can be detected in the cerebrospinal fluid. The procedure involves inserting a needle into the spine after numbing it and taking a sample of cerebrospinal fluid (Canadian Cancer Society, n.d.).

Tensilon Test

This procedure can help a neurologist diagnose myasthenia gravis. In this test, the doctor injects with a medicine called Tensilon, then they observe how it affects muscle movements (Bergen, 2018). For more information, visit [Healthline's Tensilon Test web page \[New Tab\]](#).

Electromyography (EMG)

An EMG measures electrical activity between your brain or spinal cord to a peripheral nerve. This nerve is found in your arms and legs, and is responsible for muscle control during times of movement and rest. EMGs can help your neurologist diagnose spinal cord disease as well as general muscle or nerve dysfunction (Moores & Cirino, 2018).

Electroencephalogram (EEG)

With electrodes applied to your scalp, an EEG measures electrical activity in the brain. It's used to help diagnose conditions of the brain, including inflammation, tumors, and injuries, as well as seizures and psychiatric disorders.

Image Descriptions

Figure 16.15 image description: The left panel of this figure shows an image of the brain with a region in red. This red region indicates a hemorrhage associated with a stroke. The right panel shows a hemorrhage as it might appear on a CT scan. [\[Return to Figure 16.15\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Nervous System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Nervous System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. festination, 2. fatigue, 3. depression, 4. cognition, 5. rigidity, 6. postural, 7. downgoing, 8. q.i.d,
1. cognition, 2. dementia, 3. blurred, 4. hypertension, 5. downgoing, 6. neurological, 7. stroke, 8. MRI, 9. symptomatic
1. electroencephalogram, 2. balance, 3. pathology, 4. vertigo, 5. coordination, 6. white matter, 7. calcifications, 8. hemorrhagic, 9. somnolence, 10. symptomatic, 11. mass, 12. wasting

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Nervous System Vocabulary

Afferent nerves

Nerves that carry sensory signals (nerve impulses) toward the CNS from the periphery.

Aphasia

Loss of language function.

Arachnoid mater

Middle layer of the meninges named for the spider-web-like trabeculae that extend between it and the pia mater.

Astrocyte

Glial cell type of the CNS that provides support for neurons and maintains the blood-brain barrier.

Autonomic nervous system (ANS)

Functional division of the nervous system that is responsible for homeostatic reflexes that coordinate control of cardiac and smooth muscle, as well as glandular tissue.

Axon

Single process of the neuron that carries an electrical signal (action potential) away from the cell body toward a target cell.

Axon hillock

Tapering of the neuron cell body that gives rise to the axon.

Axon segment

Single stretch of the axon insulated by myelin and bounded by nodes of Ranvier at either end (except for the first, which is after the initial segment, and the last, which is followed by the axon terminal).

Axon terminal

End of the axon, where there are usually several branches extending toward the target cell.

Axoplasm

Cytoplasm of an axon, which is different in composition than the cytoplasm of the neuronal cell body.

Babinski Sign

Dorsiflexion of the foot with extension and splaying of the toes in response to the plantar reflex, normally suppressed by corticospinal input.

Bipolar

Shape of a neuron with two processes extending from the neuron cell body—the axon and one dendrite.

Blood-brain Barrier (BBB)

Physiological barrier between the circulatory system and the central nervous system that establishes a privileged blood supply, restricting the flow of substances into the CNS.

Brain

The large organ of the central nervous system composed of white and gray matter, contained within the cranium and continuous with the spinal cord.

Brain Stem

Region of the adult brain that includes the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata and develops from the mesencephalon, metencephalon, and myelencephalon of the embryonic brain.

Broca's Area

Region of the frontal lobe associated with the motor commands necessary for speech production and located only in the cerebral hemisphere responsible for language production, which is the left side in approximately 95 percent of the population

Brodmann's Areas

Mapping of regions of the cerebral cortex based on microscopic anatomy that relates specific areas to functional differences, as described by Brodmann in the early 1900s.

Cauda Equina

Bundle of spinal nerve roots that descend from the lower spinal cord below the first lumbar vertebra and lie within the vertebral cavity; has the appearance of a horse's tail.

Caudate

Nucleus deep in the cerebrum that is part of the basal nuclei; along with the putamen, it is part of the striatum.

Central nervous system (CNS)

Anatomical division of the nervous system located within the cranial and vertebral cavities, namely the brain and spinal cord.

Central Sulcus

Surface landmark of the cerebral cortex that marks the boundary between the frontal and parietal lobes.

Cerebellum

Region of the adult brain connected primarily to the pons that developed from the metencephalon (along with the pons) and is largely responsible for comparing information from the cerebrum with sensory feedback from the periphery through the spinal cord.

Cerebral Cortex

Outer gray matter covering the forebrain, marked by wrinkles and folds known as gyri and sulci.

Cerebrum

Region of the adult brain that develops from the telencephalon and is responsible for higher neurological functions such as memory, emotion, and consciousness.

Cerebral Hemisphere

One half of the bilaterally symmetrical cerebrum.

Cerebrospinal Fluid (CSF)

Circulatory medium within the CNS that is produced by ependymal cells in the choroid plexus filtering the blood.

Choroid Plexus

Specialized structure containing ependymal cells that line blood capillaries and filter blood to produce CSF in the four ventricles of the brain.

Corpus callosum

Large white matter structure that connects the right and left cerebral hemispheres.

Dendrite

One of many branchlike processes that extends from the neuron cell body and functions as a contact for incoming signals (synapses) from other neurons or sensory cells.

Descending tract

Central nervous system fibers carrying motor commands from the brain to the spinal cord or periphery.

Diencephalon

Region of the adult brain that retains its name from embryonic development and includes the thalamus and hypothalamus.

Direct pathway

Connections within the basal nuclei from the striatum to the globus pallidus internal segment and substantia nigra pars reticulata that disinhibit the thalamus to increase cortical control of movement.

Dorsal (posterior) nerve root

Axons entering the posterior horn of the spinal cord.

Dura mater

Tough, fibrous, outer layer of the meninges that is attached to the inner surface of the cranium and vertebral column and surrounds the entire CNS.

Efferent nerves

Nerve tissue that carries impulses away from the CNS towards the peripheral that result in motor response (movement).

Embolus

Obstruction in a blood vessel such as a blood clot, fatty mass, air bubble, or other foreign matter that interrupts the flow of blood to an organ or some part of the body.

Enteric nervous system (ENS)

Neural tissue associated with the digestive system that is responsible for nervous control through autonomic connections.

Ependymal cell

Glial cell type in the CNS responsible for producing cerebrospinal fluid.

Epithalamus

Region of the diencephalon containing the pineal gland.

Fissures

A groove, natural division or elongated cleft, furrow or tear; naturally occurring in the brain, they are also known as sulcus/sulci.

Foramen magnum

Large opening in the occipital bone of the skull through which the spinal cord emerges and the vertebral arteries enter the cranium.

Frontal lobe

Region of the cerebral cortex directly beneath the frontal bone of the cranium.

Ganglion

Localized collection of neuron cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system.

Glial cell

One of the various types of neural tissue cells responsible for maintenance of the tissue, and largely responsible for supporting neurons.

Gray matter

Regions of the nervous system containing cell bodies of neurons with few or no myelinated axons; actually may be more pink or tan in color, but called gray in contrast to white matter.

Gyrus/gyri

Ridge formed by convolutions on the surface of the cerebrum or cerebellum.

Hemorrhagic stroke

Disruption of blood flow to the brain caused by bleeding within the cranial vault.

Hydrocephalus

An abnormal buildup of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the ventricles of the brain.

Hypothalamus

Major region of the diencephalon that is responsible for coordinating autonomic and endocrine control of homeostasis.

Ischemic stroke

Disruption of blood flow to the brain because blood cannot flow through blood vessels as a result of a blockage or narrowing of the vessel.

Integration

Nervous system function that combines sensory perceptions and higher cognitive functions (memories, learning, emotion, etc.) to produce a response.

Initial segment

First part of the axon as it emerges from the axon hillock, where the electrical signals known as action potentials are generated.

Lumbar puncture

Procedure used to withdraw CSF from the lower lumbar region of the vertebral column that avoids the risk of damaging CNS tissue because the spinal cord ends at the upper lumbar vertebrae.

Medulla oblongata

The continuation of the spinal cord within the skull, forming the lowest part of the brainstem, contains the control centers for heart and lung nerve function.

Meninges

Protective outer coverings of the CNS composed of connective tissue.

Microglia

Glial cell type in the CNS that serves as the resident component of the immune system.

Midbrain

A portion of the brainstem, positioned above the pons, also called mesencephalon, assist in motor reflexes associated with visual and auditory stimuli.

Motor nerves

Peripheral, efferent, myelinated nerve tissue that stimulates muscle contraction.

Multipolar

Shape of a neuron that has multiple processes—the axon and two or more dendrites.

Myelin

Lipid-rich insulating substance surrounding the axons of many neurons, allowing for faster transmission of electrical signals.

Myelin sheath

Lipid-rich layer of insulation that surrounds an axon, formed by oligodendrocytes in the CNS and Schwann cells in the PNS; facilitates the transmission of electrical signals.

Nerve

Cord-like bundle of axons located in the peripheral nervous system that transmits sensory input and response output to and from the central nervous system.

Neuron

Neural tissue cell that is primarily responsible for generating and propagating electrical signals into, within, and out of the nervous system.

Neuroglia

Supportive tissue of the nervous system, including the network of branched cells in the central nervous system (astrocytes, microglia, and oligodendrocytes) and the supporting cells of the peripheral nervous system (Schwann cells and satellite cells), also called **glia**.

Neurotransmitter

Chemical that is released from a nerve cell, transmits an impulse from a nerve cell to another nerve, muscle, organ, or other tissue.

Node of Ranvier

Gap between two myelinated regions of an axon, allowing for strengthening of the electrical signal as it propagates down the axon.

Nucleus

In the nervous system, a localized collection of neuron cell bodies that are functionally related; a “center” of neural function.

Occipital lobe

Region of the cerebral cortex directly beneath the occipital bone of the cranium.

Olfaction

Special sense responsible for smell, which has a unique, direct connection to the cerebrum.

Oligodendrocyte

Glial cell type in the CNS that provides the myelin insulation for axons in tracts.

Paresis

Partial loss of, or impaired, voluntary muscle control.

Parietal lobe

Region of the cerebral cortex directly beneath the parietal bone of the cranium.

Peripheral nervous system (PNS)

Anatomical division of the nervous system that is largely outside the cranial and vertebral cavities, namely all parts except the brain and spinal cord.

Pia mater

Thin, innermost membrane of the meninges that directly covers the surface of the CNS.

Pons

Latin word meaning bridge, essential part of the brain located above the medulla, action in regulation and controls of vital functions primarily sleep, respiration, swallowing, bladder control, hearing, balance (equilibrium), taste, ocular movement, facial expression and sensation.

Process

In cells, an extension of a cell body; in the case of neurons, this includes the axon and dendrites.

Response

Nervous system function that causes a target tissue (muscle or gland) to produce an event as a consequence to stimuli.

Satellite cell

Glial cell type in the PNS that provides support for neurons in the ganglia.

Schwann cell

Glial cell type in the PNS that provides the myelin insulation for axons in nerves.

Sensation

Nervous system function that receives information from the environment and translates it into the electrical signals of nervous tissue.

Soma

In neurons, that portion of the cell that contains the nucleus; the cell body, as opposed to the cell processes (axons and dendrites).

Somatic nervous system (SNS)

Functional division of the nervous system that is concerned with conscious perception, voluntary movement, and skeletal muscle reflexes.

Spinal cord

Organ of the central nervous system found within the vertebral cavity and connected with the periphery through spinal nerves; mediates reflex behaviours.

Stimulus

An event in the external or internal environment that registers as activity in a sensory neuron.

Stroke

(also, cerebrovascular accident (CVA)) loss of neurological function caused by an interruption of blood flow to a region of the central nervous system.

Subarachnoid space

Space between the arachnoid mater and pia mater that contains CSF and the fibrous connections of the arachnoid trabeculae.

Sulcus/sulci

Groove formed by convolutions in the surface of the cerebral cortex; see fissure.

Synapse

Narrow junction across which a chemical signal passes from neuron to the next, initiating a new electrical signal in the target cell.

Synaptic end bulb

Swelling at the end of an axon where neurotransmitter molecules are released onto a target cell across a synapse.

Sympathetic nervous system (SNS)

Part of the nervous system that serves to accelerate heart rate, constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure in response to stress.

Temporal lobe

Region of the cerebral cortex directly beneath the temporal bone of the cranium.

Thalamus

Major region of the diencephalon that is responsible for relaying information between the cerebrum and the hindbrain, spinal cord, and periphery.

Tract

Bundle of axons in the central nervous system having the same function and point of origin.

Transient ischemic attack (TIA)

Temporary disruption of blood flow to the brain in which symptoms occur rapidly but last only a short time.

Unipolar

Shape of a neuron which has only one process that includes both the axon and dendrite.

Ventricle

Central cavity within the brain where CSF is produced and circulates.

Wernicke's area

Region at the posterior end of the lateral sulcus in which speech comprehension is localized.

White matter

Regions of the nervous system containing mostly myelinated axons, making the tissue appear white because of the high lipid content of myelin.

Nervous System Glossary Reinforcement Activity

Nervous System Glossary Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. The outer gray matter covering the forebrain, marked by wrinkles and folds known as gyri and sulci is called the _____[Blank 1].
 - a. Multipolar
 - b. Cerebral cortex
 - c. Dendrite
2. The single process of the neuron that carries an electrical signal (action potential) away from the cell body toward a target cell is called the _____[Blank 2].
 - a. Axon
 - b. Cauda equina
 - c. Cerebrum
3. The large opening in the occipital bone of the skull through which the spinal cord emerges and the vertebral arteries enter the cranium is called the _____[Blank 3].
 - a. Foramen magnum
 - b. Corpus callosum
 - c. Dura mater
4. The disruption of blood flow to the brain because blood cannot flow through blood vessels as a result of a blockage or narrowing of the vessel is called _____[Blank 4].
 - a. Ischemic stroke
 - b. Embolus
 - c. Initial segment
5. The major region of the diencephalon that is responsible for coordinating autonomic and endocrine control of homeostasis is called the _____[Blank 5].
 - a. Hypothalamus
 - b. Myelin
 - c. Neuron

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Nervous System Glossary Reinforcement Activity by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from [Nervous System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Nervous System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. a) Cerebral cortex, 2.a) Axon, 3. a) Foramen magnum, 4. a) Ischemic stroke, 5. a) Hypothalamus

References

Bergen, T. (2018, September 3). *Tensilon test*. Healthline. <https://www.healthline.com/health/tensilon-test>

Canadian Cancer Society. (n.d.). *Lumbar puncture*. <https://www.cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/diagnosis-and-treatment/tests-and-procedures/lumbar-puncture/?region=on>

Canadian Medical Association. (2019, December). *Neurology profile*. CMA Specialty Profiles. <https://www.cma.ca/sites/default/files/2019-01/neurology-e.pdf>

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2023, April 20). *Get the facts about TBI*. CDC. https://www.cdc.gov/traumaticbraininjury/get_the_facts.html

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2023, April 25). *Mental health*. CDC. <https://www.cdc.gov/mentalhealth/learn/index.htm>

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2024, February 28). *What is Cerebral Palsy*. CDC. <https://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/cp/facts.html>

Cherney, K. & De Pietro, M. (2019, May 29). *Neurologist*. Healthline. <https://www.healthline.com/find-care/articles/neurologists/neurologist>

CrashCourse. (2015, February 23). *The Nervous system, part 1: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #8* [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qPix_X-9t7E

Merriam-Webster. (n.d.). *Neurologist*. In *Merriam-Webster.com dictionary*. <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/neurologist>

Moore, D., & Cirino, E. (2018, March 20). *Electromyography (EMG)*. Healthline. <https://www.healthline.com/health/electromyography>

Ontario Federation for Cerebral Palsy. (2018). *About cerebral palsy*. <https://www.ofcp.ca/about-cerebral-palsy>

Taylor, G. (2019, June 3). *Brain injury awareness month – June 2019*. Public Health Agency of Canada. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/news/2019/05/brain-injury-awareness-month-june-2019.html>

CHAPTER 17: ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [17.1 – Introduction to Endocrine System](#)
- [17.2 – Anatomy \(Structures\) of the Endocrine System](#)
- [17.3 – Physiology \(Function\) of the Endocrine System](#)
- [17.4 – Endocrine System Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

17.1 - Introduction to Endocrine System

Learning Objectives

- Identify the anatomy of the endocrine system and describe the main functions of the endocrine system
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of the endocrine system
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of endocrine system terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the endocrine system and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests and procedures

Endocrine System Word Parts

Click on prefixes, combining forms, and suffixes to reveal a list of word parts to memorize for the endocrine system.

Prefix

- **hypo-** (below, under, deficient)
- **hyper-** (above, excessive)
- **para-** (around, beside, beyond, abnormal)
- **syn-** (joined, together)
- **pan-** (all, total)

Combining Form

- **acr/o** (extremities, height)
- **aden/o** (gland)
- **adren/o** (adrenal glands)
- **adrenal/o** (adrenal glands)

- **calc/i** (calcium)
- **cortic/o** (cortex, outer layer of a body organ)
- **dips/o** (thirst)
- **glyc/o** (sugar)
- **endocrin/o** (endocrine)
- **kal/i** (potassium)
- **natr/o** (sodium)
- **parathyroid/o** (parathyroid gland)
- **pituitar/o** (pituitary gland)
- **thyr/o** (thyroid gland)
- **thyroid/o** (thyroid gland)

Suffix

- **-al** (pertaining to)
- **-drome** (run, running together)
- **-ectomy** (excision, cut out)
- **-emia** (in the blood)
- **-ia** (condition of, abnormal state, diseased state)
- **-ism** (state of)
- **-itis** (inflammation)
- **-logist** (specialist or physician who studies and treats)
- **-logy** (study of)
- **-megaly** (enlarged, enlargement)
- **-oid** (resembling)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-pathy** (disease)
- **-plasia** (condition of, formation, development, growth)
- **-tomy** (incision, cut into)

Activity source: Endocrine System Word Parts by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). / Text version.

Introduction to the Endocrine System



Figure 17.1 A Child Catches a Falling Leaf. Hormones of the endocrine system coordinate and control growth, metabolism, temperature regulation, the stress response, reproduction, and many other functions. (credit: [Image](#) by [seenthroughmylense](#), [CC BY 2.0](#)).

You may never have thought of it this way, but when you send a text message to two friends to meet you at the dining hall at six, you're sending digital signals that (you hope) will affect their behaviour—even though they are some distance away. Similarly, certain cells send chemical signals to other cells in the body that influence their behaviour. This long-distance intercellular communication, coordination, and control is critical to maintain equilibrium (homeostasis). This intercellular activity is the fundamental function of the endocrine system.

Watch [Endocrine System, Part 1 – Glands & Hormones: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #23 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Endocrine System Medical Terms

Endocrine System Medical Terms (Text Version)

Practice the following endocrine system words by breaking into word parts and pronouncing.

1. **endocrinopathy**

- endocrin/o/pathy
- disease of the endocrine system

2. **adrenalectomy**

- adrenal/ectomy
- excision of the adrenal glands

3. **parathyroidectomy**

- parathyroid/ectomy
- excision of the parathyroid glands

4. **adenitis**

- aden/itis
- inflammation of the gland

5. **parathyroidoma**

- parathyroid/oma
- tumour of the parathyroid glands

6. **thyroiditis**

- thyroid/itis
- inflammation of the thyroid gland

7. **thyroidotomy**

- thyroid/o/tomy
- incision into the thyroid gland

8. **hyperthyroidism**

- hyper/thyroid/ism
- state of excessive thyroid gland activity

9. **acromegaly**

- acr/o/megaly
- enlargement of the extremities

10. **adrenomegaly**

- adren/o/megaly
- enlargement of one or both adrenal glands

11. **glycemia**
 - glyc/emia
 - sugar in the blood
12. **hypokalemia**
 - hypo/kal/emia
 - deficient potassium in the blood
13. **hypopituitarism**
 - hypo/pituitar/ism
 - state of deficient pituitary gland activity
14. **adenomegaly**
 - aden/o/megaly
 - enlarged gland
15. **hypocalcemia**
 - hypo/calc/emia
 - deficient calcium in the blood
16. **polydipsia**
 - poly/dips/ia
 - condition of excessive thirst
17. **hypoglycemia**
 - hypo/glyc/emia
 - deficient sugar in the blood
18. **hyperkalemia**
 - hyper/kal/emia
 - excessive potassium in the blood
19. **endocrinopathy**
 - endocrin/o/pathy
 - disease of the endocrine system
20. **hypercalcemia**
 - hyper/calc/emia
 - excessive calcium in the blood
21. **panhypopituitarism**

- pan/hypo/pituitary/ism *rebel does not follow the rules
 - state of total deficient pituitary gland activity
22. **cortical**
- cortic/al
 - pertaining to the cortex
23. **thyroidectomy**
- thyroid/ectomy
 - excision of the thyroid gland
24. **syndrome**
- syn/drome
 - run together (signs and symptoms occur together characterizing of a specific disorder)
25. **thyroparathyroidectomy**
- thyr/o/parathyroid/ectomy
 - excision of the thyroid gland and parathyroid glands
26. **adrenitis**
- adrenal/itis
 - inflammation of adrenal glands
27. **thyroidectomy**
- thyroid/ectomy
 - excision of the thyroid gland
28. **endocrinologist**
- endocrin/o/logist
 - specialist who studies and treats diseases of the endocrine system
29. **adrenopathy**
- adren/o/pathy
 - disease of the adrenal gland(s)
30. **corticoid**
- cortic/oid
 - resembling the cortex
31. **euthyroid**
- eu/thyr/oid

- resembling a normal thyroid gland
- 32. **endocrinology**
 - endocrin/o/logy
 - study of the endocrine system
- 33. **hyponatremia**
 - hypo/natr/emia
 - deficient sodium in the blood
- 34. **adenectomy**
 - aden/ectomy
 - excision of a gland
- 35. **euglycemia**
 - eu/glyc/emia
 - normal (level) of blood sugar in the blood
- 36. **adenosis**
 - aden/osis
 - abnormal condition of a gland
- 37. **adrenocorticohyperplasia**
 - adren/o/cortic/o/hyper/plasia
 - excessive development of the adrenal cortex

Activity source: Endocrine System Medical Terms by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Endocrine System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Endocrine System chapter content into sub-chapters.

17.2 - Anatomy (Structures) of the Endocrine System

The Endocrine Gland

The endocrine system consists of cells, tissues, and organs that secrete hormones as a primary or secondary function. The **endocrine gland** is the major player in this system. The primary function of the endocrine gland is to secrete hormones directly into the surrounding fluid. The surrounding fluid (interstitial fluid) and the blood vessels then transport the hormones throughout the body. The endocrine system includes the pituitary, thyroid, parathyroid, adrenal, and pineal glands (see [Figure 17.2](#)). Some of these glands have both endocrine and non-endocrine functions. For example, the pancreas contains cells that function in digestion as well as cells that secrete the endocrine hormones like insulin and glucagon, which regulate blood glucose levels. The hypothalamus, thymus, heart, kidneys, stomach, small intestine, liver, skin, female ovaries, and male testes are other organs that contain cells with endocrine function. Moreover, fat (adipose) tissue has long been known to produce hormones, and recent research has revealed that even bone tissue has endocrine functions.

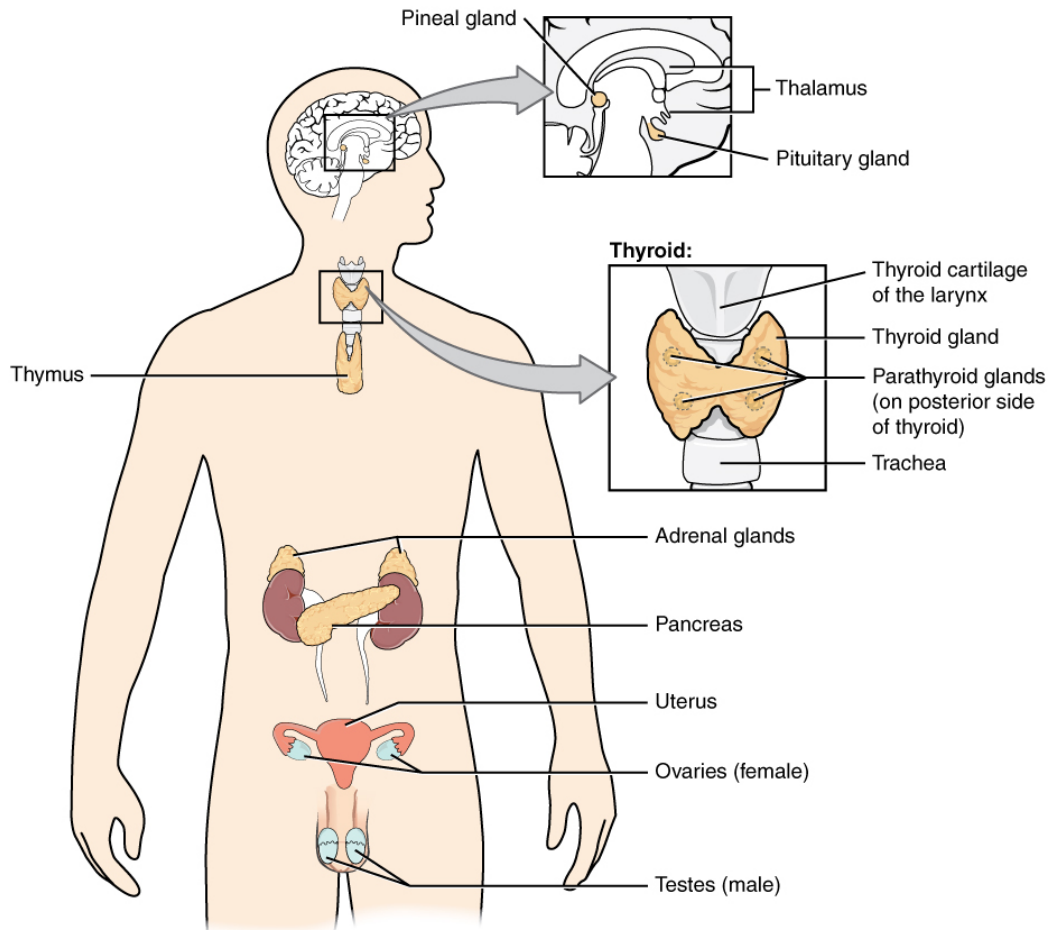


Figure 17.2 Endocrine System. Endocrine glands and cells are located throughout the body and play an important role in maintaining equilibrium (homeostasis). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [\[Fig. 17.2 Image description.\]](#)

The ductless endocrine glands are not to be confused with the body’s **exocrine system**, whose glands release their secretions through ducts. Examples of exocrine glands include the sebaceous and sweat glands of the skin. As just noted, the pancreas also has an exocrine function: most of its cells secrete pancreatic juice through the pancreatic and accessory ducts to the lumen of the small intestine.

Did You Know?

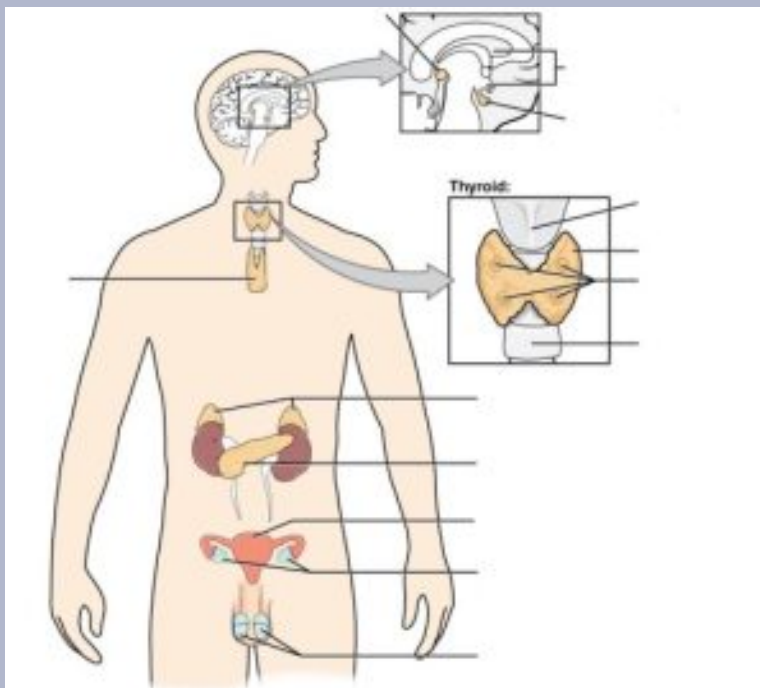
The pancreas acts as a endocrine and exocrine gland.

Endocrine System Anatomy labeling activity

Endocrine System Anatomy labeling activity (Text Version)

Label the diagram with words listed below:

1. Trachea
2. Testes (male)
3. Pancreas
4. Thyroid cartilage of the larynx
5. Pineal gland
6. Thyroid gland
7. Thalamus
8. Adrenal glands
9. Uterus
10. Ovaries (female)
11. Parathyroid glands (on posterior side of thyroid)
12. Thymus
13. Pituitary gland



Endocrine System Diagram (Text Version)

This diagram shows the endocrine glands and cells that are located throughout the body. The endocrine system organs shown from top to bottom include the pea size structure known as the _____[Blank 1] as well as the primary glandular structure of the endocrine system found enclosed within the _____[Blank 2] known as the _____[Blank 3]. The pituitary is located on the anterior side of the thalamus while the pineal gland is located on the posterior side of the thalamus. The _____[Blank 4] is a shield shaped cartilage that forms part of the laryngeal skeleton. This is a butterfly-shaped gland that wraps around the _____[Blank 5] within the neck. Four small, disc-shaped _____[Blank 6] are embedded into the posterior side of the thyroid. The _____[Blank 7] are located on top of the kidneys. The _____[Blank 8] is located at the center of the abdomen. In females, the _____[Blank 9] connects the two _____[Blank 10] a by two long, curved, tubes in the pelvic region. In males, the two _____[Blank 11] are in the scrotum below the penis. One the left side of

the diagram and located in the center of the chest is the _____[Blank 12], a glandular structure responsible for the secretion of a hormone called thymosin.

Check your answers ¹

Activity source: Endocrine System Anatomy by Gisele Tuzon, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

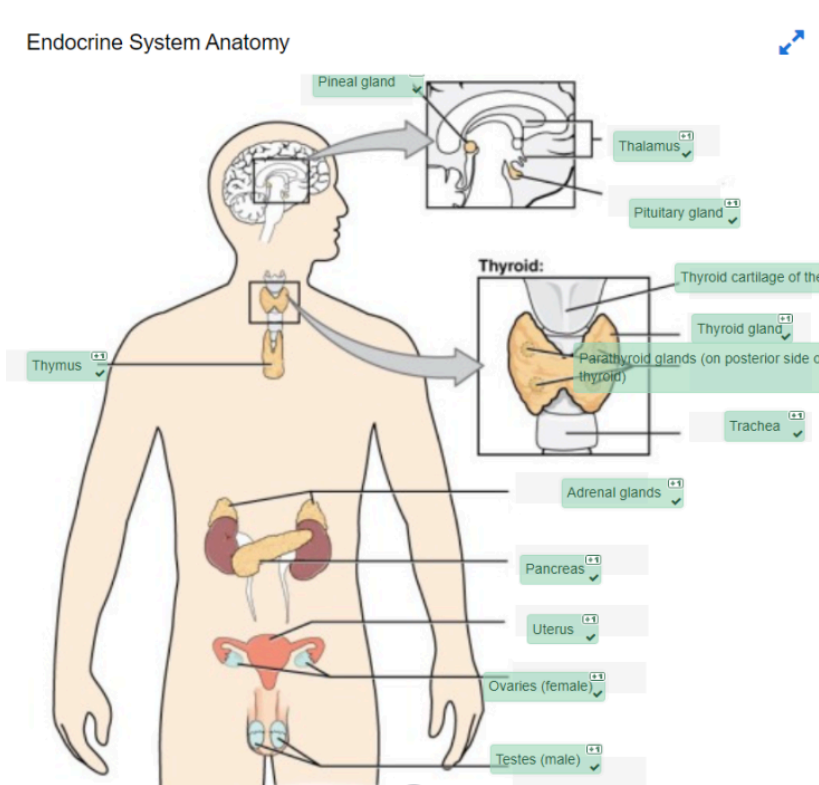
Image Descriptions

Figure 17.2 image description: This diagram shows the endocrine glands and cells that are located throughout the body. The endocrine system organs include the pineal gland and pituitary gland in the brain. The pituitary is located on the anterior side of the thalamus while the pineal gland is located on the posterior side of the thalamus. The thyroid gland is a butterfly-shaped gland that wraps around the trachea within the neck. Four small, disc-shaped parathyroid glands are embedded into the posterior side of the thyroid. The adrenal glands are located on top of the kidneys. The pancreas is located at the center of the abdomen. In females, the two ovaries are connected to the uterus by two long, curved, tubes in the pelvic region. In males, the two testes are located in the scrotum below the penis. [\[Return to Figure 17.2\]](#).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Endocrine System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Endocrine System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes



1.

Check your answers: Endocrine System Diagram (Text Version) This diagram shows the endocrine glands and cells that are located throughout the body. The endocrine system organs shown from top to bottom include the pea size structure known as the **pineal gland** as well as the primary glandular structure of the endocrine system found enclosed within the **thalamus** known as the **pituitary gland**. The pituitary is located on the anterior side of the thalamus while the pineal gland is located on the posterior side of the thalamus. The **thyroid cartilage of the larynx** is a shield shaped cartilage that forms part of the laryngeal skeleton. The **thyroid gland** is a butterfly-shaped gland that wraps around the **trachea** within the neck. Four small, disc-shaped **parathyroid glands** are embedded into the posterior side of the thyroid. The **adrenal glands** are located on top of the kidneys. The **pancreas** is located at the center of the abdomen. In females, the **uterus** connects the two **ovaries** a by two long, curved, tubes in the pelvic region. In males, the two **testes** are in the scrotum below the penis. One the left side of the diagram and located in the center of the chest is the **thymus**, a glandular structure responsible for the secretion of a hormone called thymosin.

17.3 - Physiology (Function) of the Endocrine System

Endocrine Signaling

The **endocrine system** uses one method of communication called chemical signaling. These chemical signals are sent by the endocrine organs. The endocrine organs secrete chemicals—called **hormones**—into the fluid outside of the tissue cells (extracellular fluid). Hormones are then transported primarily via the bloodstream throughout the body, where they bind to receptors on target cells, creating a particular response. For example, the hormones released when you are presented with a dangerous or a frightening situation, called the fight-or-flight response, occurs through the release of hormones from the adrenal gland—**epinephrine** and **norepinephrine**—within seconds. In contrast, it may take up to 48 hours for target cells to respond to certain reproductive hormones.

In addition, endocrine signaling is typically less specific than neural (nerve) signaling. The same hormone may also play a role in a variety of different physiological processes depending on the target cells involved. For example, the hormone oxytocin generates uterine contractions in women who are in labour. This hormone is also important in generating the milk release reflex during breastfeeding, and may be involved in the sexual response and in feelings of emotional attachment in both males and females.

Generally, the nervous system involves quick responses to rapid changes in the external environment, and the endocrine system is usually slower acting—taking care of the internal environment of the body, maintaining equilibrium (homeostasis), and in controlling reproduction (see [Table 17.1](#)). So how does the fight-or-flight response, that was mentioned earlier, happen so quickly if hormones are usually slower acting? It is because the two systems are connected. It is the fast action of the nervous system in response to the danger in the environment that stimulates the adrenal glands to secrete their hormones, epinephrine and norepinephrine. As a result, the nervous system can cause rapid endocrine responses to keep up with sudden changes in both the external and internal environments, when necessary.

Table 17.1: Endocrine and Nervous Systems. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Characteristic	Endocrine System	Nervous System
Signaling mechanism(s)	Chemical	Chemical/electrical
Primary chemical signal	Hormones	Neurotransmitters
Distance traveled	Long or short	Always short
Response time	Fast or slow	Always fast
Environment targeted	Internal	Internal and external

Other Types of Chemical Signaling

There are four different types of chemical signaling occurring in multicellular organisms: endocrine signaling, **autocrine** signaling, **paracrine** signaling, and direct signaling.

In **endocrine signaling**, hormones secreted into the extracellular fluid spreads into the blood or lymphatic system, and can, therefore, travel great distances throughout the body.

In contrast, **autocrine signaling** occurs within the same cell. An **autocrine** (auto- = “self”) is a chemical that triggers a response in the same cell that secreted the chemical. For example, Interleukin-1 (or IL-1), is a chemical signaling molecule that plays a role in inflammation. The cells that release IL-1 also have receptors on their surface that bind IL-1, resulting in autocrine signaling.

Paracrine signaling occurs amongst neighbouring cells. A **paracrine** (para- = “near”) is a chemical that triggers a response in neighbouring cells. Although paracrines may enter the bloodstream, their concentration is generally too low to elicit a response from distant tissues. A familiar example for those with asthma is **histamine**, a paracrine that is released by immune cells. Histamine causes the smooth muscle cells of the lungs to constrict, narrowing the airways.

Direct signaling occurs between neighbouring cells across gap junctions. Gap junctions are channels that connect neighbouring cells, that allow small molecules to move between the neighbouring cells.

Concept Check 1

- Describe the communication methods used by the endocrine system.
- Compare and contrast endocrine and exocrine glands.
- True or false: neurotransmitters are a special class of paracrines? Explain your answer.

Did You Know 1?

Researchers say that one week of camping without electronics resets our biological body clock and synchronizes our melatonin hormones with sunrise and sunset (Shurkin, 2013).

Hormones

Although a given hormone may travel throughout the body in the bloodstream, it will affect the activity only of its target cells; that is, cells with receptors for that particular hormone. Once the hormone binds to the receptor, a chain of events is initiated that leads to the target cell's response. Hormones play a critical role in the regulation of physiological processes because of the target cell responses they regulate. These responses contribute to human reproduction, growth and development of body tissues, metabolism, fluid, and electrolyte balance, sleep, and many other body functions. The major hormones of the human body and their effects are identified in [Table 17.2](#).

Table 17.2: Endocrine Glands and Their Major Hormones. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

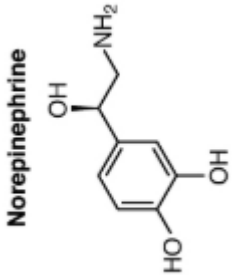
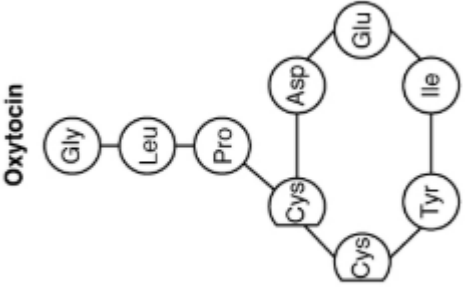
Endocrine Gland	Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effect
Pituitary (anterior)	Growth hormone (GH)	Protein	Promotes growth of body tissues
Pituitary (anterior)	Prolactin (PRL)	Peptide	Promotes milk production
Pituitary (anterior)	Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates thyroid hormone release
Pituitary (anterior)	Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)	Peptide	Stimulates hormone release by adrenal cortex
Pituitary (anterior)	Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates gamete production
Pituitary (anterior)	Luteinizing hormone (LH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates androgen production by gonads
Pituitary (posterior)	Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Peptide	Stimulates water reabsorption by kidneys
Pituitary (posterior)	Oxytocin	Peptide	Stimulates uterine contractions during childbirth
Thyroid	Thyroxine (T ₄), triiodothyronine (T ₃)	Amine	Stimulate basal metabolic rate
Thyroid	Calcitonin	Peptide	Reduces blood Ca ²⁺ levels
Parathyroid	Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Peptide	Increases blood Ca ²⁺ levels
Adrenal (cortex)	Aldosterone	Steroid	Increases blood Na ⁺ levels
Adrenal (cortex)	Cortisol, corticosterone, cortisone	Steroid	Increase blood glucose levels
Adrenal (medulla)	Epinephrine, norepinephrine	Amine	Stimulate fight-or-flight response
Pineal	Melatonin	Amine	Regulates sleep cycles
Pancreas	Insulin	Protein	Reduces blood glucose levels
Pancreas	Glucagon	Protein	Increases blood glucose levels
Testes	Testosterone	Steroid	Stimulates development of male secondary sex characteristics and sperm production


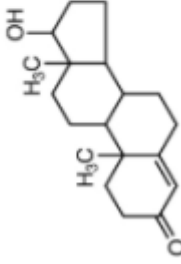
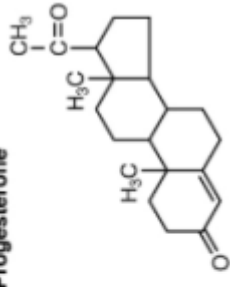
Endocrine Gland	Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effect
Ovaries	Estrogens and progesterone	Steroid	Stimulate development of female secondary sex characteristics and prepare the body for childbirth

Types of Hormones

The hormones of the human body can be divided into two major groups on the basis of their chemical structure. Hormones derived from amino acids include amines, peptides, and proteins. Those derived from lipids include steroids (see [Table 17.3](#)). These chemical groups affect a hormone's distribution, the type of receptors it binds to, and other aspects of its function.

Table 17.3 Amine, Peptide, Protein, and Steroid Hormone Structure. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Hormone Class	Components	Examples
<p>Amine Hormone</p>	<p>Amino acids with modified groups (e.g. norepinephrine's carboxyl group is replaced with a benzene ring)</p>	<p>Norepinephrine</p>  <p>Norepinephrine cellular structure.</p>
<p>Peptide Hormone</p>	<p>Short chains of linked amino acids</p>	<p>Oxytocin</p>  <p>Oxytocin cellular structure.</p>

Hormone Class	Components	Examples
<p>Protein Hormone</p>	<p>Long chains of linked amino acids</p>	<p>Human Growth Hormone</p>  <p>Human growth hormone illustration.</p>
<p>Steroid Hormones</p>	<p>Derived from lipid cholesterol</p>	<p>Testosterone</p>  <p>Progesterone</p>  <p>Testosterone and progesterone cellular structure.</p>

Amine Hormones

Hormones derived from the modification of amino acids are referred to as amine hormones. Amine hormones are synthesized from the amino acids tryptophan or tyrosine. An example of a hormone derived from tryptophan is melatonin, which is secreted by the pineal gland and helps regulate circadian rhythm.

Peptide and Protein Hormones

Whereas the amine hormones are derived from a single amino acid, peptide and protein hormones consist of multiple amino acids that link to form an amino acid chain. Examples of peptide hormones include antidiuretic hormone (ADH), a pituitary hormone important in fluid balance. Some examples of protein hormones include growth hormone, which is produced by the pituitary gland, and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). FSH helps stimulate the maturation of eggs in the ovaries and sperm in the testes.

Steroid Hormones

The primary hormones derived from lipids are steroids. Steroid hormones are derived from the lipid cholesterol. For example, the reproductive hormones testosterone and the estrogens—which are produced by the gonads (testes and ovaries)—are steroid hormones. The adrenal glands produce the steroid hormone aldosterone, which is involved in osmoregulation, and cortisol, which plays a role in metabolism.

Like cholesterol, steroid hormones are not soluble in water (they are hydrophobic). Because blood is water-based, lipid-derived hormones must travel to their target cell bound to a transport protein.

Pathways of Hormone Action

The message a hormone sends is received by a **hormone receptor**, a protein located either inside the cell or within the cell membrane. The receptor will process the message by initiating other signaling events or cellular mechanisms that result in the target cell's response. Hormone receptors recognize molecules with specific shapes and side groups, and respond only to those hormones that are recognized. The same type of receptor may be located on cells in different body tissues, and trigger somewhat different responses. Thus, the response triggered by a hormone depends not only on the hormone, but also on the target cell.

Once the target cell receives the hormone signal, it can respond in a variety of ways. The response may include the stimulation of protein **synthesis**, activation or deactivation of enzymes, alteration in the **permeability** of the cell membrane, altered rates of mitosis and cell growth, and stimulation of the secretion of products. Moreover, a single hormone may be capable of inducing different responses in a given cell.

Factors Affecting Target Cell Response

You will recall that target cells must have receptors specific to a given hormone if that hormone is to trigger a response, but several other factors influence the target cell response. For example, the presence of a significant

level of a hormone circulating in the bloodstream can cause its target cells to decrease their number of receptors for that hormone. This process is called **downregulation**, and it allows cells to become less reactive to the excessive hormone levels. When the level of a hormone is chronically reduced, target cells engage in **upregulation** to increase their number of receptors. This process allows cells to be more sensitive to the hormone that is present. Cells can also alter the sensitivity of the receptors themselves to various hormones.

Two or more hormones can interact to affect the response of cells in a variety of ways. The three most common types of interaction are as follows:

- The permissive effect, in which the presence of one hormone enables another hormone to act. For example, thyroid hormones have complex permissive relationships with certain reproductive hormones. A dietary deficiency of iodine, a component of thyroid hormones, can therefore affect reproductive system development and functioning.
- The synergistic effect, in which two hormones with similar effects produce an amplified response. In some cases, two hormones are required for an adequate response. For example, two different reproductive hormones—FSH from the pituitary gland and estrogens from the ovaries—are required for the maturation of female ova (egg cells).
- The antagonistic effect, in which two hormones have opposing effects. A familiar example is the effect of two pancreatic hormones, insulin and glucagon. Insulin increases the liver's storage of glucose as glycogen, decreasing blood glucose, whereas glucagon stimulates the breakdown of glycogen stores, increasing blood glucose.

To prevent abnormal hormone levels and a potential disease state, hormone levels must be tightly controlled. The body maintains this control by balancing hormone production and degradation. Feedback loops govern the initiation and maintenance of most hormone secretion in response to various stimuli.

Role of Feedback Loops

The contribution of feedback loops to homeostasis will only be briefly reviewed here. Positive feedback loops are characterized by the release of additional hormone in response to an original hormone release. The release of oxytocin during childbirth is a positive feedback loop. The initial release of oxytocin begins to signal the uterine muscles to contract, which pushes the fetus toward the cervix, causing it to stretch. This, in turn, signals the pituitary gland to release more oxytocin, causing labor contractions to intensify. The release of oxytocin decreases after the birth of the child.

The more common method of hormone regulation is the negative feedback loop. Negative feedback is characterized by the inhibition of further secretion of a hormone in response to adequate levels of that hormone. This allows blood levels of the hormone to be regulated within a narrow range. An example of a negative feedback loop is the release of glucocorticoid hormones from the adrenal glands, as directed by the hypothalamus and pituitary gland. As glucocorticoid concentrations in the blood rise, the hypothalamus and pituitary gland reduce their signaling to the adrenal glands to prevent additional glucocorticoid secretion (see [Figure 17.3](#)).

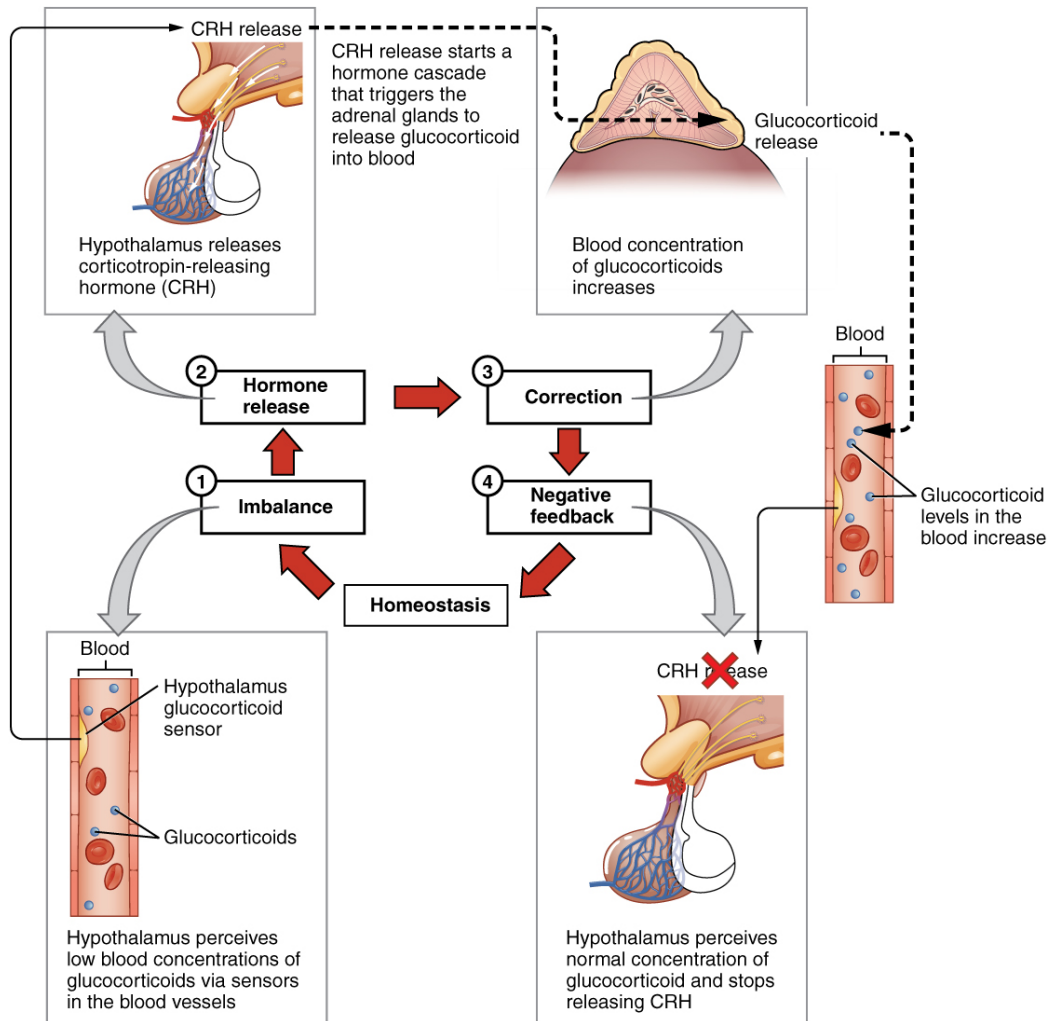


Figure 17.3 Negative Feedback Loop. The release of adrenal glucocorticoids is stimulated by the release of hormones from the hypothalamus and pituitary gland. This signaling is inhibited when glucocorticoid levels become elevated by causing negative signals to the pituitary gland and hypothalamus. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 17.3 Image description.]

Concept Check 2

- Describe how a hormone receptor functions and reacts to messages received.
- Contrast upregulation and downregulation. Are both of these processes necessary? Why or why not?

not?

Anterior Pituitary Gland

The anterior pituitary originates from the digestive tract in the embryo and migrates toward the brain during fetal development. There are three regions: the pars distalis is the most anterior, the pars intermedia is adjacent to the posterior pituitary, and the pars tuberalis is a slender “tube” that wraps the infundibulum.

Recall that the posterior pituitary does not synthesize hormones, but merely stores them. In contrast, the anterior pituitary does manufacture hormones. However, the secretion of hormones from the anterior pituitary is regulated by two classes of hormones. These hormones—secreted by the hypothalamus—are the releasing hormones that stimulate the secretion of hormones from the anterior pituitary and the inhibiting hormones that inhibit secretion.

Hypothalamic hormones are secreted by neurons, but enter the anterior pituitary through blood vessels. Within the infundibulum is a bridge of capillaries that connects the hypothalamus to the anterior pituitary. This network, called the **hypophyseal portal system**, allows hypothalamic hormones to be transported to the anterior pituitary without first entering the systemic circulation. The system originates from the superior hypophyseal artery, which branches off the carotid arteries and transports blood to the hypothalamus. The branches of the superior hypophyseal artery form the hypophyseal portal system (see [Figure 17.4](#)). Hypothalamic releasing and inhibiting hormones travel through a primary capillary plexus to the portal veins, which carry them into the anterior pituitary. Hormones produced by the anterior pituitary (in response to releasing hormones) enter a secondary capillary plexus, and from there drain into the circulation.

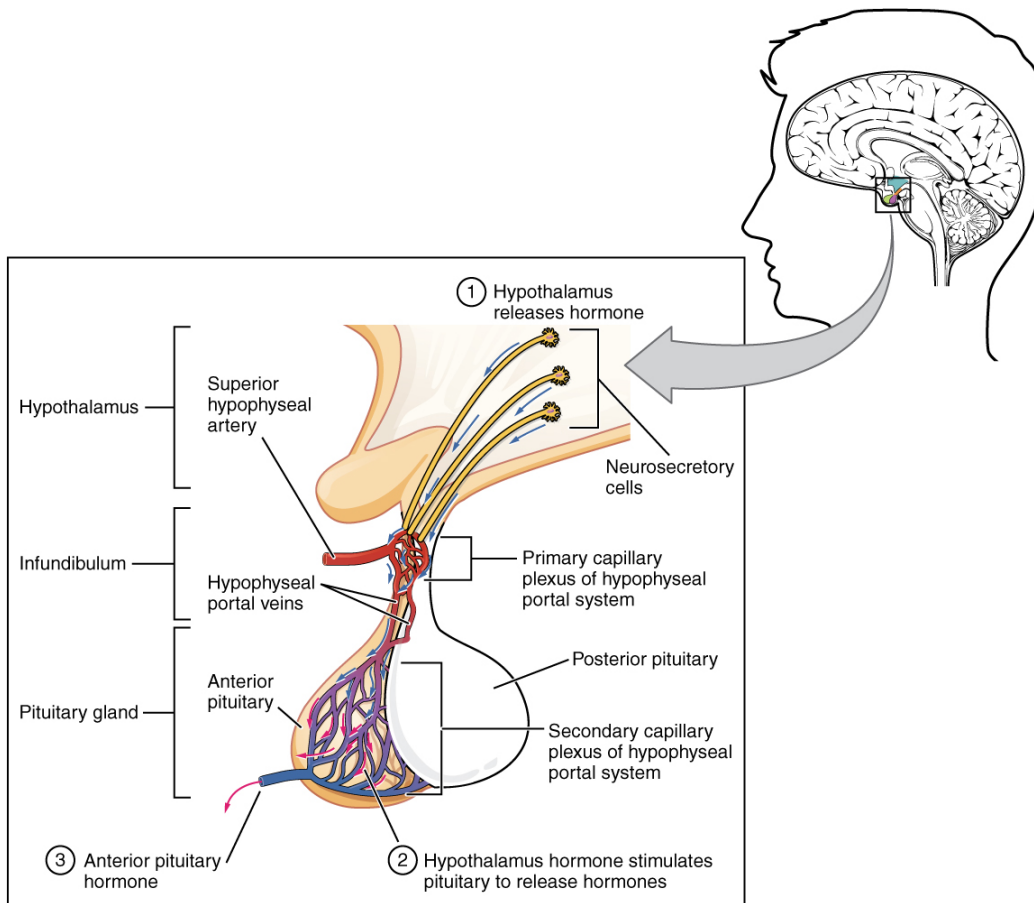


Figure 17.4 Anterior Pituitary. The anterior pituitary manufactures seven hormones. The hypothalamus produces separate hormones that stimulate or inhibit hormone production in the anterior pituitary. Hormones from the hypothalamus reach the anterior pituitary via the hypophyseal portal system. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). [Fig. 17.4 Image description.]

The anterior pituitary produces seven hormones. These are the growth hormone (GH), thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinizing hormone (LH), beta endorphin, and prolactin. Of the hormones of the anterior pituitary, TSH, ACTH, FSH, and LH are collectively referred to as tropic hormones (trope- = “turning”) because they turn on or off the function of other endocrine glands.

Growth Hormone

The endocrine system regulates the growth of the human body, protein synthesis, and cellular replication. A major hormone involved in this process is **growth hormone (GH)**, also called somatotropin—a protein hormone produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary gland. Its primary function is anabolic; it promotes protein synthesis and tissue building through direct and indirect mechanisms (see [Figure 17.5](#)). GH levels are controlled by the release of GHRH and GHIH (also known as somatostatin) from the hypothalamus.

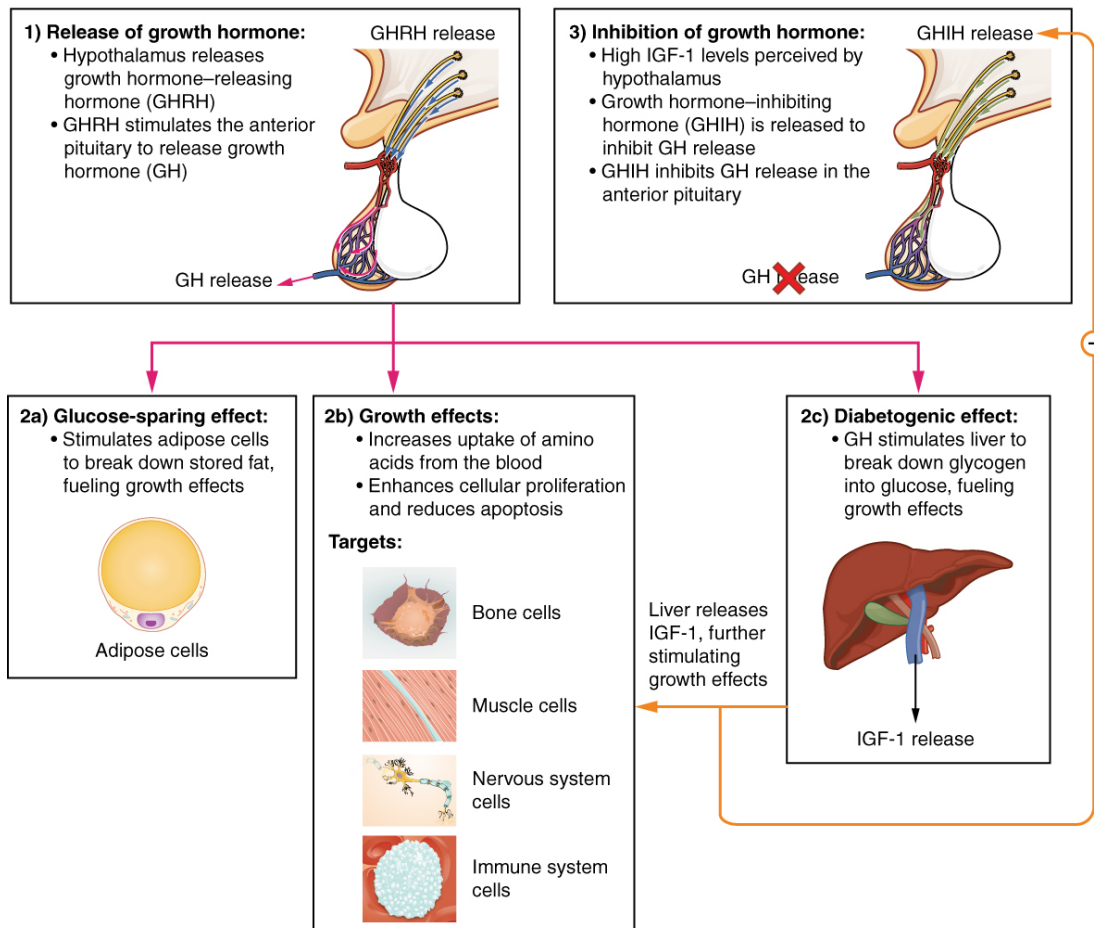


Figure 17.5 Hormonal Regulation of Growth. Growth hormone (GH) directly accelerates the rate of protein synthesis in skeletal muscle and bones. Insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) is activated by growth hormone and indirectly supports the formation of new proteins in muscle cells and bone. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under CC BY 4.0. [Fig. 17.5 Image description.]

A glucose-sparing effect occurs when GH stimulates lipolysis, or the breakdown of adipose tissue, releasing fatty acids into the blood. As a result, many tissues switch from glucose to fatty acids as their main energy source, which means that less glucose is taken up from the bloodstream.

GH also initiates the diabetogenic effect in which GH stimulates the liver to break down glycogen to glucose, which is then deposited into the blood. The name “diabetogenic” is derived from the similarity in elevated blood glucose levels observed between individuals with untreated diabetes mellitus and individuals experiencing GH excess. Blood glucose levels rise as the result of a combination of glucose-sparing and diabetogenic effects.

GH indirectly mediates growth and protein synthesis by triggering the liver and other tissues to produce a group of proteins called **insulin-like growth factors (IGFs)**. These proteins enhance cellular **proliferation** and inhibit apoptosis, or programmed cell death. IGFs stimulate cells to increase their uptake of amino acids from the blood for protein synthesis. Skeletal muscle and cartilage cells are particularly sensitive to stimulation from IGFs.

Dysfunction of the endocrine system’s control of growth can result in several disorders. For example, **gigantism** is a disorder in children that is caused by the secretion of abnormally large amounts of GH, resulting in excessive

growth. A similar condition in adults is **acromegaly**, a disorder that results in the growth of bones in the face, hands, and feet in response to excessive levels of GH in individuals who have stopped growing. Abnormally low levels of GH in children can cause growth impairment—a disorder called **pituitary dwarfism** (also known as growth hormone deficiency).

Posterior Pituitary Gland

The posterior pituitary is actually an extension of the neurons of the nuclei of the hypothalamus. The cell bodies of these regions rest in the hypothalamus, but their axons descend as the hypothalamic–hypophyseal tract within the infundibulum, and end in axon terminals that comprise the posterior pituitary (see [Figure 17.6](#)).

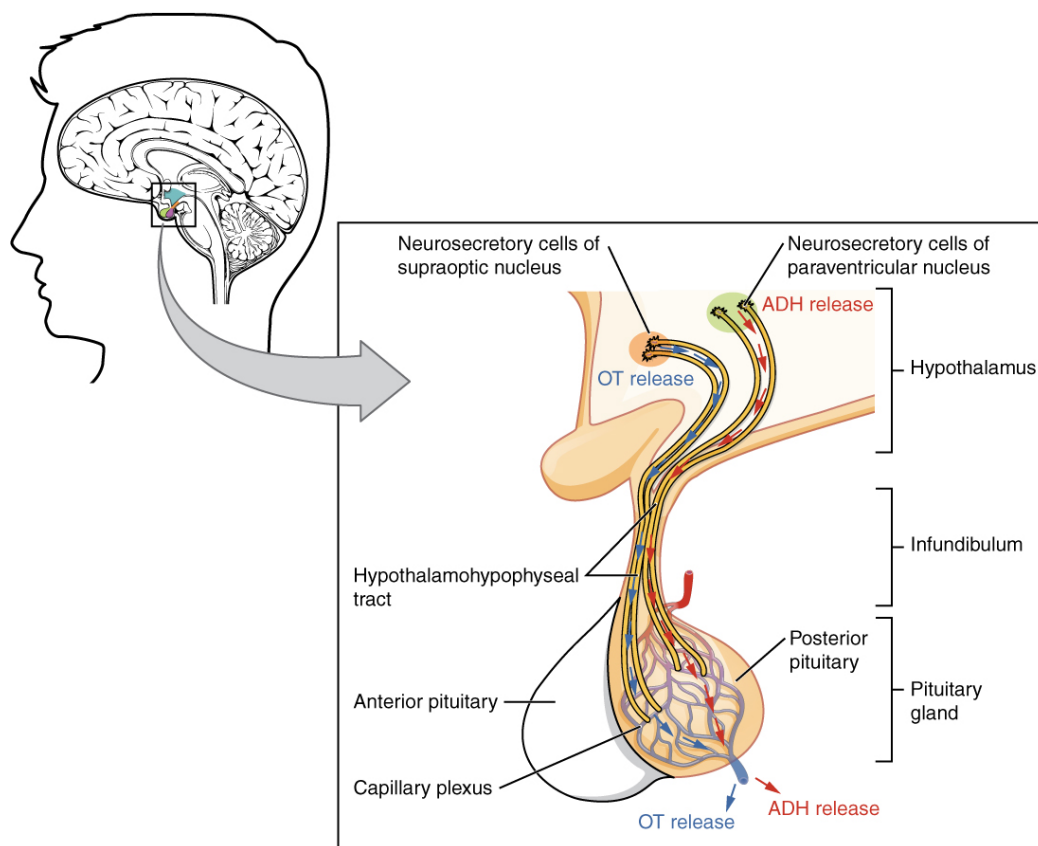


Figure 17.6 Posterior Pituitary. Neurosecretory cells in the hypothalamus release oxytocin (OT) or ADH into the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland. These hormones are stored or released into the blood via the capillary plexus. From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 17.6 Image description](#).]

The posterior pituitary gland does not produce hormones, but rather stores and secretes hormones produced by the hypothalamus. The paraventricular nuclei produce the hormone oxytocin, whereas the supraoptic nuclei produce ADH. These hormones travel along the axons into storage sites in the axon terminals of the posterior pituitary. In response to signals from the same hypothalamic neurons, the hormones are released from the axon terminals into the bloodstream.

Did You Know 2?

Oxytocin is not only used during childbirth, but also breastfeeding.

Oxytocin

When fetal development is complete, the peptide-derived hormone **oxytocin** (tocia- = “childbirth”) stimulates uterine contractions and dilation of the cervix. Throughout most of pregnancy, oxytocin hormone receptors are not expressed at high levels in the uterus. Toward the end of pregnancy, the synthesis of oxytocin receptors in the uterus increases, and the smooth muscle cells of the uterus become more sensitive to its effects. Oxytocin is continually released throughout childbirth through a positive feedback mechanism. As noted earlier, oxytocin prompts uterine contractions that push the fetal head toward the cervix. In response, cervical stretching stimulates additional oxytocin to be synthesized by the hypothalamus and released from the pituitary. This increases the intensity and effectiveness of uterine contractions and prompts additional dilation of the cervix. The feedback loop continues until birth.

Although the mother’s high blood levels of oxytocin begin to decrease immediately following birth, oxytocin continues to play a role in maternal and newborn health. First, oxytocin is necessary for the milk ejection reflex (commonly referred to as “let-down”) in breastfeeding women. As the newborn begins suckling, sensory receptors in the nipples transmit signals to the hypothalamus. In response, oxytocin is secreted and released into the bloodstream. Within seconds, cells in the mother’s milk ducts contract, ejecting milk into the infant’s mouth. Secondly, in both males and females, oxytocin is thought to contribute to parent–newborn bonding, known as attachment. Oxytocin is also thought to be involved in feelings of love and closeness, as well as in the sexual response.

Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH)

The solute concentration of the blood, or blood osmolarity, may change in response to the consumption of certain foods and fluids, as well as in response to disease, injury, medications, or other factors. Blood osmolarity is constantly monitored by **osmoreceptors**—specialized cells within the hypothalamus that are particularly sensitive to the concentration of sodium ions and other solutes.

In response to high blood osmolarity, which can occur during dehydration or following a very salty meal, the osmoreceptors signal the posterior pituitary to release **antidiuretic hormone (ADH)**. The target cells of ADH

are located in the tubular cells of the kidneys. Its effect is to increase epithelial permeability to water, allowing increased water reabsorption. The more water reabsorbed from the filtrate, the greater the amount of water that is returned to the blood and the less that is excreted in the urine. A greater concentration of water results in a reduced concentration of solutes. ADH is also known as vasopressin because, in very high concentrations, it causes constriction of blood vessels, which increases blood pressure by increasing peripheral resistance. The release of ADH is controlled by a negative feedback loop. As blood osmolarity decreases, the hypothalamic osmoreceptors sense the change and prompt a corresponding decrease in the secretion of ADH. As a result, less water is reabsorbed from the urine filtrate.

Interestingly, drugs can affect the secretion of ADH. For example, alcohol consumption inhibits the release of ADH, resulting in increased urine production that can eventually lead to dehydration and a hangover. A disease called diabetes insipidus is characterized by chronic underproduction of ADH that causes chronic dehydration. Because little ADH is produced and secreted, not enough water is reabsorbed by the kidneys. Although patients feel thirsty, and increase their fluid consumption, this doesn't effectively decrease the solute concentration in their blood because ADH levels are not high enough to trigger water reabsorption in the kidneys. Electrolyte imbalances can occur in severe cases of diabetes insipidus.

Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone

The activity of the thyroid gland is regulated by **thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)**, also called thyrotropin. TSH is released from the anterior pituitary in response to thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) from the hypothalamus. As discussed shortly, it triggers the secretion of thyroid hormones by the thyroid gland. In a classic negative feedback loop, elevated levels of thyroid hormones in the bloodstream then trigger a drop in production of TRH and subsequently TSH.

Adrenocorticotropic Hormone

The **adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)**, also called corticotropin, stimulates the adrenal cortex (the more superficial "bark" of the adrenal glands) to secrete corticosteroid hormones such as cortisol. ACTH come from a precursor molecule known as pro-opiomelanotropin (POMC) which produces several biologically active molecules when cleaved, including ACTH, melanocyte-stimulating hormone, and the brain opioid peptides known as endorphins. The release of ACTH is regulated by the corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) from the hypothalamus in response to normal physiologic rhythms. A variety of stressors can also influence its release, and the role of ACTH in the stress response is discussed later in this chapter.

Follicle-Stimulating Hormone and Luteinizing Hormone

The endocrine glands secrete a variety of hormones that control the development and regulation of the reproductive system (these glands include the anterior pituitary, the adrenal cortex, and the gonads—the testes in males and the ovaries in females). Much of the development of the reproductive system occurs during puberty and is marked by the development of sex-specific characteristics in both male and female adolescents. Puberty is initiated by gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), a hormone produced and secreted by the hypothalamus.

GnRH stimulates the anterior pituitary to secrete **gonadotropins**—hormones that regulate the function of the gonads. The levels of GnRH are regulated through a negative feedback loop; high levels of reproductive hormones inhibit the release of GnRH. Throughout life, gonadotropins regulate reproductive function and, in the case of women, the onset and cessation of reproductive capacity.

The gonadotropins include two glycoprotein hormones: **follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)** stimulates the production and maturation of sex cells, or gametes, including ova in women and sperm in men. FSH also promotes follicular growth; these follicles then release estrogens in the female ovaries. **Luteinizing hormone (LH)** triggers ovulation in women, as well as the production of estrogens and progesterone by the ovaries. LH stimulates production of testosterone by the male testes.

Prolactin

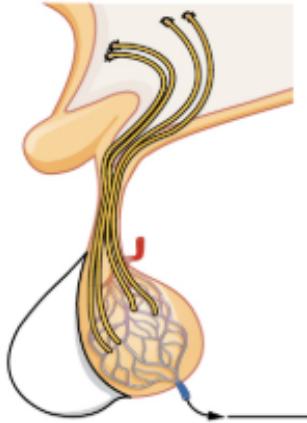
As its name implies, **prolactin (PRL)** promotes lactation (milk production) in women. During pregnancy, it contributes to development of the mammary glands, and after birth, it stimulates the mammary glands to produce breast milk. However, the effects of prolactin depend heavily upon the permissive effects of estrogens, progesterone, and other hormones. And as noted earlier, the let-down of milk occurs in response to stimulation from oxytocin.

In a non-pregnant woman, prolactin secretion is inhibited by prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH), which is actually the **neurotransmitter** dopamine, and is released from neurons in the hypothalamus. Only during pregnancy do prolactin levels rise in response to prolactin-releasing hormone (PRH) from the hypothalamus.

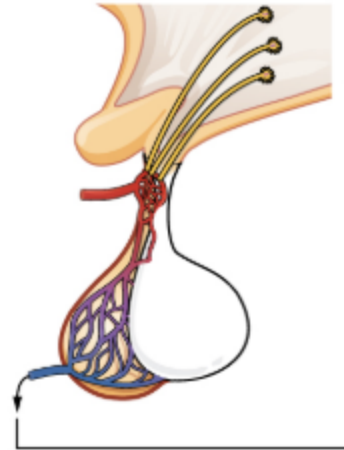
Intermediate Pituitary: Melanocyte-Stimulating Hormone

The cells in the zone between the pituitary lobes secrete a hormone known as melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH) that is formed by cleavage of the pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC) precursor protein. Local production of MSH in the skin is responsible for melanin production in response to UV light exposure. The role of MSH made by the pituitary is more complicated. For instance, people with lighter skin generally have the same amount of MSH as people with darker skin. Nevertheless, this hormone is capable of darkening of the skin by inducing melanin production in the skin's melanocytes. Women also show increased MSH production during pregnancy; in combination with estrogens, it can lead to darker skin pigmentation, especially the skin of the areolas and labia minora. [Table 17.4](#) is a summary of the pituitary hormones and their principal effects.

Table 17.4a & b - Major Pituitary Hormones. Major pituitary hormones and their target organs. Adapted from Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)



The posterior pituitary gland



The Anterior Pituitary Gland

Table 17.4a – Posterior Pituitary Hormones

Releasing hormone (hypothalamus)	Pituitary Hormone	Target	Effects
ADH	Stores ADH	Kidneys, sweat glands, circulatory system	Water balance
-	OT	Female reproductive system	Triggers uterine contractions during childbirth

Table 17.4b – Anterior Pituitary Hormones

Releasing hormone (hypothalamus)	Pituitary Hormone	Target	Effects
GnRH	LH	Reproductive system	Stimulates production of sex hormones by gonads
GnRH	FSH	Reproductive system	stimulates production of sperm and eggs
TRH	TSH	Thyroid gland	Stimulates the release of thyroid hormone (TH), TH regulates metabolism
PRH (inhibited by PIH)	PRL	Mammary glands	Promotes milk production
GHRH (inhibited by GHIH)	GH	Liver, bone, muscles	Induces targets to produce insulin-like growth factors (IGF). IGFs stimulate body growth and higher metabolic rate.
CRH	ACTH	Adrenal glands	Induces targets to produce glucocorticoids, which regulate metabolism and stress response

Pineal Gland

A tiny endocrine gland whose functions are not entirely clear. The **pinealocyte** cells that make up the pineal gland are known to produce and secrete the amine hormone **melatonin**, which is derived from serotonin.

The secretion of melatonin varies according to the level of light received from the environment. When photons of light stimulate the retinas of the eyes, a nerve impulse is sent to a region of the hypothalamus which is important in regulating biological rhythms. When blood levels of melatonin fall, they promote wakefulness. In contrast, as light levels decline, such as during the evening, melatonin production increases, boosting blood levels and causing drowsiness.

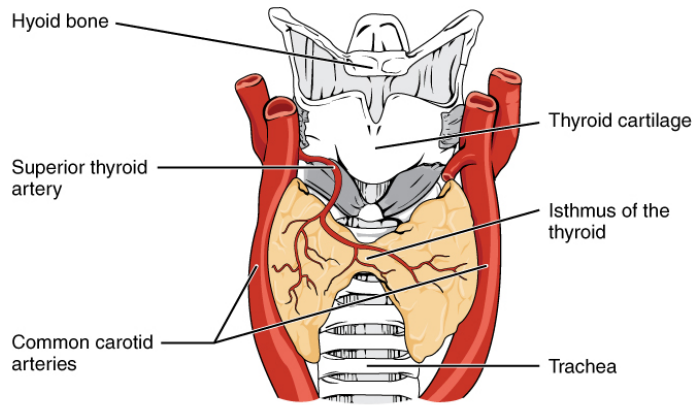
Watch [2-Minute Neuroscience: Melatonin \(2 min\) on YouTube](#)

What should you avoid doing in the middle of your sleep cycle that would lower melatonin?

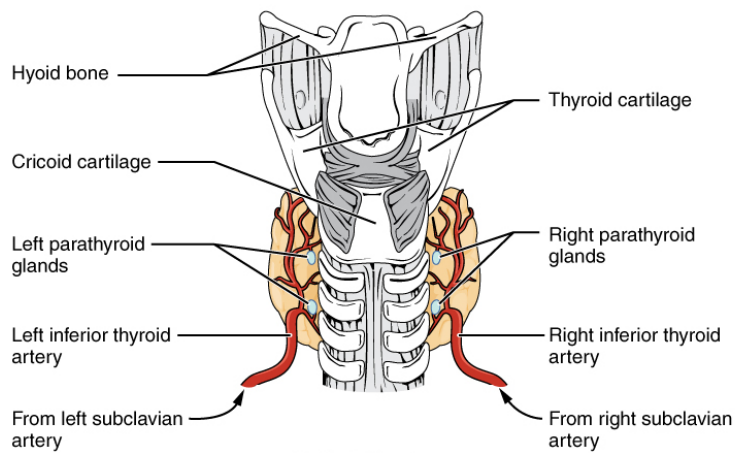
The secretion of melatonin may influence the body's circadian rhythms, the dark-light fluctuations that affect not only sleepiness and wakefulness, but also appetite and body temperature. Interestingly, children have higher melatonin levels than adults, which may prevent the release of gonadotropins from the anterior pituitary, thereby inhibiting the onset of puberty. Finally, an antioxidant role of melatonin is the subject of current research. Jet lag occurs when a person travels across several time zones and feels sleepy during the day or wakeful at night. Traveling across multiple time zones significantly disturbs the light-dark cycle regulated by melatonin. It can take up to several days for melatonin synthesis to adjust to the light-dark patterns in the new environment, resulting in jet lag. Some air travelers take melatonin supplements to induce sleep.

Thyroid Gland

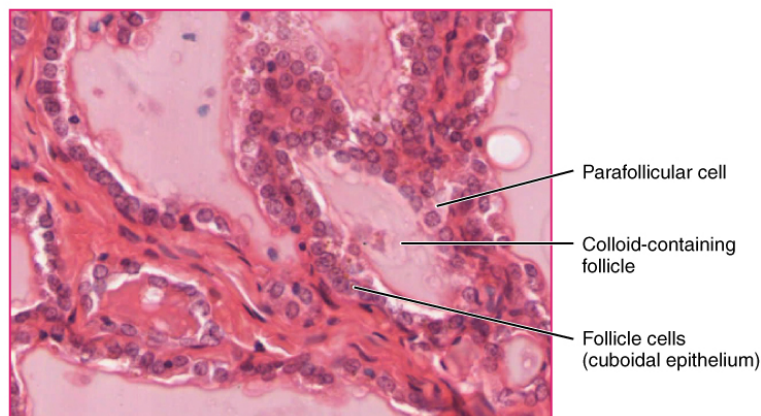
A butterfly-shaped organ, the **thyroid gland** is located anterior to the trachea, just inferior to the larynx (see [Figure 17.7](#)). The medial region, called the isthmus, is flanked by wing-shaped left and right lobes. Each of the thyroid lobes are embedded with parathyroid glands, primarily on their posterior surfaces. The tissue of the thyroid gland is composed mostly of thyroid follicles. The follicles are made up of a central cavity filled with a sticky fluid called **colloid**.



a) Anterior view



b) Posterior view



c) Thyroid follicle cells

Figure 17.7 Thyroid Gland. The thyroid gland is located in the neck where it wraps around the trachea. (a) Anterior view of the thyroid gland. (b) Posterior view of the thyroid gland. (c) The glandular tissue is composed primarily of thyroid follicles. The larger parafollicular cells often appear within the matrix of follicle cells. LM $\times 1332$. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School \copyright 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 17.7 Image description.](#)]

Regulation of TH Synthesis

The release of T₃ and T₄ from the thyroid gland is regulated by thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). Low blood levels of T₃ and T₄ stimulate the release of thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) from the hypothalamus, which triggers secretion of TSH from the anterior pituitary. In turn, TSH stimulates the thyroid gland to secrete T₃ and T₄. The levels of TRH, TSH, T₃, and T₄ are regulated by a negative feedback system in which increasing levels of T₃ and T₄ decrease the production and secretion of TSH. The thyroid hormones, T₃ and T₄, are often referred to as metabolic hormones because their levels influence the body's basal metabolic rate, the amount of energy used by the body at rest.

The thyroid gland also secretes a hormone called **calcitonin** that is produced by the parafollicular cells (also called C cells) that stud the tissue between distinct follicles. Calcitonin is released in response to a rise in blood calcium levels.

Parathyroid Gland

The **parathyroid glands** are tiny, round structures usually found embedded in the posterior surface of the thyroid gland. A thick connective tissue capsule separates the glands from the thyroid tissue. Most people have four parathyroid glands, but occasionally there are more in tissues of the neck or chest. The function of one type of parathyroid cells, the oxyphil cells, is not clear. The primary functional cells of the parathyroid glands are the chief cells. These epithelial cells produce and secrete the **parathyroid hormone (PTH)**, the major hormone involved in the regulation of blood calcium levels.

Adrenal Gland

The **adrenal glands** are wedges of glandular and neuroendocrine tissue adhering to the top of the kidneys by a fibrous capsule (see [Figure 17.8](#)). The adrenal glands have a rich blood supply and experience one of the highest rates of blood flow in the body. They are served by several arteries branching off the aorta, including the suprarenal and renal arteries. Blood flows to each adrenal gland at the adrenal cortex and then drains into the adrenal medulla. Adrenal hormones are released into the circulation via the left and right suprarenal veins.

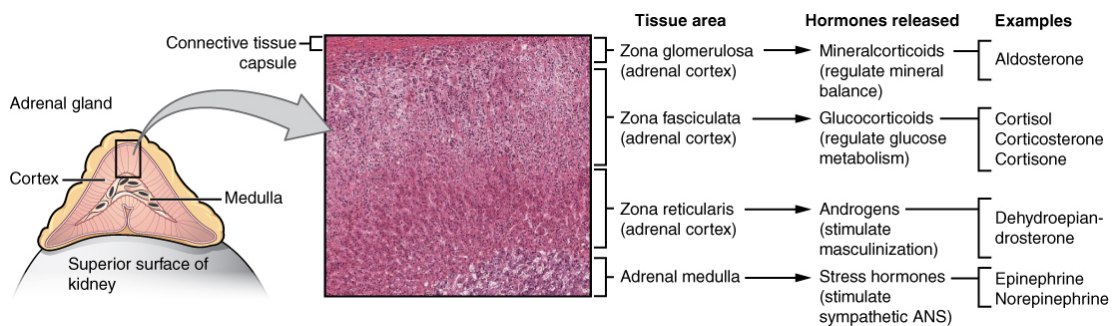


Figure 17.8 Adrenal Glands. Both adrenal glands sit atop the kidneys and are composed of an outer cortex and an inner medulla, all surrounded by a connective tissue capsule. The cortex can be subdivided into additional zones, all of which produce different types of hormones. LM × 204. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School © 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 17.8 Image description](#).]

The **adrenal cortex**, as a component of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis, secretes steroid hormones important for the regulation of the long-term stress response, blood pressure and blood volume, nutrient uptake and storage, fluid and electrolyte balance, and inflammation. The HPA axis involves the stimulation of hormone release of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) from the pituitary by the hypothalamus. ACTH then stimulates the adrenal cortex to produce the hormone cortisol. This pathway will be discussed in more detail below.

The **adrenal medulla** is neuroendocrine tissue composed of postganglionic sympathetic nervous system (SNS) neurons. It is really an extension of the autonomic nervous system, which regulates homeostasis in the body. The sympathomedullary (SAM) pathway involves the stimulation of the medulla by impulses from the hypothalamus via neurons from the thoracic spinal cord. The medulla is stimulated to secrete the amine hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine.

One of the major functions of the adrenal gland is to respond to stress. Stress can be either physical or psychological or both. Physical stresses include exposing the body to injury, walking outside in cold and wet conditions without a coat on, or malnutrition. Psychological stresses include the perception of a physical threat, a fight with a loved one, or just a bad day at school.

The body responds in different ways to short-term stress and long-term stress following a pattern known as the **general adaptation syndrome (GAS)**. Stage one of GAS is called the **alarm reaction**. This is short-term stress, the fight-or-flight response, mediated by the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal medulla via the SAM pathway. Their function is to prepare the body for extreme physical exertion. Once this stress is relieved, the body quickly returns to normal. The section on the adrenal medulla covers this response in more detail.

If the stress is not soon relieved, the body adapts to the stress in the second stage called the **stage of resistance**. If a person is starving for example, the body may send signals to the gastrointestinal tract to maximize the absorption of nutrients from food.

If the stress continues for a longer term however, the body responds with symptoms quite different than the fight-or-flight response. During the **stage of exhaustion**, individuals may begin to suffer depression, the suppression of their immune response, severe fatigue, or even a fatal heart attack. These symptoms are mediated by the hormones of the adrenal cortex, especially cortisol, released as a result of signals from the HPA axis.

Adrenal hormones also have several non-stress-related functions, including the increase of blood sodium and glucose levels, which will be described in detail below.

Adrenal Cortex

The adrenal cortex consists of multiple layers of lipid-storing cells that occur in three structurally distinct regions. Each of these regions produces different hormones.

Watch [Endocrine System, Part 2 – Hormone Cascades: Crash Course Anatomy & Physiology #24 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Concept Check 3

- Which hormone produced by the adrenal glands is responsible for the mobilization of energy stores?

Hormones of the Zona Glomerulosa

The most superficial region of the adrenal cortex is the zona glomerulosa, which produces a group of hormones collectively referred to as **mineralocorticoids** because of their effect on body minerals, especially sodium and potassium. These hormones are essential for fluid and electrolyte balance.

Aldosterone is the major mineralocorticoid. It is important in the regulation of the concentration of sodium and potassium ions in urine, sweat, and saliva. For example, it is released in response to elevated blood K^+ , low blood Na^+ , low blood pressure, or low blood volume. In response, aldosterone increases the excretion of K^+ and the retention of Na^+ , which in turn increases blood volume and blood pressure. Its secretion is prompted when CRH from the hypothalamus triggers ACTH release from the anterior pituitary.

Aldosterone is also a key component of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) in which specialized cells of the kidneys secrete the enzyme renin in response to low blood volume or low blood pressure. Renin then catalyzes the conversion of the blood protein angiotensinogen, produced by the liver, to the hormone angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is converted in the lungs to angiotensin II by **angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)**. Angiotensin II has three major functions:

1. Initiating vasoconstriction of the arterioles, decreasing blood flow
2. Stimulating kidney tubules to reabsorb $NaCl$ and water, increasing blood volume
3. Signaling the adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone, the effects of which further contribute to fluid retention, restoring blood pressure and blood volume

For individuals with hypertension, or high blood pressure, drugs are available that block the production of angiotensin II. These drugs, known as ACE inhibitors, block the ACE enzyme from converting angiotensin I to angiotensin II, thus mitigating the latter's ability to increase blood pressure.

Hormones of the Zona Fasciculata

The intermediate region of the adrenal cortex is the zona fasciculata, named as such because the cells form small fascicles (bundles) separated by tiny blood vessels. The cells of the zona fasciculata produce hormones called **glucocorticoids** because of their role in glucose metabolism. The most important of these is **cortisol**, some of which the liver converts to cortisone. A glucocorticoid produced in much smaller amounts is corticosterone. In response to long-term stressors, the hypothalamus secretes CRH, which in turn triggers the release of ACTH by the anterior pituitary. ACTH triggers the release of the glucocorticoids. Their overall effect is to inhibit tissue building while stimulating the breakdown of stored nutrients to maintain adequate fuel supplies. In conditions of long-term stress, for example, cortisol promotes the catabolism of glycogen to glucose, the catabolism of stored triglycerides into fatty acids and glycerol, and the catabolism of muscle proteins into amino acids. These raw materials can then be used to synthesize additional glucose and ketones for use as body fuels. The hippocampus, which is part of the temporal lobe of the cerebral cortex and important in memory formation, is highly sensitive to stress levels because of its many glucocorticoid receptors.

You are probably familiar with prescription and over-the-counter medications containing glucocorticoids, such as cortisone injections into inflamed joints, prednisone tablets and steroid-based inhalers used to manage severe asthma, and hydrocortisone creams applied to relieve itchy skin rashes. These drugs reflect another role of cortisol—the downregulation of the immune system, which inhibits the inflammatory response.

Hormones of the Zona Reticularis

The deepest region of the adrenal cortex is the zona reticularis, which produces small amounts of a class of steroid sex hormones called androgens. During puberty and most of adulthood, androgens are produced in the gonads. The androgens produced in the zona reticularis supplement the gonadal androgens. They are produced in response to ACTH from the anterior pituitary and are converted in the tissues to testosterone or estrogens. In adult women, they may contribute to the sex drive, but their function in adult men is not well understood. In post-menopausal women, as the functions of the ovaries decline, the main source of estrogens becomes the androgens produced by the zona reticularis.

Adrenal Medulla

As noted earlier, the adrenal cortex releases glucocorticoids in response to long-term stress such as severe illness. In contrast, the adrenal medulla releases its hormones in response to acute, short-term stress mediated by the sympathetic nervous system (SNS).

The medullary tissue is composed of unique postganglionic SNS neurons called **chromaffin** cells, which are large and irregularly shaped, and produce the neurotransmitters **epinephrine** (also called adrenaline) and **norepinephrine** (or noradrenaline). Epinephrine is produced in greater quantities—approximately a 4 to 1 ratio with norepinephrine—and is the more powerful hormone. Because the chromaffin cells release epinephrine and norepinephrine into the systemic circulation, where they travel widely and exert effects on distant cells, they are considered hormones. Derived from the amino acid tyrosine, they are chemically classified as catecholamines.

The secretion of medullary epinephrine and norepinephrine is controlled by a neural pathway that originates

from the hypothalamus in response to danger or stress (the SAM pathway). Both epinephrine and norepinephrine signal the liver and skeletal muscle cells to convert glycogen into glucose, resulting in increased blood glucose levels. These hormones increase the heart rate, pulse, and blood pressure to prepare the body to fight the perceived threat or flee from it. In addition, the pathway dilates the airways, raising blood oxygen levels. It also prompts vasodilation, further increasing the oxygenation of important organs such as the lungs, brain, heart, and skeletal muscle. At the same time, it triggers vasoconstriction to blood vessels serving less essential organs such as the gastrointestinal tract, kidneys, and skin, and downregulates some components of the immune system. Other effects include a dry mouth, loss of appetite, pupil dilation, and a loss of peripheral vision.

The **pancreas** is a long, slender organ, most of which is located posterior to the bottom half of the stomach (see [Figure 17.9](#)). Although it is primarily an exocrine gland, secreting a variety of digestive enzymes, the pancreas has an endocrine function. Its **pancreatic islets**—clusters of cells formerly known as the islets of Langerhans—secrete the hormones glucagon, insulin, somatostatin, and pancreatic polypeptide (PP).

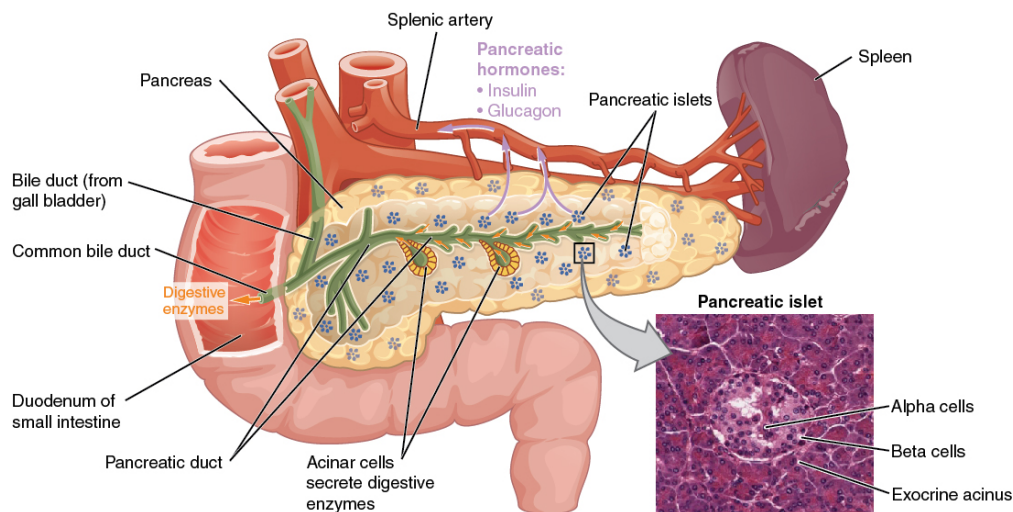


Figure 17.9 Pancreas. The pancreatic exocrine function involves the acinar cells secreting digestive enzymes that are transported into the small intestine by the pancreatic duct. Its endocrine function involves the secretion of insulin (produced by beta cells) and glucagon (produced by alpha cells) within the pancreatic islets. These two hormones regulate the rate of glucose metabolism in the body. The micrograph reveals pancreatic islets. LM × 760. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School © 2012). From Betts et al., 2013. Licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). [[Fig. 17.9 Image description](#).]

Cells and Secretions of the Pancreatic Islets

The pancreatic islets each contain four varieties of cells:

- The **alpha cell** produces the hormone glucagon and makes up approximately 20 percent of each islet. Glucagon plays an important role in blood glucose regulation; low blood glucose levels stimulate its release.
- The **beta cell** produces the hormone insulin and makes up approximately 75 percent of each islet. Elevated blood glucose levels stimulate the release of insulin.
- The **delta cell** accounts for four percent of the islet cells and secretes the peptide hormone somatostatin. Recall that somatostatin is also released by the hypothalamus (as GHIH), and the stomach and intestines also secrete it. An inhibiting hormone, pancreatic somatostatin inhibits the release of both glucagon and

insulin.

- The **PP cell** accounts for about one percent of islet cells and secretes the pancreatic polypeptide hormone. It is thought to play a role in appetite, as well as in the regulation of pancreatic exocrine and endocrine secretions. Pancreatic polypeptide released following a meal may reduce further food consumption; however, it is also released in response to fasting.

Regulation of Blood Glucose Levels by Insulin and Glucagon

Glucose is required for cellular respiration and is the preferred fuel for all body cells. The body derives glucose from the breakdown of the carbohydrate-containing foods and drinks we consume. Glucose not immediately taken up by cells for fuel can be stored by the liver and muscles as glycogen, or converted to triglycerides and stored in the adipose tissue. Hormones regulate both the storage and the utilization of glucose as required. Receptors located in the pancreas sense blood glucose levels, and subsequently the pancreatic cells secrete glucagon or insulin to maintain normal levels.

Gonadal Glands

The male testes and female ovaries—which produce the sex cells (sperm and ova) and secrete the gonadal hormones. The roles of the gonadotropins released from the anterior pituitary (FSH and LH) were discussed earlier.

The primary hormone produced by the male testes is **testosterone**, a steroid hormone important in the development of the male reproductive system, the maturation of sperm cells, and the development of male secondary sex characteristics such as a deepened voice, body hair, and increased muscle mass. Interestingly, testosterone is also produced in the female ovaries, but at a much reduced level. In addition, the testes produce the peptide hormone **inhibin**, which inhibits the secretion of FSH from the anterior pituitary gland. FSH stimulates spermatogenesis.

The primary hormones produced by the ovaries are **estrogens**, which include estradiol, estriol, and estrone. Estrogens play an important role in a larger number of physiological processes, including the development of the female reproductive system, regulation of the menstrual cycle, the development of female secondary sex characteristics such as increased adipose tissue and the development of breast tissue, and the maintenance of pregnancy. Another significant ovarian hormone is **progesterone**, which contributes to regulation of the menstrual cycle and is important in preparing the body for pregnancy as well as maintaining pregnancy. In addition, the granulosa cells of the ovarian follicles produce inhibin, which—as in males—inhibits the secretion of FSH. During the initial stages of pregnancy, an organ called the placenta develops within the uterus. The placenta supplies oxygen and nutrients to the fetus, excretes waste products, and produces and secretes estrogens and progesterone. The placenta produces human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) as well. The hCG hormone promotes progesterone synthesis and reduces the mother's immune function to protect the fetus from immune rejection. It also secretes human placental lactogen (hPL), which plays a role in preparing the breasts for lactation, and relaxin, which is thought to help soften and widen the pubic symphysis in preparation for childbirth.

Common Endocrine System Abbreviations

Endocrine System Common Abbreviations

- **ACTH** (adrenocorticotropic hormone)
- **ADH** (antidiuretic hormone)
- **DI** (diabetes insipidus)
- **DKA** (diabetic ketoacidosis)
- **DM** (diabetes mellitus)
- **FBS** (fasting blood sugar)
- **FNA** (fine needle aspiration)
- **FSH** (follicle-stimulating hormone)
- **GH** (growth hormone)
- **HbA1C** (glycosylated hemoglobin)
- **LH** (luteinizing hormone)
- **PRL** (prolactin)
- **RAIU** (radioactive iodine uptake)
- **TSH** (thyroid-stimulating hormone)
- **Thyroid Profile** (T4, T3, and TSH)
- **T4** (thyroxine level)
- **T3**, (triiodothyronine level)
- **TSH** (thyroid stimulating hormone)

Activity source: Endocrine System Common Abbreviations by Kimberlee Carter, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Concept Check

- Do you recall the term which describes high level of glucose in the blood?
- Do you recall the neurotransmitter responsible for assisting the response to danger or stress?
- Suggest what may happen if the adrenal cortex failed to secrete its hormones.

Image Descriptions

Figure 17.3 image description: This diagram shows a negative feedback loop using the example of glucocorticoid regulation in the blood. Step 1 in the cycle is when an imbalance occurs. The hypothalamus perceives low blood concentrations of glucocorticoids in the blood. This is illustrated by there being only 5 glucocorticoids floating in a cross section of an artery. Step 2 in the cycle is hormone release, where the hypothalamus releases corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). Step 3 is labeled correction. Here, the CRH release starts a hormone cascade that triggers the adrenal gland to release glucocorticoid into the blood. This allows the blood concentration of glucocorticoid to increase, as illustrated by 8 glucocorticoid molecules now being present in the cross section of the artery. Step 4 is labeled negative feedback. Here, the hypothalamus perceives normal concentrations of glucocorticoids in the blood and stops releasing CRH. This brings blood glucocorticoid levels back to homeostasis. [\[Return to Figure 17.3\].](#)

Figure 17.4 image description: This illustration zooms in on the hypothalamus and the attached pituitary gland. The anterior pituitary is highlighted. Three neurosecretory cells are secreting hormones into a web-like network of arteries within the infundibulum. The artery net is labeled the primary capillary plexus of the hypophyseal portal system. The superior hypophyseal artery enters the primary capillary plexus from outside of the infundibulum. The hypophyseal portal vein runs down from the primary capillary plexus, through the infundibulum, and connects to the secondary capillary plexus of the hypophyseal portal system. The secondary capillary plexus is located within the anterior pituitary. The hormones released from the neurosecretory cells of the hypothalamus travel through the primary capillary plexus, down the hypophyseal portal vein, and into the secondary capillary plexus. There, the hypothalamus hormones stimulate the anterior pituitary to release its hormones. The anterior pituitary hormones leave the primary capillary plexus from a single vein at the bottom of the anterior lobe. [\[Return to Figure 17.4\].](#)

Figure 17.5 image description: This flow chart illustrates the hormone cascade that stimulates human growth. In step 1, the hypothalamus releases growth hormone-releasing hormone (GHRH). GHRH travels into the primary capillary plexus of the anterior pituitary, where it stimulates the anterior pituitary to release growth hormone (GH). The release of growth hormone causes three types of effects. In the glucose-sparing effect, GH stimulates adipose cells to break down stored fat, fueling the growth effects (discussed next). The target cells for the glucose-sparing effects are adipose cells. In the growth effects, GH increases the uptake of amino acids from the blood and enhances cellular proliferation while also reducing apoptosis. The target cells for the growth effects are bone cells, muscle cells, nervous system cells, and immune system cells. In the diabetogenic effect, GH stimulates the liver to break down glycogen into glucose, fueling the growth effects. The liver also releases IGF in response to GH. The IGF further stimulates the growth effects but also negatively feeds back to the hypothalamus. When high IGF one levels are perceived by the hypothalamus, it releases growth hormone inhibiting hormone (GHIH). GHIH inhibits GH release by the anterior pituitary. [\[Return to Figure 17.5\].](#)

Figure 17.6 image description: This illustration zooms in on the hypothalamus and the attached pituitary gland. The posterior pituitary is highlighted. Two nuclei in the hypothalamus contain neurosecretory cells that release different hormones. The neurosecretory cells of the paraventricular nucleus release oxytocin (OT) while the neurosecretory cells of the supraoptic nucleus release anti-diuretic hormone (ADH). The neurosecretory cells stretch down the infundibulum into the posterior pituitary. The tube-like extensions of the neurosecretory cells within the infundibulum are labeled the hypothalamohypophyseal tracts. These tracts connect with a web-like network of blood vessels in the posterior pituitary called the capillary plexus. From the capillary plexus, the posterior pituitary secretes the OT or ADH into a single vein that exits the pituitary. [\[Return to Figure 17.6\].](#)

Figure 17.7 image description: Part A of this figure is a diagram of the anterior view of the thyroid gland. The thyroid gland is a butterfly-shaped gland wrapping around the trachea. It narrows at its center, just under the thyroid cartilage of the larynx. This narrow area is called the isthmus of the thyroid. Two large arteries, the common carotid arteries, run parallel to the trachea on the outer border of the thyroid. A small artery enters the superior edge of the thyroid, near the isthmus, and branches throughout the two “wings” of the thyroid. Part B of this figure is a posterior view of the thyroid. The posterior view shows that the thyroid does not completely wrap around the posterior of the trachea. The posterior sides of the thyroid wings can be seen protruding from under the cricoid cartilage of the larynx. The posterior sides of the thyroid “wings” each contain two small, disc-shaped parathyroid glands embedded in the thyroid tissue. Within each wing, one disc is located superior to the other. These are labeled the left and right parathyroid glands. Just under the inferior parathyroid glands are two arteries that bring blood to the thyroid from the left and right subclavian arteries. Part C of this figure is a micrograph of thyroid tissue. The thyroid follicle cells are cuboidal epithelial cells. These cells form a ring around irregular-shaped cavities called follicles. The follicles contain light colored colloid. A larger parafollicular cell is embedded between two of the follicular cells near the edge of a follicle. [\[Return to Figure 17.7\].](#)

Figure 17.8 image description: This diagram shows the left adrenal gland located atop the left kidney. The gland is composed of an outer cortex and an inner medulla all surrounded by a connective tissue capsule. The cortex can be subdivided into additional zones, all of which produce different types of hormones. The outermost layer is the zona glomerulosa, which releases mineralcorticoids, such as aldosterone, that regulate mineral balance. Underneath this layer is the zona fasciculate, which releases glucocorticoids, such as cortisol, corticosterone and cortisone, that regulate glucose metabolism. Underneath this layer is the zona reticularis, which releases androgens, such as dehydroepiandrosterone, that stimulate masculinization. Below this layer is the adrenal medulla, which releases stress hormones, such as epinephrine and norepinephrine, that stimulate the sympathetic ANS. [\[Return to Figure 17.8\].](#)

Figure 17.9 image description: This diagram shows the anatomy of the pancreas. The left, larger side of the pancreas is seated within the curve of the duodenum of the small intestine. The smaller, rightmost tip of the pancreas is located near the spleen. The splenic artery is seen travelling to the spleen, however, it has several branches connecting to the pancreas. An interior view of the pancreas shows that the pancreatic duct is a large tube running through the center of the pancreas. It branches throughout its length in to several horseshoe-shaped pockets of acinar cells. These cells secrete digestive enzymes, which travel down the bile duct and into the small intestine. There are also small pancreatic islets scattered throughout the pancreas. The pancreatic islets secrete the pancreatic hormones insulin and glucagon into the splenic artery. An inset micrograph shows that the pancreatic islets are small discs of tissue consisting of a thin, outer ring called the exocrine acinus, a thicker, inner ring of beta cells and a central circle of alpha cells. [\[Return to Figure 17.9\].](#)

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Endocrine System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Endocrine System chapter content into sub-chapters.

17.4 - Endocrine System Diseases, Disorders and Diagnostic Testing

Acromegaly

A disorder in adults caused when abnormally high levels of GH trigger growth of bones in the face, hands, and feet.

Addison's disease

A rare disorder that causes low blood glucose levels and low blood sodium levels. The signs and symptoms of Addison's disease are vague and are typical of other disorders as well, making diagnosis difficult. They may include general weakness, abdominal pain, weight loss, nausea, vomiting, sweating, and cravings for salty food (Betts et al., 2013).

Cushing's disease

A disorder characterized by high blood glucose levels and the accumulation of lipid deposits on the face and neck. It is caused by hypersecretion of cortisol. The most common source of Cushing's disease is a pituitary tumor that secretes cortisol or ACTH in abnormally high amounts (Betts et al., 2013).

Gigantism

A disorder in children caused when abnormally high levels of GH prompt excessive growth in the body (Betts et al., 2013).

Hirsutism

Hirsutism is a symptom of an excessive production of **androgens** causing hair growth in women where they typically do not have hair growth. While some medications may cause the increased androgen production it can also be linked to endocrine disorders such as Polycystic Ovary Syndrome (PCOS), Cushing syndrome, and tumours in the ovaries or adrenal glands (Mayo Clinic Staff, 2021).

Hyperthyroidism

A condition marked by high levels of thyroid hormones that results in weight loss, profuse sweating, and increased heart rate (Betts et al., 2013).

Hypothyroidism

A condition marked by low levels of thyroid hormones that results in weight gain, cold sensitivity, and reduced mental activity (Betts et al., 2013).

Graves Disease

A condition marked by a disorder of the thyroid gland, resulting in hyperthyroidism (Betts et al., 2013).

Diabetes Insipidus

A condition caused by a lack of or hyposecretion of the antidiuretic hormone (ADH). The condition can also be caused by the failure of the kidneys to respond to ADH (Betts et al., 2013).

Diabetes (Mellitus)

A condition marked by a disorder of the pancreas, resulting in high levels of glucose in the blood (Betts et al., 2013).

Endocrine System Medical Terms in Context

Endocrine System – Consultation Report

Endocrine System – Consultation Report (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the consultation report:

- menstrual
- palpitations
- conjunctival
- antibodies
- side effects
- medications
- discontinue
- elevated

PATIENT NAME: Jane SMITH

AGE: 26

SEX: Female

DATE OF CONSULTATION: January 15, 2020

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Mary Johnstone, MD, Internal Medicine

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Hyperthyroidism; Graves disease.

PATIENT NAME: Jane SMITH

AGE: 26

SEX: Female

DATE OF CONSULTATION: January 15, 2020

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Mary Johnstone, MD, Internal Medicine

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Hyperthyroidism; Graves disease.

HISTORY: Around 2 months ago she started noticing _____[Blank 1] and peripheral tremor. She was feeling more anxious and edgy. She had a 10-pound weight loss despite eating well. She was having some heat intolerance and diarrhea, and her _____[Blank 2] cycles were irregular. She also noticed her eyes were different. She went to see her family doctor who did lab work and was found to have a TSH suppressed with a free T4 around 40 and free T3 around 10. She then had a 24-hour thyroid uptake and scan that was abnormal with a 24-hour of 70 and a diffuse pan with a homogeneous pattern percentage in keeping with Graves disease. Her TSI was _____[Blank 3] at around 30.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: On physical exam her blood pressure was 140/60, heart rate was 120 with regular rhythm. She had mild proptosis with no infection of the _____[Blank 4] area. Normal eye movement. No pretibial myxedema. She had a diffuse goiter of around 60 g with no murmur and no nodularity. No abnormal lymphadenopathies. There was a positional tremor. Her weight was 90 pounds.

SOCIAL HISTORY: Jane has no significant past medical history. She is finishing her fourth year in biological studies. She is also working on a part-time basis. She is not aware of a family history of thyroid disease. She is currently on no medications. She is a smoker, around 15 cigarettes a day. She rarely drinks alcohol. She denies marijuana use.

SUMMARY: Jane presents with Graves disease. She has hyperthyroidism positive _____[Blank 5] and an increased thyroid uptake and a thyroid scan in keeping with her condition.

We talked about different repair options. We discussed Tapazole versus radioactive iodine. We discussed the pros and cons of each treatment option. She preferred to start on Tapazole. We talked about the potential _____[Blank 6] of these medications including the risk of rash, increasing liver enzymes, and the rare risk of agranulocytosis. I explained to her that if she has a mild or high fever, she should have her CBC checked through the ER, and if there is evidence of a granulocytosis, she cannot resume Tapazole. Usually Tapazole is well tolerated.

PLAN: I have started her on Tapazole 30 mg, and she will repeat lab work in a month and see me at that point. I explained to her that usually 8-18 months of treatment are necessary. Response varies from

patient to patient. Frequent levels are necessary to adjust the _____[Blank 7] according to response.

If she has side effects to Tapazole or there is no response, or she is experiencing regular flares, then she should _____[Blank 8] the use of the Tapazole. Other options such as radioactive iodine can be considered. I would not favour radioactive iodine in her case as she is a smoker and that she has had a mild ophthalmopathy. Radioactive iodine can worsen ophthalmopathy, therefore it should be avoided in smokers.

We talked about the importance of discontinuing smoking as it can worsen the disease.

Mary Johnstone, MD, Internal Medicine

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Endocrine System – Consultation Report by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Endocrine System – Consultation Report

“Endocrine System – Consultation Report” (Text version)

Use the words below to fill in the consultation report:

- diabetes
- metabolic
- palpitations
- neuropathy
- congestive
- rhythm
- pulses
- diuretics
- sugars
- vascular disease
- edema

PATIENT NAME: Margaret JONES

SEX: Female

AGE: 56

DATE OF CONSULTATION: January 15, 2020

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN: Mary Johnstone, MD, Internal Medicine

REASON FOR CONSULTATION: Type 2 diabetes.

HISTORY: I saw Margaret as a follow up today in regards to poorly controlled type 2 _____[Blank

1]. She is reluctant to make any changes in her current medications. She is very afraid of side effects of all her medications. She has not been testing her blood sugar but is planning to start doing it again. Unfortunately, Mary did not do lab work prior to seeing me. I do not have an updated lab work for at least 2 years. It is very difficult to assess her _____[Blank 2] control without any information. She continues to be sedentary, but she tells me she has no chest pain or shortness of breath when doing the chores around the house or going up or down the stairs. She denies of orthopnea, ankle swelling, _____[Blank 3], presyncope or syncope.

PAST MEDICAL HISTORY

1. Type 2 diabetes diagnosed 2009. Advanced microvascular complications including non-proliferative retinopathy. Nephropathy with significant microalbuminuria. No _____[Blank 4]. Positive coronary artery disease and peripheral vascular disease. Poor control for several years.
2. Coronary artery disease. CABG 4 in 2019. LIMA to LAD SVG to OM and RCA. Grade 2 left ventricular function. Previous episodes of _____[Blank 5] heart failure preserved ejection fraction with regular admissions due to volume overload.
3. Hypertension.
4. Hypercholesterolemia.
5. Smoker.
6. Alcohol, 5-8 beers a week.
7. Obesity.
8. Peripheral vascular disease, femoral popliteal bypass in 2017.

MEDICATIONS

Aspirin 81 g q.d..

Bisoprolol 5 mg q.d.

Ramipril 20 mg q.d.

Rosuvastatin 20 mg q.d.

Invokana 300 mg q.d.

Tresiba 20 units q.d.

Metformin 1 b.i.d.

Ozempic 1 mg q.wk.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION: On physical exam her weight was 100 kg. Blood pressure 160/70, heart rate 88/min. Sa and S2 were heard in 4 areas with regular _____[Blank 6]. There is a 2/6 systolic murmur best heard in aortic area with no radiation. Strong carotid pulses and radial _____[Blank 7]. JVP was 3 cm above sternal angle. Lungs were clear. There was bilateral leg _____[Blank 8] with venous changes in keeping with venous stasis dermatitis. Abdomen was soft, no evidence of ascites. No focal findings.

SUMMARY: Margaret has a history of poorly controlled type 2 diabetes and today is very difficult to assess her metabolic control as I do not have any information as she is not checking her blood _____[Blank 9] and has not had lab work for several years. She tells me she is compliant with her plan.

She also has a history of coronary artery disease and currently has no exertional symptoms. There is no

evidence of significant volume overload, but she has a history of recurrent admissions due to congestive heart failure preserved ejection fraction. She is currently not on _____ [Blank 10] and I do not think that needs to be restarted. She should continue on the combination of ACE inhibitors, beta-blockers, antiplatelets, and high intensity setting therapy.

PLAN: I asked her to do lab work and come back to see me to reassess if her treatment plan is adequate. We talked about the importance of quitting smoking. Smoking is associated with increased risk of further coronary events and progression of her peripheral _____ [Blank 11].

Mary Johnstone, MD, Internal Medicine

Note: Report samples (H5P and Pressbooks) are to encourage learners to identify correct medical terminology and do not represent the Association for Health Documentation Integrity (AHDI) formatting standards.

Check your answers: ²

Activity source: Endocrine System – Consultation Report by Heather Scudder, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Medical Specialties and Procedures Related to the Endocrine System

Endocrinology is a specialization in the field of medicine that focuses on the treatment of endocrine system disorders. Endocrinologists—medical doctors who specialize in this field—are experts in treating diseases associated with hormonal systems, ranging from thyroid disease to diabetes. Endocrine surgeons treat endocrine disease through the removal of the affected endocrine gland or tissue. Some patients experience health problems as a result of the normal decline in hormones that can accompany aging. These patients can consult with an endocrinologist to weigh the risks and benefits of hormone replacement therapy intended to boost their natural levels of reproductive hormones. In addition to treating patients, endocrinologists may be involved in research to improve the understanding of endocrine system disorders and develop new treatments for these diseases (Betts et al., 2013).

- A **thyroid specialist** is an endocrinologist whose sub specialty is focused on the treatment and disorders of the thyroid gland such as hypothyroidism (too low secretion) and hyperthyroidism (too high secretion).
- A **diabetes specialist** is an endocrinologist whose sub specialty is focused on the treatment of diabetic conditions.

Procedures

Thyroid Scan

This procedure is designed to check the status of the thyroid. In a thyroid scan, a radioactive compound is given and localized in the thyroid gland (Giorgi & Cherney, 2018). To learn more about a thyroid scan, visit [HealthLine: Thyroid Scan \[New Tab\]](#).

Radioactive iodine uptake

Thyroid function evaluated by injecting radioactive iodine and then measuring how much is removed from the blood by the thyroid (MedlinePlus, 2022). To learn more about a radioactive iodine uptake test, visit [Medline Plus: Radioactive Iodine Uptake \[New Tab\]](#).

Blood Serum Testing

Blood testing to determine the concentration and the presence of various endocrine hormones in the blood. These tests include the following levels: calcium, cortisol, electrolytes, FSH, GH, glucose, insulin, parathyroid hormones, T3, T4, testosterone, and TSH. All of these can be evaluated with blood serum tests (Betts et al., 2013).

Endocrine Surgical Procedures

Most of the surgeries and procedures performed with the endocrine system involve removal of a gland or an incision into the gland. Once an endocrine gland is surgically removed due to a tumor or enlargement, hormone replacement treatment is required. Medication is required to artificially or synthetically replace the hormone produced by the gland and the function it regulates (Betts et al., 2013).

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Endocrine System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Adaptations: dividing Endocrine System chapter content into subchapters.

Notes

1. 1.palpitations, 2.menstrual, 3.elevated, 4.conjunctival, 5.antibodies, 6.side effects, 7.medications, 8.discontinue

2. 1.diabetes, 2.metabolic, 3.palpitations, 4.neuropathy, 5.congestive, 6.rhythm, 7.pulses, 8.edema, 9.sugars, 10.diuretics, 11.vascular disease

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Endocrine System Vocabulary

Autocrine

Chemical signal that elicits a response in the same cell that secreted it.

Endocrine gland

Tissue or organ that secretes hormones into the blood and lymph without ducts such that they may be transported to organs distant from the site of secretion.

Endocrine system

Cells, tissues, and organs that secrete hormones as a primary or secondary function and play an integral role in normal bodily processes.

Epinephrine

Also known as adrenaline, is a hormone and neurotransmitter and produced by the adrenal glands.

Exocrine system

Cells, tissues, and organs that secrete substances directly to target tissues via glandular ducts.

Histamine

Involved in the inflammatory response and typically causes itching.

Hormone

Secretion of an endocrine organ that travels via the bloodstream or lymphatics to induce a response in target cells or tissues in another part of the body.

Neurotransmitter

Chemicals acting as signaling molecules that enable neurotransmission.

Norepinephrine

A natural chemical in the body that acts as both a stress hormone and neurotransmitter (a substance that sends signals between nerve cells). It's released into the blood as a stress hormone when the brain perceives stress.

Paracrine

Chemical signal that elicits a response in neighbouring cells; also called paracrine factor.

Permeability

Membrane that causes it to allow liquids or gases to pass through it.

Proliferation

Rapid increase in numbers.

Synthesis

The production of chemical compounds by reaction from simpler materials.

Endocrine System Reinforcement Activity

Endocrine System Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Endocrine glands _____[Blank 1].
 - a. secrete chemical messengers that travel in the bloodstream
 - b. secrete hormones that travel through a duct to the target organs
 - c. release neurotransmitters into the junction between two neurons (synaptic cleft)
 - d. include sebaceous glands and sweat glands
2. Chemical signaling that affects neighboring cells is called _____[Blank 2].
 - a. autocrine
 - b. paracrine
 - c. endocrine
 - d. neuron
3. Graves disease is _____[Blank 3].
 - a. a condition marked by a disorder of the pancreas, resulting in high levels of glucose in the blood.
 - b. a condition marked by low levels of thyroid hormones that results in weight gain, cold sensitivity, and reduced mental activity.
 - c. a condition marked by a disorder of the thyroid gland, resulting in hyperthyroidism.
 - d. a condition marked by high levels of thyroid hormones that results in weight loss, profuse sweating, and increased heart rate.
4. In the endocrine system _____[Blank 4].
 - a. the distance travelled by hormones is always short
 - b. hormones are secreted into the extracellular fluid
 - c. the response time is always fast
 - d. the glands release their secretions through ducts

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Endocrine System Reinforcement Activity by Tiffany Hunt, from [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#). /Text version added.

Attribution

Except where otherwise noted, this chapter is adapted from “[Endocrine System](#)” in [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#) by Kimberlee Carter and Marie Rutherford, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / A derivative of Betts et al., which can be accessed for free from [Anatomy and Physiology \(OpenStax\)](#). Adaptations: dividing Endocrine System chapter content into sub-chapters.

Notes

1. 1. a) secrete chemical messengers that travel in the bloodstream, 2. b) paracrine, 3. c) a condition marked by a disorder of the thyroid gland, resulting in hyperthyroidism, 4. b) hormones are secreted into the extracellular fluid,

References

CrashCourse. (2015, June 22). *Endocrine system, part 1 – Glands & hormones: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #23* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eWHH9je2zG4>

CrashCourse. (2015, June 29). *Endocrine system, part 2 – Hormone cascade: Crash Course anatomy & physiology #24* [Video]. YouTube. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eWHH9je2zG4>

Giorgi, A., & Cherney, K. (2018, September 17). *Thyroid scan*. Healthline. <https://www.healthline.com/health/thyroid-scan>

Mayo Clinic Staff. (2021, October 12). *Hirsutism*. Mayo Clinic: Diseases and Conditions. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/hirsutism/symptoms-causes/syc-20354935>

MedlinePlus. (2022, January 9). *Radioactive iodine uptake*. US National Library of Medicine. <https://medlineplus.gov/ency/article/003689.htm>

Neuroscientifically Challenged. (2020, May 16). *2-minute neuroscience: Melatonin* [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SpaBMgZG9XQ&ab_channel=NeuroscientificallyChallenged

Shurkin, J.N. (2013, August 2). *Trouble sleeping? Go camping: Artificial light sources can negatively affect circadian rhythms, scientists say*. Scientific American. <https://www.scientificamerican.com/article/trouble-sleeping-go-campi/>

CHAPTER 18: ONCOLOGY

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [18.1 – Introduction to Oncology](#)
- [18.2 Oncology Diagnostic Tools](#)
- [18.3 Oncology Diseases, Disorders, Treatment](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

18.1 - Introduction to Oncology

Learning Objectives

- Describe oncology and explore the physiology and activity of cancerous and non-cancerous growths
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations of oncology
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of oncology terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the oncology and explore common diseases, disorders, diagnostic tests, pharmacology, and procedures

Oncology Word Parts

Prefix

- **ana-** (up, apart)
- **apo-** (away from)
- **dys-** (abnormal; difficult)
- **ecto-** (outer)
- **endo-** (within)
- **hyper-** (excessive, increase)
- **meta-** (beyond, change)
- **mutat/o-** (to change)
- **neo-** (new)

Combining Form

- **Capsul/o-** (to box)
- **carcin/o-** (cancer)
- **miss/o-** (to send back)

- **mut/a-** (change)
- **path/o-** (disease)
- **nod/o-** (node)
- **onc/o-** (tumour)
- **sarc/o-** (flesh)

Suffix

- **-carcinom** (cancerous tumour of epithelial origin (internal or external lining of the body, i.e., skin, breast, colon))
- **-genesis** (condition of production, origin)
- **-oma** (tumour)
- **-plasia** (condition of formation)
- **-plasm** (formation)
- **-sarcoma** (connective tissue cancer, such as bones, tendons, cartilage, muscle, and fat)
- **-stasis** (standing still)

Activity source: Oncology Word Parts by Connie Stevens, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#).

Introduction to Oncology

Oncology is the study of tumours; oncologists are the people who study tumours. Carcin/o is a medical term that means cancer. All cancers are considered **neoplasms** which means new growth. Cancerous tumours are called **malignant**. A non-cancerous tumour is called **benign** (good); this is determined through a **biopsy** (Bx). A benign tumour often has the suffix -oma at the end of the word. However, a malignant tumour indicates that there is a cancerous growth. Malignant cells usually multiply rapidly, forming a mass of abnormal cells that enlarges, ulcerates and sheds malignant cells that invade surrounding tissues. These terms will usually have the word carcinoma at the end of the word. The medical specialty of oncology primarily treats patients who have cancer.

The suffix -oma means **tumour**, an abnormal tissue mass that forms through uncontrolled cell growth and divides more than it should. The cells also do not die when they should.

Watch [What is Cancer? What Causes Cancer & How is it Treated? \(5 min\) on YouTube](#)

What is producing cancer? What are some carcinogens? A **carcinogen** is a cancer-generating/producing substance. Carcin/o means cancer, and the suffix -gen means producing. There are various causes of cancer, yet many are unknown at this time. Bacteria and viruses, diet, hormones, smoking, radiation, alcohol, environment, chemical, and genetics are all potential risk factors and causes of cancers.

Watch [How do cancer cells behave differently from healthy ones? \(4 mins\) on YouTube](#)

Oncology Abbreviations

Oncology Abbreviations

- **BCC-** (basal cell carcinoma)
- **BMT-** (bone marrow transplant)
- **BSE-** (breast self-examination)
- **Bx-** (biopsy)
- **CA-** (cancer)
- **CIS-** (carcinoma in situ)
- **FOBT-** (fecal occult blood test)
- **G -** (grade)
- **Mets-** (metastases)
- **SCC-** (squamous cell carcinoma)
- **TNM-** (tumour-nodes-metastases)
- **TSE-** (testicular self-examination)

Activity source: Oncology Word Parts by Connie Stevens, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](#).

Attribution

This page “Introduction to Oncology” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

18.2 - Oncology Diagnostic Tools

A biopsy examines the lesion, growth or tumour under a microscope to determine the disease. Once the pathologist determines the issue is malignancy, then grading, staging and metastasis are evaluated.

Grading, Staging and Metastasis

Tumours are also graded as per growth and staged as per the cancer cell spreading.

Grading: Pathologists need to know how different a cancer cell is from a normal one: this is called grading. It is a measure of the severity of cancer. Grading ranges from I to IV, or low grade and high grade. Generally, a lower grade represents a more favourable prognosis.

- **Staging:** Includes the size and spread of cancer from its original site. If it is determined from a pathology report, it is called **pathologic staging**. If diagnostic techniques determine it, it is called **clinical staging**.
- **TNM staging:** Stands for tumour, node, metastasis.
- **T-** indicates the size of the primary tumour and the degree of spread into nearby tissues (local invasion)
- **N-** indicates whether or not cancer has spread to nearby lymph nodes, the size of the nodes that contain cancer, and how many lymph nodes are affected.
- **M-** The cancer cells have spread to other organs, called metastasis or Mets.

Once the TNM is determined for particular cancer, an overall stage is determined. The stage ranges from 0 to IV (0-4). These numbers help identify whether the cancer is early or advanced. The higher the number, the more advanced cancer:

- **stage 0** -carcinoma in situ (cancer appears only at the site and has not spread).
- **stages I and II** -the cancer is limited to the organ or location where it began, or it may have spread to a nearby structure (localized spread).
- **stage III** -cancer has spread further into a surrounding structure or to the regional lymph nodes (regional spread).
- **stage IV** -cancer has spread to a distant site in the body (metastatic spread).

Watch [How is Cancer Staged? \(4 min\) on YouTube](#)

Attribution

This page “Oncology Diagnostic Tools” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

18.3 - Oncology Diseases, Disorders, Treatment

Cancers within Body Systems

Carcinomas make up most of all cancers and are malignant tumours of epithelial tissues. Epithelial tissue line the body surfaces, including those of glands and organs, therefore, carcinomas make up most glandular cancers and are often found in the breast, stomach, uterus, tongue, and skin. The tumours are labelled according to where the malignancy or the primary tumour is housed.

Sarcomas originate in the connective or supportive tissue of the body, such as the muscles, tendons, fat, joints, and bones. They are named by adding the suffix -oma, meaning tumour, to the end of the combining word.

Leukemias are cancer of blood-forming tissues. **Lymphomas** are cancerous tumours of the lymph nodes. In comparison, **myeloma** is a cancerous tumour arising from the hematopoietic portion of the bone marrow.

Endocrine system

Cancers commonly occur in the endocrine system. Many such as thyroid cancer, can be treated by surgically removing the gland. The client must take a synthetic version of the necessary hormones.

Pancreatic cancer is almost always fatal because no effective treatments are currently available (McDonnell et al., 2019).

Female Reproductive system

When looking at the female reproductive system, many organs can be susceptible to cancer: breast, uterine, ovarian, and cervical cancer.

Fibroids tend to be benign (non-cancerous) but should be monitored to ensure their growth does not change. A hormonal disturbance usually causes these growths.

Breast Cancer

Breast cancer is common in females; however, males can get breast cancer, and make up less than 1% of all breast cancers. Breast cancer may be detected through breast self-examination. Breast self-examination (BSE) is crucial in determining if a person's breast lumps or bumps are growing or have changed (Sessa et al., 2023).

There are different types of breast cancers, including:

- Cancer which begins in the milk ducts (**ductal carcinoma**). Most male breast cancer is ductal carcinoma.
- Cancer which begins in the milk-producing glands (**lobular carcinoma**). This type is rare in men because they have few lobules in their breast tissue.
- Other rarer types of breast cancer include Paget's disease of the nipple and inflammatory breast cancer.

Gastrointestinal

The gastrointestinal system has many different types of cancer. They include the esophagus, the stomach, the pancreas, the rectum, or the liver (Faigel & Rodriguez, 2022). A typical test conducted is the **fecal occult blood test (FOBT)**. It is a test done on the stool. It is looking for hidden or occult blood within the fecal matter.

Integumentary System

Skin cancer is quite common due to exposure to the sun and other radiation. When looking at the ABCDE of cancer:

- A is the lesion is asymmetrical
- B is the rough-edged borders, which determines if the lesion has spread
- C is the colour. What colour is the tumour?
- D is the diameter. Is the lesion growing in width?
- E is the lesion elevated or evolving

Basal cell carcinoma (BCC) is the most common type of skin cancer.

Squamous cell carcinoma affects the squamous epithelium layer of the skin.

Melanoma, often called malignant melanoma is a deadly cancer. The colour black means melan/o, -oma means tumour.

People who are at the highest risk tend to be those who are fair-skinned. Light skin contains less melanin, which allows the absorption of radiation. The elderly, who have endured a lifetime of sunlight exposure, are also at higher risk. The use of sunscreen and avoidance of prolonged exposure to the sun not only reduces the damage to the skin but prevents the development of skin cancer (Thanh et al., 2020).

Dermatofibroma is a fibrous tumour of the skin.

Lymphatic System

Lymphoma is any tumour or a mass within the lymph node. Hodgkin's lymphoma is a malignant disease of the lymph nodes.

Male Reproductive System

When looking at the male reproductive system, a male may have cancer of the testicles, penis, or prostate gland.

Testicular self-examinations (TSE) are essential to determine a tumour and its growth.

As men age, their prostate will overgrow, and it is important to have a biopsy done to determine if the prostate is benign or cancerous. Prostate cancer is typically slow-growing, and most men will die with the cancer, not from cancer.

As men age as early as 40 years of age, they may experience the symptoms of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), which is extremely common. It is a benign, non-cancerous growth which may have the same symptoms as prostate cancer, therefore, a biopsy should be conducted to determine if the enlargement is malignant or benign.

The treatment for testicular cancer is to perform an orchidectomy. It is an aggressive and primary surgical approach to treating testicular cancer. If the patient wants to father children, several semen samples can be stored for possible future use before the orchidectomy (Kaufman et al., 2019)

Musculoskeletal

Sarc/o is connective tissue

Oste/o is bone.

Leimy/o is smooth muscle, such as areas within the abdomen, uterus and blood vessels.

The musculoskeletal carcinomas treatment varies and can include a bone marrow transplant, radiation, and chemotherapy.

Urinary System

Within the urinary system, a person may have kidney or bladder cancer.

A congenital kidney cancer called a Wilms tumour is not detected until a child grows. The child is born with a tumour, and as the toddler grows and starts to walk, it is noted that the child's abdomen is protruding significantly. That is because the kidneys, which are at the back of the body, have enlarged due to the tumour. The enlarged kidneys push the abdomen forward. The child may have a low-grade fever without a known cause. This cancer can be deadly if not caught early, and often children will die from this disease (Aldrink et al., 2019)

Pharmacology

There are many different types of cancer medications. These include **alkylating agents, antimetabolites, and plant alkaloids**.

Physicians use cancer medications alone or in combination with other treatments, such as radiation therapy. The best type and combination will depend on several factors, including the disease progression and the patient's overall health.

Treatment for cancer

The most commonly used methods for cancer treatment include surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy (treatment with chemicals). Newer methods of immunotherapy use substances that stimulate the immune system. Hormone therapy may be effective against certain types of tumours. When there are no active signs of the disease, the cancer is said to be in remission.

Attribution

This page “Oncology Diseases, Disorders, Treatment” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Oncology Vocabulary

Basal Cell carcinoma (BCC)

The most common type of skin cancer.

Benign

A non-cancerous tumour.

Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH)

A common, benign, non-cancerous growth which may have the same symptoms as prostate cancer.

Biopsy (Bx)

A diagnostic procedure that examines the lesion, growth or tumour under a microscope to determine the disease.

Carcinogen

A cancer-generating/producing substance.

Carcinomas

Malignant tumours of epithelial tissues that make up most of all cancers.

Dermatofibroma

A fibrous tumour of the skin.

Ductal carcinoma

A form of breast cancer which begins in the milk ducts. Most male breast cancer is ductal carcinoma.

Fecal occult blood test (FOBT)

A test done on the stool, looking for hidden or occult blood within the fecal matter.

Fibroids

Benign (non-cancerous) growths in the female reproductive system usually caused by a hormonal disturbance.

Hodgkin's lymphoma

A malignant disease of the lymph nodes.

Lobular carcinoma

A breast cancer which begins in the milk-producing glands.

Leukemias

Cancer of blood-forming tissues.

Lymphoma

Any tumour or a mass within the lymph node.

Malignant

A cancerous tumour.

Melanoma

Often called malignant melanoma; a deadly skin cancer.

Myeloma

A cancerous tumour arising from the hematopoietic portion of the bone marrow.

Orchidectomy

An aggressive and primary surgical approach to treating testicular cancer.

Paget's disease

A rare type of breast cancer affecting the nipple.

Pancreatic cancer

A cancer of the endocrine system that is almost always fatal because no effective treatments are currently available.

Sarcomas

Cancers that originate in the connective or supportive tissue of the body, such as the muscles, tendons, fat, joints, and bones.

Squamous cell carcinoma

A cancer that affects the squamous epithelium layer of the skin.

Tumour

An abnormal tissue mass that forms through uncontrolled cell growth and divides more than it should. The cells also do not die when they should.

Wilms tumour

A congenital kidney cancer often not detected until a child grows.

Oncology Reinforcement Activity

Oncology Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. A tumour _____[Blank 1].
 - a. is an injury of the nervous system.
 - b. is a function of the endocrine system.
 - c. is a medical specialty that primarily treats infections.
 - d. is an abnormal tissue mass that forms through uncontrolled cell growth and divides more than it should.
2. Some potential risk factors and causes of cancers include _____[Blank 2].
 - a. a healthy lifestyle.
 - b. bacteria and viruses, diet, hormones, smoking, radiation, alcohol, environment, chemicals, and genetics.
 - c. a healthy and balanced diet.
 - d. regular exercise.
3. Cancerous growths or tumours can be diagnosed by _____[Blank 3].
 - a. aggressive chemical treatments.
 - b. a biopsy to examine the lesion, growth or tumour under a microscope to determine the disease.
 - c. performing a series of radiation treatments.
 - d. administering oral antibiotics to the patient.
4. Lymphoma is _____[Blank 4].
 - a. any tumour or a mass within the lymph node.
 - b. a type of cancer occurring in the endocrine system.
 - c. a type of cancer that primarily affects the blood.
 - d. a cancer that affects the bone marrow.

Check your answers:¹

Activity source: Oncology Reinforcement Activity by Open Learning at Conestoga College, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Attribution

This page “Introduction to Oncology” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Notes

1. d) is an abnormal tissue mass that forms through uncontrolled cell growth and divides more than it should, 2. b) bacteria and viruses, diet, hormones, smoking, radiation, alcohol, environment, chemicals, and genetics, 3. b) a biopsy to examine the lesion, growth or tumour under a microscope to determine the disease., 4. a) any tumour or a mass within the lymph node

References

Aldrink, J. H., Heaton, T. E., Dasgupta, R., Lautz, T. B., Malek, M. M., Abdessalam, S. F., Weil, B. R., Rhee, D. S., Baertschiger, R., Ehrlich, P. F., & American Pediatric Surgical Association Cancer Committee (2019). Update on Wilms tumor. *Journal of pediatric surgery*, 54(3), 390–397. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpedsurg.2018.09.005>

Canadian Cancer Society. (2024). *Stage and grade*. <https://cancer.ca/en/cancer-information/what-is-cancer/stage-and-grade>

Cancer Centre (2013, Oct 31). *What is cancer? What causes cancer & How is it treated?* [Video]. YouTube. https://youtu.be/SGaQ0WwZ_0I?si=N6S0QpG6D9nKqHfl

Cancer Center. (2018, Aug 8). *How is cancer spread?* [Video] YouTube. <https://youtu.be/-pHilR4dtoA?si=uA3ptNfMwJAYB2RY>

Faigel, D. O., & Rodriguez, S. A. (2021). Gastric cancer. In *Atlas of Endoscopic Ultrasonography, second edition* (pp. 53–57). Wiley. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119522997.ch13>

Kaufman, J. M., Lapauw, B., Mahmoud, A., T'Sjoen, G., & Huhtaniemi, I. T. (2019). Aging and the male reproductive system. *Endocrine reviews*, 40(4), 906–972. <https://doi.org/10.1210/er.2018-00178>

McDonnell, J. E., Gild, M. L., Clifton-Bligh, R. J., & Robinson, B. G. (2019). Multiple endocrine neoplasia: an update. *Internal medicine journal*, 49(8), 954–961. <https://doi.org/10.1111/imj.14394>

Sessa, C., Balmaña, J., Bober, S. L., Cardoso, M. J., Colombo, N., Curigliano, G., Domchek, S. M., Evans, D. G., Fischerova, D., Harbeck, N., Kuhl, C., Lemley, B., Levy-Lahad, E., Lambertini, M., Ledermann, J. A., Loibl, S., Phillips, K. A., Paluch-Shimon, S. (2023). Risk reduction and screening of cancer in hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndromes: ESMO Clinical Practice Guideline. *Annals of oncology : official journal of the European Society for Medical Oncology*, 34(1), 33–47. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annonc.2022.10.004>

TED-Ed. (2012, December 12). *How do cancer cells behave differently from healthy ones?* [Video]. YouTube. <https://youtu.be/BmFEoCFDi-w?si=roGFWXrI6nZN1hv4>

Thanh, D. N. H., Prasath, V. B. S., Hieu, L. M., & Hien, N. N. (2020). Melanoma skin cancer detection method based on adaptive principal curvature, colour normalisation and feature extraction with the ABCD Rule. *Journal of Digital Imaging*, 33(3), 574–585. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10278-019-00316-x>

CHAPTER 19: MENTAL HEALTH

Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e by Kimberlee Carter; Marie Rutherford; and Connie Stevens

- [19.1 – Introduction to Mental Health](#)
- [19.2 – Mental Health Diagnostic Tests](#)
- [19.3 – Mental Health Diseases and Disorders](#)
- [19.4 – Mental Health Therapeutic Interventions](#)
- [Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge](#)
- [References](#)

Except where otherwise noted, this OER is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#)

Please visit the web version of [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e](#) to access the complete book, interactive activities and ancillary resources.

19.1 - Introduction to Mental Health

Learning Objectives

- Define mental health and mental illness
- Analyze, translate, and define medical terms and common abbreviations used with mental health
- Practice the spelling and pronunciation of mental health terminology
- Identify the medical specialties associated with the mental health and explore common diseases, disorders, pharmacology, diagnostic tests and procedures

Introduction to Mental Health

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines **mental health** as a state of well-being in which an individual realizes their abilities can cope with everyday stresses of ones' life, work productively, and contribute to their community (WHO, 2022), whereas a mental illness/disorder/condition impacts the inability to cope with the everyday stressors.

A **mental disorder** is an abnormal condition of the brain or the mind that affects how a person feels, behaves, or relates to others or their surroundings. In most cases, the exact cause of a mental condition is unknown. There are various possible contributing factors, including genetics, environmental and chemical changes in the brain, use of certain drugs and psychological, social, and cultural conditions. Our role in mental health is to be nonjudgmental, not to judge the patient, but to seek to understand what is happening with the patient. Their behaviours may be out of control and require medical attention or treatment.

The ICD, the international classification of disease, and the DSM, the diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, work together to look at socially accepted conditions and treatment options for conditions. A newer ailment added is gaming addiction. Manuals will change based on what is socially acceptable and what is happening culturally at that time, which impacts a person's ability to function with their activities of daily living (ADL) (Grant & Chamberlain, 2016).

Watch [Emotion, Stress, and Health: Crash Course Psychology #26 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Psychology is the study of human behaviour and thought processes of the mind; it studies understanding how

humans interact with their physical environment and each other. A **psychologist** is a person who specializes in the study of the mind (WHO, 2022).

Psychiatry deals with the diagnosis, treatment and prevention of mental disorders. A **psychiatrist** is one who specializes in the treatment of the mind.

Watch [Intro to Psychology: Crash Course Psychology #1 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Mental Health Word Parts

Prefix

- **acro-** (heights, extremes, extremities)
- **an-** (no, not, without)
- **bi-** (two)
- **dis-** (apart)
- **dys-** (bad, difficult, painful, abnormal)
- **eu-** (good)
- **ex-** (outward)
- **para-** (near, beside, abnormal)

Combining Form

- **affect-** (emotional reaction)
- **agor/a-** (marketplace)
- **ambul/o-** (to move)
- **amnes/o-** (forgetful)
- **anxi/o-** (fear, worry)
- **aut/o-** (self)
- **centr/o-** (centre)
- **compuls/o-** (drive, compel)
- **cycl/o-** (cycle)
- **delus/o-** (false belief, to cheat)
- **ech/o-** (sound)
- **fab/o-** (story)
- **hallucinat/o-** (to wander in mind)
- **hedon/o-** (pleasure)
- **iatr/o-** (treatment)
- **klept/o-** (to steal, stealing)

- **ment/o-** (mind , do not confuse with chin)
- **narc/o-** (sleep, stupor)
- **neur/o-** (nerve)
- **obsess/o-** (besieged by thought)
- **path/o-** (disease)
- **phil/o-** (attraction)
- **phor/o-** (carry, bear, state)
- **psych/o, thym/o, phren/o** – (mind)
- **pyr/o-** (fire)
- **schiz/o-** (divide, split)
- **soci/o-** (society)
- **somat/o-** (body)
- **somn/o-** (sleep)

Suffix

- **-ia, -ism** (condition)
- **-iatrist** (one who specializes in the treatment)
- **-lepsy** (seizure)
- **-mania** (condition of madness; frenzy; excessive excitement)
- **-phobia** (condition of fear)
- **-thymia** (condition of the mind)
- **-orexia** (appetite)

Activity source: Mental Health Word Parts by Connie Stevens, licensed under [CC BY- 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/). / Text version.

Mental Health Medical Terms

Mental Health Abbreviations

- **ADL** (Activities of Daily living)
- **BD or BP** (Bipolar disorder)
- **BDD** (Body dysmorphic disorder)
- **CBT** (Cognitive-behavioural therapy)
- **DSM-5** (Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Health Disorders)
- **DTs** (Delirium tremens)

- **ECT** (Electroconvulsive therapy)
- **GAD** (generalized anxiety disorder)
- **ICD** (International Classification of Diseases)
- **ID** (intellectual disability)
- **OCD** (obsessive-compulsive disorder)
- **ODD** (oppositional defiant disorder)
- **PD** (panic disorder *also personality disorder)
- **PTSD** (post-traumatic stress disorder)
- **SAD** (seasonal affective disorder)

Activity source: Mental Health Abbreviations by Connie Stevens, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#). / Text version.

Attribution

This page “Introduction to Mental Health” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

19.2 - Mental Health Diagnostic Tests

The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM) is the resource used by healthcare professionals in much of the world to diagnose mental disorders. The DSM contains descriptions of the conditions, symptoms, and other criteria for diagnosing mental disorders (DSM 5, 2022).

Psychiatrists rely on two types of patient evaluations: clinical interviews and psychological testing. A mental health professional conducts the interviews and questions to identify the patient's symptoms, thoughts, feelings, and behaviours (MDS 5, 2022).

Some of the main psychological tests include collection and analysis with the use of the following tools (this is an example of the tools, it is not an inclusive list):

1. Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ-9) – a most common screening tool to identify depression
2. Columbia-Suicide Severity Rating Scale (C-SSRS) – used to assess suicide risk
3. GAD7 – a screening tool to measure symptom severity for the four most common anxiety disorders (generalized anxiety disorder (GAD), panic disorder (PD), social phobia(s), and post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) (DSM 5, 2022).

Attribution

This page “Mental Health Diagnostic Tests” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/).

19.3 - Mental Health Diseases and Disorders

Mental Disorders

A mental disorder is a condition or illness that causes disruptions with mental processes impacting how an individual functions.

Mental Disorders Signs and Symptoms

Mental disorders can affect adults and children. They are often chronic, growing progressively worse if not assessed, managed, or treated. Symptoms may begin in childhood or adolescence, including excessive, irrational fear or dread. Everyone is unique, and individuals' signs and symptoms will interfere with their ability to cope and may impact others. Some of the symptoms that may be included in mental and behavioural health may include the following, which are defined.

Watch [Psychological Disorders: Crash Course Psychology #28 \(10 min\) on YouTube](#)

Common Mental Health Disorders

- **Mood disorders** affect your emotional state, focusing on how you feel, from extreme sadness to extreme happiness.
- **Substance and Addictive disorders:** continued use of substances that affect the person in negative ways and, once addicted, lead to compulsive behaviours.
- **Anxiety disorders** occur when a person responds to something with fear or dread and has a severe stress response that may include various physical reactions, such as trouble focusing, irritability, rapid heart rate, and muscle discomfort.
- **Personality disorders** involve disruptive patterns of thinking, behaviour, and mood related to others.
- **Behavioural disorders** are described as disruptive patterns of conduct. Persistent and repetitive behaviours that impair a person's functioning often cause distress in others around them.
- **Eating disorders** are complex. These conditions can be related to societal expectations, unrealistic role models, a warped image of themselves in the mirror, trauma, or fear of obesity, among other things.
- **Neurodevelopmental disorders** are a group of conditions that have affected how the brain and nervous system develop. The disorder can cause changes in thinking, feeling, language, and physical abilities.
- **Delusional disorders** are conditions where the individual has repetitive false or fixed beliefs that are not factual.

Mood Disorders

Bipolar disorder is a manic-depressive disease that causes extreme shifts in a person's mood and energy and impacts one's ability to carry out activities of daily living (ADL). Bipolar disorder may be characterized by cycling mood changes between mania or hypomania and the severe lows of depression (IBPF, 2022).

Substance and Addictive Disorders

Alcoholism is chronic condition characterized by compulsive and excessive alcohol consumption.

Drug addiction is a condition that affects a person's mood and behaviour, which leads to the inability to control the use of legal or illegal drug usage.

This list highlights terms of reference related to substance and addictive disorders:

- **Intoxication** means the process of putting poison in; the poison may include drugs or alcohol.
- **Delirium Tremens (DT)** are acute, seizure-like episodes that are sometimes even fatal. They are related to stopping excessive alcohol or drug after long periods of intake.
- **Withdrawal** is not as severe as DT, but it is still a state where the person is attempting to come down from having the drug or alcohol over a long time.
- **Tolerance** is when the person becomes accustomed to the drug or the alcohol, therefore, they need a higher amount. We see that with crystal meth, it is an extreme high and an extreme drop, therefore, the patient craves more.

Mania is also known as manic syndrome. It is a mental and behavioural condition characterized by an elevated state of arousal, such as excessive excitement, or frenzy. Associated with this condition are unmanaged impulses. A common impulse is kleptomania, the impulse to steal, or pyromania, the frenzy or impulse to set fires.

Seasonal Affective Disorder (SAD) is a form of depression that appears related to the fluctuations in the client's exposure to natural sunlight. This occurs in countries where there is limited seasonal sunlight.

Suicide is the willful ending of one's own life. There is no clear suicide type, meaning no one can predict who will take their life. Always seek medical attention when considering or discussing suicide.

Depression can be demonstrated in many different forms and extremes. When you look at the word depression, it means the process of feeling down:

- De- means down
- press means thought or emotion
- -ion means the process of
- The word impression would mean bringing forward or to boost the emotion or thought
- The word expression would mean the outward displaying the thought or the emotion
- The word oppression would be to keep others down

Anxiety Disorders

Anxiety is the state of feeling uneasiness, apprehension, worry or dread. It may be an involuntary or a reflexive reaction of the body to stress. Anxiety can be a typical stress reaction and can help a person deal with a tense situation, such as studying harder for an exam (Perotta, 2019).

Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) is anxiety which is not related to a specific situation; it is an uneasiness, apprehension, worry or dread reaction to various non-specific situations. Signs and symptoms may include nervousness, sweating, lightheadedness, dizziness, and palpitations (Perotta, 2019).

Panic disorder is a type of anxiety disorder, often called panic attacks. It causes feelings of terror that occur suddenly and repeatedly without any warning. Clients with this disorder cannot predict when the attack will occur and may develop intense anxiety between episodes, worrying about when and where the next panic attack will occur. When having a panic attack, the client may feel sweaty, flushed, chilled, faint, weak, or dizzy. Their hands may feel tingly or numb. They may experience nausea, chest pain or a smothering sensation, or fear of impending doom and loss of control. The client may generally believe that they are having a heart attack or losing their mind, or are on the verge of death (Canada, 2022).

Phobias are a condition of irrational fear. The person cannot rationalize the fear away. The client's fear is real, even if it seems irrational to others. The clients can attend cognitive behavioural therapy to help them to manage the phobia.

Acrophobia is the irrational fear of heights:

- acro means height
- phobia means abnormal fear

Agoraphobia is the abnormal fear of the marketplace or leaving home:

- agora means marketplace
- phobia means abnormal fear

Claustrophobia is the abnormal fear of enclosed spaces:

- claustr/o means enclosed spaces
- phobia means the abnormal fear

Anthropophobia is a social phobia, thus an abnormal fear of man:

- anthrop/o means man
- phobia means abnormal fear

Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) occurs after a traumatic event. It is an extended emotional response with flashbacks, nightmares, and often insomnia.

Personality Disorders

Antisocial personality disorder pertains to behaviours that are against legal or social norms:

- anti means against
- socio means society
- -al means pertaining to
- dis means apart

Borderline personality disorder may exhibit impulsive, unpredictable, and inappropriate responses to a situation.

Dissocial personality disorder often looks at going against societal expectations. They disagree with social norms or obligations. They do not have empathy for others. They get frustrated easily. They blame others and will not change their behaviour.

Dissociative identity disorder is a condition where the person has two or more distinct personalities. It was historically and commonly known as the older term split personality disorder. Disassociation is a defence mechanism where normal mental processes separate from consciousness. With dissociative disorder, a severe disturbance or trauma causes changes in the client's memory, consciousness, identity, and awareness of oneself and one's environment (Canada, 2022).

Narcissistic personality disorder is where a person has an abnormal sense of self-importance.

Behavioural Disorders

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder ADHD is a syndrome where there are impulsive behaviours. A child with ADHD is not able to concentrate, as they have a very short attention span.

Oppositional defiant disorder ODD is a condition in which an individual may appear hostile, disobedient, aggressive, or defiant.

Obsessive-Compulsive disorder (OCD) is a reoccurring preoccupation of an irresistible drive, such as checking locks, curling irons, skin picking, hoarding, or excessive hand washing. OCD often involves persistent, unwelcome thoughts or images or the urgent need to engage in certain rituals that the person cannot control. The rituals are performed to try to prevent or get rid of the compulsions (Canada, 2022).

Nymphomania is a condition of madness where a woman wants to achieve orgasm, whereas for a man, it is called satyriasis: a male's uncontrollable sexual desire.

Philia is a condition of attraction or obsessive love. An example is paraphilia: an abnormal condition of being attracted to abnormal sexual perversions. Another example is pedophilia, where there is an obsessive sexual attraction to children.

Eating Disorders

Anorexia is a condition that is characterized as a relentless drive for thinness. As a medical term, it is translated to mean “without appetite.” This condition tends to be seen to occur more frequently in women.

- an- means without
- -orex means appetite
- -ia means condition.

Bulimia nervosa tends to occur higher in males. It is where a person binges on food and then vomits or uses high doses of laxatives (Udo & Grilo, 2019).

Neurodevelopmental Disorders

Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) is an abnormal social interaction; it may impact a child’s communication. The child may have repetitive behaviours. The disorder varies from child to child.

Asperger’s disorder is a disorder that impacts social interaction without delay in language.

Delusional Disorders

Paranoia is inappropriate or suspicious behaviour in which one believes that somebody is invading their rights or has exaggerated feelings of persecution. The client may have highly exaggerated or unwarranted mistrust or suspiciousness.

Schizophrenia causes the patient to live within a fantasy world, where they have inappropriate thoughts which come out as behaviour. When you break down the word, **schiz/o** means split, and **phrenia** is a condition of the mind, however, that is not entirely true. Often with schizophrenia, the patient may have delusions or illusions. These may be increased within specific social situations. Schizophrenia is not caused by stress, but both conditions impact daily functioning (Valle, 2020).

Attribution

This page “Mental Health Diseases and Disorders” by Connie Stevens and Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

19.4 - Mental Health Therapeutic Interventions

Therapeutic Interventions

A therapeutic intervention is an aspect of mental healthcare that aims to address and support various physical, mental, emotional, or behavioral issues in individuals managing a mental health disease or disorder.

Abstinence is the self-governing and a self-enforced restraint from indulging in pleasurable activities, such as addictions.

Addiction/Rehabilitation centres assist with the withdrawal from dependency on substances. The purpose is to enable the patient to confront substance dependence and stop substance misuse.

Counselling (1:1, group, family) is a collaborative effort between the counsellor and client. Professional counsellors help clients to identify ones' goals and potential options/solutions to problems which have caused emotional turmoil, seeking to improve coping skills and promote behavioural change to achieve optimal mental health (American Counseling Association, 2022).

Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) is a procedure occasionally used for cases of prolonged severe depression. This controversial treatment/therapy involves the placement of electrodes on one or both sides of a patient's head. The patient receives a muscle relaxant and anaesthesia. A low-level voltage is triggered and creates a convulsive seizure. It remains controversial, as critics of this treatment state that it is not a more effective way to treat severe depression than using drugs (Van Dierman et al., 2020).

Harm reduction philosophy is 'an evidence-based, client-centred approach that helps to reduce the health or social harms associated with addiction or substance use without requiring people who use substances to abstain or stop (CMHA, 2022). For more information, go to [Canadian Mental Health Association – Harm Reduction website \[New Tab\]](#). A **Needle Exchange Program (NEP)** is one method of harm reduction. NEPs, also known as syringe services programs or needle-syringe programs, provide new and sterile syringes to drug users to reduce the risk of spreading communicable diseases. Some programs provide medical treatment for infectious diseases, substance use disorder treatment referrals, and naloxone treatment. For more information, about the [American Addictions Centers – Needle Exchange Programs website](#).

Watch [Biomedical Treatments: Crash Course Psychology #36 \(11 min\) on YouTube](#)

Pharmacology

As a therapeutic intervention a psychiatrist may prescribe psychotropic medications to manage a client's symptoms. Psychotropic medications are not a cure, however, they are more effective when combined with psychotherapy. Medications are often classified based on their action in the body. A psychiatrist may prescribe medications from a several different classifications to treat mental health conditions.

This list provides examples of medication classifications used in psychiatric medicine as well as the activity of the medication.

- neuroleptic to control hallucinations or delusions
- antidepressant: pertaining to stopping depression
- anti-anxiety: against anxiety
- anti-psychotic: pertaining to against psychosis
- stimulants: pertaining to stimulate; help manage unorganized behaviour
- mood-stabilizer help regulate extreme emotions

Psychotherapy

Psychotherapy is a method of treating mental disorders using psychological techniques instead of physical methods. It can involve talking, interpreting, listening, rewarding, and role-playing. It can include different types of psychotherapy, such as cognitive behavioural therapy, family therapy, group therapy, play therapy, art therapy, hypnosis, and psychoanalysis (AMA, 2022).

Attribution

This page “Mental Health Therapeutic Interventions” by Connie Stevens Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge

Mental Health Vocabulary

Addiction

The process of the misuse of medications, alcohol, or illegal substances.

Antisocial personality disorder

Behaviours that are against legal or social norms.

Anxiety

The state of feeling uneasiness, apprehension, worry or dread.

Autism spectrum disorder

An abnormal social interaction that may impact communication.

Bipolar Disorder

A manic-depressive disease that causes extreme shifts in a person's mood and energy.

Dementia

The progressive loss of memory where someone may lose touch with reality, seem confused and develop a personality change.

Delirium

A state of confusion that is an irrational, agitated state.

Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)

The resource used by healthcare professionals in much of the world to diagnose mental disorders. The DSM contains descriptions of the conditions, symptoms, and other criteria for diagnosing mental disorders.

Dissociative identity disorder

A condition where the person has two or more distinct personalities. It was historically and commonly known as the older term split personality disorder.

Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD)

Anxiety which is not related to a specific situation; it is an uneasiness, apprehension, worry or dread reaction to various non-specific situations.

Hallucination

An unreal sensory perception with no external cause; it is not real. However, the client claims they can see, hear, touch, taste, or talk to this sensation.

Mania

A condition of madness, excessive excitement, or frenzy.

Mental health

A state of well-being in which an individual realizes their abilities, can cope with everyday stresses of ones' life, work productively, and contribute to their community.

Mental disorder

An abnormal condition of the brain or the mind that affects how a person feels, behaves, or relates to others or their surroundings.

Narcissistic personality disorder

When a person has an abnormal sense of self-importance.

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder (OCD)

A reoccurring preoccupation of an irresistible drive, such as checking locks, curling irons, skin picking, hoarding or excessive hand washing.

Panic disorder

A type of anxiety disorder, often called panic attacks. It causes feelings of terror that occur suddenly and repeatedly without any warning.

Phobias

A condition of irrational fear.

Post-traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)

Occurs after a traumatic event. It is an extended emotional response with flashbacks, nightmares, and often insomnia.

Seasonal Affective Disorder (SAD)

A form of depression that appears related to the fluctuations in the client's exposure to natural sunlight.

Psychiatry

Deals with the diagnosis, treatment and prevention of mental disorders.

Psychiatrist

One who specializes in the treatment of the mind.

Psychology

The study of human behaviour and thought processes of the mind; it studies understanding how humans interact with their physical environment and each other.

Psychologist

A person who specializes in the study of the mind.

Psychotherapy

A method of treating mental disorders using psychological techniques instead of physical methods. It can involve talking, interpreting, listening, rewarding, and role-playing.

Psychosis

An abnormal condition of the mind accompanied by hallucinations or delusions.

Schizophrenia

A condition that causes the patient to live within a fantasy world where they have inappropriate thoughts that come out as behaviour. Often with schizophrenia, the patient may have delusions or illusions.

Somnambulism

The condition of sleepwalking.

Suicide

The willful ending of one's own life. There is no clear suicide type, meaning no one can predict who will take their life. Always seek medical attention when considering or discussing suicide.

Tolerance

When a person becomes accustomed to a drug or the alcohol, therefore, they need a higher amount.

Withdrawal

A state where a person is attempting to come down from having a drug or alcohol over a long time.

Mental Health Reinforcement Activity

Mental Health Reinforcement Activity (Text version)

1. Psychology _____[Blank 1].

- a. is a medical specialty focused on childhood diseases.
 - b. is the study of infectious diseases.
 - c. is the study of human behaviour and thought processes of the mind.
 - d. include sebaceous glands and sweat glands
2. The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM) _____[Blank 2].
- a. is the resource used by healthcare professionals in much of the world to diagnose mental disorders.
 - b. is a manual related to nutrition and healthy eating.
 - c. a manual that provides statistical analysis of epidemiology.
 - d. is a guideline for the treatment of childhood cancer.
3. Anxiety is _____[Blank 3].
- a. the state of feeling uneasiness, apprehension, worry or dread.
 - b. a treatment for common forms of skin cancer.
 - c. the feeling that one is going to vomit.
 - d. an infectious disease.
4. Withdrawal is _____[Blank 4].
- a. a diagnostic test for colon cancer.
 - b. an unusual presentation of a skin infection.
 - c. a state where a person is attempting to come down from having a drug or alcohol over a long time.
 - d. a symptom related to an endocrine disorder.

Check your answers: ¹

Activity source: Mental Health Reinforcement Activity by Open Learning at Conestoga College, licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Attribution

This page “Vocabulary & Check Your Knowledge” by Connie Stevens Marie Rutherford is licensed under [CC BY 4.0](#).

Notes

1. 1. c) is the study of human behaviour and thought processes of the mind, 2. a) is the resource used by healthcare professionals in much of the world to diagnose mental disorders, 3. a) the state of feeling uneasiness, apprehension, worry or dread, 4. c) a state where a person is attempting to come down from having a drug or alcohol over a long time.

References

- American Addiction Centres. (2022). Harm reduction and needle exchange programs. <https://americanaddictioncenters.org/harm-reduction/needle-exchange>
- American Counseling Association. (2022). What is counselling? <https://www.counseling.org/aca-community/learn-about-counseling/what-is-counseling/overview>
- American Psychotherapy Association. (2022). What is psychotherapy? <https://www.psychiatry.org/patients-families/psychotherapy>
- Canada. (2022). Mental illness. <https://www.canada.ca/en/public-health/services/chronic-diseases/mental-illness.html>
- CMHA. (2022). Harm reduction. <https://ontario.cmha.ca/harm-reduction/>
- CrashCourse. (2014, February 13). Intro to psychology: Crash Course psychology #1 [Video]. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vo4pMVb0R6M>
- CrashCourse. (2014, August 11). Emotions, stress, and health: Psychology #26 [Video]. <https://youtu.be/4KbSRXP0wik?si=mubVR-qjaNhqmLlz>
- CrashCourse. (2014, August 25). Psychological disorders: Crash Course psychology #28 [Video]. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wuhJ-GkRRQc&t=3s>
- CrashCourse. (2014, October 27). Biomedical treatments: Crash Course psychology #36 [Video]. <https://youtu.be/w2efaHgJ93A?si=lyHGsfViuK50Renh>
- DSM 5. (2022) *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-5-TR)*. <https://www.psychiatry.org/psychiatrists/practice/dsm>
- Grant, J. E., & Chamberlain, S. R. (2016). Expanding the definition of addiction: DSM-5 vs. ICD-11. *CNS spectrums*, 21(4), 300–303. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S1092852916000183>
- IBPF. (2022). Bipolar. <https://ibpf.org/about-bipolar-disorder/>
- NIDA. (2020, July 13). Drug Misuse and Addiction. <https://nida.nih.gov/publications/drugs-brains-behavior-science-addiction/drug-misuse-addiction-on-2022-december-29>
- Perrotta, G. (2019). Anxiety disorders: definitions, contexts, neural correlates and strategic therapy. *J Neur Neurosci*, 6(1), 042.
- Udo, T., & Grilo, C. M. (2019). Psychiatric and medical correlates of DSM-5 eating disorders in a nationally representative sample of adults in the United States. *International Journal of Eating Disorders*, 52(1), 42–50.
- Valle, R. (2020). Schizophrenia in ICD-11: Comparison of ICD-10 and DSM-5. *Revista de Psiquiatría y Salud Mental (English Edition)*, 13(2), 95–104.
- Van Diermen, L., Poljac, E., Van der Mast, R., Plasmans, K., Van den Ameele, S., Heijnen, W., Birkenhäger, T., Schrijvers, D., & Kamperman, A. (2020). Toward targeted ECT: The interdependence of predictors of treatment

response in depression further explained. *The Journal of clinical psychiatry*, 82(1), 20m13287. <https://doi.org/10.4088/JCP.20m13287>

WHO (2022). *Mental health: A state of well-being*. http://www.who.int/features/factfiles/mental_health/en/

Glossary

angiосcopy

process of viewing the interior of arteries

hemothorax

blood in the chest cavity

Leukocyte

White blood cell(s)

pathogen

substance or agent that produces disease

psychiatrist

Specialist who studies the mind

testicular

pertaining to the testicles

5.25 liters of blood

The volume of blood ejected by the ventricle in one minute is called the cardiac output

70 mL blood per contraction

The amount of blood ejected from the ventricle in one contraction is called the stroke volume.

basal cell

cuboidal-shaped stem cell

Orchiectomy

Excision of a testicle

Abduction

away from the midline of the body

abduction

Movement away from the mid line of the body

ABG

Arterial blood gas. This test measures blood pH, oxygen and CO₂ levels in a sample of arterial blood, usually taken from the wrist

ablation

Using extreme heat or extreme cold to destroy cells in part of the heart which were causing abnormal rhythms.

acanthosis nigricans

disorder that causes darkening and thickening of the skin on the neck, groin, underarms, or skin folds

acrochordons

skin tags, teardrop-sized pieces of skin that can be as large as raisins and are typically found in the armpits or neck area

acronymns

Terms derived from the first letters of a phrase and are spoken as if they are a word on their own.

adaptive immune response

Specific immune mechanisms (against a specific pathogen) which take time to develop

adduction

Movement toward the midline of the body

adenocarcinoma

Cancer that starts in the mucous glands

adipocytes

fat cells

adipose

fat

adventitial

The outermost layer of the wall of a blood vessel

AIDS

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, caused by infection with the HIV virus

allergens

antigens that evoke type 1 hypersensitivity (allergy) responses

alveolar duct

a tube composed of smooth muscle and connective tissue (Betts. et al., 2013)

amenorrhea

absence of periods

amniocentesis

surgical puncture (using a needle) to remove amniotic fluid for sampling.

amniorrhexis

Rupture of the amniotic sac

ampulla

A sac-like enlargement of a canal or duct

anaphylactic shock

Also called anaphylaxis. An inhaled, ingested or injected (bee sting) allergen causes a significant drop in blood pressure along with contractions of smooth muscles of the airways

anastomoses

connections between two blood vessels (singular: anastomosis)

anatomical position

is that of the body standing upright, with the feet at shoulder width and parallel, toes forward. The upper limbs are held out to each side, and the palms of the hands face forward (Betts, et al 2013)

androgens

male hormones

anemia

Lack of (without) sufficient healthy red blood cells in the blood

aneurism

ballooning of a blood vessel caused by a weakening of the wall (DeSaix, et al., 2013)

aneurysm

Weakening of the wall of a blood vessel, causing it to thin and balloon out, and possibly eventually burst, resulting in internal bleeding

angina pectoris

chest pain

angiogram

an x-ray of the coronary blood vessels using a special catheter and an injection of dye

angioplasty

a balloon-tip catheter is fed through a blood vessel up to the site of the narrowing, the balloon is inflated to re-open the artery. A stent is sometimes placed at the site to reinforce the arterial wall and to prevent re-occlusion.

ankylosis

abnormal condition of stiffness

anoxia

without oxygen

antagonistic

in opposition to each other

antepartum

before childbirth

anterior

pertaining to the front

Anteriorly

Pertaining to front

anti-B antibodies

proteins that will mount an immune response against B antigens

anti-virals

treatments that work effectively against a virus.

antiandrogens

a group of medications that counteract the effects of male hormones.

antibiotics

Antibiotics are medications that stop bacterial infections.

Antibodies

also called immunoglobulins, proteins produced by B lymphocytes in response to a non-self antigen

Antigens

A substance that provokes an immune response. This happens because the immune system sees the antigen as foreign, or 'non-self" (does not belong in that body)

antihypertensives

class of medications used to treat high blood pressure

antipsychotic

against (modifying) psychosis

antiretrovirals

treatment that works against the virus replication

apical

Relating to or denoting an apex.

apoptosis

programmed cell death

appendicular

Pertaining to appendages

Arrhythmias

absence of a regular heart rhythm

Arteries

Blood vessels that transport blood away from the heart.

arterioles

A very small artery that leads to a capillary

arteriosclerosis

hardening of arteries

artery

Blood vessel that carries blood away from the heart. Thick walled that can withstand the high pressure of blood ejected from the heart (DeSaix, et al., 2013)

arthralgia

painful joint(s)

Arthritis

Inflammation of the joints

arthrodesis

surgical fusion of a joint through ossification of bones

arthroscope

Instrument that contains a small camera on a tube with a light. This is a tool used to view the inside of a joint.

articulations

Also known as joints. It is where bones meet bones or bones meet joints.

asymptomatic

pertaining to without symptoms

asystole

a complete absence of electrical activity in the heart, which is represented by a flat line on ecg

atherosclerosis

a hardening of the arteries that involves the accumulation of plaque

atypical

not typical

auscultation

listening to the heart using a stethoscope

autocrine

a cell secretes a hormone or chemical messenger.

autoinoculation

self inoculation

autonomic

unconsciously regulates

AV

atrioventricular: the area of the heart where the atria and ventricles meet

AV valves

Atrioventricular valves: mitral (bicuspid) valve allows blood to flow from left atrium to left ventricle, tricuspid valve allows blood to flow from right atrium to right ventricle

avascular

without blood vessels

axilla

armpit

axons

the long threadlike part of a nerve cell along which impulses are conducted from the cell body to other cells.

baroreceptors

specialized cells that sense changes in blood pressure

Barrier defenses

The body's first line of defense against pathogens, a physical barrier to keep pathogens out of the body

Bartholin's glands

Also known as greater vestibular glands they are responsible to secrete mucus to keep the vestibular area moist

benign

noncancerous, harmless

bicarbonate

A by-product of the body's metabolism

bilateral

pertaining to both sides

bilobed

two lobes

binocular

pertaining to two or both eyes

biopsy

process of viewing living tissue to examine for presence, cause or extent of disease

brachial artery

large artery in the upper arm near the biceps muscle

bradycardia

pertaining to a slow heart (rate)

brain**bronchiectasis**

Walls of the bronchi are thickened out (expanded) with inflammation and infection because cilli can no longer sweep out debris leading to dyspnea.

bronchodilators

substance that dilates the bronchi and bronchioles

Bulbourethral

(also, Cowper's glands) glands that secrete a lubricating mucus that cleans and lubricates the urethra prior to and during ejaculation

calyces

a cuplike cavity or structure

Cancer

abnormal cells in the body dividing uncontrollably.

capillaries

A microscopic channel that supplies blood to the tissues through perfusion

carbohydrates

The sugars, starches and fibers found in fruits, grains, vegetables and milk products.

carcinogenic

causing cancer

cardiac

pertaining to the heart

cardiac cycle

The combination of one complete relaxation or filling phase (diastole) and one complete contraction or ejection phase (systole)

cardiac muscle

Is the heart muscle also known as the myocardium. Its appearance is similar to skeletal muscle. It pumps blood and gives the heart beat.

cardiac notch

is an indentation on the surface of the left lung

Cardiac output

Cardiac output is the measurement of blood flow from the heart through the ventricles, and is usually measured in liters per minute. Any factor that causes cardiac output to increase, by elevating heart rate or stroke volume or both, will elevate blood pressure and promote blood flow.

cardiac tamponade

The pericardial sac surrounding the heart has filled with blood or other fluid and the resulting pressure is preventing the heart from beating effectively

cardiac troponin

the regulatory protein for muscle contraction

Cardiogenic

Cardio=pertaining to the heart
genic=originating from, created by
Cardiogenic means originating from the heart

cardiology

Study of the heart

carina

ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi

carotid artery

large artery in the neck

CD4 T cells

CD4 is the receptor that HIV uses to get inside T cells and reproduce. CD4+ helper T cells play an important role in T cell immune responses and antibody responses. (Betts et al., 2013)

celiac disease

Inflammation of the intestines caused by exposure to gluten (<https://www.cdc.gov/ibd/what-is-IBD.htm>)

central nervous system (CNS)

includes the brain and spinal cord

centrifuged

A centrifuge is a common piece of laboratory equipment used to spin test tubes at a high speed in order to separate components in a liquid by weight.

cerebrospinal

Produced by the brain is a colourless fluid that cushions the brain and spinal cord.

cerebrum

region of the adult brain that is responsible for higher neurological functions such as memory, emotion, and consciousness

cervicitis

Inflammation of the cervix

cervix

opening to the uterus

cessation

Stop/stopping

chemoreceptors

cells that sense changes in chemical levels

chemotaxis

Movement in response to chemicals; a phenomenon in which injured or infected cells and nearby leukocytes emit the equivalent of a chemical "911" call, attracting more leukocytes to the site.

cholecystolithotripsy

surgical crushing of stones in the common bile duct

cholecystorrhaphy

suturing of the gall bladder for repair

choledocholithiasis

Condition of stones in the common bile duct

chondromalacia

softening of cartilage

chorionic villus sampling

A small piece of placenta is taken and tested to determine potential for birth differences

chronic

a condition that lasts a long time with periods of remission and exacerbation

chronic inflammation

Chronic inflammation is ongoing inflammation that can be caused by foreign bodies, persistent pathogens, and autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis (Betts et al., 2013)

cisterna chyli

A sac-like chamber that receives lymph from the lower abdomen, pelvis, and lower limbs by way of the left and right lumbar trunks and the intestinal trunk. (Betts et al, 2013)

clubbing of the fingers and toes

broadening of the nails and exaggerated curvature of the nails

coelomic

cavities that do not open to the outside

colitis

inflammation of the colon

colpopexy

surgical fixation of the vagina by suturing it to the abdominal wall

combining form

A word root with a combining form vowel.

combining form vowel

The combining form vowel is used to join word parts and to ease pronunciation.

The most common combining form vowel is an "o" but sometimes it is an "i" or an "e".

compliance

the ability of the blood vessels to dilate and constrict as needed

conducting zone

The major functions of the conducting zone are to provide a route for incoming and outgoing air, remove debris and pathogens from the incoming air, and warm and humidify the incoming air. Several structures within the conducting zone perform other functions as well. The epithelium of the nasal passages, for

example, is essential to sensing odors, and the bronchial epithelium that lines the lungs can metabolize some airborne carcinogens (Betts, et al., 2013).

congenital

present at birth

convex

Curved outwards

coronary

pertaining to the arteries that supply the heart

coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)

In a coronary bypass procedure, a non-vital superficial vessel from another part of the body (often the great saphenous vein) or a synthetic vessel is inserted to create a path around the blocked area of a coronary artery.

coronary heart disease

also called coronary artery disease (CAD); the blood vessels that supply blood to the myocardium become hardened and narrowed, impairing the delivery of oxygen to the heart muscle

cranioschisis

Congenital fissure of the skull. The bones of the skull fail to close.

creatine kinase MB

an enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of creatine to phosphocreatine, consuming ATP

Crohn disease

A type of inflammatory bowel disease

Cryptorchidism

Undescended testicle

cryptorchism

undescended testes that don't drop before birth

crypts

Histologically, tonsils do not contain a complete capsule, and the epithelial layer invaginates deeply into the interior of the tonsil to form tonsillar crypts. (DeSaix et al., 2013)

CT

Computerized tomography: a special 3-dimensional x-ray, also called CAT=Computerized Axial Tomography

cyanosis

abnormal condition of blue (bluish colour, lips, and nail beds) caused by deoxygenation.

cyanotic

pertaining to abnormal discolouration of blue (bluish colour, lips and nail beds) caused by deoxygenation.

cytokines

chemical that sends a message from one cell to another

cytoplasm

substance that composes cells

cytotoxic

cell-killing

Deamination

The removal of an amino group from a molecule.

debridement

excision of damaged tissue or foreign object.

deep lymphatic vessels

Lymphatic vessels of the organs

defensins

The lysozyme enzyme and proteins which have antibacterial properties (Betts, et al., 2013)

dehydrate

lose a large amount of water from the body

dehydration

loss of fluids/water is greater than what is taken in.

dendritic

Pertaining to dendrites

dermatologic

pertaining to dermatology

dermatome

instrument used to cut skin

dermatopathology

Study of diseases of the skin.

dermis

The layer that is made of dense, irregular connective tissue that houses blood vessels, hair follicles, sweat glands, and other structures

detrusor

A muscle which forms a layer of the wall of the bladder

diabetes mellitus

An endocrine system disorder in which the pancreas does not produce insulin or the cells of the body do not respond to insulin. This results in high levels of glucose in the blood.

dialysis

The process of removing substances, purifying, adding, and then returning the purified substance.

An example is hemodialysis, blood is removed from an artery, purified through dialysis, vital substances added, and then the blood is returned through a vein.

diapedesis

dia- = "through"; -pedan = "to leap"

diaphoresis

sweating

diaphragm

A flat, dome shaped muscle located at the base of the lungs and thoracic cavity

diastolic pressure

The diastolic pressure is the lower value (usually about 80 mm Hg) and represents the arterial pressure of blood during ventricular relaxation, or diastole.

diplopia

double vision

distal

Away from the center of the body or from the point of attachment

diuresis

Condition of increased production of urine

dorsad

toward the back

douching

washing the vagina with fluid

ductus arteriosus

connection between pulmonary trunk and aorta in the fetal heart

dysmenorrhea

painful periods

dyspareunia

painful intercourse

dyspepsia

difficult digestion

dysphagia

difficulty swallowing

dyspnea

difficult breathing

dystocia

difficult birth

dysuria

painful urination

ECG

ECG/EKG both these abbreviations mean electrocardiogram or a recording of the electrical impulses in the heart

echocardiography

process of using sound to record the heart

edema

swelling

electrocardiogram

radiographic image of electrical activity in the heart

electrocardiograph

instrument used to record electrical activity within the heart

electrocardiography

process of recording electrical activity of the heart

electrophysiology

The study of electrical properties of cells and tissues

eleiden

clear protein rich in lipids

embolus

a freely moving piece of a substance (plaque or blood clot) that travels through the circulation until it blocks a smaller blood vessel, cutting off the supply of oxygen to the tissue

emulsification

The process of breaking down the fat into smaller blood cells which makes it easy for enzymes to function and digest food.

endocardium

innermost layer of the heart

endocrinology

The study of endocrine glands and hormones

endometrium

The innermost layer containing a connective tissue lining covered by epithelial tissue that lines the lumen. Provides the site of implantation for a fertilized egg
Sheds during menstruation if no egg is fertilized.

endoscopy

Process of viewing internally

endothelium

the lining of the lumen of a blood vessel

endotracheal

pertaining to within the trachea

epidermis

outer layer of skin, made of closely packed epithelial cells

epididymal

Pertaining to the epididymis

epididymis

(plural = epididymides) coiled tubular structure in which sperm start to mature and are stored until ejaculation

Epididymitis

swelling of the epididymis

epiglottis

The epiglottis, attached to the thyroid cartilage, is a very flexible piece of elastic cartilage that covers the opening of the trachea (Betts. et al., 2013)

epinephrine

also known as adrenaline, is a hormone and neurotransmitter and produced by the adrenal glands

epiphyses

the ends of long bones, singular is epiphysis

EPO

Erythropoietin is a hormone produced by the kidneys that plays an important role in the homeostasis of red blood cells levels in the body

eponyms

Terms that are named after a place or person.

equilibrium

balance

erythroblastosis fetalis

HDN: Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn. Discussed in the chapter about Blood, this is an immune reaction between maternal and fetal blood due to the Rh antigen.

erythrocytes

red blood cells

erythrocytopenia

abnormal reduction in number of (healthy) red blood cells produced

erythrocytosis

abnormal condition of excessive production of red blood cells

esophageal

Pertaining to the esophagus

eupnea

normal breathing

exacerbation

increase in severity of a problem

excises

remove by cutting out

excretion

Waste is eliminated from an organism. In vertebrates this is primarily carried out by the lungs, kidneys and skin.

exocrine

to secrete externally, directly or through a duct

exocytosis

Molecules are transported out of cells. A form of active transport

expiration

exhalation or the process of causing air to leave the lungs

external nose

The external nose consists of the surface and skeletal structures that result in the outward appearance of the nose and contribute to its numerous functions

extramedullary hemopoiesis

hemopoiesis outside the medullary cavity of adult bones

fascia

fibrous tissue

fauces

The **fauces** is the opening at the connection between the oral cavity and the oropharynx

fibroelastic membrane

a flexible membrane that closes the posterior surface of the trachea, connecting the C-shaped cartilages

fibromyalgia

pain in the fibrous tissues of muscles

filler

additional words that makes the definition complete.

foramen ovale

opening between right and left atria, which is normal in the fetal heart

fornix

superior portion of the vagina

frostbite

Conservation of the body core heat results in the skin actually freezing

fundus

A part of a hollow organ

Gametes

haploid reproductive cells that contribute genetic material to form an offspring

gastrectomy

surgical removal of (part or all of) the stomach.

gastromegaly

enlarged stomach

gastroscopy

process of viewing the stomach

Genetic recombination

the combining of gene segments from two different pathogens

glossopharyngeal

pertaining to tongue and throat

glottis

The glottis is composed of the vestibular folds, the true vocal cords, and the space between these folds (Betts et al, 2013)

gonads

reproductive organs (testes in men and ovaries in women) that produce gametes and reproductive hormones

graft-versus-host disease

GVHD: in bone marrow transplants; occurs when the transplanted cells (the 'graft') mount an immune response against the recipient's (the 'host') tissue

great vessels

The great vessels include the superior vena cava, inferior vena cava, aorta and pulmonary trunk.

gynecologist

Specialist in the study and treatment of the female reproductive system

gynecology

The study of the female reproductive system

Gynecomastia

growth in the breasts

hard palate

located at the anterior region of the nasal cavity and is composed of bone

HDL

high-density lipoprotein, often referred to as 'good' cholesterol

heart murmur

an abnormal heart sound

heart rate

The number of times the heart contracts in one minute.

hematemesis

The vomiting of blood

hematocrit

A lab test which measures the percentage red blood cells in a sample of whole blood. It represents how much of the person's blood is made up of red blood cells, by volume.

hematopoiesis

The process in which the body produces blood.

hemicolectomy

excision of half of the colon

hemiparesis

slight paralysis of one side of the body (right or left)

Hemolysis

Breaking apart of the erythrocyte cell membrane, allowing its contents to leak out

hemopoiesis

also called hematopoiesis; from the Greek root haima- = "blood"; -poiesis = "production"

hemopoietic growth factors

Chemical messengers which promote the proliferation and differentiation of formed elements and include erythropoietin, thrombopoietin, colony-stimulating factors, and interleukins.

hemorrhage

excessive or uncontrolled bleeding from the blood vessels

hemostasis

the process by which the body seals a ruptured blood vessel to prevent further blood loss

hiatal

Location where the diaphragm has a small opening (hiatus) through which the esophagus passes before connecting.

hilum

A concave region where blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves also enter the lungs

hirsutism

excess hair all over the body

histamine

Involved in the inflammatory response and typically causes itching.

HIV

Human Immunodeficiency Virus. An infectious disease, usually transmitted via blood or sexual fluids. It attacks the immune system and can lead to full-blown AIDS

homeostasis

biological process that results in stable equilibrium

hydrocele

swelling of the scrotum cause by fluid collection in the sheath surrounding the testicle

Hydrostatic

Relating to the equilibrium of liquids and the pressure exerted by liquid at rest.

hypercholesterolemia

higher than normal levels of cholesterol in the blood

hyperlipidemia

Excessive fat in the blood

hyperplasia

excessive development or growth

hyperpnea

forced breathing or breathing that is excessive

hypersensitivities

Reacting to something that would not normally evoke a reaction

hypertension

High blood pressure

hyperthyroidism

state of excessive production of thyroid hormone

hypertrophy

excessive development; increase in the size of cells but not the number of cells

hypodermis

Literally means below the dermis. The layer of the skin below the dermis that is composed mainly of loose connective and fatty tissues

hypoglycemia

deficient sugar in the blood

hypothalamic

a region of the forebrain below the thalamus

hypothalamus

a collection of nucleic nerve tissue - has function in both the autonomic and endocrine systems - regulates homeostasis

hypothyroidism

Underactive thyroid gland, insufficient production of thyroid hormones (T3 and T4)

Hypovolemic

hypo=below, lower than normal, volemic=pertaining to volume (in this case, the volume of blood in the body)

hypoxemia

low blood oxygen levels

hypoxia

literally: 'lower than normal amount of oxygen to tissues'. Hypoxia means that a tissue is not getting enough oxygen to survive and cell death is likely.

hysterectomy

Surgical removal of the uterus

hysteroscope

instrument used to visualize the uterus

immunity

After an infection, memory cells remain in the body for a long time and can very quickly mount an immune response against the same pathogen if it tries to re-infect. This protects us from getting diseases from the same pathogen over again.

implantable cardioverter defibrillators

ICD, an electronic implant that provides an automatic shock to convert a dangerous heart rhythm to a normal heart rhythm

induration

a firm, raised reddened patch of skin

infarct

cells and tissues that have died, often due to a complete disruption in the blood and oxygen supply

infection

invasion by disease causing organisms

inferior

pertaining to below

inferior vena cava

One of the two largest veins in the body. It carries deoxygenated blood from the torso and legs back to the heart.

innate immune response

Fast-acting non-specific immune mechanisms that are present from birth

Inspiration

inhalation or process of breathing air into the lungs

interatrial septum

the wall separating the right and left atria.

Intercellular

Between cells

intercostal

pertaining to between the ribs

interferons

Early induced proteins made in virally infected cells that cause nearby cells to make antiviral proteins (Betts et al., 2013)

internal nose

nasal cavity

Interstitial

Between cells of the tissues, often used interchangeably with 'intercellular'

interstitial fluid

Fluid that has leaked out of blood capillaries into the tissue spaces

interstitial space

Spaces between individual cells in the tissues (Betts et al., 2013)

interventricular septum

The wall of myocardium that separates the right and left ventricles

Intracellular

Inside the cell membrane or within the cell

intramuscular

pertaining to within the muscle

intravenous

pertaining to within the vein

ischemia

Insufficient blood and oxygen to cells of an organ. These cells are starving for oxygen, but they are still alive.

ischemic

ischemia is a condition in which cells receive insufficient amounts of blood and oxygen

jaundice

yellowing

jaundiced

Yellow coloured

Juvenile Rheumatoid Arthritis

Rheumatoid Arthritis that affects children causing swelling and stiffness of the joints. Also referred to as juvenile idiopathic arthritis.

keloid

formation of a raised or hypertrophic scar

keratinocytes

cells that manufacture and store the protein keratin

kinesthesia

body movement

labia

lips of the mouth

lacteals

The lymphatic vessels of the small intestine which absorb digested fats

laparoscopy

process of viewing internal organs

laparotomy

incision into the abdominal cavity

laryngeal

pertaining to the larynx

laryngopharynx

which borders the oropharynx, trachea, and esophagus (De Saix, et al., 2013)

larynx

The larynx is a cartilaginous structure inferior to the laryngopharynx that connects the pharynx to the trachea and helps regulate the volume of air that enters and leaves the lungs (Betts. et al., 2013) AKA the voice box

lateral

pertaining to the side

LDL

low-density lipoprotein, often referred to as 'bad' cholesterol

lethargy

Periods of weakness

leukemia

A cancer involving an abundance of leukocytes. It may involve only one specific type of leukocyte from either the myeloid line (myelocytic leukemia) or the lymphoid line (lymphocytic leukemia). In chronic leukemia,

mature leukocytes accumulate and fail to die. In acute leukemia, there is an overproduction of young, immature leukocytes. In both conditions the cells do not function properly (Betts, et al., 2013)

leukocytes

also spelled leucocyte, these are white blood cells

leukoderma

white skin

leukopoiesis

formation of white blood cells

lingual

pertaining to the tongue

lingual tonsils

collection of lymphatic tissue located in the lamina propria of the root of the tongue

lipoid

resembling fat

literally

follows the rules exactly

lumbago

lower back pain

lumen

A hollow passageway through which blood flows

lupus

An autoimmune disease in which the body mounts an immune response against its own tissues, causing chronic inflammation and tissue damage

Lymph

Lymph is the term used to describe interstitial fluid once it has entered the lymphatic system (Betts et al., 2013)

lymphatic system

A series of vessels, tissues and organs that remove interstitial fluid from the tissues and return it the blood, transport dietary lipids and carry out several important immune functions (DeSaix et al., 2013)

lymphatic trunks

Large lymphatic vessels that collect lymph from smaller lymphatic vessels and empty it into the blood via lymphatic ducts (Betts et al., 2013)

lymphocytes

lymph cells, a type of white blood cell

lymphoid

Resembling lymph or lymphatic tissues

Lymphoma

Lymphoma is a form of cancer in which masses of malignant T and/or B lymphocytes collect in lymph nodes, the spleen, the liver, and other tissues. These leukocytes do not function properly, and the patient is vulnerable to infection. (Betts. et al., 2013)

macrocephalous

pertaining to an exceptionally large head or cranium

macrophage

A type of white blood cell that engulfs bacteria, foreign particles and damaged cells

macrophages

a type of leukocyte (usually a monocyte) that has the ability to ingest and destroy other cells or pathogens

malabsorption

A disorder that occurs when people are unable to absorb nutrients from their diets

maldigestion

Poor breakdown of food

malignant

cancerous

mammoplasty

surgical repair of the breast particularly after a mastectomy

mastectomy

Excision of breast(s) and or breast tissue

mechanoreceptors

A sensory neuron that responds to mechanical pressure

medulla

An inner region of specific structure such as the kidneys

medulla oblongata

A part of the brain stem responsible for control of heart rate and breathing.

Meissner corpuscle

tactile corpuscle that responds to light and touch, touch receptor

Meissner corpuscles

Tactile corpuscles that responds to light and touch, touch receptors.

melanocyte

cell that produces the pigment melanin

melanocytes

Specialized cells that produce melanin which is a dark pigment responsible for colouration of skin and hair.

melanoma

tumour that develops in the melanocytes

mental disorder

A behaviour or mental pattern causing impairment of functioning.

mental health

mental health encompasses, psychological, emotional, and social well being

metacarpal bones

The bones that extend beyond the carpal bones of the wrist but before the phalanges of the fingers.

metastasis

Cancer spreads from one part of the body into another

metastasize

Production of cells that can mobilize and establish tumors in other organs of the body

metastasized

cancer spreads from one area to another area

MHC

Major Histocompatibility Complex molecules, also called Human Leukocyte Antigen (HLA) are protein structures found on the outside of cells that help the immune system recognize non-self antigens

microcephalus

small head

microscope

instrument to view small particles by enlarging the particles

mitochondria

An organelle found in large numbers in most cells.

mitral valve

Also known as the bicuspid valve

modern language terms

Terms from the English language.

MRI

Magnetic Resonance Imaging: Highly detailed images produced using a strong magnet and radio waves

Mucosal

Mucous membranes line body cavities that open to the outside world, including the respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, urinary tract and reproductive tracts

multipara

many births, refers to a woman who has birthed two or more live babies

Muscular Dystrophy

It is a term used to describe a group of more than 100 neuromuscular disorders characterized by progressive deterioration of muscle strength.

myalgia

pain in the muscles

myasthenia gravis

grave or serious muscle weakness

nasal cavity

The inside of your nose.

nasopharynx

The nasopharynx serves as an airway and is continuous with the nasal cavity

necrosis

tissue death

neonate

new birth/ newborn - birth to four weeks.

nephroptosis

prolapsed kidney

nephrostomy

creation of artificial opening between the kidney and the skin

nerves

Collection of neurons; nerve cells

Neurosensory

Relating to afferent nerves

neurotransmitter

chemicals acting as signaling molecules that enable neurotransmission.

neurotransmitters

Chemical messengers which transmit signals across a chemical synapse from one neuron to another neuron/nerve cell.

nociceptors

Sensory neurons that respond to pain

nocturia

Urinating at night (usually excessive)

nomenclature

naming conventions

norepinephrine

A natural chemical in the body that acts as both a stress hormone and neurotransmitter (a substance that sends signals between nerve cells). It's released into the blood as a stress hormone when the brain perceives stress.

nulligravida

no pregnancies

obstetrician

Specialist in obstetrics

occlusion

blocked/blockage

olfaction

sense of smell

oligohydramnios

less than expected (amount) of amnion fluid

oligomenorrhea

Infrequent or irregular periods

omentum

Fatty tissue that stretches over the abdomen, plays a role in immune response and the growth of certain cancers

oncologist

Specialist who studies and treats cancer

oocyte

female gamete

oophorectomy

surgical removal of the fallopian/uterine tubes

ophthalmoplegia

paralysis of eye muscle(s)

opsonization

An antibody or an antimicrobial protein binds to a pathogen, thereby marking it as a target for phagocytes.

orchiectomy

Excision/removal of the testicle.

oropharynx

The oropharynx is a passageway for both air and food and borders the nasopharynx and the oral cavity (Betts, et al., 2013)

osmolarity

the concentration of a solution

Osmosis

A process by which molecules of a solvent tend to pass through a membrane from a less concentrated solution into a more concentrated one.

osteoarthritis

Inflammation of bones and joints

osteomalacia

Softening of the bone(s)

osteoporosis

abnormal condition of bones that are porous.

otalgia

Pain in the ear

otitis externa

Inflammation of the external ear. Aka. swimmer's ear.

otitis media

inflammation of the middle ear

ovaries

female gonads

pacemaker

An electronic implant that initiates a heart beat

pachyderma

thick or thickened skin

Pacinian corpuscle

lamellated corpuscle that responds to vibration

palatine tonsils

a pair of soft tissue masses located at the rear of the throat (pharynx)

palpations

A feeling in the chest that may be caused by an irregular heart rhythm

pancytopenia

abnormal reduction or deficiency in all blood cell types

papillary layer

underlying dermal layer

paracrine

relating to or denoting a hormone which has effect only in the vicinity of the gland secreting it

parasympathetic

rest and relaxation phase

parathyroid glands

four small endocrine glands that are located beside the thyroid gland

pathogens

disease causing agents

pelviscopic

visual examination of the pelvis

percutaneous

pertaining to through the skin

perfusion

The delivery of blood to an area/tissue/organ

pericardial fluid

pericardial fluid is a serous fluid which allow the 2 layers of serous pericardium to slide smoothly against each other as the heart beats

peripheral arterial disease

obstruction of vessels in peripheral regions of the body

peripheral nervous system (PNS)

all nervous tissue that is outside of the brain and spinal cord

peripheral vision

pertaining to the outer sides of the field of vision

permeability

membrane that causes it to allow liquids or gases to pass through it.

pH

pH is a measure of how acidic or alkaline a substance is, as determined by the number of free hydrogen ions in the substance.

phagocytes

Cells that engulf and absorb bacteria and cell particles

phagocytized

also phagocytosed, this is the process by which certain cells are able to 'eat' other cells or substances by engulfing them

pharyngeal

pertaining to the pharynx

pharyngeal tonsils

A pharyngeal tonsil, also called an adenoid, is an aggregate of lymphoid reticular tissue similar to a lymph node that lies at the superior portion of the nasopharynx (De Saix, et al., 2013)

pharynx

The pharynx is a tube formed by skeletal muscle and lined by mucous membrane that is continuous with that of the nasal cavities (Betts, et al., 2013). Also known as the throat.

photophobia

Aversion or sensitivity to light

placenta

the organ of gas and nutrient exchange between the baby and the mother

plaque

a fatty material including cholesterol, connective tissue, white blood cells, and some smooth muscle cells

plasma cells

A type of B lymphocyte that produces antibodies which bind to specific foreign or abnormal antigens, in order to destroy them

plasmapheresis

Process that removes antibodies from the plasma portion of blood

platelets

Blood clotting cells also called thrombocytes.

pneumothorax

An excessive amount of air is present in the thoracic cavity, outside of the lungs, putting pressure on the lungs and interfering with venous return, pulmonary function, and delivery of oxygen to the tissues

polycythemia

a disorder in which too many red blood cells are produced

polycythemia vera

A type of bone marrow disease that causes an excessive production of immature erythrocytes

polymenorrhea

excessive bleeding during one's period

polymyositis

inflammation of many muscles at one time

polyneuropathy

disease of many nerves

polyuria

frequent urination

posterior

pertaining to behind

posteriorly

pertaining to behind

postictal

After a seizure

postnatal

Pertaining to after birth

postpartum

after birth

prefix

Word part at the beginning of a medical term that changes the meaning of the word root.

prenatal

before birth

primary lymphoid organs

Bone marrow and thymus gland.

prognosis

knowledge beforehand. For example stating what the expected outcome is before all the tests are in

proliferate

reproduce rapidly

proliferation

rapid increase in numbers.

prone

face-down

proprioception

body movement

prostaglandins

Any of a group of compounds with varying hormone-like effects.

prostate gland

doughnut-shaped gland at the base of the bladder surrounding the urethra and contributing fluid to semen during ejaculation

proximal

situated nearer to the center of the body or the point of attachment

pseudocyesis

false pregnancy (patient has signs and symptoms of pregnancy but is not pregnant)

pseudostratified

Consisting of closely packed cells which appear to be arranged in layers.

psychiatry

Specialty of the mind

Psychology

The study of human behaviour to understand how humans interact with their physical environment.

puerperium

Time directly after childbirth

pulmonary artery

artery that arises from the pulmonary trunk

pulmonary embolism

A piece of a blood clot or other substance has broken free from its original location and traveled through the bloodstream to lodge in a smaller vessel in the lungs. This causes an obstruction in that vessel and hypoxia to the tissues supplied by that vessel.

pulmonary trunk

very large artery referred to as a trunk, a term indicating that the vessel gives rise to several smaller arteries

pyloric sphincter

A band of smooth muscle at the junction between the pylorus of the stomach and the duodenum of the small intestine

pyosalpinx

Fallopian tube fills with pus

quadrate

A square or rectangular.

rebels

word parts that do not fit within the language rules

renal papillae

The apex of the renal pyramid

renal pyramids

Renal pyramids are kidney tissues that are shaped like cones.

respiratory zone

the respiratory zone includes structures that are directly involved in gas exchange (Betts, et al., 2013)

reticulated

net like

rhabdomyosarcoma

malignant cancer of the skeletal muscles

rheumatoid arthritis

An autoimmune disorder in which the body mounts an immune response against its own joint tissues, causing inflammation and damage to the joints

rhinoplasty

surgical repair of the nasal cavity

rhinorrhagia

Excessive bleeding from the nasal cavity (nose bleed) also called epistaxis

rhinorrhea

excessive flow or discharge from the nasal cavity (runny nose)

rickets

A painful condition in children where bones are misshapen due to a lack of calcium, causing bow leggedness

roots of the great vessels

The part of each great vessel (aorta, pulmonary trunk, inferior vena cava, superior vena cava) that connects to the base of the heart

S. aureus

Staphylococcus aureus is a bacteria that is commonly found in minor skin infections, as well as in the nose of some healthy people

scar

collagen-rich skin formed after the process of wound healing that differs from normal skin

SCID

Severe combined immunodeficiency disease. Patients have essentially no adaptive (specific) immune system due to genetic defects which affect B cells and T cells

sclera

the white of the eye

scrotum

external pouch of skin and muscle that houses the testes

semen

ejaculatory fluid composed of sperm and secretions from the seminal vesicles, prostate, and bulbourethral glands

seminiferous tubules

tube structures within the testes where spermatogenesis occurs

septal cartilage

the flexible portion you can touch with your fingers (Betts, et al., 2013)

seroconversion

Seroconversion is the reciprocal relationship between virus levels in the blood and antibody levels. As the antibody levels rise, the virus levels decline, and this is a sign that the immune response is being at least partially effective. Partially, because in many diseases, seroconversion does not necessarily mean a patient is getting well.(Betts et al., 2013)

serous

You may recall that serous membranes throughout the body are folded back on themselves, which results in a double-layered membrane separated by serous fluid. The serous membrane surrounding the lungs is called pleura, The serous membrane surrounding the abdominopelvic organs is called peritoneum.

sickle cell disease

Also called sickle cell anemia: A genetic disorder involving the production of an abnormal type of hemoglobin which delivers less oxygen to tissues and causes erythrocytes to assume a sickle (or crescent) shape

silent disorder

a disease or disorder that often lacks signs or symptoms

silent MIs

A myocardial infarction without symptoms. The patient may not know that they are having an MI.

sinus rhythm

This is the rhythm set by the heart's pacemaker, the sinoatrial node and is usually approximately 60-90 beats per minute in a resting adult.

skeletal muscle

Also known as striated muscles. Skeletal muscles are responsible for voluntary muscle movement.

smooth muscle

Also known as visceral muscles. Smooth muscle is mainly associated with the walls of internal organs. Smooth muscles are responsible for involuntary muscle movement.

soft palate

located at the posterior portion of the nasal cavity and consists of muscle tissue

solutes

the minor component in a solution

sperm

male gamete (spermatozoon)

Spermatogenesis

Process of producing sperm

spermatogonia

diploid precursor cells that become sperm (singular = spermatogonium)

sphygmomanometer

a blood pressure cuff attached to a measuring device, or gauge

spirometry

Process of measuring the function of the lungs by measuring inhalation and exhalation of breath

stratified squamous epithelium

Cells arranged in layers upon a basal membrane

stratum basale

deepest layer of the epidermal

stratum lucidum

smooth translucent layer of the epidermis

subcutaneous

pertaining to below the skin

suffix

A word part added to the end of a word that changes the meaning of the word root.

superficial lymphatics

lymphatic vessels of the subcutaneous tissues of the skin

superior

pertaining to above

superior vena cava

One of the two largest veins in the body. It carries deoxygenated blood from the head and upper extremities back to the heart.

superiorly

pertaining to below

supine

face up

suprascapular

pertaining to above the scapula

sympathetic

flight or fight response

sympathetic nervous system

fight or flight responses

symphysis

growing together

syncope

fainting

syndrome

A group of symptoms that occur (run together) that are associated with a specific disease or pathology.

synthesis

the production of chemical compounds by reaction from simpler materials.

systemic lupus erythematosus

SLE is an autoimmune disease in which the immune system recognizes its own cell antigens as being "non-self" and mounts an immune response against them. As a result, many body tissues and vital organs become chronically inflamed and damaged. (<https://www.cdc.gov/lupus/facts/detailed.html#sle>)

systolic pressure

The systolic pressure is the higher value (typically around 120 mm Hg) and reflects the arterial pressure resulting from the ejection of blood during ventricular contraction, or systole.

tachycardia

condition of a fast heart (rate)

teratogen

Substance or agent that produces or causes malformations

testes

male gonads (singular = testis)

testicle

male gonad (testes=plural)

testitis

Inflammation of the testicles

thalassemia

An inherited condition typically occurring in individuals from the Middle East, the Mediterranean, African, and Southeast Asia, in which maturation of the RBCs does not proceed normally. The most severe form is called Cooley's anemia.

thermometer

instrument used to measure temperature

thermoreceptors

specialized neurons that respond to changes in temperature

thrombocytes

also called platelets, these are cell fragments that aid in blood clotting

thrombocytosis

A condition in which there are too many platelets

thrombolysis

dissolution of a blood clot

thrombosis

formation of unwanted blood clots

thymic involution

shrinking of the thymus due to age

thymocytes

lymphocytes that develop into T-cells in the thymus gland

tissue rejection

Also called organ rejection. The recipient's immune system recognizes the transplanted tissue, the graft, as non-self and mounts an immune response against it, ultimately destroying it.

tissue typing

The determination of MHC molecules in the tissue to be transplanted to better match the donor to the recipient

trachea

The trachea (windpipe) extends from the larynx toward the lungs

transdermal

pertaining to across the skin

triceps

Arm muscle has three attachment points (lateral, medial and long) that join the humerus and scapula to the ulna

tympanic membrane

ear drum

umami

Umami is a Japanese word that means delicious taste, and is often translated to mean savory

unilateral

pertaining to one side

ureterostenosis

constriction or narrowing of the ureter

urethritis

inflammation of the urethra

uvula

The uvula is a small bulbous, teardrop-shaped structure located at the apex of the soft palate (Betts, et al., 2013)

vaccine

A vaccine is a killed or weakened pathogen or its components that, when administered to a healthy individual, leads to the development of immunological memory (a weakened primary immune response) without causing much in the way of symptoms (DeSaix et al., 2013)

valve

specialized structure that ensures one-way flow of blood

vas deferens

(also, ductus deferens) duct that transports sperm from the epididymis through the spermatic cord and into the ejaculatory duct; also referred as the vas deferens

vas deferens**vasa vasorum**

literally means vessels of vessels

vascularized

has numerous blood vessels

vasoconstrict

The smooth muscle layer in the blood vessel wall contracts, causing the vessel diameter to narrow. This increases blood pressure in the vessel.

vasodilate

The smooth muscle layer in the wall of the blood vessel relaxes, allowing the vessel to widen. This decreases blood pressure in the vessel.

vasospasm

blood vessels contract involuntarily (vasoconstriction) resulting in restricted blood flow

vein

A blood vessel that conducts blood toward the heart. In comparison to an artery a vein is thin-walled with irregular lumen (DeSaix, et al., 2013)

veins

Blood vessels that carry blood back to the heart.

venous stasis

blood in the veins, particularly in the legs, remains stationary for long periods

venules

Extremely small vein

Vessel Compliance

Compliance is the ability of any compartment to expand to accommodate increased content. The greater the compliance of an artery, the more effectively it is able to expand to accommodate surges in blood flow without increased resistance or blood pressure.

visceral

pertaining to internal organs

Viscosity

Viscosity is the thickness of fluids that affects their ability to flow

visual acuity

sharpness of vision

vitro fertilization

assisted reproductive technology

Voiding

Excrete (waste matter)

wheal and flare response

a soft, pale swelling at the site surrounded by a red zone (Betts et al., 2013)

word root

the foundational meaning of a word.

zygote

Process of fertilization is complete and results in a single-celled diploid zygote with all the genetic instructions it needs to develop into a human.

Update & Change Log

Update & Change Log

August 2, 2024 – Building a Medical Terminology Foundation 2e published

- Chapters divided into sections.
- New chapters added to the resource: Chapter 18 and 19.
- Addition of chapter review worksheets (Word docs).
- Reference section created for each chapter inclusive of new links and update any references in text.
- Figure and image numbering updated for all chapters; image description links updated.
- Broken links repaired with new links or new sources, reference updated.
- Accessibility and user experience updates throughout book
- Text versions of H5P added to improve accessibility & offline/PDF user experience
- H5p activities updated, and errata identified, and corrections made:
 - Statement added to Medical Reports as not intended to represent actual format of reports.
 - Respiratory system
 - Definition of Hilum: The first part is the definition of Carina.
 - Carina: The carina is a ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi.
 - Hilum: The hilum is a ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi. A concave region where blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves also enter the lungs.
 - Urinary system dialogue
 - renogram, pyelolithotomy, glomerulonephritis.
 - the term for VCUG voiding cystourethrogram and it should be void cystourethrogram.
 - one of the dialogue cards, on both sides: ureterostenosis.
 - Male Reproductive dialogue cards
 - Rection should be resection.
- Addition and adaptation of updated H5P activities from [Medical Terminology](#) by Grimm et al. New dialogue cards added to several chapters and audio recorded:
 - Chapter 2 – Medical Language Within the Context of Anatomy and Physiology (3 dialogue cards added)
 - Chapter 3 – Integumentary (39 dialogue cards added).
 - Chapter 5 – Urinary (4 dialogue cards added).
 - Chapter 6 – Male Reproductive Word parts (30 dialogue cards added).
 - Chapter 7 – Female Reproductive Not easily broken down (17 dialogue cards added).
 - Chapter 8 – Obstetrics Not easily broken down (9 dialogue cards added).
 - Chapter 13 – Skeletal System Abbreviations accordion added.

April 2024

- H5p activities updated, and errata identified, and corrections made:
 - Statement added to Medical Reports as not intended to represent actual format of reports.
 - Respiratory system
 - Definition of Hilum: The first part is the definition of Carina.
 - Carina: The carina is a ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi.
 - Hilum: The hilum is a ridge of cartilage that separates the two main bronchi. A concave region where blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves also enter the lungs.
 - Urinary system dialogue
 - renogram, pyelolithotomy, glomerulonephritis.
 - the term for VCUG voiding cystourethrogram and it should be void cystourethrogram.
 - one of the dialogue cards, on both sides: ureterostenosis.
 - Male Reproductive dialogue cards
 - Rection should be resection.

August 4, 2020

- Original Publication [Building a Medical Terminology Foundation](#)